OXFORD

obook pro

HUMANITIES AND SOCIAL SCIENCES

OXFORD HASS 10

SERIES CONSULTANTS:
JULIE DAVIS
MAJELLA WESSEL

MARK EASTON
GERALDINE CARRODUS
ANNIE WILSON
JOANNE WILSON
BERNIE HOWITT
VLADIMIR DUMOVIC
KIRK THOMSON
MEAGHAN RYAN
TIM DELANY

SECOND EDITION

AUSTRALIAN CURRICULUM

HUMANITIES AND SOCIAL SCIENCES

OXFORD HASS 10

SERIES CONSULTANTS:
JULIE DAVIS
MAJELLA WESSEL

MARK EASTON
GERALDINE CARRODUS
ANNIE WILSON
JOANNE WILSON
BERNIE HOWITT
VLADIMIR DUMOVIC
KIRK THOMSON
MEAGHAN RYAN
TIM DELANY

SECOND EDITION

AUSTRALIAN CURRICULUM

obook pro

OXFORD UNIVERSITY PRESS

OXFORD
UNIVERSITY PRESS

Oxford University Press is a department of the University of Oxford.
It furthers the University's objective of excellence in research, scholarship and education by publishing worldwide. Oxford is a registered trademark of Oxford University Press in the UK and in certain other countries.

Published in Australia by
Oxford University Press
Level 8, 737 Bourke Street, Docklands, Victoria 3008, Australia.

First published 2016
Second edition 2023

ISBN 9780190331726

Edited by Natasha Broadstock
Typeset by Newgen KnowledgeWorks Pvt. Ltd., Chennai, India
Proofread by Katie Lawry
Indexed by Max McMaster
Printed in Singapore by Markono Print Media Pte Ltd

The authors and publisher of *Oxford Humanities and Social Sciences second edition Australian Curriculum* would like to thank Peter Lawrence and Sally Lawrence (Black Cockatoo) for their review of content concerning First Nations peoples of Australia.

Oxford University Press Australia & New Zealand is committed to sourcing paper responsibly.

Acknowledgement of Country
Oxford University Press acknowledges the Traditional Owners of the many lands on which we create and share our learning resources. We acknowledge the Traditional Owners as the original storytellers, teachers and students of this land we call Australia. We pay our respects to Elders, past and present, for the ways in which they have enabled the teachings of their rich cultures and knowledge systems to be shared for millennia.

Warning to First Nations Australians
Aboriginal and Torres Strait Islander peoples are advised that this publication may include images or names of people now deceased.

CONTENTS

PART 1
Geography

Concepts and skills

Environmental change and management

PART 2
History

Concepts and skills

World War II (1939–1945)

Building modern Australia (post-1945)

The globalising world (post-1945)

Chapter 10 The globalising world (post-1945)

Available on obook pro

PART 3 Economics and business

Skills

Productivity, growth and living standards

PART 4
Civics and citizenship

Skills

Government and democracy

Laws and citizens

Citizenship, diversity and identity

CONTENTS BY SKILL

Throughout Humanities and Social Sciences, you will study four distinct subjects: Geography, History, Economics & Business and Civics & Citizenship. Each of these subjects has its own set of key skill areas that you will learn about and develop through the course of your study. This table of contents shows where you can find the opportunities to practise these skills, both in the book and on obook pro. For more information on the key skill areas listed, visit the toolkit for each subject.

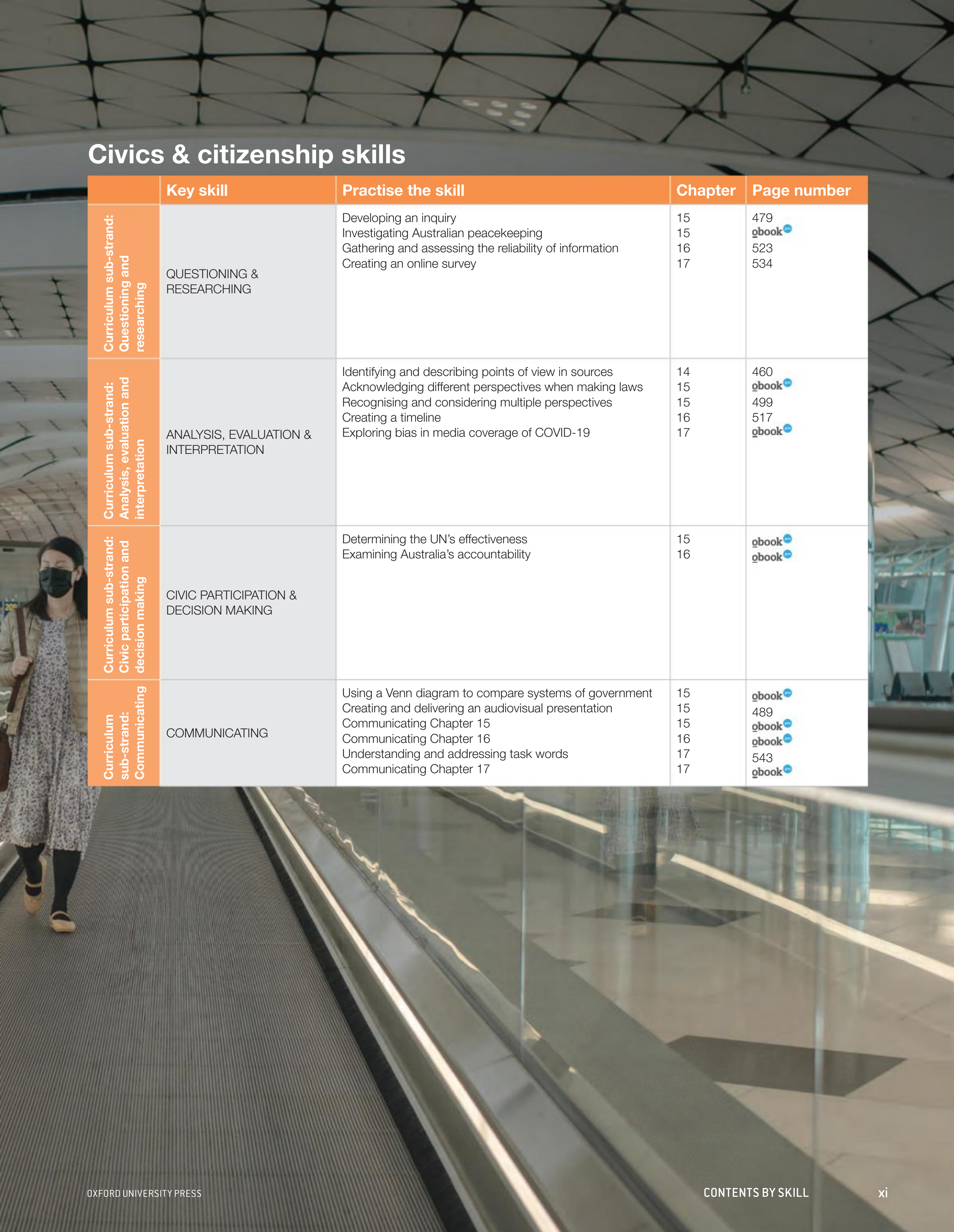
Geography skills

History skills

	Key skill	Practise the skill	Chapter	Page number
Curriculum sub-strand: Questioning and researching	QUESTIONING & RESEARCHING	Generating questions	7	225
		Generating questions	9	331
		Conducting research to locate sources	10	obook
		Locating and evaluating relevant sources	10	obook
Curriculum sub-strand: Using historical sources	USING HISTORICAL SOURCES	Analysing propaganda posters	7	232
		Evaluating the reliability and usefulness of sources	8	289
Curriculum sub-strand: Historical perspectives and interpretations	HISTORICAL PERSPECTIVES & INTERPRETATIONS	Creating a timeline	7	234
		Understanding German reparations	7	236
		Exploring Australian propaganda	7	237
		Sequencing events in Europe during WWII	8	obook
		Sequencing events in the Asia–Pacific region during WWII	8	obook
		Exploring the role of women in the workforce	8	obook
		Sequencing the White Australia Policy	9	obook
		Understanding the significance of multiculturalism	9	obook
		Understanding the migration debate	9	obook
		Considering perspectives	9	369
		Sequencing the struggle for land rights	9	obook
		Identifying and analysing different historical interpretations	10	obook
		Determining the significance of Silent Spring	10	obook
		Sequencing nuclear weapons testing	10	obook
		Exploring Australian government responses	10	obook
Curriculum sub-strand: Communicating	COMMUNICATING	Writing a historical discussion	8	271
		Writing a historical discussion	8	313
		Communicating Chapter 8	8	obook
		Understanding different types of migration	9	obook
		Writing with evidence	9	338
		Writing historical discussions that use evidence from a range of sources	9	355
		Creating and delivering an audiovisual presentation	9	396
		Communicating Chapter 9	9	obook
		Communicating Chapter 10	10	obook

Economics & business skills

	Key skill	Practise the skill	Chapter	Page number
Curriculum sub-strand: Questioning and researching	QUESTIONING & RESEARCHING	Assessing sources Formulating questions about an economic issue	11 12	408 425
Curriculum sub-strand: Interpreting and analysing	INTERPRETING & ANALYSING	Calculating income taxes Analysing productivity	11 12	409 obook
Curriculum sub-strand: Evaluating, concluding and decision making	EVALUATING, CONCLUDING & DECISION MAKING	Identifying causes and effects in economics Evaluating policies to improve economic outcomes	13 13	441 obook
Curriculum sub-strand: Communicating	COMMUNICATING	Preparing an infographic Communicating Chapter 12 Presenting findings Presenting an oral report Communicating Chapter 13	12 12 13 13 13	429 obook obook 449 obook



Civics & citizenship skills

	Key skill	Practise the skill	Chapter	Page number
Curriculum sub-strand: Questioning and researching	QUESTIONING & RESEARCHING	Developing an inquiry Investigating Australian peacekeeping Gathering and assessing the reliability of information Creating an online survey	15 15 16 17	479 obook 523 534
Curriculum sub-strand: Analysis, evaluation and interpretation	ANALYSIS, EVALUATION & INTERPRETATION	Identifying and describing points of view in sources Acknowledging different perspectives when making laws Recognising and considering multiple perspectives Creating a timeline Exploring bias in media coverage of COVID-19	14 15 15 16 17	460 obook 499 517 obook
Curriculum sub-strand: Civic participation and decision making	CIVIC PARTICIPATION & DECISION MAKING	Determining the UN's effectiveness Examining Australia's accountability	15 16	obook obook
Curriculum sub-strand: Communicating	COMMUNICATING	Using a Venn diagram to compare systems of government Creating and delivering an audiovisual presentation Communicating Chapter 15 Communicating Chapter 16 Understanding and addressing task words Communicating Chapter 17	15 15 15 16 17 17	obook 489 obook obook 543 obook

Oxford Humanities and Social Sciences Australian Curriculum has been developed to meet the requirements of version 9.0 of the *Australian Curriculum: Humanities and Social Sciences* across Years 7–10. As well as offering complete coverage of *Geography, History, Economics and Business,* and *Civics and Citizenship*, this new edition ensures that students build their Humanities and Social Sciences skills across all four subjects, preparing them for success in HASS subjects in the senior years.

The series offers a completely integrated suite of print and digital resources to meet your needs, including:

- Student Book
- Student obook pro
- Teacher obook pro.

Key features of Student Books

- The Student Books combine complete curriculum coverage with clear and engaging design.
- Each print Student Book comes with complete access to all of the digital resources available on Student obook pro.

Focus on skill development

Check your learning

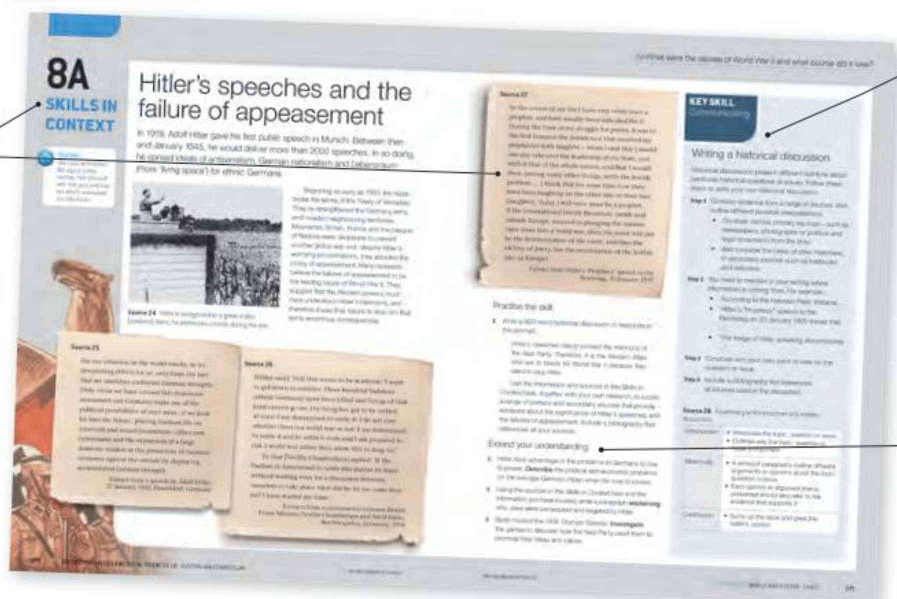
- Each topic finishes with a set of questions that enable students to meet the learning intentions and consolidate their learning.

Cognitive verbs

- Questions are generally phrased using bolded cognitive verbs, which state what is expected of a student and helps develop their understanding of questions beyond 'who, what, when, where and why'.

Visible thinking prompts

- Visible thinking prompts encourage students to develop their critical thinking and analysis skills.



Skills in Context tasks

- Skills in Context tasks provide in-depth skills practice, encouraging students to apply the knowledge and skills they have learnt to a new case study, event or issue.

Key skills

- Key skill activities enable students to practise and master skills in each subject. More key skill activities are available via Student obook pro to provide comprehensive coverage of HASS skills.

Extend your understanding

- These activities challenge students to conduct further research or complete group work to deepen their understanding of an issue or skill.

Focus on engagement

Topic-based approach

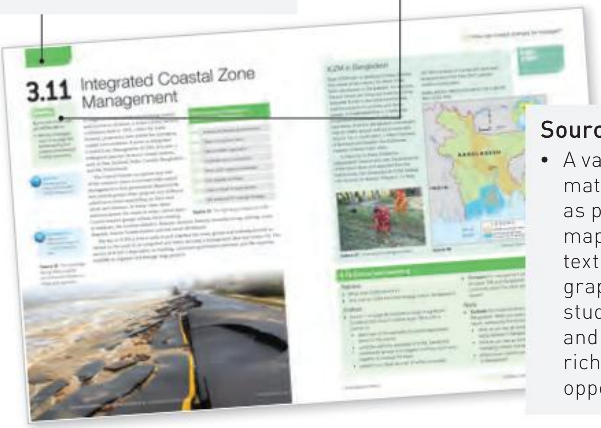
- Chapter content is sequenced in numbered topics to support teaching and learning.

Learning intentions

- Each topic begins with a statement of learning intentions, which link the content to the curriculum.

Integrated digital resources

- Digital icons signpost a range of engaging resources that can be accessed via Student obook pro, including drag-and-drop activities, video quizzes, virtual field trips and quick quizzes. These resources are directly integrated with the topic being covered.



Source materials

- A variety of source materials such as photographs, maps, illustrations, text extracts and graphs will spark students' curiosity and provide rich learning opportunities.

Focus on support for mixed-ability classrooms

Margin glossary terms

- On-page glossary definitions are provided for key terms, supporting students at their point of learning. Key terms also appear in a glossary at the end of the book, and can be revised in a Quizlet game via Student obook pro.

Chapter review

- At the end of each chapter, a review activity gives students the chance to consolidate their knowledge and apply the skills they have learnt throughout.
- Students are encouraged to self-assess their learning in the chapter checklist at the end of the chapter. If students do not feel confident about their learning, they are directed back to the relevant topic.

Easy-to-access text and design

- The text is written in clear and concise language and the text design is appealing and easy to navigate.

Structured questions

- Questions for each topic are categorised according to the Marzano and Kendall taxonomy, catering for a range of abilities.

Focus on STEAM

Integrated STEAM projects

- Take the hard work out of cross-curricular learning with engaging STEAM projects. Two fully integrated projects are included at the end of each book in the series, and are scaffolded and mapped to the Humanities and Social Sciences, Science and Maths curricula. The same projects also feature in the corresponding Oxford Science and Oxford Maths series to assist cross-curricular learning.

Problem solving through design thinking

- Each STEAM project investigates a real-world problem that students are encouraged to problem-solve using design thinking.

Full digital support

- Each STEAM project is supported by a wealth of digital resources, including student booklets to scaffold students through the design thinking process of each project, videos to support key concepts and skills, and implementation and assessment advice for teachers.

Key features of Student obook pro

obook pro

> Student obook pro is a completely digital product delivered via Oxford's online learning platform, **Oxford Digital**.

> It offers a complete digital version of the Student Book with interactive note-taking, highlighting and bookmarking functionality, allowing students to revisit points of learning.

> A complete ePDF of the Student Book is also available to download for offline use and read-aloud functionality.

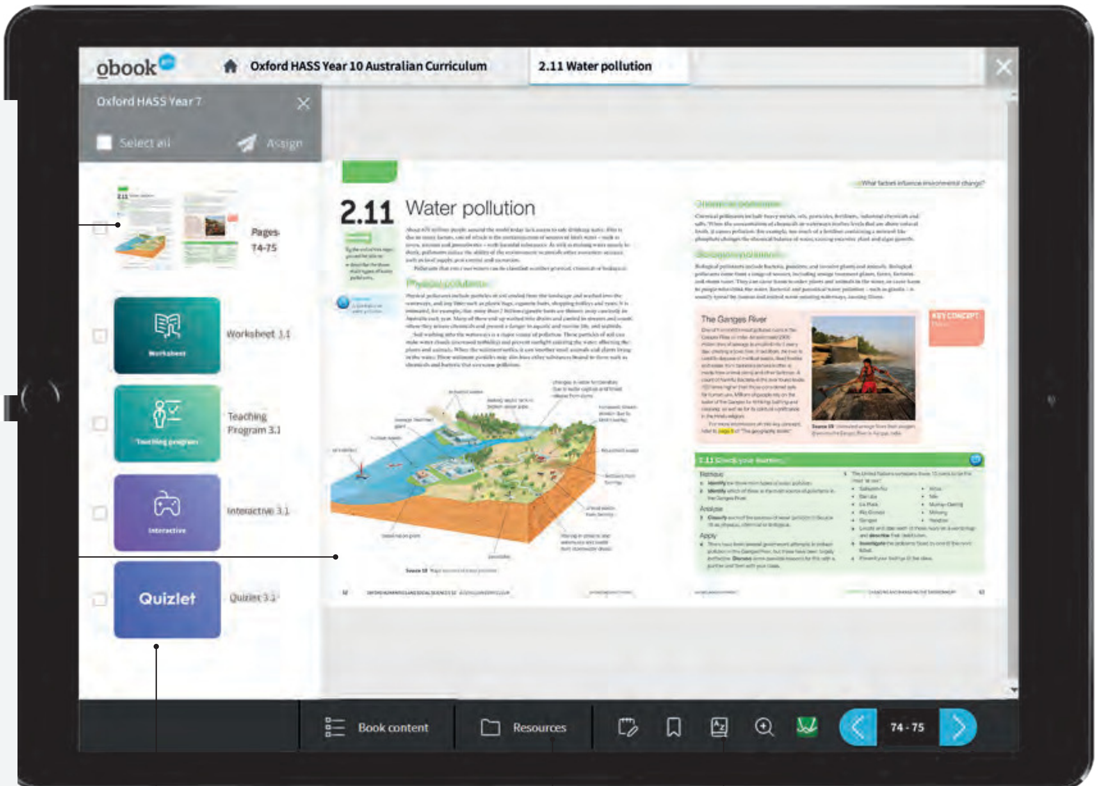
Focus on eLearning

Complete digital version of the Student Book

- This digital version of the Student Book is true to the print version, making it easy to navigate and transition between print and digital.

Interactive assessments

- Each topic in the Student Book is accompanied by an interactive assessment that can be used to consolidate skills and knowledge and for formative assessment.
- These interactive assessments provide a mix of auto- and teacher-corrected questions, with students receiving instant feedback on achievement and progress. Students can also access all their online assessment results to track their own progress and reflect on their learning.



Quizlet

- Integrated Quizlet sets, including real-time online quizzes with live leaderboards, motivate students by providing interactive games that can be played solo or as a class. Quizlet can be used for revision or as a warm-up activity when a chapter is introduced.

Additional resources

- A rich variety of additional resources such as interactive layered maps, videos, worksheets, quizzes and weblinks are linked to individual topics in the book so they can be accessed at the point of learning.

Integrated dictionary

- Each digital Student Book provides an integrated Australian Concise Oxford Dictionary look-up feature, so students can quickly access any terminology they aren't sure of and continue their learning.

Benefits for students

> integrated Australian Concise Oxford Dictionary look-up feature

> interactive assessments to consolidate understanding

> integrated Quizlet sets including real-time online quizzes with live leaderboards

> additional resources available at the point of learning

> access to their online assessment results to track their own progress

Key features of Teacher obook pro

obook pro

- Teacher obook pro is a completely digital product delivered via **Oxford Digital**.
- Each chapter and topic of the Student Book is accompanied by full teaching support. Teaching programs clearly direct learning pathways throughout each chapter and provide ideas for differentiation.
- Teachers can use their Teacher obook pro to share notes and easily assign resources or assessments to students, including due dates and email notifications.

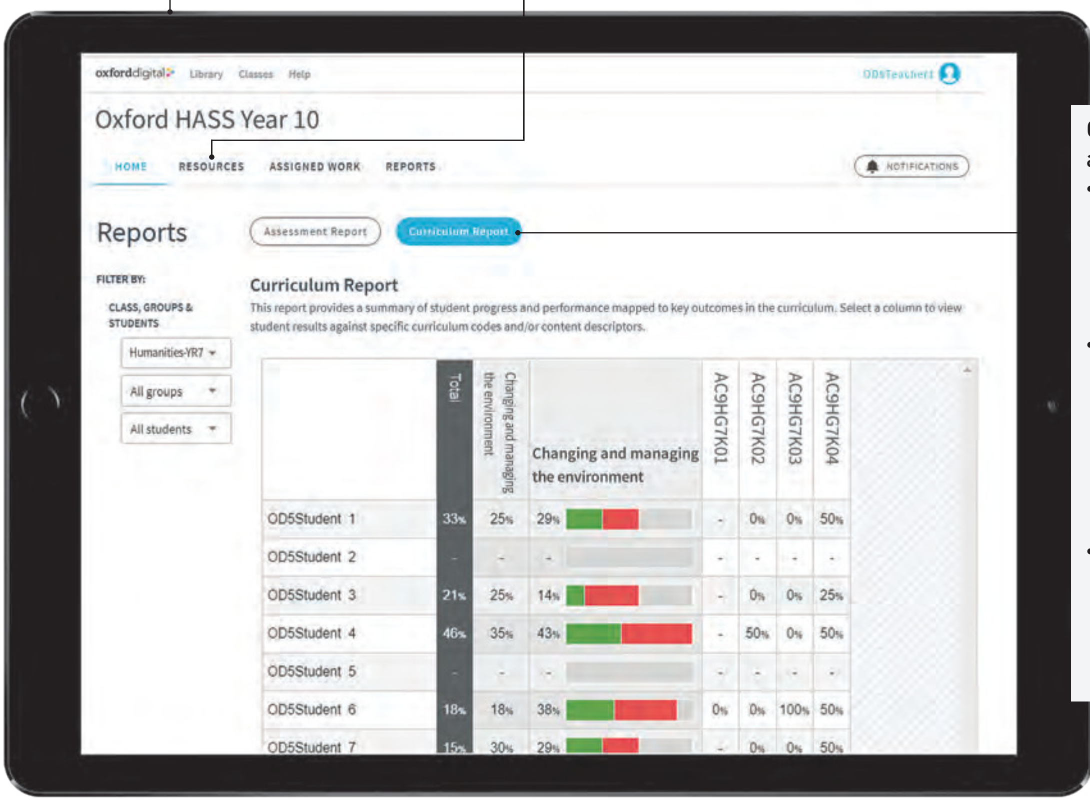
Focus on assessment and reporting

Complete teaching support

- Teaching support provides full lesson and assessment planning, ensuring there is more time to focus on students.

Additional resources

- Each chapter of the Student Book is accompanied by additional resources, including answers to every Student Book question, differentiated worksheets and class tests to monitor student progress.



Curriculum and assessment reports

- Teachers are provided with clear and tangible evidence of student learning progress through curriculum and assessment reports.
- Assessment reports directly show how students are performing in each online interactive assessment, providing instant feedback for teachers about areas of understanding.
- Curriculum reports summarise student performance against specific curriculum content descriptions and curriculum codes.

Benefits for teachers

- Teachers have access to all student resources.
- As well as online assessment, teachers have access to editable class tests that are provided at the end of each chapter. These tests can be used as formative or summative assessment and can be edited to suit the class's learning outcomes.
- As students complete online assessments, their results are measured against curriculum outcomes through the curriculum report. This allows easy understanding of how students are progressing, and where they may need support.

What are cognitive verbs and why do we use them?

A cognitive verb is a verb or 'doing word' that helps you understand how to answer a question. For example, the word **describe** is a cognitive verb because it requires you to remember what you know about something and talk about its features. Cognitive verbs are commonly shown in **bold** in the questions in this book. You will encounter a variety of cognitive verbs as you learn new information.

Common cognitive verbs and the task/s associated with them are given in the table opposite. Understanding these cognitive verbs and the tasks behind them will help you work out how to best answer a question.

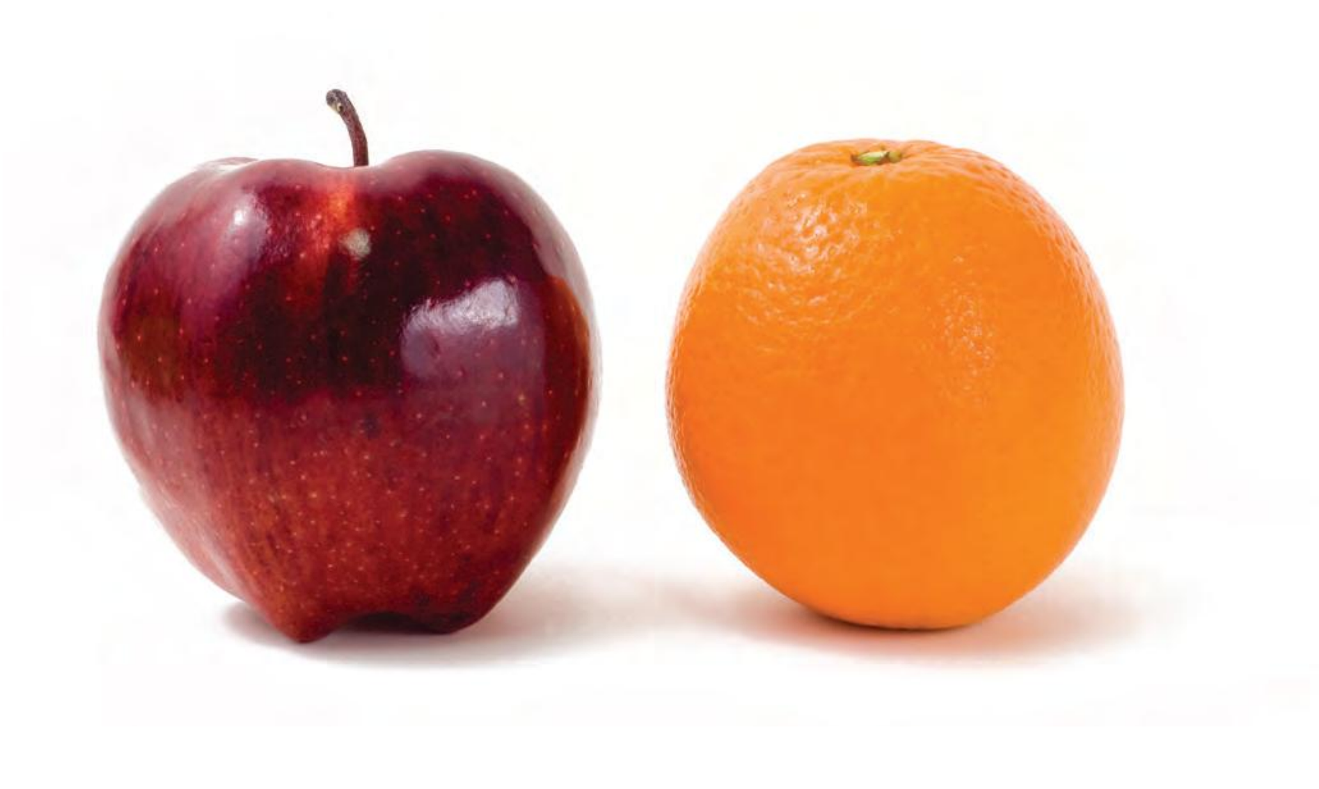
Some cognitive verbs require more thinking and understanding than others. For example, if you were given a picture of an apple and an orange, and asked to **name** the two fruits, you might instantly remember 'apple' and 'orange' and could write the names down without much trouble. However, if you were asked to **compare** the two fruits, you would need to think about the two fruits and identify at least one similarity and one difference between them. In this sense, **compare** requires a deeper level of thinking than **name**.

Throughout this book you will notice that the questions in the Check Your Learning boxes are categorised in the following order:

- Retrieve
- Comprehend
- Analyse
- Apply.

This is because working in order from 'Retrieve' to 'Comprehend' to 'Analyse' and finally to 'Apply' helps your learning process.

Source 1 shows the thought processes required for each type of cognitive verb, and the category to which it belongs.



Cognitive verbs

Cognitive verb	Task	Category
define	give the meaning of a word or term	**Retrieve** – recall information from permanent memory
identify	recognise and state a fact or feature	
name	provide the correct name	
state	provide the correct piece of information	
describe	give an account of a situation, event, pattern or process, or of the features of something	**Comprehend** – activate and transfer knowledge from your permanent memory to your working memory
explain	make an idea or situation plain or clear by describing it in more detail, or providing reasons how or why	
summarise	outline or give a brief statement of an event, theme or major point/s; present ideas and information in fewer words and in sequence	
analyse	examine or consider something in order to explain and interpret it, identifying different components and the relationship between them	**Analyse** – use your reasoning to go beyond what was directly taught
classify	arrange, distribute or order in classes or categories according to shared qualities or characteristics	
compare	identify the similarities and differences between things	
consider	think carefully and reflect on before making a decision	
distinguish	identify the differences between things	
examine	inspect something carefully	
create	make or invent; reorganise or put elements together into a new pattern or structure	**Apply** – use your knowledge in specific situations
discuss	examine by argument; examine the considerations for and against; debate; talk or write about a topic taking into account different views and issues	
evaluate	examine and determine the value or significance of something, talking about its strengths and weakness and giving your overall opinion	
determine	decide or come to a resolution	
investigate	plan, search or inquire into a topic to establish or obtain facts and reach new conclusions	
justify	give reasons or evidence to support an answer, response or conclusion	
propose	put forward a suggestion for consideration or action	

Source 1 The tasks and categories associated with cognitive verbs

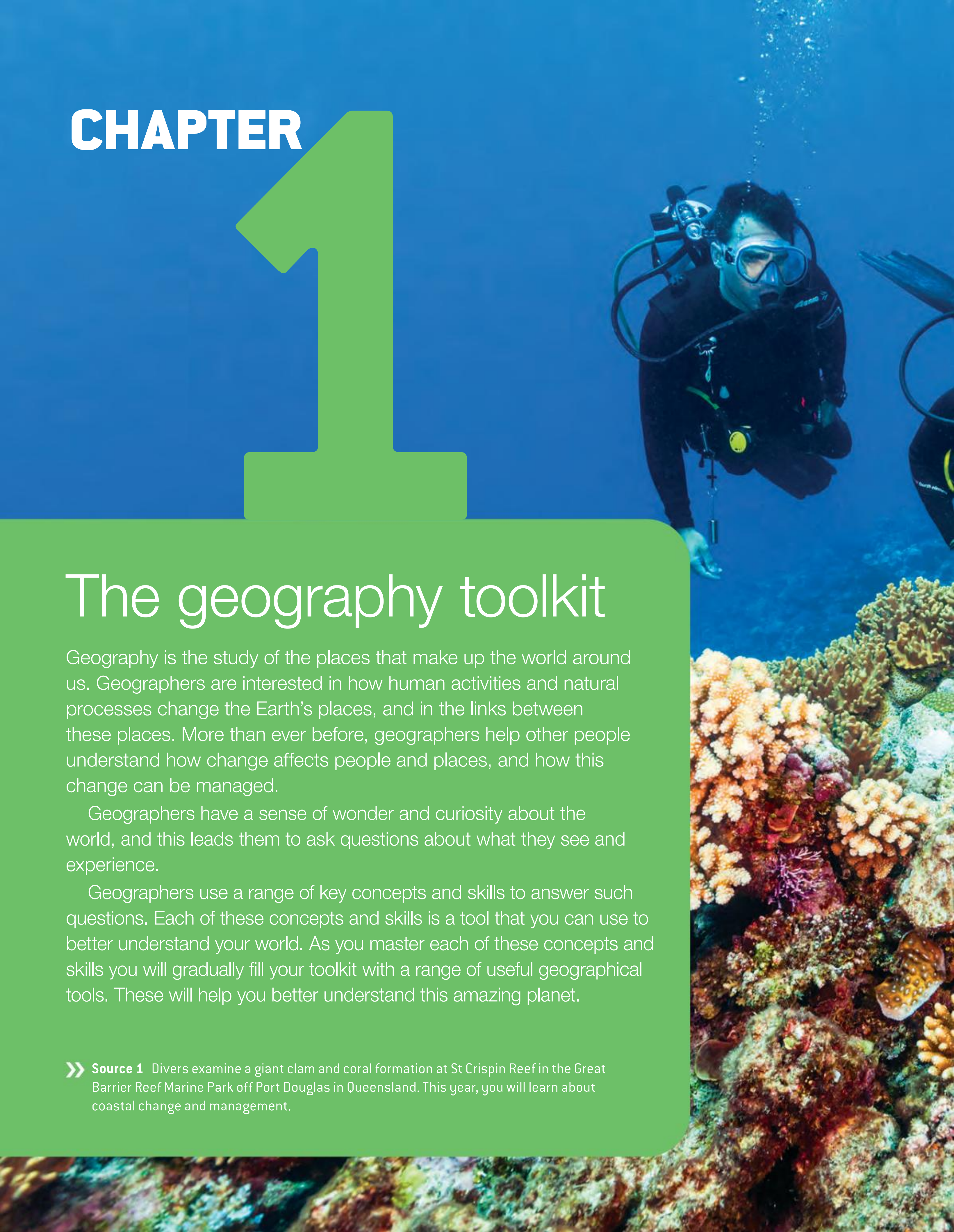
PART 1

Geography

Concepts and skills

Environmental change and management

Geographies of human wellbeing



CHAPTER 1

The geography toolkit

Geography is the study of the places that make up the world around us. Geographers are interested in how human activities and natural processes change the Earth's places, and in the links between these places. More than ever before, geographers help other people understand how change affects people and places, and how this change can be managed.

Geographers have a sense of wonder and curiosity about the world, and this leads them to ask questions about what they see and experience.

Geographers use a range of key concepts and skills to answer such questions. Each of these concepts and skills is a tool that you can use to better understand your world. As you master each of these concepts and skills you will gradually fill your toolkit with a range of useful geographical tools. These will help you better understand this amazing planet.

Source 1 Divers examine a giant clam and coral formation at St Crispin Reef in the Great Barrier Reef Marine Park off Port Douglas in Queensland. This year, you will learn about coastal change and management.

Concepts and skills

1A
What are the geographical concepts?

1B
What are the geographical skills?

1.1 Geographical concepts

Geographers use seven key concepts to help investigate and understand the world. These concepts provide a framework to thinking geographically and will help guide you through every geographical inquiry. At times you will use several of these concepts at once, while at other times you may focus on just one.

The seven key concepts in geography are:

- place
- space
- environment
- interconnections
- sustainability
- scale
- change.

Place

A place is a part of the Earth's surface that is identified and given meaning by people. Places can be very large, like a whole continent; or they can be small, like a corner of a library. Places can be natural (that is, shaped by the environment and largely unchanged by humans), or built (that is, constructed by humans). Each place is unique, with its own set of characteristics.

Places determine our relationships with one another. Our closest relationships are likely to be with people in places that are physically close. In addition, the environmental and social qualities of a place all influence the way we live. Climate, landscapes, types of plants and resources, transport networks, entertainment venues and workplaces all have a major impact on our daily lives.

Geographers use the concept of place when conducting any geographical inquiry. For example, a geographer visiting Namche Bazaar at the base of Mount Everest would use the concept of place to help understand why people choose to live in this challenging environment and how they overcome these challenges. They would also investigate how the physical and human aspects of this location relate and interact, and how this has changed over time.

Source 1 A geographer visiting Kosciuszko National Park would be interested in the forces that have shaped these mountains. They would look for clues and begin to ask questions, such as 'Why are the highest mountain peaks in a line?' and 'Why is there snow at the top of the mountain?'

Space

Geographers use the key concept of space when investigating the way that things are arranged on the Earth's surface. They also investigate the ways people use and change the spaces in which they live. Geographers look for patterns in the way features and structures are arranged, and the concept of space helps them to do this. It has three main elements:

- *location* – where things are located on the Earth's surface
- *spatial distribution* – the patterns formed by the way things are arranged on the Earth's surface
- *organisation* – how and why things are arranged and managed on the Earth's surface by people.

Understanding the location, patterns and planning of spaces helps geographers to make sense of our world. Geographers investigate the way that people use and change the spaces available to them. They study the patterns and trends in the distribution of spaces to understand how and why spaces change over time. By examining, researching and describing how spaces are used, geographers can further our understanding of the world and help manage it into the future.

It is easy to confuse the concepts of place and space. It may help you to remember that places can be divided and organised into spaces. Spaces also are assigned different purposes. For example, a place like your school is organised into different spaces, each with its own purpose (for learning, for sports, for eating).

Source 2 Geographers might look at this photo of Manhattan, New York, and ask the following questions to investigate the space:

- How big is the park *located* at the centre of the city?
- How many buildings are *distributed* per square metre?
- Are the tall buildings in the city *organised* by residential or business use?

Environment

The key concept of environment relates to the living and non-living elements that make up an area, and the ways they are organised into a system. The world in which we live is made up of many different environments. Some of these – such as deserts, mountains, coral reefs and ice caps – are natural. For an environment to be considered natural, its soils, rocks, climate, plants and animals must remain largely unaltered by humans. Natural processes such as tectonic plate movement, erosion and weathering have formed these environments over millions of years.

By contrast, built (or human) environments include large cities, towns, suburbs and areas of farmland. These environments have been so changed by humans – largely for settlement and economic activity – that very few natural features remain.

Geographers are interested in investigating and describing the relationships between people and the environment, including:

- the ways in which different groups of people perceive and use the natural environment and why these perceptions differ
- the ways in which people change the environment and how these changes can be managed
- the impact of environmental hazards on people and how the impacts of these hazards can be reduced.

Source 3 The Galapagos Islands in Ecuador are a popular tourist location where tourists interact with the natural environment.

The study of different environments helps geographers analyse the changes that humans make to natural environments and understand their impact, so that they can be managed.

Interconnections

All environments and every living and non-living thing are connected. These connections can be on a local level, a national level or a global level. Geographers use this concept of interconnections to better understand the links between places and people, and how these links affect the environment and the way we live. Some examples of interconnection include:

- *the water cycle* – this cycle links the water in the oceans with the land. When it brings rain to inland areas, water flows across the land and into rivers and streams. Farmers rely on this natural link to provide the water they need to grow food.

Source 4 A container ship prepares to berth at Port Melbourne.

- *the internet* – with online access available through our mobile phones, tablets, computers and televisions, we are connected to different people all over the world through the content we consume online.
- *the global marketplace* – being consumers in a global marketplace means we are connected to many places via international trade. More than 3000 ships carrying 2 million containers pass through the Port of Melbourne in Victoria (see Source 4) each year. These ships and the goods they carry link dozens of countries around the world.

Sustainability

The concept of sustainability relates to the ongoing capacity of the Earth to maintain all life. This means developing ways to ensure that the Earth's resources be used and managed responsibly, so they can be maintained for future generations.

Sustainability encourages us to think more carefully about these different types of resources, including the ways in which they are formed and the speed at which they are being used. Non-renewable resources (such as oil, coal and natural gas) will one day run out if we continue to use them. Other resources (such as wind, forests, solar and water) are renewable. This means that they replace themselves naturally, or can be replaced to meet the needs of society.

Sustainable patterns of living meet the needs of the current generations without compromising the ability of future generations to meet their own needs. They also encourage us to look more closely at renewable options and take greater care of the Earth. Actions to improve sustainability can operate at the local, national or international scale.

Geographers use the concept of sustainability to investigate how natural and human systems work, and to understand how resources can be managed in such a way that they will be sustained into the future.

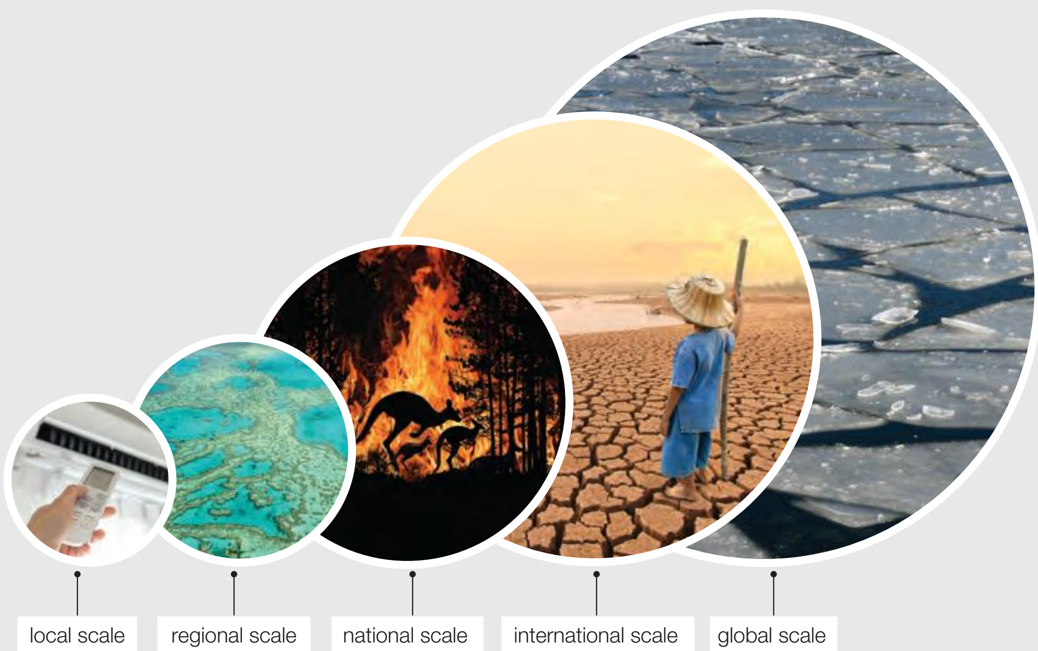
Source 5 In 2015, the United Nations created 17 Sustainable Development Goals for countries to commit to, in order to live more sustainably. You can read more about these on pages 200 to 201.

climate change
a change in global or regional climate patterns; in particular, a change apparent from the mid to late twentieth century onwards and attributed largely to the increased levels of atmospheric carbon dioxide produced by the use of fossil fuels

Scale

Geographers study things that take place on many different spatial levels – from small areas (such as a local park) to very large areas (such as the use of oil and gas all over the world). They use the concept of scale to look for explanations and outcomes at different levels. For example, a geographical inquiry on **climate change** may be carried out at a range of scales (from smallest to largest):

- *local* – such as an inquiry into increased electricity use for air conditioning in your neighbourhood due to higher-than-average temperatures. Increased energy consumption may result in power outages.
- *regional* – such as an inquiry into coral bleaching on the Great Barrier Reef. Warming ocean temperatures can trigger coral bleaching, often resulting in coral death.
- *national* – such as an inquiry into changing weather patterns and increased frequency of extreme weather events in Australia, such as bushfires. These affect government allocation of resources, including in relation to water security, agriculture and emergency services.
- *international* – such as an inquiry into drought in Africa. Rains have become less reliable in many places as the climate has changed and many African nations have been hit by a series of devastating droughts that have brought widespread hunger and starvation.
- *global* – such as an inquiry into the reduction in Arctic sea ice due to global warming. This reduction in white ice means that less of the sun's energy is reflected back into space and more is absorbed into the Earth, resulting in further increases in temperatures globally.



Source 6 Geographical inquiries can be carried out on a number of different scale levels.

Change

The concept of change helps us to understand what is happening around us and to see the world as a dynamic place. Change in both time and space allows geographers to examine how environments develop, transform or disappear.

Change can be the result of natural forces (for example, climate, earthquakes or volcanoes) or the result of human activity (for example, the building of a new bridge or the clearing of forest for farmland). Some changes can be positive (such as the regeneration of vegetation), while other changes can have negative consequences (such as decreased levels of liveability).

Changes take place on different scales, from local through to global. Local changes that happen quickly, such as storm damage in your street, are easy to observe and explain. Regional or national changes resulting from a bushfire or an earthquake can also happen quickly and their effects can be widespread, with devastating impacts on places and people. Changes that take place on a global scale can take much longer. Global warming, for example, is a long-term change that happens slowly. It has widespread and long-term effects that are not easily explained.

Observing and understanding natural or human-made changes is an important part of any geographical inquiry. Geographers need to look at different types of changes, why they have occurred, over what time period they have occurred, and what further changes may take place as a result. Geographers also play an important role in ensuring that change is managed sustainably.

Check your learning
Topic 1.1

Source 7 In preparation for the 2012 Olympic Games, Newham in East London was transformed from a suburb of derelict buildings and polluted rivers (top) into a vast sporting complex (bottom). The project adopted the *London 2012: Zero Waste Games Vision*, which aimed to make the games truly sustainable. For example, the velodrome shown on the right-hand side of the bottom photograph was built using 100 per cent sustainably sourced timber.

1.2 Geographical skills

Geographers are investigators. They explore the world around them by asking questions about what they see. These questions begin an investigation that requires them to ask geographical questions; collect data and information; identify patterns, trends and relationships; analyse the impacts of a geographical challenge; propose action to address the challenge; communicate the the challenge to others and present solutions using geographical terminology and appropriate digital and spatial technologies. Four categories of skills are used to complete an investigation, known as a **geographical inquiry**. These are listed in Source 1.

geographical inquiry a process that geographers use to guide their investigations, beginning with asking questions and using geographical skills

To become a better geographer you need to learn new skills as you continue to practise, use and develop the skills you have already learnt. It might help you to think of each of these skills as individual tools in your toolkit. For some geographical inquiries, you may only need to use one tool; for others, you may need to use many. As you develop each new skill you will have gained another important tool in explaining the natural processes and human activities that shape our amazing planet.

Source 1 The four categories of skills used in a geographical inquiry

Questioning and researching using geographical methods	• Developing geographically significant questions and planning an investigation (inquiry) that identifies and applies appropriate geographical methodologies and concepts. • Conducting fieldwork, mapping and interpreting data and spatial distributions, and using spatial technologies. • Collecting, selecting, recording and organising relevant geographical data and information, using ethical protocols, from a range of appropriate primary and secondary sources. • Evaluating sources for their reliability, bias and usefulness, and representing multi-variable data in a range of appropriate forms; for example, scatter plots, tables, field sketches and annotated diagrams, with and without the use of digital and spatial technologies. • Representing the spatial distribution of geographical phenomena by constructing special-purpose maps that conform to cartographic conventions, using spatial technologies as appropriate.
Interpreting and analysing geographical data and information	• Evaluating multi-variable data and other geographical information using qualitative and quantitative methods, and digital and spatial technologies as appropriate, to make generalisations and inferences, propose explanations for patterns, trends, relationships and anomalies, and predict outcomes. • Applying geographical concepts to synthesise information from various sources and draw conclusions based on the analysis of data and information, taking into account alternative points of view. • Identifying how geographical information systems (GIS) might be used to analyse geographical data and make predictions.
Concluding and decision making	• Reflecting on and evaluating the findings of the inquiry to propose individual and collective action in response to a contemporary geographical challenge, taking account of environmental, economic and social considerations, and explaining the predicted outcomes and consequences of their proposal.
Communicating	• Presenting findings, arguments and explanations in a range of appropriate communication forms, selected for their effectiveness and to suit audience and purpose, using relevant geographical terminology, and digital technologies as appropriate.

1.3 Questioning and researching using geographical methods

Geographers look at people, land, air, water, plants and animals, and the connections between them to understand what is happening. They also seek to investigate where, why and how natural, managed and constructed environments are formed and changed. These observations often include identifying any problems or issues that need to be investigated and resolved.

Developing geographical questions

Geographers look at the world around them and ask questions about what they see, experience or have thought about. You may, for example, see a news item about a volcanic eruption. Or you may visit the centre of a large city on a field trip, or a national park on holiday. As you begin to think like a geographer, you will begin to ask questions about these events and places, and these questions may be the starting point for a geographical inquiry.

KEY SKILL
Questioning & researching

Developing geographical questions

You can learn to develop geographical questions that will help you begin an inquiry about a particular topic or place. Start your questions with the words 'what', 'where', 'how', 'why', 'what impact' or 'what should'.

Your questions should examine ideas such as:

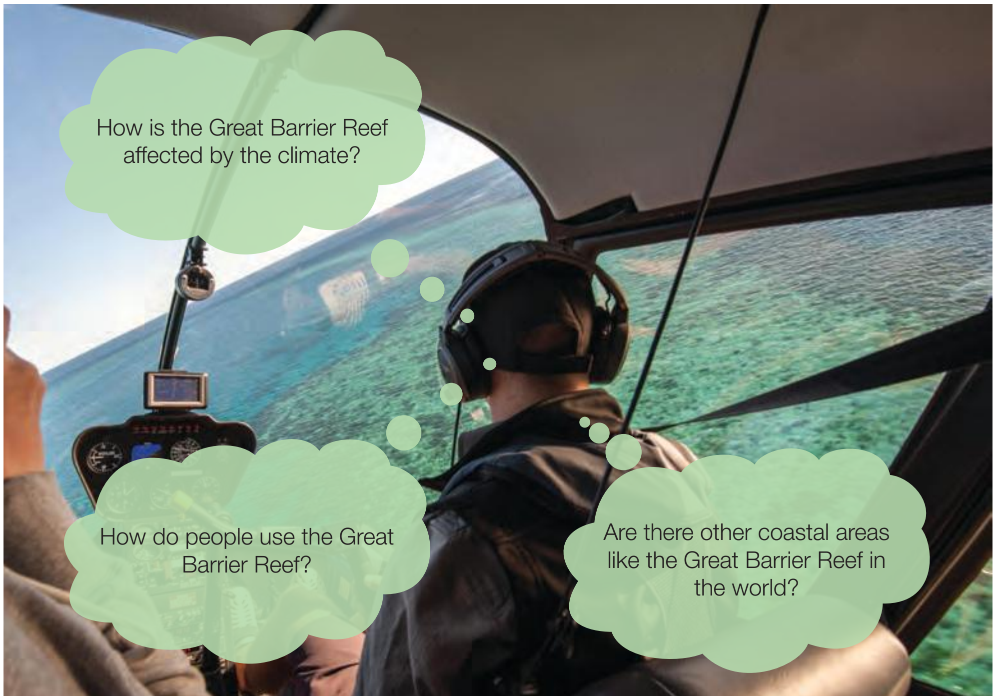
- Where is it?
- How big is it?
- How does it interact with other things in this place?
- How is it changing? How should people best manage this change?

The very best geographical questions open up an exciting area for you to explore. For example, examine Source 2 on the next page. A visitor to the Great Barrier Reef might ask a simple question, such as: 'What is the total area of the reef?' This is a question with a relatively straightforward answer. A better geographical question would be to ask: 'How has the total area of the reef changed over time?' This question opens up a whole new area to explore, because the answer to that question will lead on to further questions and greater depth of understanding. Some other sample questions are:

- Why are some patches of the sea dark green and others light green?
- How does marine life use the reef?
- Where is the reef located and how does this affect it?

Practise the skill

1. **Explain** why 'How has the total area of the reef changed over time?' a better geographical question than 'What is the total area of the reef?'
2. **Examine** Source 3 on page 8, which shows tourists on the Galapagos Islands. Work with a partner to develop a set of geographical questions about this place. Where could you begin to find the answers to your questions?



Source 2 Asking questions is an important skill for geographers. This geographer is examining the Great Barrier Reef from above in a helicopter.

Planning a geographical inquiry

Asking geographical questions is a good way to develop a range of possibilities for further research and investigation. It is usually best to narrow your investigation by selecting one question. You should select a question in which you are interested and that helps you to better understand the environment you are investigating.

Planning an inquiry question on the Great Barrier Reef

Let us assume you have chosen to investigate the key geographical question: 'How is the Great Barrier Reef affected by the climate?' Consider what information you need to answer this question and where you are going to locate this information. A good way to do this is to use a planning table, like the one in Source 3.

Source 3 Planning is a key stage in conducting a geographical inquiry.

Key inquiry question: How is the Great Barrier Reef affected by the climate?	
Information needed	**Possible sources of this information**
Climate data, particularly temperature and rainfall for places at various distances from the Great Barrier Reef	• Atlas map to locate towns and cities at various distances from the Great Barrier Reef • Encyclopaedia entry for the climate of Queensland • Online search for climate data for selected towns and cities
Observation of photographs and satellite images of the region	• Photographs and satellite images of the Great Barrier Reef from this chapter • Satellite images from Google Earth, including historical imagery
An understanding of the impact of landforms on temperature and rainfall	• Printed resources such as geography textbooks, encyclopaedias and Bureau of Meteorology (BOM) books and leaflets • BOM website

Conducting fieldwork

For geographers, the field is an essential primary source of data. Books, websites and maps can give you some information about a particular place, but they are usually secondary sources of information. To really understand a landscape or issue, you need to go and see it for yourself.

Source 4 You never know where fieldwork will take you!

The skills associated with fieldwork

The aim of all fieldwork is to enable you to develop the skills of observation, information gathering, analysis and interpretation of different forms of data, and communication of your results. The types of fieldwork you conduct will differ according to your chosen topic and the fieldwork site. You will be:

- identifying different types of environments and the features within them
- recording data from different sources
- sampling things such as soil salinity levels
- comparing different features to see if there is a pattern
- calculating values, such as water flow, numbers of different species of plants and animals, or visitor numbers
- communicating your findings.

Fieldwork locations and questions

Fieldwork can take place in many locations and for a wide variety of purposes. Rivers and coasts are popular fieldwork locations because the constant movement of water in these places changes the natural environment. Shopping centres, parks and city streets are also popular because the constant movement of people creates patterns, flows and changes.

Source 5 provides some examples of fieldwork locations, as well as some starting questions that can be the beginning of an investigation there.

Source 5 Examples of fieldwork locations and questions to consider for different units of study in Year 10 geography

Unit of study	Fieldwork location	Questions to consider
Environmental change and management	River or stream Coast	• What natural processes are shaping this riverine or coastal environment? • How do these natural processes impact on human activities? • What human activities have changed the natural processes and environment in this place? • How have these environmental changes been managed? • How effective has this management been? • What further management strategies could be used to better manage change in this place?
Geographies of human wellbeing	Two contrasting suburbs	• What are living conditions like in these two suburbs? • What are the similarities and differences? • How can these differences be mapped? • Why do these differences occur? • How can wellbeing be improved in these suburbs?
	Program to improve wellbeing	• What are the aims of this program? • Why does it exist? • How successful is it in reducing inequalities in wellbeing? • How could it become more successful? • How could it be applied in other regions and places?

Collecting and representing data

Geographers find answers to their questions in many places. They may collect information themselves by taking measurements, taking photographs, making sketches out in the field, or conducting surveys, interviews and questionnaires. This kind of information will generally only be relevant to a particular inquiry and is called **primary data**.

primary data
data for a geographical inquiry that was collected in the field by the geographer conducting the inquiry (e.g. survey data, hand-drawn maps or photographs)

Often, a geographer collects information that supports their inquiry but has not been specifically collected or designed by the geographer for that inquiry. This type of information is called **secondary data**. Secondary data sources include maps, graphs, statistics and websites that someone else has developed. Some of the best secondary sources of information may be photographs from newspapers and magazines, or satellite images from Google Earth.

secondary data
data used for a geographical inquiry that was not collected by the geographer conducting the inquiry (e.g. textbooks, atlases or websites)

Regardless of whether you are using primary or secondary data, your investigation or inquiry into any geographical topic should follow these steps:

1. Collect and record the information you think you will need to answer your key inquiry question.
2. Evaluate this information and data to determine that they are accurate and relevant.
3. Represent your findings in an interesting and appropriate way, such as tables, graphs, maps and sketches (see pages 18–22 for more information on these).

Reliability and bias

Geographers need to evaluate the sources they use for reliability and potential **bias**, as well as usefulness.

bias
prejudice for or against a person or group, especially in a way considered to be unfair

In the case of collecting data from primary sources – such as surveying subjects directly on a topic – the information gathered will be reliable because it is gathered firsthand; but the geographer should keep in mind any potential bias that may be influencing an interview subject's response. An interview that a geographer is conducting on the potential effects of turning local parkland into an industrial park, for instance, would have very different responses from a representative of the industrial developer than from a member of a local wildlife conservation group. It is important for a geographer to evaluate this kind of bias, and remember to ask questions about the motivation behind it.

It is important to evaluate any secondary data for reliability, as well as bias. This is particularly true for information obtained through the internet. Unlike a printed source, such as a book or atlas, it can be very difficult to establish who has written and published information online. Ask yourself:

Source 6 Collecting data can involve making sketches in the field.

- Is the secondary data from a recognised source; for example, a government body, such as the Bureau of Meteorology, or a research agency, such as CSIRO?
- Is the data provided without bias? Or is it presented on a website for a company that might have a vested interest in influencing public opinion?

Before you move to the next stage of your inquiry, it is important to check that you have recorded all your data without errors, and that it is balanced, fair and does not reflect your personal opinions.

KEY SKILL
Questioning & researching

Evaluating the reliability of websites

There is an enormous amount of material available online, but it is important to keep in mind that not all websites provide reliable information. You must be careful to not automatically accept that all information published online is from a reliable source. Websites should be critically evaluated for reliability by following these steps:

Step 1 Find out how old the information is. When was it first published? This will help you decide whether it is useful for your inquiry or not.

Step 2 Find out who published the information. Is it possible they have a bias? You can often find out more about the organisation publishing information by going to their 'home page' or reading the 'about us' section.

Step 3 Look at the domain suffix at the end of the URL, as this will give you an important clue about the origin of the information. For example:

- '.com' is used by commercial organisations, such as online stores
- '.org' is used by non-commercial organisations, such as non-government organisations and welfare groups
- '.gov' is used by government departments
- '.edu' is used by schools and universities
- '.net' is used by commercial organisations
- '.mil' is used by military groups.

Step 4 If you cannot find out when the information was published or who published it, it is probably too unreliable to use in a geographical inquiry. Look for a more reliable source of information.

Practise the skill

1 Common websites used for reference information include the CIA World Factbook, the Australian Bureau of Statistics, National Geographic and the United Nations Development Programme. Using the steps listed above, assess the reliability of the data found on these websites.

Source 7 This webpage offers a range of statistical data about Australia. How can you determine if it contains reliable information?

Being an ethical geographer

When conducting research and obtaining data for an inquiry, it is important for a geographer to be mindful of issues that are likely to raise ethical concerns. This may include being aware of privacy concerns, ensuring anonymity if required, and obtaining informed consent from research participants. Geographers may also need to outline where and how the information obtained will be used or published; and to give special attention to relational data, where geographical references or coordinates might disclose a participant's location or identity.

If a geographer undertakes an inquiry that involves consulting with Aboriginal and Torres Strait Islander communities, they should be aware that there are guidelines and protocols that should be followed. While these are not necessarily rules, it is important to know that Aboriginal and Torres Strait Islander peoples have distinctive regional and cultural identities that require respectful consideration for meaningful consultation. This may involve preferred terminology, cues for cultural communication, and other means for making consultation harmonious and productive. If you are conducting such an inquiry, it is advisable to read some relevant material first, such as the *Aboriginal and Torres Strait Islander Peoples Engagement Toolkit*, which you can find via your obook pro.

Weblink
Aboriginal and Torres Strait Islander Peoples Engagement Toolkit

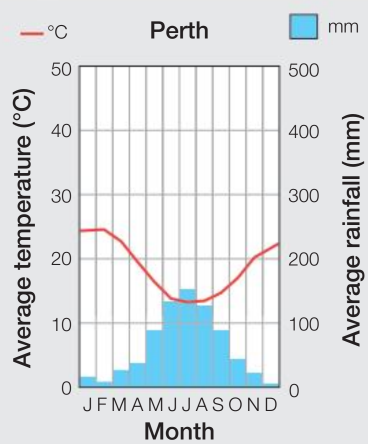
Using graphs to record data

In Years 7 and 8 you will have learnt how to create and interpret simple graphs, such as line graphs, bar graphs, column graphs and pie charts. In Years 9 and 10 you will be working with more complex graphs. Sometimes you will create such graphs yourself, and sometimes you will interpret them to make sense of the information they provide. Regardless, understanding how information is represented in graphs is an important skill to add to your toolkit. Some of these styles of complex graphs are described below.

climate graphs
combination bar and line graphs that show the rainfall and temperature of a given place; also known as climographs

Climate graphs

Climate graphs show the general climate of a place – what the weather is like overall in a certain location – graphing the average monthly temperature and rainfall over the course of year or other set period of time (see Source 8). Climate graphs combine line and column graphs. Temperature is recorded as a line graph and rainfall is recorded as a bar graph.

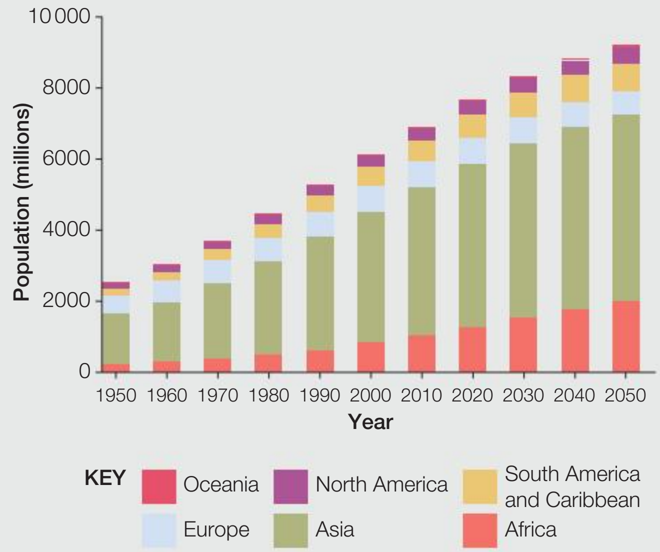


Source 8 A climate graph showing the average monthly temperature and rainfall in Perth

Compound column graphs

A **compound column graph**, sometimes called a stacked column graph or stacked bar graph, is used by geographers to compare parts of something to the whole. They are a more complex type of column graph in which each column is split into sections. The results are then stacked on top of each other, in different colours or different shades of a colour, so that they can be easily compared (see Source 9).

Each column in a compound column graph represents a total, and each different-coloured segment represents a part that makes up that total. The graph in Source 9, for example, shows the total increase in world population – from 1950, projected up to 2050. Of the total increase in population, it is immediately clear that Asia, coloured green, has experienced and will continue to experience the greatest growth. It is also immediately clear that Oceania, coloured dark pink, has experienced very small population growth in comparison. Presenting the information in this way means we can quickly see and compare a number of figures that contribute to a total.

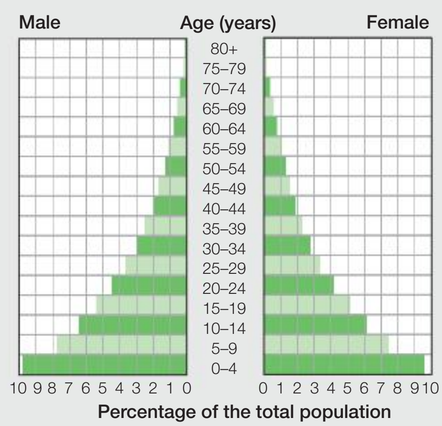


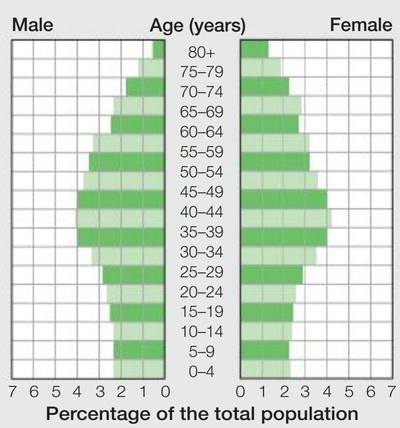
Source 9 A compound column graph showing the increase in world population by region, from 1950, projected up to 2050

Population pyramids

A **population pyramid** is a horizontal bar graph that shows the proportion of males and females in different age groups in a population. Most commonly, they are used to compare the population structures and growth rates of different countries. A pyramid-shaped graph shows a population with a high birth rate – that is, the population in that country is growing – while a graph that tapers off (is narrower) at the younger ages indicates a population that is contracting or declining (see Source 10).

Population pyramids can also help geographers to identify the ways in which the population in a single country is changing over time.





Source 10 Population pyramids showing growing (top) and contracting (bottom) populations

compound column graph
a type of column graph that features two or more sets of related data at the same time so that they can be compared; information provided in each column is subdivided for further comparison

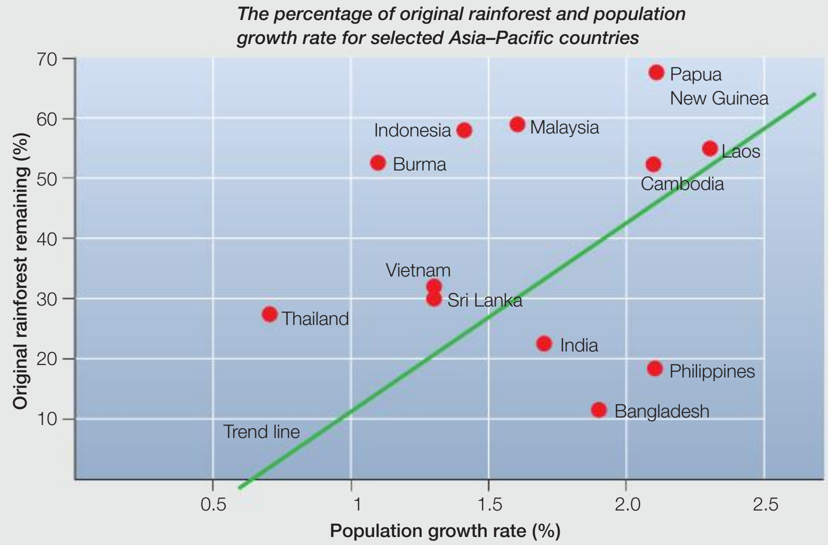
population pyramid
a type of graph that displays the percentage of males and females in a region or population grouped by age

Scatterplots

Maps can be useful for showing a pattern, but they do not really explain that pattern. A special type of graph, called a **scatterplot** is a better way of doing this. A scatterplot compares two sets of data in a visual way so that connections between them can be easily seen.

The scatterplot in Source 11 compares the amount of original rainforest remaining in selected Asia–Pacific countries with their population growth rates. It is essentially testing the theory that rainforests are less endangered in countries where the population is growing rapidly.

In this graph, because most of the countries lie close to the trend line, it is possible to say that there is a relationship between the amount of rainforest in a country and the rate at which its population is growing. Countries with the fastest growing populations have the most rainforest remaining. Those countries that lie apart from the general trend, such as Bangladesh, are called outliers. A geographer studying this graph might use it as the beginning of a geographical inquiry into deforestation in Bangladesh.



Source 11 A scatterplot comparing the amount of original rainforest remaining in selected Asia–Pacific countries with their population growth rates

scatterplot
a type of graph that uses two sets of data by plotting points along two axes, the pattern of which shows their correlation; also called a scattergraph or scattergram

Other graphic representations

In addition to maps and graphs, geographers use a range of other visual representations to communicate information they have collected. These include geographical diagrams, sketches, tables, geographical images and geographical information systems. These ways of presenting information allow geographers to communicate their findings in the most clear and appropriate manner.

Tables

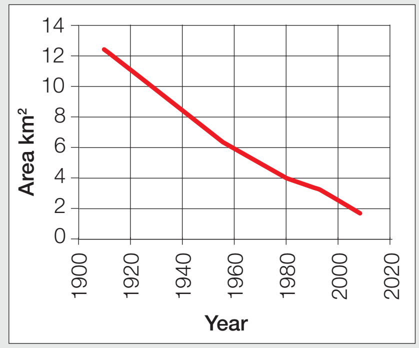
Tables allow geographers to present and compare data by organising it under different headings. Tables can be useful for presenting information over a range of time periods or locations.

Year	Area ('000 square metres)							
	Glacier A	Glacier B	Glacier C	Glacier D	Glacier E	Glacier F	Glacier G	Total
1912	5 676	3	27	5 011	811	372	158	12 058
1953	3 829	0	16	2 156	493	181	0	6 675
1976	2 440	0	0	1 409	209	113	0	4 171
1989	1 900	0	0	1 168	147	90	0	3 305
2003	1 304	0	0	1 025	132	49	0	2 510

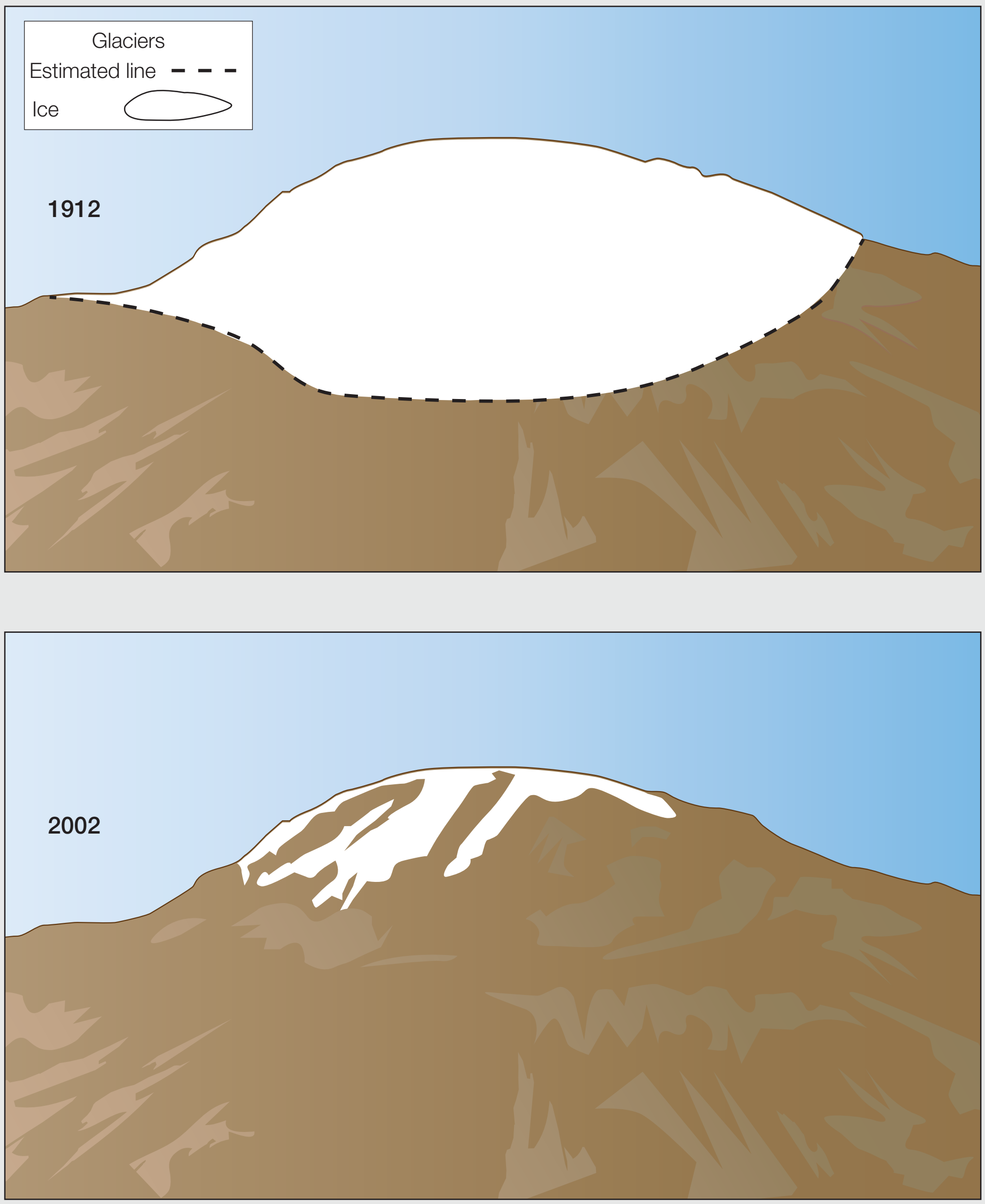
Source 12 This table, based on data gathered by geographers in 2006, shows the change in area of seven glaciers (A–G) on Mount Kilimanjaro, 1912–2003 (in thousands of square metres).

Geographical diagrams

Geographical diagrams are simplified drawings of the real world. They allow geographers to show the features or characteristics of places or things much more directly than describing them in words. Certain interesting or complex processes can also be easily explained and demonstrated in a diagram, and communicated quickly and effectively by simple visual representation.



Rate of snow melts 1900–2020

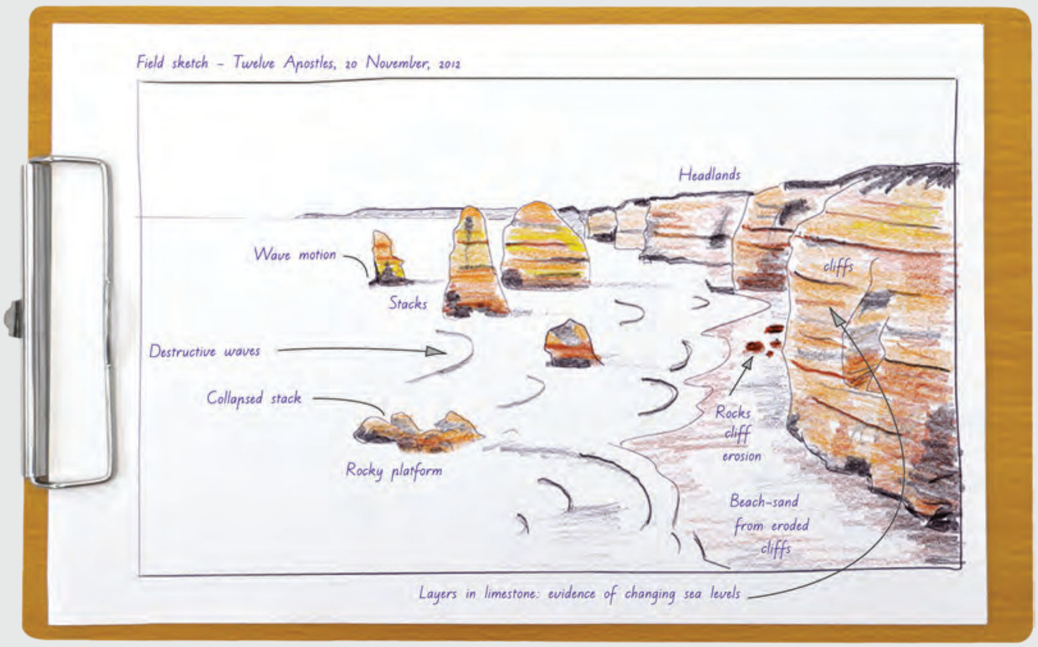


Source 13 This geographical diagram and graph show the dramatic rate at which snow has melted on Mount Kilimanjaro.

geographical sketch
a sketch focusing on those parts of the environment relevant to the current geographical inquiry

Geographical sketches

A **geographical sketch** can be an extremely useful way of collecting information and presenting it in a straightforward and immediate way. Such sketches are often completed in the field (where they are known as field sketches), but may also be created from photographs. A geographer studying the role of waves in the erosion of a coastline would sketch the rocks and landforms at a beach, while another geographer studying tourism at the same beach would sketch the buildings and roads. Sketches allow the geographer to simplify information to make it easier to understand.



Source 14 Field sketches are useful for capturing information quickly and directly.

geographic information system (GIS)
a software application designed to capture, store, manipulate, analyse, manage and present all kinds of geographical information

Geographical information systems

A **geographic information system (GIS)** encompasses collecting geospatial data – such as the real-world distance between landmarks, water depth, the height and width of buildings, and the layout of streets and suburbs – and presenting it through digital means. Smartphone apps such as Google Maps and Google Earth allow geographers to navigate through the real world, using GIS data. GISs have many different applications, and are used for planning, telecommunications, transport and logistics, to name just a few.

Source 15 GISs gather and present real-world geographical data using computer technology. Today, a GIS can be found on almost every smartphone, in the form of apps such as Google Maps and Google Earth.

Check your learning
Topic 1.3

1.4 Interpreting and analysing geographical data and information

Interpreting geographical images

Geographical images are taken to depict and present a place or particular feature of the landscape for the purpose of demonstrating an aspect that is being studied. This is quite different from taking photos of you and your friends for fun, or even from taking an attractive picture of a landscape. Whether you take a geographical image during a fieldwork study, or collect them from researching online, you need to develop the skill of interpreting them.

Landscapes can be photographed from several different angles, depending on the position of the camera at the time the photograph was taken. Each angle makes some features of the landscape easier to see and interpret than other features, so you need to carefully consider the angle at which the photograph has been taken (see Source 16).

GROUND LEVEL

The camera is held by someone at the same level as the landscape being photographed. This angle allows you to clearly see the height of any object and the detail in vertical surfaces. However, objects in the picture can hide the landscape behind them. Ground level is not the most effective method when investigating something like the Great Barrier Reef, as it is underwater.

OBLIQUE AERIAL

The camera is positioned above the landscape and angled towards the scene being photographed. This angle allows you to see both the foreground and the background of the scene. You can also see both the height of an object and its width or area. However, objects in the background seem much smaller than those in the foreground.

VERTICAL AERIAL

The camera is positioned directly above the landscape. This vertical (or plan) view allows you to see the extent of any feature. However, it is difficult to judge the height of a landscape. In this image, for example, it is difficult to judge the depth of the water.

Source 16 Different types of geographical images

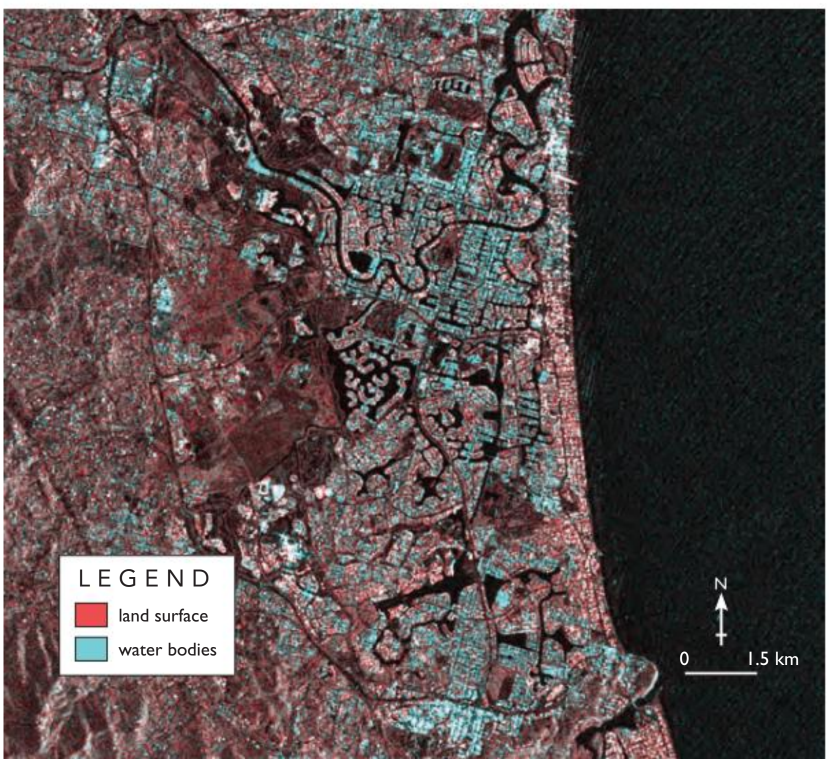
satellite image
an image of a place taken from satellites orbiting above the Earth's surface

false colour image
an image that depicts an object or area in colours that differ from those seen in nature; false colour images use colours that are different or more exaggerated than those shown in standard photographs, in order to make the thing being shown easier to interpret

Analysing satellite images

A **satellite image** is taken from space. It allows us to see large areas of the Earth's surface. These images are often used to investigate patterns, such as the shape of the reef, its position relative to land, and the distribution of small reef shapes. It is difficult, however, to see smaller features of the environment.

Source 17 This satellite image of the Great Barrier Reef was captured by NASA.



Source 18 This false colour image was captured by a satellite. It uses blue and red to show the contrast between water bodies and the land surface in the Gold Coast, south-east Queensland.

Analysing false colour images

You may have heard the terms '**false colour image**' or 'false colour map' before. The term 'false colour' does not mean the colours used are incorrect; rather, it means that different colours have been used to make the image or map easier to interpret.

The colours used in a false colour image can look quite unnatural (see Source 18). This is because the colours of the natural features are too similar to demonstrate a particular point or aspect. If, for example, you are trying to show where a muddy brown river meets a brown-coloured riverbank – which has brown rocks and some brownish shrubs – you might decide to use false colour to clearly show where the different elements are. You may make the shrub areas bright green, the river neon yellow and the rocks bright red, leaving just the riverbank brown.

If you are looking at a false colour map, you should examine the accompanying legend to interpret the colours used.

Analysing maps

One of the most useful tools that geographers use to represent information is a **map**. Maps are drawn in the **plan view** because this ensures the scale will be the same across the entire area. If maps were drawn from an angle, some parts of the mapped area would look distorted and so it would not be an accurate representation of the area. When properly used, maps can reveal a great deal about our planet and the ways in which we use it.

A piece of paper only shows two dimensions: width and length. The Earth's surface, however, has a third dimension: height. Cartographers (map makers) use a variety of methods to show this third dimension, including topographic maps, cross-sections and digital maps.

There are a range of different maps and graphic representations you will analyse and create throughout the study of geography. A short explanation of some complex maps and graphic representations is provided in this topic.

map
a simplified plan of an area shown from directly above

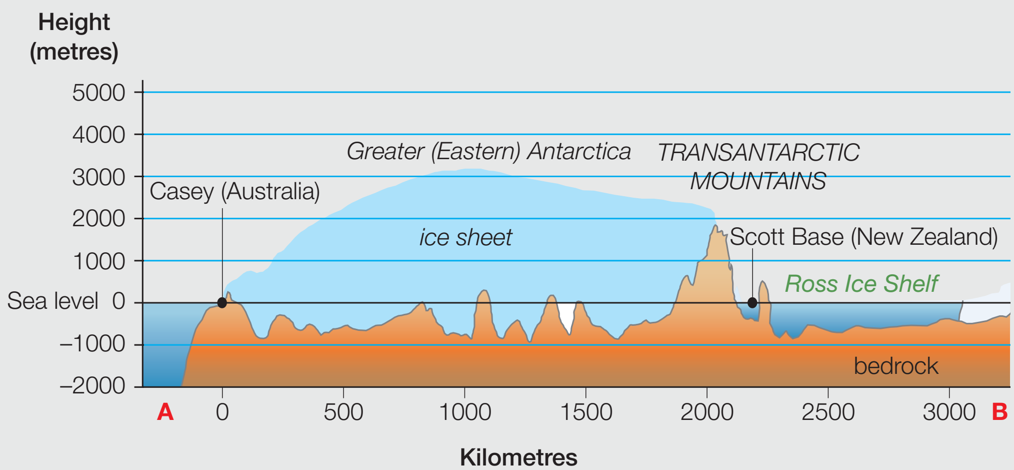
plan view
a way of showing something as if the viewer is looking down on it from above; a bird's-eye view

Cross-sections

Unlike a map, which shows a landscape in plan view, a cross-section provides a profile (side) view of a landscape. This allows geographers to see the **relief** of the land from side-on. Interpreting cross-sections can help further our understanding of how the relief of the land influences the way in which it is used (for example, where people choose to live or where food is grown). Cross-sections are made using **contour lines** (see the key skill box on the next page).

relief
the variations in elevation (height) of areas on the Earth's surface

contour lines
lines drawn on a map that connect points of the same height to show the height and steepness of land



Source 19 This cross-section of Antarctica helps geographers understand the size of the ice sheets and the size of the bedrock underneath them, and also to see the different areas where ice is thinning.

KEY SKILL
Interpreting & analysing

Key skill worksheet
Interpreting & analysing: Drawing a cross-section using contour lines

Drawing a cross-section using contour lines

To create a cross-section from a topographic map, follow these steps:

Step 1 Identify the cross-section by finding two points on the map to form the outer edges.

Step 2 Line up the straight edge of a plain piece of paper across the map so that it covers the two points you identified in step 1. Mark these two points as A and B.

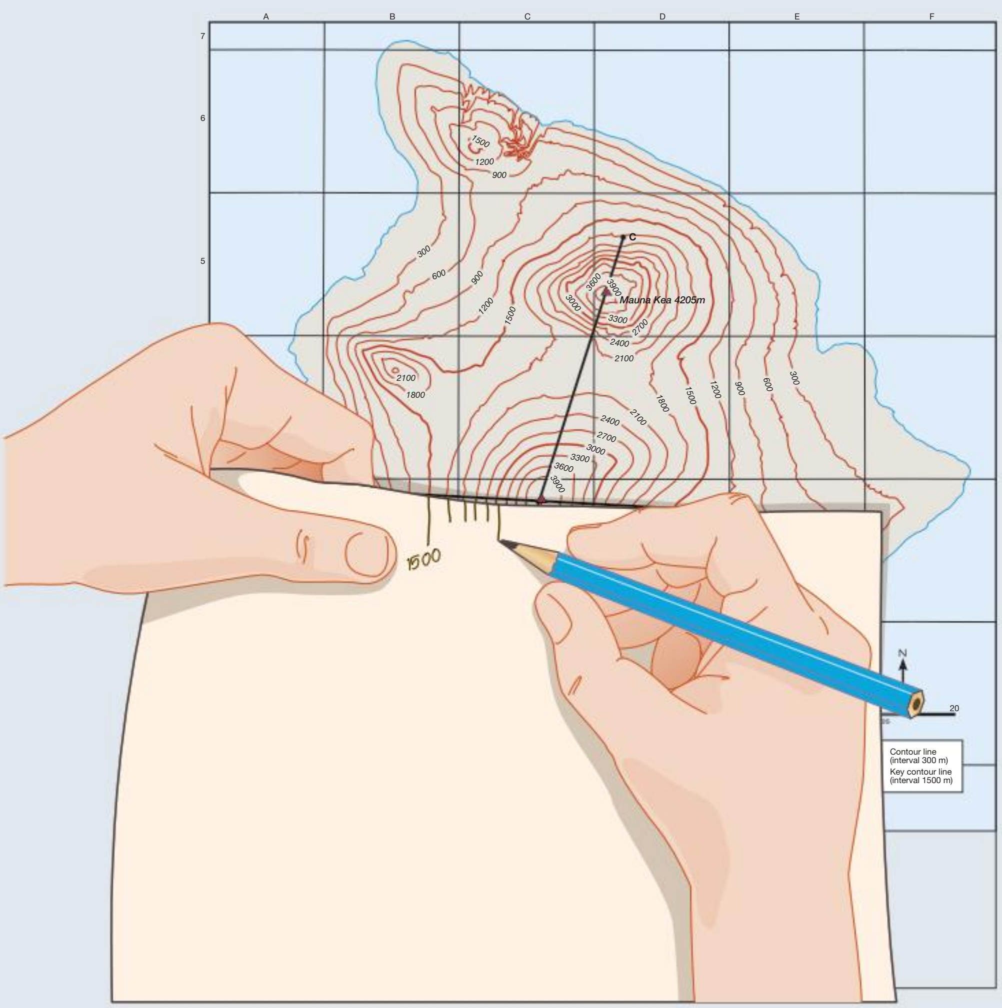
Step 3 Make small marks on your paper where each contour line meets it and write the height of the contour.

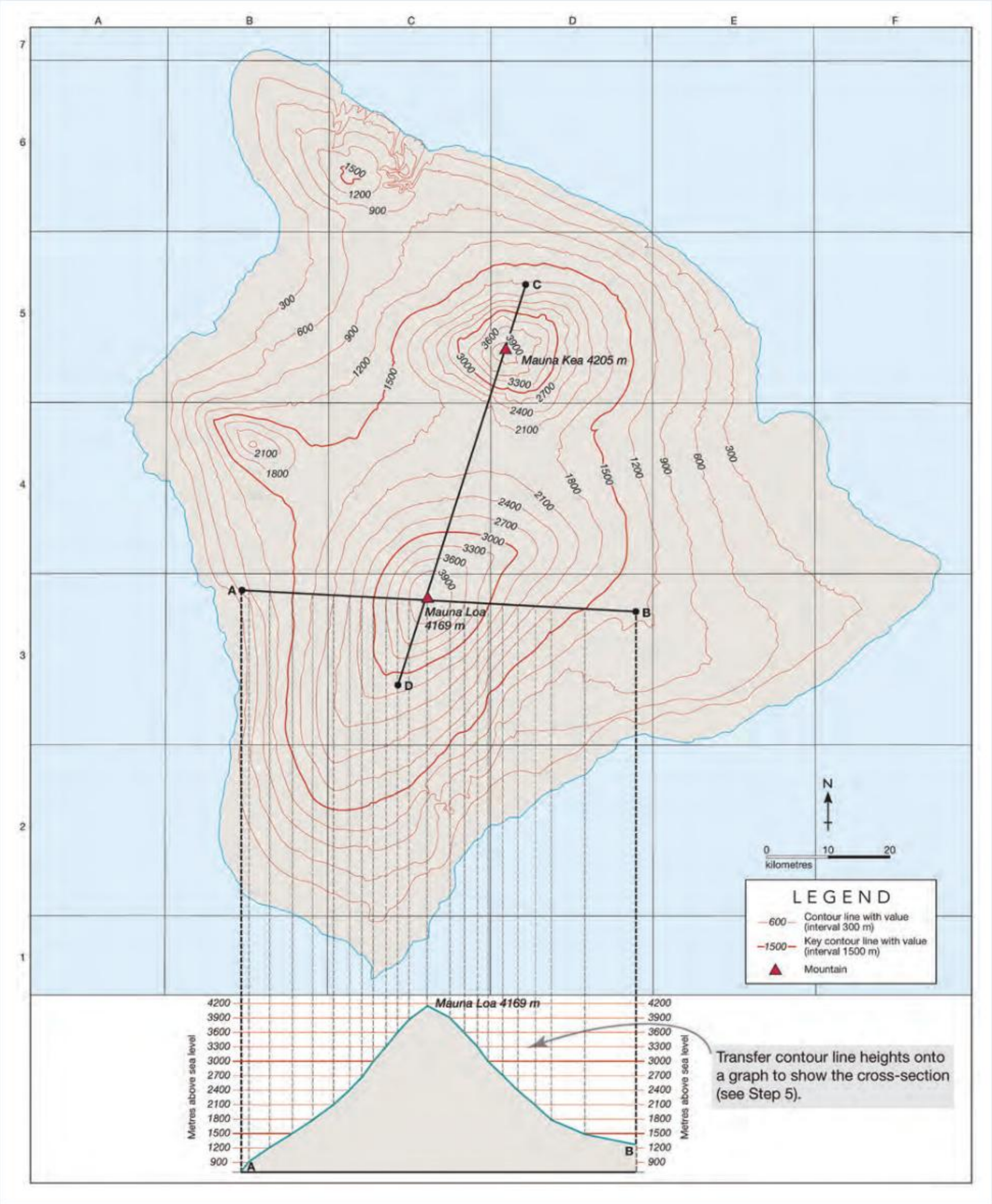
Step 4 On another piece of paper, draw a set of axes for your cross-section. The horizontal axis should be the same width as the distance between points A and B on the map. The vertical scale should begin below the lowest point on your cross-section and extend above the highest point.

Step 5 Lie the edge of your first piece of paper along the newly created horizontal axis. For each contour height shown, add a dot onto your cross-section at the correct height according to the vertical scale. Join these dots in a smooth line.

Step 6 Lightly shade the area below the line to show that it is solid land. Label both axes and give your cross-section a title.

To practise this skill, log onto your obook pro and complete the key skill worksheet: Drawing a cross-section using contour lines.





Source 20 Creating a cross-section from a topographic map of Hawaii

Topographic maps

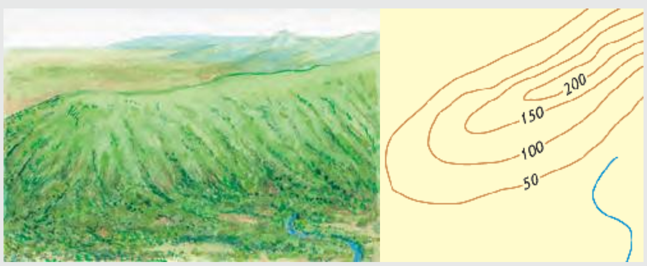
Topographic maps are one of a geographer's most useful tools. They show the shape of the land (such as the shapes formed by hills, valleys and ridges) through the use of contour lines, which join together all places of an equal height above sea level. By learning to interpret the contour patterns made by these lines, you can work out the shape and height of the land that has been mapped (see Source 21). Also, because most topographic maps are drawn of a small region, they can show that region in great detail – right down to individual buildings and rocks.

Source 21 Common contour patterns

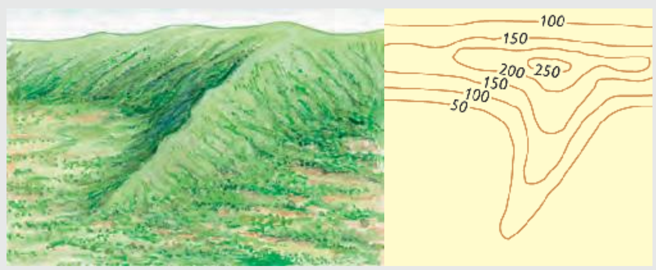
ROUND HILL OR VOLCANO

VALLEY

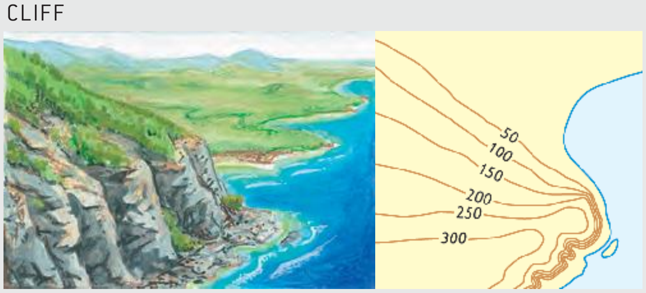
RIDGE



SPUR



CLIFF



PLATEAU

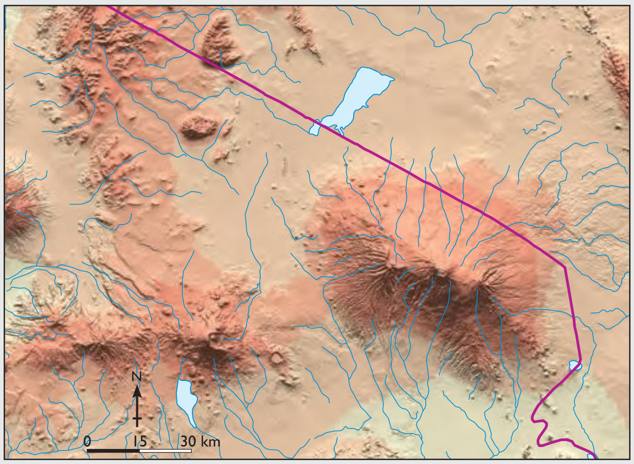
topographic maps
types of maps that show the shape of the land, its relief and landforms

Digital maps and elevation models

There are about 6000 human-made satellites orbiting the Earth. Many of these collect digital data about the shape and height of the land and transmit it back to computers on the ground. This data is then interpreted, and can be used to draw maps.

Cartographers can use computer programs to add colours to these digital maps, to highlight certain aspects of the environment. In Source 22, for example, the land has been shaded according to its height. The data can also be manipulated in other ways. In Source 23 it has been used to create a side view of the landform being mapped. This type of illustration is known as a **digital elevation model (DEM)**.

digital elevation model (DEM)
a topographic illustration (or digital model) that uses a range of data to generate a 3D representation of the Earth's surface



Source 22 In this digital map of the Mount Kilimanjaro region, land has been shaded according to its height above sea level. Shadows have also been added to help map users understand the shape and height of the land.

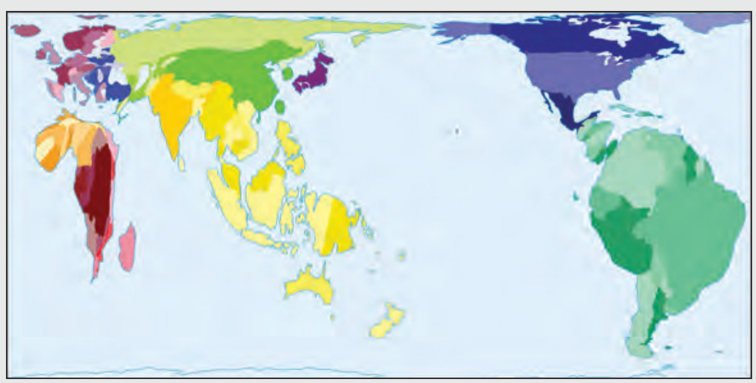
Source 23 This is a digital elevation model of Mount Kilimanjaro and the surrounding area. The data was collected by a NASA space shuttle and an orbiting satellite.

cartogram
a type of map that is distorted to show a representation of statistical data (e.g. access to water, rates of obesity, etc.), rather than land area

Cartograms

You will have already seen **cartograms** in the course of your geography studies. These maps look distorted and have areas that appear thinner or more enlarged than they would normally be, depending on what they are showing. Cartograms are sometimes called 'value by area' maps, which means the spaces on the maps are altered to show a representation of a value rather than land area.

There are various software programs available that can generate cartograms.



Source 24 This cartogram shows the Earth's fresh water resources. The distortion shows that South America has large supplies of fresh water, while Africa has very little.

Identifying patterns and relationships

An important skill that you need to develop in the study of geography is that of identifying patterns and relationships in data. Geographers look for order, diversity, trends, patterns, anomalies and relationships in their information. It often helps to classify information by sorting it into groups.

Using methods and models to identify trends, patterns and relationships

There are a number of methods and models that geographers use to help identify trends, patterns and relationships in data. These include:

- the SHEEPT method
- the PQE method.

The SHEEPT method

SHEEPT is a tool used by geographers to help them consider six factors that may contribute to the patterns identified in their data (see Source 25). When you are examining issues related to your inquiry, it is useful to think about them in terms of these factors and rank them in order of importance. This will help you reach your conclusions.

S	Social – factors relating to culture and people
H	Historical – factors relating to past events
E	Environmental – factors relating to the natural environment (including climate, landforms and vegetation)
E	Economic – factors relating to the earning or spending of money (including income earned from industry and tourism and land use for food and fibre production)
P	Political – factors relating to governments (including laws, regulations and policies)
T	Technological – factors relating to the availability and use of different types of technology (including the development of greener technologies, alternative energy sources and GIS)

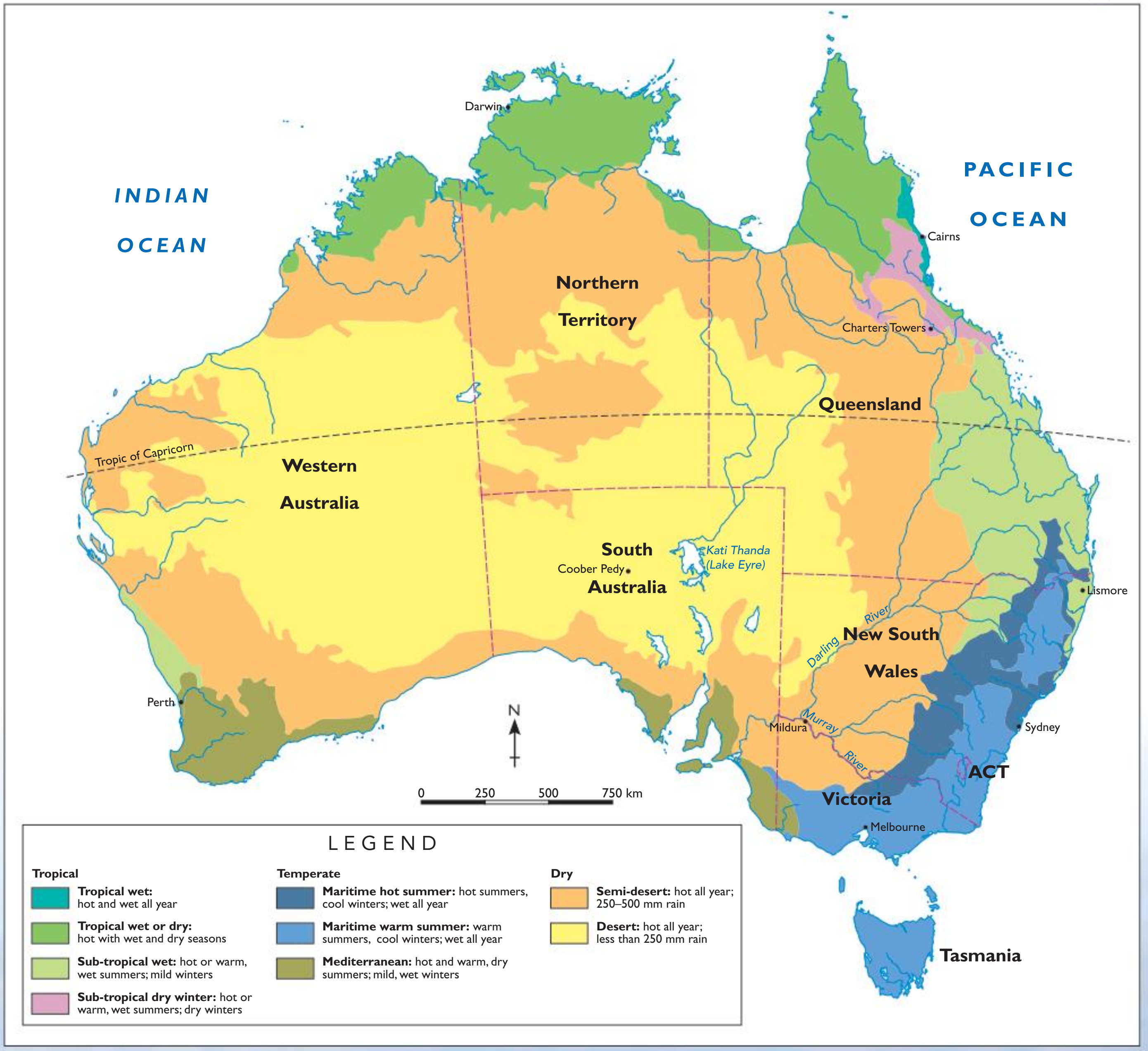
Source 25 The SHEEPT method

The PQE method

PQE is a tool used by geographers to describe the data and information they have gathered (particularly on maps) and to look for patterns in this data. The letters 'PQE' stand for 'pattern', 'quantify' and 'exceptions'.

Source 27 on the next page is a sample of writing that uses the PQE method to describe the distribution of climate zones in Australia (as shown below in Source 26). Read the highlighted sections closely. These are sentence starters that can be used to structure your response whenever you are using the PQE method.

AUSTRALIA: CLIMATE ZONES



Source 26

Source: Oxford University Press

If you can identify the type of map that you are looking at, make sure you name it.

The uneven pattern of this choropleth map shows that Australia is dominated by a dry climate in the central area, with desert and semi-desert climate zones.

The evidence that quantifies this pattern is the far-reaching location of semi-desert and desert climate zones, which spans most of the central continent and impacts on Western Australia, the Northern Territory, South Australia, Queensland, New South Wales and northern Victoria. In other words, this pattern impacts on every state and territory in Australia except Tasmania and the Australian Capital Territory.

The exception to this pattern is the diverse climate zones around Australia's coast. For example, the south-eastern areas of Tasmania, Victoria and New South Wales experience maritime climates, whereas parts of the Western Australian coast experience a Mediterranean climate. Far-north Western Australia and Northern Territory are different again, with tropical wet and dry climates. Queensland, where the Great Barrier Reef is located, experiences its own range of climates in just one state.

Pattern – in this step, you need to give a general overview of any patterns you may identify.

Quantify – in this step, you need to add specific and accurate information to define and explain the patterns.

Exception – in this step, you need to identify anything that does not fit your patterns.

Source 27 PQE example

Distinguishing between qualitative and quantitative data

qualitative data
information that focuses on quality rather than quantity; as such, it is usually someone's opinion and may differ from person to person

quantitative data
any information that can be recorded as numbers (e.g. 'the literacy rate is India is 74 per cent')

Primary and secondary data provide either **qualitative data** or **quantitative data** (see Source 28). Good geographical inquiries will always be based on a combination of primary and secondary data that is both quantitative and qualitative. Even though qualitative data is an important part of any geographical inquiry, quantitative data is considered to be more valuable because it is less open to personal interpretations and can be more accurately represented in graphs and charts.

It is also important to make sure that you record all your data without errors, and that it is balanced and fair, and is not influenced by your personal opinion.

Source 28

The PQE method uses mainly qualitative data.	Examples of qualitative data	The SHEEPT method uses qualitative and quantitative data.	Examples of quantitative data
	• climate and temperature statistics • tourist numbers • population figures • types and amounts of food grown • forest clearance rates • numbers of people killed in natural disasters		• opinions • points of view • personal stories • likes and dislikes • feelings

Check your learning
Topic 1.4

1.5 Concluding and decision making

The title of my geographical inquiry is:						
The geographical inquiry I set out to investigate:						
GENERAL POINTS	My rating					Comments
	1	2	3	4	5	
I was able to complete all stages of my geographical inquiry.						
I was able to answer all my key inquiry questions.						
I was able to plan my inquiry effectively.						
My maps, graphs, tables and diagrams were clear and accurate.						
I was able to analyse my data and reach a conclusion.						
I was able to communicate my findings in an interesting and appropriate way.						
AREAS OF STRENGTH						Comments
My areas of strength are:						
I'm getting much better at:						
AREAS NEEDING IMPROVEMENT						Comments
The part I found most difficult was:						
I need the most help with:						
IMPORTANT ISSUES HIGHLIGHTED BY MY INQUIRY						Comments
The most important thing I learnt from my inquiry was:						
This issue is important to me because:						
This issue is important to my community/ country/world because:						

Source 29 A self-evaluation checklist is a very useful way of reflecting on the findings of your geographical inquiry.

Once geographers have researched, collected and analysed geographical data, they start to think about what it means for people, places and environments. They reflect on their findings and make conclusions about who or what has been affected by a geographical challenge, and the level of impact.

Reflecting

Reflecting involves looking at what you have learnt, thinking about how it was learnt, and asking critical questions about the way your geographical inquiry was conducted. Reflecting is an essential skill, as it allows you to learn important lessons from any mistakes that you have made, and apply these lessons in your next geographical inquiry.

There are several ways to reflect on your work. One of the best methods to help you reflect is to complete a self-evaluation checklist (see Source 29).

Responding

As well as reflecting on the ways in which you conducted your inquiry, you also need to respond to what you found out. Based on what you have found, you should recommend some action to address your findings.

Geographers often use the information gathered and analysed in their inquiry for a specific purpose. This could be to report on an issue and educate people, to raise awareness of a potential problem, or to lobby local, state or federal government about a particular concern. This can be done in various ways – from presenting official reports or studies, to using social media and starting an online petition. The work you do as a geographer can contribute to your environment, and responding and acting is an important part of this work.

If the results of your investigation lead you to recommend a plan of action, be sure to evaluate your own work. Ask the tough questions that another person might ask when looking at your plan. For example:

- Is the plan of action environmentally sustainable? Does it impact in a negative way on the natural environment and natural processes?
- Does the plan bring more economic benefits than it costs? Is it affordable in both the short term and the long term?
- Does everyone affected by the plan benefit from its outcomes, or just a few people?

Check your learning
Topic 1.5

Source 30 Remember to evaluate any strategy you recommend by weighing up its strengths and weaknesses.

1.6 Communicating

A key skill in the study of geography is the ability to communicate your findings clearly and effectively. There are several ways of doing this, and you should select the method that best suits your audience and purpose:

- *written methods*, such as essays, reports or other text-based presentations
- *oral methods*, such as oral reports, presentations, discussions and debates
- *graphic methods*, such as maps, graphs, and diagrams
- *visual methods*, such as annotated visual displays (AVDs), photographs, sketches and posters
- *digital methods*, such as Wikis, GISs, databases, 3D models and simulations, and multimedia presentations.

If you are gathering together fieldwork that can not easily be transferred into a digital format, a good tool for communication is an annotated visual display (AVD). An AVD combines written text with visual images (such as photographs or field sketches) and other graphic representations (such as maps, graphs, tables, sketches and diagrams).

Whatever format you choose, remember to include captions for all pieces of visual information and acknowledge your sources.

Additional resource
Using cognitive verbs

Source 31 Using PowerPoint is a good way of organising and presenting your findings.

KEY SKILL
Communicating

Planning, creating and delivering a PowerPoint presentation

Using PowerPoint is a good way of organising and presenting your findings. You may have found doing oral presentations a little daunting in the past, but following these steps will prepare you to give a PowerPoint presentation with confidence.

PowerPoint allows you to embed images, and provides a structure for outlining your key points in a clear and concise way. You can then talk through your presentation using the slides to both prompt and support you. Using visual aids captures your audience's attention and makes your presentation a lot more informative, too.

Follow these simple steps and tips when planning, creating and delivering the findings of a geographical inquiry.

Plan your presentation

Step 1 Gather the findings of the research you have carried out as part of your geographical inquiry, including the sources you have used, the results of any surveys or interviews, and any relevant images, graphs, maps or photographs.

Step 2 Plan your presentation carefully so it has a clear beginning, middle and end.

Step 3 Know the requirements of your presentation. Your teacher will tell you how long your presentation is expected to be and what key points need to be covered. It is important that you plan your presentation in line with these requirements. For example, if you are required to talk for 10 minutes, you might like to present 10 PowerPoint slides and talk about each one for around a minute.

Create your presentation

Step 4 It is time to create your slides. Here are some tips to help you create a clear and visually engaging PowerPoint presentation:

- Present the content in clear, concise bullet-point form, *not* huge slabs of information in paragraph form. You do not need to put all your findings up on the screen.
- Only include visuals that relate to the content on that particular slide.
- Use a design that ensures your audience can clearly see and read the slides. Think about colours, font size and readability.

Step 5 Carefully plan what you are going to talk about during each slide, and then record this plan on cue cards that you can refer to throughout your presentation.

Step 6 Practise your presentation. You can do this on your own, or in front of a friend or family member.

Deliver your presentation

Step 7 Prior to class, check that everything is working as it should and that the screen you are projecting onto is ready and clearly visible to the audience. If you are using any videos, check that the speakers are working.

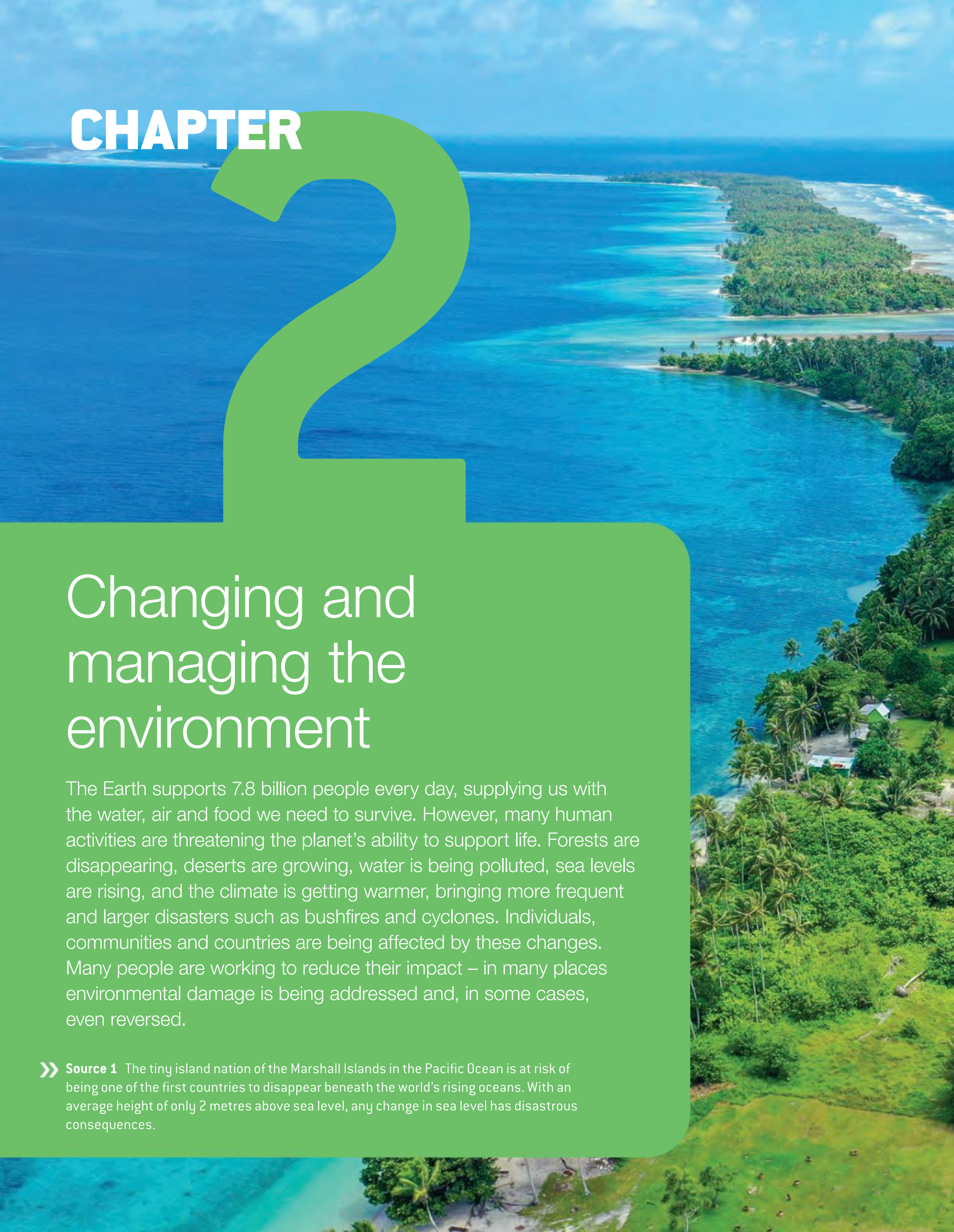
Step 8 Deliver your presentation by speaking clearly and making eye contact with your audience.

Step 9 Invite the audience to ask questions. If you do not know the answer, or you are unsure, do not just make something up on the spot. You are better off being honest and offering to answer the question at a later stage, once you have researched the answer.

Practise the skill

1 Plan, **create** and deliver a PowerPoint presentation on a geographical issue that you find interesting. Ensure that you include some interesting visual elements, such as photographs or graphs, as well as your key points.

Check your learning
Topic 1.6



CHAPTER 2

Changing and managing the environment

The Earth supports 7.8 billion people every day, supplying us with the water, air and food we need to survive. However, many human activities are threatening the planet's ability to support life. Forests are disappearing, deserts are growing, water is being polluted, sea levels are rising, and the climate is getting warmer, bringing more frequent and larger disasters such as bushfires and cyclones. Individuals, communities and countries are being affected by these changes. Many people are working to reduce their impact – in many places environmental damage is being addressed and, in some cases, even reversed.

Source 1 The tiny island nation of the Marshall Islands in the Pacific Ocean is at risk of being one of the first countries to disappear beneath the world's rising oceans. With an average height of only 2 metres above sea level, any change in sea level has disastrous consequences.

2A
What is environmental change?

2B
What factors influence environmental change?

2C
How are we responding to environmental changes?

2.1 Understanding environmental change

Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» understand the human-induced changes that challenge the sustainability of places and environments.

We live in a changing world. Today, less than a quarter of the Earth's land surface can still be considered wild. The rest has been transformed in a variety of ways by human activities, including:

- removing natural tree cover to use the land for industry, agriculture and urban development
- damming and diverting rivers to produce electricity and more reliable sources of water
- extracting minerals and energy sources from beneath the Earth's surface
- polluting the land, air and water with waste.

These changes have had dire consequences for many **ecosystems** and species of plants and animals that we share the planet with. Tens of thousands of species are becoming extinct each year – largely as a result of the loss of natural habitat and introduced species, but also due to **pollution** and the changes brought about by **climate change**. There are three main categories of environmental change: changes to the land, changes to the atmosphere and changes to water.

ecosystems
complex communities made up of living organisms that interact with each other and with their environment; an abbreviation of 'ecological system'

pollution
any substance released into the environment that causes damage

climate change
a change in global or regional climate patterns; in particular, a change apparent from the mid to late twentieth century onwards and attributed largely to the increased levels of atmospheric carbon dioxide produced by the use of fossil fuels

erosion
the wearing away of the Earth's surface by water, wind and ice

Changes to the land

As the human population has increased over the past two centuries, cities, towns and farms have spread rapidly across the Earth's surface. This process has greatly altered the soils and plants. Perhaps the greatest changes have been to the world's forests. Vast areas have been cleared to make way for farms, mines and cities, and the forests' resources (such as wood from trees) have been used for energy and building materials. Less than one-quarter of the world's original forest cover remains intact today, and the small amount that remains is under increasing pressure from expanding populations in Africa, Asia and South America. Fertile soil, too, is a declining resource, as overuse has led to a loss of fertility, soil **erosion** and increased salt in many regions.

Source 1 A gigantic dust storm approaches Khartoum, the capital city of Sudan. Dust storms such as these are becoming more frequent. They are the result of changes made to the land, including over-farming and the removal of natural land cover (such as trees and other vegetation).

Quiz me!
A quick quiz on understanding environmental change

Key skill worksheet
Questioning & researching: Conducting geographical research

Changes to the atmosphere

The Earth is surrounded by a combination of different gases known as the **atmosphere**. These gases provide many of the requirements for life on Earth as we know it, including oxygen and fresh water. The atmosphere also protects the Earth (and everything on it) from the freezing cold conditions and dangerous ultraviolet rays of space. Despite the importance of the atmosphere to sustaining life on Earth, it has been used as a dumping ground for many gases and chemicals produced by human activities. The burning of **fossil fuels** – such as coal for transport, electricity generation and industry – has changed the natural levels of certain gases in the atmosphere. In addition to this, many airborne chemicals have been released through the production of goods and services that we use every day, such as steel and oil. In some cases, the chemicals released into the atmosphere have brought about a partial breakdown in the layer of gases – known as the **ozone layer** – that shields us from ultraviolet light. They are also responsible for an increase in the acidity of rain, and a warming of the atmosphere leading to global changes in our climate.

atmosphere
all of the gases that surround the Earth

fossil fuels
fuels made from the decomposed (fossilised) remains of plants and animals that lived millions of years ago (e.g. coal, oil, gas)

ozone layer
a layer of gases, with a large proportion of ozone, high in the atmosphere that protects the Earth from harmful amounts of the sun's rays

Changes to water

Fresh water is vital to the survival of all life on Earth. Water is used by humans in countless ways. We use it for drinking, washing, transport, firefighting, producing electricity, mining, fishing and recreation, as well as a host of other things. Above all, however, we rely on fresh water for producing the food we eat. About 70 per cent of the total water taken from rivers, streams and underground water sources is used to irrigate (water) crops and provide water for farm animals. The diversion and damming of rivers to provide a reliable supply of water for farmers and for city-dwellers causes water shortages in other places around the world.

Changes made by humans to the natural water supply are having serious impacts on the natural environment. Some freshwater supplies are now becoming so polluted that they are undrinkable, leading to problems for the animals, birds, fish and plants that also rely on the water to survive.

Source 2 The Glen Canyon Dam in the Arizona Desert, United States, provides water and electricity to the nearby town of Page. Around the world, human changes to water supplies are having serious impacts on the natural environment.

2.1 Check your learning

Comprehend

1 **Summarise** how human activities have affected the land.

2 **Explain** why human changes to the environment have increased over the past 200 years.

Analyse

3 **Examine** the image of the Glen Canyon Dam in Source 2. List all of the human impacts on this environment that you can see.

4 Sources 1 and 2 show the effects of environmental changes in desert areas. What factors do you think make these areas particularly vulnerable to the effects of human activities? Give reasons for your answer.

Apply

5 List all of the environmental changes mentioned on these pages.
   a Rank them from the one you know the most about to the one you know the least about.
   b For the three at the bottom of your list (which you know least about), **create** one inquiry question you would like answered before you have finished this unit.
   c Share your three questions with the class.

6 Advances in technology and engineering have enabled larger communities to live in desert areas. **Discuss** the arguments for and against this development, and give your opinion.

2.2 Degrading the land

Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» explain the nature of human-induced land degradation and the challenges it poses.

The loss of productivity and the decline in the fertility of land-based environments as a result of human activities is referred to as **land degradation**. Land degradation currently affects about one-quarter of the world's total land area and about 38 per cent of the world's farmed areas. Up to 3 billion people, including many Australians, are directly affected by land degradation. It is also contributing to climate change – as cleared, degraded land stores much less carbon than natural land cover, such as **rainforest**. The three main types of land degradation are soil degradation, soil erosion and ecosystem decline.

land degradation
the loss of productivity and the decline in the fertility of land-based environments as a result of human activities

rainforest
a dense forest area found in tropical regions, with warm temperatures and heavy rainfall

salinity
a measure of the amount of salt present in the soil

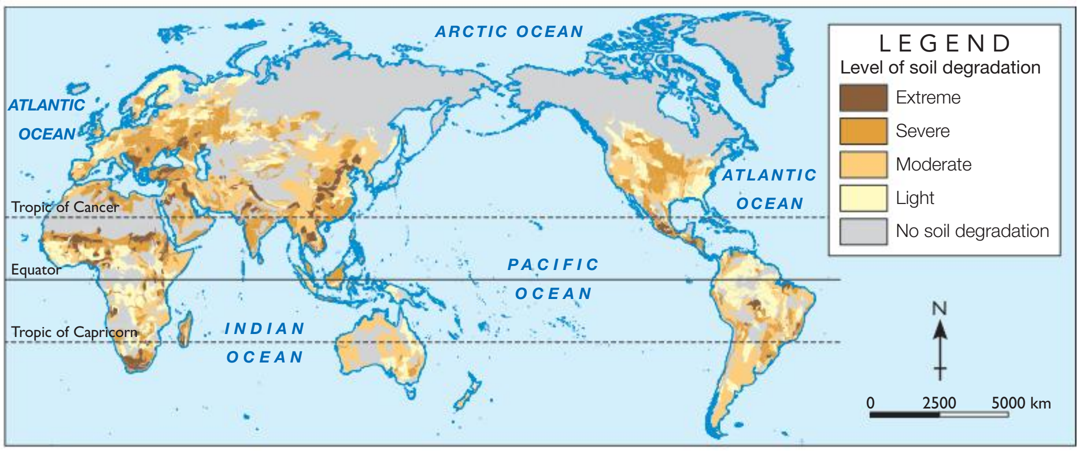
Map it!
World: Soil degradation

Photo for sketching
Degraded land in Tanzania

Soil degradation

Soil degradation refers to the loss of fertility of soil, often due to a chemical change. Soil can degrade in a few ways: by becoming compacted by large machinery and hard-hooved animals, by becoming acidic due to a build-up of fertiliser, or from a loss of soil nutrients caused by farming the land too intensively. Soil degradation is a global problem that affects every permanently inhabited continent (see Source 3). One of the greatest problems for Australia is the build-up of salt – called **salinity** – in the topsoil.

WORLD: SOIL DEGRADATION



Source 3 Source: Oxford University Press

Soil erosion

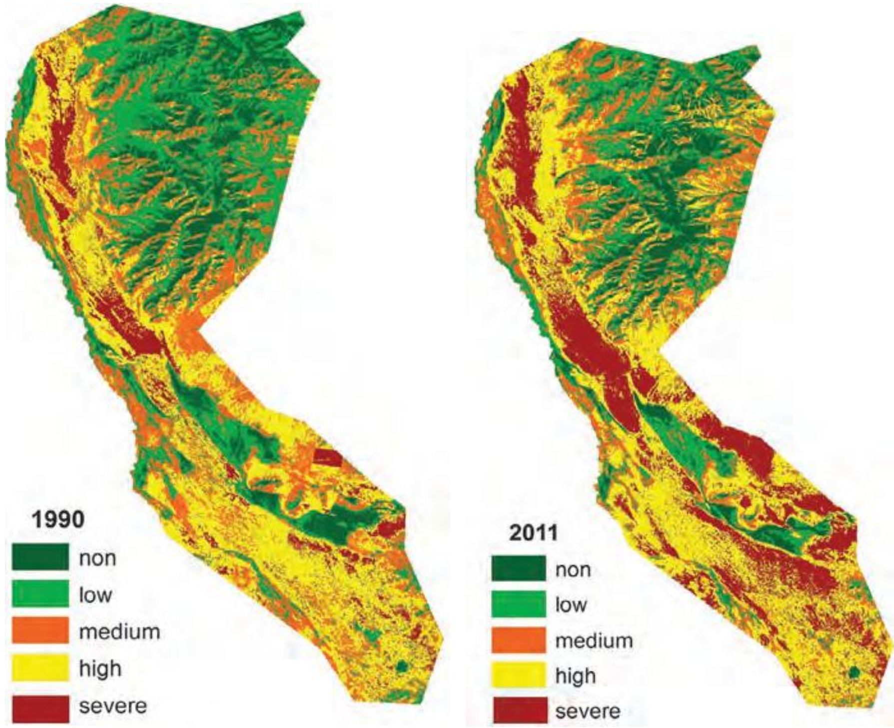
Soil erosion is when soil is gradually worn away by natural phenomena such as rivers, rain, waves, glaciers and the wind. Human activities – particularly clearing trees for farming – accelerate erosion in many places. Cleared land is more vulnerable to wind erosion, gully erosion (water scouring away the land) and sheet erosion (the loss of topsoil over a large area). Source 4 shows the impact on soil of introduced animals, such as goats.

Source 4 This landscape in Tanzania has become heavily eroded due to overgrazing by goats, which has exposed the fragile soils to heavy rain.

Ecosystem decline

As well as soils, the natural ecosystems of an area, such as forests and streams, can become degraded. This may be through a loss of vegetation, the invasion of alien plant and animal pests, or a decline in the quality of streams and rivers. When coupled with a decline in soil quality, a degradation of ecosystems can lead to **desertification** – particularly in areas close to existing deserts.

Source 5 shows an area of Mongolia that is becoming desertified due to changes in rainfall patterns and farming practices. These images were obtained from remote sensors on satellites that measure the health of vegetation. Remote sensing is an important spatial technology used by geographers to assess change.



Source 5 These remote sensing images of Hogno Khaan Nature Reserve, Mongolia, in 1990 and 2011 show the areas of desertification, ranging from dark green 'non' areas, where no desertification has occurred, through to the red areas of severe desertification.

desertification
the transformation of fertile land into relatively dry desert

2.2 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 In your own words, **define** 'land degradation'.
2 Why is land degradation a concern for many people around the world?

Analyse

3 **Examine** Source 3.
  a Identify the regions of the world that experience extreme soil degradation.
  b Use the SHEEPT model (see page 30 of 'The geography toolkit') to explain why these areas experience extreme soil degradation.
  c Compare Australia's pattern of soil degradation with the levels of soil degradation in Tanzania and Mongolia.
  d What do you notice about the level of soil degradation in areas next to existing deserts?

Apply

4 In small groups, **discuss** some steps that could be taken to restore the land in Source 4. Use these steps to develop and present an action plan. This could include an annotated copy or field sketch of Source 4. You can find a larger version of Source 4 on your obook pro.
5 Trace an outline map of the area shown in Source 5 by following these steps:
  a Shade in brown the area suffering from severe or high desertification in 1990.
  b Shade in red the area suffering from severe or high desertification in 2011.
  c Add these to a legend and finish your map with BOLTSS.
  d Using your completed map, **describe** the trend of desertification in this region.
6 Satellite images are another spatial technology. You can access these on Google Earth. Search for 'Elsen Tasarkhai (Sand Dune Mini Gobi), Mongolia' to locate the same region as the remote sensing images in Source 5. **Describe** this landscape as it can be seen in the satellite images.

2.3 Degrading the atmosphere

Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» explain the nature of human-induced atmospheric degradation and the challenges it poses.

The layer of gases that surrounds the Earth – known as the atmosphere – is being degraded in many ways. Pollutants such as carbon dioxide, nitrogen and sulphur released into the atmosphere from factories, power stations and transport are disturbing its natural balance of gases. This change in the composition of the atmosphere, together with a reduction in forest cover, is responsible for an increase in global temperatures and changes in our climate.

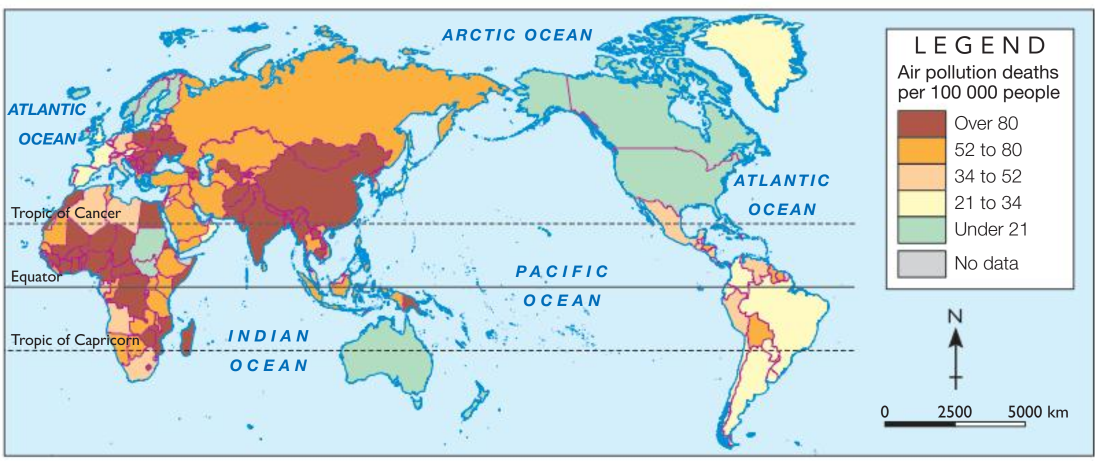
Air pollution

Air pollution is one of the world's worst environmental health risks. It leads to increased rates of asthma, lung disease and heart disease. It is estimated that more than 4.1 million people around the world die each year from outdoor air pollution (see Source 6). This is largely the result of breathing air with high concentrations of fine particles from traffic exhaust, factory and power plant emissions, and fires. Another 2.6 million deaths each year are the result of indoor air pollution. These are mainly due to fuels such as coal and dried animal waste that are burned indoors for heating and cooking (mainly in developing countries).

As tougher laws and restrictions governing emissions from factories and vehicles are introduced in countries across the developed world, outdoor air quality is slowly improving. However, in many countries across the developing world, air quality is actually becoming worse. This is particularly true of some countries in Asia and Africa, where the number of deaths each year from air pollution is increasing. This is due mainly to the rapid growth and expansion of cities. As cities grow, the demand for cheap energy increases. Currently, the cheapest and most reliable source of energy in these countries comes from burning fossil fuels, such as coal and oil. Measurements of air quality show that 98 per cent of cities in the developing world have rates of air pollution that exceed safe guidelines.

Map it!
World: Annual deaths caused by outdoor air pollution, 2019

WORLD: ANNUAL DEATHS CAUSED BY OUTDOOR AIR POLLUTION, 2019

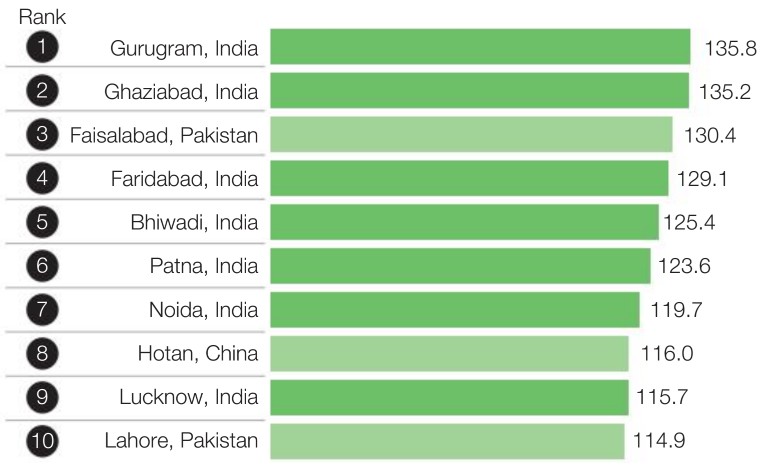


Source 6 Source: Oxford University Press

India – an air pollution hotspot

India has some of the highest levels of air pollution on the planet. A report published by the World Health Organization (WHO) found that 23 of the world's 30 most polluted cities were in India. It is estimated that almost a million Indians die prematurely from the effects of air pollution each year.

Much of this pollution comes from a rapid increase in the number of vehicles clogging India's congested roads. In addition to this, there has been a rapid growth in industry across the country. More and more, these factories demand cheap energy, and much of this energy comes from coal-fired power plants. In fact, around 70 per cent of India's electricity is generated from burning coal, much of which is imported from overseas. Australia exports about 50 million tonnes of coal to India each year – a figure that is expected to grow in the future as the population grows and demand increases still further.



Source 7 The world's 10 most polluted cities – seven of which are in India (shaded in darker green) – as measured by their pollution scores.
Source: Greenpeace/AirVisual

A good news story – the recovering ozone layer

Around 10 kilometres above the surface of the Earth sits a concentration of ozone – molecules that contain three atoms of oxygen. This region of the atmosphere is known as the ozone layer. The ozone layer shields the Earth and its inhabitants from much of the sun's ultraviolet radiation. Exposure to this radiation is linked to increased rates of cancer (especially skin cancer), as well as lower productivity of plants.

The number of ozone molecules in the ozone layer is constantly changing, but in the 1970s scientists recorded a steady decline of ozone (particularly in an area above Antarctica). Known as the 'ozone hole', this reduction of molecules was linked to the release of chemicals into the atmosphere from aerosol cans and refrigerators. In 1987, an international agreement – the Montreal Protocol – banned the use of these chemicals in an attempt to stop the ozone hole from increasing in size.

In recent years, there have been signs that the ozone layer is beginning to recover. It is now expected that it will return to 1980 levels by 2070. The Secretary-General of the United Nations referred to the Montreal Protocol as 'perhaps the single most successful international agreement to date'.

Weblink
Real-time air quality map

2.3 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 In your own words, **define** 'ozone layer'.

2 Why is the air quality so poor in India?

Comprehend

3 Use the geographical concept of interconnections to **describe** Australia's role in air pollution in India.

4 Air pollution has been described as a 'transnational' problem, meaning that it crosses international borders. **Explain** why this makes it a difficult problem to solve.

5 Look closely at Source 6.

a **Identify** the regions that have the highest death rates due to air pollution.

b In which regions do you predict the rates to grow? Give reasons for your answer.

Apply

6 Access the real-time air quality map through your obook pro. This shows the current pollutant levels for hundreds of cities around the world.

a Scroll down for the legend. **Describe** the distribution of the cities that have levels currently greater than 150 AQI (air quality index).

b **Summarise** the precautions suggested for people who live in these cities.

c **Describe** the AQI in Australian cities.

2.4 Degrading water

Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» explain the nature of human-induced water degradation and the challenges it poses.

Inland waters such as rivers, lakes and wetlands are some of the world's most degraded environments. Human activities have reduced the quality and quantity of clean fresh water in many of these places. Extracting water from rivers to use in homes, factories and farms – and damming rivers for water supply, flood control and hydroelectricity – have all affected the health of inland waters. Pollution from farms and industry sources entering these waters has also caused damage.

People extract large amounts of fresh water from various natural sources. The highest demand for fresh water is for **irrigating** farms to grow food. In Australia, for example, 70 per cent of the water extracted from rivers and **aquifers** is used in farming. As the world's population and its demand for food and water grow, many of the world's water resources are becoming degraded by having too much water extracted. This has led to shrinking lakes in some regions and increased salinity in the water in others.

irrigating
watering otherwise dry land by artificial means (e.g. pipes, ditches, sprinkler systems) to help with the growing of crops

aquifers
underground water supplies consisting of a layer of rock or other permeable materials that hold water

ecosystem services
a term used to describe a range of important resources, processes and benefits that healthy ecosystems provide to humans

landfill
a method used to dispose of rubbish by burying it; also used to describe the place where rubbish is buried

Damming the rivers

Of the world's 292 large river systems, two-thirds have been changed by dams and reservoirs. Dams disrupt the flow of water – flooding some areas and stopping water reaching others. Damming also disrupts **ecosystem services**, such as the provision of fresh water and fertile soil production. The natural interaction between rivers and coastal ecosystems is degraded, as fewer nutrients and less water and sediment reach the river mouth and sea.

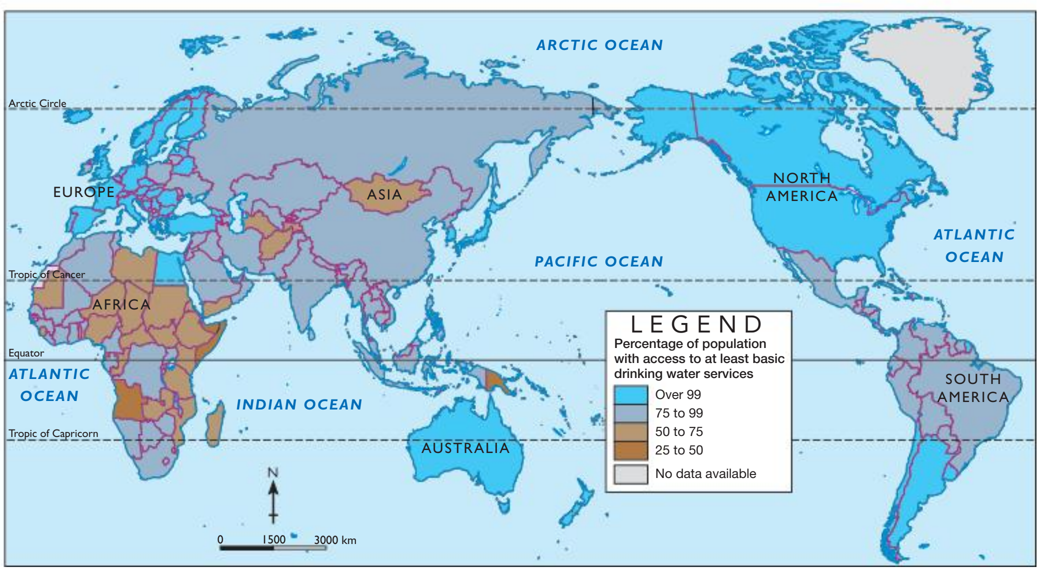
Pollutants in our water

Water pollution is the contamination of our rivers, lakes, wetlands, estuaries, seas and oceans. This pollution can be the result of human activities on or near the water – such as shipping, fishing and oil drilling – or human activities conducted on land. Land activities such as the use of fertilisers and pesticides in farming, littering, clearing land, creating tips and **landfill**, processing sewage and industrial activities can all cause pollution of the waterways. In many places, people take their water from untreated sources such as rivers and lakes, where there may be dangerous levels of pollutants. This water is used for domestic purposes such as drinking, cooking and cleaning.

Key skill worksheet
Interpreting & analysing: Identifying patterns on maps

Enlarged map
World: Access to safe drinking water

WORLD: ACCESS TO SAFE DRINKING WATER



Source 8
Source: Oxford University Press

CASE STUDY

Water pollution in Chad

Chad is a landlocked country of 16 million people in north Central Africa. The northern half of the country is part of the Sahara Desert, making water a scarce, precious resource. Less than half of Chad's population has access to a safe drinking source, with most people collecting water from rivers, lakes and wells. About 7 in every 10 people in Chad do not use a toilet, and instead practise open (outdoor) defecation. This pollutes the water supply, leading to diseases such as diarrhoea and malnutrition. The United Nations agency UNICEF is working to provide sanitation facilities, such as pit toilets, and to educate people about the importance of washing their hands after using the toilet. At present, only 1 in 17 children use soap and water to clean their hands.

Source 9 Local boys draw water from their well in the desert, northern Chad.

2.4 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 **State** the human activities that contribute to water degradation.

2 **Identify** the circumstances that have led to water degradation in Chad.

Analyse

3 **Examine** Source 8. Use the PQE method (see page 31 of 'The geography toolkit') to **describe** the distribution of countries where less than 50 per cent of the population have access to safe drinking water.

4 Use the SHEEPT method (see page 30 of 'The geography toolkit') to **classify** the factors responsible for the degradation of freshwater resources around the world.

5 **Compare** Source 8 with the map of air pollution (Source 6) on page 42.
   - a Describe the relationships evident between the data shown on the two maps.
   - b Suggest some reasons why these relationships exist.

Apply

6 Using the internet, **investigate** water pollution in Hanoi, the capital city of Vietnam. Use your research to answer the following questions.
   - a Evaluate water pollution in Hanoi in comparison to water pollution in Chad. What are some of the similarities and differences?
   - b What do you think are some of the barriers to improving water quality in these places?

Quiz me!
A quick quiz on degrading water

2A SKILLS IN CONTEXT

Test me!
Once you've finished the topics in this section, test yourself with this quiz and find out which worksheet you should do.

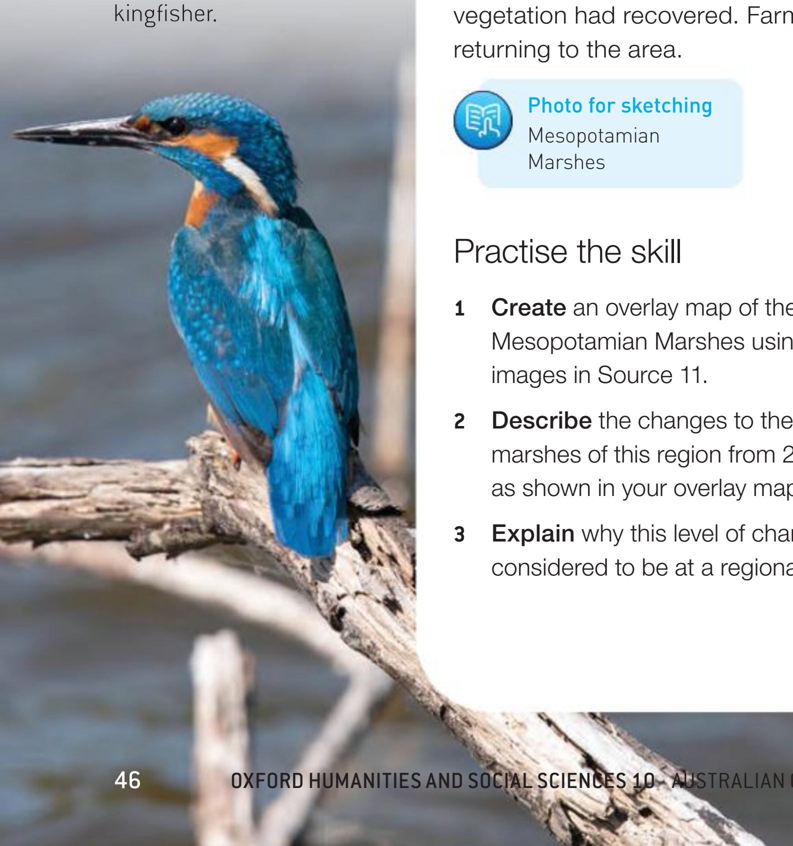
Return to Eden

The region at the confluence (that is, where the rivers meet) of the Tigris and Euphrates Rivers in Iraq once supported one of the world's great wetlands: the Mesopotamian Marshes.

Between the 1970s and 2002, however, the area of the wetlands shrunk by more than 90 per cent, and the only major marshes that survived were the Al Hawizeh Marshes, sitting on the border between Iraq and Iran. The shrinkage was a result of new irrigation dams that drew water from the rivers upstream to support agriculture. Much of the wetlands became dry and the ecosystems collapsed. The numbers of migratory birds declined dramatically, and the local people were forced to move to the cities.

Since 2003 many of the drainage structures have been dismantled and the marshes allowed to reflood. By the end of 2006, more than half of the region had been reflooded and much of the original vegetation had recovered. Farmers are also returning to the area.

Photo for sketching
Mesopotamian Marshes



Source 10 The Mesopotamian Marshes provide habitat for a variety of wildlife, including the common kingfisher.

Practise the skill

1 **Create** an overlay map of the Mesopotamian Marshes using the satellite images in Source 11.

2 **Describe** the changes to the rivers and marshes of this region from 2000 to 2010, as shown in your overlay map.

3 **Explain** why this level of change would be considered to be at a regional scale.

KEY SKILL
Questioning & researching

Constructing overlay maps from satellite images

An overlay map is a type of map that uses information on a piece of transparent paper or plastic (known as an overlay) placed over a base map. Overlay maps allow geographers to show a place at two different times, so that they can instantly identify changes. To construct an overlay map from two satellite images, follow these steps:

Step 1 Construct a base map of the region, tracing the earlier satellite image. Add key natural and human features, such as rivers, canals, towns and lakes.

Step 2 Add labels to rivers and towns. Add BOLTSS, and the date of the image.

Step 3 On a plastic sheet or piece of tracing paper, construct a map of the same region from a later satellite image. Ensure that the two satellite images show the same region at the same scale. This map will sit on top of your base map, so line up features such as rivers that have stayed the same.

Step 4 Place the overlay map on top of the base map and use a piece of tape like a hinge along the top to stick them together.

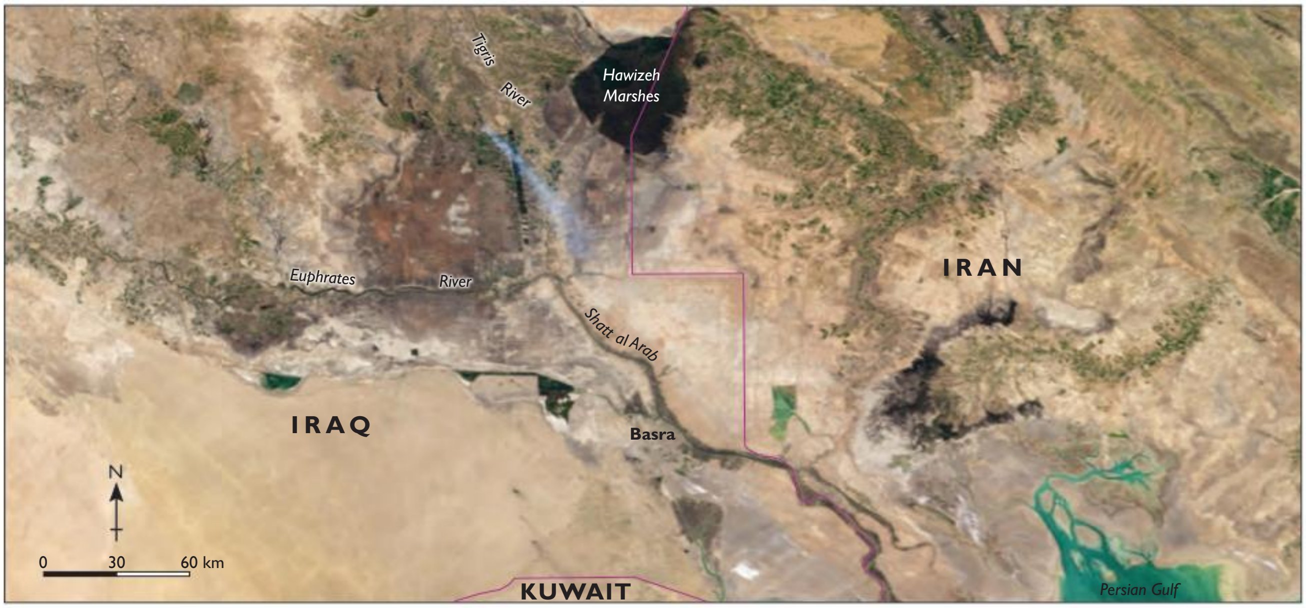
Step 5 Add a title to the overlay map that does not cover the base map title.

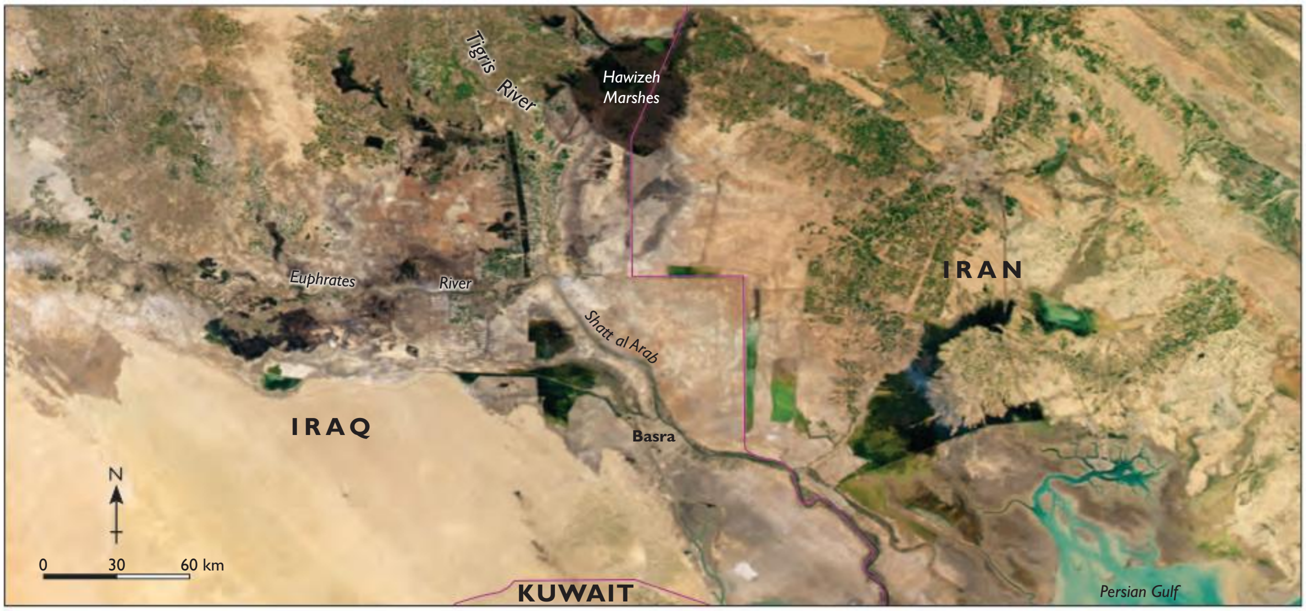
Extend your understanding

1 The decline of the Mesopotamian Marshes is an example of the pressure faced by many of the world's freshwater resources, but their rebirth is a beacon of hope, as it shows that areas can be restored.

Select one of these other examples of water resources under pressure: Aral Sea, tributaries of the Dead Sea, Kara-Bogaz-Gol lagoon, Everglades wetlands, Lake Chad, Lake Balkash, Lake Chapala, Lake Nakuru or the Coorong. Work in groups to complete the following tasks.

a **Investigate** the changes that have occurred over time.
b **Identify** and describe the causes of these changes.
c **Describe** any attempts that have been made to restore the natural environment and comment on their effectiveness.
d Present your findings as an annotated visual display (AVD). Use images such as satellite images, maps and aerial photographs in your display.
e **Compare** your example to those researched by other groups in your class. What are the similarities between them? What is unique about the one you researched?





Source 11 Satellite images of the Mesopotamian Marshes from 2000 (top) and 2010 (bottom); the green areas show the extent of the marshes.

2.5 Ecosystem services

Learning intentions

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» define the four S's of ecosystem services
» explain the importance of these services.

Planet Earth provides organisms such as plants and animals with everything they need to survive: food, light, water and air. Humans, of course, are one of these organisms, and our survival on Earth is largely due to the services provided by the natural environment around us (see Source 1).

The way in which we think about our environment has changed dramatically over the past few decades. Once seen as a bottomless pit of resources providing everything we need, it is now viewed as a fragile system becoming degraded by human actions.

The four S's of ecosystem services

Ecosystem services can be classified according to the products they provide and the functions they perform. There are four main classifications: **sources**, **sinks**, **services** and **spirituality**.

sources
natural products that can be used or converted by humans for use

sinks
processes that take place in the natural environment that absorb waste

services
processes that take place in the environment that support life

spirituality
a sense of wellbeing and spiritual connection offered by the environment

Sources

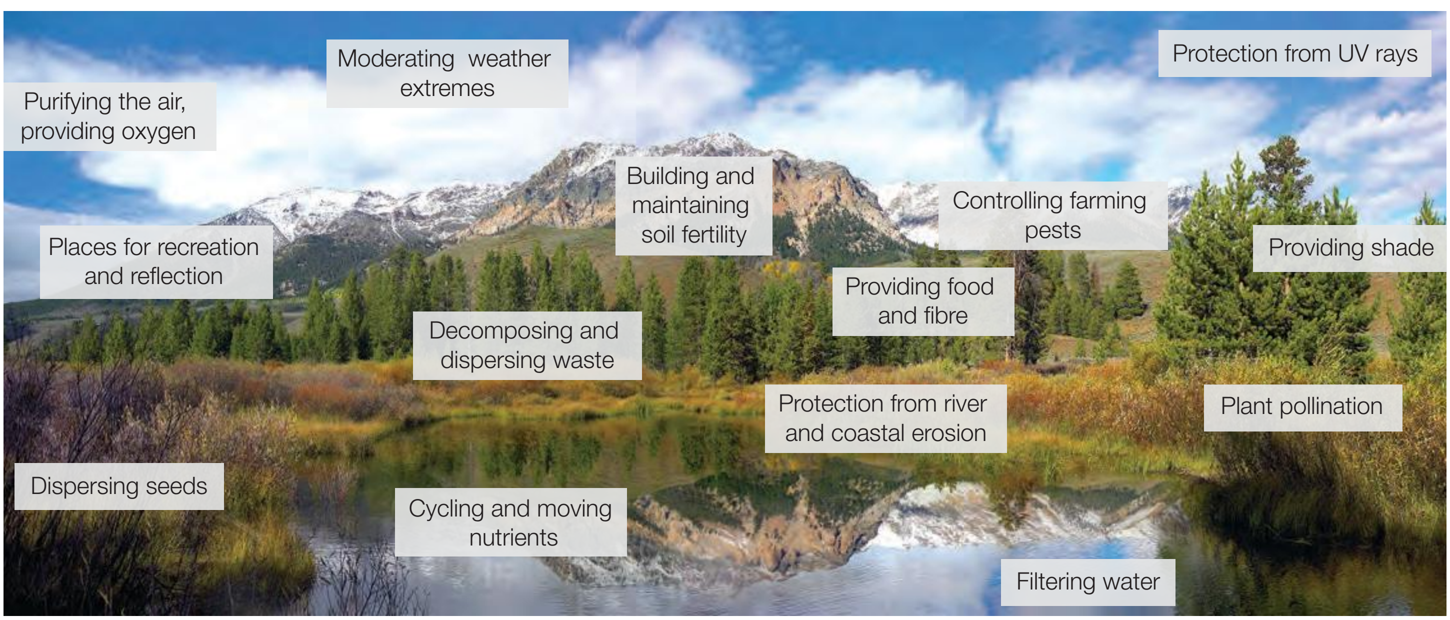
Sources (also called provisioning services) are those natural products that can be used or converted by humans for our use. These include mineral deposits, such as the coal that we turn into fuel; iron ore that we use in manufacturing; timber from natural forests; and food sources – from plant crops to deep sea fish.

Sinks

Sinks (also called regulating services) are those processes in the natural environment that absorb our waste. For example, micro-organisms in oceans break down oil spills, while plants, soil and oceans remove carbon dioxide from the atmosphere by storing it.

Services

Services (also called supporting services) are processes taking place in the natural environment that support life, but do not produce consumable resources. For example, wetlands filter water and slow floodwaters; while forests absorb carbon dioxide and produce oxygen.



Source 1 Some of the ecosystem services provided by the environment

Spirituality

Spirituality (also called cultural services) refers to the personal relationships that human beings have with the environment. For some, this is a deep connection to the land formed over many generations (such as the connection that First Nations peoples have with their ancestral lands). For others, it is the experience of spending time in the natural environment and the sense of wellbeing that this brings. For example, people taking part in activities such as surfing and bushwalking often feel a deep connection with the environment.

Healthy ecosystems

Complex ecosystems have developed over millions of years, where the health of the ecosystem as a whole is connected strongly to the health of every organism within it. If one organism – such as a particular species of plant or animal – dies out, other organisms are impacted.

As humans have increased their use of ecosystem services across the planet, they have caused great change to ecosystems. Desertification, soil erosion, and air and water pollution are all examples of human impacts on ecosystems, and are just some of the forces that have led to great changes in the natural world. In many places around the Earth, ecosystems have been changed to such an extent that the ecosystem services on which we rely are threatened.

In Australia, our ecosystems are some of the most threatened, with many in danger of collapse.

Quiz me!
A quick quiz on ecosystem services

2.5 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 **Identify** the four types of ecosystem services and write a definition for each in your own words.
2 **Identify** two examples of human impacts on ecosystem services.

Analyse

3 a **Classify** each of the ecosystem services shown in Source 1 as source, sink, service or spirituality.
  b Provide one more example of each.
4 **Examine** the image of the Australian Alps in Source 2.
  a Give examples of three ecosystem services of this environment.
  b How might each of the functions you listed in question 4a be affected if another bushfire burns this area?

Apply

5 Which of the ecosystem services shown in Source 1 do you consider to be the most valuable to humans? **Justify** (give reasons for) your choice.
6 Which ecosystem service do you think is most threatened by human activities? **Predict** what would change if this service could no longer be provided by the environment.

Source 2 Australia's sub-alpine forest ecosystems are in danger of collapse. More frequent bushfires – such as those that burned this region in Victoria's Alps – are driving environmental change in this ecosystem.

2.6 Australia's collapsing ecosystems

Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» understand the challenges environmental change has for the sustainability of ecosystem services.

In a 2021 study, scientists identified 17 of Australia's ecosystems that have collapsed or are in the process of collapsing. An ecosystem collapses when:

- it loses its key features
- it shrinks in size
- it loses its plant and animal species, and
- it loses vital services and functions.

Global impacts

In Australia, these ecosystem collapses are largely the result of global climate change. Climate change is causing changes in rainfall patterns and quantities, increased temperatures and rising sea levels. As a result, there are more frequent and larger weather-related disasters, such as heatwaves, floods, storms and bushfires. For example, in the summer of 2019–20, every single state and territory in Australia experienced widespread bushfires.

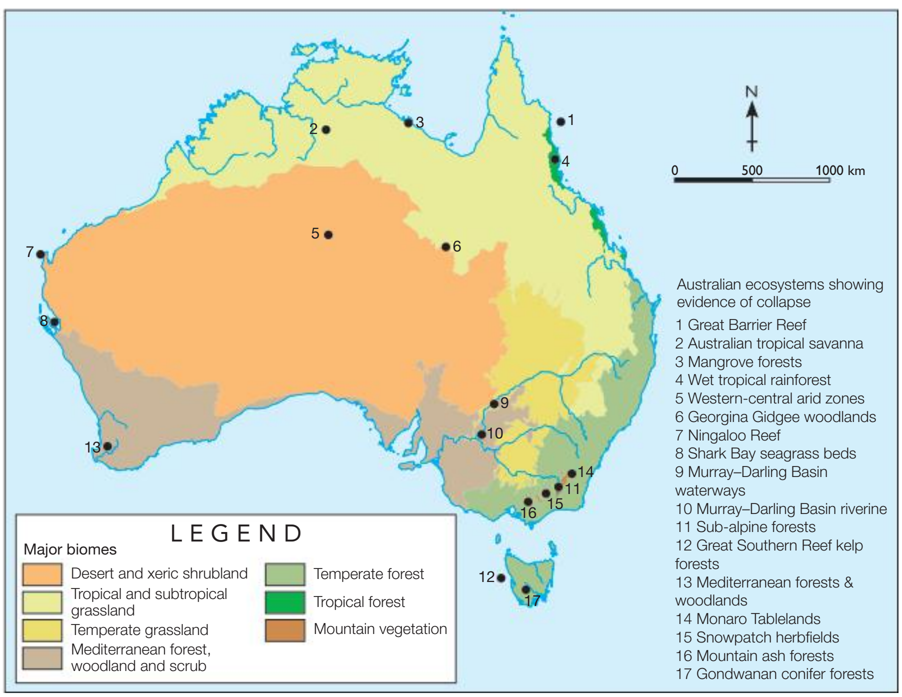
Local impacts

Australia's ecosystems are also facing regional and local impacts. The drivers of ecosystem change in Australia are either 'presses' or 'pulses'. Presses are long-term, large-scale changes such as those relating to temperature or salinity, whereas pulses are short-term regional events such as flood or fire. Pressures from human activities – such as farming, water extraction and pollution – have also degraded our ecosystems.

Australia's natural environment is among the most degraded in the world. In the past 200 years, 34 native mammals have gone extinct. This is the same as the total number of extinct mammals in the rest of the world combined, over the same period.

Map it! Australian ecosystems showing evidence of collapse

AUSTRALIAN ECOSYSTEMS SHOWING EVIDENCE OF COLLAPSE

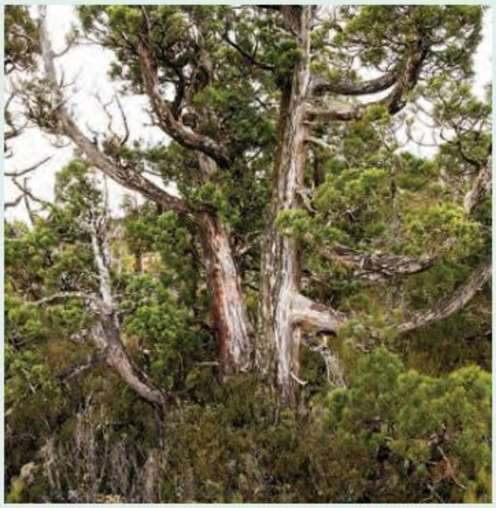


Source 3 Source: Oxford University Press

CASE STUDY

Tasmania's Gondwanan conifer forests

Of our 17 collapsing ecosystems, seven of them are forests. One is Tasmania's Gondwanan conifer forests, which contain ancient tree species that have remained unchanged for millions of years. These forests of pencil pines and King Billy pines support ancient invertebrate animals that exist nowhere else. The forests cannot, however, survive fire, and are therefore limited to low bushfire-risk areas. However, changing rainfall patterns and higher temperatures have resulted in more fires. In the past 200 years, around 30 per cent of the range of King Billy pines and half of the pencil pines have been lost. The insects, birds and animals that have evolved to live in these ancient forests are now endangered by the loss of habitat and the collapse of their ecosystem.



Source 4 Tasmania's pencil pines evolved before flowering plants appeared on Earth, and exist nowhere else.

Source 5 Pencil pines cannot survive fire. This forest in Tasmania's World Heritage area was burned in a large bushfire in 2016.

See, think, wonder

Look at Sources 4 and 5.

- What do you see?
- What do you think?
- What do they make you wonder?

2.6 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 **Recall** how scientists define an ecosystem collapse.

Comprehend

2 a **Explain** the differences between a press and a pulse.

b Is a bushfire – such as the one that burned the forest in Source 5 – a press or a pulse? **Explain** your answer.

3 **Describe** some of the ecosystem services (see page 48) that are lost when a healthy ecosystem – such as the one in Source 4 – collapses.

Apply

4 To what extent should we be concerned about the collapse of Australia's ecosystems? Write a paragraph to **justify** your position.

5 Select one of the 16 other ecosystems from Source 3. **Investigate** the presses and pulses impacting this ecosystem, and present your findings as a written report that includes a map and several properly acknowledged images.

6 Select one environmental change: water and atmospheric pollution, ecosystem collapse, or degradation of land, inland and coastal aquatic environments. **Evaluate** the challenges this change creates for the sustainability of ecosystem services.

2.7 Ecosystem decline: invasive species

Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» describe how invasive species threaten the sustainability of the environment.

biodiversity
the variety of living organisms (e.g. plants, animals, bacteria and fungi) found in an environment

biomes
large areas of the Earth that are home to similar plant and animal communities that have adapted to a particular environment over time (e.g. desert, forest, grassland)

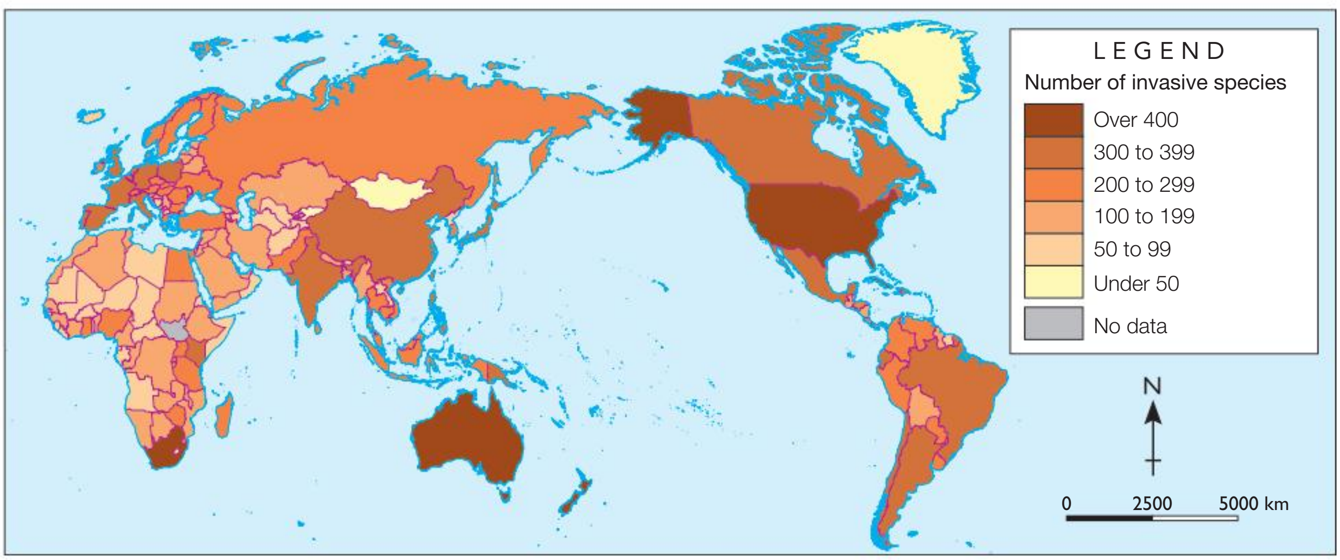
'Invasive species' is a term used by geographers and scientists to describe groups of organisms (for example, plants, animals, insects, bacteria or fungi) found in an area to which they are not native. In many cases, invasive species upset the biological diversity of areas they spread to, and can have other negative effects.

Many ecosystems around the world are threatened by invasive species. Sometimes, invasive species are brought to a new place deliberately. For example, goats and rabbits were brought to Australia on the First Fleet to provide a source of food for European colonists. Other species may be brought to a new place accidentally. For example, rats often hide aboard ships that enter Australia's ports. Marine pests have been brought to Australian seas unintentionally in ballast water, which is used to stabilise container ships.

Introduced species spread from their point of introduction, sometimes over vast areas. As they invade different environments, they have the potential to degrade the land and disrupt the natural balance of ecosystems. They often compete with native species for food, land or water, leading to a loss of **biodiversity**. Source 6 shows the numbers of invasive species in countries around the world. The map also shows the location of some of the world's most successful invasive organisms: the castor oil plant, chytrid frog fungus, domestic cat, black rat, American mink and water hyacinth. The information boxes on the following page provide details about these species, including their preferred **biomes**.

Australia has 362 invasive species, the second highest number in the world.

WORLD: NUMBERS OF INVASIVE SPECIES BY COUNTRY



Source 6 Source: Oxford University Press

Map it!
World: Numbers of invasive species by country

1 Castor oil plant
(*Ricinus communis*)

Native to: North-east Africa and the Middle East
Invaded: Common on every continent except Antarctica
Method of invasion: Carried as an ornamental plant and cash crop in the production of castor oil; seeds dispersed by rodents and birds
Preferred biomes: Grassland, temperate forest
Impacts: Displaces native plant species; poisonous to many animal species including humans

2 Chytrid frog fungus
(*Batrachochytrium dendrobatidis*)

Native to: Africa
Invaded: All six continents; has infected 93 frog species, more than half of which are Australian
Method of invasion: Frogs carrying the fungus introduced as a food source and for scientific purposes
Preferred biomes: Rainforests, freshwater sources
Impacts: Has infected about one-third of all amphibian species, causing a decline of frog species worldwide

3 Domestic cat
(*Felis catus*)

Native to: Unknown (first domesticated in ancient Egypt)
Invaded: Virtually every country, listed as a harmful species in more than 60 countries
Method of invasion: Carried as pets or to restrict rat numbers and then are released or escape into the wild
Preferred biomes: Grasslands, forests and tundra close to water
Impacts: Caused or contributed to the extinction of birds and small mammals around the world, particularly on islands

4 Black rat
(*Rattus rattus*)

Native to: South-East Asia, north-east China and India
Invaded: Widespread around the world
Method of invasion: Deliberately introduced as a food source or accidently introduced as a stowaway on ships
Preferred biomes: Grassland, temperate forest, tropical forest
Impacts: Preys on native birds (especially flightless species and the eggs of seabirds), reptiles and insects; eats native plants and seeds; is a major agricultural pest; has caused or contributed to the extinction of birds, mammals, reptiles and plants

5 American mink
(*Neovison vison*)

Native to: North America
Invaded: Widespread throughout Europe
Method of invasion: Bred in mink farms for their fur and then escape or are released
Preferred biomes: Forests near wetlands and rivers
Impacts: Kills large numbers of native species such as voles and salmon; can drive native mink from their habitats

6 Water hyacinth
(*Eichhornia crassipes*)

Native to: South America
Invaded: Widespread in streams and rivers around the world particularly in North America and Europe
Method of invasion: Carried as an ornamental plant
Preferred biomes: Freshwater sources including rivers, lakes and streams
Impacts: Grows as a thick mat clogging rivers and streams, inhibiting plants and some fish species, and providing a habitat for other pests including malarial mosquitoes

2.7 Check your learning

Comprehend

1 **Summarise** three ways in which invasive species move between countries.

2 **Explain** how an animal that is not a pest in one country can become a major pest when introduced to a new country.

Analyse

3 How do rats cause land degradation?

4 **Compare** the six examples of invasive organisms shown. What are some of the similarities? How is each unique? Which do you consider has had the greatest impact? Why?

5 **Examine** Source 6.
   a List the countries with the highest numbers of invasive species.
   b Compare these countries. What features do they share that might help to explain the high numbers?
   c Give one reason why Africa and the Middle East have such low numbers of invasive species.

Apply

6 Some researchers consider humans to be an invasive species. **Create** an information box – like those on this page – for the human species, describing their method of invasion, preferred biomes and impacts.

7 Australia is one of the most invaded countries, but it is also the origin of many plants and animals that are considered invasive species in other countries. These include the golden wattle, Queensland fruit fly, Australian magpie, spotted jellyfish and brushtail possum. **Investigate** one of these invading Australians. Describe how and where it has spread, and its impact on native plants and animals in other countries.

2.8 Loss of biodiversity

Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» explain the nature of human-induced loss of biodiversity and the challenges it poses.

'Biodiversity' refers to the variety of living organisms on the planet. It is measured by the number of species present in a particular ecosystem or region. The Earth's biodiversity is currently under threat, decreasing at a rate that rivals the mass extinction of the dinosaurs. It is difficult to give an exact figure on the number of species reaching extinction each year, but it has been estimated at between 17 000 and 100 000 species annually. The world's most famous fossil hunter, Dr Richard Leakey, believes that this represents 'a rate comparable with the impact of a giant asteroid slamming into the planet'.

This loss of biodiversity not only impacts the natural environment, but also has serious consequences for all human beings on Earth. Ecosystem services such as food, fibre and fresh water supplies, crop pollination by insects and birds, and protection against natural disasters are in decline.

Source 7 Much of the world's land surface is no longer in its natural state, with farmland and cities replacing areas that were once covered by forests and grasslands. Farming tends to replace hundreds of species with just one – as shown in this image of a beef cattle farm in Brazil. This greatly reduces biodiversity.

What is causing the loss of biodiversity?

This loss of biodiversity is due almost entirely to the impact of just one species – humans. Our use of the Earth's resources and the changes this use brings to the natural environment are pushing many species to extinction. The five main causes of the loss of biodiversity are:

- habitat change, such as **deforestation**
- over-exploitation of resources, such as fresh water
- pollution of land, water and air
- spread of invasive species
- climate change brought about by human activity.

Species facing extinction

The International Union for the Conservation of Nature (IUCN) is an organisation that assesses the likelihood that species will become extinct. Of the almost 128 000 species they have studied, 27 per cent can be considered threatened with extinction. Conifers and amphibians (such as frogs) are particularly under threat (see Source 9).

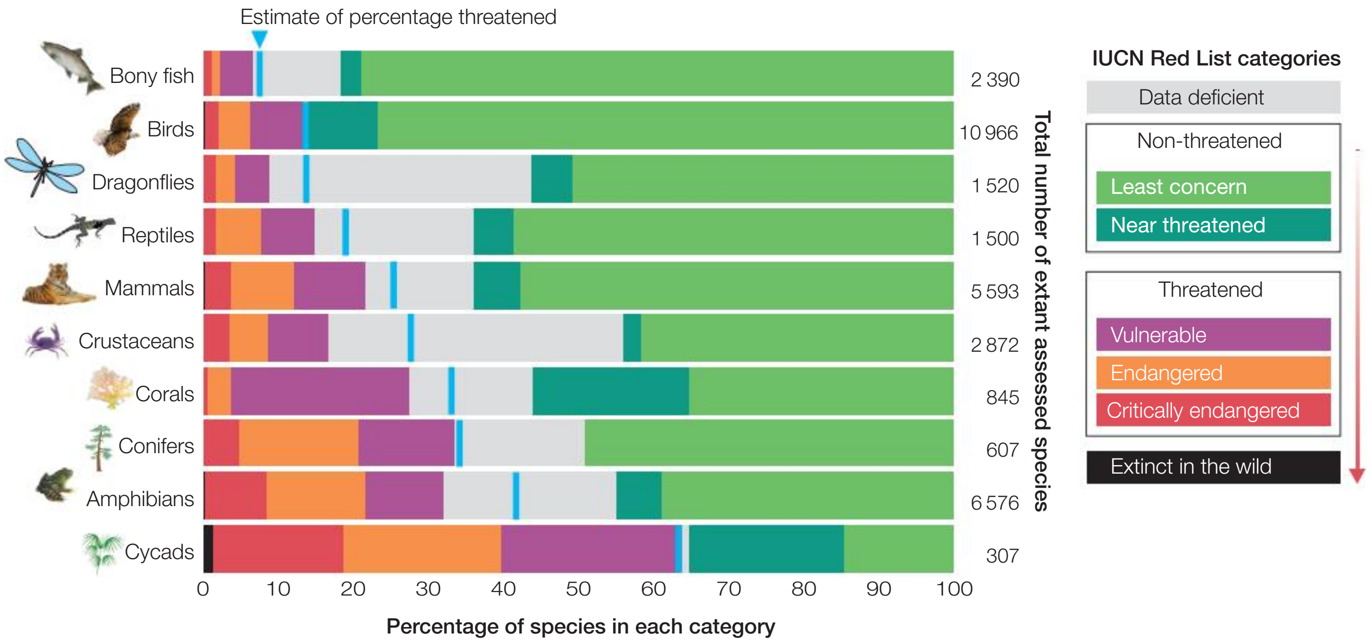
A world without frogs?

The number of frog species in the world is in dramatic decline and many researchers are linking this to climate change. The skin of frogs is particularly thin and permeable, meaning that moisture passes through it easily. With the drier, warmer climate, many frogs are losing more water through their skin than they are taking in.

Frogs are also losing their breeding grounds, as small ponds and water collected in the hollows of trees are drying up and disappearing.

deforestation
the removal of trees and other plant life from a forested area, either by cutting down or by burning; usually carried out to clear the land for farming

Source 8 The golden toad was last seen in 1989 and, like 33 other amphibian species since then, it is now considered extinct.



Source 9 IUCN data on the levels of threat faced by the major life groups (known as taxonomic groups)

The greatest threat to frogs, however, is from disease. A parasitic fungus from Africa, known as amphibian chytrid, has spread across the planet in the last few decades. Warmer temperatures associated with climate change have created favourable conditions for the spread of this parasite, which was previously held back by cooler night-time temperatures.

After studying the spread of this disease in Central America, scientists and the study's lead author J. Alan Pounds stated that 'disease is the bullet killing frogs, but climate change is pulling the trigger'. He found that two-thirds of all of the region's species of harlequin frogs were already extinct from this combination of factors. He and other scientists believe that frogs may be the planet's early warning system on climate change.

2.8 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 In your own words, **define** 'biodiversity'.

2 **Identify** the five main causes of loss of biodiversity.

Comprehend

3 **Explain** how biodiversity and ecosystem services are linked.

4 Look closely at Source 9.

a **Identify** the taxonomic group that has suffered the most extinctions.

b Which of the five main causes of biodiversity loss do you think is most responsible for this?

c **Describe** the levels of threat faced by amphibians.

5 **Describe** the change in biodiversity shown in Source 7. Which of the five main causes of biodiversity loss does this illustrate?

Apply

6 What is the level of threat facing the world's corals? **Investigate** what ecosystem services would be threatened by a loss of coral species.

7 Search for the 'IUCN Red List' on the internet. Use this list to **investigate** Australia's southern corroboree frog. How many of these frogs remain in the wild, and what dangers do they face?

8 Choose another species that interests you and **investigate** whether or not it is under threat. If it is, what dangers does it face? If it isn't currently under threat, predict the circumstances that might cause it to be so.

Quiz me!
A quick quiz on loss of biodiversity

2.9 Drivers of ecosystem change

Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

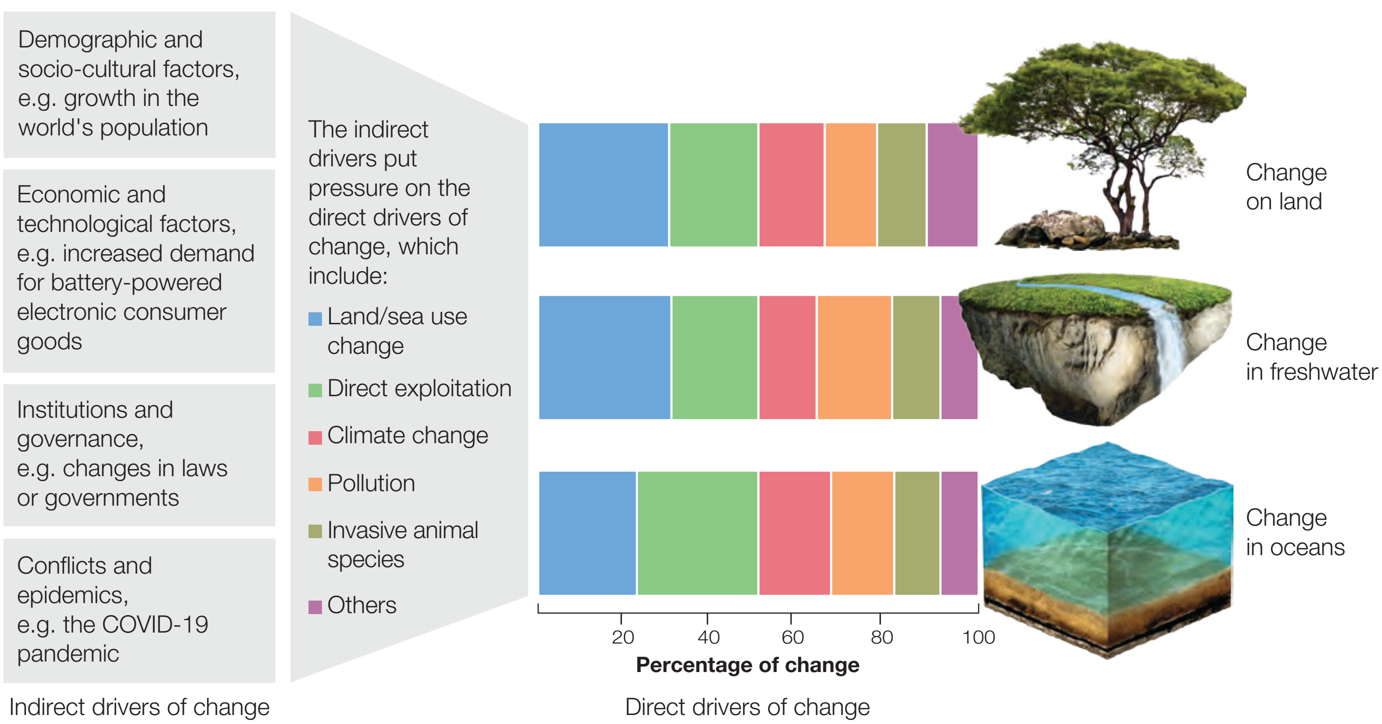
» identify the ways that humans have caused environmental change.

When exploring the ways in which the environment is changing, it is important to look at both the causes and effects of these changes. There are usually a range of factors working together that bring about environmental change. For example, the decline in frog species you read about on page 54 cannot be explained by just one cause. Climate change, loss of habitat and human population growth are all factors driving this change.

Drivers of change

Geographers use the term 'drivers of change' to talk about these factors. They investigate these drivers at two levels, and understanding them both is crucial to understanding why so many natural environments are under threat:

- *Direct drivers of change* are factors that are undeniably responsible for change. These can occur naturally or may be caused by human activities. Examples of direct drivers of ecosystem and biodiversity decline include habitat change, climate change, invasive species and pollution.
- *Indirect drivers of change* are sometimes called 'underlying causes', because they put pressure on the direct drivers of change. Examples of indirect drivers of ecosystem and biodiversity decline include the growth of the world's population, changes in wealth and consumption patterns, and changes to technology and government policies. For example, one of the main indirect factors driving loss of biodiversity in certain areas is the increased demand for battery-powered electronic consumer goods, such as mobile phones and laptop computers. The increased mining activity (direct driver) causes a loss of biodiversity, but the mining itself is driven by the demand for these goods.



Source 10 The links between indirect and direct drivers of environmental change

CASE STUDY

Source 11 Dark clouds blanket the sky near a graphite mine in north-eastern China. People who live near graphite mines complain of contaminated air and water affecting their crops and health.

Lithium-ion batteries

If you have a portable electronic device, such as a mobile phone, tablet or laptop, it is almost certainly powered by a lithium-ion battery. They are also used to power a wide range of other everyday items, including power tools, wheelchairs, toys, buses and e-bikes. The growth in the demand for these batteries is driven by changes in consumer behaviour, as nowadays almost everyone owns a portable electronic device. Increasing wealth in highly populated countries such as China and India also drives the demand for these batteries.

Lithium-ion batteries contain three key minerals: cobalt, graphite and lithium.

Cobalt

Over 60 per cent of the world's cobalt is mined in one of the world's poorest countries, the Democratic Republic of Congo (DRC). To access the cobalt in the DRC, miners have stripped away large areas of rainforest, where locals have always hunted wild animals for food.

Once protected by dense rainforest, the western lowland gorilla is now a critically endangered animal and has all but vanished from the DRC rainforests. Not only has their habitat been destroyed, but without any protection from the rainforest these gorillas have become easy to hunt.

The cobalt mines also contain sulphur which, when exposed to air and water, can produce sulphuric acid. This drains into nearby rivers and streams, causing irreversible damage to the ecosystems downriver. The impact of this sulphuric acid will likely last for centuries.

Graphite

Two-thirds of the world's mined graphite comes from China. Explosives are often used to reach natural graphite deposits. This process releases fine particles of graphite into the air, which can be carried through the atmosphere for hundreds of kilometres. The graphite pollutes the soils and waterways of the area, and causes respiratory diseases for those who breathe it. It also enters the food chain, as particles land on crops.

continued on next page

Source 12 An illegal cobalt mine in the DRC – such mines cause environmental change, and there is also evidence that profits from cobalt mining are being used by armies in the region to fund long-running and bloody conflicts.

continued from previous page

Lithium

Half of the world's lithium is located beneath an area of salt flats that spans the countries of Argentina, Bolivia and Chile. This area is known as the 'Lithium Triangle'. To extract the lithium, miners drill into the salt flats and pump the salty water containing the lithium and other minerals to the surface, into an 'evaporation pond'. After several months, the water evaporates and the minerals are filtered. They are then put into another evaporation pond and the evaporation process begins again.

This process uses an enormous amount of water: about 1.8 million litres is needed to produce 1 tonne of lithium. The water pollutes nearby streams that are used by farmers to irrigate their crops. Piles of discarded salt and canals filled with polluted water are particularly harmful to the landscape in Chile.

Source 13 Lithium

See, think, wonder

Look at Source 14.

- What do you see?
- What do you think?
- What do you wonder?

Source 14 Evaporation ponds on the salt flats of Chile's Atacama Desert

Creating a Google Earth tour

KEY SKILL Questioning & researching

There are a number of tools in Google Earth that you can use to better understand your world and to present information in an interesting way. One of these allows you to create a tour that visits different places.

Follow these steps to create a tour that visits three of the countries mentioned in the case study:

Step 1 Open Google Earth and use the search tool to find Mutanda Mine, a cobalt mine in the DRC.

Step 2 Add a placemark at this location using the 'pin' icon in the toolbar. Give your placemark the name 'Mutanda Mine'. As you do this, you will notice that the place name is added to the list of 'places' in the menu on the left-hand side of the Google Earth screen.

Step 3 Repeat these steps to add a placemark for Liumao, a site of graphite mines in China.

Step 4 Add a placemark for the evaporation ponds in Chile. These are located 200 kilometres east of the city of Antofagasta.

Step 5 You have now set the three stops on your Google Earth tour. Start the tour at your home by finding this location. Click the 'Record a Tour' icon, and this will open a small menu at the bottom of the screen. Once you click the red button in this menu, the program will record all the movements made on the screen.

Step 6 Click the red button and then the 'Mutanda Mine' label in the 'places' menu. Once this has been reached, click the 'Liumao' label in the same way and then the label for the evaporation ponds in Chile. When all three sites have been visited on the tour, stop recording by clicking the red button again.

Step 7 You have now created a tour. You can save this and replay it. You can also add it to PowerPoint presentations. By using other tools, you can add photographs and a commentary.

2.9 Check your learning

Quiz me! A quick quiz on drivers of ecosystem change

Comprehend

1 **Define** the term 'indirect drivers of change'.

2 **Identify** the causes of an increase in demand for lithium-ion batteries.

Analyse

3 **Examine** Source 10 on page 56.

- a Identify the two direct drivers that cause the most change on land, and in freshwater and oceans.
- b Which direct driver causes the least amount of change? Consider what might be included in this category.

4 **Distinguish** between direct drivers and indirect drivers of environmental change.

5 **Describe** the changes that occur to the rainforests of the DRC when cobalt is mined. Use Source 12 on page 57 to help you in your description.

Apply

6 Many people buy electric cars, as they believe they are a more 'environmentally friendly' option than cars powered by petrol or diesel. **Explain** why this choice may not be as friendly to the environment as people think, using evidence to support your answer.

7 a **Investigate** to find out which devices that you use are powered by lithium-ion batteries.

b Use the geographical concept of interconnections to **explain** how these batteries link you to natural environments in China, Chile and the DRC.

2.10 Pollution

Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» identify the ways that humans have caused environmental change through the pollution of land, air and water.

Pollution is any substance released into the environment that has harmful or poisonous effects. Polluting substances reduce the ability of the natural environment to provide ecosystem services.

Pollution is often a side-effect of a process intended to benefit human beings. Pesticides, for example, are designed to kill harmful insects that damage crops, but they can also pollute our water and kill beneficial organisms, such as bees. The loss of bees then reduces the amount of pollination that occurs, setting off a chain of negative effects in the environment.

Here, we look at some common forms of air, water and land pollution.

Air pollution

Air pollution is the contamination of the atmosphere through the release of harmful gases and small particles. This can happen on a variety of scales.

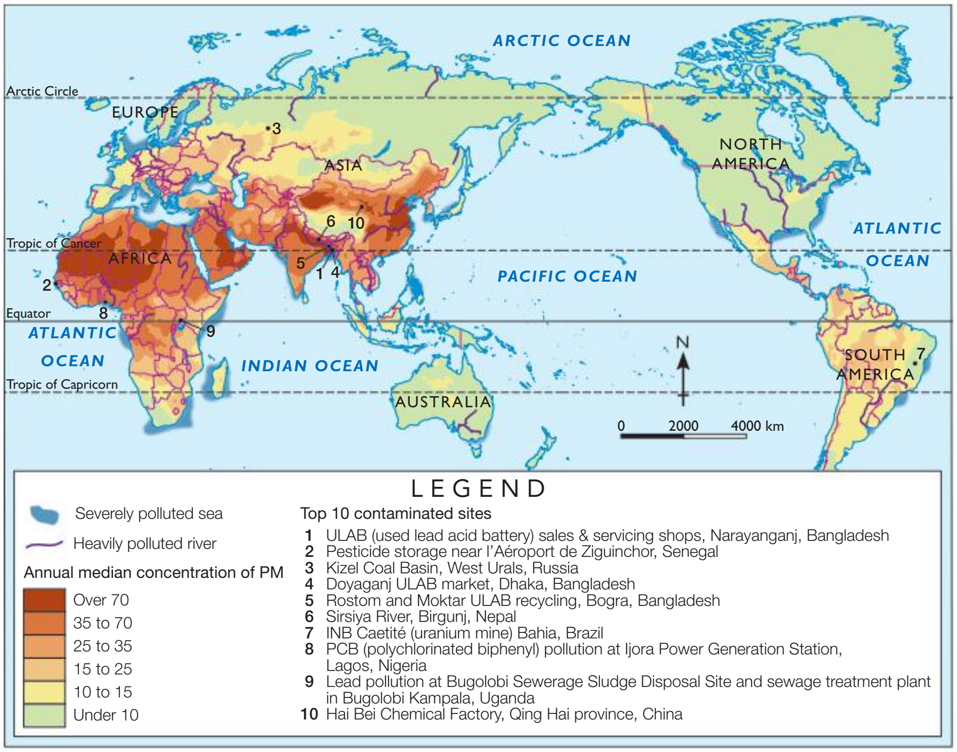
Source 15 In industrial areas – such as Dusseldorf in Germany – factories add to the air pollution created by power plants and transport.

- Sometimes it is *local*; for example, when a factory releases smoke and gases through a smokestack (chimney), which affects the visibility and breathing of people in neighbouring areas.
- In some industrial urban environments, factories, vehicles, houses and other sources of pollution combine to produce *large-scale* pollution, which affects the air quality right across the city (see Source 15).
- When this large-scale pollution causes changes to the atmosphere – such as when carbon dioxide and methane trap the sun's heat in the atmosphere and contribute to climate change – pollution occurs on a *global scale*.

Water pollution

Water pollution is the contamination of rivers, lakes, wetlands, estuaries, seas and oceans through the release of harmful substances. Water pollution can be caused by human activities on or near the water, such as shipping and deep-sea oil drilling. Ships, for example, release waste-water and oil into the sea, causing pollution. Land activities – sometimes a long way from water – can also lead to pollution entering our waterways. These land activities include farming (especially when using fertilisers and pesticides), littering, land clearing, creating tips and landfill, processing sewage and industrial activities. Industrial or farming waste released into a river can travel the length of that river and enter other waterways, causing water pollution over a widespread area. Likewise, litter washed down stormwater drains during a storm can end up polluting the ocean. We will explore water pollution further on page 62.

WORLD: GLOBAL DISTRIBUTION OF POLLUTION



Source 16 Source: Oxford University Press

Note: This map includes the annual median concentration of particulate matter (PM) in the air; the WHO considers levels above 12 to be unsafe.

Map it!
World: Global distribution of pollution

water tables
the highest underground level at which the rocks and soil in a particular area are completely wet with groundwater

Land pollution

Land pollution is the contamination of areas of land through the release of harmful substances. Soil contamination is often localised, such as at the sites of old petrol stations, battery-recycling plants, mines, sewage treatment facilities or landfill. Soil contamination can also occur on a much larger scale. One example is the increasing salinity in the soil resulting from rising **water tables** in Australia's Murray–Darling Basin. Land pollution can cause the contamination of groundwater, which is often an important source of drinking water.

Source 17 Some of the most contaminated places in the world are informal markets and factories in India and Bangladesh, where car batteries are dismantled to extract the lead.

2.10 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 a **Identify** the three main forms of human-induced pollution.

b In your own words, **define** each of the forms you named in question 1a.

Comprehend

2 Look closely at Source 16.

a Use the PQE method (see page 31 of 'The geography toolkit') to **describe** the distribution of severe air pollution.

b What link might exist between polluted rivers and polluted oceans? Can you find any examples of this link in Source 16?

c **Identify** the countries that experience more than one type of pollution. Use the world map at the back of this book to help.

3 **Explain** the personal and environmental impacts of dismantling car batteries (see Source 17).

4 **Explain** why pollution is considered a problem caused by humans.

Apply

5 Which type of pollution has the greatest impact on ecosystem services? **Justify** (give reasons for) your answer.

2.11 Water pollution

Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» describe the three main types of water pollutants.

Quiz me!
A quick quiz on water pollution

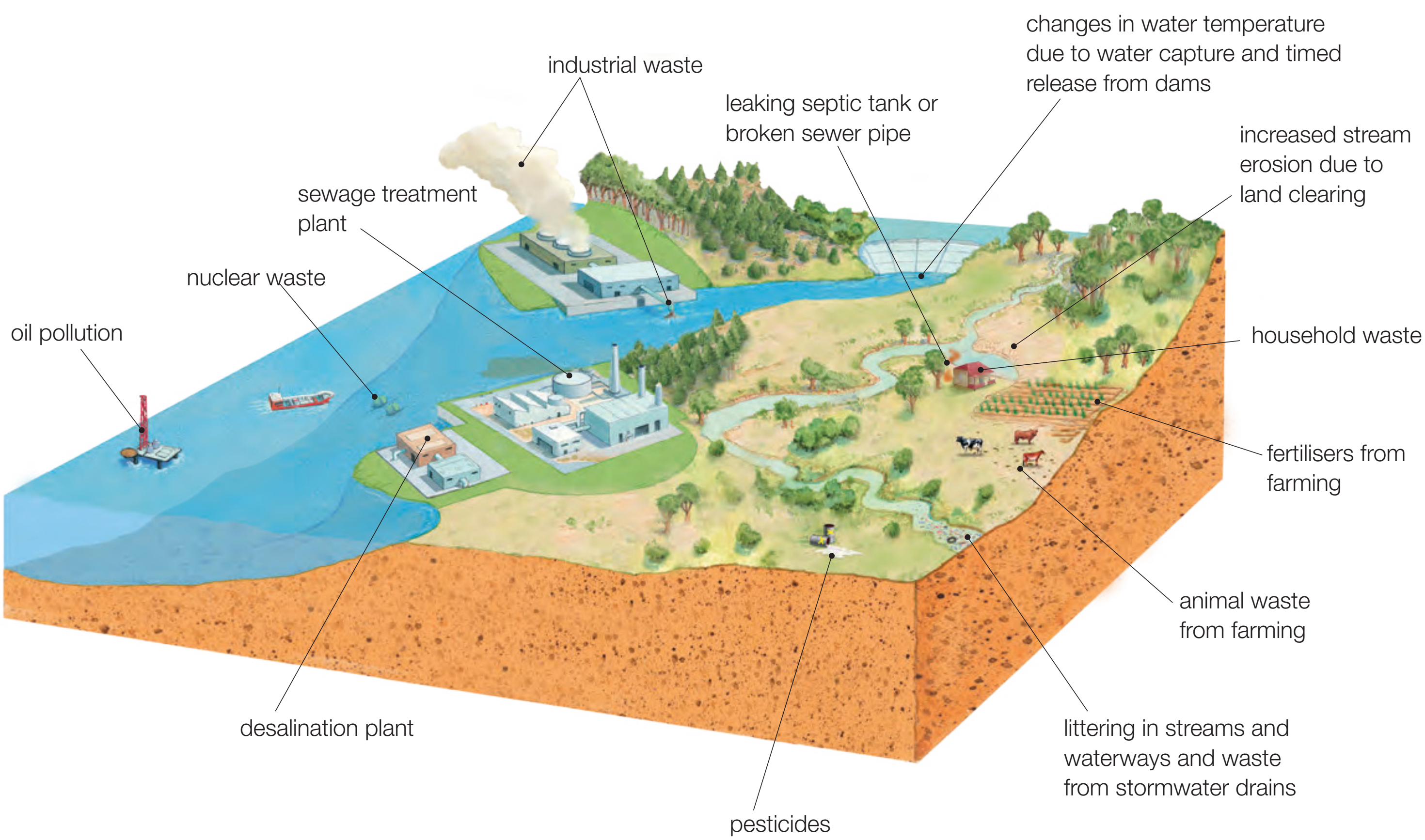
About 670 million people around the world today lack access to safe drinking water. This is due to many factors, one of which is the contamination of sources of fresh water – such as rivers, streams and groundwater – with harmful substances. As well as making water unsafe to drink, pollutants reduce the ability of the environment to provide other ecosystem services, such as food supply, pest control and recreation.

Pollutants that enter our waters can be classified as either physical, chemical or biological.

Physical pollutants

Physical pollutants include particles of soil eroded from the landscape and washed into the waterways, and any litter such as plastic bags, cigarette butts, shopping trolleys and tyres. It is estimated, for example, that more than 7 billion cigarette butts are thrown away carelessly in Australia each year. Many of these end up washed into drains and carried to streams and coasts where they release chemicals and present a danger to aquatic and marine life, and seabirds.

Soil washing into the waterways is a major source of pollution. These particles of soil can make water cloudy (increased turbidity) and prevent sunlight entering the water, affecting the plants and animals. When the sediment settles, it can smother small animals and plants living in the water. These sediment particles may also have other substances bound to them such as chemicals and bacteria that can cause pollution.



Source 18 Major sources of water pollution

Chemical pollutants

Chemical pollutants include heavy metals, oils, pesticides, fertilisers, industrial chemicals and salts. When the concentration of chemicals in waterways reaches levels that are above natural levels, it causes pollution. For example, too much of a fertiliser containing a nutrient like phosphate changes the chemical balance of water, causing excessive plant and algae growth.

Biological pollutants

Biological pollutants include bacteria, parasites, and invasive plants and animals. Biological pollutants come from a range of sources, including sewage treatment plants, farms, factories and storm water. They can cause harm to other plants and animals in the water, or cause harm to people who drink the water. Bacterial and parasitical water pollution – such as giardia – is usually spread by human and animal waste entering waterways, causing illness.

The Ganges River

One of the world's most polluted rivers is the Ganges River of India. An estimated 2.9 billion litres of sewage is emptied into it every day, creating a toxic river. In addition, the river is used to dispose of medical waste, dead bodies and waste from tanneries (where leather is made from animal skins) and other factories. A count of harmful bacteria in the river found levels 100 times higher than those considered safe for human use. Millions of people rely on the water of the Ganges for drinking, bathing and cleaning, as well as for its spiritual significance in the Hindu religion.

For more information on this key concept, refer to page 6 of 'The geography toolkit'.

Source 19 Untreated sewage flows from an open drain into the Ganges River in Kanpur, India.

KEY CONCEPT
Place

2.11 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 **Identify** the three main types of water pollution.

2 **Identify** which of these is the main source of pollutants in the Ganges River.

Analyse

3 **Classify** each of the sources of water pollution in Source 18 as physical, chemical or biological.

Apply

4 There have been several government attempts to reduce pollution in the Ganges River, but these have been largely ineffective. **Discuss** some possible reasons for this with a partner and then with your class.

5 The United Nations considers these 10 rivers to be the most 'at risk':

- Salween-Nu
- Danube
- La Plata
- Rio Grande
- Ganges
- Indus
- Nile
- Murray–Darling
- Mekong
- Yangtze.

a Locate and label each of these rivers on a world map and **describe** their distribution.

b **Investigate** the problems faced by one of the rivers listed.

c Present your findings to the class.

2.12 Climate change

Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» explain the nature of human-induced climate change and the challenges it poses.

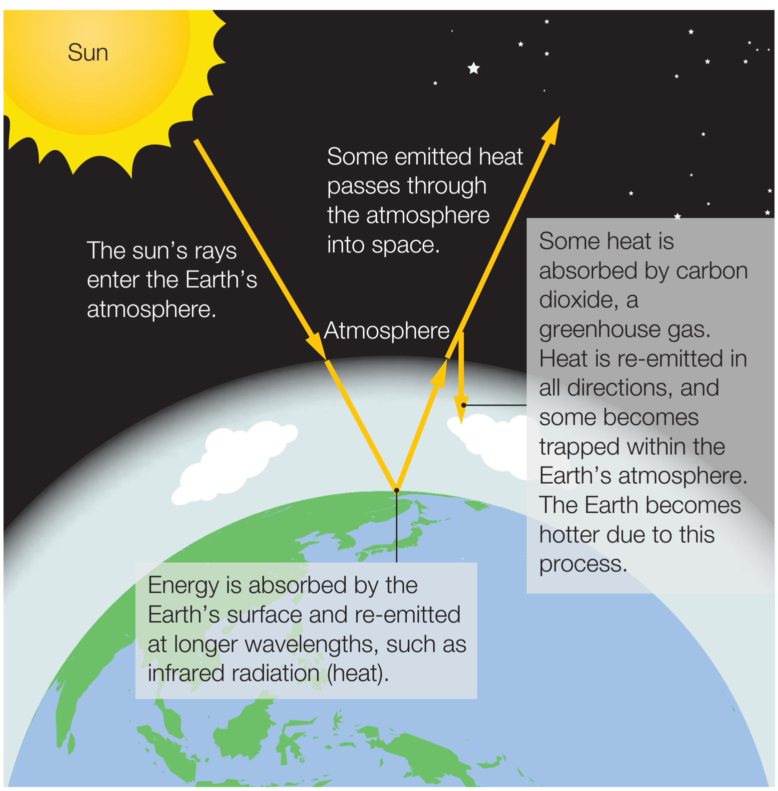
Although the world's climate has been naturally changing for millions of years, in more recent times there has been an increase in the concentration of certain gases in the atmosphere. Many of these gases – known as **greenhouse gases** – are found naturally in the environment, but human activities have increased their levels to a point where they are influencing the global climate. The four main greenhouse gases, and what human activities produce them, are:

- carbon dioxide – from burning fossil fuels, such as coal
- methane – from the large-scale farming of livestock
- nitrous oxide – from the use of fertilisers
- fluorinated gases – from refrigerators and solvents.

As these gases increase in the atmosphere, they trap more and more of the sun's heat. Over time, this causes the overall temperature of the atmosphere to increase. Average temperatures are now 1.1°C warmer than they were 200 years ago, and are increasing at a rate of 0.2°C every 10 years. This might not sound like much, but it is enough to change the global climate, leading to dramatic impacts on the world's ecosystems, including:

- changing rainfall patterns all over the world
- ice melting in polar regions
- less snow falling in mountainous regions
- rising sea levels (these have already risen by about 30 centimetres since 1900, and are predicted to rise a further 30 centimetres by 2050)
- more frequent and severe climate-related disasters, such as droughts, floods, cyclones and bushfires.

greenhouse gases
gases, such as carbon dioxide, that absorb radiation from the sun's rays, trapping heat in the Earth's atmosphere



Source 20 How an increase in greenhouse gases can cause the Earth to become hotter

Environmental responses to climate change

Ecosystems develop and flourish under specific environmental conditions. As climate change alters these conditions, the plants and animals within the ecosystems respond in one of four ways:

- They change their basic biology – certain animals may reproduce less often or lay smaller eggs.
- They change the timing of certain events, such as flowering – certain plants may flower earlier or later depending on the conditions. This can impact on creatures that rely on these plants for food.
- They die out – when a species dies out it can have serious impacts on the entire ecosystem.
- They move – in general, many plants and animals are moving towards the poles and into higher altitudes, as temperatures in these places are similar to those in their previous habitats. This affects plants and animals already living in these places.

The increasing bushfire risk in Australia

CASE STUDY

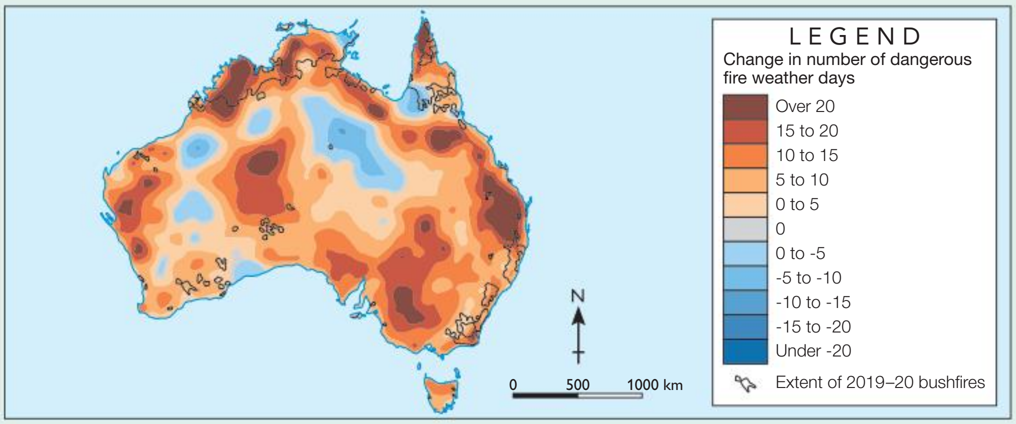
Meteorologists (scientists who study the weather) and fire experts have observed that bushfires in Australia are becoming larger, more frequent and more unpredictable. They have also observed that fire season in much of southern Australia is beginning earlier and finishing later than in the past. There are now up to 25 more dangerous fire weather days per year than was the case between 1950 and 1980 (see Source 21).

Extreme bushfires produce their own weather systems and thunderstorms, creating lightning – which, in turn, starts more fires. These are the types of conditions that occurred in the devastating 2009 Black Saturday bushfires in Victoria, and in the much larger bushfires that occurred all over Australia during the summer of 2019–20.

The scale of the 2019–20 fires was described by the President of the Australian Academy of Science as 'unprecedented anywhere in the world'. In saying this, he was referring not only to their size, but also to the impact they had on Australia's ecosystems and biodiversity. It is estimated that over a billion birds, mammals and reptiles were killed in the fires, as well as millions of other animals such as bats, frogs and fish. At least 50 species were pushed closer to the brink of extinction, including marsupials and birds that have existed in this country for millions of years.

Quiz me! A quick quiz on climate change

CHANGE IN THE NUMBER OF DANGEROUS FIRE WEATHER DAYS WHEN COMPARING 1950–80 TO 1980–2020



Source 21 Source: Oxford University Press/Bureau of Meterology

Enlarged map Change in the number of dangerous fire weather days

2.12 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 **Identify** three of the main causes of climate change.

2 **Recall** two ways that the environment responds to climate change.

Comprehend

3 **Explain** the work done by meteorologists that helps us to better understand changes in fire seasons in Australia.

4 Look at Source 3 on page 50, which gives details of Australian ecosystems showing evidence of collapse. In which of these ecosystems is bushfire a factor?

5 Use Source 21 to **describe** the pattern of changes in dangerous fire weather days.

6 **Explain** how changes in climate impact on bushfires in Australia.

Apply

7 **Discuss** with a partner how climate change affects ecosystem services (see page 48). Share these ideas with the rest of the class.

2B SKILLS IN CONTEXT

Retreating glaciers

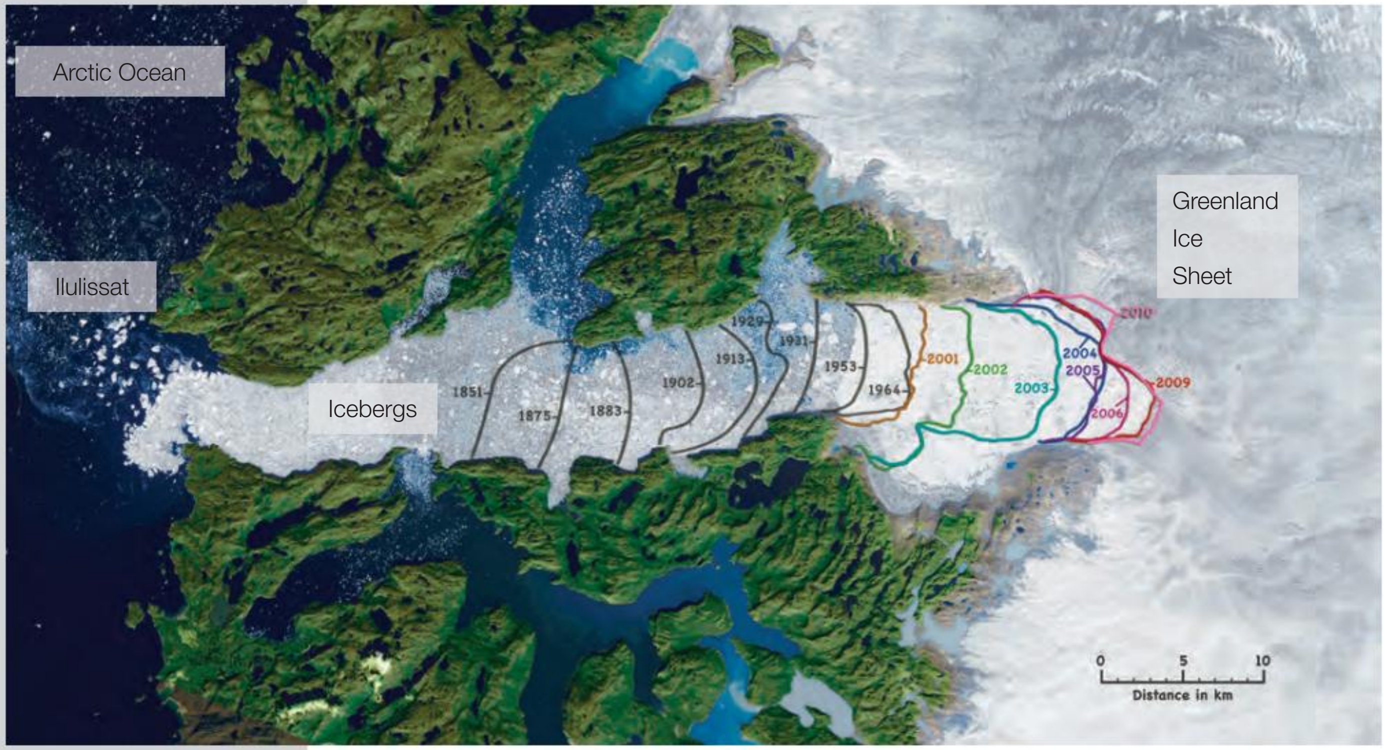
The Earth's average temperature is rising. As a result, sea levels are rising around the world. This is because water expands in volume when it heats up (known as thermal expansion). The warmer ocean and atmosphere also causes ice to melt, and as the ice in glaciers and ice sheets melts, it creates meltwater. This meltwater flows in rivers to the sea, also contributing to sea level rise.

Test me!
Once you've finished the topics in this section, test yourself with this quiz and find out which worksheet you should do.

The Greenland Ice Sheet is the second largest body of ice on Earth (the Antarctic Ice Sheet is the largest). In the past 30 years, the Greenland Ice Sheet has lost about 3900 billion tonnes of ice – contributing about 11 millimetres of the total sea level rise of 50 millimetres that occurred in the same period. The Greenland Ice Sheet feeds many large glaciers that carry ice and water to the Arctic and Atlantic Oceans. One of these is the Jakobshavn Glacier.

Like most of the world's 198 000 glaciers, the Jakobshavn Glacier is losing ice. As it enters the Arctic Ocean at its terminus (the end of the glacier), the ice melts and breaks into icebergs, which are carried by ocean currents until they melt (see Source 22). The icebergs and melted ice – like a giant slushy – can be clearly seen in the water in Source 23. Also marked on this satellite image are lines that show the terminus of the glacier in selected years. As you can see, the glacier's terminus is retreating backwards towards the ice sheet.

Source 22 Floating ice at the terminus of the Jakobshavn Glacier



Source 23 A satellite image of the Jakobshavn Glacier, showing changes in the location of the terminus between 1851 and 2010

KEY SKILL
Interpreting & analysing

Using a satellite image to investigate environmental change

Satellite images can provide an image of a large area of the Earth's surface. Therefore they have become one of the geographer's most useful tools when investigating the causes and impacts of environmental change. Satellites have been used to photograph the Earth's surface for over 60 years, allowing us to see how the surface has changed in that time. By using the line scale on the satellite image of Jakobshavn Glacier in Source 23, you will be able to investigate how this glacier has changed since 1851. An enlarged version is available on your obook pro. Follow these steps to begin your investigation:

Step 1 Look carefully at the image so that you have a good general understanding of what is being shown. Pay particular attention to the title (in the caption), the labels on the image and the scale.

Step 2 Locate the landscape being photographed in an atlas so that you can place it within its geographical context.

Step 3 Use the line scale to estimate the distance the terminus has retreated between 1851 and 2010. As each of the lines curve, you should use an imaginary line drawn in the centre of the glacier as your point of reference.

For more information on this skill, see page 24 of 'The geography toolkit'.

Practise the skill

1 Follow the steps above to estimate the total distance the Jakobshavn Glacier has retreated, as shown in Source 23.

2 Use Source 23 to estimate the annual rate of glacier retreat. This needs to be done carefully, as the dates shown on the image are not evenly spaced.

To calculate the annual rate of retreat, divide the distance of retreat by the number of years. In the first example this is 14 ÷ 51 = 0.274 kilometres per year. Convert this to metres by multiplying it by 1000: 0.274 x 1000 = 274 metres per year. Use a table like this one to record your findings.

Dates	Number of years	Retreat (in km)	Annual rate of retreat (metres/ year)
1851–1902	51	14	274
1902–1953			
1953–2010			

3 **Determine** whether the glacier's retreat is speeding up, slowing down or remaining about the same. Use data from your table to support your answer.

Additional resource
Satellite image of the Jakobshavn Glacier

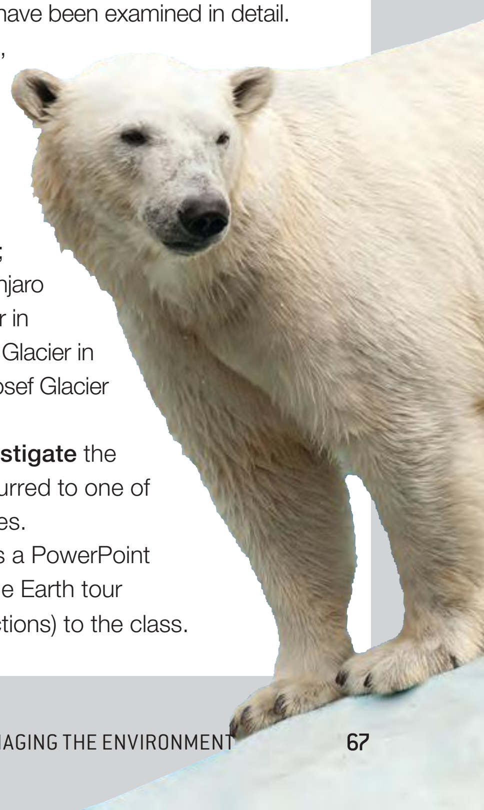
Extend your understanding

1 Use the historic imagery tool in Google Earth to explore satellite images of the Jakobshavn Glacier and the Greenland Ice Sheet. **Describe** the other environmental changes you notice in this area.

2 Many of the world's mountain and polar glaciers are retreating. Because of their locations, a number of these are difficult to study, but others have been examined in detail. A few have become famous, as images of them are often used by the media to demonstrate the reality of climate change. These include the Muir, Exit and Columbia Glaciers in Alaska; the glaciers of Mount Kilimanjaro in Tanzania; the Stein Glacier in Switzerland; the Petermann Glacier in Greenland; and the Franz Josef Glacier in New Zealand.

a Using the internet, **investigate** the changes that have occurred to one of these natural landscapes.

b Present your findings as a PowerPoint presentation or a Google Earth tour (see page 59 for instructions) to the class.



2.13 One world, many views

Learning intentions

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

- identify the influence of people's environmental world views regarding environmental management
- recognise differences in people's views about the importance of an environmental issue.

On 20 August 2018, 15-year-old Swedish schoolgirl Greta Thunberg unknowingly started a movement that would spread globally. On that day, instead of going to school, she decided that she would begin to protest outside the Swedish Parliament. Carrying a sign that translated to 'School Strike for Climate' (see Source 1) she demanded that the Swedish Government reduce the nation's greenhouse gas emissions. Posting on Instagram and Twitter, she invited others to join her.

By December 2018, more than 20 000 students had held strikes in many countries, including Australia. Greta Thunberg began appearing in newspaper and television reports, becoming a worldwide sensation. She met with the United Nations Secretary-General and spoke at the United Nations Climate Action Summit in New York. She was named *Time Magazine's* Person of the Year in 2019 and she has been nominated three times for the Nobel Peace Prize.

Source 1 Greta Thunberg begins her strike for climate action.

Critics of Greta Thunberg

While Greta Thunberg has many supporters around the world, she also has many critics. Presidents, prime ministers, newspaper columnists and internet trolls have all condemned her, labelling her a 'joke'. The then-President of Brazil, Jair Bolsonaro, called her a 'little brat' when she publicly condemned the killing of two indigenous men involved in a protest over the destruction of the Amazon rainforest. Under Bolsonaro's presidency, deforestation of the Amazon rainforest has significantly increased.

Source 2 A masked protester in Brazil holds the Brazilian Constitution. The sign on his forehead reads: 'Bolsonaro out and all scammers.'

Bolsonaro has consistently denied and rebuffed claims about this. When leaders of other nations objected to the land clearing, he told them: 'The Amazon is ours, not yours.' When presented with satellite images clearly showing the destruction of the landscape, he called them 'lies'.

Different world views

Why is it that some people become so passionate about preserving the natural environment while others do not? For example, when faced with the reality of climate change, one person demands that changes are made, while others see only the economic cost of making these changes. We can see these differences all over the world, wherever the natural environment is changing.

Studies show that different people view the environment in different ways because of the fundamental beliefs they hold about human beings and our place in the natural world. The reasons for holding these beliefs are very complex, but it appears that where we live, our standard of living, our education and our religious or cultural background all play important roles. Although each person's view of the world is unique, researchers classify world views into four major groups (see Source 3). It is important to understand that one view is not necessarily 'better' or 'worse' than another; it is simply different.

World views

- **Human-centred**
  - **Egocentric**
    I am the most important creature on Earth. Everything and everyone else is important to the extent that they support me and my lifestyle.
  - **Anthropocentric**
    Humans are the most important species. We are in charge of the Earth and the natural world. We can use nature to support us and our lifestyle.
- **Earth-centred**
  - **Ecocentric**
    We should do whatever we can to minimise our impact and preserve the Earth's biodiversity. We are no more important than any other organism.
  - **Biocentric**
    We have a responsibility to use the Earth's resources in a sustainable way. Other species may be useful to us but they also have as much right to exist as we do.

Source 3 World views about the environment

2.13 Check your learning

Comprehend

1 **Summarise** how Greta Thunberg's School Strike for Climate transformed into a global movement.

Analyse

2 Use Source 3 to **classify** Greta Thunberg's and Jair Bolsonaro's world views.

3 **Distinguish** between human-centred and Earth-centred world views.

4 **Examine** Source 3.

a Reflect on which of these four world view statements best reflects your own world view.

b Find a classmate with a similar world view to yours, and talk about what they think about Greta Thunberg's protest.

c Find a classmate with a very different world view to yours, and talk about what they think about Greta Thunberg's protest.

Apply

5 Differing world views may be the underlying cause of many conflicts and disagreements about the use of the natural environment. **Create** a scenario where a disagreement arises over the use of a natural environment you know well. Present your scenario as a newspaper article.

6 **Investigate** an individual interested in the natural environment, such as David Attenborough, David Suzuki, Rachel Carson, Wangari Maathai, Bob Brown or Amelia Telford. Investigate their contribution to our understanding of the natural world and their area of interest. How would you characterise their world view?

I used to think, now I think

Reflect on your learning about how people think about the world and complete the following sentences.

- I used to think ...
- Now I think ...

What has changed in your understanding?

Quiz me!
A quick quiz on different world views

2.14 Custodial responsibility

Learning intentions

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

- describe First Nations peoples' approaches to custodial responsibility and environmental management
- explain the role of First Nations rangers.

First Nations peoples have been part of the Australian landscape for at least 65 000 years. Over that time, they have developed a scientific understanding of and relationship with the land and the water that has helped them to survive and thrive in some of the harshest environments on Earth. As non-Indigenous Australians struggle with issues such as water scarcity and land degradation, some are learning that the principles followed by First Nations peoples provide a model that can help to view and use environmental resources more sustainably.

Source 4 According to the traditional beliefs of the Gagudju people of Kakadu, a creator-being, known as Almudj, created the waterholes of the region. Almudj brings the wet season every year, may appear as a rainbow, can punish people by drowning them, and lives in a pool beneath a waterfall.

Quiz me!
A quick quiz on custodial responsibility

KEY CONCEPT
Interconnections

Holistic views of the natural world

First Nations peoples believe that all features of a landscape – land, water, animals, plants and people – are inextricably linked to form one interconnected whole; and that change in one part of the landscape will bring change to the others. This holistic view, which dates back tens of thousands of years, is now accepted as scientific fact by many researchers and scientists, who refer to it as interconnection. It is a key component of First Nations peoples' views of Creation, as well as their management of land and water.

This holistic view of landscapes links indigenous peoples with the natural world. First Nations peoples have custodial responsibility for the land and water in the country of their birth, and this responsibility is passed to them by their ancestors and from them to their descendants. Water and land resources – such as rivers, lakes, billabongs and mountains – are protected by a complex series of laws, customs and beliefs. The Nyungar people of south-western Western Australia, for example, throw a handful of sand into streams and lakes as they approach, in order to warn the spirit of the water of their approach.

For more information on this key concept, refer to page 8 of 'The geography toolkit'.

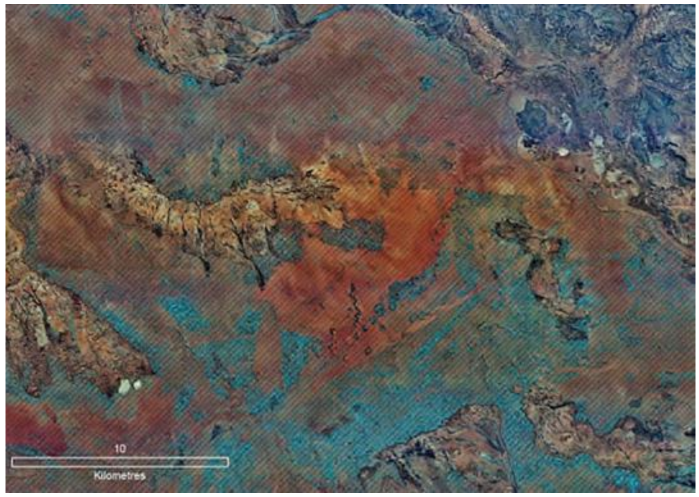
The Birriliburu Rangers

The Martu peoples have been living in the central deserts of Western Australia for at least 40 000 years. To put that number in perspective, when Egyptians laid the foundations for the pyramids in Cairo, the Martu peoples had already been in the desert for 35 000 years. In that time, they have developed a deep understanding of and relationship with the natural environment. The Martu peoples were granted native title of the Birriliburu Indigenous Protected Area (IPA) in 2002 and have custodial responsibility for the region. At 6.6 million hectares, the IPA contains amazing dune systems, salt lakes, clay pans and mountain ranges.

The Martu developed a network of First Nations rangers, whose role is to preserve and protect the unique features of this Western Desert landscape. Their work includes monitoring threatened species, removing invasive species and reintroducing the traditional fire regime.

The Birriliburu Rangers work in close partnership with other organisations, including the non-profit group Bush Heritage. The rangers share their knowledge of the landscape, including the importance of particular sources of food and water. In this way, the Martu peoples continue their ancient connection with this land, and the natural environment is better protected from both direct and indirect drivers of change.

This partnership with Bush Heritage involves sharing knowledge both ways in order to manage environmental change and challenges. Bush Heritage provides resources to the rangers, including specialist equipment, remote sensing cameras, satellite images and funds to pay wages. They help to maintain a complex database recording the names of plant and animal species in the area, and help record the impact of controlled burning on the landscape (see Source 5).



Source 5 Modern scientific techniques – such as this satellite image – can be combined with First Nations geographical knowledge to better understand and protect the Western Desert. This colour-enhanced image is used to investigate the impact of controlled burning on the spinifex trees and mulga trees of the region.

Source 6 First Nations peoples have long understood the importance of fire in the Australian landscape.

2.14 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 What is meant by 'custodial responsibility'?

Comprehend

2 What world view do you think might be held by somebody who is a Birriliburu Ranger? **Explain** why you think this.

3 **Explain** how First Nations peoples' connection to Country helps to manage scarce water resources in arid regions of Australia.

4 **Explain** why land management agencies such as Bush Heritage work with First Nations peoples to manage environmental change and challenges.

Apply

5 What are your beliefs about the natural environment? Where do these beliefs come from?

6 In groups, **discuss** the importance of non-Indigenous groups working with First Nations peoples to manage Australia's land and waters. Share your discussion with the rest of the class.

2.15 Managing salinity

Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» explain people's choices of methods for managing or responding to salinity.

Salt is a natural part of the Australian environment. Deposited by salt-laden winds from the sea and from the weathering of rocks, it is a component of most soils. It has been estimated, for example, that in parts of Western Australia the soil typically contains between 170 and 950 tonnes of salt per hectare. Because this salt has accumulated slowly over millions of years, Australia's native vegetation has adapted to the salty soils. The native deep-rooted trees and shrubs absorb much of the rainwater entering the soil. This keeps the water table low in the ground, and means that the salt stays deep in the soil and away from plant roots.

However, changes in the Australian landscape since the arrival of Europeans have significantly altered this system. Large areas of native vegetation have been cleared and replaced by shallow-rooted crops and grasses. This means that much more water is held in the soil and so the water table rises, bringing with it the salt that has accumulated over millions of years. It collects in low-lying areas, killing the introduced plants. As the water evaporates, salt is left at or near the surface, creating large salt pans where nothing can grow (see Sources 7 and 9). The salt is transported across the landscape by overland water flow, where it enters streams and rivers, causing widespread increased salinity.

In some places, irrigation increases the amount of water in the soil. This also has the effect of raising the water table and bringing salt to the surface.

Salinity is Australia's most serious and widespread land degradation issue, currently affecting 2.5 million hectares of farmland.

Photos for sketching
Salt pans in Australia

KEY SKILL
Questioning & researching

Annotating ground-level photographs

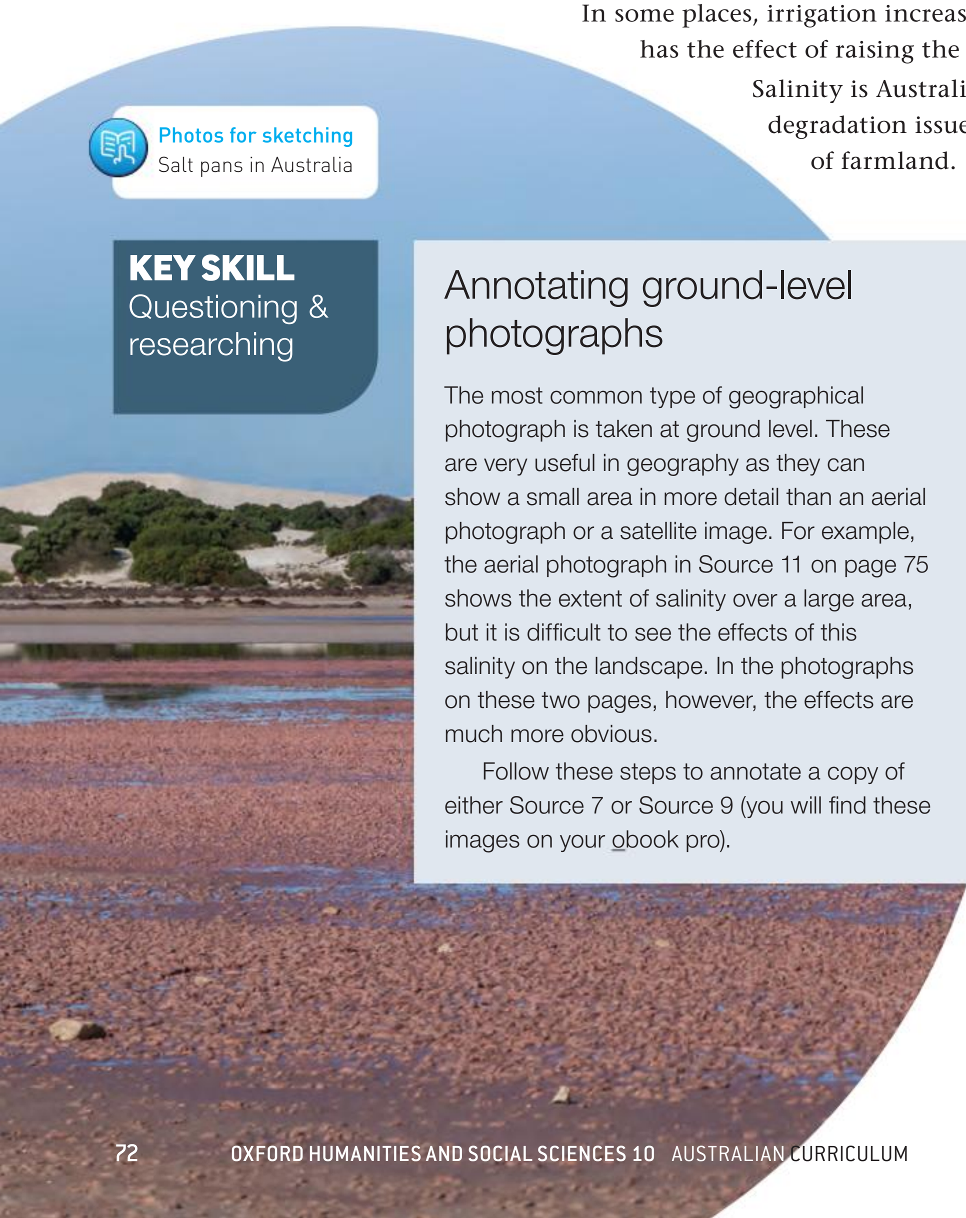
The most common type of geographical photograph is taken at ground level. These are very useful in geography as they can show a small area in more detail than an aerial photograph or a satellite image. For example, the aerial photograph in Source 11 on page 75 shows the extent of salinity over a large area, but it is difficult to see the effects of this salinity on the landscape. In the photographs on these two pages, however, the effects are much more obvious.

Follow these steps to annotate a copy of either Source 7 or Source 9 (you will find these images on your obook pro).

Step 1 Decide on the focus of your inquiry, in this case the impacts of salinity.

Step 2 Add labels such as text boxes and arrows to show key features linked to the focus of your inquiry. Source 11 on page 75 is an example of an annotated photograph. Aim for about six labels, each drawing attention to something different.

Step 3 Add a title that includes the focus of your inquiry and name of the place in the photograph.



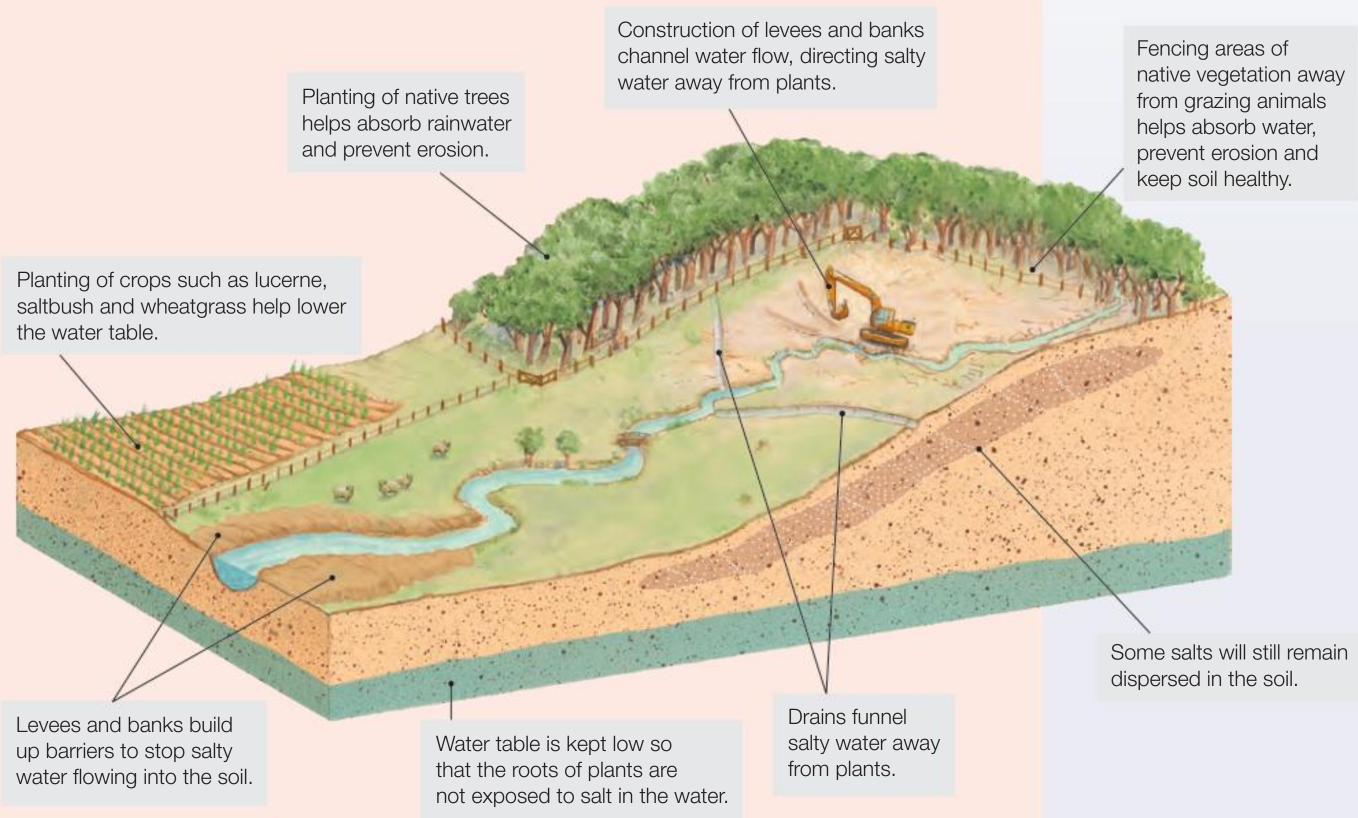
Source 7 A pink salt pan lake in South Australia

Managing salinity

Many Australian farmers, particularly in Western Australia, have responded to the threat of soil salinity by changing the ways in which they farm the land. Some of these changes have been more successful than others, but all are designed to use the soil in a more sustainable way. Source 8 shows some of the strategies used by farmers to combat soil salinity. The most successful strategy used so far appears to be lowering the level of the water table, which keeps salt in the water away from plants.

For more information on this key concept, refer to page 9 of 'The geography toolkit'.

KEY CONCEPT
Sustainability



Source 8 A range of responses and strategies can be used to tackle salinity.

Source 9 Salt rising to the surface in the south-western corner of Western Australia – a region known as the 'wheat belt'

CASE STUDY

Fighting salinity at Toolibin Lake

Toolibin Lake, in the Western Australian wheat belt, is a small ephemeral wetland (meaning it only fills with water occasionally, depending on rainfall).

As one of the last remaining freshwater wetlands in the region, it contains important habitats for a number of plant and animal species, many of which are endangered. In the 1970s, the lake bed began to show signs of increasing salinity, and a large number of trees died. Source 10 shows the distribution of salinity in the area. A geographical investigation found that this was due to the flow of salty water into the lake from surrounding farmland, together with a rising water table.

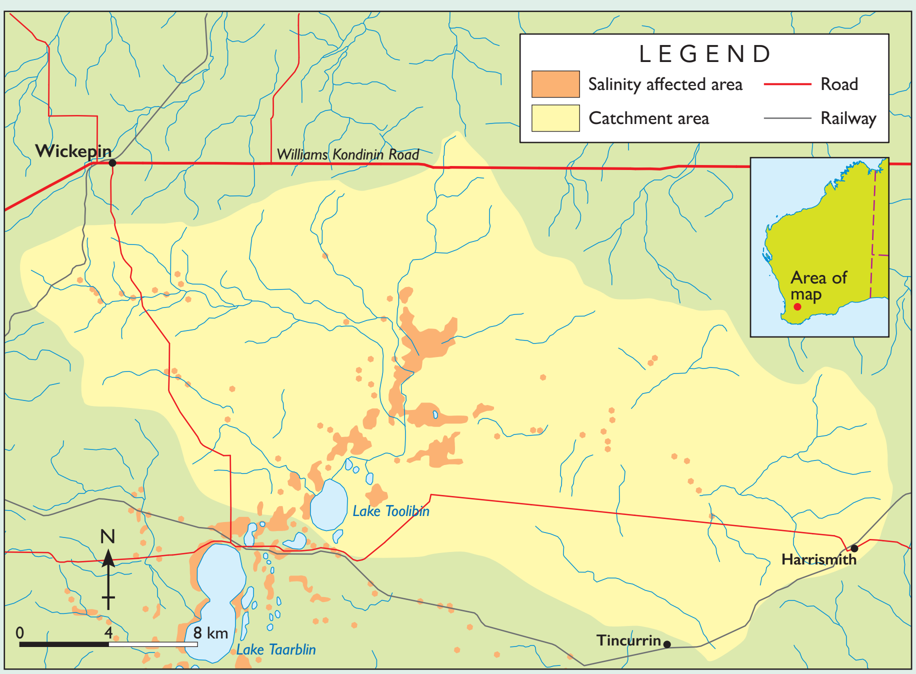
In the 1990s, a number of measures were put in place to lower the water table and reduce the salinity (Source 11). These measures included measuring the salt levels in the stream that flows into the lake and diverting excessively salty water to a nearby lake. Pumps on the lake bed were installed to lower the water table and to remove salty water from the soil. Around the lake, belts of trees were planted to intercept water as it flowed towards the lake and also to help in lowering the water table.

A review of these measures in 2010 showed that the water table had been held below the target of 1.5 metres across most of the lake. However, an analysis of satellite imagery from 1990 to 2009 showed that in some areas of the lake, trees had flourished; but in others, they had continued to decline.

Researchers then examined the ways in which the two dominant tree species, sheoak and paperbark, had responded to changing water and salt levels. They found that the trees had responded in very different ways. New sheoak seedlings were found on the floor of the lake, but the paperbark trees had continued to decline in health and numbers.

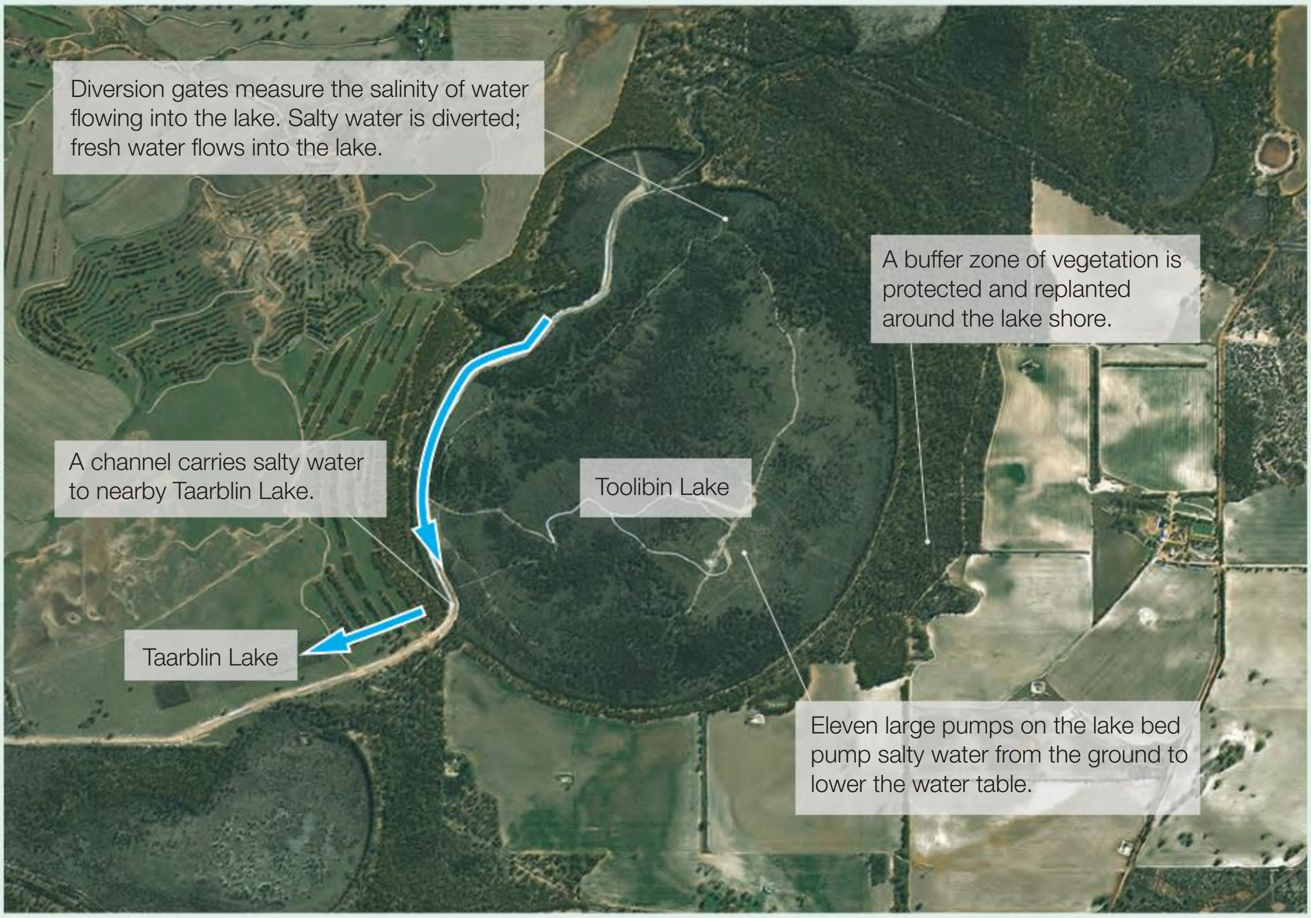
This information has been used to develop new management plans for the lake, working with the local Landcare group. Landcare is a national network of thousands of locally based community groups, whose members care for the natural resources of Australia. With regard to Toolibin Lake, much of the work has focused on increasing the number of trees planted on surrounding farms. The farms in the area tend to grow cereal crops, such as wheat. Getting the farmers to plant trees will further reduce salinity across the region.

TOOLIBIN LAKE: AREAS OF SALINITY



Source 10 Source: Oxford University Press

Enlarged map
Toolibin Lake: Areas of salinity



Source 11 An aerial photograph of Toolibin Lake, showing the measures used to lower the water table and reduce salinity

2.15 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 **Identify** where salt in the soil comes from naturally.

2 How does modern farming affect salinity in Australia?

3 How did the water in Toolibin Lake become saltier?

Analyse

4 **Classify** the causes of salinity at Toolibin Lake using the SHEEPT method (see page 30 of 'The geography toolkit').

5 **Examine** Source 10.

a Identify the type of scale used in this map.

b Using the PQE method (see page 31 of 'The geography toolkit'), describe the distribution of salinity around Toolibin Lake.

c With reference to Source 11, explain how salinity is being managed at Toolibin Lake.

Apply

6 **Investigate** how farmers throughout the wheat belt may be able to lower the water table and reduce salinity.

7 In small groups, **discuss** why repairing land degradation in the Toolibin Lake area has been so difficult. What do you think this means for repairing the damage of a much larger area, such as the entire Western Australian wheat belt?

Quiz me!
A quick quiz on managing salinity

2.16 Managing deforestation

Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» explain people's choices of methods for managing or responding to deforestation.

One of the leading causes of land degradation on a global scale is deforestation. Forests have been cleared by humans for thousands of years. Traditionally, this has been done for farming, to clear the way for human settlements and to provide building materials. Today, two key economic realities continue to drive deforestation:

1 Trees grow slowly and other crops, such as soya beans, grow quickly. As populations continue to grow and expand, and people tend to their current needs rather than the needs of future generations, forests continue to be cleared and replaced by farms to provide people with income and food.

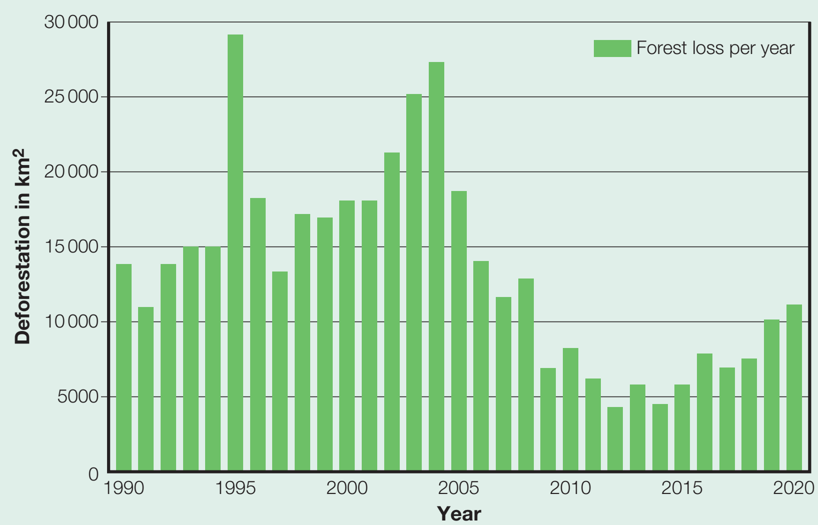
2 Many ecosystem services provided by forests – such as absorbing and storing carbon and filtering water – do not have a monetary value and cannot be bought and sold. Produce from farms and timber from forests are easily bought and sold, and so are seen as more valuable to local populations than intact forests.

CASE STUDY

The Amazon rainforest

The Amazon, the world's largest tropical rainforest, provides an example of the changes that are sweeping across many forest biomes today. It is a vast biome, covering an area of more than 5 million square kilometres – roughly the size of Australia. While most of the Amazon rainforest lies in Brazil, it also stretches into seven neighbouring countries, including Peru.

Well known as a biodiversity hotspot due to its large numbers of plant and animal species, the Amazon is now considered to be an environmental hotspot too. Since the 1970s, an area the size of New South Wales has been cleared for other uses, and in recent years, clearing has accelerated (see Source 12). Some climate scientists believe that unless the remaining rainforest is protected, a combination of climate change, droughts, fires and deforestation will gradually turn the rainforest into savannah and grasslands.



Source 12 Annual deforestation of the Amazon rainforest in Brazil

KEY SKILL
Interpreting & analysing

Using satellite images to analyse environmental change

Satellite images are a useful tool for observing change over a large region of the Earth's surface. By examining them closely, you can describe changes that have occurred over time and suggest explanations for these changes.

Step 1 Examine two satellite images taken at the same location at different points in time.

Step 2 Using an atlas, locate the area on the Earth's surface that the satellite images show.

Step 3 Look closely at the image that was taken at the earlier point in time. Describe the natural and human features that you can see.

Step 4 Look closely at the second image. Describe the differences between the first image and the second one.

Step 5 Try to quantify the changes. For example, if there has been deforestation, calculate the area of cleared land shown in each of the images. The difference will give you the area that has changed over time.

Step 6 Suggest an explanation for these changes, based on your observations.

For more information on this skill, see page 24 of 'The geography toolkit'.

Practise the skill

1 The satellite images in Source 13 show a section of the Amazon rainforest surrounding the town of Yurimaguas in north-western Peru in 2001 and 2019. Follow the steps above to describe the satellite images shown, and **explain** the changes that have taken place in this section of the rainforest over the 18-year period.

Source 13 Two satellite images of a section of the Amazon rainforest surrounding the town of Yurimaguas in north-western Peru – the image on the left was taken in 2001 and the image on the right was taken in 2019. Rivers can be seen as brown ribbons. Light green shading represents farmland and dark green shading shows the rainforest areas.

Source 14 A section of the Amazon rainforest in Brazil that has been cleared for a soy plantation

Explore it!
Take a virtual field trip to the Amazon Rainforest

Managing change in the Amazon rainforest

Many of the world's forested areas have been altered by human activities. It has been estimated that of the 60 million square kilometres of forest that once covered the Earth, only about two-thirds still remain. Each year the world loses about 230 000 square kilometres of forest – most of it converted to farmland to grow food to support growing populations. For reference, the entire state of Victoria is around 227 000 square kilometres in size. While deforestation may seem to be an unstoppable process, there are encouraging signs of change in some regions of the world, including the Amazon rainforest.

By studying satellite images (such as those shown in Source 13), scientists have been able to estimate that 18 per cent of the Amazon rainforest has been lost since 1970. The vast size of the forest, and the types of changes that are taking place there, make it a very difficult environment in which to manage change. There are indications, however, that international cooperation and modern spatial technologies may be helping to slow the rate of deforestation in the Amazon.

Source 15 Tumucumaque Mountains National Park in Brazil is the world's largest tropical forest national park. It is now part of the ARPA program and is protected by law from deforestation.

Amazon Region Protected Areas

The Amazon Region Protected Areas (ARPA) program is the largest tropical forest conservation effort in the world. Led by the Brazilian Ministry for the Environment and funded by a number of organisations – such as the World Bank, the German Government and the World Wildlife Fund – it aims to protect 600 000 square kilometres of rainforest.

Areas suitable for conservation are identified in the forest and then protected from deforestation by Brazilian law. Some of the identified areas have been partially deforested in the past and are now managed by local communities in order to rehabilitate them. This allows the forest to recover.

By 2020, 582 000 square kilometres of the Amazon were protected by law. This figure meant that the Brazilian Government was on target to achieve its goal of tripling the area of the rainforest under protection, compared to levels in 2000.

Modern spatial technologies

The Amazon rainforest is home to hundreds of indigenous tribes who have been greatly affected by deforestation. Because no official records are kept, it can be difficult for indigenous tribes to prove ownership of the land on which they have lived for thousands of years. This situation can make them – and their tribal lands – vulnerable to the influences of outsiders who have an established record of moving in, claiming the land and clearing it for use as farms, mines and dams.

Modern spatial technologies such as global positioning systems (GPS) and Google Earth are beginning to change this situation. Some tribes, such as the Trio people of Suriname, have been provided with handheld GPS devices and training that allows them to map the area of the forest in which they live. The Suriname Government has begun to recognise these digital maps as official documents that can provide the tribespeople with proof of ownership of the forest.

Source 16 A Trio tribesman in Suriname uses a GPS device to help map his forest home.

In Brazil, some tribes are investigating possible threats to their homeland by using the satellite and aerial images on Google Earth. By looking closely at the images they can see changes over time, investigate these and pass on information to government officials. These changes may include expanding soya bean farms, or runoff from a mine changing water quality in streams and rivers.

2.16 Check your learning

Comprehend

1 **Explain** why forests are cleared.

2 **Summarise** the predictions climate scientists have made for the Amazon rainforest in the future.

3 **Describe** the ARPA program. What are its aims?

Analyse

4 How have modern spatial technologies helped to protect forest areas in the Amazon rainforest?

5 **Examine** Source 12.
   a Describe the trend in Amazon rainforest loss in Brazil since 1990.
   b Roughly calculate the average amount of rainforest lost each year.

6 a **Infer** (suggest) what the environmental world view might be of the Trio tribesman in Source 16 and the owner of the soy plantation in Source 14.
   b **Compare** these world views and why you think each of these people might hold them.

Apply

7 The image in Source 16 was taken near the village of Kwamalasamutu in Suriname. Use Google Earth to locate this village, and then zoom out to **investigate** changes such as deforestation nearby.

8 Imagine that the Brazilian Government decided to ban forest clearing and instead encouraged people to replant the forest.
   a **Predict** how this decision would affect ecosystem services and the Brazilian economy.
   b Is this likely to happen? **Justify** (give reasons for) your answer.

2.17 Challenges to sustainability

Learning intentions

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

- » explain the concept of sustainability
- » identify tensions between conflicting perspectives of communities, businesses and government.

Virtually all human activities impact on the natural environment in some way, but humans can reduce these impacts by using the Earth's resources sustainably. The concept of **sustainability** relates to the ongoing capacity of the environment to support all living things into the future. The sustainable use of resources such as fossil fuels, forests and oceans is about carefully managing these resources so that they meet the needs of today without compromising the ability of future generations to do the same – put simply, it is about using the Earth's resources at levels that allow the planet to replace or replenish them naturally. This is a particularly important concept when we consider our use of natural resources that supply us with food and water, such as forests, rivers, the oceans and farmland. If resources are used sustainably, the quality of the environment is maintained and the resources will continue to provide for future generations.

sustainability
the ongoing capacity of Earth to maintain all life

CASE STUDY

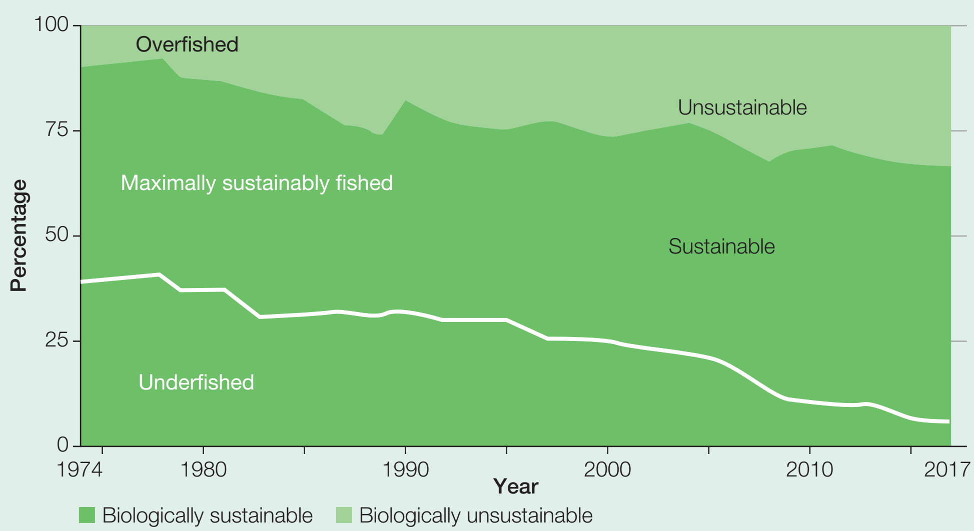
The fishing industry and world fish production

Fish are a vital food resource, providing over 15 per cent of the animal protein eaten each day by 3 billion people. Currently, about 600 million people are employed in the fishing (fish catching) or aquaculture (fish farming) industries.

Many of the world's fish species, however, have been fished beyond sustainable levels and their numbers are now in serious decline (see Source 18). More than one-quarter of the species investigated by the United Nations are described as being 'overfished' and have no potential for increased production in the future. Most fish species are described as being 'maximally sustainably fished'. This means that they are currently being fished at the limit of their sustainable level.

Unsustainable levels of fishing are being driven by the food demands of an increasing world population and by modern fishing techniques. These techniques include using spotter planes and GPS to locate large schools of fish, fishing in deeper waters and dragging huge nets along the ocean floor. Fewer and fewer fish are now surviving to adulthood, because they are being caught and eaten as juveniles, before they have had a chance to breed and produce more fish. This means that the fish being caught are not being replaced.

Source 17 These Bluefin tuna are caught in the Mediterranean Sea and then fattened in cages, before being shot, frozen and shipped to Japan to become sushi. Remaining stocks of wild tuna are listed as endangered species, but little is being done to protect them.

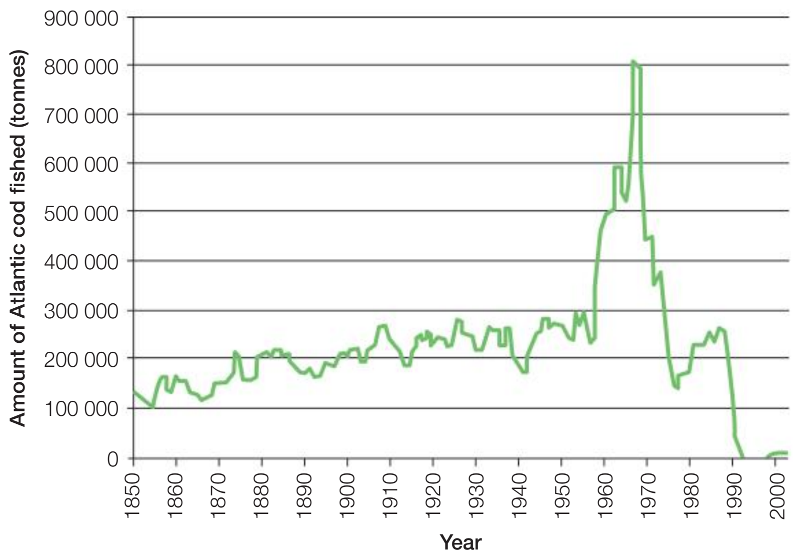


Source 18 Global trends in world marine fish species supplies since 1974

Source: Food and Agriculture Organization of the United Nations

A warning from the past: The disappearing Atlantic cod

The people of the north-western United States and Canada have fished the coastal waters of the Atlantic Ocean for hundreds of years. The most prized fish of their catch is the Atlantic cod, which once existed in vast numbers. Up until the mid-1950s, around 300 000 tonnes of Atlantic cod were caught each year in the region's waters. By the middle of the 1960s, large-scale fishing trawlers, using vast nets and mechanical winches, were catching 100 tonnes of Atlantic cod an hour. By 1968, the amount caught peaked at more than 800 000 tonnes, before the Atlantic cod population collapsed. Despite attempts to protect the remaining cod in the past few decades, the population has never recovered (see Source 19).



Source 19 The amount of Atlantic cod fished off the east coast of Newfoundland, Canada, 1850–2000

Making fishing sustainable

In more recent times, countries such as Australia, New Zealand and the United States have put in place fisheries management plans to make their fishing industries sustainable and to ensure good numbers of fish in the ocean in the future. These plans monitor fish populations and place quotas on the fishing industry, limiting the numbers of fish that can be caught. The plans have proven very effective at increasing and maintaining fish numbers.

Consumers can also play a part in ensuring the sustainability of fish supplies by choosing to only eat fish that have been farmed or caught in sustainable ways. Organisations such as the Australian Marine Conservation Society provide lists of fish that are safe to eat and fish that you should avoid because they are endangered.

Additional resource
Numbers of Atlantic cod, 1850–2000

Quiz me!
A quick quiz on challenges to sustainability

2.17 Check your learning

Retrieve

1. In your own words, **define** 'sustainability'.
2. Why is the history of Atlantic cod fishing an example of unsustainable resource use?

Analyse

3. Annotate a copy of Source 19 to describe the important trends and changes in the numbers of Atlantic cod caught off the east coast of Newfoundland, 1850–2000.

Apply

4. Aquaculture is seen by many as the best way of providing fish for human consumption in the future. **Investigate** this booming industry. Do you see this as a sustainable alternative to traditional fishing? Justify your position.
5. **Create** a line graph to explore global trends in fish supplies into the future.
   a. Draw up a set of axes: the vertical axis (*y*-axis) should show the percentage of fish species from 0 to 100 per cent. The horizontal axis (*x*-axis) should show the year from 1974 to 2050.
   b. Copy the line showing fish species that are 'overfished' from Source 18 onto your graph.
   c. Based on the trend from 1974 to 2017, continue this line in a different colour to show the likely trend until 2050.
   d. Describe the trend shown on your completed graph. If your prediction turns out to be true, what will this mean for the fishing industry and consumers around the world?

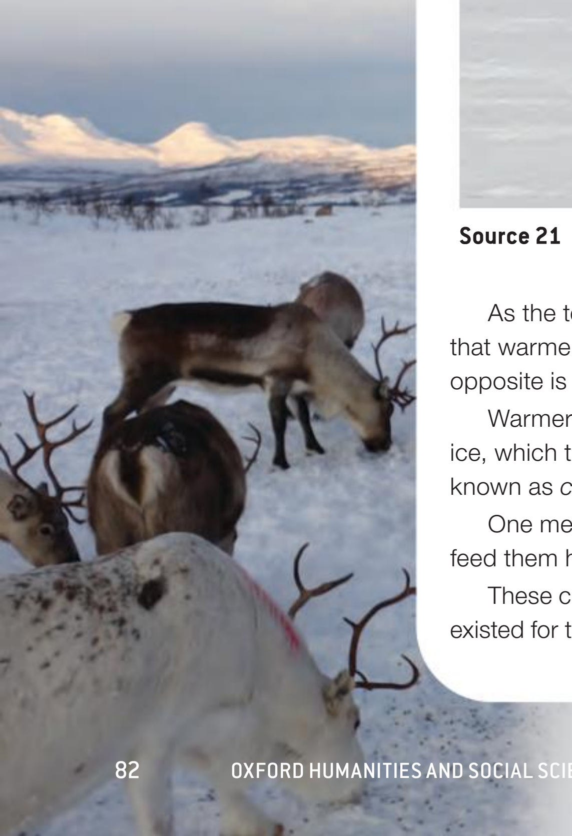
2C SKILLS IN CONTEXT

Test me!
Once you've finished the topics in this section, test yourself with this quiz and find out which worksheet you should do.

Climate change and the Saami people

One of the largest indigenous groups in the Arctic region is the Saami peoples of northern Scandinavia. Numbering around 70 000 people and living in one of the world's harshest environments, many Saami groups rely on traditional reindeer herding for their livelihood. They migrate north in spring and summer, and south in winter to find sufficient food, such as grass and small shrubs, for their herds. A typical herd is made up of several thousand reindeer. Typically, Saami herders will travel hundreds of kilometres a year with their herds.

Source 21 Saami herders move their reindeer herd north in spring.



Source 20 Part of a reindeer herd in Troms County, Norway

As the temperature warms, this traditional way of life is under threat. While it might seem that warmer temperatures would bring better grazing conditions to the frozen Saami lands, the opposite is true.

Warmer winter temperatures melt the snow, turning it to water. It then refreezes as a layer of ice, which the reindeer cannot penetrate to reach the lichen (their food source) below. This ice is known as *cuokke* to the Saami peoples and can result in their herds starving to death.

One method used by the Saami peoples to combat this has been to keep herds in pens, and feed them hay and straw. However, this food is expensive and difficult to find.

These changing conditions may bring an end to the Saami's nomadic way of life which has existed for thousands of years.

KEY SKILL
Concluding & decision making

Proposing a management strategy in response to an environmental change

Follow these steps when proposing a strategy to respond to environmental change:

Step 1 Research the environmental change. This may take the form of a primary investigation such as fieldwork, or a secondary investigation such as researching journals, newspapers, websites and books. As with all secondary sources, make sure that the sources you use are reliable, and use a variety of sources to help combat bias. It is a good idea to take notes from your sources in a research table, like the one below.

Step 2 Investigate the ways in which communities have responded to similar changes in other places.

Step 3 In groups, brainstorm a wide range of possible strategies to respond to the environmental change. The aim here is not to decide which would work and which would not, but to unlock as many possible responses as you can.

Step 4 Sort your proposed strategies into those that respond to the causes of the change and those that respond to the effects. Rank the two lists in order, according to how well you feel they respond to the environmental change.

Step 5 Select the strategy that you believe best responds to the environmental change. Write a proposal recommending the adoption of this strategy, including:

- a background to the environmental change, including a location map of the place you have investigated
- an outline of your proposed strategy; you may like to use diagrams, sketches and photographs to support your proposal
- a discussion of why you believe this is the best response, using TEEL paragraphs; here, include evidence from your research in steps 1 and 2 to support your proposal
- a brief outline of the possible barriers to implementing this strategy; you may also like to include suggestions for overcoming these barriers
- a bibliography of your source material.

For more information on this skill, see page 33 of 'The geography toolkit'.

Source of information for bibliography	Notes on drivers of the environmental change		Impacts of the environmental change	
	Direct drivers	Indirect drivers	Impacts on the natural environment	Impacts on the human environment

Practise the skill

1 Follow the steps above to suggest a management strategy to respond to the problems faced by the Saami peoples.

Extend your understanding

1 Select one of the other environmental changes described in this chapter, such as:

- soil erosion
- desertification
- salinity
- air, land or water pollution
- ecosystem collapse
- loss of biodiversity
- overfishing.

Complete the steps in the key skill box to research the change and suggest a management strategy.

2 CHAPTER REVIEW

Review activity

Enlarged map
Elwha River

Read the information and examine Sources 22 and 23, then answer the questions below.

Dam busters

In the north-western United States, two large dams are being torn down, piece by piece. For nearly 100 years there have been hydroelectricity dams on the Elwha River in Washington state, but in 2011 excavators mounted on barges began dismantling them.

Most of the Elwha River runs through the Olympic National Park. Studies on the impact of the dams found that natural ecosystems had significantly declined in quality and capacity as a result. The greatest impact was on the Chinook salmon, whose migration to spawning rivers had been blocked. This resulted in a 70 per cent decrease in spawning sites (where salmon reproduce). As a result, the river fertility decreased, reducing the amount of food available to wildlife – for example, bears – in the national park. By removing the dams, it is hoped that the natural ecosystems will be restored.

1 **Summarise** the impact of the original dams on the ecosystem services in the region. (2 marks)

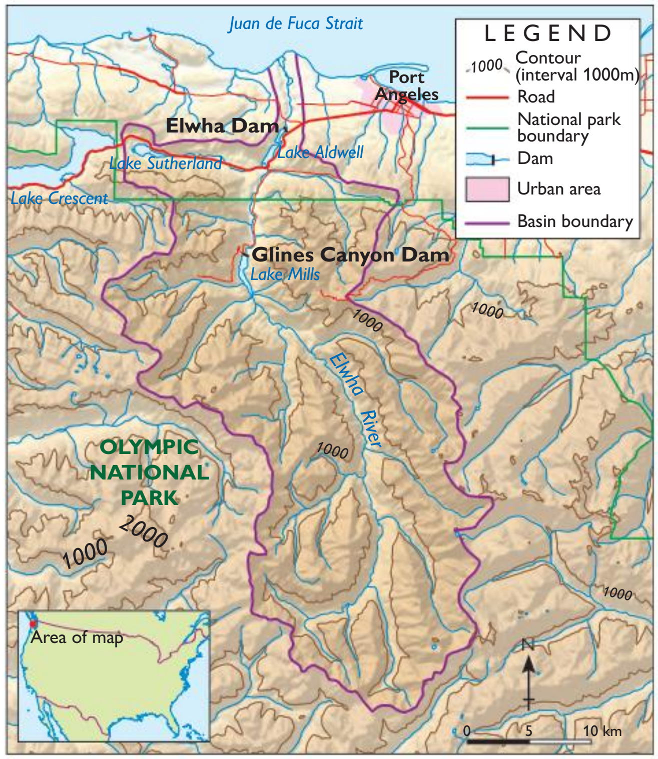
2 **Identify** three reasons why the dams have been removed. (3 marks)

3 **Examine** Source 22.
   a Identify the type of scale used in this map. Then, use the scale to estimate the distance between the Elwha and Glines Canyon Dams. (2 marks)
   b Identify the direction in which the Elwha River flows between these two dams. Support your answer with evidence from the map. (2 marks)
   c Use evidence from the map to explain the ways in which the dams impacted the water resources in this region. (3 marks)
   d Use the contour lines on the map and Source 23 to describe the topography (shape of the land) in this region. (2 marks)

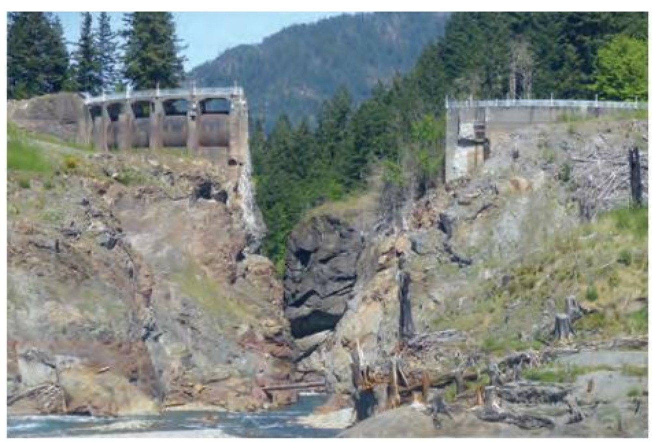
4 In a carefully worded paragraph, **analyse** how the removal of these dams is an example of the geographical concept of sustainability. (6 marks)

(Total: 20 marks)

ELWHA RIVER: FORMER LOCATIONS OF THE ELWHA DAM AND THE GLINES CANYON DAM



Source 22 Source: Oxford University Press



Source 23 The Elwha Dam has been removed.

Chapter checklist

Now that you have completed this chapter, reflect on your ability to do the following:

	I can do this.	I cannot do this yet.
Understand the human-induced changes that challenge the sustainability of places and environments.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 2.1, page 38.
Explain the nature of human-induced land degradation and the challenges it poses.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 2.2, page 40.
Explain the nature of human-induced atmospheric degradation and the challenges it poses.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 2.3, page 42.
Explain the nature of human-induced water degradation and the challenges it poses.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 2.4, page 44.
Define the four S's of ecosystem services. Explain the importance of these services.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 2.5, page 48.
Understand the challenges environmental change has for the sustainability of ecosystem services.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 2.6, page 50.
Describe how invasive species threaten the sustainability of the environment.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 2.7, page 52.
Explain the nature of human-induced loss of biodiversity and the challenges it poses.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 2.8, page 54.
Identify the ways that humans have caused environmental change.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 2.9, page 56.
Identify the ways that humans have caused environmental change through the pollution of land, air and water.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 2.10, page 60.
Describe the three main types of water pollutants.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 2.11, page 62.
Explain the nature of human-induced climate change and the challenges it poses.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 2.12, page 64.
Identify the influence of people's environmental world views regarding environmental management. Recognise differences in people's views about the importance of an environmental issue.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 2.13, page 68.
Describe First Nations peoples' approaches to custodial responsibility and environmental management. Explain the role of First Nations rangers.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 2.14, page 70.
Explain people's choices of methods for managing or responding to salinity.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 2.15, page 72.
Explain people's choices of methods for managing or responding to deforestation.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 2.16, page 76.
Explain the concept of sustainability. Identify tensions between conflicting perspectives of communities, businesses and government.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 2.17, page 80.

Check your Student obook pro for these digital resources and more:

Student book questions
Chapter 2

Key skill worksheet
Communicating:
Chapter 2

Quizlet
Play a game of Quizlet on Changing and managing the environment.

Chapter review quiz
Chapter 2

CHAPTER 3

Coastal change and management

Coasts are areas where the land meets the sea. Home to more than one billion people around the world, coastal areas are some of the most visited and heavily populated areas on the planet. Human activities in coastal areas have affected many of the environmental processes there. This has led to a wide range of issues including a loss of biodiversity, high levels of pollution, erosion, and increased vulnerability to rising sea levels. In fact, coasts are one of the Earth's most threatened environments.

Coasts are critically important – not only to the people who live along them, but also to the health of the planet. Around the world, geographers are playing a vital role in developing strategies to manage these problems and protect coasts for future generations.

Source 1 The Cinque Terre coast in Italy faces a range of management issues. The most pressing of these is the impact of the 2.5 million tourists who visit the area's five villages each year.

3A
How is the coastal environment changing?

3B
How can coastal changes be managed?

3C
How can geographers help to manage coastal changes?

3.1 Change in coastal environments

Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

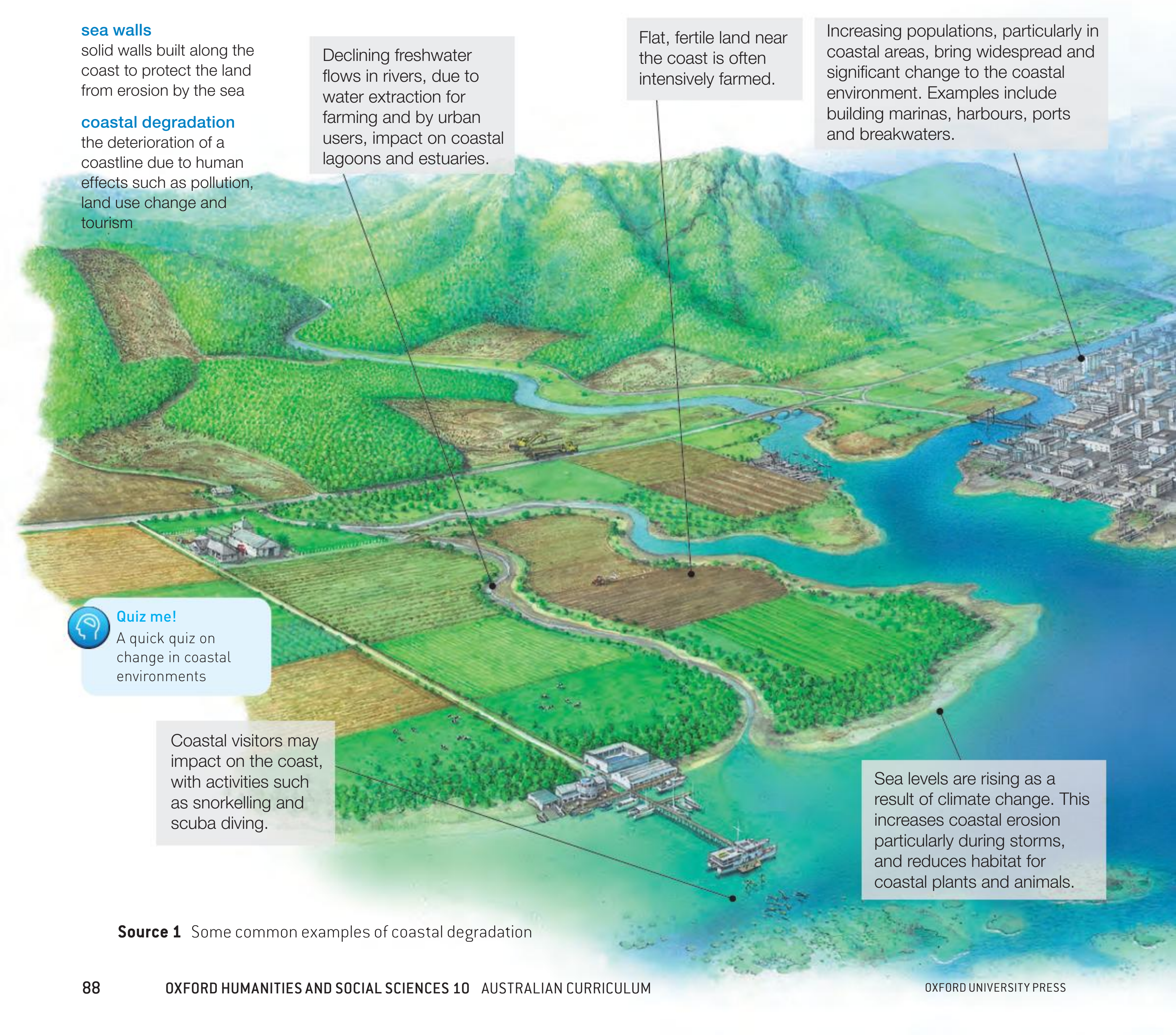
» identify and describe the changing features of coastal environments.

Coasts are very dynamic places – they are constantly changing. Crashing waves, strong currents, tidal waters and hazards (such as storms and tsunamis) all transform coastal environments. People also bring about many changes to these environments. From simple activities, such as walking between villages on the Cinque Terre coast (see Source 1 on the previous page), to complex activities, such as the construction of shipping ports and **sea walls**, humans have serious effects on coastal areas. In many cases, these activities are responsible for **coastal degradation**.

sea walls
solid walls built along the coast to protect the land from erosion by the sea

coastal degradation
the deterioration of a coastline due to human effects such as pollution, land use change and tourism

Quiz me!
A quick quiz on change in coastal environments



Source 1 Some common examples of coastal degradation

Coastal degradation can be observed on many scales. It may be local, such as when litter is dropped on a popular holiday beach, or regional, such as when an oil spill washes ashore along hundreds of kilometres of coastline. The effects of coastal degradation are varied and can include the loss of plant and animal species, or the arrival of an **invasive species** that permanently affects **biodiversity** in the area. Examples of coastal degradation can include sand dunes being washed into the sea and changing the coastline, or blooms of toxic algae damaging the marine environment. Source 1 provides an overview of some common forms of coastal degradation.

Over the course of this chapter, we will be exploring some of the changes that are having the greatest impact on coastal environments. These include climate change, population growth in coastal areas, and the loss of coastal biodiversity.

invasive species
a plant, animal or other organism that is not native to an area and whose introduction has negative effects on its new environment

biodiversity
the variety of living organisms (e.g. plants, animals, bacteria and fungi) found in an environment

3.1 Check your learning

Comprehend

1 **Describe** two of the changes currently affecting coastal environments.

2 Do coastal environments close to cities experience more degradation risks than those in remote areas? **Explain** your answer.

Analyse

3 The three main indirect drivers of environmental degradation at the coast are climate change, population growth and economic growth. Look closely at Source 1.

  a **Classify** each of the examples of coastal degradation shown according to one of these three drivers.

  b Are there any changes to the environment in Source 1 that could not be classified in this way? **Explain** your answer.

  c **Identify** the type of driver that appears to be responsible for most of the changes shown.

  d **Classify** each of the changes shown according to whether they are taking place on a local, regional, national, international or global scale.

4 **Apply** the geographical concept of interconnections and describe the links between changes on the land and changes at the coast.

Apply

5 a Select one of the causes of coastal degradation shown in Source 1. **Propose** (put forward) one strategy to solve the problems this creates.

  b **Evaluate** the strengths and weaknesses of the strategy that you proposed in question 5a.

3.2 Natural coastal processes

Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» describe the natural causes of change in coastal environments.

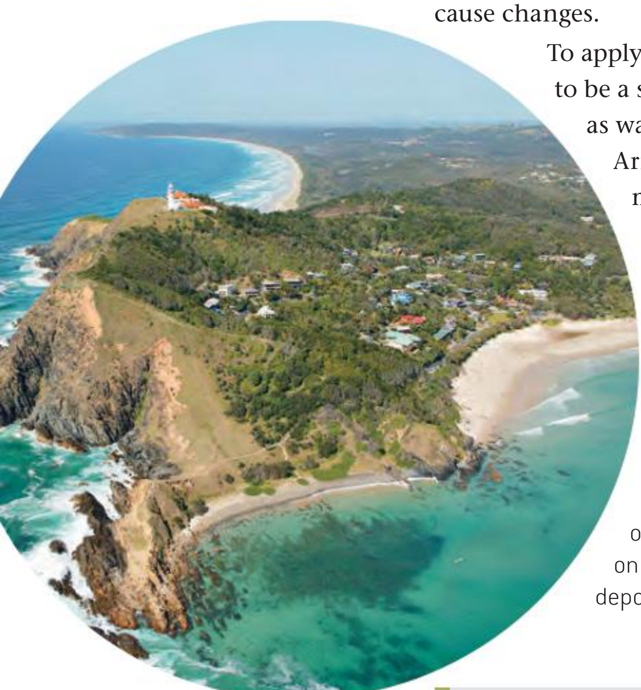
While this chapter focuses primarily on the ways in which human activities bring about changes to coastal environments, it is important to remember that natural processes are also constantly shaping and changing the coast. Rocks are eroded and material such as sand is transported by the energy of waves, tides and currents, creating a dynamic landscape that is constantly evolving. All this change means that coasts are very complex environments to study and understand.

A dynamic balance

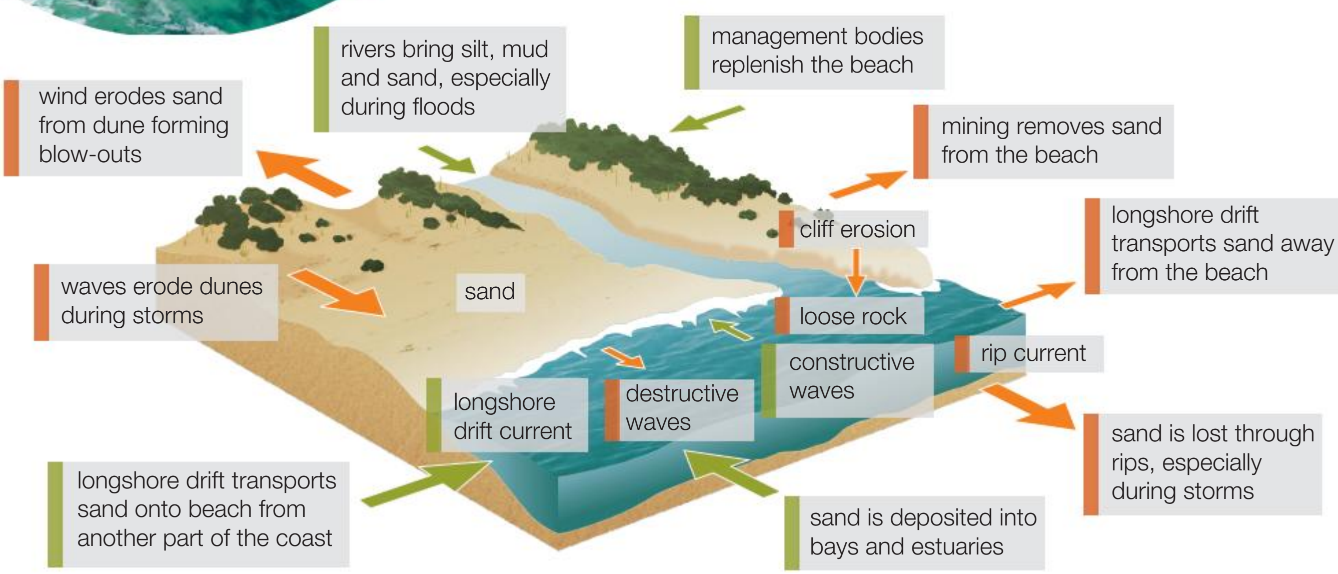
Geographers often use models – such as the systems model – to understand environments, study the relationships between environments, and learn more about the intricate forces that cause changes.

To apply a systems model to a coastline, each individual **landform** is considered to be a separate compartment. Energy (such as wind and waves) and matter (such as water and sand) are studied as they arrive at and leave each compartment. Arriving energy and matter are referred to as inputs, and leaving energy and matter are outputs.

If the inputs of matter are greater than the outputs, then landforms – such as dunes and **spits** – increase in size and the coast grows outwards. If the outputs are greater than the inputs, then landforms decrease in size and the coast retreats (see Source 3).



Source 2 Cape Byron, the easternmost point on the Australian mainland, is a dynamic coast. On the eastern side of the cape, destructive waves are eroding the coast, while on the more sheltered western side, constructive waves are depositing sand on a series on beaches.



Source 3 How natural processes change coastal environments; green arrows represent inputs while orange arrows represent outputs.

Dynamic equilibrium

Energy inputs on the coast – the waves and wind – often erode and transport matter, particularly sand. When matter is transported, the shape of the beach changes. When inputs and outputs are in balance, the shapes of landforms remain unchanged. This is known as dynamic equilibrium. When dynamic equilibrium does not exist, inputs and outputs do not remain in balance, and the landscape changes.

During a storm, energy inputs increase and so erosion occurs. Matter – such as sand and rock – is eroded and transported offshore, and the shape of the beach changes. Once the storm ends and the energy inputs return to 'normal' again, dynamic equilibrium returns. The beach will remain unchanged for as long as the energy inputs remain constant.

For more information on this key concept, refer to page 11 of 'The geography toolkit'.

Source 4 In July 2020, a series of storms hit the east coast of Australia, eroding large areas of coastline. In the town of Wamberal, New South Wales, several homes had their foundations washed away and became uninhabitable. These storms are an example of how the dynamic equilibrium in this environment was disrupted by an increase in energy.

KEY CONCEPT
Change

landform
a natural geographical feature or shape on the Earth's surface (e.g. a dune, hill, valley, beach or cave)

spits
narrow, low-lying tongues of sand or other eroded material attached to the coastline at one end

erosion
the wearing away of the Earth's surface by water, wind and ice

Quiz me!
A quick quiz on natural coastal processes

3.2 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 **Identify** the main energy and matter inputs in coastal environments.

Comprehend

2 **Describe** the changes that are taking place in Source 2.

3 Look at Source 4.

a **Summarise** the evidence of erosion in this image.

b **Explain** how this erosion has changed the shape of the coastline.

c **Describe** evidence in this photo that shows people have tried to control the movement of sand.

4 Select a coast that you know well (or one that you have visited on a field trip). **Describe** the energy and matter inputs and outputs in this environment and explain how these have shaped the coastline. (For example, a series of sand dunes may have been formed by low-energy waves bringing sand from a river mouth.)

Apply

5 While many coastlines were heavily eroded by the east coast storms in 2020, others hardly changed.

a Brainstorm some reasons why variations exist in the way coasts change.

b Rank your reasons from the one most likely to explain these variations to the one least likely. **Justify** (give reasons for) your rankings.

6 **Create** a field sketch of Source 2. On your sketch, label the individual compartments that geographers would study.

Key skill worksheet
Questioning & researching: Measuring longshore drift

Photo for sketching
Cape Byron

3.3 Climate change and coasts

Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

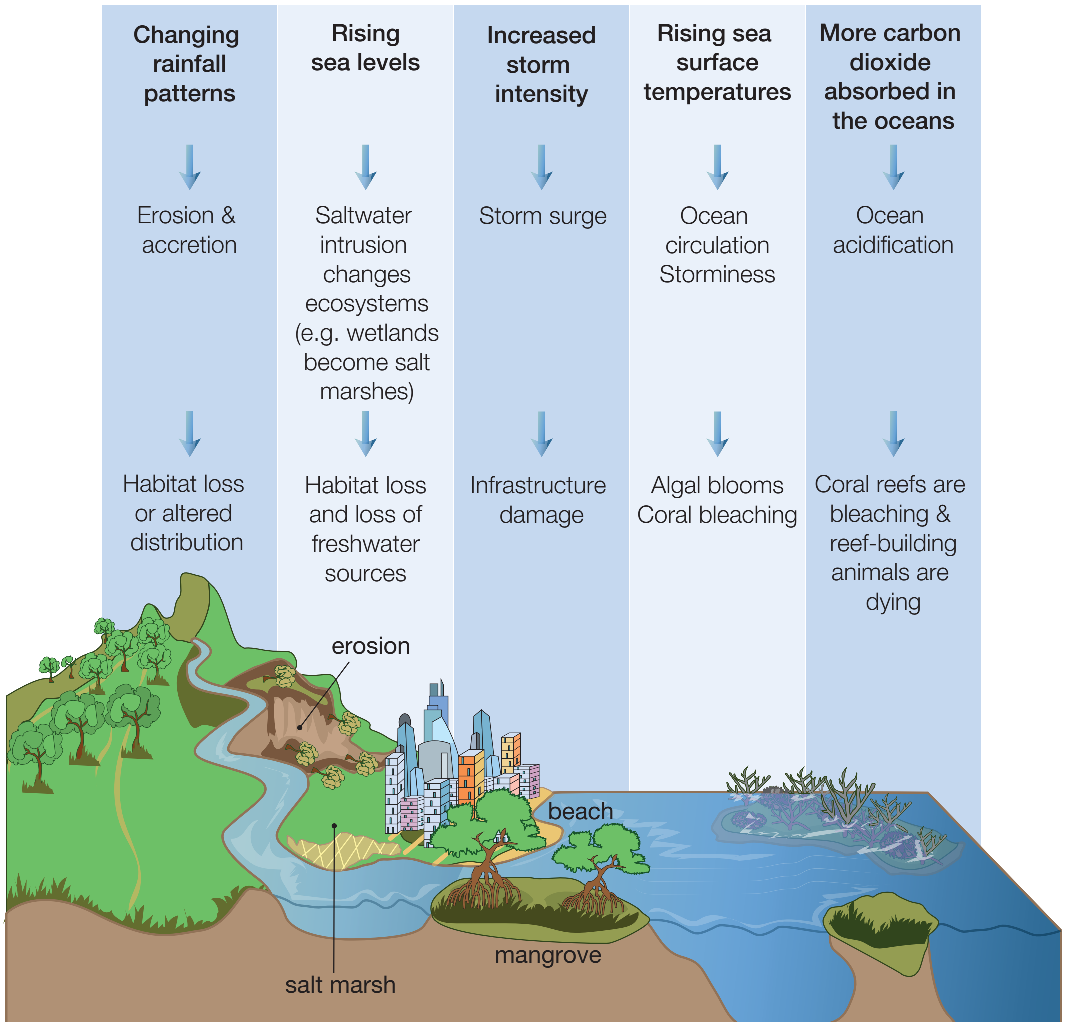
» explain the impacts of climate change on the sustainability of coastal environments.

climate change
a change in global or regional climate patterns; in particular, a change apparent from the mid to late twentieth century onwards and attributed largely to the increased levels of atmospheric carbon dioxide produced by the use of fossil fuels

The world's climate is changing. Human activities such as land clearing and fossil fuel burning have increased the amounts of carbon dioxide in the atmosphere. This is leading to a global increase in the temperature of both the atmosphere and ocean.

Coastal systems are undergoing greater change than virtually any other environment. As the interface between the land and the sea, coasts face pressures from changes in both of these places. Source 5 summarises the effects of **climate change** on coastal areas.

One of the greatest concerns for Australian coastal areas is the rising of sea levels.



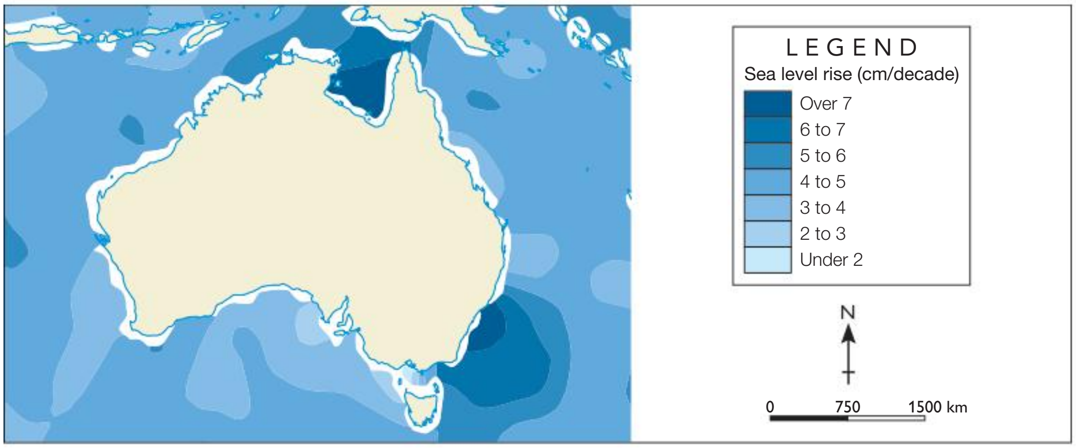
Source 5 The influence of climate change on the coast

Australia's rising seas

It can be difficult to convince people that sea levels are rising. This is because ocean and coastal waters are constantly changing, as waves, tides and currents keep them in movement. Also, sea levels are rising very slowly.

This does not mean that they are *not* rising. In fact, sea levels have been rising for at least a century. Scientists use a combination of tide gauges and new technologies such as satellite altimeters (instruments used to measure altitude) to monitor and measure sea level changes. These measures show that sea levels have risen by about 30 centimetres since 1900, with about one-third of that rise occurring since the year 2000.

AUSTRALIA: SEA LEVEL RISE, 1993–2019



Source 6 Sea levels have risen around Australia. Source: Oxford University Press

Map it!
Australia: Sea level rise, 1993–2019

The physical impact of rising seas

An Australian Government report in 2011 stated:

> Sea levels are rising around Australia. A sea-level rise of a metre or more during this century is plausible. It could be less or much more. Between 16 000 and 250 000 individual homes are potentially at risk of inundation from a 1.1 metre rise in sea level.

As well as the risk to homes situated on the coastline, rising sea levels are causing:

- an increase in the erosion of beaches, with some beaches at risk of disappearing completely
- an increase in the incidence of flooding in low-lying coastal areas
- salt water to enter coastal aquifers, destroying freshwater sources
- an increase in the severity of extreme weather events such as cyclones, bringing with them increased incidences of serious storm damage.

Coastal squeeze

As sea levels rise, important coastal **ecosystems** such as mangroves and salt marshes respond by retreating inland. However, in many places, sea walls and other coastal structures mean they cannot move and are therefore trapped in a narrowing strip of land. This process is known as coastal squeeze. It has led to healthy salt marshes and mangrove forests – which are highly effective natural barriers to erosion – being killed off by built structures that, in many cases, are much less effective at controlling erosion.

ecosystems
complex communities made up of living organisms that interact with each other and with their environment

Weblink
Coastal Risk Australia

3.3 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 **Identify** the greatest threat to coastal areas in Australia as a result of climate change.

Comprehend

2 **Describe** the causes and implications of coastal squeeze.

3 **Explain** why coastal erosion is expected to increase as sea levels continue to rise.

4 Look closely at Source 6. **Describe** the regions of Australia that experienced the greatest rises in sea levels from 1993 to 2019.

Apply

5 **Create** four further annotations for Source 5. They should provide additional examples of the impacts that rising sea levels and sea surface temperatures will have on natural and human environments.

6 Visit the Coastal Risk Australia website (a link can be accessed via your obook pro) and use its maps to:

a **identify** the predicted sea level rise in a capital city or region of your choice

b **describe** what impacts the predicted sea level rise by 2100 would have.

3.4 The impact of climate change on the Great Barrier Reef

Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» explain the impacts of climate change on the sustainability of Australia's Great Barrier Reef.

ocean acidification
the ongoing decrease in the pH level (a measure of acidity and alkalinity) of the Earth's oceans, caused by the uptake of carbon dioxide from the atmosphere by the water

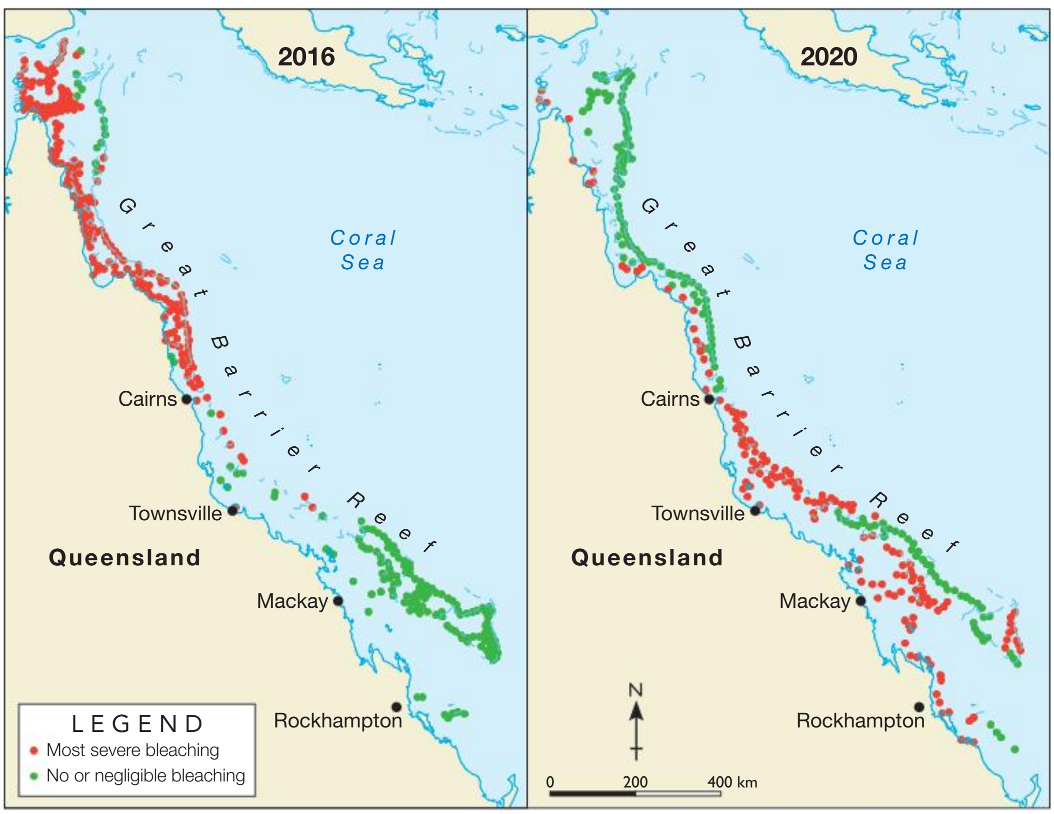
Explore it!
Take a virtual field trip to the Great Barrier Reef

Queensland's Great Barrier Reef (GBR) is not only one of the world's most beautiful natural treasures, but also one of its most important. Extending over 2300 kilometres and 14 degrees of latitude, the reef contains over 2900 separate coral reefs and some of the world's most extensive mangrove and seagrass ecosystems. But the combined effects of a changing climate – rising sea temperatures, rising sea levels, **ocean acidification** and extreme weather events – are causing problems for this remarkable natural environment.

Rising sea temperatures

The GBR lies in the Coral Sea off the Queensland coast. Studies show that the current temperatures of this sea are warmer now than at any time over the past 300 years. On average, temperatures are 1.0°C warmer than they were in the late 1800s. As average temperatures rise, warm weather events heat the sea surface to a temperature that coral polyps (the tiny organisms that construct the coral reef) cannot tolerate. The coral polyps feed on algae, but the warmer water temperature causes a build-up of poisons in the algae. To survive, the polyps expel the algae on which they feed, as well as some of their own tissue. This process turns the coral white and is known as coral bleaching.

MASS BLEACHING EVENTS ON THE GBR IN 2016 AND 2020



Source 7 Source: Oxford University Press

Key skill worksheet
Interpreting & analysing: Analysing change over time

Enlarged map
Mass bleaching events on the GBR in 2016 and 2020

In 2016, a mass bleaching event associated with a marine heatwave killed over a quarter of the GBR's coral. A similar heat wave occurred in 2020 (see Source 7). As bleaching events become more frequent, the corals will not have time to recover and whole reef ecosystems will collapse (see page 50 for more information on Australia's collapsing ecosystems).

Source 8 An example of mass coral bleaching on the GBR

Rising sea levels

As the climate warms, land ice is melting. The water from this melting ice ends up in our oceans. Rising sea temperatures are also causing the ocean to expand because of the warmer water.

In the Coral Sea, sea levels are rising by about 3 millimetres per year. This is expected to have little impact on the coral reefs as they can grow upwards by about 6 millimetres per year. Surrounding ecosystems, however, are likely to be severely affected. As salt water intrudes further inland, environments such as mangroves and freshwater lakes are expected to change significantly. Low-lying islands are also expected to disappear beneath the rising seas, changing the distribution of nesting birds and turtles, and hastening the extinction of mammals and reptiles. The Bramble Cay melomys became the first mammal made extinct by climate change when its tiny island in the GBR was inundated with sea water.

Ocean acidification

Ocean acidification can have dire consequences for a coral reef. As carbon dioxide is absorbed into the ocean, it reduces the amount of carbonate (a kind of salt) in the water. Marine animals need this carbonate to make their shells and skeletons. Reef-building animals such as coral polyps then use these shells and skeletons to create a reef. With fewer shells and skeletons available, construction of the reef is seriously limited. Over the long term, ocean acidification is expected to be the greatest challenge facing the GBR.

Extreme weather events

Increases in the severity and frequency of flooding and tropical cyclones also pose serious threats to the reef. Inland flooding brings increased sediment to the GBR, and this sediment smothers plants. Pesticides and other chemicals are also carried by floodwaters, adding to the levels of pollution in the water around the reef.

Cyclones generate large and powerful waves that damage corals and the reef structure. Reefs are able to recover from these natural events, but they need time to do so. As extreme weather events become more frequent, reefs have less recovery time.

3.4 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 **Name** four effects of climate change.

2 **Identify** the impact of climate change on the following:
   a nesting birds
   b reef-building animals
   c coral polyps.

Analyse

3 **Examine** Source 7.
   a Describe the distribution of most severe bleaching in 2016.
   b Compare this to the 2020 mass bleaching event.
   c Brainstorm possible reasons why the distribution of the areas most severely bleached in 2016 and 2020 differs.

Apply

4 Rank the four impacts of climate change described in this topic from the one likely to have the greatest impact on the GBR to the one likely to have the least impact. Write a paragraph justifying your ranking.

5 Imagine that the GBR disappeared due to the combined effects of climate change. How would this affect the Queensland coast and the Queensland economy? **Justify** your answer.

3.5 The impact of population growth on coasts

Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» explain the impacts of population growth on the sustainability of coastal landscapes.

megacities
cities with a population of more than 10 million people

groynes
human-made barriers that jut out from the beach into the water, built to prevent erosion of the beach from the power of destructive waves and longshore drift

breakwaters
walls built out into the sea to help prevent large waves from reaching the coastline and causing erosion

deposition
the laying down of solid material that has been eroded and transported from another part of the Earth's surface

estuaries
wide tidal mouths of rivers

land reclamation
the process of creating new land from oceans, bays, harbours and estuaries by dumping rocks, silt from the sea bed or other materials into the water

Over one-third of the world's population – that is, nearly 2.4 billion people – live within 100 kilometres of the coast. Most of the world's **megacities** in both the developed and developing world are located on the coast, and many of them are growing rapidly. In China, for example, 1000 people per day move to coastal cities from the country's interior.

The impact of billions of people in millions of coastal cities, towns, villages and farms has caused one United Nations expert to state that 'humankind is in the process of annihilating coastal and ocean ecosystems.'

The coast has always been an attractive place for human settlement. Coastal regions provide access to food and water, and people have long used ocean-going boats and ships for transportation. But the growing number of people along the coast – together with increasing levels of trade and movement between settlements – have had many detrimental effects on coastal ecosystems:

- Engineering structures such as sea walls, **groynes**, **breakwaters**, training walls and marinas have hardened the coast and changed natural cycles of erosion and **deposition**.
- Changing the natural flow of water by deepening channels, diverting rivers and building dams has altered the amount of fresh water and sediment arriving at the coast, impacting on natural ecosystems and landforms.
- The discharge of sewage into the ocean, the run-off of fertilisers from farms, and other contaminants entering coastal waters have caused pollution in the oceans.
- Increased numbers of people and growing demand for seafood has led to over-fishing of fish and shellfish. In some places, coastal fish stocks have fallen by 90 per cent in the past 30 years.
- Ports are often an entry point for invasive species that bring dramatic changes to coastal and marine ecosystems.
- The presence of large numbers of people on beaches has an impact: people leave litter on beaches, they walk over native plants and impose walkways, they can destroy breeding areas of sea birds and bring predators such as dogs into the environment.

Continued growth and competition for land

Many coasts have been converted from natural ecosystems to human landscapes. Cities need space to grow and harbours for trade and transport. Mangroves, marshes and **estuaries** have been drained and filled in, sand dunes flattened and built over, and communities of coastal plants cleared. In some places, land for expansion has been so scarce that new land has been built in bays and estuaries from rocks, rubbish and silt from the sea bed. This is known as **land reclamation**.

Source 9 Mangroves once covered most of Singapore's coast; now only 5 per cent remains.

CASE STUDY

Singapore

In the past 50 years, one of the world's smallest countries has grown in size by almost a quarter. In the island nation of Singapore, 85 square kilometres of land has been reclaimed from the sea.

In the beginning, walls were built from rocks in the shallow bays and estuaries surrounding the island, enclosing areas that were then filled with sand. However, Singapore soon ran out of sand for this project and began importing it from neighbouring countries, such as Indonesia, Malaysia and Cambodia. It imported millions of tonnes of sand from these countries over a period of several decades. Concerned with the environmental impacts of dredging sand from rivers and beaches, the exporting countries banned the practice.

As a result, Singapore changed its method of reclaiming land. Now, huge concrete walls are built in the sea and enclose the area to be reclaimed. The sea water is then pumped out, and a smaller amount of sand and other materials is used to bring the new land above sea level.

Singapore plans to reclaim another 60 square kilometres of land by 2030.

Enlarged map
Singapore: Extent of reclaimed land

SINGAPORE: EXTENT OF RECLAIMED LAND

Source 10

Source: Oxford University Press

3.5 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 In your own words, **define** land reclamation and explain why it is used.

Comprehend

2 **Describe** the changes to coastal ecosystems as a result of coastal city growth.

3 Use an atlas to locate the world's megacities and find:

- **a** megacities located on the coast
- **b** megacities located on river mouths or estuaries.

Mark the locations of these megacities on a map of the world (an outline map is available on your obook pro) and give your map a title and a legend.

Analyse

4 **Infer** (suggest) two reasons why the impacts described in this topic would be particularly serious for small island communities.

Apply

5 Would the population impact on coasts be greatest in developing or developed countries? **Discuss** this with a partner and then with the class.

6 **Create** an overlay map of Singapore, using Source 10. On the base map, show the natural outline of the island. On the overlay, show the total area of reclaimed land. Describe the spatial change over time shown on your map.

7 Use Google Earth to explore the coastline of Singapore. Estimate the percentage of the coastline that is:

- **a** heavily modified (for example, reclaimed land)
- **b** lightly modified (for example, where sea walls or groynes have been constructed)
- **c** not modified.

Quiz me!
A quick quiz on the impact of population growth on coasts

Outline map
World map

3.6 Loss of coastal biodiversity

Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» describe the loss of coastal biodiversity as a result of coastal change.

ecosystem services
a term used to describe a range of important resources, processes and benefits that healthy ecosystems provide to humans

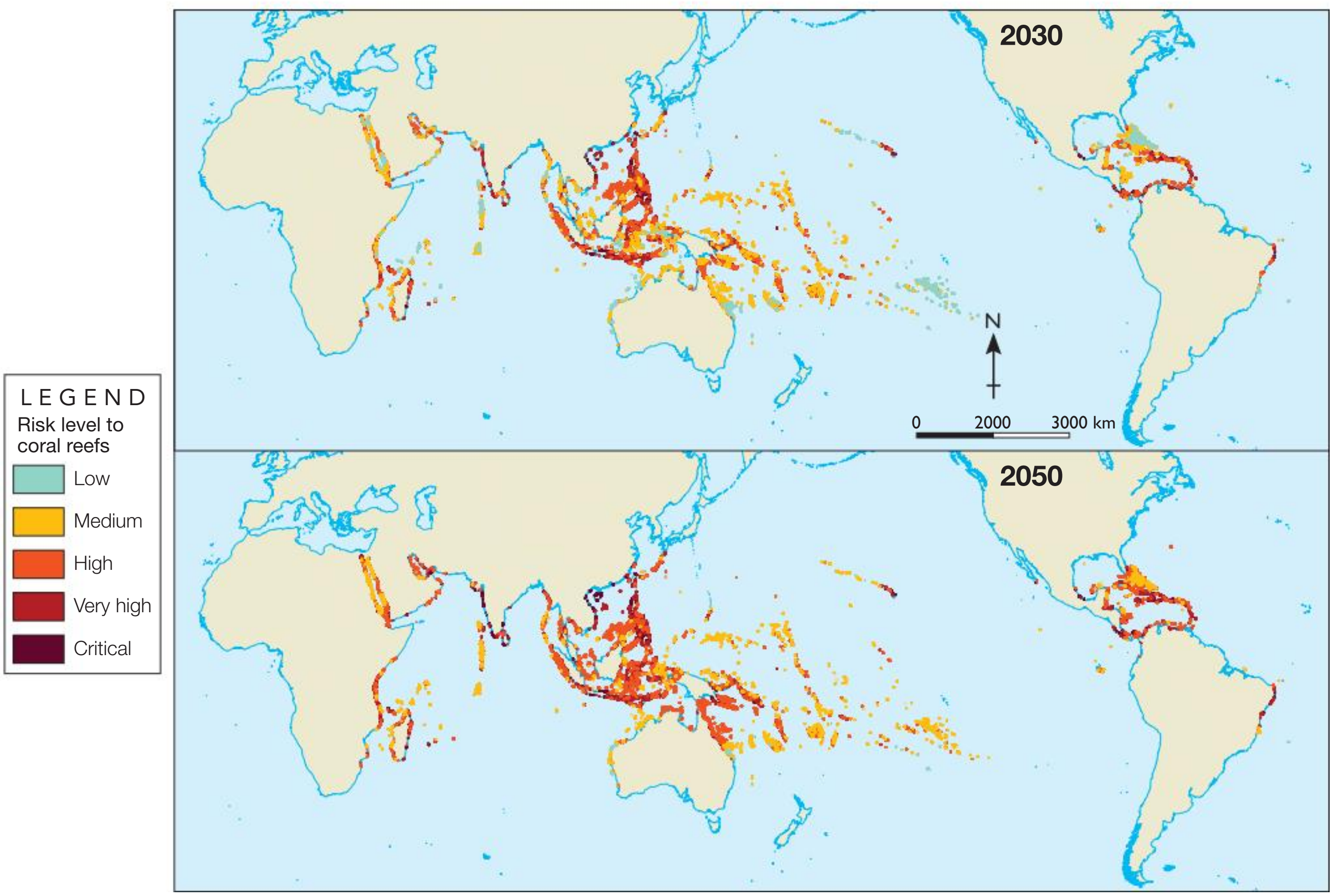
The number of plant and animal species on a global scale is in decline because of human activities. Recent studies of three key coastal ecosystems – explored in detail below – reveal that all are declining in size and biodiversity.

Coral reefs

Coral reefs are home to one-quarter of the world's fish species. Up to a billion people rely on the **ecosystem services** provided by coral reefs, including food, protection from waves and storms, and income from reef-based tourism. Despite their importance, the coral reefs are under threat. One-fifth of all the world's coral has died since 2015.

As well as the threats from warmer sea temperatures causing coral bleaching, coral reefs are in danger from human activities (such as land-based industries that increase the levels of sediment and pesticides in the ocean) and invasive species (such as the crown-of-thorns starfish). Coastal development for tourism and cities, including land reclamation (see page 96), are also impacting on this vital ecosystem.

WORLD: CORAL REEFS PROJECTED TO BE AT RISK IN 2030 AND 2050



Source 11

Source: Oxford University Press

Geographers estimate that the world will lose 70 per cent of its living coral by 2030 unless there are significant changes to human activities.

Map it!
World: Coral reefs projected to be at risk in 2030 and 2050

Mangroves

Mangroves provide a wide range of crucial ecosystem services in many tropical areas, including supplying wood, protecting communities from the effects of offshore storms and providing a breeding ground for fish and crustaceans. Despite their importance, at least one-fifth of the world's mangroves have been lost since 1980 – an estimated area of 36 000 square kilometres. Countries such as Kenya, Liberia and Puerto Rico have already lost over 70 per cent of their mangrove forests. Mangroves have been cleared to make way for agricultural land (including palm oil plantations), harbours, housing and fish farms.

Mangroves provide natural protection from wave erosion. Geographers have voiced concerns that clearing them makes communities more vulnerable to the impacts of rising sea levels and storm surges.

Source 12 Mangrove forests in Indonesia have been substantially cleared to make way for rice fields and shrimp farms.

Seagrass beds

Seagrass beds are an important ecosystem for dugongs and manatees (both large sea mammals) and the leafy seadragon (see Source 13), as well as providing food for hundreds of other species. Seagrass beds are also important for stabilising sediments in the water, absorbing carbon dioxide and protecting against erosion. Over the past 200 years, about 30 per cent of the world's seagrass beds have disappeared, many of them within the past few decades.

The main threats to seagrass beds and the biodiversity they support are the dredging of the sea bed, the development of tourist marinas, and water pollution from rivers and streams.

3.6 Check your learning

Comprehend

1 **Describe** the important role of mangroves in coastal landscapes.

Analyse

2 What ecosystem services are provided by the three coastal habitats discussed? **Classify** these as sinks, sources, services or spiritual functions (see page 48).

3 **Examine** Source 11.
   a Describe the distribution of the world's coral reefs using the PQE method (see page 31 of 'The geography toolkit').
   b In your description, identify the reefs that are projected to be most at risk by 2030.
   c In your description, identify the reefs that are projected to be most at risk by 2050.

4 Refer to Source 10 on page 56. **Identify** the key drivers of biodiversity loss in coastal environments.

Apply

5 **Investigate** the threats faced by one coastal species in Australia such as the dugong, orange-bellied parrot, coastal emu, grey nurse shark, marine turtle or sea snake, and present your findings to the class.

Source 13 The amazing leafy seadragon is threatened by a loss of seagrass near Australia's southern cities.

3A

SKILLS IN CONTEXT

Test me!
Once you've finished the topics in this section, test yourself with this quiz and find out which worksheet you should do.

Dunwich's disappearing churches

Dunwich is a small coastal village located in south-eastern England. In the thirteenth century, it was one of England's largest towns. Merchants traded wool, grain, fish, wine and furs across the North Sea to Iceland, the Netherlands and France. Dunwich had eight churches, three chapels and two hospitals.

Large storms in 1286 and 1328 swept large areas of the town into the sea. Because so much material was deposited in the sea, the harbour was blocked by the growth of a large spit. Trade and fishing were ruined and the population declined. By 1347, a quarter of the town had been lost, and the remainder of Dunwich collapsed into the sea over the next few hundred years. Most of the original buildings have gone, including all eight churches. The last one disappeared early in the twentieth century (see Source 14).

The coastline at Dunwich has receded, on average, 1 metre per year. Buildings that sit on top of the present-day cliffs above the eroding waves were once 2 kilometres inland. Storms, tides and longshore drift have all combined to make Dunwich a very different place today.

KEY SKILL
Questioning & researching

Mapping environmental change using multiple overlays

Creating overlay maps is a useful technique for showing and measuring environmental change. To complete a multiple overlay map, follow these steps:

Step 1 Construct a base map of the region using the current topographic map. This should be traced rather than drawn freehand, to make it as accurate as possible. Include key natural and human features, such as the coastline, towns, roads and the extent of marshes.

Step 2 Add labels such as the names of rivers and towns. Add a north arrow, legend, title, scale and source.

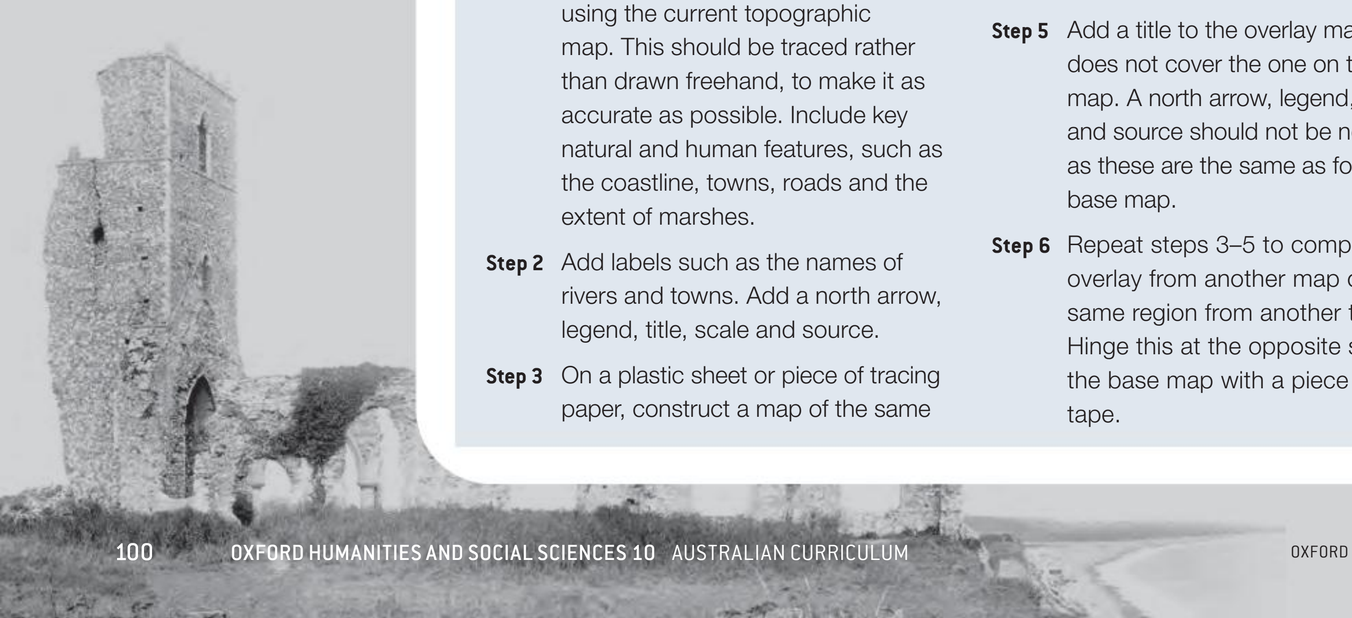
Step 3 On a plastic sheet or piece of tracing paper, construct a map of the same region from the earliest map you have at the same scale. Remember that this map will sit on top of your base map, so features such as rivers that have remained the same should line up.

Step 4 Place the overlay map carefully on top of the base map and use a piece of tape like a hinge along one side to anchor the overlay in place.

Step 5 Add a title to the overlay map that does not cover the one on the base map. A north arrow, legend, scale and source should not be needed as these are the same as for the base map.

Step 6 Repeat steps 3–5 to complete an overlay from another map of the same region from another time. Hinge this at the opposite side of the base map with a piece of sticky tape.

Source 14 The last of Dunwich's old churches – photographed in 1908, shortly before it collapsed into the sea



Practise the skill

1 **Create** a multiple overlay map using the current topographic map in Source 16 as the base map. For the first overlay, use the map from the year 200 CE in Source 15. For the second overlay, use the map from 1587 (also in Source 15). Larger versions of these maps are available on your obook pro.

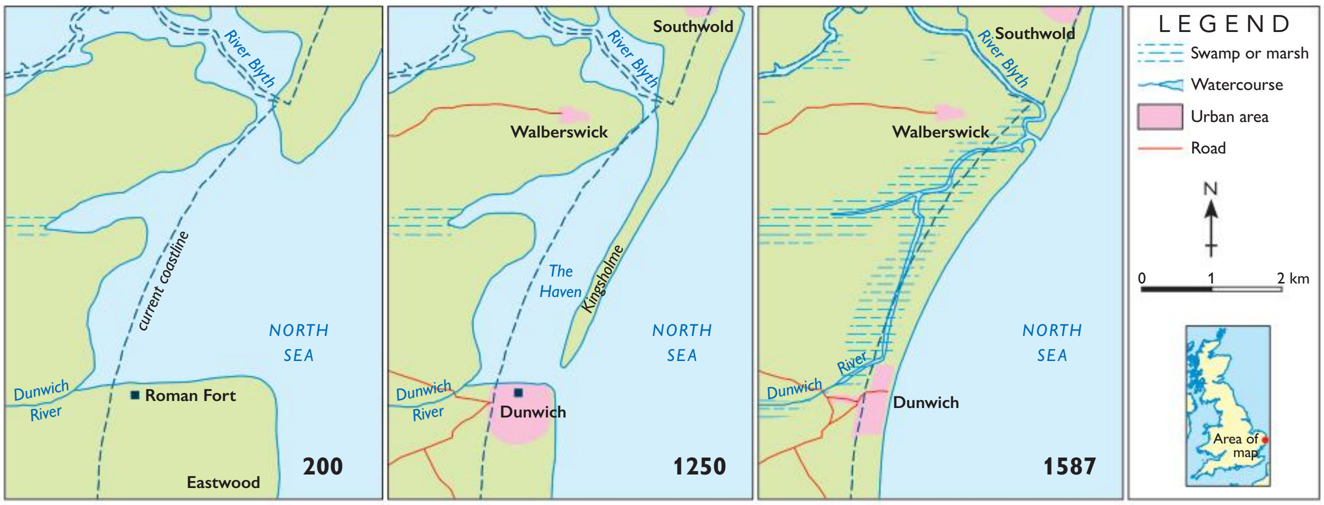
2 **Describe** the changes that occurred to this coastline between 200 CE and 1587. Was the dominant process during this time erosion or deposition?

3 **Identify** other features on the 200 CE map that might help to explain the dominant process that occurred between 200 CE and 1587.

4 **Describe** the changes that have occurred to this coastline since 1587. Is the dominant process erosion or deposition?

5 Estimate the area of lost land since 1587. Do this by multiplying the length of this strip of land by its average width.

DUNWICH: CHANGING COASTLINE



Source 15 These maps show the coastline in the region of Dunwich in 200 CE, 1250 and 1587. Source: Oxford University Press

Extend your understanding

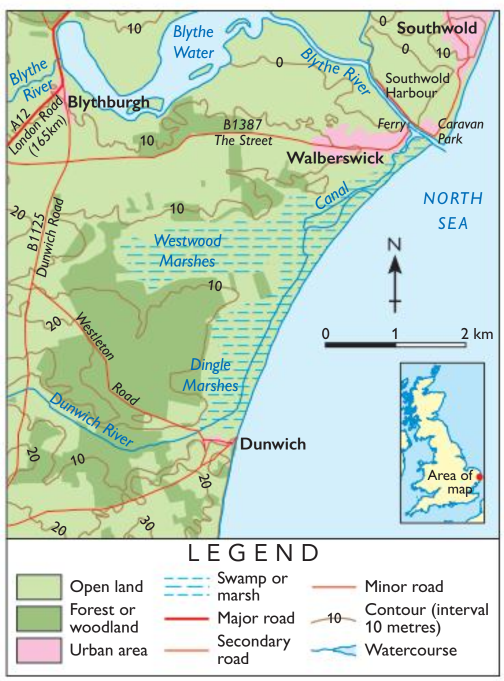
1 Some ways to manage coastal change include building sea walls, groynes and breakwaters (see page 102). Which of these measures would you recommend the local authorities adopt to manage erosion on this coastline? **Justify** your answer.

2 Some Dunwich residents have voiced their support for a managed retreat to protect the coast. **Investigate** what a managed retreat is and decide if you agree with the residents that this is a solution. Use evidence from your research to support your decision.

Enlarged map
Dunwich: Changing coastline

Enlarged map
Dunwich: Topographic map

DUNWICH: TOPOGRAPHIC MAP



Source 16 Source: Oxford University Press

3.7 New ways of managing coasts

Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» recognise strategies to manage the effects of environmental change on coastal landscapes.

Quiz me!
A quick quiz on new ways of managing coasts

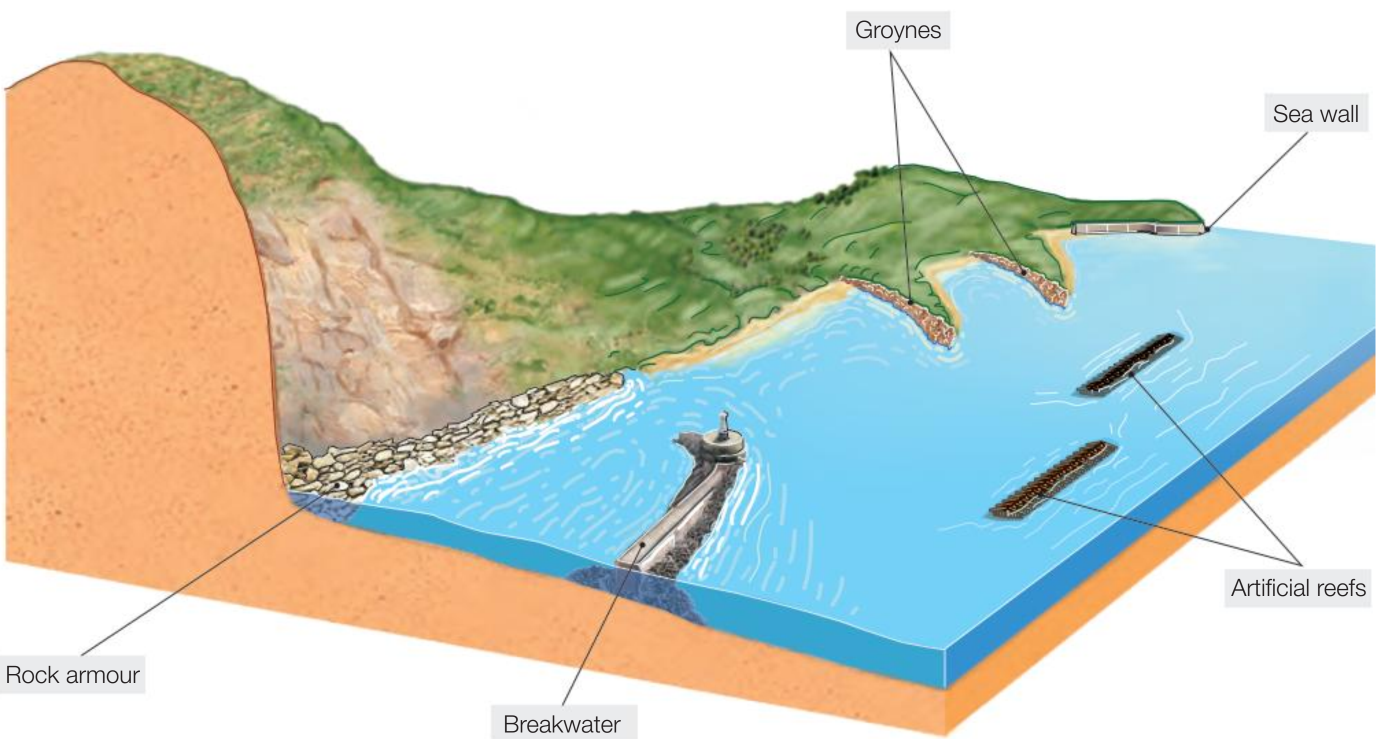
Many attempts have been made by people in the past to try to control the natural coastal processes of erosion, transportation and deposition. Unfortunately, due to a poor understanding of these processes, attempts have often made problems worse or simply moved them to another part of the coast. In addition, issues were often managed on a local scale without regard for the broader environments that influence the coast, such as river catchments and marine ecosystems.

More recently, a greater understanding of natural processes, as well as a recognition of the widespread impacts of coastal management, has led to new approaches. These include soft engineering (using natural processes), Integrated Coastal Zone Management (ICZM; see page 110) and the protection of coastal ecosystems with special marine reserves (see page 104).

Managing natural processes: Hard vs soft engineering techniques

rock armour
rocks piled along the coast to protect the shore from erosion

One of the key principles underpinning effective coastal management is to work with natural processes. In the past, coastal management has tended to use 'hard engineering'. Hard engineering refers to the building of structures such as sea walls, groynes, artificial reefs, **rock armour** and breakwaters to protect coastlines from the erosive effects of waves or to trap sand. The main hard engineering techniques are shown in Source 1.



Source 1 A stretch of coastline showing a number of hard engineering techniques commonly used around the world today

Many people in coastal areas like these hard options, as the results are obvious and immediate. The structures tend to be expensive, however, and tend to have a high impact on natural environments. In many cases, they create other problems – or just move the problem further along the coast.

By comparison, 'soft engineering' coastal management techniques use the natural processes of the coast. They are often less expensive than hard engineering options and are considered to be more sustainable as they have less impact on the natural environment. There are two main types of soft engineering – beach nourishment and managed retreat.

- *Beach nourishment* replaces beach material such as sand that has been removed by erosion or longshore drift (see Source 2). Beaches are a natural defence against erosion and coastal flooding, and are a desirable feature of the landscape for residents and tourists alike. The natural process that eroded the beach in the first place will continue, however, so the beach needs to be nourished again and again.
- *Managed retreat* involves the relocation of human settlements and hard engineering defences, such as sea walls and groynes, so that the natural processes of erosion and deposition can take place. In many cases, low-lying areas flood, allowing salt marshes, wetlands and mudflats to re-establish themselves in these areas (see Source 3). Over time, these habitats provide a natural defence against further erosion. Unlike many hard engineering techniques, managed retreat can be relatively inexpensive. However, people living in these regions can be unwilling to relocate and need to be compensated for the loss of their properties.

Source 2 Beach nourishment in the Netherlands; a vast sand peninsula – dubbed the 'sand engine' – 2 kilometres long and 1 kilometre wide has been constructed. Waves and currents are redistributing this peninsula along the shore, where it is expected to nourish the beaches and form sand dunes.

Source 3 Managed retreat at Abbotts Hall Farm in Essex, England, has allowed salt marshes to be re-established.

3.7 Check your learning

Comprehend

1 **Explain** why many people in coastal areas often prefer hard engineering strategies for managing the effects of environmental change on the coast.

2 **Describe** the process that is occurring at Abbotts Hall Farm (see Source 3).

Analyse

3 **Distinguish** between hard and soft engineering techniques for managing coastal change.

4 **Compare** some of the possible positive and negative environmental impacts of beach nourishment.

Apply

5 Look at Source 4 on page 91.

a Which management strategy would you recommend in response to erosion of this coast? **Justify** your answer.

b **Evaluate** the strengths and weaknesses of your strategy. What other information would you need to be able to make a more informed recommendation?

3.8 Protecting the coast

Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» describe the impact of legal protections on coastal environments.

An effective way to manage and protect natural environments such as coasts is to give them legal protection. This helps ensure that harmful activities are banned or limited. In Australia, this is achieved mainly through a system of **national parks** (on land) and marine reserves (in the surrounding seas and oceans).

national parks
areas of natural beauty that are protected by law for the use of the general public and the protection of the natural environment

National parks

Each state and territory of Australia has a large number of special places, both coastal and inland, that the government has decided to protect. These might be as small as a single historic house or beach, or as large as a wilderness. Despite the name, virtually all of Australia's more than 550 national parks are the responsibility of the individual state and territory governments.

Although management strategies differ between states and territories, the common ideals are that the land, plants and animals within the parks should have protection from activities that threaten their existence, and that people should be able to visit these special places. This can lead to problems, as visitors who come to see these areas in all their natural beauty may threaten the very environment they are visiting. The managers of the national parks have the task of controlling what visitors do in each one by limiting or restricting certain activities in sensitive areas.

Source 4 Royal National Park in New South Wales is Australia's oldest national park. Established in 1879, it protects large areas of coastal rainforest and ancient sand dunes.

Marine reserves

While national parks protect special places on land, Australia's diverse marine environments also need to be protected. In 2012, the Australian Government announced the creation of one of the world's largest marine reserve networks. Around 3.1 million square kilometres of our oceans are now managed mainly for the purposes of biodiversity conservation. This is an area roughly equivalent to the land area of Queensland and the Northern Territory combined.

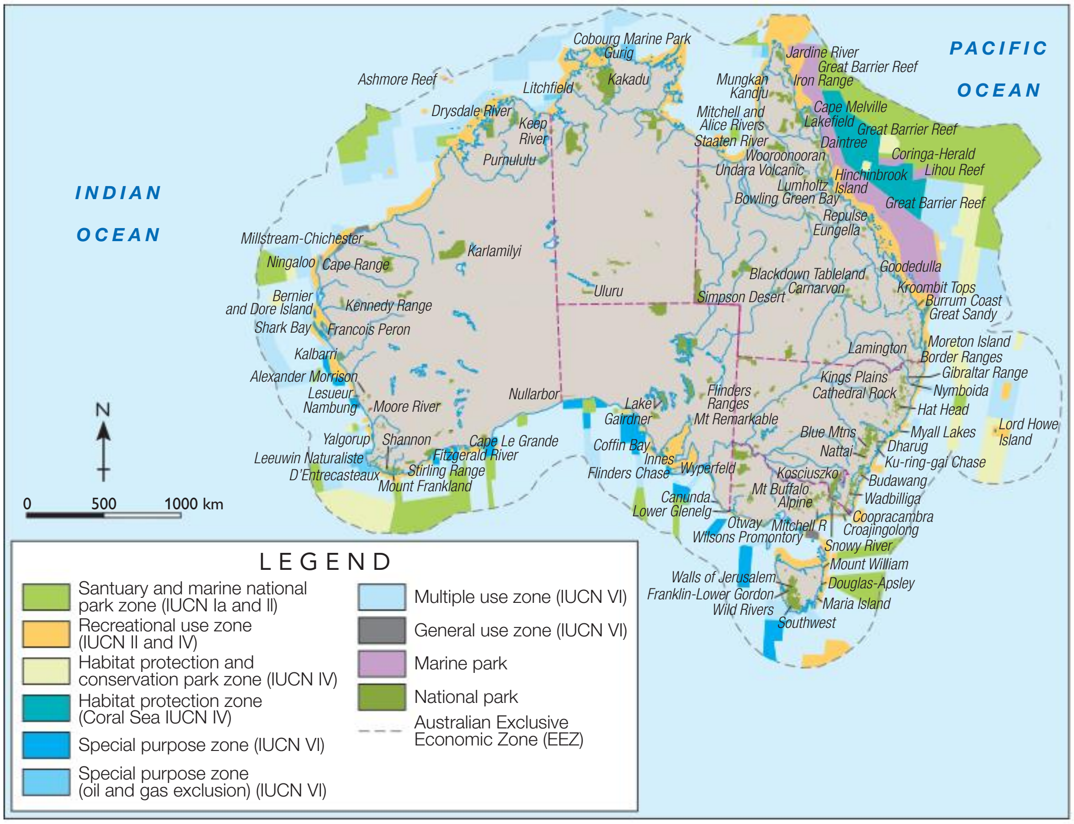
Managing a marine reserve is particularly challenging because, unlike national parks on land, fences and signs are not easily erected to limit access to particularly sensitive areas. Instead, marine reserves are divided into zones, and certain activities are allowed, banned or limited in each zone. It is the responsibility of anyone who enters a marine reserve to be aware of the activities permitted within each zone.

Every marine reserve in Australia – except for the Great Barrier Reef, which is recognised as a special case – has been assigned a particular management category (see Source 5). These are the same as those adopted in other countries, and have been developed by the International Union for the Conservation of Nature (IUCN).

Source 5 The IUCN management categories for the conservation of marine reserves

IUCN number	Name of reserve type	Purpose of the reserve
Ia	Strict nature reserve	Managed primarily for scientific research or environmental monitoring
II	National park	Protected and managed to preserve its natural condition
IV	Habitat/species management area	Managed primarily to ensure the maintenance of habitats or to meet the requirements of specific species
VI	Managed resource protected area	Managed to ensure long-term protection and maintenance of biological diversity, with a sustainable flow of natural products and services to meet community needs

AUSTRALIA: NATIONAL PARKS AND MARINE RESERVES, 2018



Source 6

Source: Oxford University Press

Enlarged map
Australia: National parks and marine reserves, 2018

Quiz me!
A quick quiz on protecting the coast

3.8 Check your learning

Comprehend

1 **Summarise** how natural environments are protected in Australia.

2 **Describe** the ideals that are behind the management strategies implemented in national parks.

3 Look at Source 6.

a Where are Australia's largest marine reserves located?

b **Describe** the location of marine reserves in the state in which you live.

Analyse

4 Source 7 is a photo taken by a hiker in a protected coastal area.

a **Consider** how the hiker may have an impact on the natural environment.

b Think of two ways park managers in this area could limit these impacts.

Apply

5 There were many objections to the Australian Government announcement in 2012 that millions of square kilometres of ocean were to become marine reserves. In small groups, **discuss** which Australian groups would be likely to support this announcement and which would be likely to oppose it. Brainstorm the arguments that each of these groups would use to support their points of view.

6 Source 6 shows the extent of Australia's Exclusive Economic Zone (EEZ). **Investigate** this area and find out the benefits for Australia in having such a large EEZ. You may also like to find out about the Timor Gap EEZ and how this was created.

Source 7 Freycinet Marine Reserve on Tasmania's east coast includes large areas designated as 'strict nature reserves' due to the biodiversity of the coast's offshore seamounts (undersea mountains) and bird populations.

3.9 First Nations peoples' management of the coast

Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» explain First Nations peoples' approach to managing coastal landscapes.

Quiz me!
A quick quiz on First Nations peoples' management of the coast

Enlarged map
Coorong: Aboriginal lands and national parks

Prior to European colonisation in 1788, the coastal areas of Australia supported large numbers of First Nations peoples. The coasts provided a reliable source of food both from the sea and the surrounding land.

Today, nearly half of all First Nations peoples in Australia live near the coast. Many maintain a close association with the coast through cultural and historic connections, through continued use of coastal resources and by law. In the Northern Territory, for example, Aboriginal communities own and manage approximately 85 per cent of the coastal land.

Coastal places with special significance to First Nations peoples are under the same environmental threats as other coastal places, from:

- population and economic growth
- land use changes
- climate change
- the arrival of invasive species.

First Nations communities are now working with government to restore lands that are important to them. This joint approach means that factors of First Nations heritage are taken into account when decisions are made about the use and restoration of degraded areas.

CASE STUDY

Ngarrindjeri management of the Coorong

Source 8

The land and waters is a living body. We the Ngarrindjeri people are a part of its existence. The land and waters must be healthy for the Ngarrindjeri people to be healthy. We are hurting for our Country. The Land is dying, the River is dying, the Kurangk (Coorong) is dying and the Murray Mouth is closing. What does the future hold for us?

Tom Trevorrow,
Ngarrindjeri Elder,
Camp Coorong, 2002

Source 9 An oblique aerial photograph of the Coorong, Lower Lakes (including Lake Alexandrina and Lake Albert) and Murray Mouth region of South Australia

The region known as the Coorong, where the Murray River reaches the sea, covers an area of 14 000 square kilometres. The Coorong was recognised as a 'Wetland of International Importance' and as a breeding ground for many bird and fish species by the Ramsar Convention on Wetlands in 1985. Due to a combination of factors – including water extraction in the Murray–Darling Basin, drought, and barrages (dams) built across the Murray to hold back sea water – the region has become severely degraded. In particular, the waters of the Coorong Lagoon and lakes have become saltier than the sea, wetlands have dried out and acidic soils have become exposed. Another cause of this degradation has been the building of dams that collect water during wet seasons and then release this water during dry seasons. This has disrupted the natural cycle of the Murray River of floods and droughts, and has had a dramatic effect on the natural ecosystems of the river, particularly at its mouth. In some years, so little water flows through the mouth that it closes, cutting off the lakes of the region from the sea.

The traditional owners of the region, the Ngarrindjeri peoples, maintain a strong connection with the lands and water of the Coorong. The Ngarrindjeri peoples believe that the health of their nation is closely linked to the environmental health of the region, and that a freshwater flow that allows plants and animals to thrive must be maintained.

The Ngarrindjeri community, through the Ngarrindjeri Regional Authority (NRA), has formed a close relationship with the South Australian Department of Environment, Water and Natural Resources (DEWNR) to deal with short-term crises in the region and to plan for a sustainable future. This has resulted in the adoption of a long-term plan that aims to secure a future for the region as a 'healthy, productive and resilient wetland system that maintains its international importance'. The plan includes a number of specific goals:

- to protect and restore natural habitats
- to restore viable populations of native bird, fish and other animal species; restoring the natural flow of fresh water to the Coorong and Lower Lakes are seen as a key component of this goal
- to improve water quality and increase flows through the wetlands; it is proposed, for example, that very salty water be pumped out of the lagoon to the sea

COORONG: ABORIGINAL LANDS AND NATIONAL PARKS

Source 10 Source: Oxford University Press

- to recognise the Ngarrindjeri community's association with the area.

Large areas of dunes, wetlands and farmland have already been replanted using native plant species as the first step in this plan to restore the Coorong area.

3.9 Check your learning

Comprehend

1 Why did many First Nations peoples live near the coast prior to colonisation?

2 **Explain** the approach used by the Ngarrindjeri peoples to manage the Coorong region.

3 Use Source 9 to **describe** the natural environment of the Coorong and Lower Lakes. Include the water and land features that you can identify.

Analyse

4 **Examine** Source 10.

  a Describe the location of Aboriginal lands.

  b Describe the locations of the barrages. Why have the barrages been built in these places? How would they change the natural environment of Lake Alexandrina and the Coorong?

5 Based on Tom Trevorrow's statement (Source 8), how would you **classify** his environmental world view? Give reasons for your answer.

Apply

6 **Investigate** the Ramsar Convention on Wetlands and its goals. Identify which other wetlands in Australia are listed in the Ramsar Convention and write a paragraph describing the distribution of these wetlands across Australia.

3.10 Change at Rainbow Beach

Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» identify strategies used to manage the sustainability of a coastal environment in Australia.

blowout dunes
dunes that are moving inland as onshore winds carry grains of sand away from the beach

Rainbow Beach is a small community located on a massive dune system that runs along the Queensland coast on the mainland, near the southern tip of Fraser Island (K'gari). Formed over 2 million years, the dunes are part of one of the world's greatest sand dune complexes, which includes Fraser Island – the world's largest sand island. In places, the dune system is 200-metres high and is held in place by large areas of scrub, forest and grasses.

While Aboriginal ownership of the region dates back thousands of years, European occupation began with a sand-mining operation north of the town in the mid-1960s. A road built to reach the sand mine was soon used by tourists to access Fraser Island and the new town of Rainbow Beach (see Source 11). The sand-mining operation finished in 1976, but the population of the small town continued to grow slowly. Now home to about 1200 full-time residents, visitor numbers swell in summer holiday periods as people arrive to use the camping ground, as well as several motels and resorts.

Source 11 An oblique aerial photograph of Rainbow Beach, looking south; the foredune and two **blowout dunes** – known locally as the Carlo Sand Blow (in the background) and the Little Sand Blow (closer to the camera) – can be seen to the south of the town.

The key management issue faced by the region is the erosion of the sand dunes, particularly during storms. This is an example of a potential conflict between natural processes and human activities. Sand dunes naturally change in response to long-term and short-term changes in wind patterns, sand supply and sea levels. The erosion of the foredune (a dune ridge running parallel to the ocean) at Rainbow Beach is a natural event. However, it has been exacerbated by the change in land cover available to the dunes, as vegetation has been replaced with houses and recreation spaces. The erosion is now putting buildings at risk and making the beach unsuitable for recreation activities, and now some local residents and the Gympie Regional Council are proposing to try to control the erosion.

A study of the region found that the risk of severe dune erosion at Rainbow Beach is very low, but some people are still concerned that during a severe storm important buildings could be lost. The council plans to install 260 metres of large sandbags at the base of the dunes in front of the surf lifesaving tower, to slow erosion and protect a new amenity block that has been built on top of the dunes.

Source 12 A 2009 storm severely eroded the Rainbow Beach foredune, placing the surf lifesaving tower at risk of collapse.

Coastcare at Rainbow Beach

There are 2000 Coastcare groups in Australia. Each group is made up of volunteers who work together with local governments to identify problems and then solve them. At Rainbow Beach, the local group has identified the key issues in the area as: loss of native vegetation, the trampling of dune vegetation by visitors accessing the beach, sand skiing on the sand blows, coastal erosion, environmental weeds, beach parking and rising sea levels due to climate change.

Some of the projects the Coastcare group at Rainbow Beach has undertaken include restoring native plants and removing weeds, protecting the dunes, monitoring bird populations and improving wetland areas.

Source 13 The Coastcare logo; Rainbow Beach has a very active Coastcare group.

Source 14 A range of management strategies are in place at the main beach in Rainbow Beach. The fencing and walkway direct people to enter the beach on this path, protecting surrounding dunes.

KEY CONCEPT
Place

Explore it!
A virtual field trip to Rainbow Beach

3.10 Check your learning

Comprehend

1 **Describe** the natural environment of Rainbow Beach.
2 **Describe** the human activities changing Rainbow Beach.
3 **Explain** the purpose of Coastcare.

Analyse

4 Is the plan to place sandbags at the base of the dunes at Rainbow Beach an example of hard or soft engineering? Why?
5 **Examine** Source 14.
   a What management strategy can you identify?
   b What is this strategy designed to achieve? Explain how effective you think it will be in achieving its aims.
   c What other strategies can you think of that would be effective?
6 **Compare** the changes at Rainbow Beach and the changes at Abbotts Hall Farm in Essex (see Source 3 on page 103). What are the similarities and differences?

Apply

7 The Little Sand Blow (see Source 11) is increasing in size as it moves westward. **Create** a flow diagram or field sketch that shows:
   - the natural processes responsible for this movement
   - the human activities that may be contributing to the movement
   - the impacts of this movement on the environment
   - the possible responses by the local government and Coastcare group.

3.11 Integrated Coastal Zone Management

Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» identify strategies used to manage the sustainability of a coastal environment in other countries.

Quiz me!
A quick quiz on Integrated Coastal Zone Management

Enlarged map
Bangladesh: Predicted impact of 1-metre sea-level rise

In response to the serious issues facing coastal and marine ecosystems, a major United Nations conference held in 1992, called the Earth Summit, proposed a new system for managing coastal environments. Known as Integrated Coastal Zone Management (ICZM), it is now a widespread practice in many coastal nations, such as New Zealand, India, Canada, Bangladesh and the Netherlands.

The United Nations recognises that one of the common issues associated with coastal management is that government departments and interest groups often propose very different solutions to issues depending on their own needs and interests. In many cases, these solutions ignore the needs of other coastal users. Coastal interest groups include those relating to residents, the tourism industry, fisheries, farmers, forestry, manufacturing, mining, waste disposal, marine transportation and real estate developers.

The key to ICZM is that it seeks to pull together the many groups and individuals with an interest in the coast in an integrated way when devising a management plan (see Source 15). The success of ICZM is dependent on funding, consistent government priorities and the expertise available to organise and manage large projects.

Eight principles of Integrated Coastal Zone Management

- Involve all relevant governments
- Take a long-term view
- Use a holistic approach
- Consider local conditions
- Work with natural processes
- Get people involved
- Use a range of approaches
- Be prepared to change strategy

Source 15 The eight key principles of ICZM

Source 16 The challenges facing many coastal environments require an integrated approach.

CASE STUDY

ICZM in Bangladesh

Each ICZM plan is designed to best address the issues of the country for which it has been developed. In Bangladesh, for example, the key issues are rising sea levels that bring saltwater floods to low-lying communities, and the impacts of cyclones and storm surges. It is estimated that a 1-metre rise in sea level would leave 17 000 square kilometres of land in Bangladesh submerged and 30 million people without a home (see Source 18). It would affect 1 million hectares of farmland and threaten the freshwater supplies of three major cities.

In response to these threats the Bangladeshi Government, with the assistance of the World Bank and expertise from the Netherlands, has developed an ICZM strategy that focuses on disaster mitigation. To date, 150 000 hectares of mangroves have been replanted and more than 2500 cyclone shelters constructed.

Source 17 A nursery for mangrove trees

BANGLADESH: PREDICTED IMPACT OF 1-METRE SEA-LEVEL RISE

Source 18 Source: Oxford University Press

3.11 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 What does ICZM stand for?

2 Why was an ICZM-informed strategy used in Bangladesh?

Analyse

3 Source 1 on page 88 illustrates a range of significant problems that occur in coastal areas. Work with a partner to:
- select one of the examples of coastal degradation shown in this source
- using the eight key principles of ICZM, identify the stakeholder groups and suggest how they could work together to manage the issue.
- present your ideas as a set of written proposals.

4 **Compare** the management strategies at Rainbow Beach (on page 109) and Bangladesh. What lesson could each community teach the other about dealing with coastal issues?

Apply

5 **Evaluate** the implementation of ICZM principles in Bangladesh. Write your evaluation in the form of a short report, addressing the following:
- What do you see as some of the barriers to ICZM being adopted in Bangladesh?
- What do you see as some of the advantages in managing coastal changes using this approach?
- What is your overall impression of ICZM being adopted in Bangladesh?

3.12 ICZM in the Netherlands

Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» describe the management response to coastal change in the Netherlands.

levees
long walls or embankments built to prevent flooding from the sea

The province of Zeeland in the Netherlands is a large agricultural area that is home to more than 380 000 people. Much of the region lies below sea level. The land has been drained and reclaimed, creating new islands that are linked by bridges and tunnels. The area has an intricate series of **levees** (known as dykes) and dams that hold back the waters of the North Sea and regulate the flow of the rivers into the sea. The province also supports a large fishing industry, and is home to the largest national park in the Netherlands.

In Zeeland, ICZM is used to reduce flooding from storm surges. The largest of the flood protection dams, the 9-kilometre-long Oosterscheldekering, links two of the largest islands in Zeeland. The 62 steel doors that make up the barrier can be lowered or raised in response to tides, storms and other sea level changes (see Source 19). For most of the year, sea water can flow freely beneath the dam, so that marine ecosystems in the bays and estuaries of the delta can be maintained.

Source 19 The Oosterscheldekering storm surge barrier in Zeeland

The dam, which was opened in 1986, has been declared one of the Seven Wonders of the Modern World and bears a plaque with the words: 'Here the tide is ruled by the wind, the moon and us [the Dutch].' However, long-term changes in sea level due to climate change place great pressure on this region and on these amazing engineering works.

The series of dams, storm surge barriers and bridges have provided many benefits for the people of the Zeeland region. As well as protecting them from storm surges and flooding, large areas of former saltwater estuaries have been converted into freshwater lakes, creating a reliable supply of water. The dams and bridges also link together island communities that had been isolated for hundreds of years, and the calmer waters of the river mouths and estuaries are safe for shipping and recreational boating.

Enlarged map
Zeeland: Topographic map

Key skill worksheet
Interpreting & analysing: Analysing topographic maps

Quiz me!
A quick quiz on ICZM in the Netherlands

Source 20 An aerial photograph of Zeeland showing a number of dams and storm surge barriers (including Oosterscheldekering)

ZEELAND: TOPOGRAPHIC MAP

Source 21

Source: Oxford University Press

3.12 Check your learning

Comprehend

1 **Explain** why Oosterscheldekering was constructed.

2 Use an atlas to locate the province of Zeeland. **Describe** why the flood protection dams were needed in this location.

Analyse

3 Explain how the flood protection provided by Oosterscheldekering demonstrates the eight key principles of ICZM (see Source 15 on page 110). For example, how does this barrier take local conditions into account?

4 **Examine** Sources 20 and 21.

a What factors do you think may be responsible for the large sandbanks forming in the Oosterschelde?

b Identify the different land uses on the island of Schouwen-Duiveland.

c Describe the relief of Schouwen-Duiveland using the contour lines on the map.

d Describe the southern shore of Schouwen-Duiveland.

Apply

5 **Create** a sketch map of the vertical aerial photograph in Source 20. On your map, label the key natural and human features of the landscape.

6 Oosterscheldekering is only one part of a much larger flood protection scheme. Use Google Earth to **investigate** the region and find other examples of flood protection.

3B SKILLS IN CONTEXT

Test me!
Once you've finished the topics in this section, test yourself with this quiz and find out which worksheet you should do.

Ningaloo Coast

On the north-west tip of Western Australia is one of the world's most spectacular coastal environments: the Ningaloo Coast. Long white beaches run along the shore, and visitors can swim out from the beach to Australia's longest fringing reef (a reef that lies extremely close to shore). The region is also home to dugongs and visited by whale sharks and greenback turtles.

Much of the region is under some form of legal protection as part of the Ningaloo Marine Reserve and Cape Range National Park. It was also added to the UNESCO World Heritage List in 2011. However, the Ningaloo Coast faces a number of potential environmental threats. These include:

- oil and gas exploration off the coast
- damage to coral reefs from boat owners anchoring in the fragile reef areas
- illegal fishing
- plastic bags killing turtles and whales by intestinal blockage
- vegetation damage from off-road driving
- waste disposal and pollution
- increasing level of water consumption
- potential for bushfires
- invasive species (foxes, goats, cats) destroying or attacking native plants and animals.

Source 22 A newborn green sea turtle makes its way across the sand to the ocean for the first time. Climate change has caused frequent flooding of sea turtle nests.

KEY SKILL
Interpreting & analysing

Analysing complex maps

Complex maps contain more than one set of information. Geographers use complex maps to analyse different features, reveal patterns and explain links between features in a given area. You can analyse a complex map by following these steps:

Step 1 Look carefully at the map and read its title to make sure you understand what is being shown.

Step 2 Examine the map's legend. Complex maps can have more than one part to a legend, which will be represented on the map in different ways. For example, in Source 23, areas of colour are used to show recreational use zones and state marine reserves. Different symbols are also used – to show roads and coastal water boundaries.

Step 3 Train your eyes to look for one set of information at a time. For example, look at solid blocks of colour on the map and work out what they tell you.

Step 4 Move to a different set of information by selecting another symbol or block of colour from the legend. Examine the map to identify this symbol or colour.

Step 5 Look for concentrations of the same symbol in areas, to see if patterns exist.

Step 6 Note any patterns you can find on the map between different features and locations.

Step 7 Describe the degree to which patterns are connected.

Step 8 Try to suggest reasons for the connection between the two patterns.

For more information on this skill, see page 25 of 'The geography toolkit'.

Practise the skill

Look at the map of Ningaloo marine reserve areas (Source 23).

1. **Identify** the symbol for 'multiple use marine zones' in the legend, and then locate these areas on the map.
2. **Describe** the coverage of the multiple use marine zone.
3. **Describe** the relationship between the multiple use marine zones and the location of recreational use marine zones.
4. **Describe** the location of the Ningaloo World Heritage area.

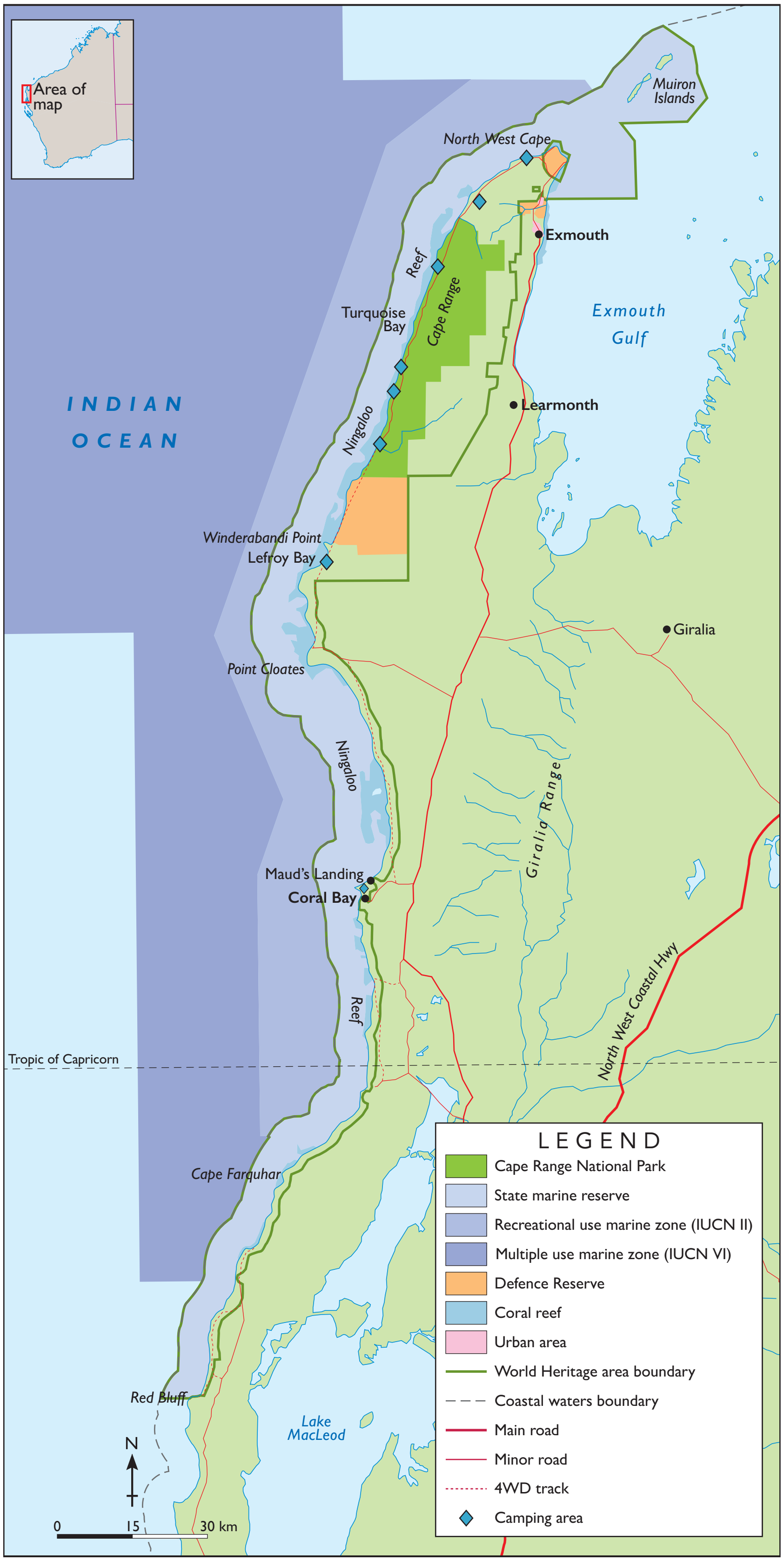
Extend your understanding

Do some further reading on the internet to complete the following tasks.

1. **Investigate** Ningaloo's World Heritage listing.
   a. What does 'World Heritage' mean?
   b. Why are sites placed on the World Heritage List?
   c. Why was the Ningaloo Coast added to the list?
   d. What is the value of a World Heritage listing?
2. In the early 2000s, a large resort and marina called Coral Coast Resort was planned for the coastal area to the north of Coral Bay known as Maud's Landing. Write a 250-word report that **explains** why this resort was not built.
3. 'It is impossible to preserve a natural coastal environment while tourists continue to visit it.' To what extent do you agree with this statement: A lot (strongly), a little bit (somewhat) or not at all? Write a short paragraph **justifying** your position.

Enlarged map
Ningaloo: Marine reserve areas

NINGALOO: MARINE RESERVE AREAS



Source 23

Source: Oxford University Press

3.13 The role of geographers in managing coastal change

Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» explain how geographers can manage environmental change.

Geographers have an important role to play in the management of environmental change. Because they draw on knowledge and skills from the natural sciences (such as geology, biology, chemistry and physics), the social sciences (such as psychology, history and economics) and humanities (such as philosophy) they are uniquely placed to see the 'whole picture' when examining environmental change. Geographers can, for example, consider the reasons why people act in a certain way, and consider the impacts of these actions on the environment. They can also help to explain why people respond to change in different ways and, most importantly, recommend a course of action that is beneficial to both the natural environment and people.

Key skill worksheet
Questioning & researching: Conducting successful fieldwork

Fieldwork

When examining environmental change such as coastal erosion, geographers often begin by developing a set of geographical questions. They then set out to answer these questions using a range of geographic tools. One of the most useful tools is **fieldwork** – visiting the environment being studied and investigating a process first-hand.

fieldwork
geographical study that takes place outside the classroom, at the site of inquiry

When exploring changes at the coast, geographers use a range of specific techniques. These include constructing cross-sections of dunes, cliffs and other landforms, photographing evidence of change and measuring longshore drift. By visiting the same site at regular intervals (for example, once a year) geographers can also observe changes that have occurred between their visits. It may also be important to visit the site at different times of the year to observe seasonal changes, such as the effects of storm waves during winter or the impacts of holiday-makers during summer.

Explore it!
Take a virtual field trip to Hampton Beach

The following case study is an example of the sort of environmental issues that might be explored by a geographer completing fieldwork.

CASE STUDY

Coastal issues at Hampton Beach, Victoria

Hampton Beach lies on Port Phillip Bay, about 15 kilometres south-east of the Melbourne CBD (see Source 1). Over the past century, human interference in the natural processes of erosion, transportation and deposition have brought about dramatic changes in the amount of sand on the beach. To protect roads and homes from coastal erosion, a sea wall was built along the coast in the 1930s. Later, in the 1950s, a breakwater was built at Sandringham Harbour to protect boats from storm waves. The adoption of these management strategies stole the supply of sand to the beach. The sea wall meant that sand from the dunes no longer fell to the beach, and the breakwater trapped sand moving along the coast under the power of longshore drift.

The local council has responded to the concerns of residents about their disappearing beach by building a series of groynes to trap sand, and by dredging sand from the sea floor and pumping it onto the beach (see Source 2). This top-up of sand needs to be carried out regularly and is an expensive solution to the problem of erosion. Studies show that rising sea levels are adding to the threat of erosion at Australian sandy beaches such as Hampton Beach.

Source 1 An oblique aerial photograph of the Hampton Beach area being investigated for fieldwork; labels have been added by the geographer.

Source 2 Sand is dredged from the bay and pumped onto the beach in a process known as beach renourishment.

Source 3 A view of Sandringham Harbour from the top of the existing dune

Source 4 An artist's impression of Hampton Beach painted between 1885 and 1914

3.13 Check your learning

Comprehend

1 **Explain** why fieldwork is an essential tool for geographers.

2 **Explain** why geographers are uniquely placed to help describe and manage environmental change.

Analyse

3 **Determine** (decide) how successful the groynes at Hampton Beach have been. (You may need to refer to the information about groynes on page 96.)

4 **Examine** the photographs in Sources 1 to 3. What evidence can you find in these sources that the Sandringham breakwater interrupts the natural process of longshore drift?

Apply

5 Look carefully at the photographs on this page. **Create** a series of geographical questions that could be used as the basis of a field trip to Hampton Beach. You may like to begin your questions with the words 'what', 'where', 'how', 'why', 'what impact' and 'what should'. Share your questions with a partner and then with the class.

6 Use the guide to conducting successful fieldwork (available on your obook pro) to design a fieldwork investigation at Hampton Beach. Be sure to investigate:

a the causes of coastal erosion

b the effects of coastal erosion

c the responses to coastal erosion.

3.14 Using spatial technologies

Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» identify the tools geographers use to investigate and predict environmental change.

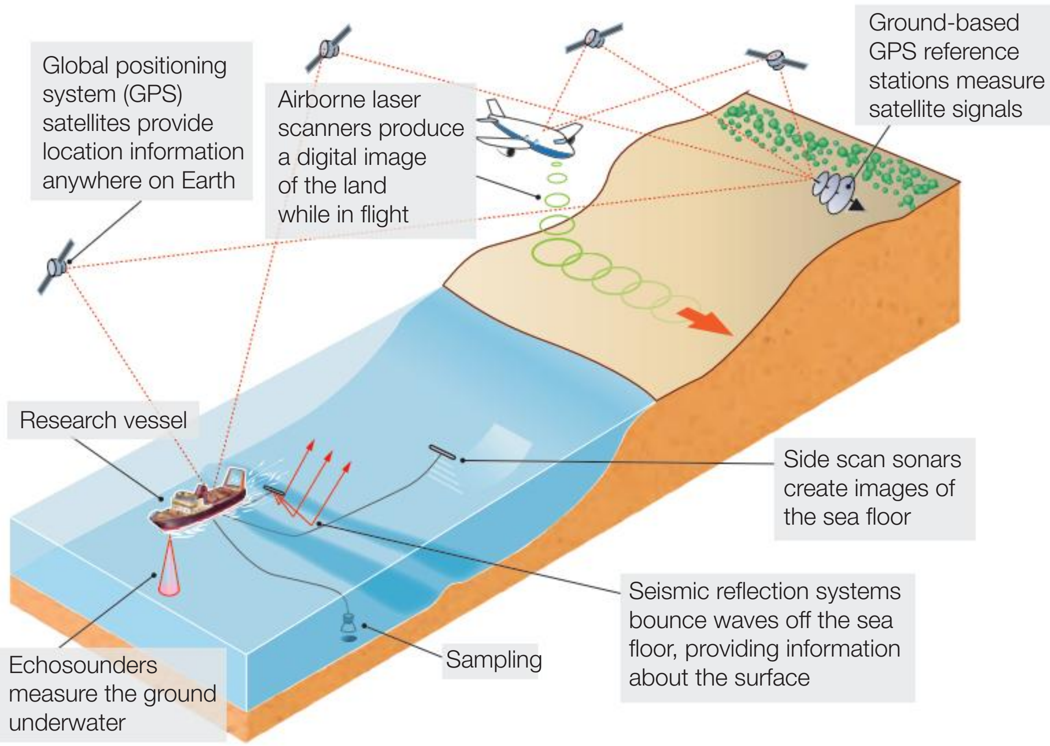
global positioning systems (GPSs) devices that use satellites to accurately pinpoint the location of an object on the Earth's surface (e.g. a car, a mobile phone) and provide data and directions to help with navigation

geographic information systems (GISs) software applications designed to capture, store, manipulate, analyse, manage and present all kinds of geographical information

digital elevation models (DEMs) topographic illustrations (or digital models) that use a range of data to generate a 3D representation of the Earth's surface

Quiz me! A quick quiz on using spatial technologies

Geographers use a range of tools to describe and predict environmental change. These tools may be as simple as direct observation, or measuring and recording the changing dimensions of coastal features. Increasingly, however, digital tools are being used to measure change and to help manage dynamic environments such as coasts, forests and farms (see Source 5). These tools rely on the collection of data from sources such as **global positioning systems (GPSs)**, aerial photographs, ships and tide meters. The data collected is then analysed by computer programs and made available for use by **geographic information systems (GISs)** and **digital elevation models (DEMs)**, as well as other applications.



Source 5 Geographers use a range of digital data collection methods.

As more and more coastal communities become concerned about the impacts of rising sea levels due to climate change, there is a greater demand for more advanced methods of monitoring the coastline. This is driving a boom in coastline monitoring through spatial technologies, and is making more data and information about coastal changes available to geographers than ever before.

Digital elevation models (DEMs)

A DEM shows the relief (or shape) of the land in three dimensions (see Source 6). Much of the data needed to create a DEM is collected from special sensors on satellites or in planes. This data is represented as a raster (grid of squares) and manipulated by technicians to form a model of the Earth's surface. These models can help geographers 'see through' features of the environment, such as coastal waters and forests, to examine the terrain below. They can also be used to predict areas at risk from erosion and other hazards, such as coastal flooding. This information can then be used to help manage the environment and limit the effects of these potential hazards and disasters.

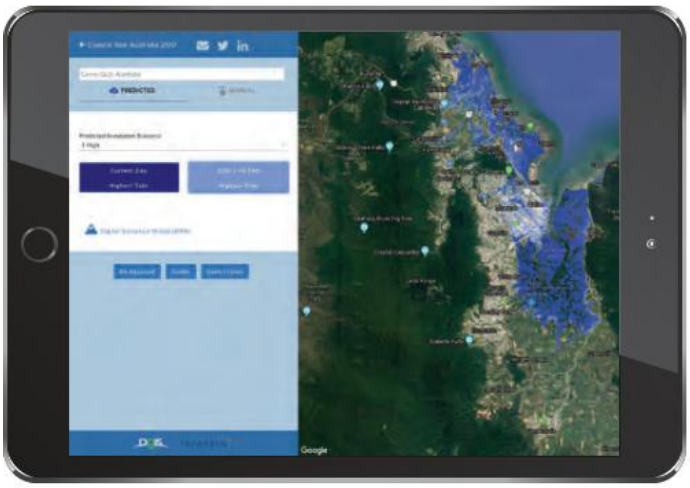
Geographic information systems (GISs)

A GIS uses digital data to create a series of maps of a particular landscape. Each map focuses on a different aspect of the environment, such as the ocean depth, salinity, roads, settlements and relief. Using a GIS program, the maps are presented as a series of layers that can be switched on and off. This enables geographers to compare different aspects of the environment and look for interconnections between them.

A GIS is particularly useful in examining and managing change in coastal environments. It allows geographers to isolate different and competing land uses, to see beyond political and physical boundaries, and to measure change over time.

In the Netherlands, the entire 350-kilometre-long Dutch coastline is digitally mapped and measured each year using methods similar to those shown in Source 5. The maps and cross-sections produced in this annual survey are compared to the first survey of this kind, which was undertaken in 1990. Areas of coastal erosion and accretion (growth) are clearly displayed on GIS maps, and are used by coastal managers to make changes in coastal defence strategies, such as beach nourishment and sea walls.

Additional resource
DEM of Carins



Source 6 This DEM of Cairns shows the areas that will be flooded by high tides in 2100 if sea levels rise by the predicted 0.74 metres.

Source 7 A GIS image of the Abrolhos Islands in Western Australia

3.14 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 **Identify** three reasons why geographers use digital tools, providing an example of at least one of the tools in your answer.

Comprehend

2 **Summarise** the process by which data is collected to create GISs and DEMs.

Analyse

3 **Examine** Source 6 and answer the following questions. An enlarged version is available on your obook pro.
   - a What evidence is there that Cairns is under threat of flooding due to a rise in sea levels?
   - b How could this DEM be useful to city planners?
   - c Who else would find this model useful?

Apply

4 Look at the images of Hampton Beach on page 117 before completing the following tasks.
   - a Imagine that the local council at Hampton Beach has asked you to suggest a range of digital data collection methods to create a GIS that will assist the council with its management of sand movement and loss at the beach. **Describe** the most relevant data collection methods to use.
   - b Sketch the map layers that you think the council would most like to see included in the program.

3.15 Understanding spatial variations

Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» understand the four spheres model to describe coastal environments.

spatial variations
a term used to describe the way built and natural features (e.g. towns, cities, rivers, mountain ranges, farming regions) are arranged on the Earth's surface

Quiz me!
A quick quiz on understanding spatial variations

anthropogenic
created or caused by humans

Each place on the Earth's surface is unique. In the same way that no two people are exactly alike, natural environments such as forests, glaciers and coasts all differ. In geography, these differences over an area of the Earth's surface are referred to as **spatial variations**. The reasons for these spatial variations may be complex, but recognising them is a critical part of understanding why different places have different problems. Geographers examine these differences and use what they find to propose solutions and responses to environmental change and/or issues. These solutions and responses need to be site-specific. They may work in one place but not work in another. Some environments are also more resilient to change than others.

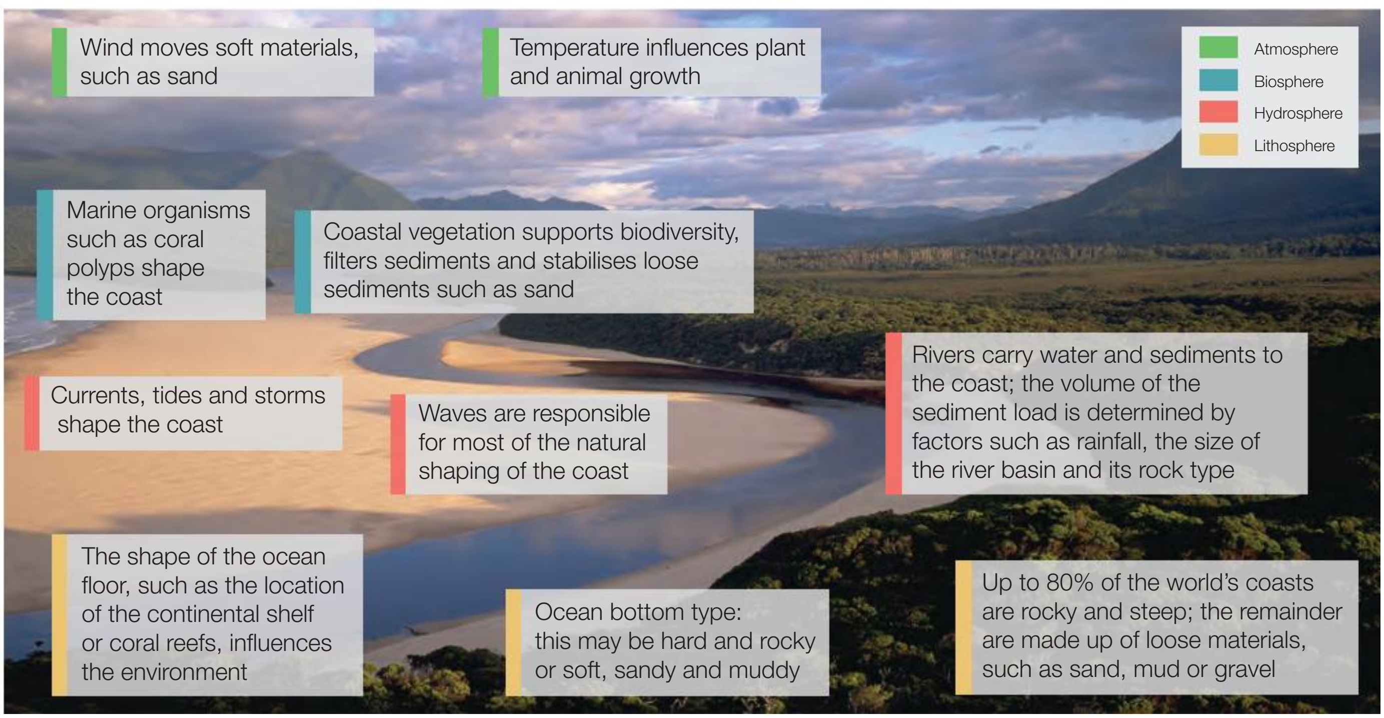
The factors that need to be looked at when considering spatial variations in environments can be divided into two groups – natural factors and human factors.

Natural factors

Geographers often use models to help them understand processes in the natural world. The four spheres model is particularly useful when investigating the natural factors that influence spatial variations. The four spheres that interact to form unique landscapes are:

1. the atmosphere – all the gases that surround the Earth
2. the biosphere – all living things on the Earth (that is, plants, animals, humans and other organisms) and the features they create
3. the hydrosphere – all the water on the Earth (in solid, liquid and gaseous forms)
4. the lithosphere – the outer rocky layer of the Earth (the crust).

Source 8 provides an example of how the four spheres model can be used to investigate and describe how natural factors interact to shape coastal environments.



Source 8 An analysis of an Australian coastal environment using the four spheres model

Human factors

People have always been drawn to the coast. Coastal environments provide us with many services that we need to live and thrive, such as food, shelter, transport, recreation and flat land for building. Areas near the mouths of rivers also provide fresh water and fertile soil. Human influence tends to be concentrated in certain places on the coast where these services are most available. In these places, the coastlines are now so altered by human activities that some geographers refer to them as **anthropogenic** (see Source 10), meaning humans have become the dominant force in these environments.

Source 9 The Gold Coast in Queensland is an example of an anthropogenic coastal environment.

Features of an anthropogenic coastal environment

- Coastal protection constructions, such as sea walls
- Cleared vegetation
- Dredged shipping channels
- Mining operations including sand mining and oil drilling
- Fishing and aquaculture
- Coastal agriculture
- Forestry
- Shipbuilding and other industries
- Shipping and port facilities
- Dammed rivers for hydroelectric power generation
- Naval and other defence operations
- Tourism and recreation
- Roads
- Drained coastal wetlands and salt marshes
- Land reclamation
- Cities

Source 10 Features of an anthropogenic coast

3.15 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 **Name** the four interconnected spheres that make up the Earth.

Comprehend

2 What four ecosystem services does the coast provide us with?

3 Would rocky coasts be more resilient to change than sandy coasts? **Explain** your answer.

4 Choose a section of coastline you have visited or read about. **Describe** the natural and human processes that have shaped it.

Analyse

5 In the same way that natural factors can be classified, so too can human factors. One method to classify them is the SHEEPT method. Use this method to **classify** the human factors listed in Source 10. For more information on the SHEEPT method, refer to page 30 of 'The geography toolkit'.

6 Select two of the coasts shown in the images in this chapter, for example:
- the Cinque Terre coast (Source 1 on page 86)
- Wamberal (Source 4 on page 91)
- the Coorong (Source 9 on page 106)
- Rainbow Beach (Source 12 on page 108)
- Hampton Beach (Source 1 on page 117).

Write a short report that **analyses:**
- how these two coastal landscapes differ
- why these two coastal landscapes differ.

In your report, be sure to consider the natural and human factors and processes that result in the differences between these two places.

3.16 Assessing environmental change

Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» explain how geographers assess environmental impact in Australia.

In Australia, and in many other countries, building projects that are likely to impact on the natural environment must go through a process of environmental assessment. This involves a study of the likely impacts of the proposed project on the environment. The resulting document is called an Environmental Impact Statement (EIS) and is generally prepared by a geographer with specialised training.

When completed, the EIS is submitted to the relevant authority; for example, the state planning ministry. This body then has the authority to stop the project if it believes it will have too great an impact on the environment. Alternatively, the body may request changes to aspects of the project in order to minimise the environmental impacts.

CASE STUDY

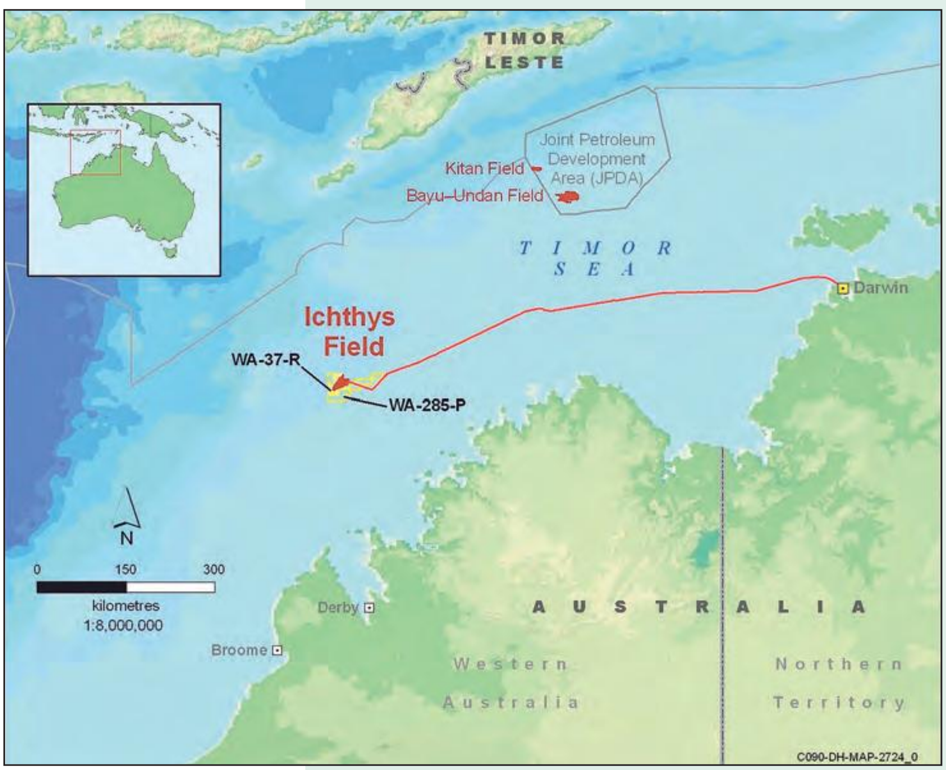
The Ichthys Project

Map it!
Ichthys Project

The Ichthys Project (named after the classical Greek word for 'fish') is the largest oil and gas mining project in the Northern Territory and one of the largest in the world. It was built by INPEX (a worldwide gas exploration company) and its partners, and includes construction in the Timor Sea and Darwin. Natural gas, an extremely valuable energy source, is extracted from beneath the Timor Sea and then transported to Darwin through a pipeline laid on the seabed.

The massive project delivers significant social and economic benefits to Australia, bringing jobs, training, business opportunities and advancement for the energy industry.

ICHTHYS PROJECT: LOCATION OF THE OFFSHORE WELLS, PIPELINE AND ONSHORE PLANT



Source 11

Source: AAP

The three stages of the project – the offshore wells, the pipeline and the onshore facilities at Darwin – were all assessed for their environmental impacts before the project was allowed to proceed.

The onshore processing plant was constructed on Middle Arm Peninsula – to the south of Darwin and close to an existing natural gas plant. The following factors were studied as part of the three-year environmental assessment of the project:

- the impact of dredging parts of the harbour and the disposal of the dredged material on corals, sea grass and marine animals such as dolphins, dugongs and turtles; this dredging involves the removal of a large rock shoal by methods such as using explosives (three explosions per day for 57 weeks) or specialised dredging machinery

- an increase in underwater noise and the impact of this on dolphins, which use sound to navigate
- impacts on shore birds and wading birds, particularly from the loss of mudflat habitat and the potential for oil spills
- impacts on fish species, including the commercially important barramundi, and on crustaceans, especially mud crabs
- the removal of areas of mangrove forest, including plants listed as vulnerable to extinction, and the possible impacts of increased sedimentation on other areas of mangrove
- disposal of waste water, including sewage from the plant and the village built to house up to 3500 construction workers
- air and noise pollution, and the effects of these on Darwin residents
- greenhouse gas emissions – the project, when completed, will be the largest emitter of greenhouse gases in the Northern Territory and one of the largest in Australia.

Based on its assessment of the impacts and potential benefits of the project, the Northern Territory Government allowed it to go ahead, as long as INPEX made a number of changes to reduce the potential environmental impact and agreed to a range of recommendations. These included:

- monitoring and researching the health of Darwin Harbour for 40 years
- long-term research into coastal dolphins to assist with their conservation
- a $3 million donation to Charles Darwin University to assist in oil and gas research
- an extensive mapping project covering the natural habitats of the Darwin region.

Source 12 The onshore processing plant near Darwin

3.16 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 What is an Environmental Impact Statement (EIS) used for?

2 **Identify** the potential benefits as well as potential negative impacts of the Ichthys Project.

Comprehend

3 Look at Source 11.

  a Estimate the total length of the pipeline.

  b Suggest three potential impacts of the pipeline. **Explain** your answer.

4 **Describe** the changes to the natural environment caused by the building and operation of the plant pictured in Source 12.

5 **Explain** why INPEX would agree to the range of recommendations put forward by the Northern Territory government.

6 **Explain** the importance of each of the Northern Territory government's recommendations for the natural environment.

Apply

7 Brainstorm with your classmates what cultural, economic and environmental factors a government would need to consider when deciding whether or not to approve a project like the Ichthys Project.

8 The Adani-owned coal mine in the Queensland Carmichael coal basin is one of the most controversial mining projects ever proposed in Australia. **Investigate** this project to find out what makes it so controversial. With a partner, focus on impacts to the local coastal environment.

3.17 Responding to environmental issues

Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» explain how people use environmental, economic and social criteria, and consider trade-offs when making decisions about environmental issues.

Once an environmental issue has been identified and assessed, it is often necessary to come up with a suitable response. The environmental response must be individually designed for that particular environment. Management responses that are effective in one place may be ineffective or even damaging in other places.

When considering a suitable response to environmental issues, important questions to ask include:

- Does the response deal with the causes of the issue as well as its effects?
- Is the response affordable in both the short and long term?
- Is the response beneficial to all natural environments, or does it just move the problem and perhaps result in greater environmental changes in another place?
- Is the response fair to all of the relevant stakeholders?

CASE STUDY

Quiz me!
A quick quiz on responding to environmental issues

Sierra Leone's disappearing beaches

Sand mining is having a serious environmental impact on the coastal environment in the African nation of Sierra Leone. The capital city, Freetown, is experiencing a population and building boom. The population is growing by about 70 000 people per year and there is a growing demand for new housing, as well as for commercial and industrial buildings. Many of these buildings are made from concrete, which requires vast quantities of good-quality sand.

Sand-mining operations can involve up to 40 trucks at a time, each with a team of diggers, who shovel sand from a beach. This process is creating changes in both the natural environment (as the sea is able to penetrate further inland) and the human environment. Local residents are being affected as the remaining dunes are eroding rapidly and houses are falling into the sea.

Source 13 Sand mining on Hamilton Beach, Freetown, Sierra Leone

Possible responses

Sierra Leone is trying to build a viable tourism industry to boost the nation's economy, but tourist resorts are in danger of losing their beaches.

A possible response to this problem would be to declare sand mining illegal and arrest those who continue to take sand from the beaches. Another possible response would be to import sand from other places, or to manage the amount of sand that is mined by introducing load limits and restricted zones.

Some of the factors to consider when planning a response to the issue of sand mining in Sierra Leone are:

- Sierra Leone is one of the world's poorest countries. Sand mining provides a source of income for hundreds of men and their families.
- As Sierra Leone is a developing country, the levels of technology in industries such as transport and mining are low.
- Coastal areas are heavily used for many purposes: fishing, residential, tourism and recreation, as well as a source of building materials.
- As dunes disappear, coastal erosion is accelerating and is now up to 6 metres per year in some places.
- Global climate change is expected to raise sea levels on this coast and to increase the number and severity of storms generating large, destructive waves.
- Corrupt local officials accept payments from the construction companies to continue sand mining.

Evaluating possible responses to environmental issues

Part of a geographer's role is to evaluate the strengths and weaknesses of responses to environmental, economic and social issues.

When evaluating possible responses to environmental issues such as the one in Sierra Leone, follow these steps:

Step 1 Read the background information carefully and make sure that you understand it. Conduct some additional research on the issue if anything is unclear.

Step 2 In some cases, you may need to suggest your own responses to environmental issues. In other cases, you will evaluate responses suggested by others; for example, in the case of Sierra Leone, consider the following responses:

- Response 1 – Declare sand mining illegal and arrest those who continue to take sand from beaches
- Response 2 – Import sand from other places.

Step 3 Develop a set of criteria to evaluate each of the suggested responses. These criteria should consider all sides of the issue; for example, economic viability, environmental sustainability and social justice.

Step 4 Create a table to evaluate each response against each criterion. You may like to use symbols, such as:

- ✓ – criterion met
- % – criterion partly met
- × – criterion not met
- ? – unsure.

Step 5 Use the data in your table to select the best response to the issue. You may need to reconsider particular aspects of the response (and make modifications), or combine aspects of more than one response, to come up with the best solution.

Step 6 Based on your evaluation, present your final recommendation. Include maps and diagrams to help describe the proposal and the intended benefits.

Practise the skill

1 Follow the steps to **develop** a sustainable response to beach sand mining in Sierra Leone.

For more information on this skill, see page 33 of 'The geography toolkit'.

KEY SKILL
Concluding & decision making

3.17 Check your learning

Comprehend

1 **Explain** why beach sand mining is a problem in Sierra Leone.

2 **Explain** why the Sierra Leone Government does not simply ban beach sand mining.

Analyse

3 a **Identify** the impacts of sand mining.
   b **Classify** the impacts as environmental, economic or social.
   c Rank them from the most to least significant in terms of the severity of environmental impact.

Apply

4 Using Source 10 on page 121, identify the human factors that are shaping the coastline of Sierra Leone.
   a **Compare** these to the human factors shaping the coastline at Hampton Beach (see page 116).
   b **Propose** (put forward) one strategy to combat the effects of these human factors in both places.
   c **Evaluate** your strategy by listing its strengths and weaknesses before making an overall judgment about how strong it is.

3C SKILLS IN CONTEXT

Test me!
Once you've finished the topics in this section, test yourself with this quiz and find out which worksheet you should do.

Gulf of Mexico oil spill

The Gulf of Mexico lies between the United States, Mexico and Cuba, and contains one of the world's busiest oilfields. There are almost 3200 active oil wells in the Gulf, along with a further 27 000 abandoned oil wells.

In April 2010, the Deepwater Horizon – an active oil well operated by British Petroleum (BP) – exploded and sank to the sea floor, 1500 metres below the surface. Oil gushed from the well for three months, while BP and American authorities tried desperately to plug the hole. The results were catastrophic. An oil slick covering 1500 square kilometres started moving towards the American coastline. Thousands of sea birds, fish, dolphins and turtles were covered in oil and died. Other animals along the shoreline, such as crabs and molluscs, were also badly affected. Local industries such as fishing and tourism collapsed, and many people lost their livelihoods.

KEY SKILL
Interpreting & analysing

Analysing environmental issues using complex maps

In the case of an environmental accident, the impacts of the accident usually have multiple causes. Geographers try to go beyond the direct cause (the oil well blew up) to explore other indirect factors that influenced the course and extent of the impacts. These are generally a combination of natural processes and human activities.

As we saw in Skills in Context task 3B on page 114, complex maps are maps that contain more than one set of information. Geographers use complex maps to analyse different features, reveal patterns and explain links between features in a given area. You can analyse a complex map by following these steps:

Step 1 Look carefully at the map and read its title to make sure you understand what is being shown.

Step 2 Examine the map's legend. Complex maps can have more than one part to a legend, and these parts will be represented on the map in different ways.

Step 3 Train your eyes to look for one set of information at a time. For example, look at solid blocks of colour on the map and work out what they tell you.

Step 4 Move to a different set of information by selecting another symbol or block of colour from the legend. Examine the map to identify this symbol or colour.

Step 5 Look for concentrations of the same symbol in areas, to see if patterns exist.

Step 6 Note any patterns you can find on the map between different features and locations.

Step 7 Describe the degree to which patterns are connected.

Step 8 Try to suggest reasons for the connection between the two patterns.

Practise the skill

1 Using Source 14, **analyse** the causes and effects of the Gulf of Mexico oil spill. A larger version is available on your obook pro.

Once you have completed your analysis, fill in a table like the one in Source 15 as a way of organising your results. An example has been done for you.

Extend your understanding

In addition to complex maps, geographers use information from a range of other sources to explain how the impacts of the accident progressed and to look at the longer-term impacts on the environment.

Investigate the Gulf of Mexico oil spill on the internet before answering the following questions.

1 Can you identify any contributing factors to the accident that are not shown on Source 14 (for example, any economic or technological factors)? What was their role in the accident? Add these factors to a table like the one in Source 16.

2 Since 2000, more oil wells have been drilled in much deeper water than in the past. Some experts believe that this was an important factor in this disaster. Why do you think wells are now being drilled in much deeper water?

GULF OF MEXICO: EXTENT OF OIL SPILL FROM DEEPWATER HORIZON, 2010

Source 14 Source: Oxford University Press

Source 15

Geographic factor	Possible contributing feature	Description of feature
Physical environment	Shape of the coastline	The Gulf of Mexico is an extensive broad bay that opens to the Atlantic Ocean and Caribbean Sea in the east.
	Features of the seabed	
	Location of coastal marshes	
Natural processes	Ocean currents in the Gulf	
Demographics	Distribution of towns and cities	
	Location of oil refineries and oil rigs	

Source 16

Contributing factors	Possible contributing feature	Description of feature
Economic factors	Level of development of the United States	
	Importance of oil in the US economy	
	Importance of tourism and fishing industries	
Technological factors	Operation of oil refineries and oil rigs	
	Technical failure of oil rig	

Enlarged map
Gulf of Mexico: Extent of oil spill from Deepwater Horizon, 2010

3 CHAPTER REVIEW

Review activity

Booming Busan

Examine Source 17 and use your skills in interpreting satellite images to answer the questions below.

1 Locate the Nakdong River in Source 17. **Describe** the changes that have occurred to the three small islands at the mouth of the river between 1988 and 2017. (2 marks)

2 **Identify** and describe the natural process that has been responsible for the change in these islands. (3 marks)

3 Locate Gadeok Island in Source 17. **Describe** the changes that have occurred on the northern tip of this island between 1988 and 2017. (3 marks)

4 **Identify** and describe the human activity that has been responsible for these changes. (3 marks)

5 **Identify** and describe three coastal changes that have occurred to the coastline at the port of Busan between 1988 and 2017. (3 marks)

6 In a carefully worded paragraph, **explain** the probable causes of these coastal changes. Include both direct and indirect causes of change. (6 marks)

(Total: 20 marks)

Source 17 The port of Busan in 1988 (left) and 2017 (right)

Chapter checklist

Now that you have completed this chapter, reflect on your ability to do the following:

	I can do this.	I cannot do this yet.
Identify and describe the changing features of coastal environments.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 3.1, page 88.
Describe the natural causes of change in coastal environments.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 3.2, page 90.
Explain the impacts of climate change on the sustainability of coastal environments.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 3.3, page 92.
Explain the impacts of climate change on the sustainability of Australia's Great Barrier Reef.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 3.4, page 94.
Explain the impacts of population growth on the sustainability of coastal landscapes.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 3.5, page 96.
Describe the loss of coastal biodiversity as a result of coastal change.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 3.6, page 98.
Recognise strategies to manage the effects of environmental change on coastal landscapes.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 3.7, page 102.
Describe the impact of legal protections on coastal environments.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 3.8, page 104.
Explain First Nations peoples' approach to managing coastal landscapes.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 3.9, page 106.
Identify strategies used to manage the sustainability of a coastal environment in Australia.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 3.10, page 108.
Identify strategies used to manage the sustainability of a coastal environment in other countries.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 3.11, page 110.
Describe the management response to coastal change in the Netherlands.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 3.12, page 112.
Explain how geographers can manage environmental change.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 3.13, page 116.
Identify the tools geographers use to investigate and predict environmental change.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 3.14, page 118.
Understand the four spheres model to describe coastal environments.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 3.15, page 120.
Explain how geographers assess environmental impact in Australia.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 3.16, page 122.
Explain how people use environmental, economic and social criteria, and consider trade-offs when making decisions about environmental issues.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 3.17, page 124.

Check your Student obook pro for these digital resources and more:

pro

Student book questions
Chapter 3

Key skill worksheet
Communicating:
Chapter 3

Quizlet
Play a game of Quizlet on Coastal change and management.

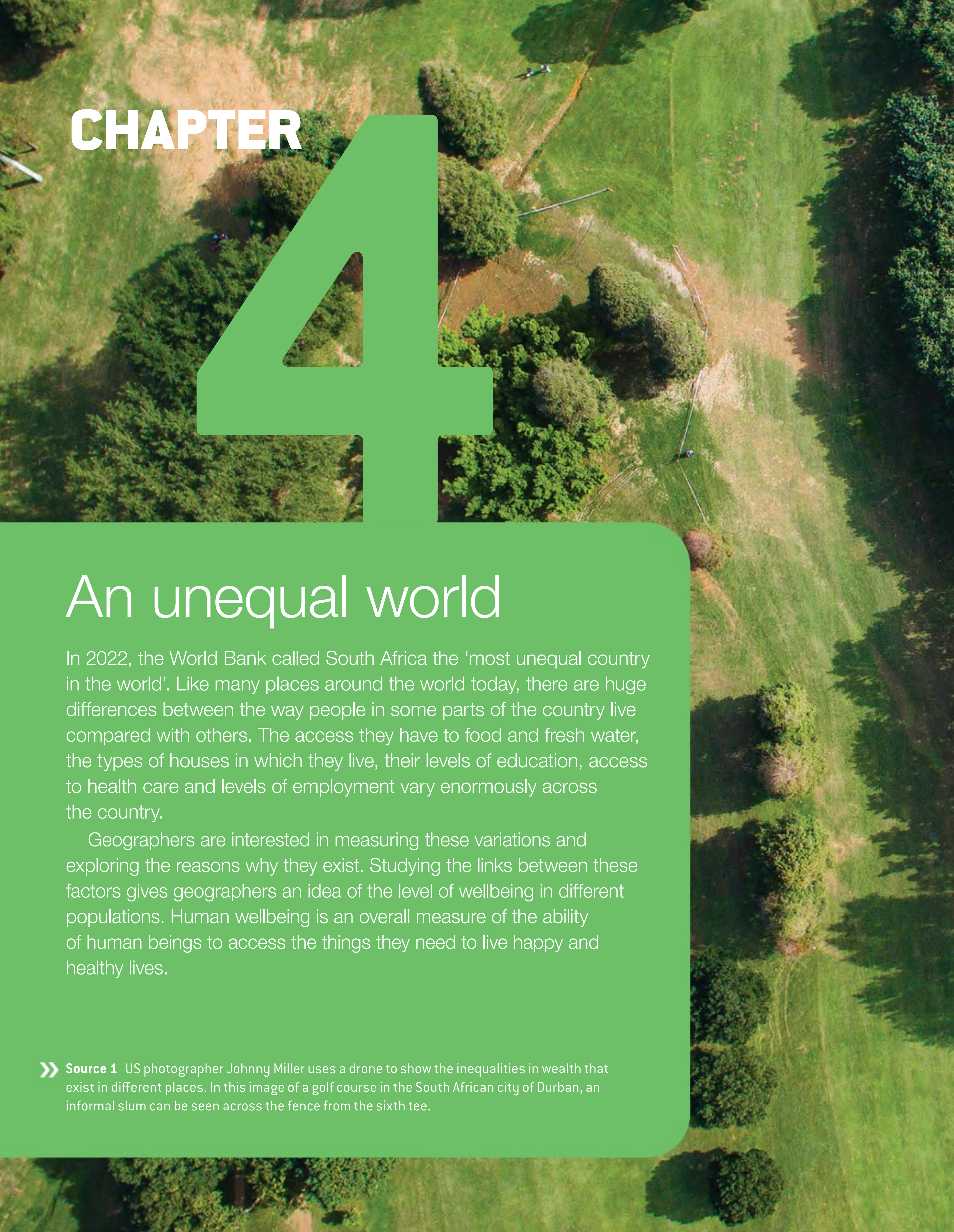
Chapter review quiz
Chapter 3

CHAPTER 4

An unequal world

In 2022, the World Bank called South Africa the 'most unequal country in the world'. Like many places around the world today, there are huge differences between the way people in some parts of the country live compared with others. The access they have to food and fresh water, the types of houses in which they live, their levels of education, access to health care and levels of employment vary enormously across the country.

Geographers are interested in measuring these variations and exploring the reasons why they exist. Studying the links between these factors gives geographers an idea of the level of wellbeing in different populations. Human wellbeing is an overall measure of the ability of human beings to access the things they need to live happy and healthy lives.



Source 1 US photographer Johnny Miller uses a drone to show the inequalities in wealth that exist in different places. In this image of a golf course in the South African city of Durban, an informal slum can be seen across the fence from the sixth tee.

4A
How does wellbeing vary around the world?

4B
How does wellbeing vary within countries?

4.1 Defining wellbeing

Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» identify the factors that contribute to wellbeing.

wellbeing
the ability of human beings to access the things they need in order to live happy and healthy lives (e.g. food, water, education, safety and security)

Geographers define human **wellbeing** as the ability of people to access the things they need to live happy, healthy and contented lives. Whether a person is born in a refugee camp in Tanzania, a megacity in China, a rural town in France or a coastal city in Australia, their primary requirements for life are the same. These requirements include fresh water, a secure food supply, shelter, clothing and safety. Once these primary needs have been met, secondary needs – such as the ability to make a decent living, good health and access to education – become important in determining an individual's level of wellbeing.

Wealth

Our access to the basic necessities of life are determined largely by our degree of wealth and our ability to earn a living. Wealth is generated by producing and selling things, earning wages from work, making investments or owning assets. If we have enough wealth, we can use it to access a wide variety of goods and services. If we do not, we may struggle to buy things such as food, medicine and tools that we could use to generate more wealth (see Source 1). There are huge variations in wealth across the globe. It is estimated, for example, that the wealthiest 1 per cent of adults own 44 per cent of the world's assets, and that the 26 richest people in the world have a greater combined wealth than the world's 3.5 billion poorest people combined.

Source 1 The United States is home to more billionaires than any other country. However, as in all countries, wealth is unevenly distributed.

Health

Human health is affected by a wide range of factors. Clean air, clean water and a secure supply of nutritious food are all vital, but other factors are also important. These include the ability of a community to treat and control the spread of diseases, provide health care when individuals are sick or injured, care for the vulnerable such as babies and the aged, and provide emergency services in times of crisis. Access to health care is vital during natural disasters such as a drought or human-made disasters such as war, which can limit supplies of food and water. People living in war-torn countries often struggle to find the basic requirements needed for a healthy life.

Source 2 People in Singapore enjoy one of the world's best health-care systems. A baby born in Singapore is 50 times more likely to survive their first year of life than a baby born in Pakistan.

Education

Access to a formal education is viewed by many people as the key to improving wellbeing. Being able to read and write gives people access to a greater number of services, and provides a range of options that can lead to better jobs, higher wages and improved standards of living. Education also increases people's self-esteem and allows them to have more control over their future.

In many countries, poverty and conflict are the two major reasons why children do not attend school. Further, education can be especially difficult for girls to obtain, because in a great number of cultures, educating boys is seen as more worthwhile. While parents may work hard to send their sons to school, they may prefer to have their daughters helping out at home.

Despite these obstacles, rates of schooling and literacy (the ability to read and write) are increasing around the world. For example, in the countries of Africa that lie south of the Sahara Desert (a region known as Sub-Saharan Africa), the enrolment rates of children in primary school rose from 54 per cent in 1970 to 98 per cent in 2020. In wealthy countries, such as Australia, New Zealand and the United States, primary education is seen as so valuable that it is made compulsory, free and universal.

Source 3 In 2021, about 74 per cent of Indian adults could read and write. This compares with a rate of just 12 per cent in 1947. Despite this dramatic improvement, India is home to the world's largest number of illiterate people.

4.1 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 **Define** 'human wellbeing' in your own words.

2 Why is education seen by many as the key to improving wellbeing?

Analyse

3 **Distinguish** between primary requirements and secondary requirements for wellbeing.

4 **Reflect on** the contrasts in wealth shown in Source 1.

5 **Infer** (suggest) possible reasons why survival rates of babies born in Singapore are so much better than those in Pakistan.

Apply

6 As a class, **create** a mind map showing your thoughts on wellbeing in Australia. Use the headings 'wealth', 'health' and 'education' to start your map.

7 Which photograph in this topic best shows what wellbeing means to you? **Justify** (give reasons for) your answer.

Quiz me!
A quick quiz on defining wellbeing

4.2 Different measures of wellbeing

Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» describe different measurements of human wellbeing and explain trends in different measurements.

The way in which we define wellbeing is dependent on many factors. These include our values, beliefs, history, environment, level of education and **culture**. People from different environments and cultures often view wellbeing in vastly different ways.

Common indicators of wellbeing

Geographers often rely on a range of quantitative data to measure and compare levels of wellbeing around the world. Two of the most common measures used are **Gross Domestic Product (GDP)** and **literacy rates**. These measures are referred to as universal indicators because, while they are not perfect, the data they provide is easily obtained and allows geographers to make basic comparisons between places.

GDP provides a measure of the total market value (i.e. the monetary value) of all the goods and services produced in a country in a given year. By dividing the GDP of a country by the total number of people living there, the GDP per capita can be calculated. This gives an approximation of the value of goods and services produced per person in the country each year. This data is then used to assess the average productivity and wealth of individuals.

Literacy rates give an indication of the number of people in a population who are able to read and write. Data relating to literacy is often used as a measure of educational results in different countries. In general, low levels of literacy and education can impede the economic development of a country and negatively affect wellbeing.

culture
a term used to describe the shared characteristics (e.g. language, food, religion, beliefs, etc.) of a population or group of people

Gross Domestic Product (GDP)
the total monetary value of all the goods and services produced by a country over a specific time period (usually a year)

literacy rates
statistical measures of the percentage of adults (over the age of 15) in an area or population that can read and write

Wellbeing for First Nations peoples

Many of Australia's First Nations peoples have a view of wellbeing based on beliefs of interrelationships between individuals, their community and the land. Wellbeing is achieved when the relationships between these factors work together in harmony. This is often described as a holistic view of wellbeing. Importantly, ill-health will arise and persist when the harmony of these relationships is disrupted.

It can therefore be difficult to measure the wellbeing of First Nations peoples using only the common universal indicators. The Australian Bureau of Statistics has attempted to develop a model that takes into account First Nations values when considering wellbeing levels. As well as using measures of health, literacy and wealth, this model includes wellbeing measures related to an individual's connection to their community, ancestry, cultural traditions and identity, land and spirituality.

Source 4 For First Nations peoples, wellbeing is partly determined by an individual's connection to their community and ancestry.

CASE STUDY

Bhutan and Gross National Happiness (GNH)

Source 5

> It's easy to mine the land and fish the seas and get rich. Yet we believe you cannot have a prosperous nation in the long run that does not conserve its natural environment or take care of the wellbeing of its people, which is being borne out by what is happening to the outside world.
>
> Thakur Singh Powdyel, Bhutan's Minister of Education

Since 1971, the tiny Himalayan country of Bhutan has rejected GDP as the way to measure the wellbeing of its people and instead adopted a measure known as Gross National Happiness (GNH). While this might seem like nothing more than a good idea, in Bhutan it is taken very seriously. A GNH measure is taken every year, as the country's government attempts to move its citizens towards a happier state.

The four guiding principles of GNH are equitable social development, cultural preservation, conservation of the environment and promotion of good governance. Children are taught these principles at school, along with better environmental practices and basic agriculture. At school, bells have been replaced with music and there are daily meditation sessions.

In a study that measured happiness in 178 countries, the Bhutanese ranked as the eighth-happiest people on the planet. Bhutan was the only country in the top 20 with a low GDP.

Source 6 Since 1971, GNH has replaced GDP as the measure of wellbeing in Bhutan.

Map it!
World: Happy planet index

4.2 Check your learning

Comprehend

1 **Summarise** what GDP measures.

2 **Explain** how literacy rates are used as an indicator of wellbeing.

Analyse

3 **Identify** some weaknesses of using GDP as a measure of wellbeing. What aspects of wellbeing does it exclude?

4 Australia has not adopted GNH as a measure of wellbeing. Why might this be the case?

5 **Compare** GDP with GNH. What are their similarities? What are their differences?

Apply

6 What are some important aspects of your own wellbeing? **Compare** the ways they are similar to or different from the measures of wellbeing in this topic.

7 The New Zealand Government recently began to measure wellbeing using a measure called the Living Standards Framework (LSF). **Investigate** the LSF and list two strengths and two weaknesses in how it measures wellbeing.

4.3 Mapping wellbeing

Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» explain the methods used by geographers to measure spatial variations in human wellbeing.

Human Development Index (HDI)
a tool developed by the United Nations to grade and rank the social and economic development of the world's countries in order from most to least developed

choropleth maps
maps that display data or characteristics (e.g. HDI rankings) across an area by using colour or shade to represent the value of the data (e.g. dark green for high rankings and light green for low rankings)

life expectancy
a statistical measure of the average number of years a person in an area of population can expect to live from the year in which they were born

Map it!
Mapping wellbeing

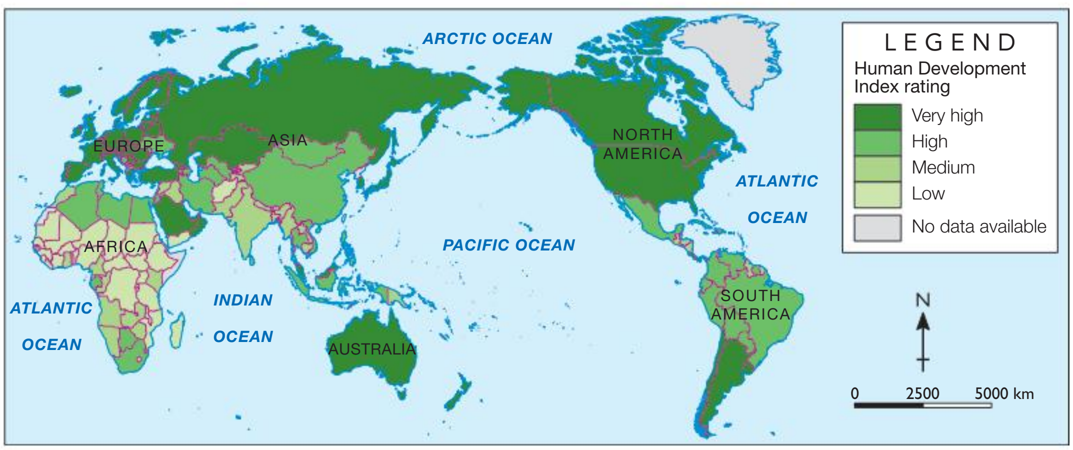
cartogram
a type of map that is distorted to show a representation of statistical data, rather than land area

Geographers use a range of maps to explore the spatial patterns in wellbeing within and between countries. Maps can be used to show variations in wellbeing around the world using specific indicators, such as the **Human Development Index (HDI)**, or levels of poverty. By using a range of different mapping techniques, geographers can easily identify if countries with a high proportion of people living in poverty are clustered together or spread across the globe. They can then use this information to make comparisons and draw conclusions about the level of wellbeing in these places.

Choropleth maps

Choropleth maps give a quick impression of a spatial pattern by using dark and light shades of the same or similar colours. Darker shades usually show 'the measure of greatest value' and lighter shades show 'the measure of lowest value'. In Source 7, for example, countries are shaded according to their HDI rating. This measure, developed by the United Nations, combines several indicators into a single measure. The world's countries are ranked using indicators of health (**life expectancy**), education (literacy) and income (GDP). This ranking is then used to place the world's countries into four categories, ranging from 'very high' HDI to 'low' HDI. The United Nations uses the same measure each year in its annual *Human Development Report*, so that a country's scores, rankings and categories are regularly updated.

WORLD: HDI RATINGS



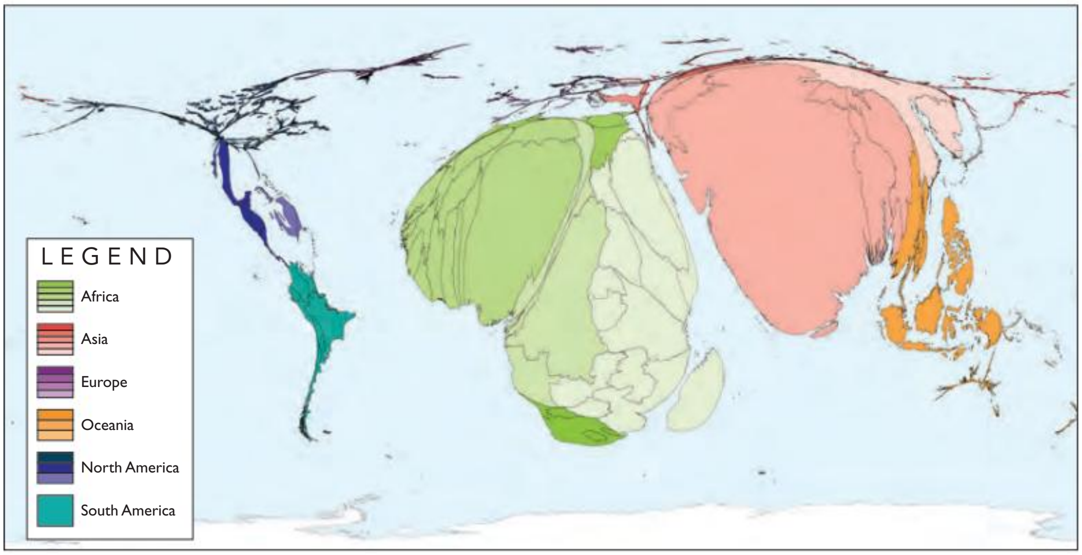
Source 7 Mapping wellbeing using a choropleth map Source: Oxford University Press

Cartograms

A **cartogram** is a type of map that displays countries in roughly their correct geographic locations, but the size of countries is determined by the variable being mapped. For example, in Source 8, the size of each country is determined by the proportion of the population that is living in poverty within that country. The larger the country is shown on this map, the greater the proportion of people living in poverty in that country.

The colours are added to the map to divide the world into geographic regions so that different cartograms can be easily compared.

WORLD: PROPORTION OF POPULATION LIVING IN POVERTY



Source 8 Mapping wellbeing using a cartogram

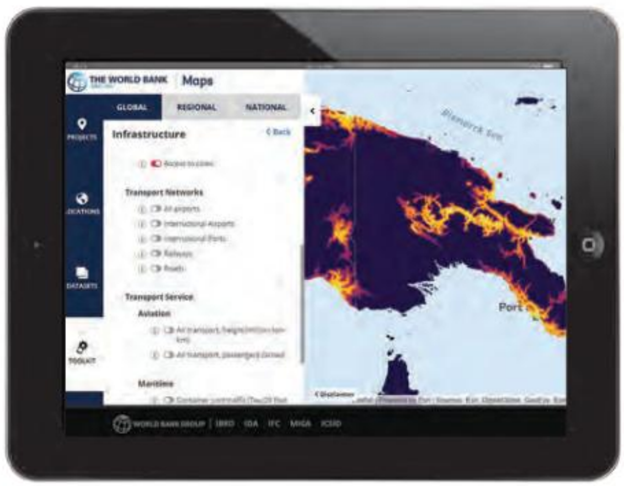
Source: World Mapper

Statistics database
Compare world statistics

Key skill worksheet
Interpreting & analysing: Analysing maps

GIS maps

A Geographic Information System (GIS) combines layers of data to create complex, interactive maps. Each layer of the map focuses on a different aspect of a place, such as poverty, population, infrastructure, settlements, land cover or topography. When using a GIS program, geographers can switch layers on and off, allowing them to compare different aspects of a place and look for relationships in the data. Many governments and international organisations use GIS technologies to map their activities and gauge their impact.



Source 9 A screenshot of a World Bank GIS map exploring the link between topography and accessibility in Papua New Guinea

4.3 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 **Identify** what the HDI is and what is it used for.

2 What is a cartogram, and why would a geographer use one?

Comprehend

3 Do you think cartograms or choropleth maps are more useful for investigating variations in patterns of wellbeing? **Explain** your answer.

4 Imagine that you are creating a GIS map to explore the links between wellbeing and natural resources. **Explain** which map layers would be useful to you when creating this map.

Apply

5 Use the 'Statistics database' resource on your obook pro to complete this task.

a Form groups of three. Have each person **conduct** some research on a different indicator of wellbeing in South America: GDP, literacy rates or life expectancy.

b With your data, each **create** a choropleth map for the countries of South America. Use the same colours or shades for all the maps.

c Place the maps on the classroom wall beside each other so that you can easily **analyse** them to look for patterns and relationships that could explain the wellbeing of people in South America.

4.4 Exploring links between wellbeing

Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» understand how graphs are used to explore links and trends in wellbeing.

Aspects of wellbeing such as health, wealth and education are usually closely related. A change in one aspect of a person's wellbeing usually affects other aspects of their wellbeing. For example, children who attend school tend to have better health than those who do not. Links such as these can be seen at the national scale as well as at the local scale. One of the most useful tools when exploring these links is a special type of graph known as a **scatterplot**.

Scatterplots

Scatterplots are similar to line graphs in that they are used to display data plotted against two variables. Scatterplots are used by geographers to show the degree to which one of the variables shown on the graph is related to the other. This relationship is known as the **correlation**. Commonly, scatterplots show data for a number of countries, each of which is represented by a dot on the graph.

- When the dots come close to forming a straight line, they are closely related and therefore are said to have a 'high correlation'.
- When the dots do not come close to forming a straight line, they are not closely related and therefore are said to have a 'low correlation'.
- When the trend is increasing, the correlation is positive.
- When the trend is decreasing, the correlation is negative.

A trend line is often added to a scatterplot to demonstrate the strength of the relationship between the two variables.

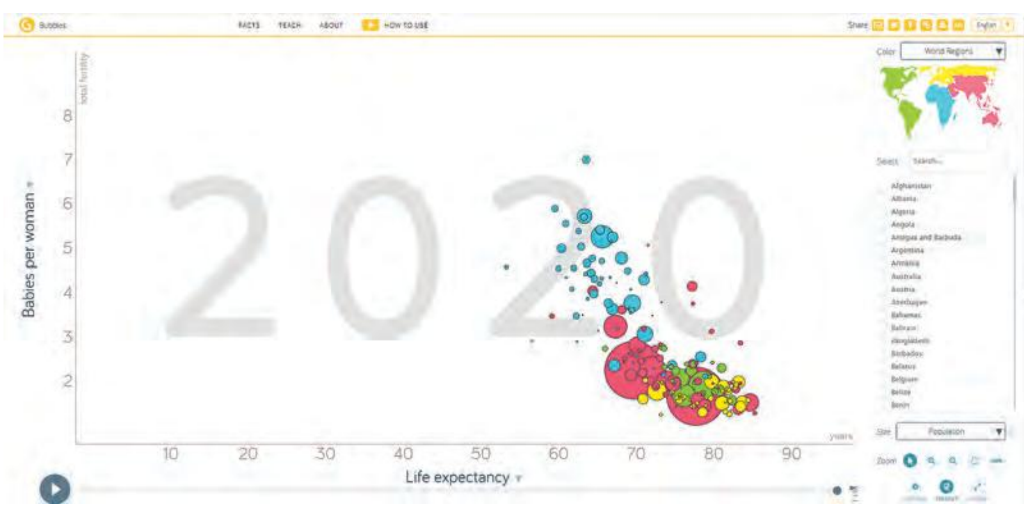
Source 11 shows a selection of the most common trends that can are seen on a scatterplot.

With the introduction of digital graphing tools, it has been possible to add more data to make scatterplots even more useful. Three variables can now be graphed to create a 3D scatterplot. In Source 10, for example, the size of each dot is determined by the size of the population of the country. By animating graphs, it is also possible to show changes in variables and their correlation over time.

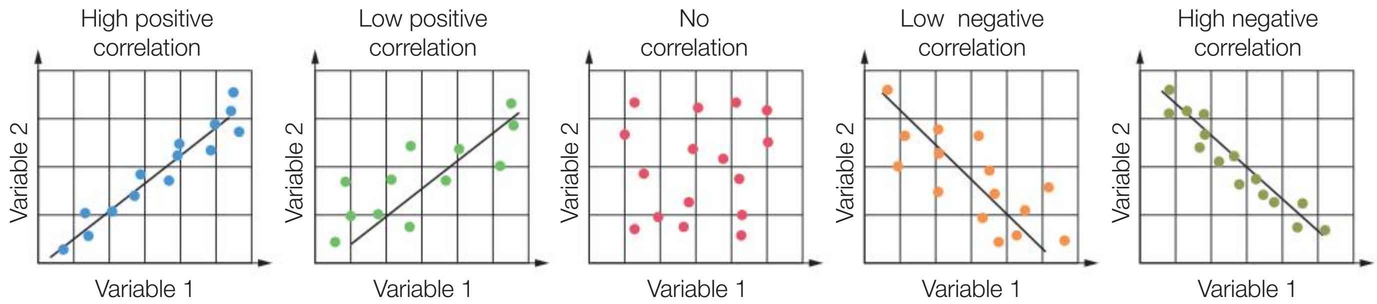
scatterplot
a type of graph that uses two sets of data by plotting points along two axes, the pattern of which shows their correlation; also called a scattergraph or scattergram

correlation
a statistical measure that indicates the extent to which two or more variables are related or linked

Quiz me!
A quick quiz on exploring links between wellbeing



Source 10 This scatterplot taken from the Gapminder website is exploring the correlation between life expectancy and fertility (babies per woman) worldwide.



Source 11 Simple scatterplots showing different types of correlation

Constructing scatterplots using Microsoft Excel

You can use a computer program such as Microsoft Excel to construct a scatterplot and show the correlation between two variables. (Note: These instructions may need to be varied a little, depending on the version of the program you are using.)

Step 1 Enter the data into an Excel spreadsheet. The first indicator goes into column A and the second into column B. The data for each country must go into a separate cell (box) on the spreadsheet.

Step 2 Highlight all of the cells containing data.

Step 3 Using the menu at the top of the spreadsheet, select 'insert' → 'scatter' → 'the first scatterplot'. This will convert your data into a scatterplot.

Step 4 The vertical axis usually defaults to begin at zero, but the correlation is often easier to see if it begins slightly less than the lowest value being graphed. Look at your graph and decide what you would like as the lowest value on the vertical axis. Use 'format' → 'chart elements' → 'vertical (value) axis' → 'format selection', and enter the value you have decided on in the 'minimum bounds' box. You can use this menu to make other changes to the axes as required. Close the menu.

Step 5 Right click on one of the dots on the graph and select 'add trend line'.

Step 6 Use the chart design dropdown 'add chart element' menus to turn off the gridlines and the legend. Add a title and label the axes.

Practise the skill

1 Use the 'Statistics database' resource on your obook pro to find the life expectancy and GDP rates for all the countries of Oceania. With this data, **create** a scatterplot exploring the links between life expectancy and GDP per person for the countries of Oceania.

For more information on this skill, see page 20 of 'The geography toolkit'.

KEY SKILL
Questioning & researching

Statistics database
Compare world statistics

Weblink
Gapminder

4.4 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 **Identify** the purpose of scatterplots.

2 **Define** the word 'correlation'.

Comprehend

3 In your own words, **describe** the relationship between life expectancy and fertility, as shown in Source 10.

4 Scatterplots often contain one or two countries that do not conform to the general pattern and sit apart from most other countries on the graph. These are called outliers.

a **Identify** the number of outliers in Source 10.

b **Explain** two reasons why these countries might not conform to the general pattern.

Apply

5 Visit the Gapminder website and scroll down to 'Animating data'. Click the 'play' button to see how countries have changed over time. Explore the graphs on this website by selecting different indicators for each axis and observing the ways their correlation changes. Choose two indicators and write a paragraph describing the correlation between the two.

4.5 Contrasts in wealth

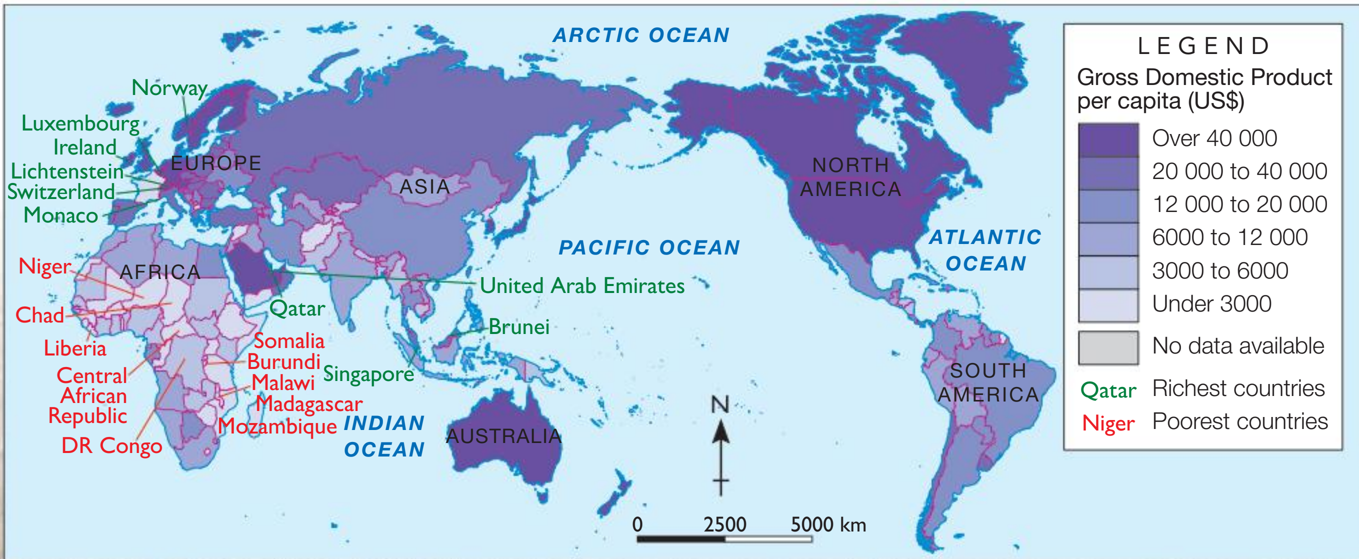
Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» explain how wealth is used to measure human wellbeing and development at a global scale.

By any measure, the world's wealth is unevenly distributed and has been since European nations explored the world 500 years ago, colonising nations in the search for resources that would improve their wellbeing. As we saw in topic 4.2, a country's wealth is usually measured by evaluating its GDP. This is done by determining the size of its economy – by adding the total value of all goods and services produced during a year. To make meaningful comparisons between countries with different size populations, the total GDP is divided by the size of the population to produce a measure known as 'GDP per capita'. Source 12 shows the GDP per capita of countries worldwide, together with the location of the world's 10 richest countries and the world's 10 poorest countries.

WORLD: GDP PER CAPITA



Source 12

Source: Oxford University Press

Enlarged map
World: GDP per capita

CASE STUDY

Levels of wealth in the Democratic Republic of the Congo

In Southern Africa, about 45 per cent of the population lives below the poverty line. The poverty line, also called **extreme poverty**, is the estimated minimum level of income needed to secure the necessities of life, such as food, water and shelter, and is currently estimated at US$1.90 a day.

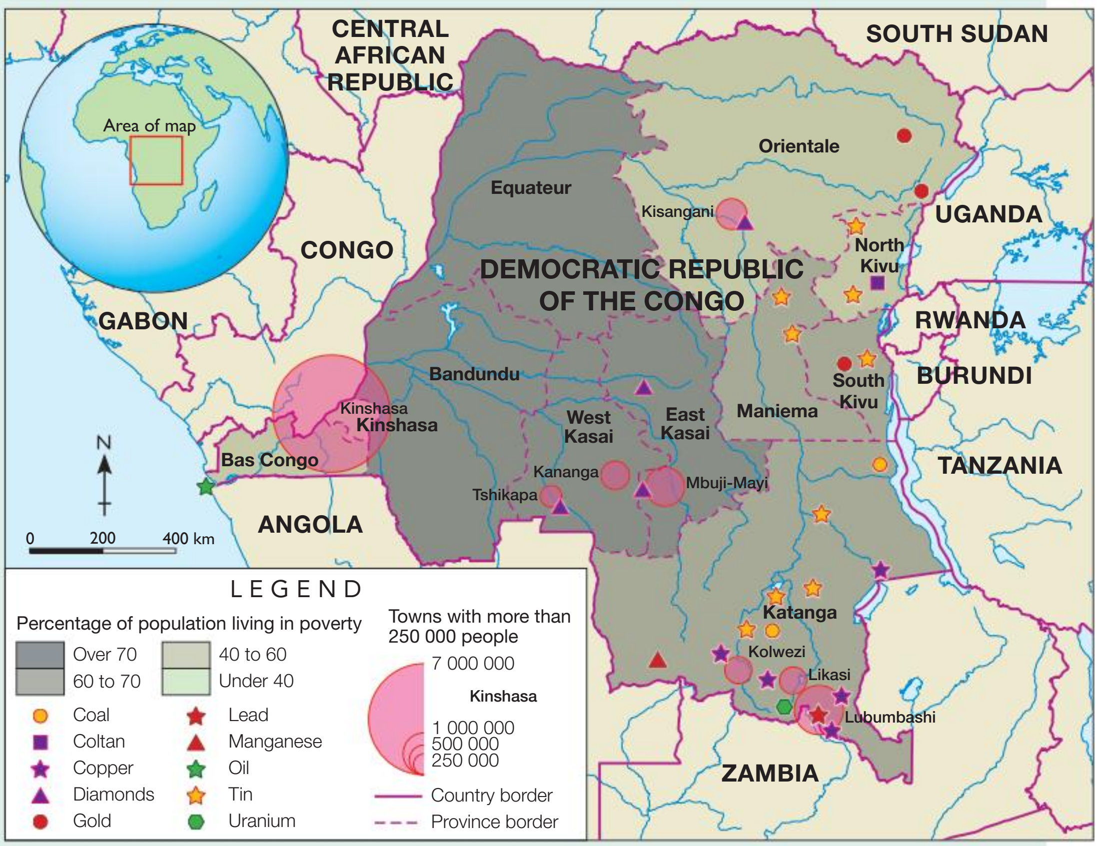
While the proportion of people living in poverty globally has decreased in the past few decades, there are still approximately 689 million people living below the poverty line. Ten countries in Africa have poverty rates above 50 per cent, including the Democratic Republic of the Congo (DRC), where 70 per cent of the people live in poverty.

The DRC has vast natural resource wealth, including fertile soil, vast hydroelectric power potential, and some of the world's largest deposits of precious minerals and metals – including those necessary to produce new technologies, such as lithium and cobalt. It has been estimated that the DRC contains US$24 trillion of untapped mineral wealth. The mining industry, however, is mired in corruption, and individual DRC labourers work in appalling conditions for very low rates of pay. For many people in rural areas, however, mining provides one of the only opportunities for work. Minerals such as gold are seen by many as a road to wealth and worth fighting for. This has resulted in armed conflict in some districts. It is also taking workers away from farming, leaving the country without enough food to feed its people. Some people living in poverty in rural areas have fled to large cities – such as the capital, Kinshasa – in the hope of improving their wellbeing.

extreme poverty the state of living on income of less than US$1.90 a day

Map it! The Democratic Republic of the Congo

THE DEMOCRATIC REPUBLIC OF THE CONGO



Source 13

Source: Oxford University Press

Source 14 Gold mining in the DRC is back-breaking, dangerous work.

4.5 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 **Define** the term 'poverty line'.

2 Using Source 12:

- **a** **Name** the world's 10 poorest countries.
- **b** **Identify** the region of these 10 countries.
- **c** **Name** the world's 10 richest countries.

Comprehend

3 Look closely at Source 13.

- **a** **Explain** the relationships evident between the location of mineral deposits, towns and cities and poverty.
- **b** **Summarise** the issues affecting the economic development of the DRC.
- **c** **Describe** the pattern of poverty within the DRC using the PQE method. Use the names of specific places in your description.

Analyse

4 Many people in the DRC are moving to Kinshasa.

- **a** Use Source 13 to **explain** why this may be the case.
- **b** **Identify** three problems a big influx of migrants might cause for the city and its people.
- **c** Think of one possible solution that the city of Kinshasa could use to help overcome one of the problems you listed in part b.

Apply

5 Using the internet, **investigate** additional information to complete the following task:

- Brainstorm the factors that might help to explain why global wealth is so unevenly distributed, especially between countries labelled green and red in Source 12.
- Try to think of as many reasons as you can and then **classify** them into groups of factors. Decide on headings for these groups.

4.6 Contrasts in health

Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» explain how health is used to measure human wellbeing and development at a global scale.

infant mortality rates statistical measures of the proportion of children in an area or population under the age of 12 months who die; expressed as number of deaths per 1000 live births

developing countries non-industrialised or newly industrialised countries with relatively fragile economies and a low standard of living that are not always able to support the needs of their citizens

developed countries industrialised countries with well-developed economies and a relatively high standard of living that are able to support the needs of their citizens

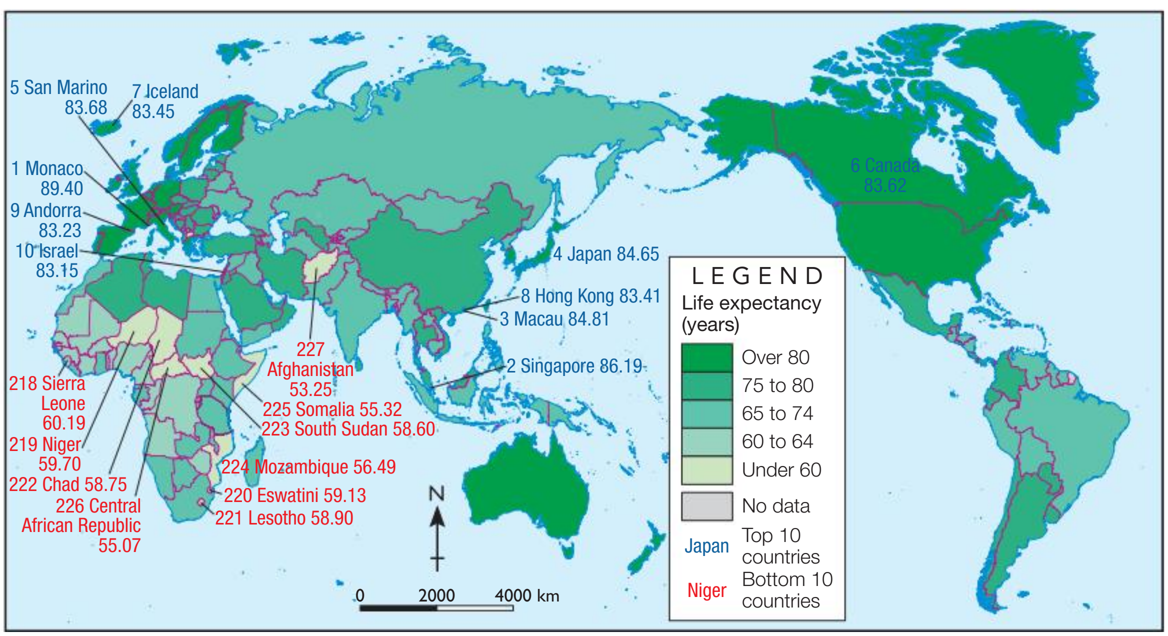
In some countries, people struggle to obtain the most basic health-care services, and doctors work in hospitals that are old and poorly equipped. In other countries, hospitals have state-of-the-art facilities and access to the newest treatments and drugs. While it is easy to see how unevenly distributed health services are across the world, the level of health and its contribution to the wellbeing of a community or country is a complex concept. There are many other variables that can affect the health of people, including diet and other lifestyle factors.

For these reasons, geographers rely on indicators of health – such as life expectancy and **infant mortality rates** – to measure and compare the health of individuals within countries. Other indicators – such as the number of doctors per 1000 people and access to reliable water – can also be used to examine the reasons why health differs between countries.

Life expectancy

Life expectancy is the average number of years that a person can expect to live. For people in **developing countries**, life expectancy is generally shorter than for people in **developed countries**. A child born in a developing nation in Southern Africa in 2018, can expect to live for 61 years, while a child born on the same day in Singapore can expect to live for 86 years – 25 years longer. The lower life expectancy in some countries in Southern Africa is due to a wide range of factors, including the presence of diseases, poor water and food security, and poor access to health care.

WORLD: LIFE EXPECTANCY



Source 15

Source: Oxford University Press

CASE STUDY

Enlarged map
World: Life expectancy

Levels of health in the DRC

The DRC has one of the lowest life expectancies in the world, with a baby born today expected to live to the age of 61. For children born in developing countries, the first year of life is often the most difficult. The proportion of children who die in their first year – known as the infant mortality rate – is 62 per 1000 births, whereas in Australia it is 3 per 1000 births, meaning that a Congolese child is 20 times more likely to die in their first year than a child born in Australia.

Studies of infant mortality in developing countries have discovered some specific factors that put children at higher levels of risk. Children and their mothers are much more vulnerable in rural areas than in cities. Women in cities tend to give birth in hospitals and health clinics, while women in rural areas often give birth at home without a nurse or doctor present. Children born to educated mothers, even those with only a primary school level of education, also have a higher survival rate. In some regions, survival rates can be up to three times greater than for children of uneducated mothers.

Mariam (see Source 16) is five months' pregnant with her sixth child. She lives in the village of Lukweti, in the east of the DRC. There are no health clinics in the village, so she must walk to a mobile clinic provided by doctors and nurses from the charity group Doctors Without Borders (Médecins Sans Frontières) for her monthly check-up. The area in which she lives has seen ongoing conflict and violence for several years, and soldiers often loot any medical facilities for medicines and supplies.

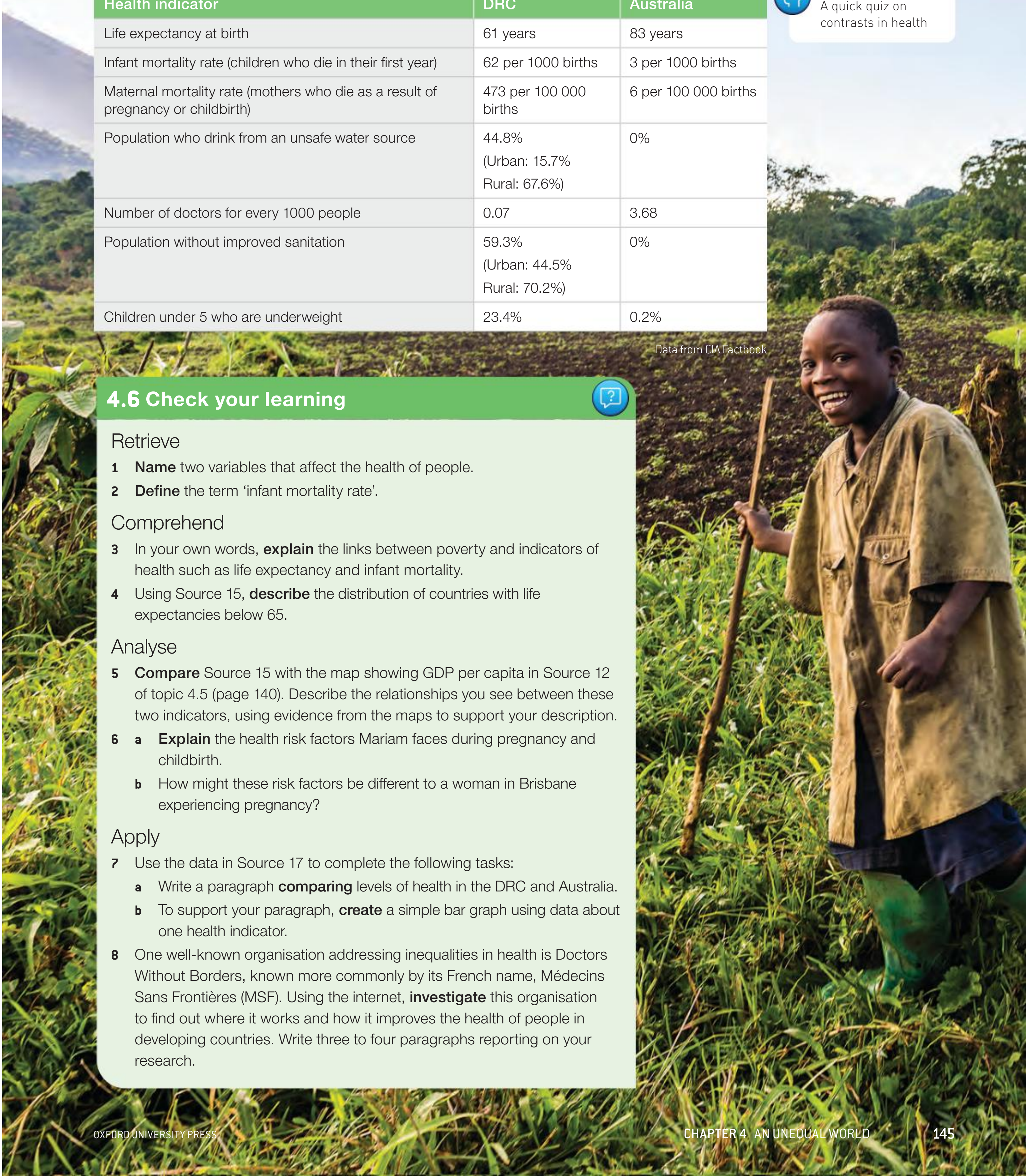
Source 16 Mariam, with two of her five children

Source 17 Indicators of health in the DRC and Australia

Health indicator	DRC	Australia
Life expectancy at birth	61 years	83 years
Infant mortality rate (children who die in their first year)	62 per 1000 births	3 per 1000 births
Maternal mortality rate (mothers who die as a result of pregnancy or childbirth)	473 per 100 000 births	6 per 100 000 births
Population who drink from an unsafe water source	44.8% (Urban: 15.7% Rural: 67.6%)	0%
Number of doctors for every 1000 people	0.07	3.68
Population without improved sanitation	59.3% (Urban: 44.5% Rural: 70.2%)	0%
Children under 5 who are underweight	23.4%	0.2%

Data from CIA Factbook

Quiz me!
A quick quiz on contrasts in health



4.6 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 **Name** two variables that affect the health of people.

2 **Define** the term 'infant mortality rate'.

Comprehend

3 In your own words, **explain** the links between poverty and indicators of health such as life expectancy and infant mortality.

4 Using Source 15, **describe** the distribution of countries with life expectancies below 65.

Analyse

5 **Compare** Source 15 with the map showing GDP per capita in Source 12 of topic 4.5 (page 140). Describe the relationships you see between these two indicators, using evidence from the maps to support your description.

6 a **Explain** the health risk factors Mariam faces during pregnancy and childbirth.

b How might these risk factors be different to a woman in Brisbane experiencing pregnancy?

Apply

7 Use the data in Source 17 to complete the following tasks:

a Write a paragraph **comparing** levels of health in the DRC and Australia.

b To support your paragraph, **create** a simple bar graph using data about one health indicator.

8 One well-known organisation addressing inequalities in health is Doctors Without Borders, known more commonly by its French name, Médecins Sans Frontières (MSF). Using the internet, **investigate** this organisation to find out where it works and how it improves the health of people in developing countries. Write three to four paragraphs reporting on your research.

4.7 Contrasts in education

Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» explain how education rates are used to measure human wellbeing and development at a global scale.

Education provides much more than the opportunity to read, write and count. It is seen by many international aid agencies and experts in the field as the key to helping people, communities and nations lift themselves out of poverty. Education provides individuals with opportunities to:

- become more engaged with society
- have a range of skills and tools to better care for themselves and their children
- participate in the workforce and improve their financial circumstances, as well as their country's economy
- live healthier lives
- combat poverty
- reduce inequalities in wellbeing.

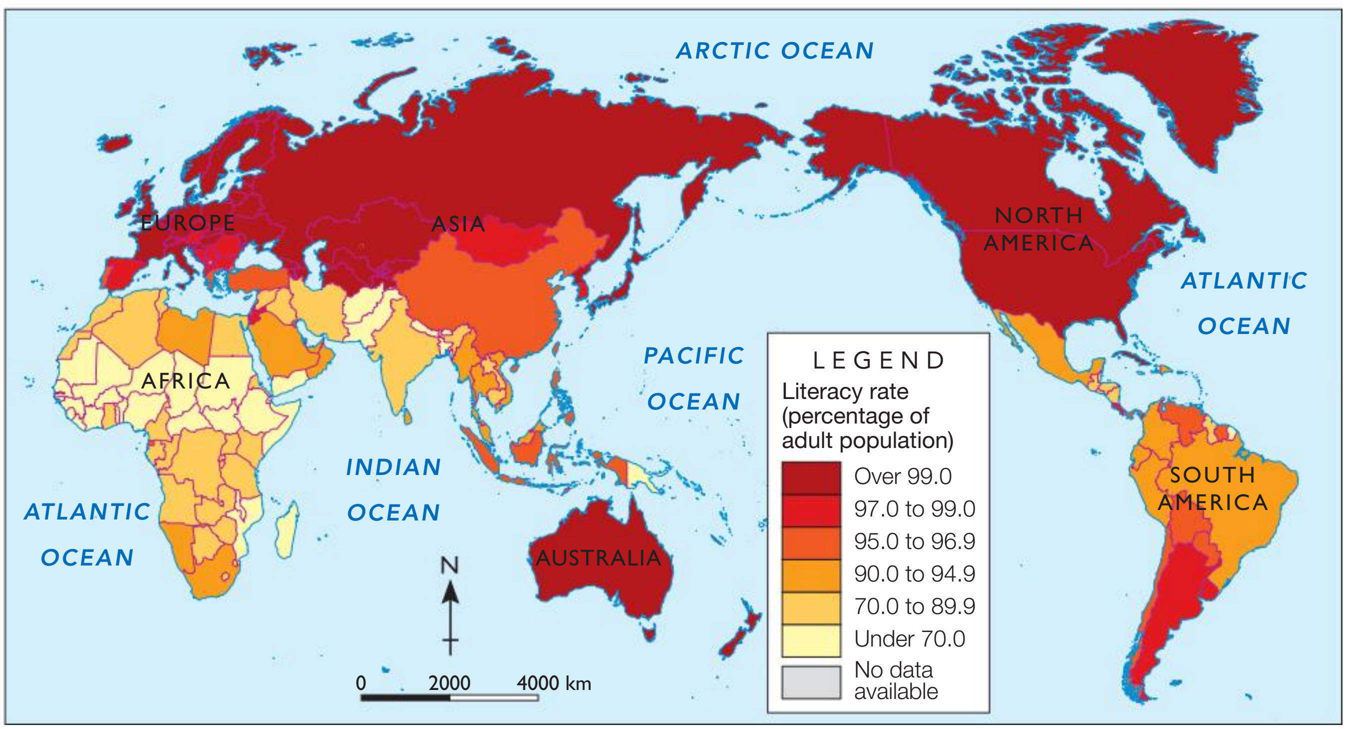
Literacy rates

Literacy rates measure the percentage of adults who can read and write, and are often used as an indicator of education levels within countries. Literacy rates can be difficult to calculate, however, as many countries do not keep accurate data.

It is also important to be aware of potential variations in literacy within countries. For example, in many countries people in rural areas have lower literacy levels than city-dwellers. In some countries, girls are not given the same educational opportunities as boys, and therefore have lower levels of literacy.

Source 18 The United Nations agency UNICEF is working to increase the proportion of children who attend school in the DRC. It estimates that 7 million children are out of school and, in rural areas, less than half of school-aged girls attend school.

WORLD: LITERACY RATES



Source 19 Source: Oxford University Press

Barriers to successful education

Access to education varies widely across the globe. In developed countries such as Australia, Britain, Germany and France, about 99 per cent of all school-aged children are enrolled in schools. In developing countries such as the DRC, however, most children attend primary school, but few (43 per cent) attend secondary school and only 6 out of every 100 school leavers continue their study at university.

There are many factors that determine whether or not a child will attend school. These include:

- *system barriers* – such as a lack of trained teachers, classrooms and educational materials, including books and technology
- *attendance barriers* – such as school fees, distance to school, poor transport networks and the concern of many parents about the safety of their children; many children also work to help support their families
- *social barriers* – such as variations in language, religion and conflict within countries.

Enlarged map
World: Literacy rates

Quiz me!
A quick quiz on contrasts in education

Key skill worksheet
Interpreting & analysing: Comparing choropleth maps

Barriers in the DRC

In the DRC, a series of ongoing conflicts and civil wars are an example of a social barrier. These conflicts have disrupted the education of many children. In 2016–17 a conflict erupted in the central-south of the country between a local tribal chief and the government. During the brutal conflict, government institutions – including schools – were deliberately targeted. As many as 5000 people were killed and 1.4 million fled the violence. This included more than 600 000 children, who could not then attend school. Some of the rebel fighters recruited children as soldiers, and in many cases violence against children was used as a weapon.

Source 20 Christophe Bienfait Tshombe, a school teacher, stands next to a school destroyed by militia in the eastern region of the DRC.

4.7 Check your learning

Comprehend

1 **Explain** what literacy rates are, and why they can be difficult to calculate.

2 **Describe** three social barriers that may determine whether or not a child attends school.

Analyse

3 **Compare** Source 19 (showing literacy rates) with the map in Source 12 on page 140 (showing GDP per capita). Describe the relationships you see between these two indicators, using evidence from the maps to support your description.

4 Use Source 19 and the 'Statistics database' resource on your obook pro to **compare** the literacy rates for Australia and the DRC. Consider three reasons why differences in literacy rates occur between these two countries.

5 **Reflect on** the likely future in education for children in the DRC who were affected by the conflict in 2016–17.

Apply

6 Which of the three barriers to education would you consider the most difficult to overcome? Give some reasons for your answer.

7 In small teams, **propose** (put forward) some strategies to help communities overcome one or more of the barriers to education. Share your strategies with the class.

Statistics database
Compare world statistics

4A SKILLS IN CONTEXT

Test me!
Once you've finished the topics in this section, test yourself with this quiz and find out which worksheet you should do.

Global obesity epidemic

Chronic food shortages and hunger are among the greatest threats to wellbeing in many developing countries. However, one of the fastest-growing public health crises in a great number of countries is obesity. It is estimated that more than half of the adults in the world are overweight or obese.

Excessive body weight and obesity are linked to health problems such as heart disease, strokes, arthritis, diabetes and some cancers. Obesity is a leading cause of premature death in many countries and a huge burden on public health resources. It has become such a serious issue that many experts now describe it as the global obesity epidemic.

KEY SKILL
Questioning & researching

Developing questions from media reports

Much of our understanding about events and trends happening around the world comes to us through media reports. These reports can take the form of printed media such as newspapers and magazines, electronic media such as television and radio reports, or internet media such as Twitter and news apps.

By learning a few simple techniques, you can use the news to generate geographical questions to guide your inquiries. Follow these steps:

Step 1 Check the source of the news article for reliability and possible bias. Find out who wrote the article and which news organisation published it. Mainstream media organisations are generally more reliable than smaller ones, but this may not always be the case. If possible, use the news company website to investigate possible bias.

Step 2 Work out what type of report you are watching, reading or hearing. Is the information presented being reported as fact or is it an opinion piece? Both are valuable, but it is important to know the difference.

Step 3 What is the reporter's main contention or key point? State in your own words.

Step 4 What information and arguments are used to support the reporter's contention?

Step 5 What evidence does the reporter use to support these arguments? What is the source of this evidence?

Step 6 Look closely at any images or graphics that are included in the report. How do they help to support the reporter's contention and arguments?

Step 7 What further questions does this article raise for you? Good geographical questions open up new lines of inquiry for you to explore. Try using question starters such as 'How many', 'Where does', 'Why does', 'Who is affected', 'What changes does' and 'How should people'.

For more information on this skill, see page 16 of 'The geography toolkit'.

Practise the skill

1 Use the steps provided to **analyse** and develop questions about the article in Source 21.

2 Share your geographical questions with your classmates and build up a class list of questions.

Source 21

What's driving the worldwide obesity epidemic?

The rise of obesity around the globe has led the World Health Organization (WHO) to urge countries to impose a tax on sugary drinks, which are blamed for the spread of the epidemic.

Countries with such different food cultures as, say, Mexico and Palau are facing the same nutritional risks and following the same obesity trends. Our research aims to understand why, and we have examined the link between various facets of globalisation (trade, for instance, or the spread of technologies, and cultural exchanges) and the worldwide changes in health and dietary patterns.

…

The WHO identifies unhealthy nutrition patterns, along with increasing physical inactivity, as the main drivers of rising body weight around the world. Diets rich in sugar, animal products and fats constitute important risk factors for non-communicable diseases, such as cardiovascular diseases, diabetes, and different types of cancer.

…

The meat factor

… [G]lobalisation has led people to consume more meat products. Interestingly, the social dimensions of globalisation (such as the spread of ideas, information, images and people) are responsible for this effect, rather than trade or other economic aspects of globalisation.

…

The processed-food impact

… [I]ncreasing consumption of processed foods is often associated with rising weight levels.

Haldirams, one of India's favourite snack chain outlets, offers a wide variety of local processed food.

…

After saturating Western markets, supermarkets began to spread to developing countries, which had greater growth prospects. Latin America, central Europe and South Africa saw their grocery stores boom in the 1990s. Retailers later opened in Asia and are now entering markets in African countries.

An interesting, yet little explored, aspect in the discussion of processed foods is the role of multinational companies in offering unhealthy 'Western diet', such as fast food and soft drinks. Multinationals are one of the two market leaders in many emerging countries, including Brazil, India, Mexico, and Russia and they are known for substantial food and beverage advertising.

An extract from *The Conversation*, 14 December 2016

Extend your understanding

1 **Examine** the image in Source 21 showing the Indian snack chain outlet Haldirams. Why did the journalist who wrote the article choose to include this image?

2 Select one of the geographic questions from the class analysis of the article in Source 21. Use this as your key inquiry question to **investigate** the global obesity epidemic. Report back to the class on what you find during your research.

4.8 Variations in wellbeing within India

Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» identify and describe the variations in human wellbeing within India.

India is a vast, complex and dynamic nation. Its population currently stands at more than 1.3 billion and is growing by about 14 million people a year. It is estimated that India will overtake China as the world's most populous nation by 2030 – a position it is unlikely to lose for centuries.

As with all nations, there are tremendous variations in wellbeing within India. At one end of society, there are hundreds of millions of poor, subsistence farmers, who are growing just enough food to feed their families. At the other end, there are around 759 000 Indian millionaires. India also has one of the world's largest middle classes, estimated to be about 400 million people.

India is divided up into many different states and union territories. Source 2 shows the range of HDI rankings for these states and territories. By looking at two states in particular – Kerala and Bihar, which have India's highest and lowest rankings in human development respectively – we can see the great contrasts in wellbeing that exist within India.

Source 1 A busy market in Kerala; markets such as this allow people in the city to get fresh food from rural areas quickly and easily.

INDIA: HDI FOR DIFFERENT STATES, 2018

Source 2 Source: Oxford University Press

Wellbeing in Kerala

The south-west state of Kerala is ranked as the having the highest HDI in India. It has the lowest level of poverty, the highest literacy rates, the lowest population growth rates and the fastest economic growth in the country. The state has an even balance of rural and urban residents.

There are several factors responsible for this comparatively high level of wellbeing. About 2 million people from Kerala live and work in the countries of the Persian Gulf, such as Qatar, and each year they send home a combined income of about US$14 billion. This means their families can afford education and health services. The state was also one of the first to change its laws so that individual farmers can own land, increasing their ability to grow food for their families and generate a surplus that can be sold for a profit. In addition, fertile soils and a favourable climate help to boost agricultural production (see Source 1).

Tourism is one of Kerala's biggest industries. The COVID-19 pandemic had a devastating effect on tourism in Kerala, but the state's economy fared better than most in India.

Enlarged map
India: HDI for different states, 2018

Wellbeing in Bihar

The north-east state of Bihar is ranked as having the lowest HDI in India. The state is 90 per cent rural, with most of the population living in villages and small towns. The people of Bihar farm the fertile land on either side of the Ganges River, which splits the state in two. One-third of the state's population – some 42 million people – live below the poverty line, but this figure is as high as 70 per cent in some parts of the state.

The reasons for the low levels of wellbeing in Bihar are complex, and studies have failed to agree on the main causes. Some commentators blame India's political situation, and point to low levels of investment by the federal government in health and education **infrastructure** in Bihar, such as hospitals and schools. Furthermore, most rural families do not own their own land, or they own an area so small that it cannot supply the family's needs.

Often, children and young adults from these families move to the cities in other states seeking a better life. It is estimated that 5 million Biharis are working in other states. During the coronavirus pandemic, however, many lost their jobs due to widespread business closures and temporary lockdowns. Large numbers of people were forced to return to their home state by foot, walking hundreds of kilometres over a period of weeks. Many did not survive the journey.

Quiz me!
A quick quiz on variations in wellbeing within India

infrastructure
the facilities and services necessary for any community, city or country to function (e.g. buildings, electricity, roads, airports and water supply)

Source 3 Migrant daily wage workers sit on a cart in front of closed shops during lockdown in India.

Source 4 Wellbeing indicators for the states of Kerala and Bihar, and India (total)

Indicator	Kerala	Bihar	India
People living in poverty	7%	34%	22%
Under 5 mortality rate	7 per 1000	56 per 1000	50 per 1000
Underweight children	18.7%	38.7%	33.4%
Literacy rate	96.2%	63.8%	74.4%
Houses with no toilet	2.6%	70%	28%

4.8 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 **Identify** two factors contributing to the relatively high level of wellbeing in Kerala.

2 Why are levels of wellbeing low in Bihar?

Comprehend

3 Using Source 2, **describe** the pattern of wellbeing in India according to the HDI (an enlarged version is available on your obook pro). Use the names of specific states, as well as compass directions in your description.

4 **Explain** why there are large variations in wellbeing within India. Use the examples of Kerala and Bihar in your response.

Apply

5 Using Source 4:

a **Create** a multiple bar graph contrasting wellbeing in Kerala, Bihar and India (total).

b **Describe** the pattern in your completed graph.

4.9 India's rural–urban divide

Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

- identify regions with high and low levels of wellbeing in India, and explain the similarities and differences.

About 280 million people in India are living below the poverty line. Hundreds of millions of others live just above it. This poverty, however, is unevenly spread across the country, with significant inequalities in wellbeing between rural and urban areas. People in rural areas are almost twice as likely to be living below the poverty line than people in urban areas.

As India embarks on a path of economic and social change, the gap between rural and urban India is narrowing, but there is still some way to go before equality is achieved. Source 5 shows some of the key indicators of the rural–urban divide, or what some researchers have called 'A Tale of Two Indias'.

Source 5 Differences in wellbeing between urban and rural India

Key wellbeing indicator	Urban India	Rural India
Students who complete secondary school	65.6%	48%
Average annual income (AU$)	1745	725
Improved drinking water access	96%	91%
Improved sanitation access	93%	61%
Underweight children under 5	29%	38%
Living below poverty line	13.7%	25.7%

Source 6 A young girl collects dried cow dung to be used as cooking fuel in a rural village in the state of Uttar Pradesh.

Wellbeing in rural India

India is largely a nation of farmers and rural villagers; well over half of the population lives in settlements of no more than 5000 people. For many of these people, life is hard and standards of living are low when compared to people living in urban areas.

Indian rural poverty is the result of a range of factors that differ from place to place. These include low food production levels leading to malnutrition; poor infrastructure such as roads, electricity and communication networks; ineffective safety-net programs such as job schemes; and poor access to financial resources such as bank loans and credit. Farmers are also at the mercy of nature. Droughts, floods and widespread **landscape degradation** have all contributed to rural poverty.

Poverty is greatest among minority ethnic groups (particularly in degraded forest areas) and marginalised classes of people, such as Dalits (also known as 'untouchables') who make up the lowest class in Indian society according to the Hindu **caste system**. In communities where coastal fishing is the main source of food, poverty is increasing because overfishing and marine degradation have greatly reduced fish stocks.

India's urban slums

Many people in India respond to the inequalities in wellbeing between rural and urban areas by moving from the countryside to the city. Millions of Indians from rural areas have poured into the country's booming cities, hoping to leave poverty behind as they seek a better life in the city. The reality for many, however, is that they exchange rural poverty for urban poverty (see page 152).

For geographers, this relates to the concept of place, as these people establish new homes in new areas. The new arrivals from the countryside tend to take up residence in slum areas on land that is considered unsuitable for ordinary housing, often because it is swampy or prone to landslides. Indian cities now contain some of the world's largest slums. Residents build their own homes out of discarded materials and live with the constant fear of eviction as they have no legal right to be there.

Many Indian cities are struggling to provide their citizens with the infrastructure needed for wellbeing, such as fresh water, sanitation, reliable access to electricity, schools, roads and hospitals. But it is not all bad news. Packed with people determined to improve their lives and their communities, many slums have become so well established that their infrastructure is often close to the standard in other parts of the city, and usually better than in rural areas.

The biggest struggle for many slum areas, however, is the provision of adequate sanitation. Many homes in the slums do not have a toilet, and the toilets that do exist are often open pits shared by hundreds of people. While many amenities are often organised and run by the slum-dwellers themselves, they rely on city authorities to provide proper sewage disposal. Because the slums are considered to be illegal settlements, however, authorities are reluctant to invest in sanitation for them.

For more information on this key concept, refer to page 6 of 'The geography toolkit'.

Source 7 Access to amenities in slum and non-slum urban households across a selection of Indian cities (percentage of households)

City	Tap water		Toilet		Electricity		Mobile phone	
	Slum	Non-slum	Slum	Non-slum	Slum	Non-slum	Slum	Non-slum
Ahmedabad	86.2	86.6	61.3	94.6	91.5	98.9	48.8	63.1
Bangalore	84.3	80.2	86.8	97.8	96.6	98.4	71.0	66.5
Chennai	78.2	83.7	91.0	97.4	98.4	99.3	70.0	59.2
Delhi	86.7	89.9	50.6	95.8	97.8	99.6	66.1	63.4
Kolkata	90.8	87.0	92.0	96.2	95.5	96.5	70.1	63.5
Greater Mumbai	96.1	97.3	32.8	75.1	95.6	98.3	76.6	53.5
Pune	98.8	98.4	35.8	90.6	96.2	98.9	73.4	62.0

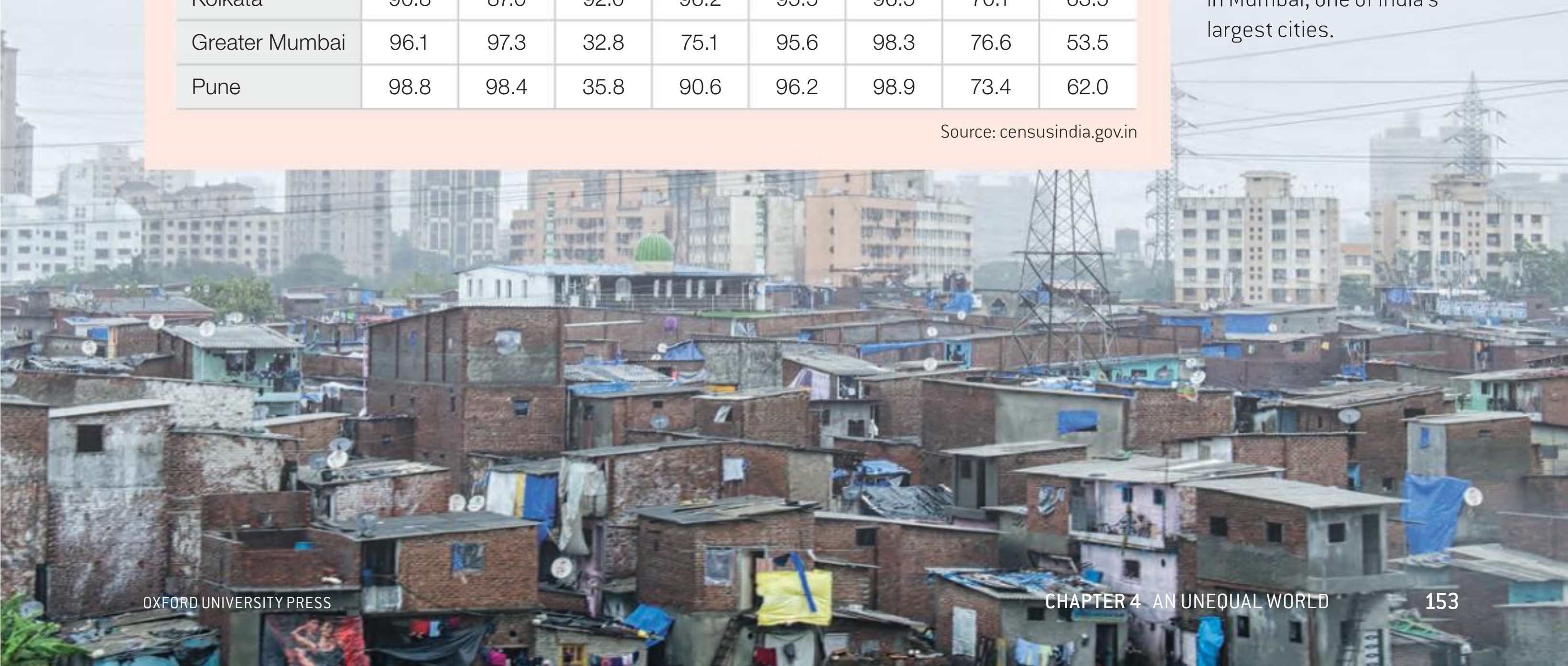
Source: censusindia.gov.in

KEY CONCEPT
Place

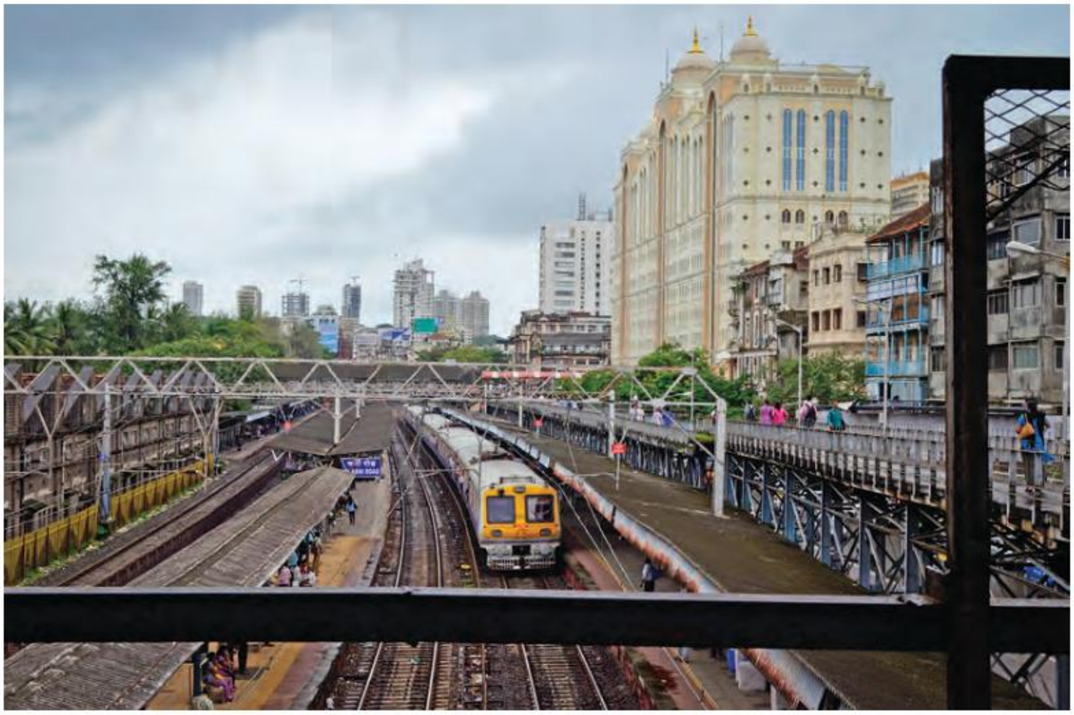
landscape degradation
a process that occurs when the productivity of land is lost

caste system
a social system in which people are born into a social group (called a caste); the caste system is generally associated with the Hindu religion in India and is still used today

Watch it!
A short video and quiz on architecture in Dharavi



Source 8 New apartments rise above an urban slum in Mumbai, one of India's largest cities.



Source 9 Residents of Mumbai are supported by public transport infrastructure. This train station is located right outside Saifee Hospital (right). Transport and health care are two factors that contribute to wellbeing in urban India.

Wellbeing in urban India

India is home to some of the world's largest and fastest-growing cities. The country has 41 cities of more than 1 million people, and two of the world's **megacities** (Mumbai and Delhi). These cities are home to much of the nation's wealth, as new opportunities in service industries such as banking and information technology have emerged. These opportunities have led to a growing middle class which has in turn led to improved infrastructure in the cities.

megacities
cities with a population of more than 10 million people

Photo for sketching
An urban slum in Mumbai

Those living in urban areas have greater access to health care, which has meant fewer infant deaths and better health in early childhood. On average, children in urban areas also spend more time at school and achieve a higher level of education.

4.9 Check your learning

Comprehend

1 **Explain** the differences in wellbeing between urban and rural areas in India.

Analyse

2 **Examine** Source 7. Do the levels of access to amenities available in the slum and non-slum areas of these Indian cities surprise you? What health or safety issues might be a concern for residents with limited access to some of these amenities?

3 Which Indian city in Source 7 has residents of slums with the lowest level of wellbeing? Use data from the source to support your answer.

Apply

4 Look at Source 5.
  a Which key wellbeing indicator do you think best shows the rural–urban divide in India? **Justify** your answer.
  b Using the wellbeing indicator you chose in question 4a, **create** a simple bar graph representing this data.

5 **Conduct** further research on the internet and use the data on these pages to compare the inequalities in wellbeing between urban non-slum India, urban slum India and rural India. Write a response on your findings, using images where appropriate.

6 **Create** an annotated sketch of Source 8. On your sketch, label any inequalities in wellbeing that you can identify.

4.10 Wellbeing in Australia

Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

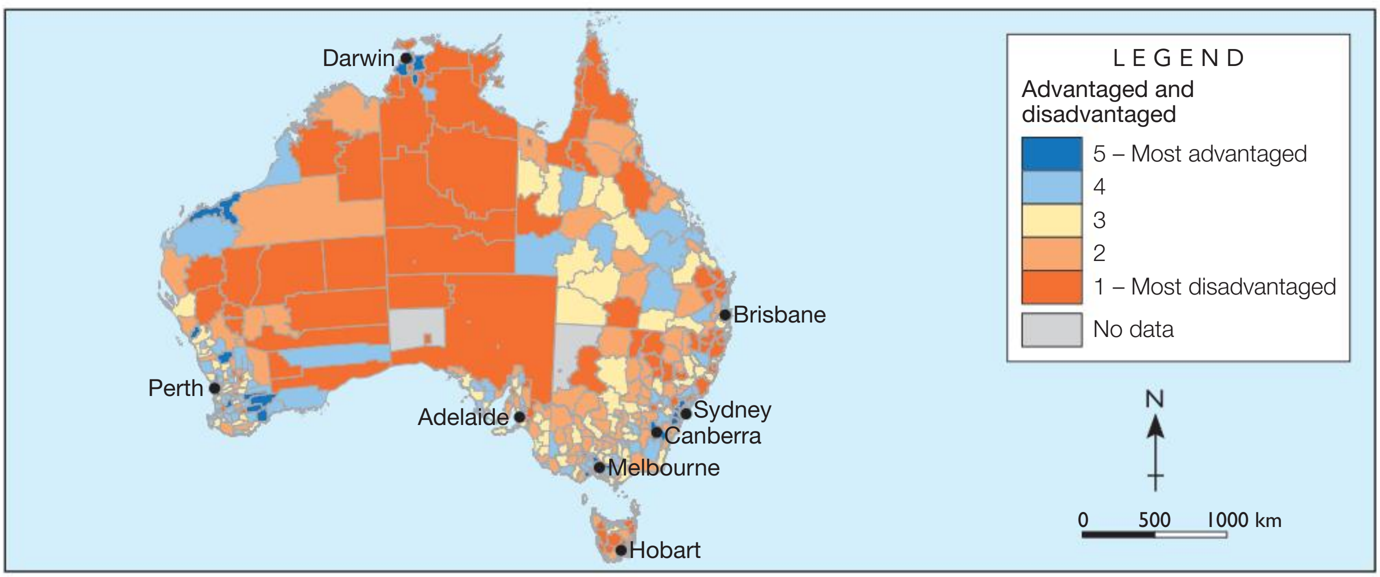
» understand the reasons for spatial variations in wellbeing in Australia.

Each year, the United Nations releases the HDI (see topic 4.3 on page 136), which ranks countries around the world in terms of their development. In 2019, Australia was ranked eighth out of 189 countries on the HDI. However, despite the high levels of wealth and wellbeing in Australia nationally, there are still many variations between specific regions, cities, towns and suburbs across our country. Some places may have excellent access to hospitals, schools and recreation facilities, together with low levels of crime and poverty. Other places may have poor access to these services, as well as higher levels of crime and poverty. Variations in these types of things can be difficult to measure at a local or regional scale because indicators such as life expectancy and literacy rates are almost always measured at the national scale.

There are other sources of information, however, that can help geographers measure wellbeing at the regional and local scale. One of these sources is the **census**. In Australia, a census is carried out every five years. Each Australian citizen is asked to provide answers to a series of questions on a whole range of topics. The census gives us a great deal of information about life across Australia, such as the areas of advantage and disadvantage. The Australian Bureau of Statistics (ABS) collects the census data and combines a number of indicators to give each region a score. This is based on each region's relative advantage or disadvantage 'in terms of people's access to material and social resources, and their ability to participate in society' (see Source 10).

census
a 'head count' or audit of the number of people living in a particular place at a particular time; information collected during a census often includes age, occupation, income, etc.

AUSTRALIA: INDEX OF RELATIVE ADVANTAGE AND DISADVANTAGE FOR LOCAL GOVERNMENT AREAS



Notes: A quintile is one-fifth of the population.

Source: ABS, 2018

Source 10

Enlarged map
Australia: Index of relative advantage and disadvantage

Poverty in Australia

In 2020, the Australian Council of Social Service (ACOSS) published a study in partnership with the University of New South Wales. Titled *Poverty in Australia 2020*, the study used census data and other research to examine levels of poverty across Australia.

In this study, individuals and households that receive less than half the average Australian yearly income are deemed to be living in poverty. It is worth noting that this definition is very different from measurements used in other countries.

Using this definition, the researchers found that 13.6 per cent of Australians – around 3.2 million people – are living in poverty.

Source 11 The 2016 census found that the inner suburbs of Sydney, such as Ku-ring-gai, had the lowest levels of disadvantage in Australia.

Spatial variations in wellbeing

The 2016 census data revealed that inner-city suburbs, particularly in Sydney and Perth, have the lowest levels of disadvantage, while rural and remote communities in Queensland and the Northern Territory are most disadvantaged. The most advantaged community in Australia was Ku-ring-gai, in northern Sydney (see Source 11). The average weekly income for each household in this region was $2642, and almost half of all adults had a university degree. About two-thirds of Ku-ring-gai residents had at least one of their parents born overseas, and the most common jobs were as managers and professionals.

The most disadvantaged community was Cherbourg, which is located inland from Gympie in south-east Queensland (see Source 12). Households in this region earned an average of $755 a week, and less than 1 per cent had a university degree. Over 90 per cent of Cherbourg residents were First Nations peoples, and the most common jobs were community and personal service workers.

The rural–urban divide

Studies of the spatial distribution of wellbeing in Australia have found that people living in rural areas in Australia have lower levels of wellbeing than people living in urban areas. This pattern is repeated in other developed countries around the world. Studies of health statistics in Australia show that the further away from a major city you live, the less healthy you are likely to be. For example, in rural areas:

- rates of hospitalisation for serious injury or illness are higher
- there are fewer doctors for every 1000 people
- smoking rates and alcohol consumption are higher
- rates of death and serious injury from workplace and road accidents are higher.

Source 12 The 2016 census found that remote communities in the Northern Territory and Queensland, such as Cherbourg, had the highest levels of disadvantage in Australia.

Source 13 Studies estimate that 1 in 8 Australians live in poverty, including approximately 760 000 children.

Quiz me!
A quick quiz on wellbeing in Australia

4.10 Check your learning

Comprehend

1 **Explain** why it is more difficult to measure, rank and map variations in wellbeing at the local and regional level.

2 **Describe** three health concerns that are more serious for Australians living in rural areas than for those living in urban areas.

Analyse

3 **Examine** Source 10.

a Identify which regions of Australia are most advantaged.

b Identify which regions of Australia are least advantaged.

c In a carefully worded paragraph, describe the distribution of regions in Australia according to their quality of life rankings, using the PQE method (see page 31 of 'The geography toolkit'). Refer to specific towns, cities, regions and states in your description.

Apply

4 What barriers do you think exist that make it difficult to improve wellbeing in rural and regional areas of Australia? **Propose** (put forward) one solution to improve wellbeing in these areas.

5 Access the GIS map showing the areas of advantage and disadvantage at the website shown in your obook pro.

a Use the search tool to search for your postcode. **Determine** (decide) your suburb's level of disadvantage. What patterns of disadvantage do you notice in your local area?

b Change the map layer to 'state suburbs' and use this to **compare** two of Australia's capital cities. Describe the similarities and differences you notice between the patterns of advantage and disadvantage in these two cities.

Weblink
GIS map: areas of advantage and disadvantage

4.11 Wellbeing in First Nations communities

Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» explain trends in wellbeing data for communities of First Nations peoples compared to non-Indigenous Australians.

Key skill worksheet
Interpreting & analysing: Distinguishing between qualitative and quantitative data

By most measures there are significant differences in wellbeing between First Nations communities and non-Indigenous communities around Australia. Australia's First Nations children are twice as likely to be born underweight and twice as likely to die before their fifth birthday than non-Indigenous children. They are also less likely to attend pre-school, and much less likely to reach minimum standards in literacy and numeracy while at school. Although almost nine out of every 10 non-Indigenous young adults complete Year 12, it is closer to seven out of 10 for First Nations young adults. The pattern is similar with employment. Only 49 per cent of First Nations adults are in employment, compared to 75 per cent of their non-Indigenous counterparts.

Perhaps the most alarming statistic is that a First Nations boy born in 2021 can expect to live 8.6 years less than a non-Indigenous boy. For girls, the figure is 7.8 years.

Closing the gap

In 2008, the Australian Prime Minister, Kevin Rudd, apologised to First Nations peoples affected by the official government policies that separated children from their families, a group known as the Stolen Generations. As part of this apology, Rudd gave a promise 'to close the gap between Indigenous and non-Indigenous Australians on life expectancy, educational achievement and employment opportunities'.

Each year the prime minister must report on the progress that has been made in closing the gap. The 2020 report revealed the following:

Source 14 Progress on 'closing the gap' targets, 2020

Target	Progress as of 2020
Halve the gap in death rates for Aboriginal and Torres Strait Islander children under five within a decade (i.e. by 2018)	Not on track: the gap is widening
95 per cent of all Aboriginal and Torres Strait Islander four-year-olds enrolled in early childhood education (by 2025)	On track
Close the gap between Aboriginal and Torres Strait Islander and non-Indigenous school attendance within five years (by 2018)	Target not met, no improvement
Halve the gap for Aboriginal and Torres Strait Islander children in reading, writing and numeracy within a decade (by 2018)	Target not met, but progress made
Halve the gap for Aboriginal and Torres Strait Islander Australians aged 20–24 in Year 12 attainment or equivalent (by 2020)	On track
Halve the gap in employment outcomes between Indigenous and non-Indigenous Australians within a decade (by 2018)	Not met, no real change
Close the life expectancy gap within a generation (by 2031)	Not on track

Measuring happiness

Although statistical indicators such as life expectancy and literacy suggest low levels of wellbeing among Australia's First Nations peoples, other measures tell a different story. The ABS has begun to ask First Nations peoples to assess their own wellbeing by asking questions

Source 15 Ntaria School is in Hermannsburg, outside Alice Springs in the Northern Territory. Increased government funding has allowed remote schools such as Ntaria to offer longer pre-school programs. This has resulted in improved literacy and numeracy as well as improved health, as the children are also given healthy lunches.

Source 16 Happiness among First Nations peoples in remote areas is higher for those involved in cultural activities than for those who rarely or never attend cultural events.

about their levels of happiness and satisfaction with life in the National Aboriginal and Torres Strait Islander Social Survey (NATSISS). The data collected reveals some important trends. Torres Strait Islanders, for example, are much more likely to report feeling happy, full of life, calm and peaceful, and having lots of energy than individuals in the broader Australian community.

The NATSISS results also showed that First Nations adults living in remote areas were generally more satisfied with their life than those living in non-remote areas, such as towns and cities. However, in virtually all other measures – such as school attendance, literacy, health, disease and employment – the most disadvantaged First Nations communities were those in remote areas. Access to health care, education and employment opportunities are often more limited in remote areas than they are in regional centres and major cities.

Quiz me!
A quick quiz on wellbeing in First Nations communities

4.11 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 **Identify** the difference in life expectancy rates between First Nations peoples and non-Indigenous Australians.

Comprehend

2 The 'closing the gap' targets rely on quantitative measures to measure their progress. **Explain** why these measures are used rather than qualitative measures (such as levels of happiness and satisfaction).

Apply

3 **Examine** Source 16, including the caption. Conduct some further reading on the internet and complete these tasks.
   a Write a reflection on why people are happier if they engage in cultural and community activities.
   b Create a survey that questions people about their level of happiness and the factors that affect their happiness. Include questions about their involvement in cultural and community activities. Conduct the survey and write a report on your results, outlining what makes people happy.

4 'Efforts to close the wellbeing gap between First Nations peoples and non-Indigenous Australians have been largely successful.'

   To what extent do you agree with this? A lot (strongly), a little bit (somewhat) or not at all? Write a short paragraph explaining your position, using evidence from Source 14 to support your answer.

4B

SKILLS IN CONTEXT

Investigating wellbeing at the local scale

Test me!
Once you've finished the topics in this section, test yourself with this quiz and find out which worksheet you should do.

Weblink
Australian Bureau of Statistics

Weblink
ABS: Interactive map

Most studies of wellbeing focus on differences and variations between nations. But there are also variations at the local scale. In this Skills in Context task you will learn how to use census data to collect and map information about wellbeing in your local area. Based on your completed research and maps, you will then explore some possible reasons for the variations in wellbeing at the local scale.

KEY SKILL
Questioning & researching

Collecting and mapping data

A census is held in Australia every five years and the results are processed and published by the ABS. Geographers often use this information to map data and trends across an area. You can collect data about your local area and map it by following these steps:

Step 1 Access the ABS website. Click on the 'Census' tab in the menu. Then select 'Find Census data', and then 'Search Census data'.

Step 2 This page allows you to access the census data at a wide range of scales, including at the local level. A useful way of working at the local scale for this study is by using postcodes. To access the data for your suburb, enter your four-digit postcode in the 'Search by area name' bar. Then, under View QuickStats, click on 'All Persons'.

Step 3 This should open a map of your postcode and provide you with a range of statistics for it, as collected in the most recent census.

Step 4 Scroll down the page to see the data that is available and select a category you would like to map.

Step 5 In a research table, record the data for your postcode for your selected indicator. Access the same data for your neighbouring postcodes by using the search tool. You can find out what your neighbouring postcodes are by hovering over the map. Click on the neighbouring postcodes to view census data for these postal areas. List them in your research table and record data for these postcodes, alongside your own.

Step 6 Once you have collected the data you can map it by constructing a choropleth map. Print out a map of your area. You can use one you already have, or print the one from the ABS website, using the link on your obook pro. Trace a copy showing only the postcode boundaries.

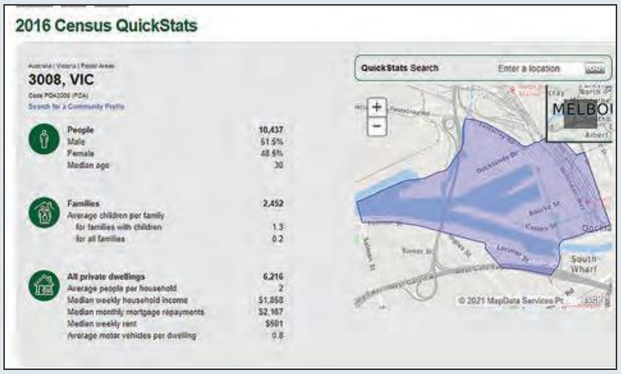
Step 7 Use the data collected from the census to construct a choropleth

Source 17 The 2022 census revealed that residents in Melbourne's inner-city suburb of Docklands had a median income well above the state and national average.

legend for your map. Divide your data into four or five categories. Use darker shades of a colour for higher values and lighter shades for lower values. For example, your suburb might have fewer people per household (if that was what you chose to map) than the neighbouring suburb. So, you would colour your suburb a lighter shade and your neighbouring suburb a darker shade.

Step 8 Shade your map according to the legend you created in Step 7.

Step 9 Complete your map with BOLTSS.



Source 18 A screen shot from the ABS 'QuickStats' census page

Source 19 A screenshot from the ABS Maps interactive map

Practise the skill

1 **Create** a choropleth map of variations in median household income in your local area (include at least six suburbs) by collecting information from the ABS website. Follow the steps to gather your data and map the information.

2 **Describe** the pattern shown on your completed map.

Extend your understanding

1 List possible reasons for the variations shown on your map. These will vary from place to place, but here are some possibilities:
- distance from the centre of a large city
- presence of employment opportunities, such as factories and shopping centres
- presence of higher educational opportunities, such as universities
- presence of transport networks, such as railway stations and major roads
- presence of large, shared accommodation areas, such as aged-care facilities or hostels
- presence of geographic features, such as a coastline or large park.

Use your knowledge of the local area, together with street directory maps, to **evaluate** these possible reasons.

2 Collect information from the ABS site and **analyse** variations in another indicator of wellbeing. Do this for the same suburbs you investigated earlier. You could, for example, choose to analyse the number of motor vehicles per dwelling, highest year of schooling completed or percentage of people unemployed.

3 You can also use the census data to explore levels of wellbeing in communities that are not located close to each other.
   - **a** Follow the steps in the key skill to **compare** wellbeing in Cherbourg, Ku-ring-gai (see page 156) and the area in which you live.
   - **b** **Summarise** what you have learnt about variations in wellbeing within Australia.

4 **Evaluate** the use of census data to describe and compare wellbeing by following these steps:
   - **a** What are the strengths of census data for this purpose?
   - **b** What are the weaknesses of census data for this purpose?
   - **c** What is your overall opinion about how useful census data is for this purpose?

4 CHAPTER REVIEW

Review activity

Infant mortality in Papua New Guinea

Papua New Guinea (PNG) is Australia's closest neighbour, but is worlds apart with regard to levels of wellbeing. Whereas Australia is ranked in the top 10 countries in terms of our HDI, PNG is ranked 155th – the lowest ranking in the Asia–Pacific Region. There are also many variations in wellbeing on a regional scale in PNG.

Analyse the map in Source 20 to explore aspects of wellbeing further, then answer the questions.

1 Using your knowledge, **name** three indicators of wellbeing. (3 marks)

2 **Identify** two locations with low infant mortality rates, and two locations with high infant mortality rates. (4 marks)

3 Use the PQE method to **describe** the distribution of infant mortality rates in PNG. (6 marks)

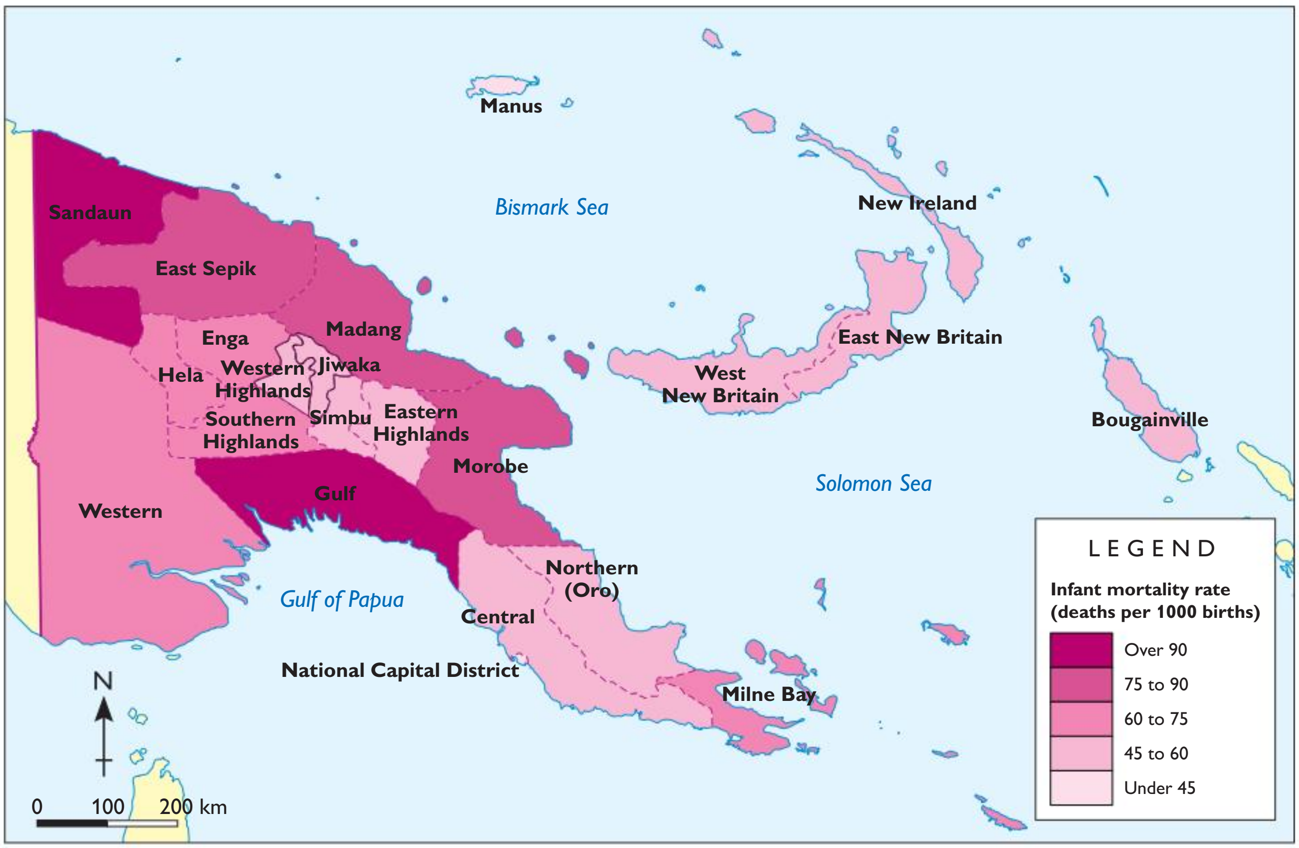
   a Summarise the difference between the infant mortality rates in Sanduan and in the National Capital District. (2 marks)

   b Why do differences occur in wellbeing between rural and urban areas? Explain your answer using knowledge from this chapter. (3 marks)

4 Outline one way to improve infant mortality rates in Papua New Guinea. (2 marks)

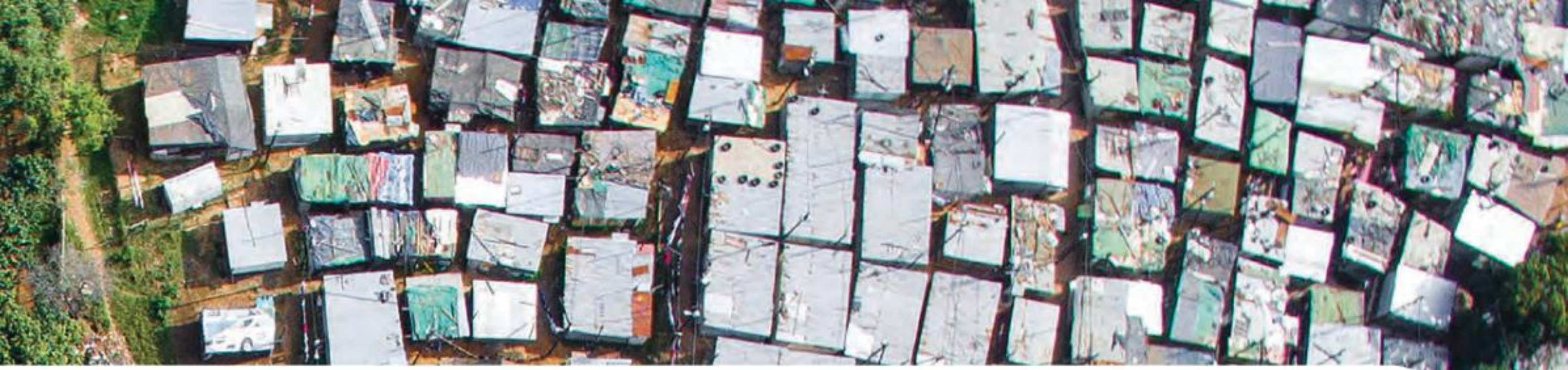
(Total: 20 marks)

PAPUA NEW GUINEA: INFANT MORTALITY RATES BY PROVINCE



Source 20

Source: Oxford University Press



Chapter checklist

Now that you have completed this chapter, reflect on your ability to do the following:

	I can do this.	I cannot do this yet.
Identify the factors that contribute to wellbeing.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 4.1, page 132.
Describe the different measurements of human wellbeing and explain trends in different measurements.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 4.2, page 134.
Explain the methods used by geographers to measure spatial variations in human wellbeing.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 4.3, page 136.
Understand how graphs are used to explore links and trends in wellbeing.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 4.4, page 138.
Explain how wealth is used to measure human wellbeing and development at a global scale.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 4.5, page 140.
Explain how health is used to measure human wellbeing and development at a global scale.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 4.6, page 143.
Explain how education rates are used to measure human wellbeing and development at a global scale.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 4.7, page 146.
Identify and describe the variations in human wellbeing within India.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 4.8, page 150.
Identify regions with high and low levels of wellbeing in India, and explain the similarities and differences.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 4.9, page 152.
Understand the reasons for spatial variations in wellbeing in Australia.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 4.10, page 155.
Explain trends in wellbeing data for communities of First Nations peoples compared to non-Indigenous Australians.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 4.11, page 158.

Enlarged map
Papua New Guinea: Infant mortality rates by province

Check your Student obook pro for these digital resources and more:

Student book questions
Chapter 4

Key skill worksheet
Communicating: Chapter 4

Quizlet
Play a game of Quizlet on An unequal world.

Chapter review quiz
Chapter 4

CHAPTER 5

Inequalities in wellbeing

There are many reasons for the inequalities in wellbeing that exist between and within countries. The environment and climate can make a difference, affecting access to fresh water and the ability to grow food. In addition, the presence of natural resources such as oil and minerals is an important source of wealth for countries that influences levels of wellbeing.

The political, economic and social organisation of a country can also have a big impact on its wellbeing. Important factors include the make-up of the population, the levels of gender equality, the growth rate of the population, and access to technology.

One of the most significant factors affecting wellbeing, however, is conflict.

Source 1 The Zaatari refugee camp in Jordan is home to more than 6 million Syrian refugees who have fled the country as the result of a bloody civil war that began in 2011.

5A
How does the natural environment cause inequality?

5B
How do human activities cause inequality?

5.1 Why inequalities in wellbeing occur

Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» identify and describe the main factors that cause variations in wellbeing.

wellbeing
the ability of human beings to access the things they need in order to live happy and healthy lives (e.g. food, water, education, safety and security)

Human Development Index (HDI)
a tool developed by the United Nations to grade and rank the social and economic development of the world's countries in order from most to least developed; used as a measure of human wellbeing

As you have learnt, **wellbeing** varies a great deal within and between countries. The factors behind these variations are complex, but can be broken up into five main groups: environmental, social, economic, historic and political.

Environmental factors that affect wellbeing include the suitability of the land for agriculture, the climate and whether there are any natural resources present in the landscape. In some places, good growing conditions ensure that food is plentiful and minerals in the ground bring wealth and industry. In other places, poor soils or unreliable rainfall are the key factors that limit people's wellbeing.

Social, economic, historic and political factors are all examples of human factors that affect wellbeing. These include elements such as population size, cultural norms, laws and rules regulating business and trade, historical events, political systems and wars. In some places, long periods of stability have allowed for great improvements in living conditions. In other places, the wellbeing of people has been affected by ongoing conflict and decades of corruption and persecution. In these cases, people's access to resources such as water, food and health care is limited, affecting their quality of life.

Every region and country around the world has its own unique set of interrelated factors that determine the wellbeing of the people who live there. Some of the key factors that determine a country's level of wellbeing are outlined in Source 1. One way of measuring wellbeing is the **Human Development Index (HDI)**.

Factors that affect human wellbeing

- **Environmental factors**
  - Climate
  - Land quality and availability of fresh water
  - Natural resources
  - Relative location
- **Social factors**
  - Population size and growth
  - Cultural norms such as gender roles
- **Economic factors**
  - Trade laws
  - Access to trade routes
- **Historic factors**
  - Colonial past
  - Past conflicts
- **Political factors**
  - Political stability
  - Level of corruption
  - Wars and civil conflict

Source 1 Factors that affect human wellbeing

Source 2 Norway regularly tops the world ranking in the annual HDI.

Quiz me!
A quick quiz on why inequalities in wellbeing occur

The Arabian Peninsula: Contrasts in wellbeing

The Arabian Peninsula in the Middle East is a space shared by several countries, including Yemen and Saudi Arabia. Due to their proximity to each other, they have similar climates, soils, topography and mineral resources. Despite these similarities, the wellbeing ranking of these two nations is very different. On the HDI, Saudi Arabia is rated as the country with the fortieth-highest level of wellbeing in the world. By contrast, Yemen is 139 places lower, at 179th. Saudis live, on average, nine years longer, and they have a Gross Domestic Product (GDP) 18 times higher than that of their Yemeni neighbours. (GDP is the total monetary value of all the goods and services produced by a country over a specific time period.)

This difference in ranking can be explained by inequalities in factors relating to wellbeing. One example is wealth. Saudi Arabia's economic wealth is derived largely from its vast reserves of oil. It is the world's largest exporter of refined oil products, such as petrol. This accounts for about 90 per cent of its total export earnings. Importers of Saudi petrol and oil include China, Singapore and India. Saudi Arabia also attracts millions of workers to contribute to its economy from South Asian countries such as India and Pakistan.

Yemen also has vast reserves of oil, as well as other valuable minerals including zinc, silver, nickel, gold, copper and cobalt. However, exports from Yemen have been blocked since 2014. This is because it is engaged in a bloody civil war, as rival religious and political groups fight for control of the country. Saudi Arabia is active in this war, supporting one of the religious groups. The conflict has created a humanitarian crisis, with 7 million Yemenis at risk of famine.

For more information on this key concept, refer to page 7 of 'The geography toolkit'.

KEY CONCEPT
Space

Source 3 On the Yemen border, a resident of Jizan Region, Saudi Arabia, keeps a watchful eye on the area. Tensions in the region have been escalating as Yemeni people flee to Saudi Arabia to escape violence, conflict and famine.

5.1 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 **Identify** two environmental factors that affect wellbeing.

Comprehend

2 Using Source 1, **explain** why Australia has high levels of wellbeing.

3 Using Source 2, **describe** the environmental factors that help to explain Norway's high levels of wellbeing.

4 **Describe** the similarities and differences in levels of welbeing in Saudi Arabia and Yemen.

Apply

5 Conduct research to complete the following tasks.

a 'Levels of human wellbeing are mainly the result of human factors rather than natural ones.' To what extent to do you agree with this statement? **Discuss** your thoughts in small groups.

b Find and research examples similar to the Arabian Peninsula, where neighbouring countries have very different levels of wellbeing; for example Haiti and the Dominican Republic, or North and South Korea. Present your findings in a table and write a paragraph explaining the reasons for the inequalities, with reference to the five factors in Source 1.

6 The other countries of the Arabian Peninsula are Kuwait, Bahrain, Qatar, the United Arab Emirates and Oman. Use the 'Statistics database' resource on your obook pro to fill out a table of wellbeing indicators (a template is available on your obook pro). Compare the differences in wellbeing between these countries. Does wellbeing in these countries most closely resemble Yemen or Saudi Arabia? Write a sentence for each country.

Statistics database
Compare world statistics

Additional resource
Table of wellbeing indicators

5.2 Environmental factors and inequalities

Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» understand the reasons for, and consequences of, spatial variations in wellbeing as a result of environmental factors.

ecosystem services
a term used to describe a range of important resources, processes and benefits that healthy ecosystems provide to humans

irrigate
supply water to otherwise dry land by artificial means (e.g. pipes, ditches, sprinkler systems) to help with the growing of crops

food security
a term used to describe a condition in which all people at all times have access to enough safe nutritious food to sustain a healthy life

Quiz me!
A quick quiz on environmental factors and inequalities

The natural environment provides us with the necessities of life – fresh air, fresh water and food. However, there are wide variations in the availability of these vital resources around the world. This is due to the fact that natural variations occur in the processes responsible for these resources, including variations in climate and topography.

Variations in food and water security

The most important **ecosystem services** are those that provide us with a reliable supply of clean water and the resources required to grow food. Clean water is provided by regular rainfall and is usually carried along rivers where it is used by communities in villages, towns and cities for drinking, cleaning and cooking. Fresh water is also used by farmers to **irrigate** their crops.

Because there are natural variations in rainfall, temperature, soil fertility and river flows, **food security** and water security vary widely. To grow the best crops, farmers rely on fertile soils, warm temperatures and other important ecosystem services, such as insects and birds to pollinate plants and control pests. The products of human ingenuity such as water pipelines and dams, fertilisers and greenhouses have overcome many of the limitations set by these natural variations, but they are costly to build and maintain. The growth in the world's population, particularly in the past 50 years, has also placed a strain on the ability of the environment to provide food and water security.

In some places the land has become degraded by human activities, such as overgrazing and the unsustainable use of water. This is now affecting the food and water security of millions of people (see Source 4).

Source 4 A girl in Chad sets out from her village on her daily walk to collect water. She lives in the Sahel, on the southern fringe of the Sahara Desert, where wellbeing is threatened by unreliable rains, infertile soil and a rapidly expanding population.

CASE STUDY

Food security in India

In some environments, the inability to grow enough food to meet the needs of the population has a major impact on wellbeing. India has a population of about 1.3 billion, but across much of the country, environmental conditions are unsuitable for growing food.

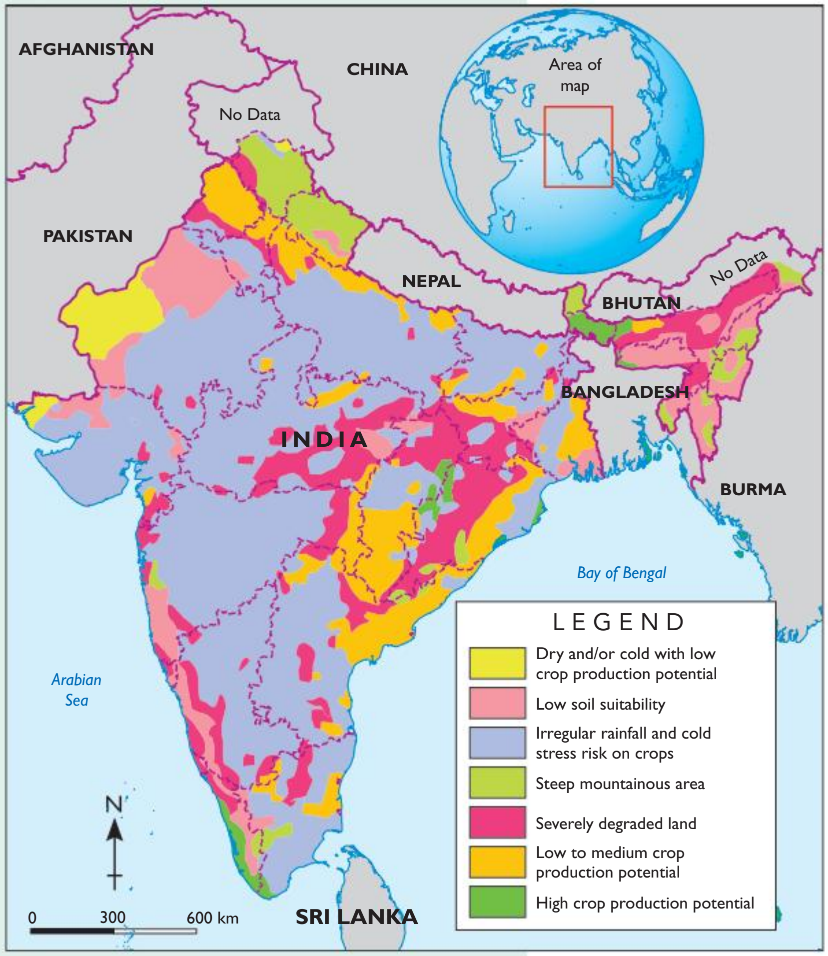
These environmental conditions, together with a lack of agricultural technology and poor irrigation, have led to frequent famines. In 2013, a severe drought in the western Indian state of Maharashtra became the worst the region had experienced in four decades. As reservoirs ran out of water, farmers were unable to produce food. Shortages meant people went without.

In the late nineteenth century, India experienced its worst famines, resulting in the starvation and deaths of millions of rural Indians. These days, India can import food such as rice and grains when food supplies are threatened. However, the imported food is more expensive and the price increases still lead to severe hardship for India's poor.

Source 5 shows some of the major environmental conditions and the effects they have on food production throughout India.

Enlarged map
India: Major environmental constraints on food production

INDIA: MAJOR ENVIRONMENTAL CONSTRAINTS ON FOOD PRODUCTION



Source 5 Source: Oxford University Press

5.2 Check your learning

Comprehend

1 **Summarise** the natural resources important in providing food and water security.

2 What is the link between the uneven distribution of resources and variations in human wellbeing?

Analyse

3 **Compare** Source 5 with Source 2 in topic 4.8 (page 150). Can you find evidence that certain environmental constraints on food production have led to lower levels of human development? Use the names of specific states in your answer.

4 **Compare** Source 4 with Source 2 in topic 5.1 (page 166). Explain the differences you can observe in these sources. How might the environmental conditions you see help to explain the differences in wellbeing between these two nations?

Apply

5 Complete some further research on the internet to do the following task.

- Since 1993, World Water Day has been celebrated by the United Nations. **Investigate** how World Water Day has been used to bring attention to the issue of food and water security.
- Present your findings by writing a 250-word report or by summarising the most important details in table format.

5.3 The influence of natural resources on inequality

Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» explain how availability of natural resources causes variations in human wellbeing.

Statistics database
Compare world statistics

Map it!
World: The location of oil and the rate of oil use

Natural resources include a country's mineral, petroleum, timber and hydropower reserves, along with any other resources that can be used commercially to improve the wealth of the country. Fossil fuels such as oil, and minerals such as iron ore, copper and diamonds, are often in demand around the world. The money raised from the sale of these resources can then be used to improve wellbeing. This is what has happened in oil-rich nations of the Middle East, such as Saudi Arabia, which now enjoy very high levels of wellbeing.

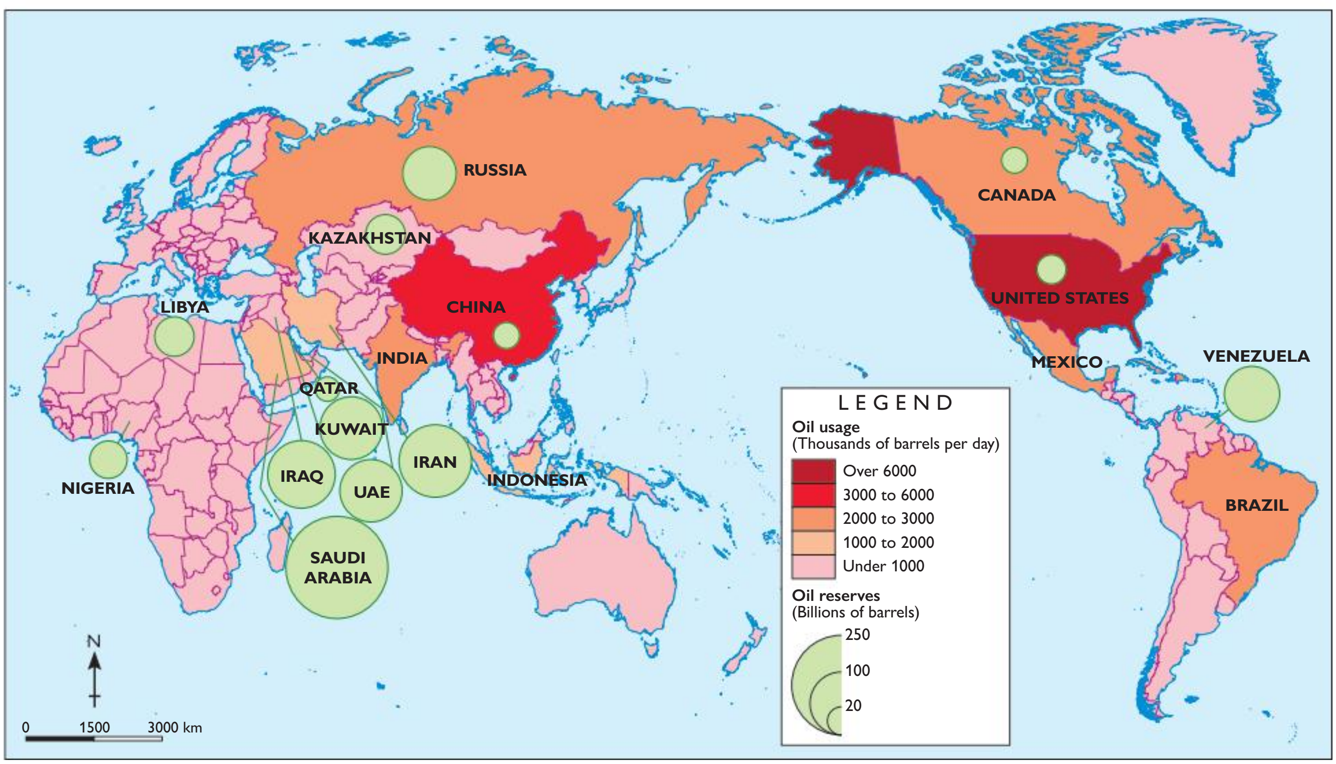
Variations in mineral wealth

Oil is a vital commodity. It is used by billions of people for transport, manufacturing, heating and cooking. Oil is found in only a few places on Earth, but often in vast quantities.

Those countries that have reserves of oil are able to mine, refine and sell it to those that do not, thereby giving them an opportunity to generate wealth and increase their wellbeing. Source 6 shows the distribution of oil reserves throughout the world using proportional circles to show the oil reserves available to each country. You can see from this map that the majority of oil reserves are concentrated in a relatively small number of countries. The colour of each country in Source 6 indicates how much oil it uses. If a country needs oil but does not have any oil reserves, it has to buy it from a country that does.

Natural resources are considered of such high value that, throughout history, access to them has been a common cause of conflict between countries.

WORLD: THE LOCATION OF OIL AND THE RATE OF OIL USE



Source 6 Source: Oxford University Press

Natural resources and colonisation

As European nations developed and their populations grew in the sixteenth and seventeenth centuries, their need for resources increased beyond what could be provided within their national borders. European powers such as Spain, England, Portugal and the Netherlands sent explorers out to regions of the world unknown to them in the hope of finding resources and riches that they could use. They colonised vast areas of the Americas, Africa and the Pacific – often taking the wealth of the countries they colonised to increase their own wellbeing. In many cases, this had devastating results for the indigenous peoples in these colonies.

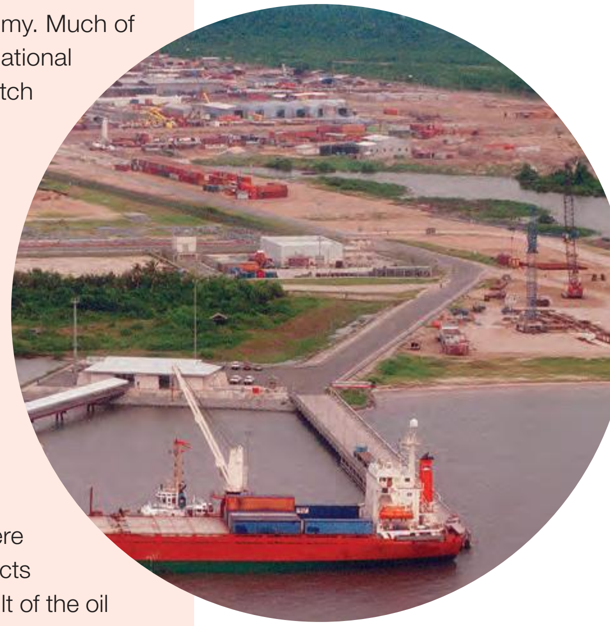
Millions of indigenous peoples were taken as slaves or put to work extracting minerals and other natural resources from the ground. Countless others were killed in conflicts or died from European diseases against which they had no natural immunity. Valuable resources such as timber and minerals were taken, and the indigenous social and political systems were destroyed.

Some people would argue that a form of colonisation still continues today, as companies from wealthy countries develop and sell the resources of poorer nations. Thanks to profits from oil, Nigeria now has Africa's second-largest economy. Much of this wealth comes from multinational companies, such as Royal Dutch Shell, extracting Nigeria's oil. Shell began operations in Nigeria in 1937. Today more than 1000 Nigerian wells operated by Shell produce more than 600 000 barrels of oil a day – virtually all of it exported. Shell currently extracts and refines 21 per cent of Nigeria's exported oil.

For those living near Shell's oil plants in the Niger Delta, there have been more negative impacts than positive impacts as a result of the oil industry. Oil spills, loss of agricultural land and environmental degradation have left many of those in surrounding villages poorer than ever.

For more information on this key concept, refer to page 11 of 'The geography toolkit'.

KEY CONCEPT
Change



Source 7 Royal Dutch Shell's oil plant in Bonny, Nigeria; in this image, a tanker owned by the US multinational company Chevron is being loaded with oil.

5.3 Check your learning

Comprehend

1 What are three types of natural resources?

2 **Explain** how natural resources can influence a country's wellbeing.

Analyse

3 **Examine** Source 6.

a Which 10 countries have the world's largest oil reserves?

b Use the data in the 'Statistics database' resource on your obook pro to order the 10 countries with the largest oil reserves according to the percentage of the population in poverty.

c Can you see a direct relationship between large reserves of oil and low levels of poverty? Write a paragraph describing this relationship.

d Explain why access to important natural resources such as oil does not always lead to decreased levels of poverty.

4 **Reflect on** how colonisation and the pursuit of natural resources impacted many resource-rich nations.

Apply

5 Launch Google Earth on your device to create a fact sheet about the town of Bonny in Nigeria.

a Locate the town of Bonny in Nigeria.

b **Describe** the variations in buildings in this town.

c What conclusions can you draw about the relative wealth and wellbeing in the area?

d Find the location of the photograph in Source 7.

e Use the ruler function to estimate the size of the oil plant.

f **Describe** the evidence of environmental change you can see as a result of this plant.

5.4 The influence of location on inequality

Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» explain how location causes variations in human wellbeing.

Map it!
World: Main shipping routes and largest container ports

Differences in human wellbeing cannot be explained by variations in the distribution of natural resources alone. Control over reserves of natural resources was the main source of wealth and power hundreds of years ago. However, it tends to be less of a factor in today's increasingly globalised world, where vast quantities of goods, services, people, finances and ideas move quickly between countries. As a result, countries with few natural resources – such as Singapore and Japan – can increase their wellbeing by engaging in the flow of goods and services.

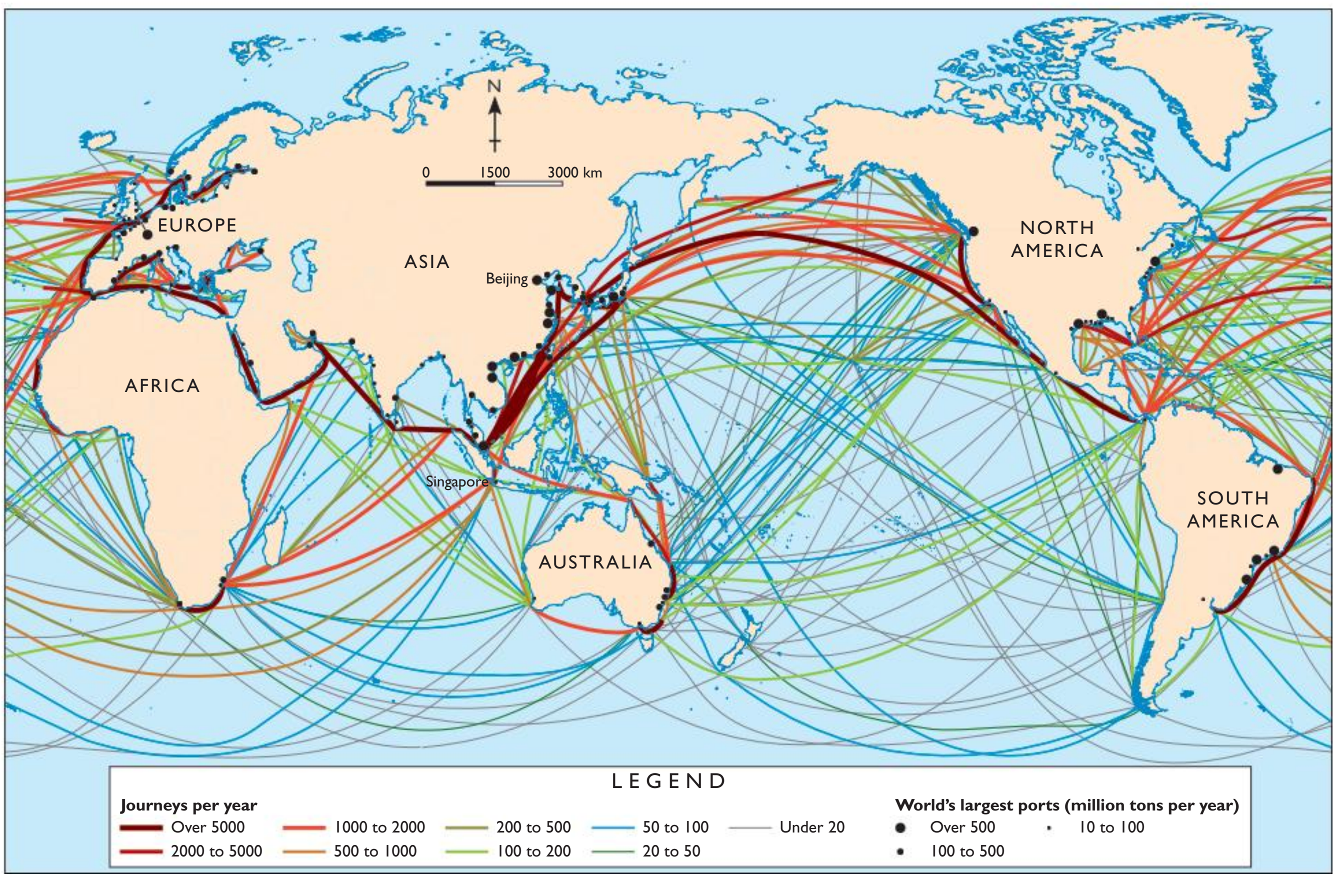
In fact, some of the highest levels of wellbeing are enjoyed by people living in places without natural resources, such as large areas of land suitable for agriculture or vast mineral reserves. For these people, their location and ability to trade are the key to their wellbeing.

Access to trade routes

empires
groups of countries and/or areas often speaking different languages and having different cultures, but centrally ruled

All of the world's great **empires** were built partly on their ability to transport goods and people. Large volumes of goods were usually transported by water. Ancient Egyptians used the Nile River, the Greeks and Romans used the Mediterranean Sea, and the British used the oceans of the world for trade. Countries and empires with ports close to major shipping routes had a natural advantage.

WORLD: MAIN SHIPPING ROUTES AND LARGEST CONTAINER PORTS



Source 8

Source: Oxford University Press

Little has changed in the ways goods are transported today. The United States, for example, has been able to maintain high levels of wellbeing for centuries through its ability to trade from large ports on its west, east and south coasts. China, one of the world's fastest-growing economies, is the world's largest exporter and second-largest importer. Six of the world's 10 busiest ports are located in China, and an estimated 130 million shipping containers pass through them every year. China is using trade from its many ports as a way to improve the wellbeing of hundreds of millions of its citizens.

Statistics database
Compare world statistics

Singapore and the importance of location

Singapore is one of the world's smallest countries, and has few natural resources. Most of the land area is used for urban development, so little remains for food production. There are no significant rivers and no mineral reserves. And yet, Singapore has one of the world's highest levels of wellbeing – with an average life expectancy of over 86 years and one of the world's highest levels of GDP per capita. (GDP per capita is calculated by dividing the GDP of a country by the total number of people living there.) Singapore's wealth is based largely on its geographic location at the tip of the Malay Peninsula.

Ships moving between the world's major exporters and importers have used the port of Singapore as a trading centre for hundreds of years. The Port of Singapore is connected through shipping to more than 600 ports in 123 countries around the world, making it the 'gateway to Asia'. This central location has enabled Singapore to thrive in other global industries. Singapore also imports raw materials, which it turns into valuable commodities such as electronic and telecommunication goods for export. Finally, the country is home to major oil refineries and other mineral treatment plants, and is an important financial centre.

For more information on this key concept, refer to page 8 of 'The geography toolkit'.

KEY CONCEPT
Interconnections

Weblink
Vessel Finder

Source 9 An oblique aerial photograph showing part of the Port of Singapore

5.4 Check your learning

Comprehend

1 **Summarise** the two ways that countries with little in the way of natural resources could improve their wellbeing.

2 **Explain** the link between Singapore's location and the high levels of wellbeing experienced there.

Analyse

3 Use the 'Statistics database' resource on your obook pro to **describe** overall levels of wellbeing in Singapore.

4 **Examine** Source 8.

- a Describe the spatial pattern of the busiest shipping routes.
- b Design the course of a container ship that travels from Beijing, around the world, and back to Beijing, following the busiest shipping routes.
  - i Use an atlas to identify the ports and countries where your ship would dock.
  - ii Use the 'Statistics database' resource on your obook pro to explore the levels of wellbeing in the countries where your ship would dock.
- c What does this map tell you about the advantages of coastal nations in accessing trade?
- d How does this map help to explain the high levels of wellbeing in the United States, China and Singapore?

Apply

5 In small groups, brainstorm the ways that location influences a country's wellbeing. Source or create some images that illustrate your ideas and create a PowerPoint presentation or poster explaining these links.

6 Use the Vessel Finder website (a link is provided on your obook pro) to **investigate** the world's trading ships in real time. How many tankers are currently at Bonny, Nigeria? How many ships are in the Port of Singapore? Choose at least four countries to compare and present your findings in a table.

5A SKILLS IN CONTEXT

Prisoners of geography

Test me!
Once you've finished the topics in this section, test yourself with this quiz and find out which worksheet you should do.

The movement of goods and produce by sea puts cities situated on ports and trade routes at a distinct advantage when it comes to improving levels of wellbeing.

Singapore and Hong Kong, for example, are rated as having levels of development that place them in the world's top 20 nations. Both are small islands with few natural resources, but their location on major shipping routes and their large natural harbours have allowed them to build thriving economies.

Other nations find their geographical location puts them at a distinct disadvantage. Wellbeing in landlocked nations such as Mongolia, Afghanistan, Niger, Ethiopia and Bolivia is hindered by a lack of access to the sea. Virtually all goods into and out of these places must travel by land, making them significantly more expensive. This situation is compounded if goods must travel through neighbouring countries with poor transport infrastructure, corruption or conflict. A United Nations study revealed that landlocked countries do worse than their maritime neighbours in each aspect of the HDI ranking – income, life expectancy and education.

Source 10 Niger is one of the poorest nations in the world. It lies 600 kilometres from the nearest ocean. Virtually all goods and people must enter and leave the country by road. Less than 4000 kilometres of road in the country is paved.

KEY SKILL
Questioning & researching

Calculating a wellbeing index

A wellbeing index is a valuable tool that can be used to rank a group of countries being studied; for example, by placing them in order from the country with the highest wellbeing to the one with the lowest. Follow these steps to develop a wellbeing index for some of the world's landlocked countries:

Step 1 Draw up a grid with 10 columns using the headings set out in this table (these are your key indicators) and a row for each country you are ranking. This could be done on paper or using a spreadsheet in Microsoft Excel. Using a world map as a guide, list your countries in the first column. Select a range of landlocked countries from different continents for an even spread; for example, you could choose Bolivia, Mongolia, Niger and others.

Step 2 Rank the countries from the one with the lowest infant mortality rate to the one with the highest. For example, if you have 20 countries, the highest score would be 20 and the lowest would be 1. If two or more countries have the same infant mortality rate, they score the same ranking. Record these rankings in the column headed 'Infant mortality rate'. For those countries where the data is unavailable, do not include them in the ranking.

Step 3 Repeat this step for the 'Percentage of the population living below poverty line' (column 3).

Step 4 Repeat this step for 'Life expectancy' (column 4) – but this time, the highest life expectancy scores 1 and the lowest scores 20.

Step 5 Repeat for 'GDP per capita', where the highest is ranked 1 (column 5).

Step 6 Repeat for 'Access to clean water', where the highest is ranked 1 (column 6).

Step 7 Repeat for 'Literacy rate', where the highest is ranked 1 (column 7).

Step 8 Add the total score for each country and record this in the 'Total' column (column 8).

Step 9 Calculate the average score for each country – divide each country's total score by the number of indicators for which there is valid data. Record this average score in column 9.

Step 10 Rank the countries based on these average scores. The country with the lowest average score will be the first-ranked country. Record these ranks in the final column.

You have now completed a wellbeing index of countries based on these six indicators.

Country	Infant mortality rate	Percentage of population living below poverty line	Life expectancy	GDP per capita	Access to clean water	Literacy rate	Total	Average	Final rank
Bolivia									
Mongolia									
Niger									

Practise the skill

1 Calculate a wellbeing index for 20 of the world's landlocked countries (see Source 11).

2 **Describe** the level of wellbeing of people living in landlocked countries based on your wellbeing index.

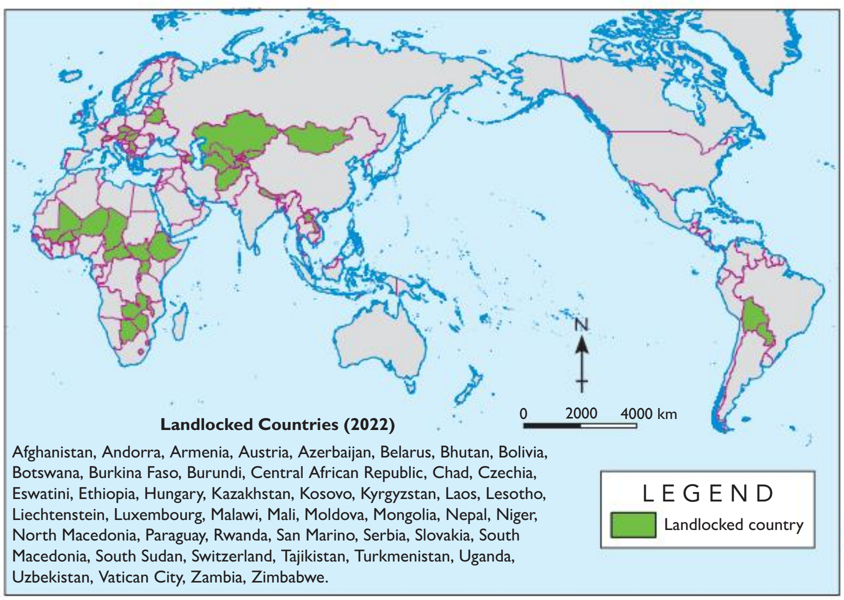
3 Explore the 'Statistics database' resource on your obook pro. List the three countries of the world with the lowest GDP rankings. How many of these are landlocked?

Extend your understanding

1 Calculate a wellbeing index for all the countries of South America, using the data from the 'Statistics database' resource on your obook pro. How do the two landlocked countries score on your index?

2 Bolivia has no coastline, but it maintains a navy of approximately 5000 sailors (see Source 12). **Investigate** the history of Bolivia's access to the Pacific Ocean to find out why this country has a navy.

WORLD: LANDLOCKED COUNTRIES



Source 11 Source: Oxford University Press

Source 12 Members of the Bolivian navy

Enlarged map World: Landlocked countries

Statistics database Compare world statistics

5.5 Human factors and wellbeing

Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» understand the reasons for, and consequences of, spatial variations in wellbeing as a result of human factors.

Quiz me!
A quick quiz on human factors and wellbeing

There are a combination of different social, economic, historical and political factors that affect wellbeing. These are known as 'human' factors. Changes in the size of populations, inequalities between different groups in society, political instability and conflict are all examples of human factors that affect wellbeing.

Demographics and changes in population

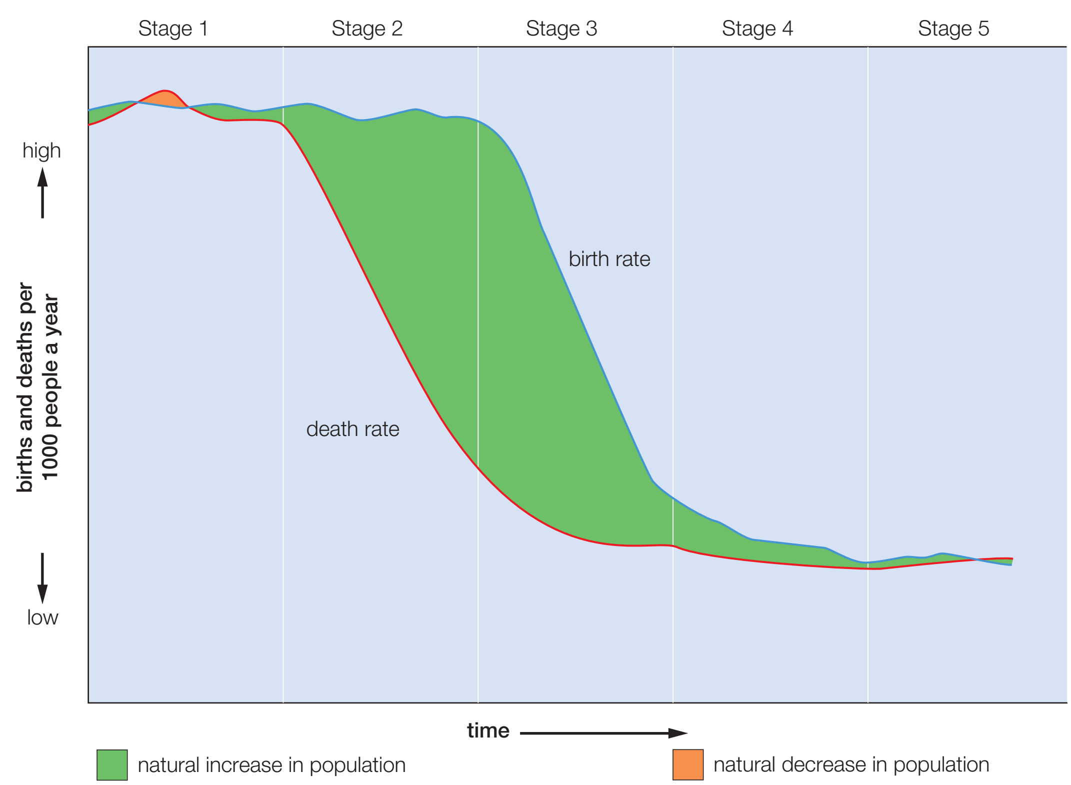
The number of people living in a country is always changing. In some countries the population is growing rapidly and in others it is declining. The rate at which populations change is related to changes in wellbeing.

Demographics is a term used by geographers to describe the quantifiable statistics of a population (or smaller groups within it). Looking at statistical data on population can help to identify trends in population patterns and predict future trends that could affect wellbeing within a country.

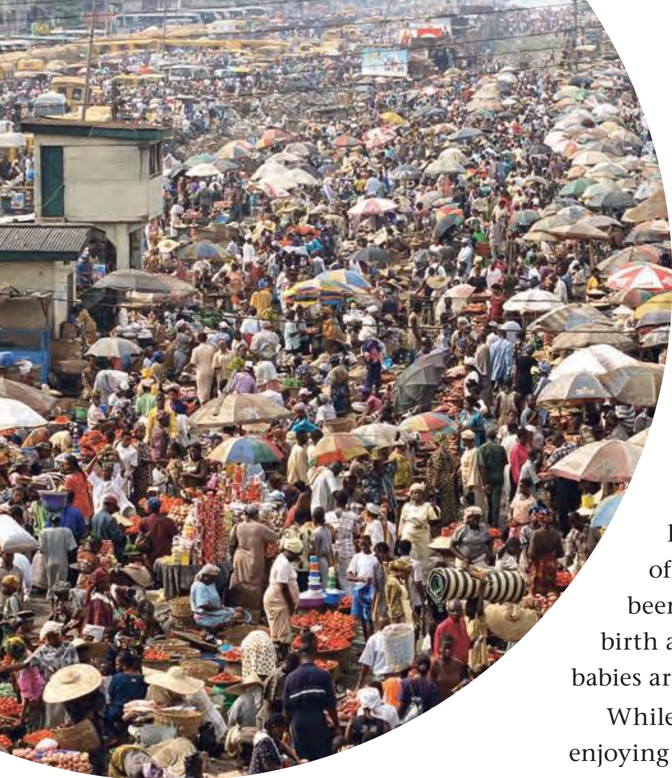
Historically, models of development have been used to describe how countries pass through a series of stages of population change over a long period of time. One such model is the **demographic transition model** (Source 1).

demographics
the statistical data of a population or of groups within a population, especially those related to average age, gender, birth and death

demographic transition model
a geographic model designed to help explain changes in populations over time, especially the transition from high birth and death rates to low birth and death rates as countries become more developed



Source 1 The demographic transition model



Source 2 The population of Nigeria increases by 2.5 per cent per year. Already home to 219 million people, its population is predicted to exceed 400 million by 2050. The population of its capital, Lagos, is set to increase from 15 million to over 30 million inhabitants in the same time period.

Looking at population trends

Many **developing countries** around the world today, particularly in Africa and Asia, are currently in stage 2 according to the demographic transition model. Death rates have fallen dramatically as better health care, sanitation and the provision of fresh water have improved the health and **life expectancy** of millions of people. Improvements have also been made in the care offered to women giving birth and their newly born children. Millions more babies are now surviving into adulthood as a result.

While these improvements have led to people enjoying longer, healthier lives, they have also created a problem. In these countries, there is currently a gap (or lag) between the fall in the death rate and a fall in the birth rate, so populations are growing rapidly (see Source 1). As a result, the population of the African continent, for example, is expected to double by 2050 and triple by 2100. This will create significant challenges in providing food, water and shelter, as well as access to education, employment and health facilities in many African countries.

In contrast, many **developed countries** in regions such as North America and Western Europe have reached stages 4 and 5 in their demographic transition. Birth rates have now fallen to such an extent that some of these countries are facing an overall decline in their populations. The reasons for this fall differ between countries, but there are some common factors. A general improvement in living conditions, high use of contraception and other family planning methods, high rates of education and work participation among females, and a movement from rural living to large cities all seem to be contributing factors to the falling birth rates.

developing countries
non-industrialised or newly industrialised countries with relatively fragile economies and a low standard of living that are not always able to support the needs of their citizens

life expectancy
a statistical measure of the average number of years a person in an area of population can expect to live from the year in which they were born

developed countries
industrialised countries with well-developed economies and a relatively high standards of living that are able to support the needs of their citizens

Source 3 A young family in Rwanda

Source 4 Sardinia, Italy, is home to the world's longest-living men.

CASE STUDY

China's 'one-child policy'

Perhaps the most famous attempt by a country to reduce its birth rate has been China's 'one-child policy'. Introduced in 1979, its aim was to reduce the rate of population growth in the world's most populous country. Couples in China were encouraged to have only one child, although the policy was unevenly applied across the country. One-child families were given better access to education, health care, jobs and houses, while those that had more children were fined and lost access to important social services.

The policy was successful in reducing China's growth rate and has likely resulted in 300 million fewer births since it was implemented in 1979. But there have also been a range of unintended consequences which are now causing concern.

Historically in China, people have preferred to have sons rather than daughters, as boys traditionally supported their parents in their old age. As parents could only have one child, many were ensuring that this was a boy. In some cases, this involved using an ultrasound machine to determine the sex of the foetus and terminating the pregnancy if it was a girl. In other cases, baby girls were abandoned or sent to orphanages. This has led to a large imbalance between the sexes in some parts of China, with 13 males born to every 10 females.

China's one-child policy was phased out in 2015 and couples are now encouraged to have more than one child. However, many continue to choose to have only one. Interestingly, in 2020 a non-profit organisation called World Population Balance launched a billboard movement in Vancouver, Canada, called 'One planet, one child'. It has since spread to cities in the United States. While not enforceable by law, the movement encourages couples to limit their families to one child to help prevent overpopulation.

Source 5 A poster promoting the one-child policy in Shenyang, Liaoning Province, China

5.5 Check your learning

Comprehend

1 **Explain** why it can be useful to analyse statistical data on population.

2 **Explain** why death rates have fallen in many developing countries over recent times.

3 In what ways would the demographic transition model (shown in Source 1) be useful for geographers studying population trends?

Analyse

4 Use the 'Statistics database' resource on your obook pro to find the birth and death rates for Australia, Afghanistan, Italy and Timor-Leste (East Timor).

a **Classify** these countries into two categories: those you would describe as having a rapidly expanding and stable population, and those which have a declining population. Explain your answers.

b **Describe** two challenges that urban planners in Italy and Timor-Leste might face because of their population demographic.

Apply

5 Reflect on China's one-child policy.

a What was the purpose of the one-child policy?

b **Evaluate** its results in terms of the demographic transition model.

Statistics database
Compare world statistics

5.6 Population growth and inequalities in wellbeing

Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» explain the relationship between the rate of population growth and human wellbeing.

fertility rate
a statistical measure of the average number of children that all women in a particular area of population will have throughout their lifetime

The populations of most countries around the world are increasing. In some countries, such as Australia and the United States, the population is growing slowly, and in other countries, such as Niger and Uganda, it is growing rapidly. Populations grow when the number of arrivals from births and immigration is greater than the number of departures from deaths and emigration. In most cases, the growth of a country's population is largely determined by the **fertility rate**.

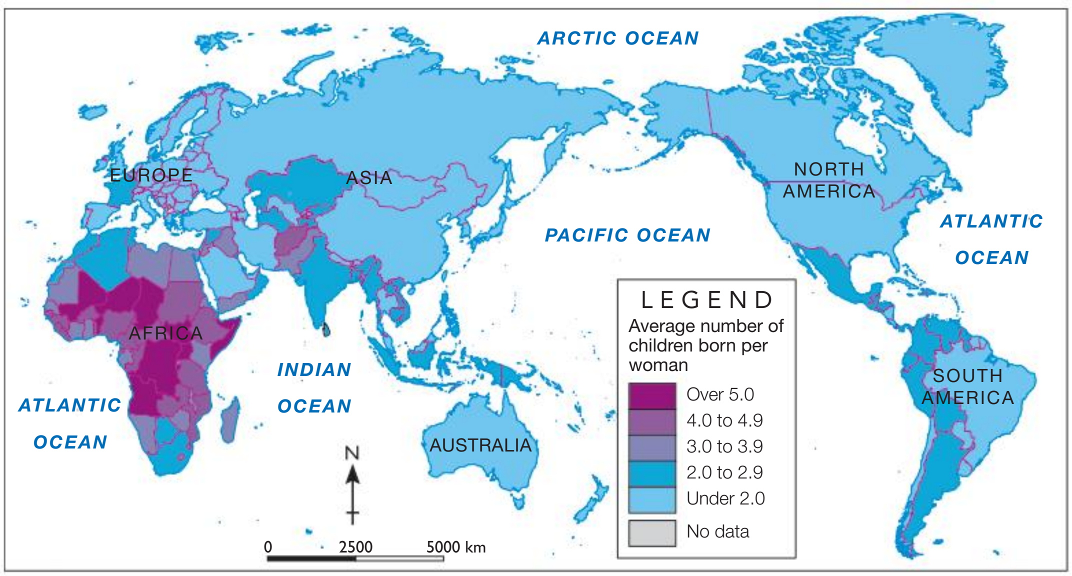
Many people living in countries with a rapidly growing population experience difficulties accessing vital services. These include access to education, food, safe drinking water, electricity, communications and transportation. Access to health services such as hospitals, doctors and medicines is also much lower than in countries with slowly growing or declining populations. Infant mortality (children under the age of 12 months dying) and maternal mortality (mothers dying due to pregnancy or childbirth problems) are much higher in rapidly growing populations. This is largely because many births in these countries are not attended by health professionals.

Source 6

> The countries in which poverty levels are the highest are generally those that have the most rapid increases in population and the highest fertility levels.
>
> United Nations Population Fund

Enlarged map
World: Total fertility rate

WORLD: TOTAL FERTILITY RATE



Source 7 Source: Oxford University Press

Gender inequality and fertility rates

Quiz me!
A quick quiz on population growth and inequalities in wellbeing

Many researchers believe that the lower status and education levels of women, particularly in developing countries, contributes to higher fertility rates, as women with lower levels of education tend to have more babies. In turn, higher fertility and larger families make it even more difficult for women to attend school or to participate in the workforce and in government.

Inequality between women and men is both a cause of inequality in wellbeing and one of its effects. Societies in which women have a lower status in education, employment and government tend to have lower levels of wellbeing than those with less or no gender discrimination.

Source 8 Niger is the only country in the world where the fertility rate is greater than 6. Of the 20 countries with the highest fertility rates, 19 are in Southern Africa (that is, the countries of Africa that lie south of the Sahara Desert). The other country is Afghanistan.

Source 9 Taiwan's fertility rate is 1.07, the world's lowest. At this rate, its population will soon begin to decline.

Changes in population structure

'Population structure' is a term used to describe the different groups in society that together make up the total population. Geographers often identify groups according to their age and sex.

KEY SKILL
Questioning & researching

Key skill worksheet
Questioning & researching: Interpreting and creating population pyramids

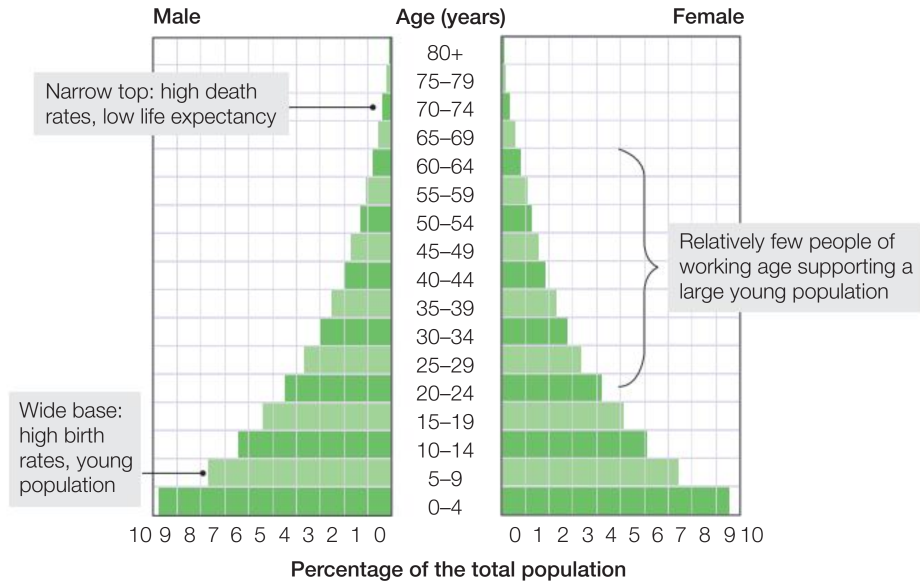
Interpreting and creating population pyramids

One of the most useful tools that geographers use to study a country's population structure is called a population pyramid. Population pyramids graph the population of a country in age segments (shown on the central axis). Males and females are shown separately – males are always shown on the left of the pyramid and females on the right.

Population pyramids help geographers identify trends in populations. The overall shape of the pyramid can indicate whether a country's population is growing, contracting or remaining relatively stable.

- Countries with a rapidly growing population tend to have pyramids that are wide at their base and narrow at their top (see Source 10).
- Countries with a population that is growing slowly have a different shaped pyramid in which the base is much narrower because birth rates and fertility rates are lower. In these countries, much of the population is of working age.
- Countries with a declining population tend to have a population pyramid with a much narrower base, because the birth rate is very low (see Source 11). There is usually a large group of people over 60 years of age, as life expectancy is high and death rates are low.
- To construct your own population pyramid using a set of data, log onto your obook pro and complete the key skill 'Interpreting and creating population pyramids'.

For more information on this skill, see page 19 of 'The geography toolkit'.



Source 10 The population pyramid for Niger – an example of a rapidly growing population

Source 11 The population pyramid for Taiwan – an example of a declining population

Weblink
Gap Minder

5.6 Check your learning

Comprehend

1 **Describe** the appearance of a population pyramid for a rapidly growing population.

2 Use Source 7 to find the fertility rate in Australia and three other countries with a similar fertility rate.

3 **Explain** the links between gender inequality and population growth in your own words.

Analyse

4 **Examine** Source 7.

a Use the PQE method to describe the pattern shown on this map.

b Compare this map to the world maps showing GDP per capita (Source 12 in topic 4.5 on page 140), life expectancy (Source 15 in topic 4.6 on page 143) and literacy rates (Source 19 in topic 4.7 on page 146). For each map, write a one-sentence summary of the similarities that you notice.

c Based on the summaries you have written, what is the most significant link between fertility rates and human wellbeing? Use evidence to support your answer.

Apply

5 Using the tools on the Gap Minder website, **create** a scatterplot (see topic 4.4 on page 139) showing the links between the HDI and fertility rates. Describe the correlation.

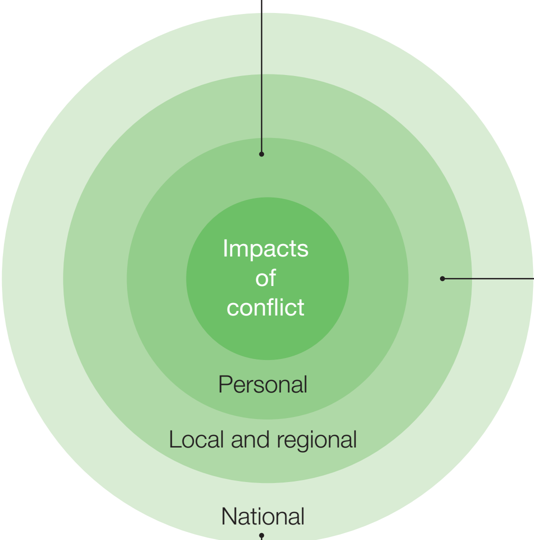
5.7 Conflict and inequalities in wellbeing

Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» explain how conflict and dispossession can affect wellbeing in a country.

Wars and civil conflicts are complex events. There is rarely, if ever, a single factor that causes them. A complex set of social, historic and physical factors lie behind one group of people or nation attacking another. The costs of war are immense, both in terms of human life and economic resources. Conflict at any scale and any intensity almost always has wide-ranging and long-term impacts on human wellbeing. Countries can take decades to recover from the impacts of war, preventing people from accessing opportunities to improve their wellbeing. Source 12 lists some of the common effects of high-intensity conflicts.



Impacts at the personal scale:

- reduced quality of life
- reduced ability to make choices about lifestyle
- loss of life
- impact on personal dignity and human rights
- impact on health and a reduced ability to access appropriate care
- loss of connection to other people in other regions
- individuals forced to fight
- targeted attacks on schools reduce the opportunity to have an education
- greater incidence of sexual violence.

Impacts at the local and regional scales:

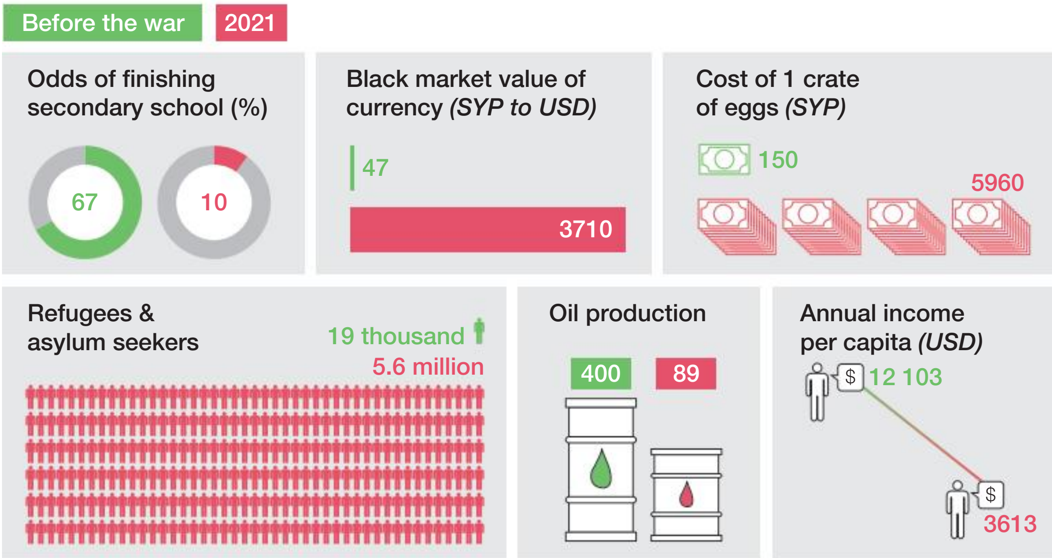
- decreased access to land, leading to food insecurity
- collapse of systems such as transport, food supply and local government
- fewer job opportunities
- breakdown in transport and communication networks
- displaced people put stress on infrastructure in neighbouring places, such as water and health systems
- unsustainable use of natural resources to fund the conflict
- loss of productivity due to labour shortages.

Impacts at the national scale:

- environmental degredation, e.g. forest clearing and landmines
- food insecurity and dependency on aid
- refugees flee to other countries
- decline in national economy and less public spending, as money is spent on conflict
- neighbouring nations often increase their military spending
- less spending on education (21 developing countries spend more on arms than on education)
- military spending results in less financial aid for developing countries.

Source 12 Impacts of high-intensity conflicts at the personal, local, regional and national scales

In the past century, there has not been a single year without war. Some are short-term battles between neighbouring states, but some can continue for decades. The current civil war in Syria, for example, has been fought continuously since 2011. In that time, more than 400 000 people have been killed, including over 20 000 children. Between 2010 and 2015, life expectancy in Syria fell by five years. Source 13 shows some of the other impacts of the war in Syria on social and economic life.



Source 13 Impact of the Syrian conflict on economic and social life (note that 'SYP' refers to Syrian pounds)

Conflict and refugees

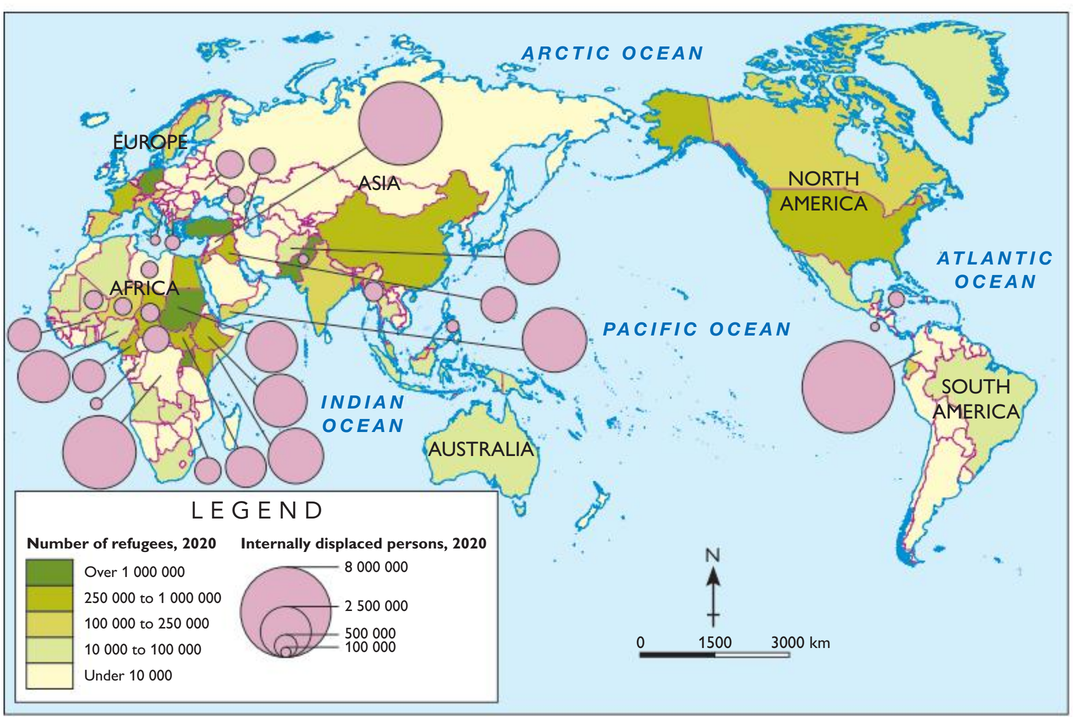
During periods of armed conflict, many people are forced to leave their homes and seek safety elsewhere. If they cross into another country, they are referred to as **refugees**. If they remain within their home country but away from where they live, they are called **internally displaced persons (IDPs)**.

The number of refugees and IDPs around the world changes constantly, depending on the number of places involved in conflicts. At the end of 2019, there were 79.5 million people who were forced to leave their homes because they feared for their safety. Over 45 million of these were IDPs. More than two-thirds of all refugees came from just five countries: Syria, Venezuela, Afghanistan, South Sudan and Burma.

refugees
people who travel from one country to another country to escape the effects of a natural disaster or conflict, or to avoid persecution

internally displaced persons (IDP)
people who have been forced to flee their home, but who remain within their own country's borders

WORLD: DESTINATION COUNTRIES OF REFUGEES AND IDPS, 2020



Source 14 This map shows the number of refugees and IDPs living in each country. Source: Oxford University Press

Enlarged map
World: Destination countries of refugees and IDPs, 2020

The wellbeing of refugees

Life as a refugee is hard. Many refugees have witnessed or been victims of persecution, torture or sexual violence. Many find that the country to which they have fled is unwilling or unable to offer them much assistance. In many cases they are forced to live in temporary camps set up by refugee agencies such as the United Nations and International Red Cross. These camps are often in places where essential services – such as a reliable water supply, food security, sanitation and health care – are very limited.

CASE STUDY

Life in the Dadaab refugee camp

The Dadaab refugee camp in Kenya is located approximately 100 kilometres from the Kenya–Somalia border. It is one of the world's largest refugee camps, housing more than 218 000 refugees – most of whom have fled conflict in nearby Somalia. For many children, this refugee camp has been their only home. Born in the camp, they have relied on its resources for food, water, shelter, education and health services for their entire life.

Kenyan authorities have expressed a desire to close the camp and to force the refugees to return to Somalia. This has created a climate of anxiety and fear among the refugees, who face a dangerous and uncertain future if they are forced to return.

Key skill worksheet
Interpreting & analysing: Collecting and evaluating geographical photos

Source 15 Women collect drinking water at the Dadaab refugee camp.

Explore it!
Take a virtual field trip to the Dadaab Refugee Camp in Kenya

5.7 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 **Identify** three impacts of war and conflict at the national scale.

Comprehend

2 **Explain** why wars and conflict often lead to people being displaced from their homes.

3 **Explain** why living conditions are often poor in refugee camps.

4 Use the information in Source 13 to **summarise** how conflict in Syria has affected wellbeing there.

Analyse

5 **Examine** Source 14.

a Identify the type of map shown in this source.

b Use the PQE method to describe the distribution of refugees and IDPs on a global scale.

c Infer (suggest) two reasons that help to explain the pattern you have described.

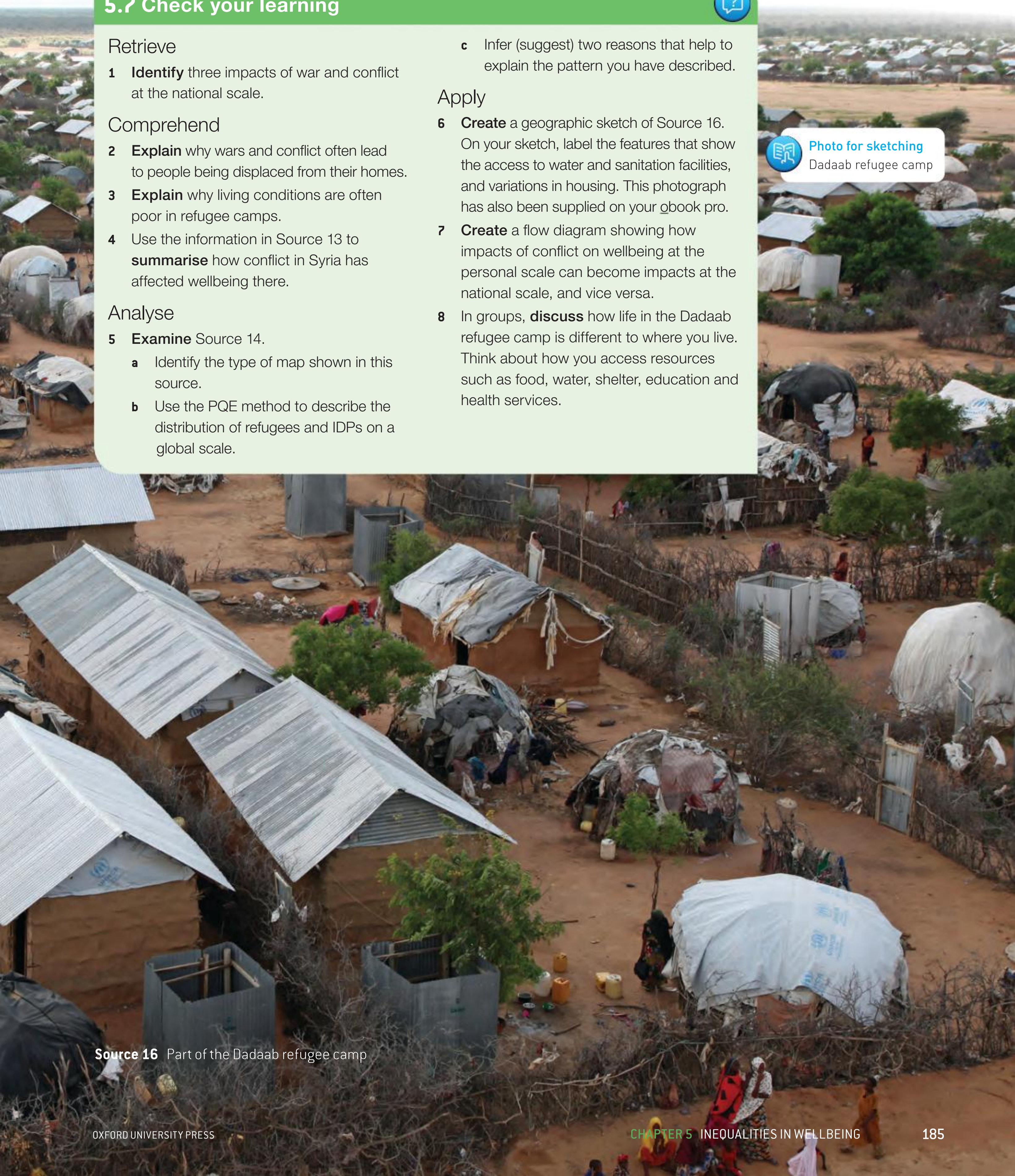
Apply

6 **Create** a geographic sketch of Source 16. On your sketch, label the features that show the access to water and sanitation facilities, and variations in housing. This photograph has also been supplied on your obook pro.

7 **Create** a flow diagram showing how impacts of conflict on wellbeing at the personal scale can become impacts at the national scale, and vice versa.

8 In groups, **discuss** how life in the Dadaab refugee camp is different to where you live. Think about how you access resources such as food, water, shelter, education and health services.

Photo for sketching
Dadaab refugee camp



Source 16 Part of the Dadaab refugee camp

5.8 Gender and inequalities in wellbeing

Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» explain the effects of gender inequality on wellbeing.

gender inequalities unequal treatment of individuals within a society based on their gender, whether male or female

Enlarged map
World: Gender parity for enrolments

Throughout much of the world today there are **gender inequalities**. For example, if you are a woman, you are more likely to be living in poverty and unable to read or write. You are more likely to be a refugee and subject to gender-based violence. You are also less likely to be in government, to be employed or to own property.

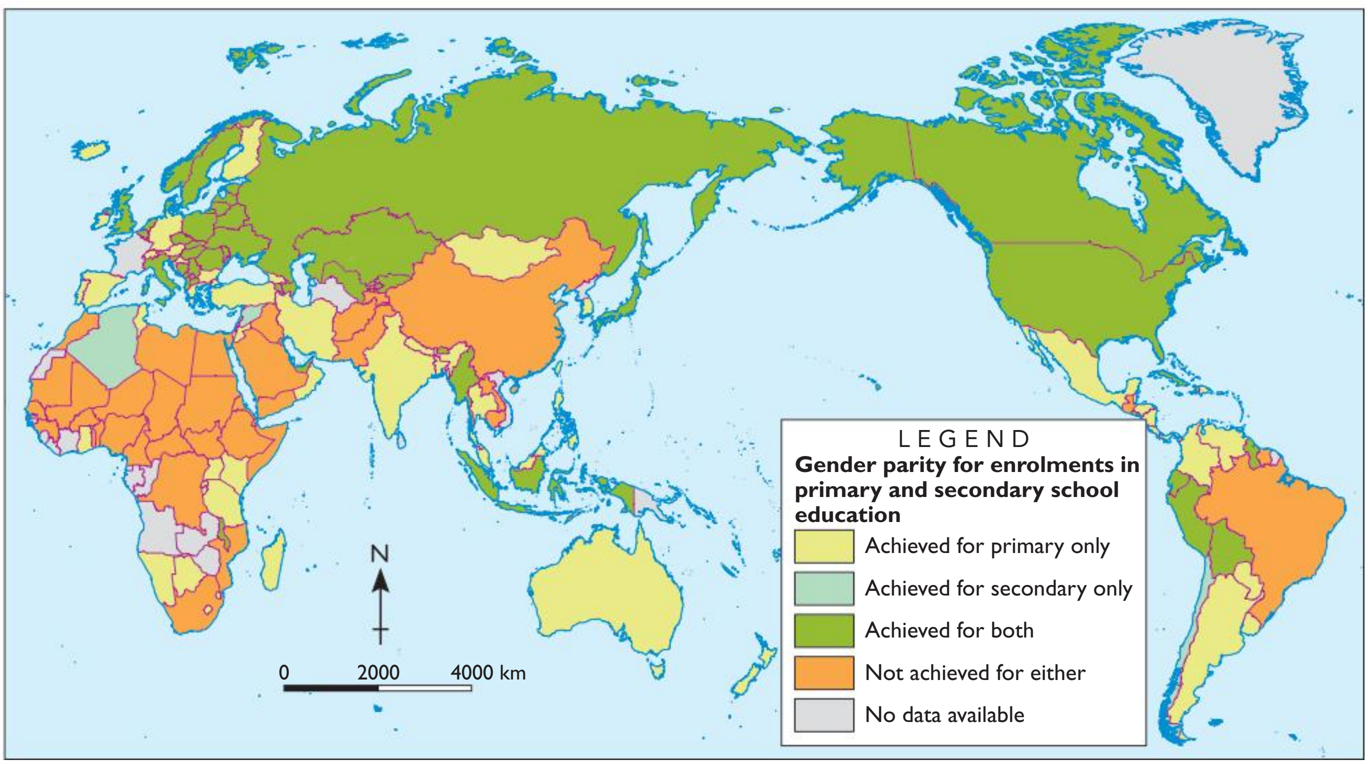
Geographers use three important indicators to assess gender equality in any given country. These are women's participation in education, in the workforce, and in government. These three things are essential to raising the status of women and providing opportunities for better jobs, female-friendly government policies and higher levels of wealth.

Gender inequality in education

Globally, three-quarters of all primary school-aged children with no access to school are girls. In fact, two-thirds of adults unable to read or write are women. In many countries around the world, boys outnumber girls in schools (see Source 17). This gap is a reflection of gender-based discrimination in societies where sons are often considered more important than daughters.

Poverty also has an effect on this inequality. In India, for example, girls from poorer families often attend inferior schools that teach only basic literacy and numeracy (that is, if they attend school at all). Higher levels of schooling cost money, and poor families are more willing to invest in their sons than their daughters.

WORLD: GENDER PARITY (EQUALITY) FOR ENROLMENTS IN PRIMARY AND SECONDARY EDUCATION



Source 17

Source: Oxford University Press

Gender inequality and job opportunities

In virtually every country, men are much more likely to own land than women are. Women also earn less, as in every country men are typically paid more money than women are. This is known as the **gender pay gap**. In 2021, for example, the Australian Workplace Gender Equality Agency reported that, on average, Australian men earn 13.4 per cent more than women per week.

gender pay gap
the difference between the amounts of money paid to women and men, often for doing the same work

Global studies into the gender pay gap reveal that, on average, women are paid 63 per cent of what men are paid. These studies have also found that, in most places around the world, female participation rates in the paid workforce are much lower than men's.

One of the main factors that contributes to this is the traditional role of women working in the home. Around the world, many women raise children and undertake an enormous amount of domestic work for long periods of time, while their male partner remains a part of the paid workforce.

Additionally, in many of the countries where women have low participation rates in the paid workforce, they are instead doing agricultural work. A large number of women are not paid for this work. Source 18 shows the percentage of women in the workforce who work in agriculture. For many women in developing countries, the work involves long hours every day on family farms that produce just enough food to support their families. They also perform most of the domestic chores, such as collecting wood and water, caring for children and preparing food.

Source 18 Percentage of employed women who work in agriculture

	1991	2000	2010	2019
World	43	39	32	25
High-income countries	6	6	3	2
Middle-income countries	51	46	37	28
Low-income countries	74	74	69	63

Source 19 In Burundi, 94 per cent of women in the workforce are doing agricultural work.

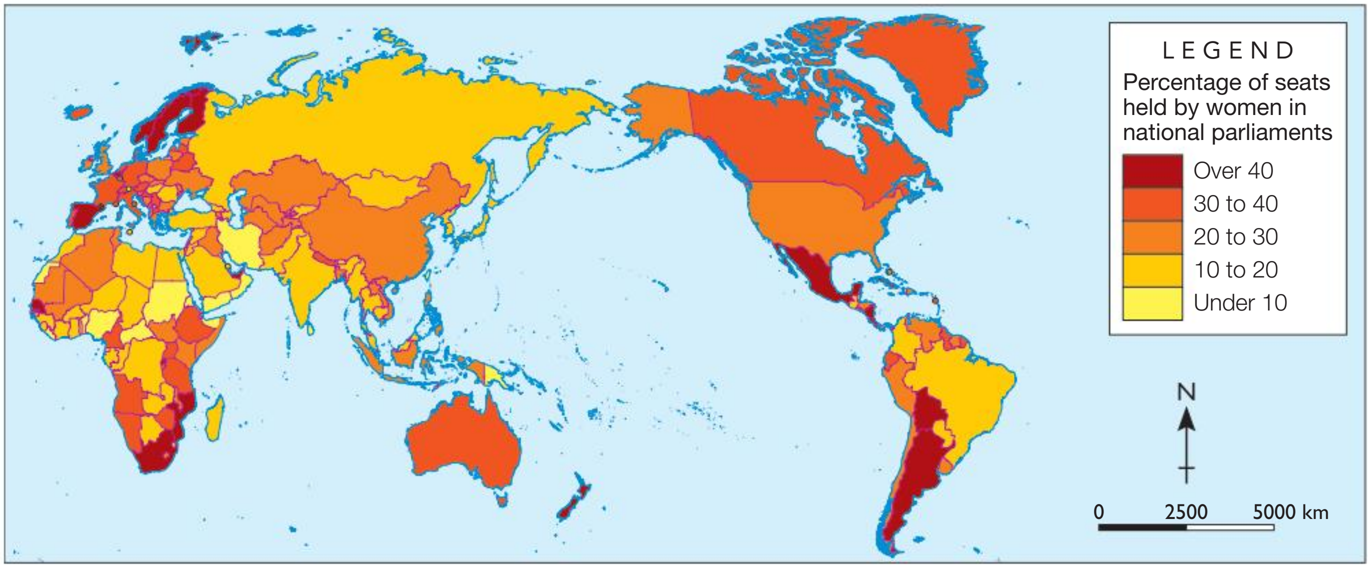
Quiz me!
A quick quiz on gender and inequalities in wellbeing

Enlarged map
World: Percentage of women in national governments

Gender inequality in government

There are only four countries in the world in which more than half of the representatives in national parliaments are women (see Source 20). Globally, women make up only 25 per cent of the world's elected officials; 119 countries have never had a female leader; and there are 27 countries where women make up less than 10 per cent of parliamentarians. Low levels of representation in government can make it difficult for gender equality laws – such as universal education – to be discussed and enacted.

WORLD: PERCENTAGE OF WOMEN IN NATIONAL GOVERNMENTS



Source 20

Source: Oxford University Press

5.8 Check your learning

Retrieve

1. **Define** the term 'gender inequality' in your own words.
2. How do gender inequalities affect the wellbeing of women? In your answer, list some examples of the things women often miss out on as a result of these inequalities.

Analyse

3. **Examine** Source 17.
   a. Identify the regions of the world where parity (equal numbers) of male and female students has been achieved for both primary and secondary education.
   b. Use the map in Source 7 in topic 5.6 on page 179 to identify the fertility rates in the regions you listed in question 2a.
   c. Describe the relationships you see between education parity (equality) and fertility.
4. Using the sources provided in this topic, **compare** the regions of Europe and Southern Africa in terms of:
   a. parity (equality) in education
   b. the percentage of women in government.

Apply

5. Look at the data in Source 18.
   a. **Identify** three trends you notice.
   b. Decide what sort of graph would best represent this data, and then **create** your graph.
6. a. **Investigate** gender equality and inequality in Australia. Focus on issues such as employment, wage levels, number of seats in parliament and education.
   b. Present your findings as an extended response. Remember to acknowledge the sources of the data you use.

5.9 Technology and inequalities in wellbeing

Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» describe the technological causes of inequalities in wellbeing between countries.

Quiz me!
A quick quiz on technology and inequalities in wellbeing

'Technology' is a very broad term used to describe a range of different tools, machinery, techniques and systems to solve a problem or achieve a goal. From the times of earliest human societies, people have strived to find new and better ways of growing food, accessing water, treating medical problems and improving sanitation. All of these technological developments were designed to improve wellbeing.

Over the past 200 years, there have been many significant advances in technology that have fundamentally changed the way we live and work. These advances have had enormous impacts on societies. Some of the biggest changes occurred during the Agricultural Revolution of the eighteenth century and the Industrial Revolution of the nineteenth century.

These revolutions, however, were concentrated in Europe and the United States, and their impacts were greatest in the parts of the world now known as the developed world. The people of Europe may have been living with the benefits of these revolutions for generations; but in many Asian and African countries, people are still using farming methods not seen on Europe's farms for hundreds of years.

CASE STUDY

Differences in dairy farming technology

Differences in the availability and use of technology between the developed world and the developing world can be seen clearly in these examples of dairy farming in Laos and New Zealand.

The man shown in Source 22 is a dairy farmer in Laos. He is bringing his two cows to a small shed near his house. He will spend the next hour or so milking the cows by hand into a bucket. This will provide enough milk for his family to be able to make their evening and morning meals. The cows will stay in the shed overnight and be milked again in the early morning. During the day they will be able to wander across the countryside but will be accompanied by one of the children of the family, whose daily task is to make sure the cows are fed, keeping the child out of school. The cows' droppings will be collected and used for fertiliser, fuel for the cooking fire, or mixed with straw and used for mudbricks. On some days, the larger cow will be used on the family rice field to pull a plough through the mud.

Source 21 shows a dairy farm in New Zealand. The workers ride motorbikes to herd the cows into a mechanised milking shed. Suction cups are attached to the cows' udders and the milk is pumped into large storage tanks ready for collection by a refrigerated milk tanker later in the day. Because the milking is mechanised, the farmer and one other worker are able to milk 1200 cows twice a day, producing much more milk than the farmer and his family can consume. The milk is sold to the local dairy factory, where it is treated and used to supply the needs of the people in towns and cities throughout the South Island of New Zealand, as well as being exported to other countries.

Source 21 A milk tanker arrives at a New Zealand dairy farm.

Source 22 A dairy farmer in Laos

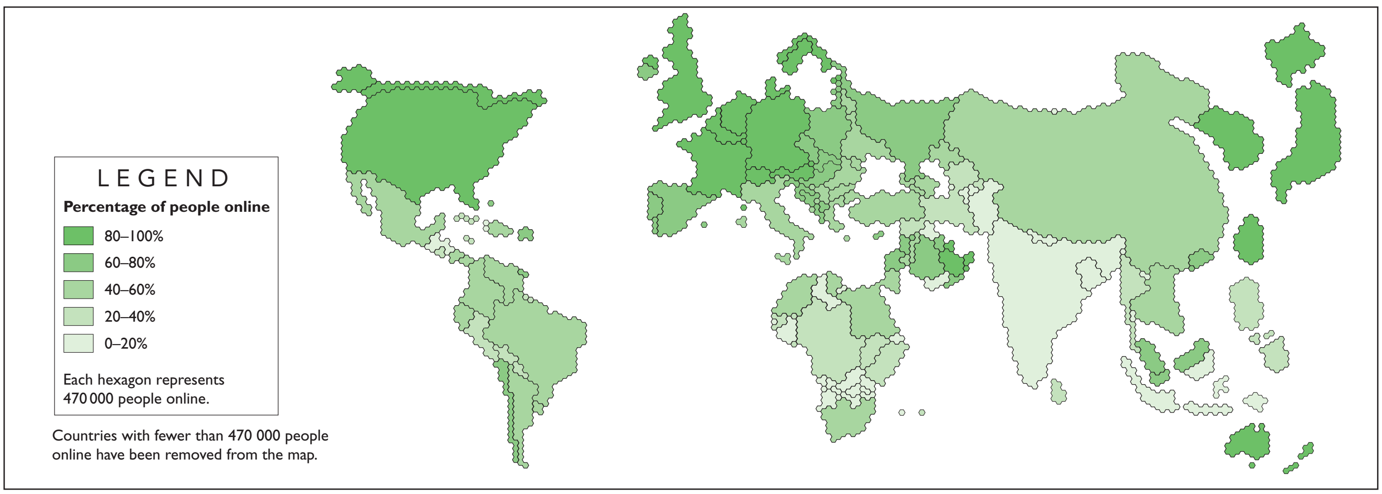
Information and communications technology (ICT) and wellbeing

cartogram
a type of map that is distorted to show a representation of statistical data (e.g. access to water, rates of obesity, etc.), rather than land area

Technology is always moving forward. We are currently experiencing a kind of 'information revolution', in which the growth and spread of ideas and knowledge is occurring much more rapidly than at any time in the past. To a large degree this is being fuelled by advances in information and communications technology (ICT).

ICT has the potential to improve the wellbeing of people throughout the world. Already, the information revolution has made it easier for businesses on opposite sides of the world to work with each other. The spread and influence of the information revolution throughout the world, though, remains uneven (see Source 23). Rather than decrease inequalities in wellbeing, this uneven access has the potential to increase it. For example, when the COVID-19 pandemic began in 2020, the learning of 1.5 billion people in more than 190 countries was disrupted, as students were required to stay home to slow the spread of the disease. For most students, this meant a shift to online learning. In developed countries, more than 90 per cent of students could continue their learning in this way. However, almost half of all students in developing countries could not.

Source 23 This stylised **cartogram** shows the number and percentage of people online in each country. Countries have been scaled proportionally to the number of people online in that country.



Source: Oxford University Press/Oxford Internet Institute

5.9 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 In your own words, **define** technology.

2 **Identify** the areas in which humans seek to improve wellbeing through the use of technology.

3 How has the spread of the internet both reduced and increased some inequalities in wellbeing?

Analyse

4 **Compare** Sources 21 and 22.
  a Distinguish between the levels of technology used by these two dairy farms.
  b Explain the reasons for the different levels of technology.

5 **Examine** Source 23.
  a Describe the general pattern of internet use shown on this cartogram (see topic 4.3 on page 136 for a guide to cartograms).
  b Compare this cartogram to Source 7 in topic 4.3 (page 136), which shows HDI rankings around the world. What links do you notice between the HDI rankings and internet activity?
  c Infer (suggest) what causes these links.

Apply

6 In pairs, **evaluate** the strengths and weaknesses of technology as a tool for improving wellbeing. Share your response with the rest of the class.

5.10 Politics and inequalities in wellbeing

Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» explain how politics causes variations in human wellbeing.

'Politics' is a term used to describe all the activities associated with governing a country or region. Nelson Mandela (1918–2013) – South Africa's first democratically elected president – was a passionate leader, activist and politician. Mandela valued the ideals of democracy and freedom, and fought for a society 'in which all persons live together in harmony and with equal opportunities'.

In most countries, governments are largely responsible for creating a society where the ideals of harmony and equality can exist. Some governments strive for this, while others do not. Governments wield enormous power over their citizens, and levels of wellbeing are heavily influenced by the values and actions of governments.

The Universal Declaration of Human Rights

On 10 December 1948, the United Nations adopted the Universal Declaration of Human Rights. After World War II, the newly formed United Nations had decided to establish an international agreement setting out basic human rights that should be made available to all. The idea was that those in power would be responsible for ensuring that the human rights of their citizens were protected to the best of their government's ability. This was the first time in history that the nations of the world had listed the basic human rights to which all human beings are entitled.

Source 24 In several countries, including South Sudan, children are forced into conflict and to become child soldiers. Some groups, including Amnesty International, argue that 'the right to refuse to kill' should be added to the list of basic human rights.

Quiz me!
A quick quiz on politics and inequalities in wellbeing

The Declaration now underpins many laws to protect basic human rights all around the world. These rights include:

- the right to: equality, life, freedom, security, equality before the law, a fair public hearing, be presumed innocent until proven guilty, move freely, seek asylum in another country, marriage, family, own property, freedom of opinion, peaceful assembly, free elections, social security, desirable work, rest, adequate living standards, education, and share in scientific advancements
- freedom from: discrimination, slavery, torture, arbitrary arrest, interference with privacy, religious persecution, and state or personal interference in the above rights.

Government corruption

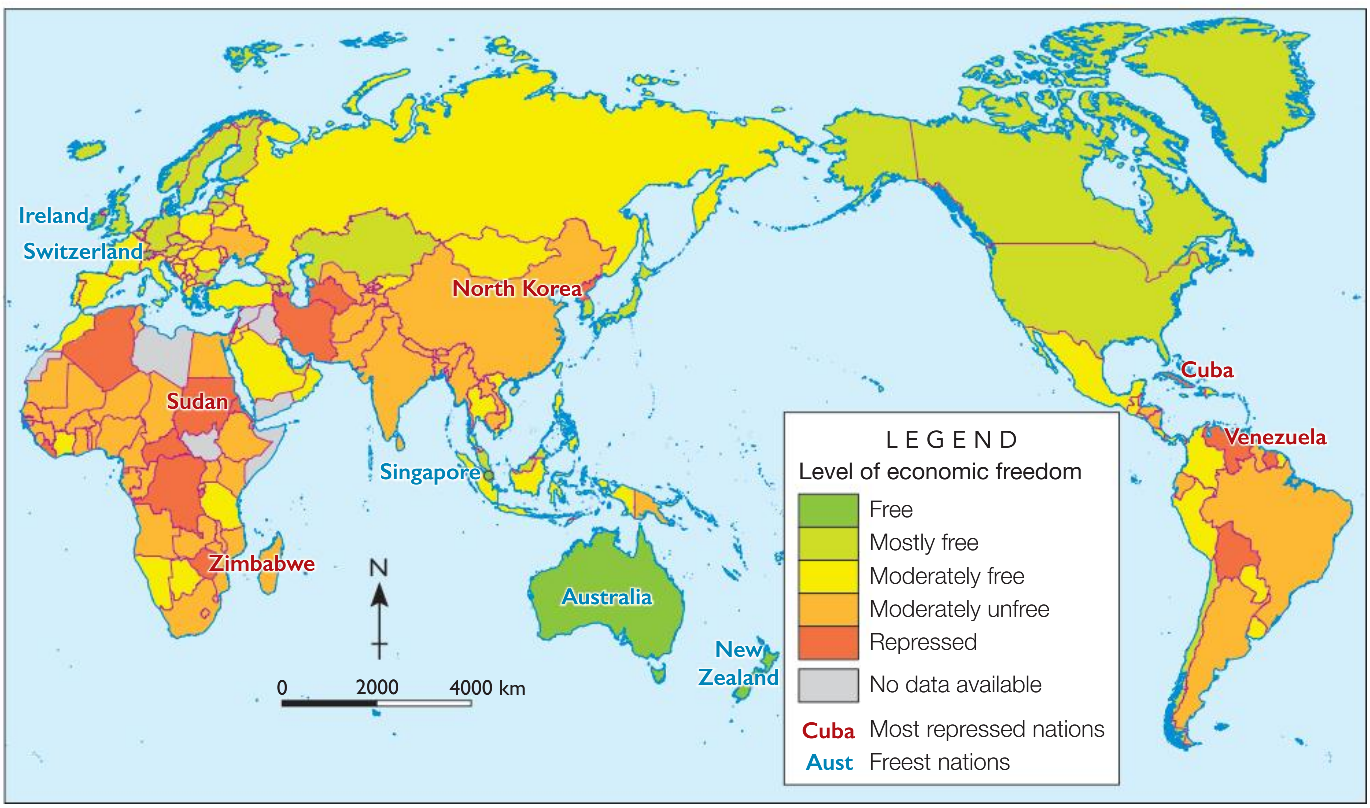
Many researchers believe that the abuse of political power is the leading cause of poverty and inequality in the world today. In particular, they point to the corruption that exists in many developing nations, where those in power use their position for their own benefit rather than the benefit of the country.

Source 25 ranks the countries of the world according to the level of economic freedom. This data is compiled by scoring nations on various indicators, including the level of corruption, labour freedoms and property rights.

Government corruption usually leads to the repression or punishment of any individual or group that speaks out against the government. In some cases, the struggle between different political groups within a country can result in civil war and ongoing conflict – an example of this is the current civil war in Syria. Along with environmental degradation, corruption and conflict are the two factors most likely to halt or reverse upward trends in improved wellbeing, affecting people's health, education and economic activity.

Enlarged map
World: Levels of economic freedom

WORLD: LEVELS OF ECONOMIC FREEDOM



Source 25

Source: Oxford University Press

Source 26 North Korea is one of the world's most repressed nations. It is very difficult to access data for North Korea, but it is estimated that more than a quarter of North Koreans live below the poverty line. Despite this, it is believed that up to one-third of the annual budget is spent on the military under a policy known as *songun*, or putting the military first.

5.10 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 What ideals did Nelson Mandela value in a society?

2 After what major conflict did the UN establish the Universal Declaration of Human Rights?

Comprehend

3 **Explain** how governments influence levels of wellbeing.

Analyse

4 How can political corruption within a country affect the wellbeing of its people?

5 **Examine** Source 25.

a Using the PQE method, describe the pattern of economic freedom and repression globally.

b Infer (suggest) two reasons why Australia and New Zealand have economic freedom.

Apply

6 **Discuss** with a partner how the Universal Declaration of Human Rights (available on your obook pro) would influence wellbeing if the rights set out were adopted as law in every country in the world.

7 Using Source 25 and an atlas, select four countries from each of the five levels of economic freedom to complete the following tasks:

a Use Source 7 on page 136 to **determine** the HDI ranking of each of these 20 countries, from low to very high.

b **Construct** a scatterplot (see topic 4.4 on page 139) comparing the level of economic freedom in each country with its HDI ranking.

c **Describe** the correlation (or relationship) between the two factors.

Additional resource
Universal Declaration of Human Rights

5B SKILLS IN CONTEXT

Demographic change in Japan

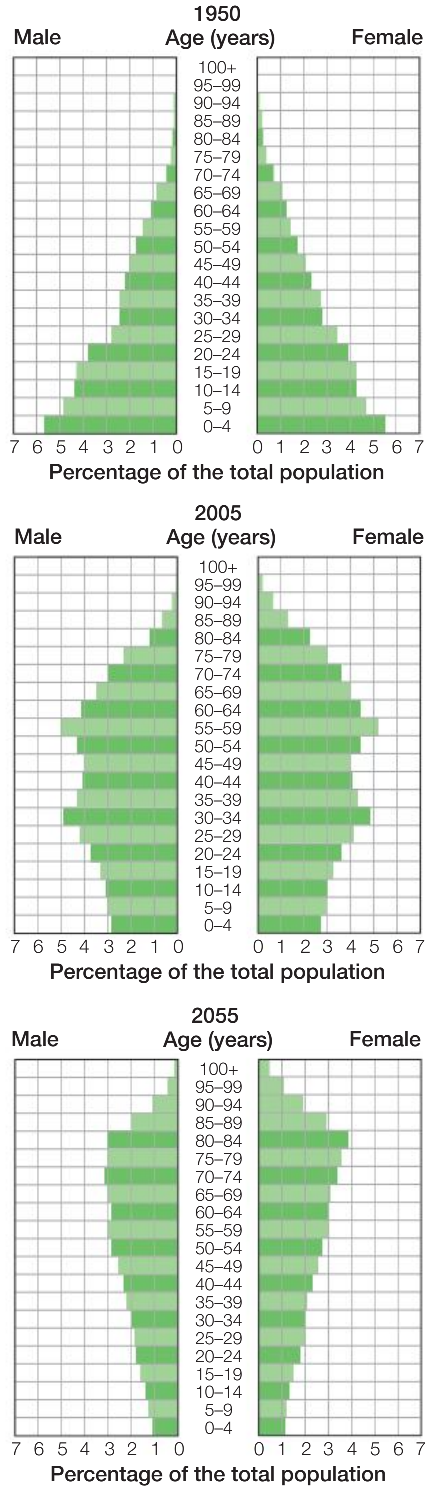
Test me!
Once you've finished the topics in this section, test yourself with this quiz and find out which worksheet you should do.

The population of Japan has undergone significant change over the past 70 years. In 1950, 7 per cent of all Japanese people were over the age of 60 and life expectancy was 59 years. By 2020, more than one-quarter were over 60 and life expectancy was one of the highest in the world at more than 84 years.

There are many factors responsible for these changes. At the end of World War II, returning soldiers were keen to marry and start families. The result was a 'baby boom', where the birth rate rose dramatically for about five years. When this group of children reached working age in the 1970s and 1980s, they brought about an economic transformation that made Japan one of the world's wealthiest countries. This wealth was used to improve wellbeing and has also improved life expectancy.

The other important demographic change has been a fall in the fertility rate. Japanese families are now among the world's smallest. This has led to an overall decline in the size of the population, which currently sits at around 125 million. Researchers estimate that the population will fall to just over 100 million by 2050. This has obvious implications for the economy and for the care of the growing elderly population.

Source 27 As the number of elderly people increases and the number of workers who can look after them decreases, Japan's engineers have developed robotic carers. It is hoped robots like Robear, which is still in the trial phase, can provide part of the solution.



Source 28 Population pyramids for Japan, showing the population in 1950 (top) and 2005 (centre), and the expected population in 2055 (bottom)

Source 29 Key population indicators for Japan, 1960–2020

	1960	1965	1970	1975	1980	1985	1990	1995	2000	2005	2010	2015	2020
Life expectancy	67.8	70.3	72.1	74.4	76.2	78.3	79.0	79.8	81.3	82.3	83.2	83.8	84.6
Fertility rate	2.00	1.98	2.10	2.00	1.78	1.72	1.57	1.41	1.32	1.30	1.36	1.45	1.38
Total population (millions)	92	97	NA	NA	NA	119	122	124	125	126	126	126	125
Population aged 60+ (%)	5.6	6.1	6.8	7.7	8.9	10.1	11.8	14.2	16.9	19.6	22.4	26.0	28.0

Source 30 Birth and death rates for Japan, 1963–2018

	1963	1968	1973	1978	1983	1988	1993	1998	2003	2008	2013	2018
Birth rate per 1000 population	17.11	17.79	19.03	15.21	12.81	11.19	9.87	9.44	8.92	8.20	8.20	7.40
Death rate per 1000 population	7.38	6.90	6.62	6.25	6.27	6.46	7.51	7.01	7.88	9.14	10.10	11.00

KEY SKILL
Questioning & researching

Constructing a multiple-line graph

Multiple-line graphs are useful tools for displaying and comparing a range of data. They are constructed in much the same way as normal line graphs, but extra lines are added to show the trends in multiple data. Follow these steps to construct a multiple line graph:

Step 1 Construct a set of axes. As line graphs usually show change over time, the years are commonly placed on the horizontal axis (*x*-axis). Using an even scale, such as 1 centimetre for every 10 years, divide and label the *x*-axis. Now draw the vertical axis (*y*-axis). Ensure that the *y*-axis has a scale that suits all the data that you are plotting and will fit the highest number in the data set.

Step 2 Plot the first set of data using a coloured dot. Join these dots with a neat line, using the same colour. At the end of the line, write the title of the data. Alternatively, use a legend.

Step 3 Repeat step 2 for each set of data. Use a different colour for each line.

Step 4 Give your completed graph a title.

Practise the skill

1 **Create** a multiple-line graph showing the changes in life expectancy, total population and the percentage of the population aged over 60 in Japan between 1960 and 2020.

2 **Describe** the patterns shown in your completed graph.

3 **Describe** how these changes are reflected in the three population pyramids in Source 28.

4 **Create** a multiple line graph showing the changes in birth and death rates between 1963 and 2018.

5 **Compare** your completed graph with the demographic transition model in Source 1 in topic 5.5 on page 176. In which stage of demographic transition is Japan currently?

Extend your understanding

1 Japan is not the only country with a declining and ageing population. **Investigate** population growth to make a list of 10 countries with less than 1 per cent population growth.

2 Select one of these countries (other than Japan). **Investigate** the structure of the population of this country. A useful starting point is the CIA World Factbook, available online.

3 **Compare** (explain the similarities and differences between) your chosen country with Japan in terms of:

a fertility

b population over 60 years of age

c the reasons for population change.

5 CHAPTER REVIEW

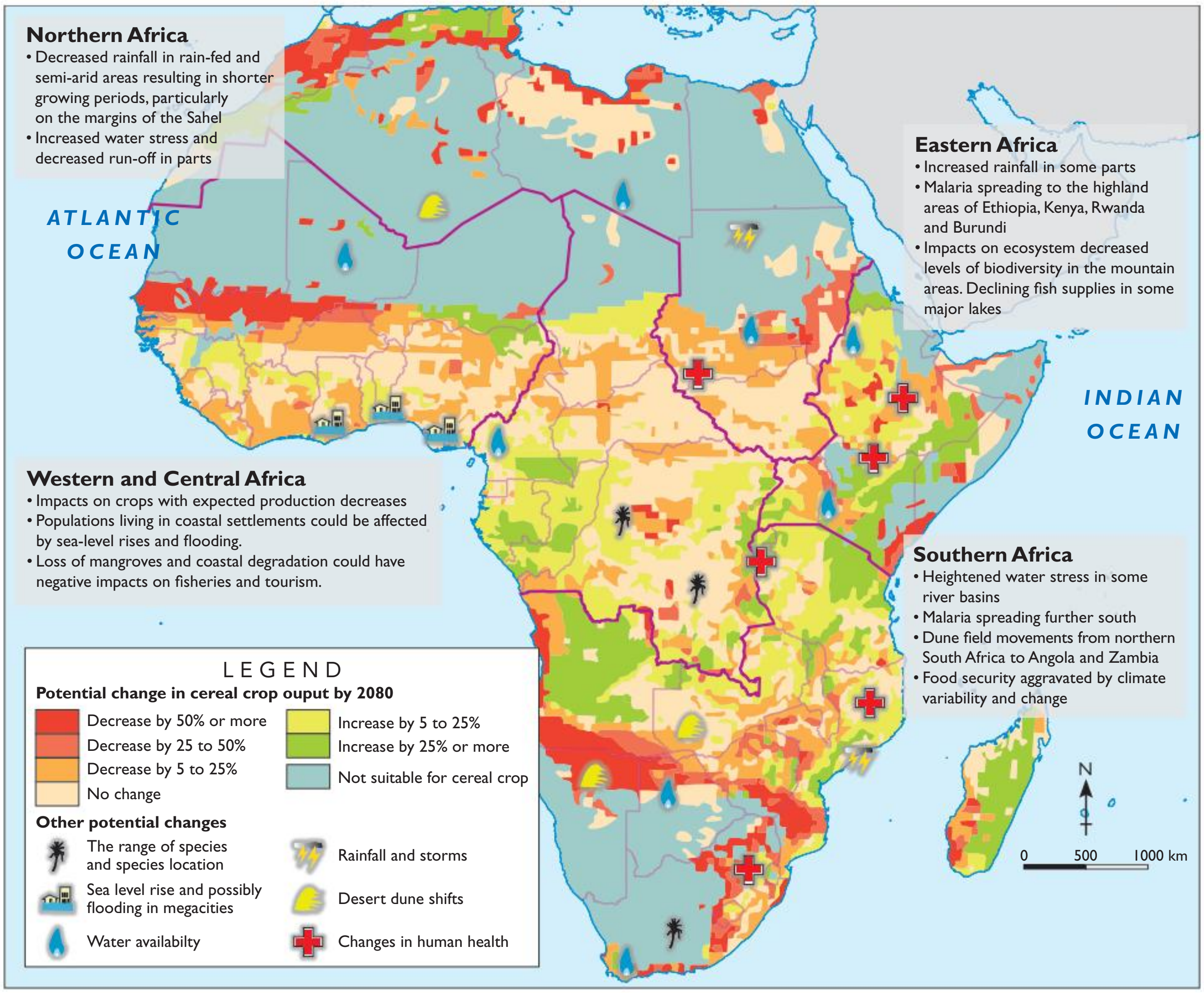
Review activity

Use your analysis skills to examine Source 31 and answer the questions that follow. There is a world map located at the back of the book that you can use to help you identify individual countries in Source 31.

The influence of climate change

Many regions of the world have seen a dramatic improvement in human wellbeing over the past few decades. Infant survival, literacy rates and life expectancy have all increased. Climate change, however, threatens to stall and even reverse many of the gains made in these areas. Climate change is a change in global or regional climate patterns attributed largely to the increased levels of atmospheric carbon dioxide produced by the use of fossil fuels.

AFRICA: CURRENT AND POSSIBLE FUTURE IMPACTS OF CLIMATE CHANGE



Source 31

Source: Oxford University Press

The main threats from climate change are the greater risks posed to people's health from rising temperatures and the expected fall in food production which may, in turn, lead to lower levels of food security.

1 **Identify** the type of scale used on the map in Source 31. (1 mark)

2 **Identify** the African countries most at risk from sea level rise. (3 marks)

3 Examine the potential changes in cereal crop output.
   a **Describe** the areas of Africa that are likely to see the greatest reduction in cereal crop output by 2080. (2 marks)
   b **Describe** the areas that are likely to see an increase in cereal crop output by 2080. (2 marks)
   c **Predict** how a change in cereal crop output will impact on food security and the distribution of population in Africa. (4 marks)

4 **Identify** the African country that you believe will have its wellbeing most negatively impacted by climate change by 2080. **Predict** and **describe** these impacts, using information from Source 31 to support your answer. (8 marks)

(Total: 20 marks)

Chapter checklist

Now that you have completed this chapter, reflect on your ability to do the following:

	I can do this.	I cannot do this yet.
Identify and describe the main factors that cause variations in wellbeing.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 5.1, page 166.
Understand the reasons for, and consequences of, spatial variations in wellbeing as a result of environmental factors.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 5.2, page 168.
Explain how availability of natural resources causes variations in human wellbeing.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 5.3, page 170.
Explain how location causes variations in human wellbeing.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 5.4, page 172.
Understand the reasons for, and consequences of, spatial variations in wellbeing as a result of human factors.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 5.5, page 176.
Explain the relationship between the rate of population growth and human wellbeing.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 5.6, page 179.
Explain how conflict and dispossession can affect wellbeing in a country.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 5.7, page 182.
Explain the effects of gender inequality on wellbeing.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 5.8, page 186.
Describe the technological causes of inequalities in wellbeing between countries.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 5.9, page 189.
Explain how politics causes variations in human wellbeing.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 5.10, page 191.

Check your Student obook pro for these digital resources and more:

Student book questions
Chapter 5

Key skill worksheet
Communicating:
Chapter 5

Quizlet
Play a game of Quizlet on Inequalities in wellbeing.

Chapter review quiz
Chapter 5

CHAPTER 6

Improving wellbeing

All over the world, the wellbeing of millions of people is slowly improving. From local projects to global initiatives, inequalities between rich and poor in many areas are being addressed.

More than a billion people have moved above the poverty line in the past 25 years and the same number have gained access to safe drinking water. Millions of girls have attended school for the first time, millions more babies have survived beyond their first year of life, and the rates of infection for many deadly diseases have fallen. These improvements are due to the hard work of many different organisations and agencies – from small not-for-profit groups to huge multinational non-government organisations such as Médecins Sans Frontières.

Thanks to the financial support of government grants, contributions from the business community and donations from ordinary citizens, these organisations are able to continue their work – improving levels of human wellbeing for those who need it most.

Source 1 Five-year-old Souffrance receives medical aid at a measles clinic run by the international aid organisation Médecins Sans Frontières (Doctors Without Borders) near her home in the Democratic Republic of the Congo.

6A
Who is working to improve wellbeing?

6B
How is wellbeing improving?

6.1 Improving wellbeing

Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» identify the United Nations Sustainable Development Goals and their relationship to human wellbeing.

Sustainable Development Goals (SDGs)
a set of 17 goals developed by the UN in 2015 that are designed to end poverty, protect the Earth from unsustainable development, and improve the wellbeing of all people by 2030

wellbeing
the ability of human beings to access the things they need in order to live happy and healthy lives (e.g. food, water, education, safety and security)

indicators
something that helps show the state of a thing; good indicators are measurable

Quiz me!
A quick quiz on improving wellbeing

At a meeting of the United Nations (UN) in 2015, representatives of all 193 member countries present agreed to a set of goals called the **Sustainable Development Goals (SDGs)** (2015–30). These followed on from the Millennium Development Goals (1990–2015), which helped to lift more than a billion people out of extreme poverty.

The Sustainable Development Goals (2015–2030)

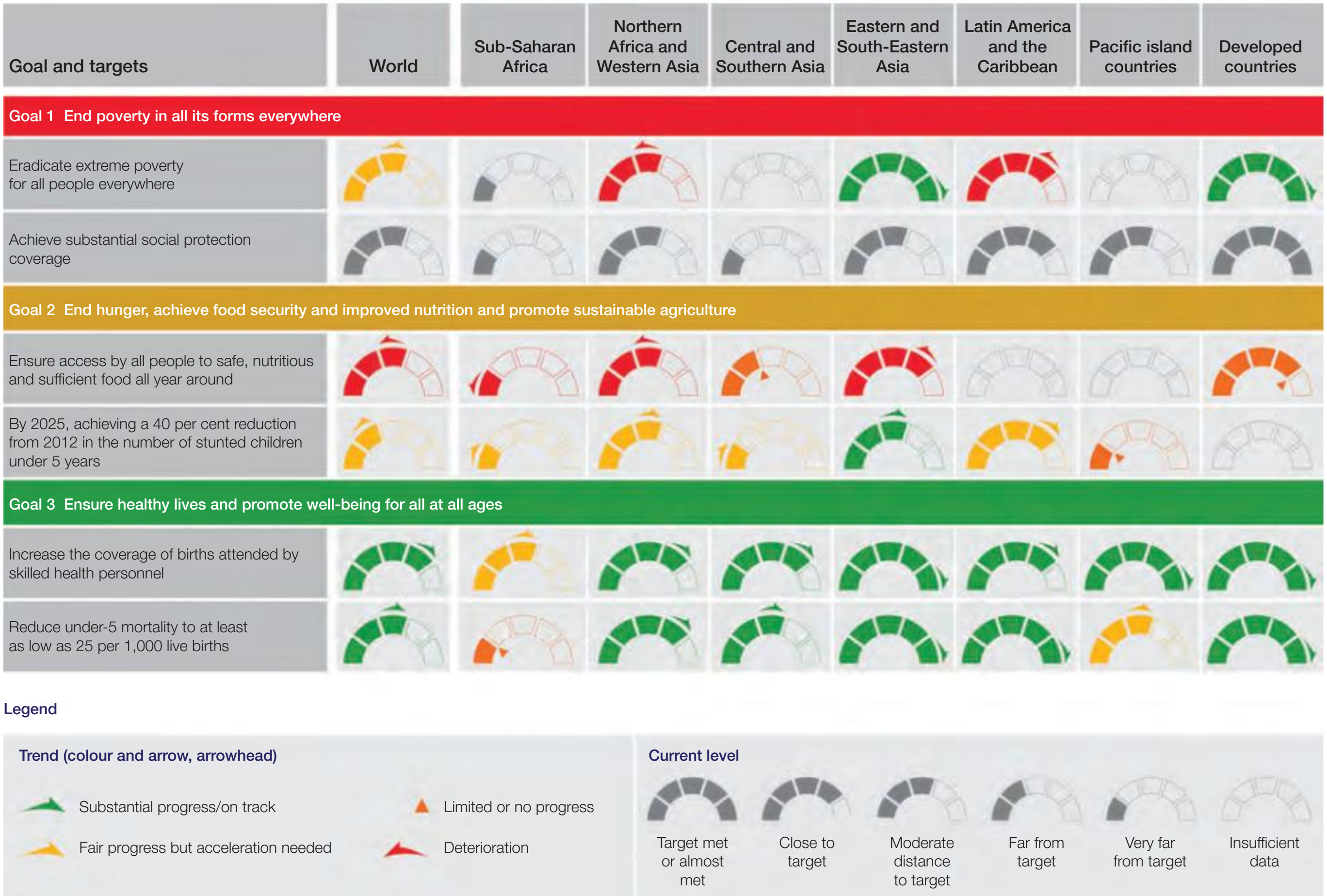
A total of 17 SDGs were created and agreed to by all. Of these, seven relate specifically to reducing inequalities in human **wellbeing**. Progress towards achieving the SDGs is continually tracked using **indicators** of wellbeing. Source 3 shows progress for the first three of these goals. Many countries, including Australia, use the SDGs and the progress reports as a framework for allocating funds to their overseas aid programs.

However, the statistics used to create the 2020 progress report in Source 3 were collected before the impacts of the COVID-19 pandemic were fully known. In his report of June 2020, the Secretary-General of the UN noted as follows:

Source 1

> [The pandemic is] expected to push tens of millions of persons back into extreme poverty and hunger. The poorest and the most vulnerable, including women, children, older persons, persons with disabilities, migrants and refugees and informal sector workers, are being affected disproportionately by the pandemic. Similarly, vulnerable countries, including least developed countries … stand to be hit the hardest in the long term.
>
> Extract from Antonio Guterres, UN Secretary-General, *Sustainable Development Goals Report 2020*

Source 2 UN volunteers distribute food parcels during a pandemic lockdown in Lagos, Nigeria. The COVID-19 pandemic is expected to reverse some of the progress made in working towards the SDGs. However, UN officials point out that the SDGs can serve as a framework for recovering from the social and economic impacts of the pandemic.



Source 3 A 2020 chart summarising the progress towards achieving the first three SDGs that relate specifically to reducing inequalities in human wellbeing; the UN provides comprehensive updates on its website.

6.1 Check your learning

Comprehend

1. In your own words, **explain** 'wellbeing' as it relates to a group of people, rather than an individual.
2. What are the aims behind the creation of the SDGs?
3. **Explain** what countries like Australia use these goals for.

Analyse

4. Look closely at Source 3, which summarises the progress made towards the first three SDGs in 2020.
   - a **Identify** the targets closest to being achieved.
   - b **Identify** the targets furthest from being achieved.
   - c **Explain** why you think this is the case.
   - d **Compare** the progress of Central and Southern Asia with Sub-Saharan Africa.

Apply

5. Conduct further research to find out the impact of the COVID-19 pandemic on the SDGs. To what extent (how much) was the Secretary-General correct in the prediction he made in mid-2020? Write a paragraph explaining your answer.
6. **Investigate** one of the other SDGs that interests you; for example, gender equality or climate action. Identify the aim of the goal and how it is progressing in different regions of the world. A link to the goals is provided on your obook pro.

Weblink
UN Sustainable Development Goals

6.2 Organisations working to improve wellbeing

Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» identify and describe the role of the UN in measuring and improving human wellbeing.

The UN plays a huge role in improving wellbeing across the globe with its SDGs. But the UN does not work alone. It works with individual governments and non-government organisations, each of which sets its own goals and develops its own programs.

The role of the UN

The UN was founded at the end of World War II in 1945, to increase political and economic cooperation among its member countries, to promote peace and to prevent the future outbreak of armed conflicts around the world. Since that time, it has grown into a vast organisation with multiple agencies working towards the key goals: 'maintaining international peace and security, developing friendly relations among nations and promoting social progress, better living standards and human rights.'

The UN has 193 member countries. These countries provide the funding to operate the UN's agencies and programs. Four key areas for the UN are peace and security, development, human rights and humanitarian aid.

developing countries non-industrialised or newly industrialised countries with relatively fragile economies and a low standard of living that are not always able to support the needs of their citizens

Peace and security

The UN has continued with its initial aim of promoting peace and security among the nations of the world. It provides assistance in areas such as disarmament, mine clearance, counter-terrorism and peacekeeping forces, as well as encouraging nations and communities in conflict to work towards a peaceful resolution.

Source 4 UN peacekeepers pass groups of people fleeing conflict in the Democratic Republic of the Congo.

Development

UN programs throughout the **developing countries** of the world are aimed at reducing poverty and improving the wellbeing of billions of people. In terms of promoting economic development, the UN works with countries to promote trade between them and to build stable governments.

Human rights

The UN seeks to uphold the values of the Universal Declaration of Human Rights throughout the world (see page 191). Since the creation of the Universal Declaration of Human Rights in 1948, the UN has adopted several further declarations. These include conventions aimed at ending discrimination against women (in 1979) and further protecting the rights of children (in 1989). In 2006, the rights of indigenous peoples were described in a further declaration. This aims to support indigenous groups to protect and strengthen their cultural identity.

The UN works towards ending violence against children, human trafficking and the use of sexual violence as a weapon of war. It also promotes the freedom of indigenous peoples to determine their own futures. The UN believes that every child has the right to an education.

Humanitarian aid

In those regions where **food security** is an issue, the UN works to improve farm productivity and provide food in times of famine through the World Food Programme (WFP). The WFP was awarded the Nobel Peace Prize in 2020. As well as providing food assistance, the UN also provides refuge for millions of people fleeing conflict in refugee camps and aid to those suffering from the impacts of natural and human disasters.

food security
a term used to describe a condition in which all people at all times have access to enough safe nutritious food to sustain a healthy life

6.2 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 What was the initial aim of the UN?

2 **Identify** the types of discrimination the UN is now dedicated to eliminating.

Comprehend

3 **Summarise** how the UN is working to improve wellbeing.

4 **Explain** how peace and security can help improve wellbeing.

Apply

5 **Investigate** the WFP and respond to the following questions:

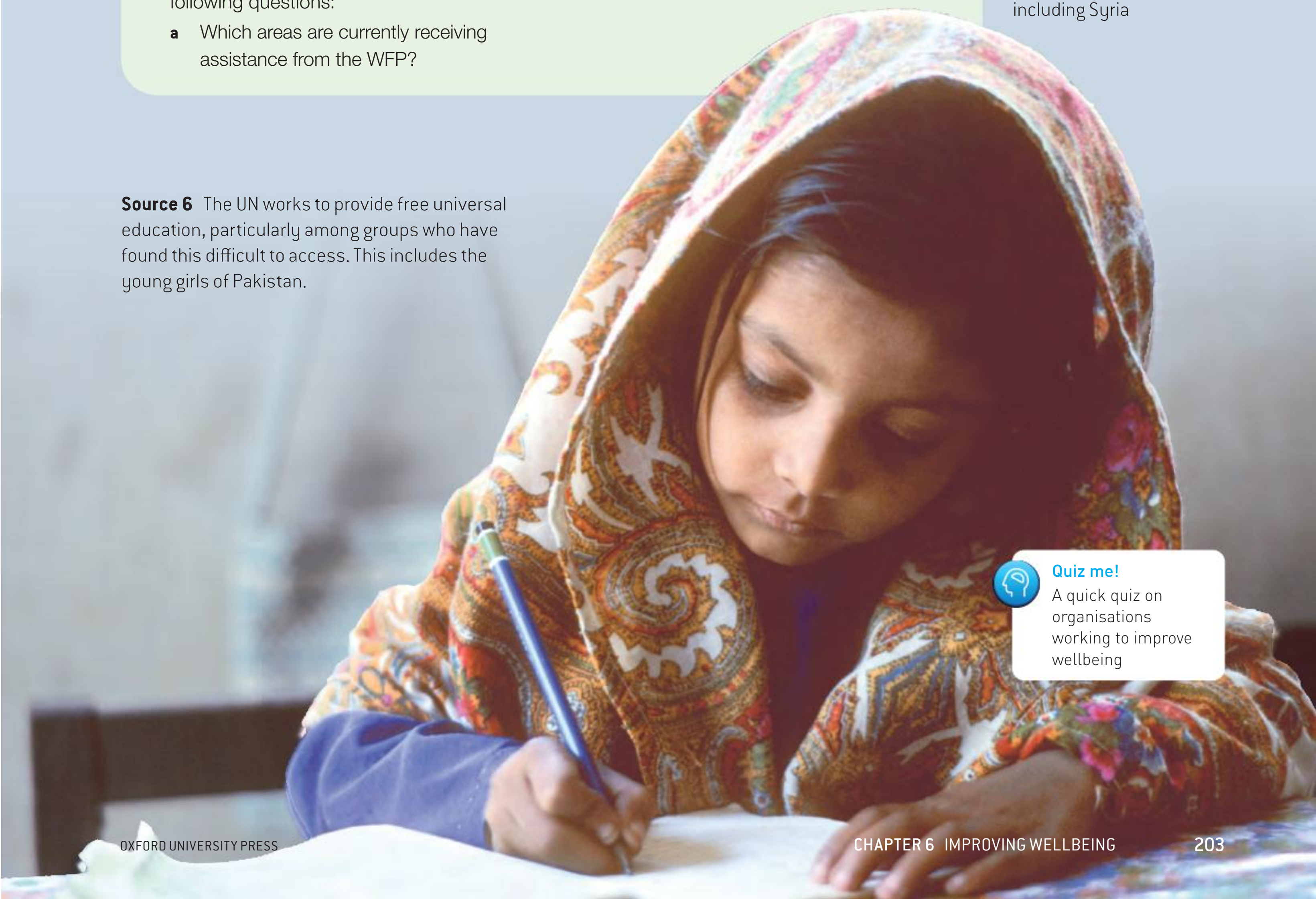
a Which areas are currently receiving assistance from the WFP?

b Which countries received emergency support in the past year? What was the cause of the emergency?

c Which are the top five donor countries that support the WFP?

6 Using Source 4 as a starting point, **investigate** the UN peacekeepers in the Democratic Republic of the Congo. Write a short news article about their role and the impact of their operation.

Source 5 The WFP provides aid to 100 million people per year in almost 90 countries, including Syria



Source 6 The UN works to provide free universal education, particularly among groups who have found this difficult to access. This includes the young girls of Pakistan.

Quiz me!
A quick quiz on organisations working to improve wellbeing

6.3 Australia and foreign aid

Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» explain the objectives and outcomes of Australia's foreign aid programs.

Quiz me!

A quick quiz on Australia and foreign aid

Human Development Index (HDI)
a tool developed by the UN to grade and rank the social and economic development of the world's countries in order from most to least developed; used as a measure of human wellbeing

In its 2020–21 budget, the Australian Government provided about $4 billion in overseas aid. Most of Australia's aid is spent on countries in the Asia–Pacific Region, particularly Indonesia, Papua New Guinea and the small island nations in the Pacific.

Aid is given to poorer countries to improve the lives of those living in poverty and to make the countries in the Asia–Pacific region more stable. Not only does this aid help improve wellbeing, it also supports Australia's economic and security interests by helping to build stronger, healthier countries in our region.

In addition, Australia gives aid to countries outside the Asia–Pacific Region when there is a humanitarian disaster, such as famine or war. Source 7 shows the top 20 recipients of aid from Australia in 2020–21, along with their **Human Development Index (HDI)** ranking.

Source 8 A mother brings her child for a vaccination at an Australian-funded clinic in Nepal.

Source 7 Where Australia gives aid: Top 20 country recipients, 2020–21

Country	Australian overseas development assistance (ODA): AU$ (million)	HDI ranking (2020)
Papua New Guinea	491.1	155
Indonesia	255.7	107
Solomon Islands	122.3	151
Timor-Leste (East Timor)	73.0	141
Philippines	63.4	107
Vietnam	57.2	117
Afghanistan	52.5	169
Vanuatu	46.0	140
Cambodia	43.4	144
Burma	42.1	147
Fiji	40.0	93
Bangladesh	30.8	133
Samoa	27.0	111
Nauru	25.5	NA
Kiribati	24.2	134
Laos	20.6	137
Tonga	20.1	104
Nepal	9.1	142
Tuvalu	8.4	NA
Mongolia	5.6	99

How is foreign aid used?

Australia delivers aid to these countries in a number of ways:

- Money is given to aid organisations such as World Vision that do work at the community level.
- Emergency aid, such as that provided during the COVID-19 pandemic, is often provided in the form of food supplies, fresh water and medical teams.
- The Australian Government works with other governments to assist in the delivery of important services, such as policing and hospitals.

The sorts of aid programs that receive funding from the Australian Government are wide-ranging, and include:

- programs that directly improve the health of communities and save lives – these include safe water and sanitation (where it is not available), maternal and child health services and disease prevention (see Source 8)
- programs that address inequalities by increasing access to education, helping people with disabilities and empowering women
- programs that support sustainable economic development, improve food security and employment, and reduce the negative impacts of environmental change
- programs that help other governments to improve their systems relating to security, justice and human rights
- humanitarian aid and disaster response programs for communities impacted by crisis situations and natural disasters (see Source 9).

Source 9 Australia sent COVID-19 vaccine doses to Papua New Guinea, as well as specialist medical teams.

6.3 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 Why does Australia provide aid to overseas communities and countries?

2 **Identify** three concerns that are addressed by aid programs.

Comprehend

3 Why do you think the Australian Government does not simply send aid money to the leaders of each country? **Explain** your answer.

4 Select one of the photographs in this topic showing Australian aid at work. **Describe** three ways the aid shown has improved the wellbeing of recipients.

Apply

5 Use the data in Source 7 to complete the following tasks:

a **Create** a scatterplot (see page 138).

b Use your completed scatterplot to **determine** whether Australia gives the most aid to the poorest countries.

c **Create** a choropleth map of the top 20 recipients of Australian aid.

d Use your completed map to **determine** whether Australia gives more aid to countries in the region than to countries furthest away.

I used to think, now I think

Reflect on your learning about how Australia distributes foreign aid and complete the following sentences.

- I used to think ...
- Now I think ...

What has changed in your understanding?

6.4 The role of non-government organisations

Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

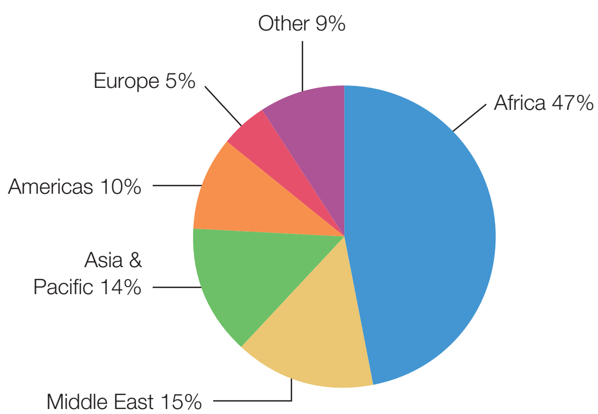
» explain the objectives and outcomes of economic and social development programs run by non-government organisations.

Quiz me!
A quick quiz on the role of non-government organisations

While governments are important sources of aid that help to improve wellbeing, there are also hundreds of **non-government organisations (NGOs)** with a similar aim. NGOs range from vast international groups such as World Vision and the Red Cross to very small organisations with only a few members working to make a difference in a single community. What NGOs do have in common, however, is that they are non-profit organisations, meaning all their money goes to support their work, and they depend on donations from governments or private individuals and companies to fund what they do.

In this topic, we will look at two organisations:

- Médecins Sans Frontières – an organisation that responds to emergency situations with medical assistance
- BRAC – an organisation that works to reduce the causes of inequalities in wellbeing around the world.



Source 10 The projects of MSF in 2021, by location

Médecins Sans Frontières

Médecins Sans Frontières (MSF), also known as Doctors Without Borders, was founded by 13 French doctors in 1971 to deliver 'emergency aid to people affected by armed conflict, epidemics, exclusion from health care and natural disasters'. It is currently active in more than 70 countries, many of them with unstable governments. Source 10 shows the locations of its programs.

MSF believes strongly in drawing attention to human rights violations and the lack of adequate responses to emergencies by governments in the areas in which it works. This does not always make it popular, and means that virtually all of its funding must come from individual donations rather than from governments.

non-government organisations (NGOs)
not-for-profit organisations independent of the government that are organised and administered on a local, national or international level; NGOs often rely on the support of donors and volunteers

Source 11 MSF volunteers often work in dangerous conditions.

Source 12 Top 10 countries with the largest MSF programs, 2019

	Country	Type of emergency
1	Democratic Republic of the Congo	Post-conflict; ongoing epidemics of measles, tuberculosis, Ebola and COVID-19
2	South Sudan	Post-conflict; flooding; refugee crisis; malaria
3	Yemen	Ongoing conflict
4	Central African Republic	Ongoing conflict; HIV/AIDS
5	Nigeria	Violence and displacement; epidemics
6	Iraq	Post-conflict; emergency health; upgrading hospitals
7	Syria	Ongoing conflict
8	Afghanistan	Post-conflict; emergency health; upgrading hospitals
9	Lebanon	Civil unrest, breakdown of health system; refugee crisis from Syria
10	Bangladesh	Refugee crisis from Burma

BRAC

BRAC (formerly the Bangladesh Rural Advancement Committee) was founded in 1972 to alleviate poverty by providing micro-credit to people living in poverty in Bangladesh. Micro-credit refers to small loans – which can be as little as $20 – that allow individuals to finance projects such as machinery repair, hiring a new labourer, or purchasing a sewing machine or shoe-repair kit so that they can start their own small businesses.

From these small beginnings, BRAC is now the world's largest NGO. It has over 100 000 employees and helps to improve the wellbeing of around 126 million people – mainly in Bangladesh, but also in 10 other countries in Asia and Africa. In addition to offering micro-credit, BRAC now provides education to millions of children, public health programs aimed at reducing child mortality, services for the disabled, disaster relief and internet connections to thousands of rural communities.

Source 13 Pregnant women are educated about maternity healthcare at a clinic run by BRAC in Dhaka, Bangladesh.

6.4 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 **Identify** the aims of MSF.

2 **Define** the term 'micro-credit'. How does micro-credit assist people living in poverty?

Analyse

3 Look closely at Source 12.

- a **Consider** how MSF could help address some of the wellbeing issues across these countries.
- b Visit the 'Resources' page on the MSF website (there is a link on your obook pro) and find the most recent 'International Activity Report'. Use this report to **identify** the type of assistance given by MSF to each country.
- c In small groups, **reflect on** how the types of assistance MSF provides could improve the wellbeing of people in different countries.

Apply

4 Visit the BRAC website (there is a link on your obook pro). Use the 'Where we work' tab to explore the countries in which BRAC is active and the types of assistance it provides in each country. **Create** a table to summarise your findings.

Weblink
MSF

Weblink
BRAC

6A SKILLS IN CONTEXT

Charity

Many NGOs, including those you have learnt about in this chapter, are funded by donations from individuals and private companies. Donations vary from place to place, depending on a wide range of variables including income.

Of course, giving money to help other people is only one type of charity. Many people give their time as volunteers. This can be of great assistance to others and can help to increase their level of wellbeing. Most of the doctors who work with MSF, for example, donate their time to work in areas where they are needed.

Source 16 shows the percentage of the population who donate money to charity in 20 selected countries.

Test me!
Once you've finished the topics in this section, test yourself with this quiz and find out which worksheet you should do.

Enlarged map
World: Charitable giving index

Outline map
World map

Source 14 Providing vaccines and other medicines is a way that many NGOs help countries in need.

KEY SKILL
Questioning & researching

Creating a proportional circles map

A proportional circles map is able to show the differences in the size or extent of various factors within a country or region graphically. This allows the data to be represented visually and understood quickly. A proportional circles map is commonly used to represent figures, such as imports, exports or population.

To draw a proportional circles map, use the following steps (you will need a ruler and a compass):

Step 1 On an outline map of the world, locate each of the places you wish to include in your proportional scale and mark them with a small dot.

Step 2 Choose an appropriate scale range for your map. If you were looking at population figures of big cities, for example, you might choose a scale that goes up by 500 000 people each time. Keep your data within a scale of five different values, so that you end up with a maximum of five different-sized circles.

Step 3 Construct a scale on a horizontal line that is relatively short (about 5 centimetres), or the circles will become too big. Do this by dividing the scale into even values, starting at 0 and placing line markers every 2.5 or 5 millimetres. For example, at 2.5 millimetres, mark 500 000; at 5 millimetres, mark 1 000 000, and so on.

Step 4 Place the point of your compass on the horizontal line at 0 and the pencil of your compass on the horizontal line at the first marker point on your scale. Use the compass to draw a circle. This will be the radius size of the proportional circle for your first value.

Step 5 Create a legend for your map and draw a circle for your first value, following step 4. Enter the value next to the circle.

Step 6 Repeat steps 4 and 5 until you have circles for all the values entered into your legend.

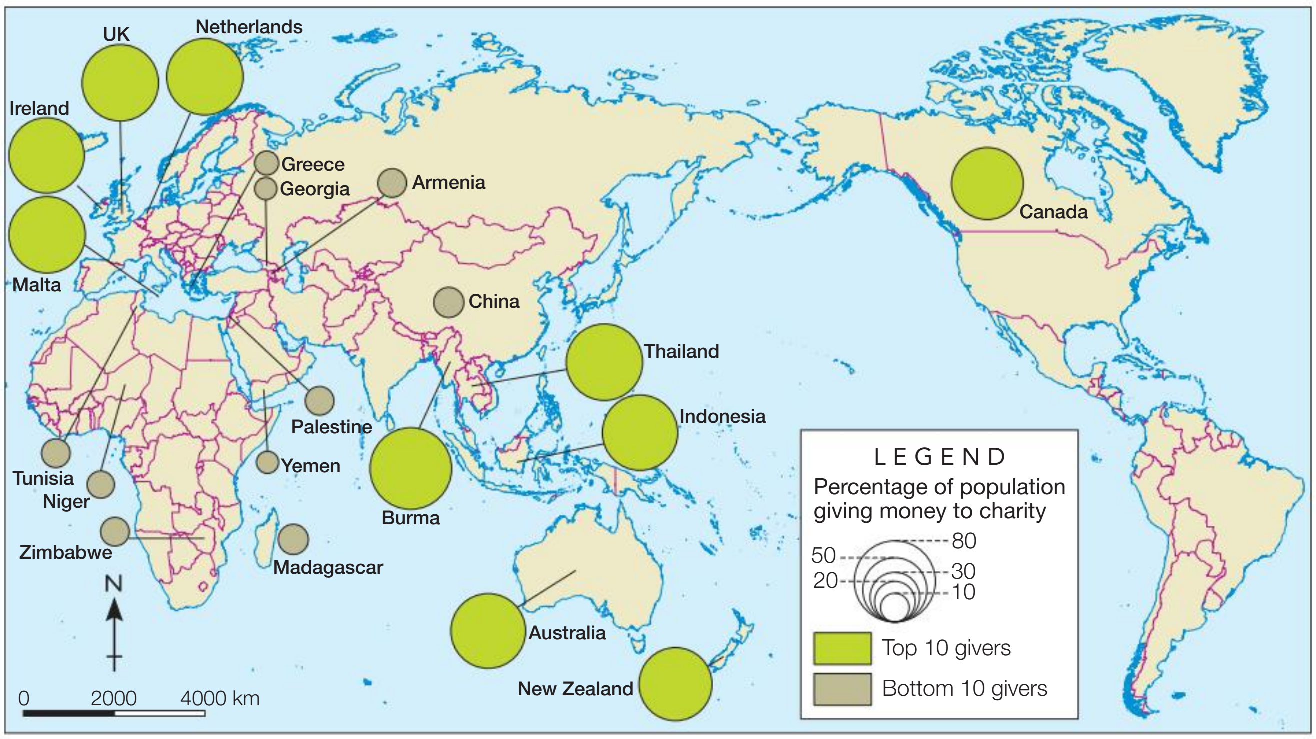
Step 7 Now map your data. Set the compass to the radius size that matches the appropriate value. Draw the proportional circle on the map at the spot you marked in step 1.

Step 8 Repeat these steps for the remaining dots on your map. As you draw your map, you may find that some circles overlap. Label each circle with the name of the city.

Step 9 Complete your map with BOLTSS.

Source 15 One of the world's largest charity organisations was started by Microsoft founder Bill Gates (pictured) – who is among the world's wealthiest men – and his then-wife Melinda French Gates. The Bill & Melinda Gates Foundation has donated more than US$54 billion to improve the wellbeing of people around the world. In this photograph, Gates is giving a vaccine to a child in Africa.

WORLD: CHARITABLE GIVING INDEX



Source 16

Source: Oxford University Press

Practise the skill

1 **Create** a proportional circles map using the data provided in Source 7 on page 204, relating to the amount of aid given to countries by the Australian Government in 2020–21.

Extend your understanding

1 **Examine** Source 16.

a List the 10 countries on this map with the largest percentage of population who give money to charity.

b Compare this map to Source 12 in Chapter 4 on page 140. Describe any links that you can find between charitable giving and GDP.

c In a recent study of charitable behaviours, Australia ranked eighth for donating money, twelfth for volunteering and eleventh for helping a stranger. Do you find these rankings surprising? Justify your answer.

2 **Investigate** the Bill & Melinda Gates Foundation. Select one of the areas where this aid organisation helps and describe what the foundation does in this area.

6.5 Improving wellbeing in Australia

Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» identify strategies to reduce inequalities in wellbeing in Australia.

Australia has one of the highest levels of wellbeing in the world. In the 2020 UN *Human Development Report*, Australia was ranked as having the eighth-highest HDI rating in the world. Australians can expect to go to school for longer and to live longer, healthier lives than virtually any other nationality.

However, while data such as this is welcome news regarding our position in the world, it can hide the inequalities that exist within our nation. There are significant variations in wellbeing, for example, between rural and urban Australians, and between First Nations peoples and non-Indigenous Australians. A number of government groups and NGOs are working to reduce these variations.

Inequalities in health

Studies show that there are significant differences in the health of different groups of Australians. People from poorer households are less likely to be physically active, to visit a dentist or medical specialist, or to have a medical test such as a skin cancer check or mammogram to detect breast cancer. They are more likely to smoke and to be obese or overweight. As well as inequalities due to income, studies have also found health inequalities relating to location, ethnicity and age. Source 1 shows some of the health inequalities that exist between Australia's states and territories.

Key skill worksheet
Concluding & decision making: Proposing action to improve wellbeing

Source 1 Health inequalities between states and territories in Australia (2020)

Health indicators	ACT	NSW	NT	Qld	SA	Tas	Vic	WA	National
Adults who were daily smokers (%)	10.6	13.9	19.6	14.9	12.9	16.4	13.5	11.8	13.8
Patients in emergency care seen on time (%)	48	81	100	76	65	65	70	66	74
Life expectancy (years)	83.2	82.7	77.8	82.4	82.5	81.2	83.5	82.8	82.8
Infant mortality rate (per 1000 births)	3.7	2.7	8.6	3.5	3.2	3.4	3.3	2.6	3.1
Rate of melanoma (per 100 000)	44.4	53.6	NA*	74.6	38.6	51.6	41.1	57.4	53.5

*Northern Territory data was not available for inclusion

Source: Australian Institute of Health and Welfare

Inequalities in education

Quiz me!
A quick quiz on improving wellbeing in Australia

There are similar trends in education to those exhibited in health areas. Children from poorer households are less likely to attend early childhood education and less likely to go to university than children from wealthier households. They also have less access to information technology such as broadband internet, particularly in rural and remote regions. Students in rural areas generally have a more restricted choice of subjects to study and are less likely to finish high school.

The rural–urban divide

In many areas of wellbeing in Australia there is a rural–urban divide. There are fewer education and employment opportunities in rural areas, and less access to health services and medical care. People in rural areas are more likely to suffer from chronic health conditions, such as diabetes and heart disease, and to die earlier than those living in towns and cities. They are also at a higher risk of injury from work and car accidents.

Reducing inequality

Governments have tried to reduce these inequalities in wellbeing in Australia in two main ways:

- targeted programs that focus on a particular problem or issue; for example, campaigns to reduce smoking or to encourage people to have health checks
- general programs to maintain and lift the wellbeing of the entire community; the National Disability Insurance Scheme and Medicare, which ensure people can access medical care regardless of their financial situation, are examples of these.

*

Think, pair, share

- Think about what could be done to improve access to medical care in rural areas.
- Discuss your ideas with a partner.
- Share your ideas with a friend.

CASE STUDY

Royal Flying Doctor Service

There are many professionals working to improve wellbeing across Australia. One of these groups is the Royal Flying Doctor Service (RFDS). Founded over 90 years ago, it provides emergency and ongoing medical care to patients living in rural and remote areas of Australia. In an average year, the RFDS will see more than 370 000 patients, hold 21 000 health clinics and fly over 27 million kilometres. This makes it one of the largest aeroplane-based medical services in the world.

Source 2 The RFDS is the 'GP' for hundreds of communities across rural Australia.

Weblink
Royal Flying Doctor Service

6.5 Check your learning

Comprehend

1 **Describe** the health indicators showing that people in rural areas have lower levels of wellbeing than people in urban areas.

2 **Explain** how the RFDS helps to reduce these inequalities.

Analyse

3 Using Source 1, **compare** the health statistics for your home state or territory with one other state or territory.

Apply

4 Access the live RFDS flight map using the weblink on your obook pro.

a **Identify** how many RFDS planes are currently in the air.

b **Describe** the flight path of each current flight.

5 **Create** a wellbeing index for health indicators in Australian states and territories using the data in Source 1. See Skills in Context task 5A on page 174 for a guide to calculating this index.

6 One of the difficulties for governments in reducing inequalities in wellbeing is being able to evaluate the effectiveness of individual programs. In groups, **discuss** how the effectiveness of the RFDS could be evaluated and create a list of criteria against which the success of the organisation could be measured.

6.6 Improving wellbeing of First Nations peoples

Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» identify strategies to improve the wellbeing of remote First Nations communities in Australia.

As you have learnt, studies show that the wellbeing of First Nations peoples is well below that of other Australians. A UN official described the standard of health in Aboriginal communities in Australia as being worse than in developing countries in some respects. A range of government groups and NGOs are working to close the gap between First Nations peoples and non-Indigenous Australians in a range of important areas.

Source 3 Regular health checks for remote First Nations peoples are a vital component of closing the gap.

Improvements in health

Chronic diseases such as heart attacks and diabetes are responsible for about 70 per cent of the health gap between First Nations peoples and non-Indigenous Australians. The federal government, in partnership with local health services, is working to:

- encourage First Nations peoples to have regular health checks
- train health workers in the techniques of managing chronic diseases such as diabetes and arthritis; this includes giving advice on such things as the health benefits of increased physical activity and stopping smoking
- reduce the cost of medicines and treatments through the Closing the Gap Pharmaceutical Benefits Scheme program
- increase the number of Aboriginal and Torres Strait Islander people working in the health sector
- build more hospitals and health centres in remote First Nations communities
- improve the quality and range of foods available in the shops in remote First Nations communities
- provide mobile health facilities that visit remote communities and target dental, eye and ear problems
- change the type of fuel sold in many remote petrol stations to make it unsuitable for sniffing, in order to reduce the rates of this type of substance abuse
- improve the mental health of First Nations peoples; one initiative, called Link-Up, helps First Nations peoples trace and contact family members who were part of the **Stolen Generations**
- increase participation of First Nations children in sport and recreation
- strengthen cultural ties within communities through the support of language and the arts
- upgrade and maintain airstrips in remote communities for the RFDS to provide better access to emergency health care.

The responses outlined here are targeted at improving the health of First Nations peoples. There are also responses aimed at the other six key areas that are seen as vital to closing the gap between First Nations peoples and non-Indigenous Australians: early childhood, schooling, healthy homes, economic participation, safe communities and leadership.

Stolen Generations
First Nations children who were forcibly removed from their families by government officials and church missions in Australia and raised by white Australians; this practice was part of official government policy from about 1909 to 1969

CASE STUDY

Community Spirit Foundation

Responses to wellbeing issues often involve a partnership between governments and NGOs. One such response is the work being done by the Community Spirit Foundation (previously the Cathy Freeman Foundation) to improve the wellbeing of children from four remote Aboriginal communities: Palm Island and Woorabinda in Queensland, and Galiwin'ku and Wurrumiyanga in the Northern Territory.

Olympic champion Freeman, a Kuku Yalanji woman, established the foundation in 2007 to help address some of the key problems facing the Aboriginal community on Palm Island (where her mother was born). These problems include high unemployment, low literacy and life expectancy rates, and very high rates of ear disease and hearing loss. As nearly two-thirds of the population is under the age of 20, the foundation focuses on education, particularly reducing the truancy rate which can be as high as 55 per cent.

Key components of the foundation's strategy are public recognition of children who attend school and achieve good outcomes, sport and recreation programs that encourage children to attend school, increased numbers of teachers' aides, school camps to the mainland for those children who attend school regularly, and scholarships to students to attend private schools in mainland Queensland. The foundation has had great success in reducing truancy, improving literacy levels and improving the future employment prospects of hundreds of children.

Source 4 Cathy Freeman with school students on Palm Island

6.6 Check your learning

Comprehend

1. **Describe** the strategy that the Community Spirit Foundation is using to improve the wellbeing of Palm Islanders.
2. What did a UN official have to say about First Nations peoples' health in Australia? **Explain** why you think he made this comment.
3. The federal government, in partnership with local health services, has a number of strategies to improve the health of First Nations peoples. Select one of the strategies.
   a. **Summarise** the aims of the strategy.
   b. How do you think the effectiveness of the strategy could be measured?
4. Find the location of Palm Island on a map. **Explain** how the location of this community may help explain the high rates of unemployment.

Apply

5. Cathy Freeman is not the only well-known person to become involved in projects aimed at improving wellbeing. Angelina Jolie, Emma Watson and Matthew McConaughey are other well-known examples. **Discuss** why you think celebrities often become involved in this type of work.
6. Visit the Community Spirit Foundation website. **Create** a report on one of the three programs that are helping to improve wellbeing.

Quiz me!
A quick quiz on improving wellbeing of First Nations peoples

Weblink
The Community Spirit Foundation

6.7 Improving wellbeing in India

Learning intention

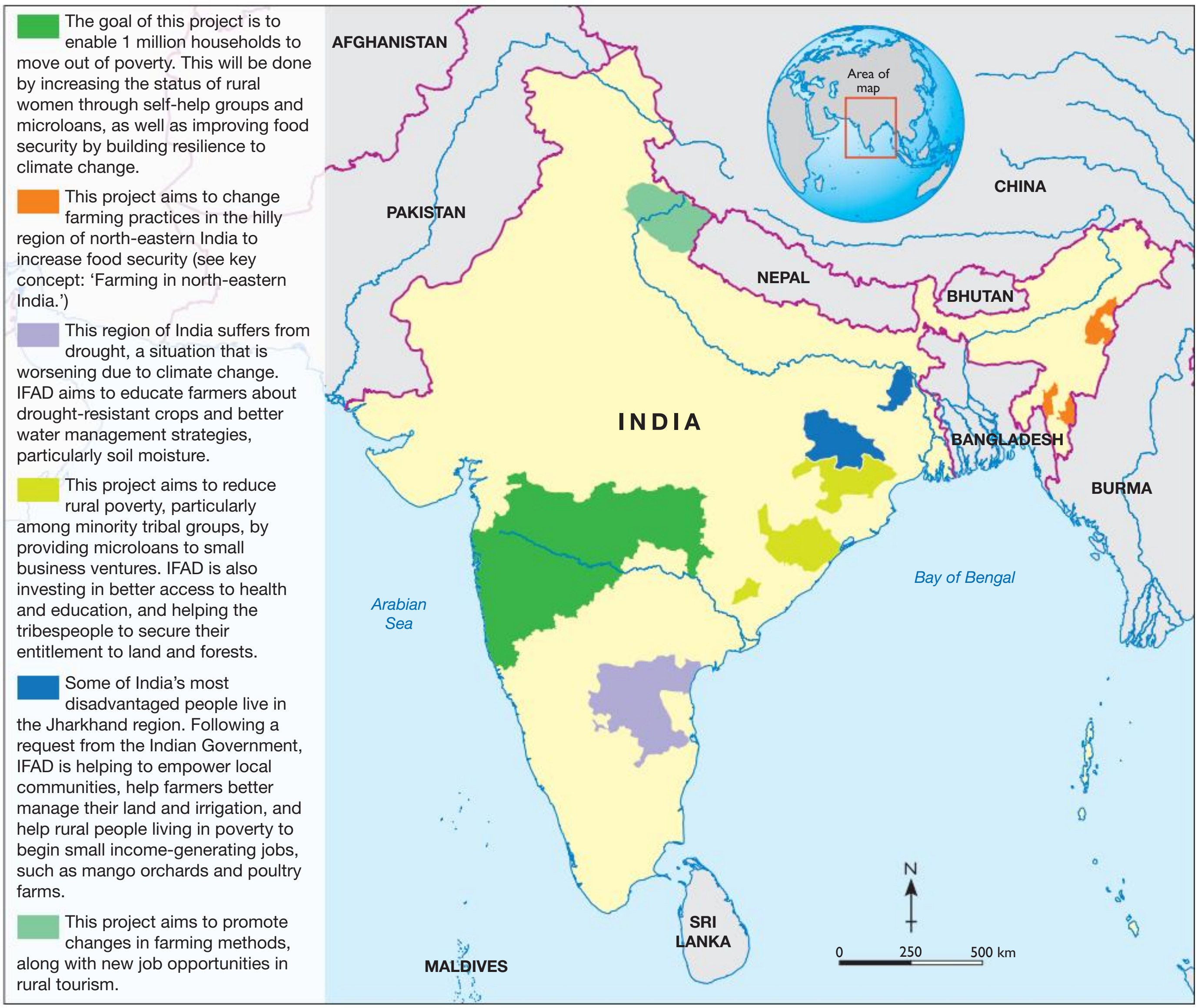
By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» explain the objectives and outcomes of the International Fund for Agricultural Development (IFAD).

The International Fund for Agricultural Development (IFAD) is an agency of the UN. It was created in the mid-1970s in response to a number of famines across Africa. The goal of the agency is 'to empower poor rural women and men in developing countries to achieve higher incomes and improved food security'. IFAD is active in poor rural communities throughout the world, particularly in the Asia–Pacific, Africa, Latin America and Caribbean regions.

IFAD's work in India is focused on groups identified as being the most disadvantaged among the nation's rural poor – women, tribal groups, small farmers, landless people and unemployed youth. There are currently several IFAD-sponsored projects in operation across India, directly benefiting more than 6 million households (see Source 5).

INDIA: LOCATIONS OF IFAD'S PROJECTS



Source 5

Source: IFAD

Farming in north-eastern India

Food insecurity in the hilly regions of north-eastern India has increased in the past few decades as the result of a growing population combined with unsustainable farming practices. Traditionally, farmers in this region used slash-and-burn farming techniques – where a patch of forest was cut down and burned, and the land was used until the soil became infertile. The farmer would then move to a fresh patch of forest. But as the population increased, this sort of farming resulted in huge losses of forest, soil erosion and a fall in food production. Widespread food and water insecurity followed.

IFAD encouraged farmers to terrace their hillsides and protect their forests (see Source 6). This is a much more sustainable approach to farming. Soil erosion and forest clearing both fell dramatically, resulting in a wide range of improved wellbeing outcomes for hundreds of thousands of people. The changes achieved better food security from crops, increased fish populations in the streams and rivers of the forests, and more varied diets for the farmers. As the terraced farms require less labour to maintain, a wider range of jobs have been developed, incomes have increased, children are more likely to attend school and infant mortality rates have fallen.

Source 6 Rice terraces in Nagaland, north-eastern India

KEY CONCEPT
Sustainability

Quiz me!
A quick quiz on improving wellbeing in India

Enlarged map
India: Locations of IFAD's projects

Source 7 IFAD works to improve the lives of people in poor rural areas such as this woman in India.

6.7 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 **State** what IFAD stands for and list the aims of the organisation.

2 **Identify** the groups of people who are most disadvantaged in India.

Comprehend

3 **Summarise** the ways that IFAD aims to reduce rural poverty by increasing food security.

4 **Explain** how the agricultural technique of terracing can help improve human wellbeing.

5 Using the PQE method, **describe** the distribution of IFAD projects in India.

Apply

6 **Create** an overlay map of India to explore the relationship between levels of wellbeing there and the location of IFAD projects. Conduct some research to find a map showing the HDI ratings across India and use the data from Source 2 on page 150 as the overlay. When you have completed your overlay map, describe the relationship between HDI and IFAD projects.

6B SKILLS IN CONTEXT

Test me!
Once you've finished the topics in this section, test yourself with this quiz and find out which worksheet you should do.

No place to call home: the wellbeing of stateless people

There are millions of people in the world who are stateless. This means that no country recognises them as citizens. These people usually live on the margins of society with very low levels of wellbeing. They are denied a legal identity and struggle to obtain official documents, such as a birth certificate, passport, marriage licence or driver's licence. As a result, they often cannot apply for jobs, attend schools or visit a doctor.

Over one-third of the world's stateless people are children. The UN estimates that there are at least 3.9 million stateless people, but concedes that the figure may be as high as 10 million.

People become stateless for a number of reasons, including ethnic and religious discrimination or when their home country ceases to exist. Examples include:

- 900 000 Rohingya people who have fled Burma to escape ethnic violence
- 692 000 people who live in the Cote d'Ivoire, but are not recognised as citizens because they are the descendants of migrants
- 479 000 people in Thailand who are victims of ethnic discrimination
- thousands of ethnic Russians – when the Soviet Union broke up in the 1990s, they became stranded in new countries, unable to gain citizenship; there are 225 000 in Latvia and 78 000 in Estonia
- the Kurdish people of northern Syria, who are not recognised as citizens; there are at least 160 000, but hundreds of thousands of others have fled the country because of the ongoing civil war
- 134 000 in the Dominican Republic
- 47 500 in Iraq
- 300 000 Bihari people in Bangladesh, who have been denied citizenship since Bangladesh's independence in 1971.

Source 8 The Rohingya refugees in Bangladesh, who have fled ethnic violence in Burma, are not recognised as citizens in either country.

KEY SKILL
Communicating

Constructing an infographic

An infographic is a method of presenting complex data using graphics so that it can be interpreted quickly and easily by an audience.

To construct an infographic, follow these steps:

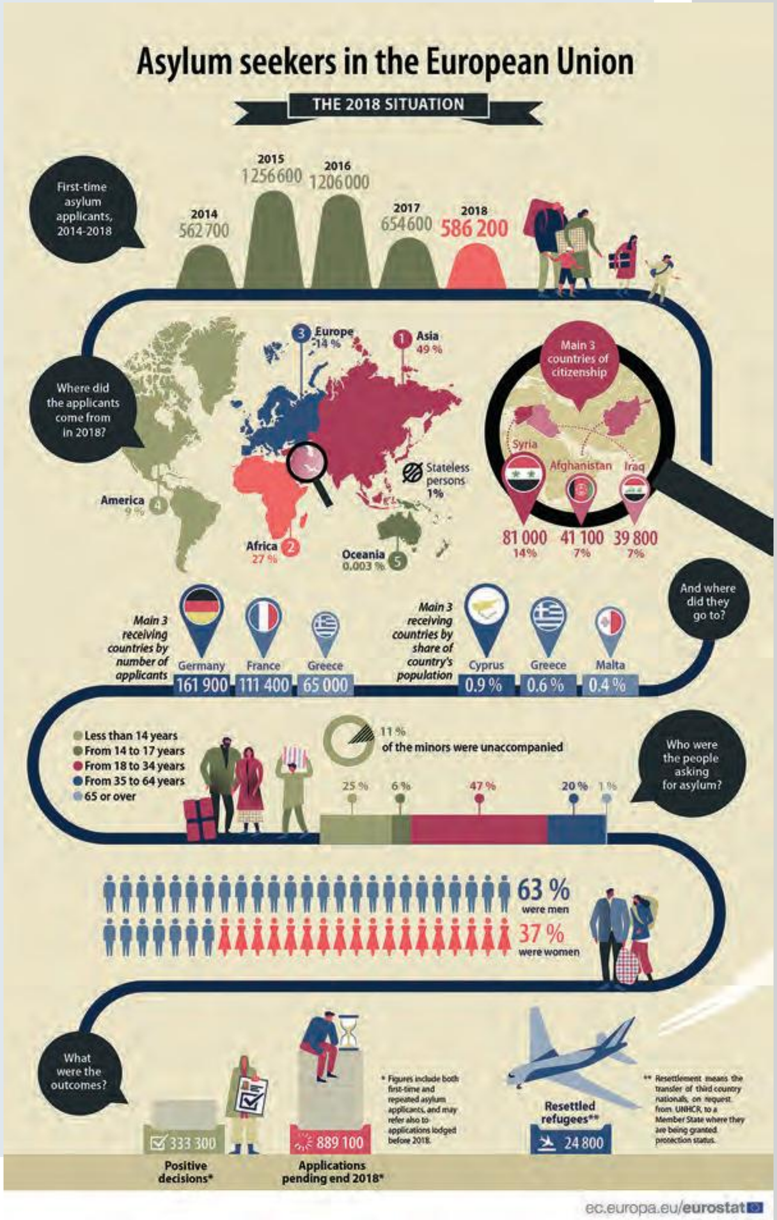
Step 1 Decide on the issue that you are presenting in your infographic and the point you wish to make about it.

Step 2 Research the issue you are presenting. As with all information, check that it is reliable. If you are using the internet, for example, information from governments (.gov), educational institutions (.edu) and organisations (.org) tends to be more reliable than information from commercial sites (.com).

Step 3 Think carefully about how your data can be presented as images rather than as numbers or data. Simple pictures work best.

Step 4 Think carefully about how you are going to set the information out on the page. Some infographics use the idea of a journey to present their information and join together key pieces of information with roads, railway tracks or arrows.

Step 5 Put all of this together neatly. You may like to use an online program such as infogr.am or easel.ly to create your infographic.



Source 9 An infographic prepared by the European Commission to highlight the number of refugees and asylum seekers in Europe.

Practise the skill

1 **Create** an infographic on stateless people in the world. You can do your own research, or simply use the facts and figures provided in this Skills in Context task.

2 When completed, **examine** your classmates' infographics. Which techniques used by others did you find best presented the data in a visual way?

Extend your understanding

1 **Investigate** one of the groups of stateless people listed. Find out how they became stateless and the impact this has had on their wellbeing. Present this information using infographic techniques.

2 The United Nations High Commissioner for Refugees (UNHCR) is working to end statelessness by 2024. **Investigate** the UNHCR campaign online to find out how it is hoping to achieve this goal and its progress towards doing so. A weblink has been provided on your obook pro to help get you started.

Weblink
UNHCR on ending statelessness

6 CHAPTER REVIEW

Review activity

Read the information, examine Sources 10 and 11, and answer the questions that follow

World Vision Australia

World Vision Australia is one of the largest charity organisations in Australia working to improve wellbeing. World Vision Australia's mission is to 'be a Christian organisation that engages people to eliminate poverty and its causes'. It is funded mainly by donations from individual Australians (see Source 10).

World Vision Australia's programs to improve wellbeing can be classified into four key focus areas:

- community development and alleviating poverty – this is done through improving access to clean water, improving health and education access, protecting children, and improving food security and employment opportunities
- humanitarian and emergency relief during times of natural and human disasters and the recovery from these in the long-term
- advocating for the rights of vulnerable people, particularly the rights of children
- the Australia First Nations Program, which aims to create positive change for First Nations peoples.

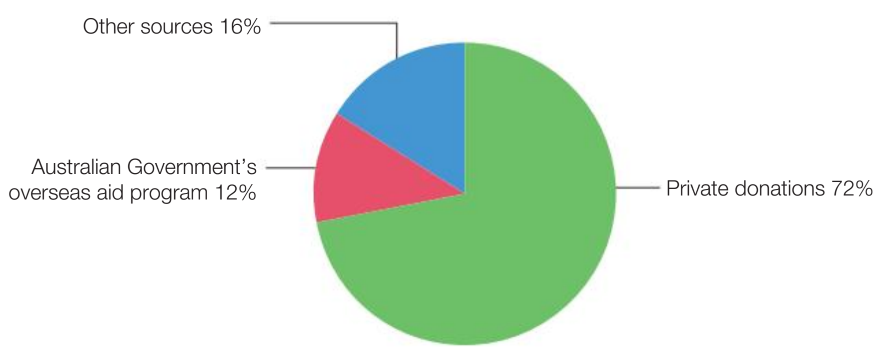
1 Can World Vision Australia be considered an NGO? **Explain** your answer (3 marks).

2 Use the information under the 'World Vision Australia' heading to **classify** these examples of World Vision Australia's programs into one of the four focus areas (1 mark each).
   a delivering meals to families in India forced into lockdown during the COVID-19 pandemic
   b child sponsorship that enables more girls to go to school in Tanzania
   c encouraging children to deepen their understanding of First Nations peoples' knowledge and values at schools in New South Wales
   d a campaign aimed at the Australian Government helping to raise awareness of children affected by the COVID-19 pandemic
   e child sponsorship that means more mothers give birth with the assistance of a trained health worker in Burma
   f teaching women in Papua New Guinea financial literacy techniques such as budgeting and saving
   g teaching farmers in Southern Africa techniques to reverse desertification and improve food security.

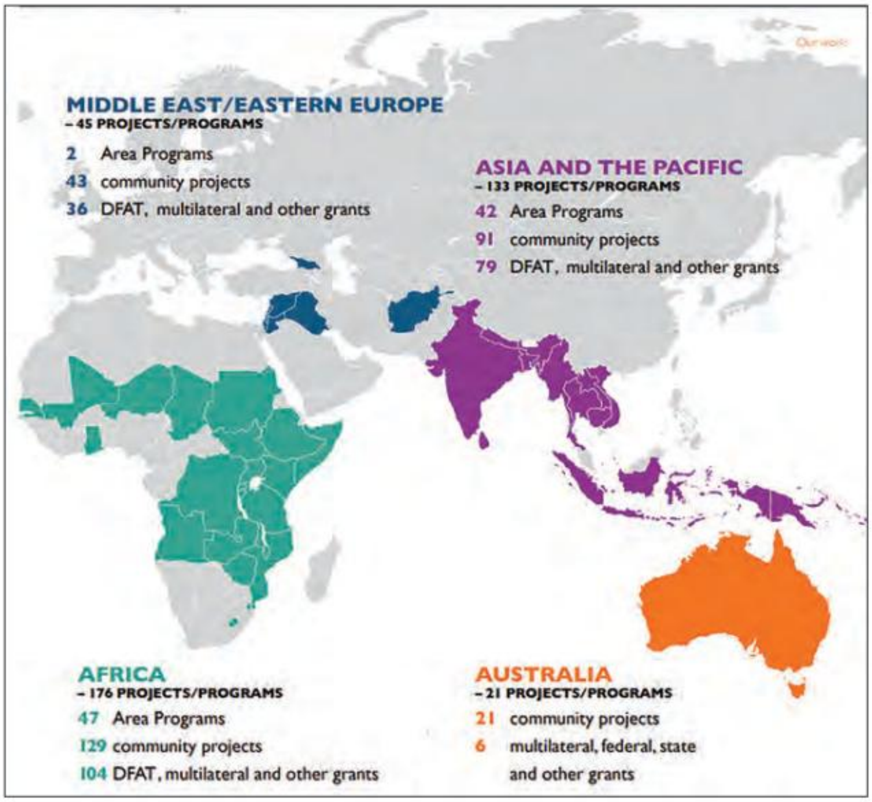
3 Select one of the programs listed in question 2 and write a paragraph that **describes** how it will improve wellbeing. (6 marks)

4 Use the PQE method to **describe** the distribution of World Vision's aid programs in 2020 as shown in Source 11. (4 marks)

(Total: 20 marks)



Source 10 Sources of World Vision Australia's funds



Source 11 Focus areas of World Vision Australia's programs in 2020

Note: 'DFAT' stands for Department of Foreign Affairs and Trade.

Chapter checklist

Now that you have completed this chapter, reflect on your ability to do the following:

	I can do this.	I cannot do this yet.
Identify the United Nations Sustainable Development Goals and their relationship to human wellbeing.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 6.1, page 200.
Identify and describe the role of the UN in measuring and improving human wellbeing.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 6.2, page 202.
Explain the objectives and outcomes of Australia's foreign aid programs.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 6.3, page 204.
Explain the objectives and outcomes of economic and social development programs run by non-government organisations.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 6.4, page 206.
Identify strategies to reduce inequalities in wellbeing in Australia.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 6.5, page 210.
Identify strategies to improve the wellbeing of remote First Nations communities in Australia.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 6.6, page 212.
Explain the objectives and outcomes of the International Fund for Agricultural Development (IFAD).	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 6.7, page 214.

Check your Student obook pro for these digital resources and more:

Student book questions
Chapter 6

Key skill worksheet
Communicating:
Chapter 6

Quizlet
Play a game of Quizlet on Improving wellbeing.

Chapter review quiz
Chapter 6


2

PART 2

History

Concepts and skills

World War II (1939–1945)

Building modern Australia (post-1945)

The globalising world (post-1945)

CHAPTER 7

The history toolkit

History is a process of inquiring into the past. Historians seek to piece together accurate pictures of what life was like in days gone by. They also look for patterns – what has remained the same, what has changed, and why.

Historians ask questions, form opinions and theories, locate and analyse sources, and use evidence to develop informed explanations about the past. Oral accounts, documents, artefacts and archaeological finds form the basis of research in history.

This year you will be looking at events that took place from 1939 to the present day and how these events influenced modern-day Australia. By studying important world events such as World War II, and significant events in Australia post-1945, historians understand how aspects of our past have shaped the modern world.

Source 1 The Aboriginal Tent Embassy on the lawns of Old Parliament House in Canberra was established in 1972 to protest against the Australian Government's refusal to recognise Aboriginal land rights. Today, it still stands as a reminder of the struggle for the rights and freedoms of First Nations peoples in Australia.

7A
What are the historical concepts and skills?

7.1 Historical concepts and skills

Historians use concepts to help them investigate the past and explain what they find. Six important concepts in history are:

- evidence
- cause and effect
- continuity and change
- perspectives
- interpretations and contestability
- significance.

These concepts will be covered in more detail in the following topics.

There are also a number of key skills that historians use to successfully investigate the past, as outlined in Source 1 below. By studying history you will gradually master each of these skills.

You will already be familiar with many of these skills from your previous studies. This year, you will revisit each one and learn to apply them more effectively.

Source 1 Historical skills

Questioning and researching	• Developing historical questions about the past • Locating relevant sources online and in print
Using historical sources	• Understanding the origin, purpose and context of primary and secondary sources • Evaluating the reliability and usefulness of primary and secondary sources
Historical perspectives and interpretations	• Using chronological sequencing to demonstrate the relationship between events and developments in different periods and places • Analysing the causes and the short-term and long-term effects of events or developments • Evaluating instances of change and patterns of continuity over a period of time • Comparing the points of view and perspectives of historians and people from the past • Analysing different historical interpretations • Deciding on the significance of an event, person or thing from the past
Communicating	• Using historical terms and concepts • Using evidence from a range of referenced sources • Structuring a historical argument

Source 2 Extinction Rebellion protestors demonstrate in Melbourne, 2019. Historians would use a range of skills to understand the key events and significance of the Extinction Rebellion protests.

7.2 Questioning and researching

Developing historical questions about the past

hypothesis
a considered opinion, theory or statement, based on research and evidence, about something that has not been proven

home front
those citizens who remain at home during a war

One way to understand the past is to undertake a historical inquiry. A historical inquiry is a process of asking questions, finding and analysing sources, and using information from sources as evidence to develop an informed explanation or argument about the past. Historians begin any historical inquiry by asking big questions. From research in response to these big questions, historians develop a **hypothesis** about what events took place, why, where, and who was involved.

The photograph in Source 3 shows a group of women working in a factory during World War II, assembling the wing of an aeroplane. Women workers on the **home front** were essential during the war to maintain the supply of weapons and other goods to the men on the battlelines.

KEY SKILL
Questioning & researching

Generating questions

Look closely at Source 3. This photograph could provide an interesting starting point for questioning and researching the roles of women during World War II. To help to guide the research process, think of some questions that begin with the words 'what', 'where', 'how', 'when' and 'why'; for example:

- What are the people in the photograph doing?
- Who are they?
- What are they building and what might it be used for?

These kinds of questions are known as closed questions, meaning they are usually quick and easy to answer, and they will provide you with facts. This is a good start.

However, in addition to asking closed questions, it is important that you ask more complex questions that require thought and reflection. These are known as open-ended questions. Open-ended questions such as 'What were working conditions like for these people?' and 'What effects did increasing numbers of women in the workforce have on society?' will often open up exciting new areas for you to explore.

Practise the skill

1. **Develop** two closed and two open-ended questions of your own that will help guide your research into women on the home front in Australia during World War II.
2. Once you have generated your questions, **identify** the information you will need to answer these questions and where you might be able to locate it.
3. Are there any questions for which you have not been able to find reliable information? What reasons might there be for this?

Source 3 Using sources such as this, historians can begin to develop a range of closed and open questions.

Locating relevant sources

artefacts
any objects that are made or changed by humans

Sources provide information for historians. They can take many different forms, from historical **artefacts** to written records in books or online. Some examples of sources include human remains, coins, textbooks, newspapers, letters and diaries.

Locating a range of relevant sources is a valuable skill which usually involves a number of different search methods, such as:

- checking catalogues at your school and local library
- using online search engines, such as Google, Yahoo and Bing
- visiting museum and government websites
- looking at newspaper and magazine archives
- contacting local historical societies
- interviewing older family members about the past.

Source 4 Most research today is conducted online.

Locating relevant sources online

Books and newspapers are valuable sources of information. A lot of research is also conducted online. In order to ensure that sources gathered online are accurate, reliable and relevant, a number of guidelines should be followed:

- Search engines are useful research tools, but sometimes material found online is not reliable and can contain inaccuracies, false and misleading information, or material that is out of date. When using search engines, be sure to define your search using keywords.
- A reliable way of searching for sources is to use sites linked to government departments, reputable companies, museums, universities and educational institutions. A quick way of telling if a site is reputable is to look at the suffix of the domain name in the URL (internet address). Some of the most common domain suffixes are listed in Source 5, along with some information about their reliability.
- Avoid blogs posted by unknown individuals. If you happen to find information relevant to your investigation on a blog or social media site, always verify it by using a more reliable source.
- Never cut and paste information from the internet straight into your own work. Taking someone else's work, ideas or words and using them as if they were your own is called plagiarism. Plagiarism is unethical and if you plagiarise, your work can be rejected.

Source 5 Some common domain suffixes and their characteristics

Domain suffix	Description
.edu	The site is linked to an educational institution, such as a university or school. These sites are generally very reliable.
.gov	The site is linked to a government institution. These sites are generally very reliable.
.net	The site is linked to a commercial organisation or network provider. Anyone is able to purchase a domain name with this suffix, and generally there is no one to regulate the information posted on these sites. As a result, these sites may be unreliable.
.org	This site is linked to an organisation. Generally, these organisations are not-for-profit (e.g. British Museum). If the organisation is reputable and can be contacted, it generally means that the information provided has been checked and verified by that organisation. You need to be aware of any special interests that the organisation may represent (e.g. particular religious, commercial or political interests), as this may influence what it has to say on a particular issue.
.com	This site is linked to a commercially based operation and is likely to be promoting certain products or services. Domain names with these suffixes can be purchased by anyone, so the content should be carefully checked and verified using another, more reliable source.

Referencing your sources

As you identify and locate relevant sources, it is essential that you record details to include in your reference list or bibliography.

Referencing a book

When citing (mentioning) a book in a bibliography, include the following, in this order, if available:

1. author surname(s) and initial(s)
2. year of publication (in brackets)
3. title of book (in italics)
4. edition (if relevant)
5. publisher
6. place of publication.

Author surname(s) and initial(s)

Year of publication (in brackets)

Title of book (in italics)

Easton, M., Carrodus, C., Wilson, A., Howitt, B., Wilson, J., Dumovich, V., Thomson, K., Delany, T., Ryan, M. and Cook, B. (2023), *Oxford Humanities and Social Sciences 10 Australian Curriculum*, 2nd Edition, Oxford University Press, Melbourne.

Edition

Publisher

Place of publication

Source 6 An example of how to cite a book in a bibliography

Referencing an online source

When citing an online source in a bibliography, include the following information, if available:

1. author surname(s) and initial(s) or organisation name
2. year of publication or date of webpage (last update)
3. title of document (article) enclosed in quotation marks
4. date of posting
5. organisation name (if different from above)
6. date you accessed the site
7. URL or web address enclosed in angled brackets <>.

Author surname(s) and initial(s) or organisation name

Year of publication

Title of article

Date of posting

Organisation/creator name (if different from above)

Date you accessed the site

Australian Government, 2014, 'Women in wartime', 2014, Big Black Dog Communications Pty Ltd, accessed 28 May 2022, <https://info.australia.gov.au/about-australia/australian-story/women-in-wartime>.

URL enclosed in angled brackets

Source 7 An example of how to cite an online source in a bibliography

Check your learning
Topic 7.2

7.3 Using historical sources

Understanding evidence and sources

KEY CONCEPT
Evidence

What is evidence?

Evidence is the information gathered from historical sources that can be used to develop, revise or support an argument or challenge an interpretation.

Evidence can be gathered from two types of sources:

- Primary sources are objects created or written at the time being investigated; for example, during an event or very soon after). Examples of primary sources include official documents (such as laws and treaties, personal documents (such as diaries and letters), photographs, films and documentaries. These original, firsthand accounts are analysed by historians to answer questions about the past.
- Secondary sources are accounts about the past that were created after the time being investigated. They often use or refer to primary sources and present a particular interpretation. Examples of secondary sources include writings of historians, encyclopaedia entries, documentaries, history textbooks, films, illustrations, reconstructions and websites.

Historians do not always agree on evidence, even when it is coming from the same source. They often have different opinions or points of view. This is why historians are constantly searching for new sources of evidence.

Source 8 Both of these sources depict the march for voting rights from Selma to Montgomery in Alabama, United States, 1965. However, the image on the left is a primary source while the image on the right is a secondary source. This is because the left-hand image is a photograph that was taken at the time, whereas the right-hand image is a still from a film, *Selma*, created in 2014.

The concept of evidence refers to the information obtained from historical sources that can be used in a historical argument. Understanding this concept will help you when using historical sources.

Understanding the origin, purpose and context of sources

Both primary and secondary sources are useful, but it is important to understand:

- where they came from (origin)
- what the creator of the source wanted to achieve (purpose)
- the historical setting in which they were created (context).

It is also important to understand motive, or why the source was created. These factors are important because they provide clues about the perspective of the person who made the source, as well as the attitudes and beliefs that were common at that time. All sources are influenced by the author's own perspective. In some cases the author may even have intentionally ignored certain facts because of their own views. This is referred to as **bias**, and is often aimed at persuading the reader to agree with the author's point of view. It is why historians must carefully analyse and evaluate all of the sources they use.

Asking 'who', 'what', 'when' and 'why' questions will help you identify the origin and purpose of the sources (see Sources 9 and 10).

bias
a pre-set view about someone or something that is not altered by the presentation of facts and opinions to the contrary

Source 9 Asking these questions will help you identify the origin and purpose of a source.

Who?	Who wrote, produced or made the source?	• From what perspective is the creator seeing the events? • Was the creator a member of a particular group, religion or organisation?
What?	What type of source is it?	• Was the source created at the time of the event or afterwards?
When?	When was the source written, produced or made?	• How old is the source? • Is the source an eyewitness account or was it created at a later date? • Is the source complete?
Why?	Why was the source written, produced or made?	• Was the source designed to entertain, persuade or argue a point of view? • Did the creator have anything to gain personally from creating the source? • What other events may have been happening at the time and might have influenced the creator or affected the source?

Source 10 The origin and purpose of these sources are very different, even though they are both related to the building of the Thailand–Burma Railway by Allied prisoners of war (POWs) during World War II.

- Source 10A is a primary source. It is an aerial photograph, taken on 5 February 1945, of a bridge built as part of the Thailand–Burma Railway over the River Kwai in Thailand. The bridge itself is also a primary source.
- Source 10B is a secondary source. This photograph was taken on location in Sri Lanka during the filming of the 1957 British–American war film, *The Bridge on the River Kwai*. This popular film (which is also a secondary source) gave a largely fictional account of events that took place during the construction of the bridge during World War II.

Collecting, comparing and selecting information

Once you have located and collected a variety of different sources and types of information to analyse, it is time to process and synthesise the most relevant information. This information can then be used as evidence. There are a number of ways to organise large amounts of information so that you can decide quickly and easily which sources provide the most useful, relevant and reliable evidence.

Graphic organisers are very useful tools for collecting, comparing and selecting suitable resources that you have located. A decision-making chart like the one in Source 11 can help you do this.

Source 11 A decision-making chart, showing how you might process, compare and select sources

RESEARCH TOPIC: What were the experiences of Allied prisoners of war during the construction of the Thailand–Burma Railway?

HYPOTHESIS: That Allied prisoners of war were treated so harshly that they died in their thousands.

Source 1	Category of source	Pros and cons	Reference
Source 1 'Changi', ABC website	Secondary source – special interest webpage	Pros: – The webpage includes some great primary sources. – The webpage is written by a reputable organisation (the ABC) and was developed to accompany a television documentary on the subject. Cons: – The webpage is not detailed enough. – The webpage is focused mainly on conditions at the prisoner of war camp known as Changi. Only a fairly small section of the article talks specifically about the Thailand–Burma Railway.	http://www.abc.net.au/changi/history/burma.htm (accessed 24 February 2021)
Source 2		Pros: Cons:	
Source 3		Pros: Cons:	
Source 4		Pros: Cons:	

Recommended sources in order of relevance and usefulness:

1
2
3
4

Evaluating the reliability and usefulness of sources

All sources (primary and secondary) should be evaluated for reliability and usefulness. The reliability and usefulness of a source will depend on the questions asked of it. A reliable source is a source that is able to be trusted because it provides good quality information.

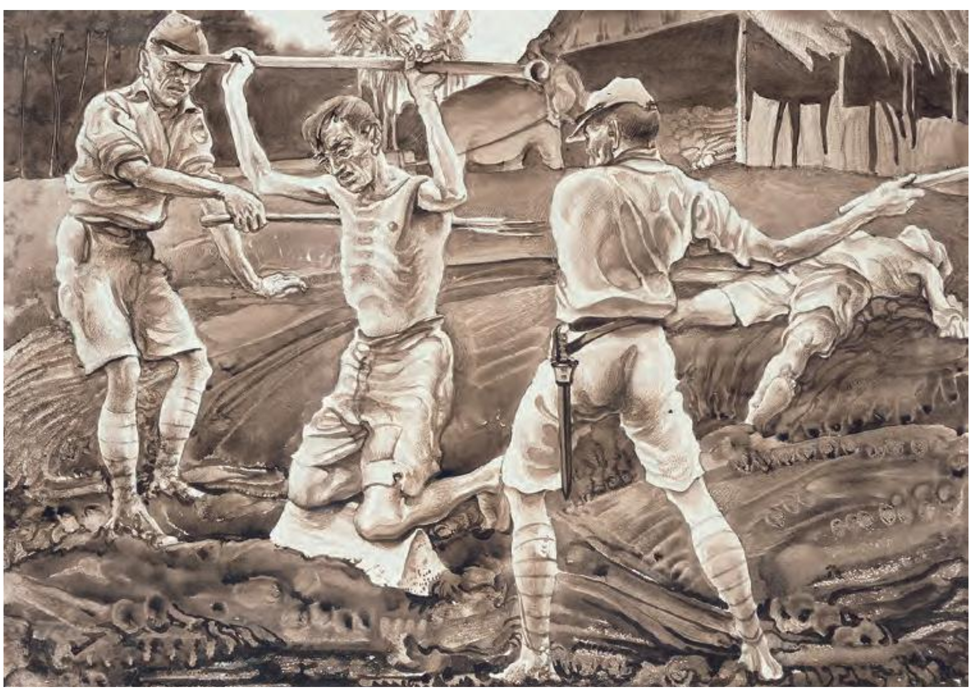
The usefulness of a source depends on what you intend to use it for. A source might not be useful in providing the information you are looking for, but it might be useful in showing the author's views about something, or showing the dominant attitudes of the time.

Asking the following questions will help you determine the reliability and usefulness of a source:

- Does it provide information that is supported and reinforced by evidence from other sources?
- Does it provide enough information and sufficient detail to help answer the research question?
- Is it balanced or does it present one point of view (in other words, is it biased)?
- Does it provide accurate information about events, or does it provide information about attitudes and opinions common at the time?
- Does it provide factual information or opinion? (See Source 12 for more on the difference between fact and opinion.) A source which provides opinions can still be reliable, if these opinions are backed up with evidence.

Source 12 The difference between fact and opinion

Term	Definition	Example	How to tell
Fact	Something that can be proved beyond doubt and across multiple sources	The crossing over the River Kwai in Kanchanaburi, Thailand, was built by Allied prisoners of war (POWs) and slave labourers under orders from the Japanese army during World War II.	This statement has been made in multiple, reliable sources.
Opinion	Something based on what a person (or persons) believes to be true, but that cannot necessarily be proven	I think the 1957 film *The Bridge on the River Kwai* shows that British prisoners of war suffered harsh treatment at the hands of the Japanese during the construction of the Thailand–Burma Railway.	Look for the use of words such as 'might', 'could' and 'think'. These indicate that an opinion is being expressed.



Source 13 This illustration was created in 1946 by Murray Griffin, a prisoner who was held at the Changi POW camp in Singapore. It depicts the kinds of punishments given to British and Australian POWs by the Japanese during the construction of the Thailand–Burma Railway. As a primary source created by a POW, this is a very useful source for understanding the experience of being a prisoner of war at this time.

KEY SKILL
Using historical sources

Analysing propaganda posters

Propaganda is information or material that attempts to influence the behaviour or opinions of people within a society. Regardless of the forms it takes (for example, posters, films or flyers), all propaganda is designed with the same goal in mind – to influence people's thoughts and actions by promoting a particular idea or course of action. Very often, propaganda is also designed to damage the reputation or cause of an enemy.

Throughout the first half of the twentieth century, propaganda posters were used by many nations. Although they do not always present the truth, these posters can tell us a lot about the time period by giving us insights into the opinions and attitudes that were popular at the time. The most effective propaganda poster uses a range of techniques to convey its message simply and directly.

When asked to analyse a propaganda poster, follow these steps:

Step 1 Look for evidence of a range of visual techniques. Propaganda posters use a range of visual techniques to grab the attention of viewers and get their message across quickly and effectively; for example:

1. ***Colours*** – often a combination of bright, bold colours (or dark, menacing colours) are used to convey a message, seize the viewer's attention and/or provoke some kind of emotional response.
2. ***Images and symbols*** – a range of different images and symbols are used to convey the message and/or identify people and countries. It is common for flags, logos and animals to be used to represent countries. For example, Source 14 proudly displays the symbols of the German eagle and the swastika to represent German strength and unity. It is also common for enemies to be represented using racist or derogatory imagery.
3. ***Text*** – most often, a clear and simple message accompanies a propaganda poster. This is often a call to action or a warning of some kind. For example, Source 14 declares 'Germany awake! List of candidates: 2 National Socialists'.

Source 14 A sample analysis of a National Socialist (Nazi) propaganda poster, *Germany Awake!* This poster was created by Felix Albrecht for the German federal elections, held 31 July 1932.

3 The text 'Germany awake!' calls the viewer to action. It suggests that Germany has been sleeping and that it is now time for action.

1 The strong use of red grabs the audience's attention and is associated with the greatness of the German Empire. Red was also the colour of the National Socialist (Nazi) Party.

2 The eagle is a traditional symbol of German strength and power. Its strength is emphasised by it being large and central.

3 The text 'List of candidates: 2 National Socialists' instructs people to vote for the National Socialist (Nazi) Party and tells them how to use the ballot paper.

2 The swastika became a symbol of Nazi strength and racial superiority in the 1930s and 1940s in Europe.

2 In the background, a large crowd of people all show their support for this message by raising their right arms in the air (the Nazi salute).

Step 2 Ask a range of questions to analyse the intended message and audience of the poster.

Once you have identified the main visual techniques being used, it is time to think more deeply about what the poster is trying to achieve. You can do this by asking questions, such as:

- Who is the intended audience? Who was the poster made for?
- What is the historical context of the poster? What year was it produced?
- What is the purpose of the poster? What is the intended message? What is it trying to get people to do?
- Is it effective at getting its message across to the audience? Why or why not?

Practise the skill

1 Use the steps provided above to **analyse** the propaganda poster in Source 15.

2 **State** the similarities and differences between Source 14 and Source 15. Which do you think is more effective at achieving its goal? Provide reasons for your answer.

Source 15 This Australian propaganda poster from 1942 reflects the threat and fear of Japanese invasion of Australia during World War II. (AWM TEP 393543)

Check your learning
Topic 7.3

7.4 Historical perspectives and interpretations

Sequencing events

chronology
a record of events in the order they took place

We can use chronological sequencing to demonstrate the relationship between events. **Chronology** can help us organise things that happened over a small period of time, such as a day or week, or large periods of time, such as hundreds of thousands of years. We can also use chronology to look at events that happened in one place or society, or compare events across many different places and societies. Chronology allows us to develop an ordered sense of time. Once events have been ordered chronologically, we are able to use a range of historical concepts such as cause and effect and continuity and change to analyse them in detail.

KEY SKILL
Historical perspectives & interpretations

Creating a timeline

Timelines are used by historians to order important events chronologically. Follow these steps when constructing a timeline:

Step 1 Work out the length of time you want to represent on your timeline, then divide it evenly into suitable blocks of time.

Step 2 To represent a large span of time, you may need to break your timeline into sections using a jagged line. This shows that a section of time has been left out and will ensure that your timeline will fit on the page!

Step 3 Mark specific dates into the timeline. These dates need to be accurately plotted so that they appear in chronological order. A full date with day and month can be added for particularly significant events if this is appropriate.

Step 4 Provide a brief description of what took place on each date on the timeline. You can include pictures and captions.

Practise the skill

1 **Create** your own timeline on one of the topics listed below:
- key battles of World War II
- Japan's involvement in World War II
- Australia's involvement in World War II.

Your timeline should have at least eight entries and feature at least two images, with captions.

28 June 1919
The Treaty of Versailles is signed, leaving Germany weak and humiliated.

30 January 1933
Hitler, leader of the National Socialist German Workers' (Nazi) Party, becomes Chancellor of Germany.

A portrait of Adolf Hitler

1 September 1939
Germany invades Poland. France and Britain declare war on Germany. Australia, as part of the British Empire, also declares war on Germany.

10 May 1940
France, Belgium, Norway, Denmark and the Netherlands fall to Germany.

22 June 1941
Germany invades the Soviet Union.

6 June 1944
The D-Day landing of Allied troops in Europe marks the turning point in the war in Europe.

8 May 1945
Victory in Europe Day – Germany is defeated and the war in Europe comes to an end.

Source 16 A simple timeline of some key events from 1919 to 1945

Analysing cause and effect

What is cause and effect?

The concept of cause and effect is used by historians to identify chains of events and developments, both in the short term and in the long term. Cause and effect aims to identify, examine and analyse the reasons why events have occurred and the resulting consequences or outcomes. It helps to think of cause and effect as the 'why' and 'what' of history.

Source 17 Germany's defeat in World War I led the leaders of the Allied forces to come together to decide the terms of the German surrender and agree on **reparations** to be paid by Germany as compensation (event). These terms were all outlined in the **Treaty of Versailles** (cause). They resulted in a range of short-term and long-term effects. Hyperinflation was one of many short-term effects in Germany brought about by the Treaty of Versailles. For a time, the prices of goods increased so rapidly that money became worthless and was burned for heat.

KEY CONCEPT
Cause & effect

reparations
money paid by one country to another as compensation for damage, injuries and deaths it has caused during war

Treaty of Versailles
the treaty (binding agreement) that ended World War I; it forced Germany to accept responsibility for starting the war and to pay reparations

The concept of cause and effect refers to short-term and long-term causes and consequences. Understanding this concept will help you understand historical perspectives and interpretations. The first step in analysing cause and effect is to identify the event, development or change. The next step is to identify the cause or causes of the event/development/change, and then the effects. Different types of causes might be social, economic or political, or a cause might be sudden and act as a catalyst (a trigger) for change.

Once the cause or causes of the event have been identified, identify the short-term and long-term effects. It is important to note that short-term and long-term effects can be intended (meant or planned), or unintended (not meant or not planned). Effects can be ranked in order of importance, according to their significance or impact. Once the effects have been identified, explain how each effect is linked to the cause, using historical sources as evidence for your response. Remember that historical events can have multiple causes, and multiple effects.

When analysing cause and effect, organising the dates of the event or issues into a chronology can help you observe the links between a cause and the short-term and long-term effects. Timelines can also be used to organise events, people and movements in a way that helps you identify links between the cause and effect of an event or change.

KEY SKILL
Historical perspectives & interpretations

Allies
the coalition of countries in opposition to the Central Powers in World War I; they included Britain, the Commonwealth, France and Russia, which were joined by the United States in 1917

Understanding German reparations

When the **Allies** defeated Germany in World War I, this led the Allied forces to come together and decide the terms of the German surrender. They agreed that Germany should pay reparations as compensation for the damage caused by the war. These terms were all outlined in the Treaty of Versailles (event). The Treaty of Versailles resulted in a range of effects – some short-term, others long-term – as outlined in Source 18. The aim of the Allies was not just to punish Germany, but also to make sure that Germany was too weak to ever pose a threat to European peace again. However, many historians now agree that it had the opposite effect. It is generally accepted that the effects of the Treaty of Versailles were such extensive economic suffering in Germany that it contributed to the rise of the Nazi Party and the start of World War II.

Source 18 Short- and long-term effects of the Treaty of Versailles

Short-term effects	Long-term effects
• feelings of humiliation and anger among the German people • severe economic difficulties and instability, leading to hyperinflation • high unemployment • unstable government • the scapegoating of groups such as the Jews and communists for the country's economic problems	• the rise of Adolf Hitler and the election of the Nazi Party to government in Germany, with promises to restore Germany to its former glory • the start of World War II, as Germany moved to 'reclaim' territories it had lost in Europe at the end of World War I • the events of the Holocaust

Practise the skill

1 **Summarise** the *cause* of the severe economic difficulties experienced by Germany after World War I.

2 a **Explain** how the *long-term effect* of the rise of Adolf Hitler is linked to the Treaty of Versailles.

b Do you think this long-term effect was intended or unintended? **Explain** your response.

Source 19 French Prime Minister Georges Clemenceau (left), US President Woodrow Wilson (centre) and British Prime Minister David Lloyd George (right) greet the crowd after signing the Treaty of Versailles on 28 June 1919. The Treaty of Versailles had many short-term and long-term effects.

Evaluating continuity and change

What is continuity and change?

Over time, some things stay the same, while others change. This concept is referred to as continuity and change. Historians refer to aspects of the past that have remained the same over time as continuities. Aspects of the past that do not stay the same are referred to as changes. Change can occur within a civilisation or time period, but also across different civilisations and time periods.

KEY CONCEPT Continuity & change

The concept of continuity and change refers to how things change or remain the same over time. Understanding this concept will help you understand historical perspectives and interpretations. To identify continuity and change, the sequence (order) of events and significance of these events (or people, issues or ideas) should be understood. Events should be put in chronological order to create a chronology that shows when a change occurred. A chronology can also be used to observe a certain period of time and identify patterns of continuity (or change) over time.

Once multiple changes within a period of time have been identified, these changes can be ranked in order of significance. The significance of a change can be decided by identifying how many people were affected by the change, how widespread the effects of the change were, and if the effects of the change can still be felt today.

Finally, examples of change within a period of time should be described and explained. When describing an identified example of change, you should note the type of change (for example, a change might be a social or political change), and the impact of the change. This will help you evaluate the impact that the change had on that period of time.

Source 20 The arrival of television in Australia in 1956 is an example of a change within Australian culture. This historically significant event changed how many Australians filled their leisure time, by allowing them to entertain themselves at home. The early years of television in Australia were dominated by American television programs, which transmitted American popular culture. In this way, the television was a vehicle for social and cultural change around Australia.

Exploring Australian propaganda

The use of **propaganda** in Australia during World Wars I and II provides an opportunity to consider continuity and change. The propaganda posters on page 238 were used in Australia. While all images encourage people to support the war effort, there are some key similarities (continuities) and differences (changes) between them. For example, the propaganda posters from both World War I and World War II use imagery such as German military uniforms and Japanese imperial flags to convey the threat of the enemy (an example of a continuity). The propaganda posters from World War I focus on Europe and Australia, while the propaganda posters from World War II extend the threat to other nations nearby to Australia, including New Guinea, Singapore and Malaya (an example of a change).

Practise the skill

1 What is the purpose of the propaganda posters shown in Sources 21 to 24?

2 **Identify** who is being demonised as the enemy in Sources 21 to 24.

continued on next page

KEY SKILL Historical perspectives & interpretations

propaganda
information or material that attempts to influence the behaviour or opinions of people within a society; propaganda can take many forms (e.g. posters, flyers, advertising campaigns, films) and is designed to promote a cause or course of action and/or damage the cause of an enemy

continued from previous page

3 a **Create** a basic chronology of the dates and key international events that involved Australia between World War I and World War II. In your chronology, include:

- the start and end dates (years) of World War I and World War II
- the forces Australia fought with in each war
- the forces Australia fought against in each war.

b Using your chronology, **propose** the cause of one example of change between two of the sources.

Source 21 A propaganda poster used to encourage Australian enlistment in World War I, following its outbreak in Europe

Source 22 A propaganda poster used to rally Australian support in World War II, following the Japanese attack on Darwin in 1942 (AWM ARTV09225)

Source 23 This poster, published around 1918, shows a 'Hun' (a derogatory word used to refer to Germans) as a brutal monster, with the blood of its victims dripping from Europe down towards Australia.

Source 24 An Australian propaganda poster produced in 1942, during World War II by the Department of Aircraft Production (Beaufort Division)

Comparing perspectives

KEY CONCEPT
Perspectives

What are perspectives?

A person's perspective is the position from which they see and understand events going on in the world around them. People will have different points of view about a particular event, person, civilisation or artefact depending on their perspective, which can be affected by their age, gender, social position and their beliefs and values.

Just like everyone else, historians see events from different perspectives, which can influence their interpretation of the past and the way in which they write about it. Despite their own perspectives, historians must try to understand the different values and beliefs that shaped and affected the lives of people who lived in the past.

For example, many people in Australia have different perspectives about the responsibility of our government to refugees. Consider the information below and how a historian's perspective may influence the way they write about the period.

At the end of the Vietnam War in 1975, the government of South Vietnam (supported by the United States, Australia and other anti-communist countries) was defeated by North Vietnam (supported by the USSR and other communist countries). The end of the war led to the reunification of North and South Vietnam under a communist government. Vietnamese people in the south who had supported US and Australian troops were regarded as traitors by the new government. Millions of people were sent to 're-education camps' where they were tortured or abused.

From 1975 onwards, well over 1 million refugees fled Vietnam, including by boat. The first 'boat people' from Vietnam to arrive in Australia landed in 1976. At the time, some parts of the Australian population believed that any refugees or asylum seekers should enter Australia through the established legal channels, and their view of 'boat people' was that they should not have arrived in Australia in this way. The view of the Vietnamese refugees who arrived by boat was that they had no option but to leave Vietnam in any way they could.

Source 25 South Vietnamese refugees travel to Australia by boat, 1976

Consider the perspective
Consider what you know or are able to find out about the creator or author of the source. For example, are you able to determine their cultural background, social status, profession, gender or beliefs? All of these factors affect a person's perspective, and their point of view about particular events will depend on their perspective.

Identify point of view
Look closely at the source. What is the creator's or author's view on the event detailed in the source?

Seek different perspectives
To avoid bias in your inquiry, seek different sources from alternative perspectives. For example, if the first source was created by a man, look for one created by a woman.

Source 26 Exploring historical perspectives

The concept of perspectives refers to the factors (such as age) which can shape a person's point of view. Understanding this concept will help you understand historical perspectives and interpretations. Primary and secondary sources reflect many different perspectives, interpretations and values from the past. While historical perspectives are likely to be quite different to our own, one way to appreciate the circumstances people faced in the past, and the motivations, values and attitudes behind their actions, is to use empathy. Empathy is the ability to 'walk in someone else's shoes' – to be aware of their feelings, thoughts and experiences.

You should always seek different perspectives to make sure your research avoids bias (see Source 26). When seeking different perspectives, it is important to remember that some groups in society will not be as well-represented in primary sources as others; for example, First Nations peoples, women, people of colour and people from lower classes.

Sources 27 and 28 are just two of many accounts that help historians form opinions about how the Japanese treated POWs during World War II. There are many other sources that provide further evidence from the perspectives of the POWs themselves, as well as from the perspectives of Japanese soldiers, Japanese military officials and social observers at the time. It is only when we consider the full range of different perspectives revealed through all available sources that we can begin to form an accurate and reliable picture of their experiences. Source 27 is an extract from an affidavit (sworn statement) by a former gunner (soldier), Reginald Melbourne, to the Australian War Crimes Registry. In it, he describes conditions in Changi, which was a notorious POW camp run by the Japanese. Source 28 explores the perspective of returned POWs and their families.

Source 27

After capture I was taken to Changi Camp, where I was with approximately 12 000 men, employed clearing the bombed area, also well sinking. Work was from 6 to 6, food was half a cup of cooked rice per man per day …

Whilst working at the river camp I witnessed a guard [known as the Black Snake] bash Gnr Jack Francis with a heavy stick many times and finally brutally kick him in the stomach and about the head. Francis died a few days later.

I was severely beaten by the Black Snake with a heavy bamboo. He knocked me down several times, then kicked me. I vomited frequently following the bashing, was unfit to work and generally was much knocked about. I was finally operated upon by Col Dunlop for a damaged bladder and internal injury.

Extract from an affidavit by former Gunner Reginald Melbourne to the Australian War Crimes Registry, recorded 2 January 1948

Source 28

The former Japanese prisoner J.T. Haig found the family circle difficult to fit into: his mother had died while he was away, and he hankered restlessly after the company of his own kind, his fellow ex-prisoners. One of those prisoners … returned with badly impaired vision and to a wife who felt she no longer loved him: she had become withdrawn from him after hearing nothing in three years, except that he was almost certainly dead. Their marital problem was finally overcome, but the damage to his sight was permanent.

Extract from a summary of interviews of World War II veterans in John Barrett, *We Were There*, Viking, 1987, pp. 379–87

Analysing historical interpretations and contestability

What are interpretations and contestability?

Historians use sources from the past to give meaning and order to the events of the past. In other words, they interpret sources to explain the why and how of past events. These explanations or interpretations can differ among historians.

Historians may have access to the same sources but draw different conclusions or provide different interpretations about what these sources tell us about the past. This is called contestability. Contested interpretations must be reasonable interpretations based on the available sources.

KEY CONCEPT Interpretations & contestability

interpretations the assumptions and conclusions historians make about an event after the fact; interpretations are formed by examining evidence

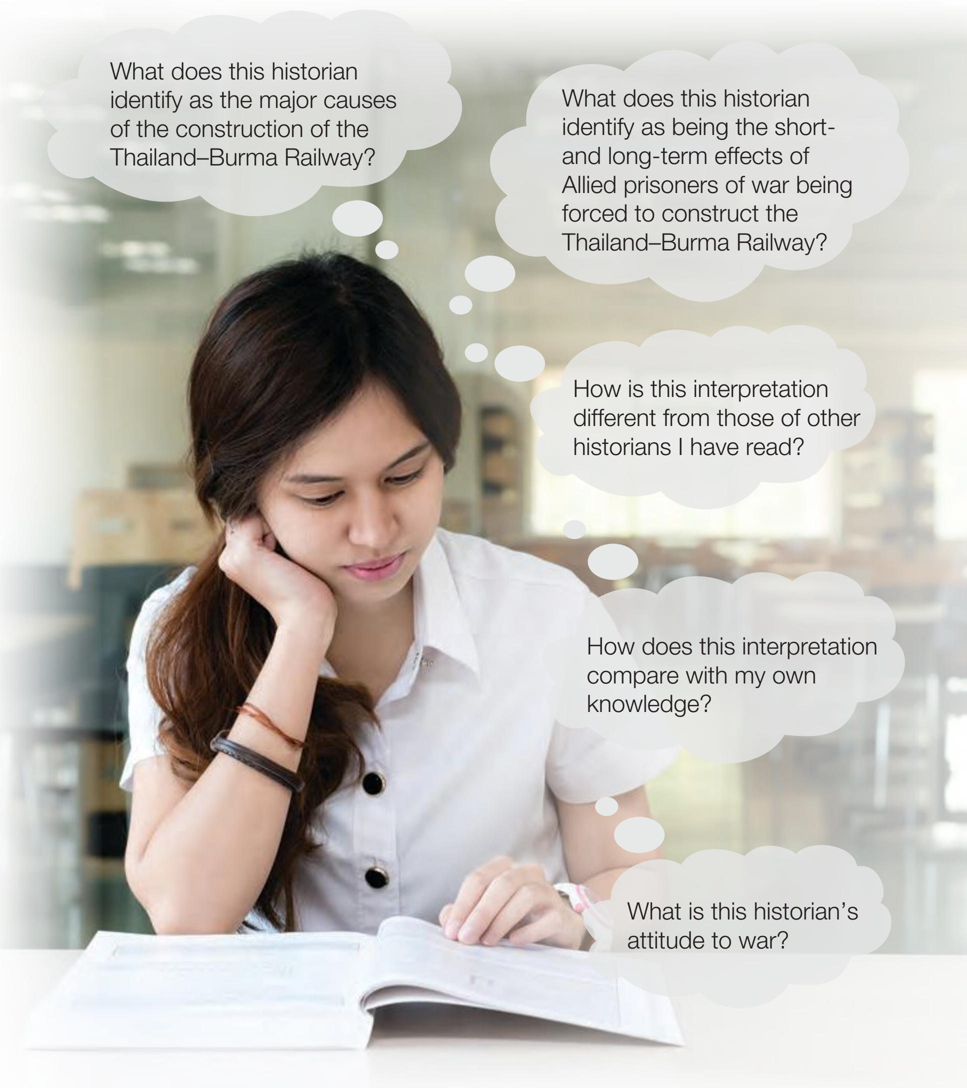
contestability refers to explanations or interpretations of past events that are open to debate

The concept of interpretations and contestability refers to explanations and debates about the past. Understanding this concept will help you understand historical perspectives and interpretations.

Explaining historical interpretations

The development of historical understanding about the past relies on the primary sources available to historians. The sources can be written sources, like inscriptions, laws, histories, memoirs and plays, or they can be artefacts, such as statues, coins, and buildings. Oral accounts of the past, passed down from generation to generation, are also primary sources. These sources are often fragmented or there may even be an over-abundance of sources. The role of the historian is to give meaning and order to the events of the past by interpreting the sources so that the why and the how of the past are explained.

These interpretations are only as reliable as the sources available, and the greater the scarcity of the sources, the more tentative are the historians' interpretations. Differences in interpretations do not make one historian's interpretation wrong and another one's right. A historian's interpretation of a source from the past must be a reasonable one, but there can often be different ways events can be understood and thus interpreted. For example, people in the past have not always made clear what the motives for their actions were, so historians need to interpret their actions to determine their motives. Students of history need to be able to analyse these interpretations and recognise their differences in their own historical arguments.



Source 29 Asking yourself these questions can help explain historical interpretations.

One of the roles of a historian is to look at primary sources and provide their own interpretation of them. Just like anyone else, historians have perspectives, which can influence their interpretation of the past and the way in which they write about it. As a result, historians around the world often have different conclusions about what the evidence from primary sources tell them. This is one of the exciting things about history – it is open to debate. There is often no right answer, and historians are always seeking a more complete understanding of the past.

It is important to question the historical interpretations that you come across. Remember: when we examine a secondary source about events or places from history, we are looking at the historical interpretation of the person who has created that source.

Source 29 (page 241) shows some of the questions you might ask when reading secondary sources about the experience of Allied soldiers in POW camps.

Exploring contestability

Historians may draw different conclusions or provide different interpretations about what sources tell us about the past. For example, there is an ongoing public debate in Australia about how to interpret and represent Australian history since British colonisation, particularly with reference to its impact on First Nations peoples. The growth of the civil rights movement in Australia since the 1960s prompted a new wave of historians to argue that 'official' Australian history since British colonisation had largely ignored the stories of hundreds of thousands of First Nations peoples who had suffered as a result. Historians such as Henry Reynolds wanted to correct the imbalance in the history books and acknowledge the murders, injustices and racial policies that had dominated the relationship between non-Indigenous people and First Nations peoples since Australia's colonisation.

Other historians resisted this approach to Australian history, arguing that it was too negative and obscured the achievements of 'white Australia'. Historians such as Geoffrey Blainey called it a 'black armband' view of history, while the conservative writer Keith Windschuttle has contested the extent of the harm inflicted on First Nations peoples by white settlers.

Source 30 The Australian Bicentenary 'celebrations' in 1988 – which marked 200 years of colonisation – attracted protests from both First Nations and non-Indigenous Australians who wanted the negative aspects of colonisation recognised.

Understanding significance

What is significance?

The concept of significance relates to the importance assigned to aspects of the past. This includes people, events, developments, discoveries, movements and historical sites. History is full of so many important events, significant people and interesting places. We need to make a judgment about which of them are worthy of study. In order to determine if a person, event, development, discovery, movement or site is historically significant, historians may ask the following questions:

- How important was it to people who lived at that time?
- How many people were affected by it?
- To what degree were people's lives affected by it?
- How widespread and long-lasting were its effects?
- Can its effects still be felt today?

KEY CONCEPT
Significance

The concept of significance refers to the widespread changes brought about by an event, person or development in the past and the continuing effects of those changes today. Understanding this concept will help you understand historical perspectives and interpretations. When analysing the significance of an event, development, issue, person, group or society, you should ask the questions listed in the key concept box above. For example, to what degree were people's lives affected by the event, development or issue you are analysing? Another method of deciding the significance of something is by asking the questions outlined in the '5Rs' of historical significance. Source 31 outlines each of the 5Rs of historical significance.

Source 31 The 5Rs of historical significance

	5Rs of significance	Questions to ask to decide on significance
R	Remarkable	What was the most notable thing about the event/individual/group of people?
R	Resulted in change	What happened as an immediate result of the event/individual/group of people (think short-term impacts)?
R	Revealing	What does the event/individual/group of people tell us about the time period?
R	Resonates	How does the event/individual/group of people (in the past) affect the lives of people today?
R	Remembered	How is the event/individual/group of people remembered today (think about evidence that still exists)?

Check your learning
Topic 7.4

7.5 Communicating

Using historical terminology

Quizlet
Become familiar with historical terms by reviewing them on Quizlet.

Additional resource
Using cognitive verbs

Just like scientists and mathematicians, historians share a common language. They use historical terms and concepts to clarify what they are talking about and share their findings. Source 32 lists and defines some important historical terms that you will come across during your study of the transformation of the modern world.

Source 32 Some useful historical terms in relation to the transformation of the modern world

Term	Definition
appeasement	a policy adopted by Britain and France towards Germany from the mid-1930s until 1939; it was designed to avoid a second world war by granting certain allowances to Hitler and the Nazi government
communism	a way of organising a society in which the means of production (e.g. factories, farms and machinery) are publicly owned (by the state) and goods are distributed equally according to need; as opposed to privately owned and controlled systems, such as capitalism
democracy	a political system (or system of government) where the people determine how they will be managed or governed, and may exercise the power to directly govern themselves or elect representatives to govern on their behalf
genocide	the deliberate and systematic (planned) mass killing of people based on their race, ethnicity, religion or culture
globalisation	the increasing interconnections between countries all around the world, particularly economic, political, trade and cultural exchanges to decrease the importance of national barriers to the production and trade of goods and services
Holocaust	deliberate and systematic (planned) mass murder of Jews and other 'undesirables' by the Nazis during World War II
immigration	the act of entering and settling permanently in a country or region to which a person is not native
imperialism	the method of extending a country's power and influence through colonisation, use of military force, or other means
propaganda	information or material that attempts to influence the behaviour or opinions of people within a society; propaganda can take many forms (e.g. posters, flyers, advertising campaigns, films) and is designed to promote a cause or course of action and/or damage the cause of an enemy
referendum	the method for changing the wording of the Australian Constitution; it requires a proposal for change to be approved by the Australian people in a compulsory public vote
Third Reich	third regime or third empire; the First Reich dated from 962 CE to 1806; the Second Reich was Imperial Germany (1871–1918); and Nazi Germany (1933–45) was described by Hitler as the Third Reich
White Australia Policy	a term used to describe a series of government policies introduced after Federation in 1901 that prevented 'non-white' immigrants from settling in Australia, instead favouring those from certain European nations (especially Britain); these policies were progressively overturned between 1949 and 1973

Using evidence from a range of referenced sources

Historical writing requires you to describe and explain events using information from a range of sources as evidence. You will often be required to outline the significance of a past event, while providing reasons for the event and referring to relevant evidence. As you have learnt, different types of sources need to be used to ensure that historical writing presents a balanced view and is supported by reliable evidence.

This year, you will be expected to use descriptions, explanations and historical arguments that include evidence from sources.

Writing descriptions

The purpose of descriptions is to give clear information about people, places or objects at particular moments in time. They focus on the main characteristics or features of particular people or things. They 'paint a picture' in words for readers, to increase their understanding.

Descriptions must be well planned. They must always follow a set structure, and events must be organised in chronological order. Use the structure in Source 33 or ask your teacher to provide you with a template.

Source 33 Structure of a description

Introduction	• Introduces the subject • States the name of the person or event • Outlines why the topic is important
Body	• The body provides details about the person or event (including dates and important facts) • Information must be organised in paragraphs, with a new paragraph for each detail • Quotations and descriptive words must be used where relevant
Conclusion (optional)	• Revisits the most important details and provides a concluding statement

Writing explanations

The purpose of explanations is to tell how or why something happened. They provide the reader with a greater understanding of the causes and effects of past events. Explanations must be clear and factual. They should not contain opinions or emotional language. There must be supporting evidence from a variety of sources for each point made, and these sources must be acknowledged in a bibliography using the correct referencing format.

How to reference in an explanation

When you use information from a source within the explanation, either by a direct quote or an indirect reference, the source needs to be acknowledged. This is done in various ways, depending on the referencing system you are using. One of the simplest referencing systems is the Harvard method, where quotes and indirect references are acknowledged within the text. This is done by placing basic information about the source after the quote or the indirect reference. In brackets write the name of the author, the year the source was published and the page number where it occurs (Smith 1999:234).

If you are using the Oxford method for your citations, number each quote or indirect reference in superscript at the end of the quote within the text and provide the details in a footnote below. The footnote should contain the full details of the source: author, title, place of publication, publisher, date of publication and page number.

These are just two methods of referencing. Whichever method you use, it is important that you use that method consistently.

Use the structure in Source 34 for your written explanation, or ask your teacher to provide you with a template.

Source 34 Structure of an explanation

Introduction	• Clearly states the main idea or aim • Briefly outlines the reasons why an event occurred and its effects
Body	• Each idea must be supported by evidence; the evidence should be analysed to explain its significance or importance • Information must be organised in paragraphs, with a new paragraph for each detail • Language should be precise and not contain emotional words • Personal opinions should be avoided
Conclusion (optional)	• Provides a short and clear overview of the main ideas presented in the body • States a conclusion drawn from the evidence

Additional resource
A sample bibliography

All historical writing needs to be acknowledged. At the end of your writing you must always include a full reference list, or bibliography. This list shows your readers the range of different sources of evidence you used and where they can be found. A sample bibliography is available on your obook pro.

Check your learning
Topic 7.5

Writing arguments

Historical arguments identify different possibilities in historical interpretations and argue a point of view. Historical arguments must reference the available evidence. Source 35 can be used as a guide to writing a historical argument that will effectively communicate the evidence from your research that supports your inquiry.

Source 35 Structure of a historical argument

Introduction	• This clearly states the topic of the investigation. • It outlines the line of argument that will be followed and why that line is being taken. • The aim of the introduction is to make the line of argument you are adopting clear to the reader.
Body	• Information should be presented in paragraphs that link sequentially and logically. • Each paragraph should introduce a key point of your argument and the evidence that supports it. • All evidence and specific examples used should be analysed, explaining why they are an important part of the argument. • Each paragraph should be linked to the one that follows it. • The aim of the body is to provide the evidence and specific examples that convince the reader of the validity of your argument. It should contain a range of relevant sources that support your point of view.
Conclusion	• This provides a short and clear overview of the main ideas presented in the body. • It states a conclusion drawn from the evidence. • The aim of the conclusion is to reinforce to the reader why your argument is valid.

Source 36 below is an annotated historical argument which argues a point of view and references evidence.

Source 36 An example of a written historical argument

How realistic was the United States' claim that the use of the atomic bomb against Japan in 1945 was the result of strategic imperatives and not revenge?

Introduction Sets the context Outlines the argument Makes the writer's point of view clear No quotes or references should occur in the introduction – this is not where you try to prove anything. Try to avoid a simplistic beginning – e.g. 'The United States' claim was very realistic …'.	When the US Air Force dropped atomic bombs on the Japanese cities of Hiroshima and Nagasaki in August 1945, many US citizens believed that it was justified revenge for the Japanese attack on Pearl Harbor and brutal treatment of US prisoners of war. The United States was keen to characterise Japan as a brutal and lawless nation, but argued it was a strategic decision to use the bomb. The United States considered this to be the only way to quickly end the war in the Pacific (therefore saving the lives of thousands of US military personnel and even Japanese people). The alternative was an invasion of Japan, but this would have lengthened the war by months or years, at an enormous cost.
Body paragraphs Topic sentence Support argument with: Evidence in the form of reference to sources or information **In-text referencing:** Surname of author, date of publication and page number (if available) Topic sentence links to last sentence of previous paragraph	It is clear that the US government was keen to 'punish' Japan, not only for Pearl Harbor but also for Japan's treatment of US POWs. 'We have used it (the atomic bomb) against those who attacked us without warning at Pearl Harbor, against those who have starved and beaten and executed American prisoners of war' (Truman 1945). The attack on Pearl Harbor on 7 December 1941, 'a date which will live in infamy' (Roosevelt 1941), increased US hatred for the Japanese. This worsened after the Bataan Death March in 1942 in the Philippines, when hundreds of US and Filipino POWs were brutally treated or killed. Underlying this hatred was obvious racism against the Japanese. Japanese people were constantly dehumanised and their culture was ridiculed in US propaganda. Japanese–Americans were rounded up and placed in internment camps. However, racism and revenge were not Truman's primary motives. The US government was convinced that Japan would not surrender unless drastic action forced it to. After months of napalm fire-bombing of Japanese cities, which killed thousands and left cities in ruins, Japan still seemed unlikely to surrender. The majority of US citizens believed 'the bombs were necessary to end the war against a fanatical enemy quickly and save untold numbers of American lives' (Dower 2008). The willingness of the Japanese to fight to the death, as seen at Iwo Jima and Okinawa, convinced the US military command that an invasion of Japan would continue the war with a huge loss of US lives. Even after the first bomb was dropped on Hiroshima, kamikaze attacks continued against US naval vessels and several US POWs were beheaded.
Conclusion Sums up the argument Reasserts the message from the introduction No new information should be added, and no evidence used – this is not the place to continue proving your points.	Truman insisted that using the bomb was a military decision, not an act of revenge, despite comments he later made after the event. Thousands of US lives were saved. Had the US government decided to instead invade Japan, the war would have continued indefinitely. Japan had made clear it would have defended its homeland to the very end. The representation of the Japanese throughout the war as less than human showed the racism of the US government and revenge was also a factor. However, for those who had to make the final decision about using atomic bombs, strategic imperatives were the most compelling factor.

A **reference list** consists only of those books, journals, etc. that you *referred to in the essay* and includes the relevant page numbers.

A **bibliography** is a list of the books, journals, internet sites you *consulted*. A bibliography for this historical argument is provided on your obook pro.

Check the referencing system your school uses (for example, the Harvard method) and follow that format.

CHAPTER 8

World War II (1939–1945)

World War I was called 'the war to end all wars', yet only 20 years after it ended, the world was again plunged into war. World War II was fought from 1939 to 1945 in almost every part of the globe. Battles were fought between two military alliances: the Allies – including France, Britain, the Commonwealth, the United States and the Soviet Union – and the Axis Powers – including Germany, Italy and Japan.

Although the official numbers of those killed and wounded are impossible to confirm, it is clear that World War II was responsible for a devastating loss of life. Historians estimate that between 60 million and 85 million people died, with at least 40 million of those killed being civilians. Among the dead were around 6 million Jews murdered by Nazi forces under the command of German dictator Adolf Hitler. This systematic persecution and murder of Jews became known as the Holocaust. It was one of the most significant events of World War II.

Source 1 Australian soldiers train with fixed bayonets in southern England in June 1940, shortly after arriving from Australia.

World War II (1939–1945)

8A

What were the causes of World War II and what course did it take?

8B

What were some of the most significant events of World War II?

8C

How did World War II affect the lives of Australians and Australia's international relationships?

8.1 World War II: a timeline

Sequence this!
Key events in World War II

1919 | 1933 | 1938 | 1939 | 1940 | 1941

1919
The Paris Peace Conference is held and the Treaty of Versailles is signed, leaving Germany humiliated.

30 January 1933
Hitler becomes Chancellor of Germany, leading the National Socialist German Workers Party (better known as the Nazi Party).

9–10 November 1938
A series of attacks take place on Jewish homes, businesses and synagogues across Germany and Austria. The attacks become known as *Kristallnacht* (Night of the Broken Glass).


A Jewish-owned shopfront after *Kristallnacht*

1 September 1939
Germany attacks Poland and German troops cross the border, causing Britain and France to declare war on Germany. All countries in the British Empire, including Australia, also declare war on Germany.

1940
France, Belgium, Norway, Denmark and the Netherlands fall to Germany. The Dunkirk evacuation takes place.


The signing of the Treaty of Versailles in 1919


USS *Arizona* sinking in Pearl Harbor – the United States enters the war the next day.

Source 1 A timeline of some key events and developments relating to World War II

Adolf Hitler touring the French capital, Paris, in June 1940 – one year before invading the Soviet Union

The Kokoda campaign

An aerial view of Hiroshima, Japan, after the atomic bomb was dropped

22 June 1941
Operation Barbarossa (the German invasion of the Soviet Union) begins.

December 1941
The Japanese attack Pearl Harbor and Singapore. The war in the Pacific begins.

1942

19 February 1942
The Japanese bomb Darwin. Australia is put on a 'total war' footing.

July–November 1942
The Kokoda campaign is fought between Australia and Japan in Papua.

1944

6 June 1944
The D-Day landing of Allied troops in Europe takes place.

1945

30 April 1945
Hitler commits suicide in Berlin, leading to the surrender of Germany.

8 May 1945
VE (Victory in Europe) Day marks the end of the war in Europe.

6–9 August 1945
The United States drops two atomic bombs on the Japanese cities of Hiroshima (6 August) and Nagasaki (9 August), leading to Japan's surrender.

15 August 1945
VP (Victory in the Pacific) Day marks the end of the war in the Pacific.

8.1 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 **Identify** the year in which Hitler became Chancellor of Germany.

2 **Identify** when Britain and France declared war on Germany.

3 **Identify** when Darwin was bombed by the Japanese.

Analyse

4 a **Identify** the event that initiated the Pacific War.

b Without doing any further reading, **distinguish** between the war in Europe and the Pacific War, and give reasons for your response. Remember, when you distinguish between two things, you must talk about how they are different.

5 Calculate how long the Pacific War lasted.

Apply

6 **Propose** (put forward) one way that the Paris Peace Conference may have contributed to the beginning of World War II.

8.2 Causes of World War II

Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» explain the causes of World War II.

The fighting of the 'Great War' came to an end in late 1918, as the **Allies** – who had been bolstered by American troops and resources from 1917 – found success on the Western Front. Faced with imminent invasion, Germany signed an **armistice** in a railroad car outside of Compiègne, France. This took effect at the 11th hour on the 11th day of the 11th month of 1918, thus ending what would become known as World War I.

Just 20 years later, Europe was once again at war. At the time, many people blamed the outbreak on those who had negotiated the terms of peace at the end of World War I. In particular, they blamed the treaty (binding agreement) that Germany was forced to sign – the Treaty of Versailles. The reality was more complex than that, however; and many short- and long-term factors contributed to the outbreak of conflict in 1939.

Allies
the coalition of countries in opposition to the Central Powers in World War I; they included Britain, the Commonwealth, France and Russia, which were joined by the United States in 1917

armistice
a formal agreement during a war to stop fighting and discuss making peace

Central Powers
the coalition of countries in opposition to the Allies in World War I; they included Germany and Austria-Hungary, which were joined by the Ottoman Empire in November 1914

reparations
money paid by one country to another as compensation for damage, injuries and deaths it has caused during war

hyperinflation
extremely rapid and uncontrolled inflation (price rises); Germany experienced hyperinflation from 1921 to 1924, during which time prices rose so rapidly that money was effectively worthless

The Treaty of Versailles

In January 1919, 32 countries sent representatives to the Paris Peace Conference – at the Palace of Versailles, outside Paris – to negotiate the terms of surrender for the defeated **Central Powers**. The months of tense negotiations were dominated by the four major powers (see Source 2). The Treaty of Versailles, which was signed on 28 June 1919, brought World War I to an end. It imposed a series of harsh terms on Germany (see Source 3), and forced Germany to accept responsibility for starting the war.

Source 2 (From left) British Prime Minister David Lloyd George, Italian Prime Minister Vittorio Orlando, French Prime Minister Georges Clemenceau and US President Woodrow Wilson – known as the 'Big Four' – in Paris during negotiations for the Treaty of Versailles

Source 3 Key outcomes of the Treaty of Versailles

• Germany had to pay **reparations** in the amount of 132 billion gold marks or £7 billion – equivalent to roughly AU$670 billion today.
• Germany's army was limited to 100 000 men, conscription was banned, the German air force was disbanded, and the production of weapons and ammunitions in German factories was limited.
• German territory was given to neighbouring nations, such as France, Denmark, Belgium and Poland. Germany's allies in the war were also punished, e.g. the borders of the Austro-Hungarian Empire were redrawn in order to create Czechoslovakia and Yugoslavia (see Source 4).
• German colonies were divided between the Allies – including Australia, which claimed German New Guinea and Nauru.
• The League of Nations was established – an organisation formed with the aim of preventing another war and maintaining world peace by settling disputes between nations through negotiation (see the key concept box on the opposite page).

The terms of the Treaty of Versailles were devastating for Germany, both politically and economically. They created a weak and unstable economy, with mass unemployment and **hyperinflation**. Over time, this led to a sense of resentment and bitterness among the German people. Many of them felt that they had been unfairly treated. This resentment was exploited by a number of German politicians during the 1920s and 1930s.

In addition, the treaty alienated some of the Allies. For example, Italy was outraged that it received few benefits for joining the Allies.

EUROPE: BORDERS AFTER THE TREATY OF VERSAILLES

Source 4 Source: Oxford University Press

Think, pair, share
Look at the disputed areas in Source 4.
- Think about the Treaty of Versailles and the punishments imposed upon Germany.
- Discuss your ideas with a partner.
- Share your thoughts with the class.

The Treaty of Versailles also sowed the seeds for the Pacific War. Japan was permitted to keep Chinese territory it had seized from Germany during the war. However, Japan unsuccessfully tried to introduce a 'racial equality' clause into the treaty. The clause was opposed by Britain and Australia in particular. Japan's failure to ensure its equality with the other powers contributed to the breakdown in Japan's relations with the West, and the rise of Japanese **nationalism** and **militarism**.

nationalism
a sense of pride in, and love of, one's country; also the idea that one nation's culture and interests are superior to those of another nation

militarism
a focus within a country on boosting the strength of the military by growing the armed forces and increasing spending on military equipment

The League of Nations

The League of Nations was established in 1920 as a result of the Treaty of Versailles. It was the first international organisation formed to maintain world peace and prevent the outbreak of future wars by encouraging nations to negotiate with each other rather than engage in military conflicts. At organised hearings, aggressive countries could be warned, punished with economic sanctions or threatened with military action. Forty-two countries, including Australia, joined the League of Nations.

The League of Nations had no armed forces of its own, and little power to force members to comply with its decisions. It had some minor successes in the 1920s, such as resolving territorial disputes between some countries in Europe, but it failed in its central aim of preventing another world war. By 1939, Japan, Germany, Italy and the Soviet Union had all left the League.

Despite its failure, the League of Nations is still considered to be significant in history because it laid the foundations for the formation of the United Nations at the end of World War II (see topic 8.16 on page 306).

For more information on this key concept, refer to page 243 of 'The history toolkit'.

KEY CONCEPT
Significance

Increasing resentment

Following the end of World War I in 1918, a new democratic government, known as the Weimar Republic, took power in Germany. Even though this government had no choice in the matter, many Germans blamed it for agreeing to the terms of the Treaty of Versailles, and it was very unpopular with the people.

The new government also had serious economic problems to deal with. The Great Depression had a severe impact on Germany, with mass unemployment, record price rises and a fall in the standard of living.

As a result of these tough economic and political conditions, several political movements and ideologies became popular in Europe and Asia, including nationalism, militarism, imperialism, **fascism** and **communism**. These movements emphasised strict government control and military power, and were quick to take hold in countries such as the Soviet Union, Italy, Japan and Germany.

fascism
a way of organising a society in which a government ruled by a dictator has complete power over the lives of the people, commerce and industry, and in which any criticism of or opposition to the government is suppressed by force

communism
a way of organising a society in which the means of production are publicly owned and goods are distributed equally according to need

antisemitism
prejudice, hatred or discrimination against Jews

socialists
people advocating socialism; a political and economic theory that promotes the public ownership of a nation's resources and means of production by all citizens; under socialism, all citizens share equally in economic resources, as allocated by a democratically elected government

The rise of Hitler

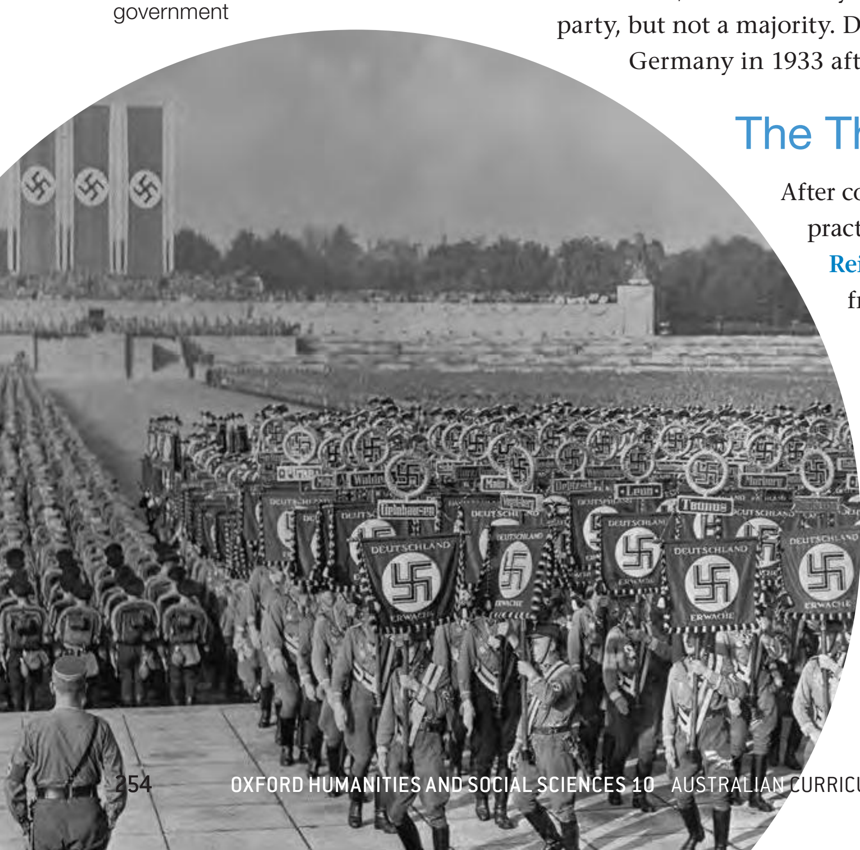
In 1920, a fascist group formed in Germany called the National Socialist German Workers' Party – better known as the Nazi Party. Adolf Hitler, who was elected chairman of the party in 1921, had fought with the German army in World War I and, like most Germans, resented the restrictions placed on Germany by the Treaty of Versailles.

Hitler was a strong and charismatic leader, supported by a small, powerful inner circle of people. The Nazi ideology was built on German nationalism, anticommunism, imperialism, **antisemitism**, and the idea that ethnic Germans were racially superior to all other races. Nazis also believed in the 'stab-in-the-back myth'. This was the idea that Germany was not defeated in World War I on the battlefield, but was betrayed by **socialists** (creating the Weimar Republic) and Jews living in Germany.

The Nazi Party attempted to seize power in 1923 in Munich in an uprising known as the 'Beer Hall Putsch'. This uprising failed, and the ringleaders, including Hitler, received short prison sentences. After this incident, Hitler was determined to win power legally at the ballot box. In November 1932, the Nazi Party received 37.3 per cent of votes – more than any other party, but not a majority. Due to his popularity, Hitler was appointed Chancellor of Germany in 1933 after negotiating a deal with other leaders.

The Third Reich

After coming to power, Hitler began putting his beliefs into practice. The period of his rule became known as the **Third Reich**. During this time there was little or no personal freedom. People were encouraged to report on friends, neighbours and even family members suspected of disloyalty to the regime. **Propaganda** and large, well-organised rallies were used to convince citizens of the legitimacy of the regime and to silence critics. Punishments were severe, and often involved torture and imprisonment. Jews were the primary targets of Nazi persecution. Other targets included writers, artists, playwrights, university professors and others traditionally associated with free thinking.



Source 5 Members of the Nazi Party display their strength at the 1933 Nuremberg Rally.

Ceremonies, uniforms, symbols, marches, music and rallies were used by the Nazis to create a sense of belonging and show strength. There was a particular attempt to gain the support of young people through organisations such as Hitler Youth and the League of German Girls. The huge Nuremberg rallies held in the 1920s and 1930s played an important role in gaining popular support for the Third Reich (see Source 5).

Third Reich
third regime, or third empire; the First Reich dated from 962 CE to 1806; the Second Reich was Imperial Germany (1871–1918); and Nazi Germany (1933–45) was described by Hitler as the Third Reich

propaganda
information or material that attempts to influence the behaviour or opinions of people within a society; propaganda can take many forms (e.g. posters, flyers, advertising campaigns, films) and is designed to promote a cause or course of action and/or damage the cause of an enemy

Quiz me!
A quick quiz on the causes of World War II

Source 6 Nazi propaganda posters showing the swastika and the eagle (both symbols of the Third Reich); these posters were used at the Nuremberg rallies, called *Reichsparteitag*, meaning 'Reich Party Convention'. Held in 1923, 1927, 1929 and annually between 1933 and 1938, these rallies celebrated the Third Reich. The text on the left-hand poster reads: 'German unity – German power'.

8.2 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 **Identify** three of the conditions imposed on Germany by the Treaty of Versailles.
2 **State** when the League of Nations was formed and outline the reasons for its creation.
3 **State** two ways in which the Third Reich restricted personal freedom.

Comprehend

4 **Explain** why the Weimar Republic was unpopular in Germany in the 1920s.
5 **Describe** the process by which the Nazis created a sense of belonging among German people.

Analyse

6 **Examine** the propaganda posters in Source 6.
  a What impression do they create of the Nazi regime and the Third Reich?
  b What aspects of the posters (such as signs, symbols, colours) help to create this impression?
  c Explain the context of these posters.
7 **Apply** the concept of cause and effect to explain how different political ideologies such as fascism became popular at this time. See page 245 of 'The history toolkit' for more information on this concept.

Apply

8 Even though the League of Nations ultimately failed, many historians still consider its formation to be a significant historical event. **Propose** two reasons why this is so.
9 Which cause of the war do you think was the most important? **Justify** (give reasons for) your answer.
10 Use the information in this topic to **create** a timeline showing the events that took place between 1918 and 1938.

8.3 Significant individual: Adolf Hitler

Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» summarise key events and influences in Adolf Hitler's life and his rise to power.

For generations, the name Adolf Hitler has been linked with the idea of 'evil' and an 'authoritarian **dictator**'. It is important to understand how Hitler exploited the democratic processes in Germany to seize unparalleled power and impose his ideology on the world.

dictator
a political leader who has complete power over a country, especially one who has gained it using military force

Early life

Hitler was born in the town of Braunau (present-day Austria) in 1889. He was very close to his mother, Klara, but is said to have had a bad relationship with his father, Alois, who worked in the Austrian public service and died when Hitler was 13. Hitler showed early academic promise in primary school, but dropped out of secondary school at 16 and went to Vienna to become an artist.

During his time in Vienna, Hitler was a drifter. He was twice rejected by the Academy of Fine Arts. Historians debate whether Hitler already held antisemitic views before he moved to Vienna, or whether his experiences there caused him to look for others to blame and inspired his hatred of Jewish people.

During World War I

Despite his Austrian birth and his father's position, Hitler became a strong believer in German nationalism. He evaded **conscription** into the Austro-Hungarian army by travelling across the border to Munich, where he enlisted in the German army in 1914. He served as a message runner on the Western Front – a job that was considered 'safe'. Nevertheless, he was wounded in October 1918, and was in hospital at the time of the armistice (ceasefire). He passionately opposed the armistice and believed that Germany should never have surrendered. This influenced his later ideology. During the war, Hitler's superiors thought he lacked leadership skills, so he was never promoted beyond the rank of corporal.

conscription
the compulsory recruitment of people to serve in the armed forces, often during times of war

Source 7 Hitler salutes members of the Nazi Party, Nuremberg, 1927.

Key influences and ideas

Hitler was influenced by a number of competing ideologies, such as German nationalism, ideas of 'racial purity', anticommunism and – arguably most importantly – by antisemitism. Antisemitism existed in German society, and in other European countries, long before the Nazi Party came to power in 1933. In fact, it can be traced back as far as the ancient world. Hitler's political career began in 1919 when he joined the German Workers' Party (DAP), a small group of extreme nationalists and antisemites who saw their role as trying to convince the German people that Jews were primarily responsible for Germany's plight. In July 1921, he took over the leadership of the party. It had been renamed the National Socialist German Workers' Party (NSDAP), or Nazi Party.

The Nazis wanted to make Germany great again after its defeat in World War I. As part of this goal, they used pseudo-scientific theories about race that have since been discredited. These theories divided the human race into a hierarchy of distinct racial groups. The nationalist movement and the pseudo-scientific **eugenics** movement (see topic 8.7 on page 272) influenced their thinking. The Nazis believed that 'Aryan' Germans were a 'master race', destined to rule the world. Jews were seen as the single most dangerous threat to this plan because of their supposed racial differences, economic power and social values.

eugenics
the belief in (and practice of) 'improving' the genetic qualities of the human race by discouraging people with 'genetic defects' or 'negative genetic traits' (characteristics) from reproducing and/or encouraging people with 'positive genetic traits' to reproduce

The Nazis used antisemitic propaganda to influence the German public. Jews everywhere were portrayed as acting as a single unit. Antisemitism was emphasised as a 'racial' prejudice rather than a religious one.

In order to achieve an 'Aryan' society, other races considered by the Nazis to be 'weak' or 'polluting' were to be removed. In addition to Jews, these groups included Sinti and Romani peoples (often referred to as 'gypsies') and Slavs (Polish and Russian people), as well as non-racial groups, such as people with disabilities, Jehovah's Witnesses, communists and those who did not conform to traditional heterosexuality. Nazi persecution of these groups was widespread, but Jews in particular were made scapegoats for many of Germany's problems.

Rise to power

The Nazi Party's first attempt to seize power in 1923 was a disaster. Hitler was charged with treason (betrayal of country), but received friendly treatment from the court. In his defence he claimed honourable and nationalistic motives. The judge allowed Hitler to discuss his ideas in court, with few restrictions. He eventually served only eight months in prison, enjoying many privileges – such as daily visits from friends and family, and no forced labour. Hitler used this time to write *Mein Kampf* ('My Struggle'), a book outlining his ideology, experiences and plans for the Nazi Party.

*** I used to think, now I think**

Reflect on your learning about the influence of pseudo-scientific theories on the Nazi Party and complete the following sentences.
- I used to think ...
- Now I think ...

What has changed in your understanding?

On his release from jail, Hitler decided that the Nazis should try to gain power by exploiting the political system rather than attacking it. His party gained a small number of seats in the Reichstag (the German legislative assembly) during the 1920s, but it was the **Great Depression** that gave the party its real opportunity, as Hitler spoke of strengthening the economy and providing jobs.

Great Depression
a period of severe economic downturn between 1929 and 1934 that affected most countries around the world

By 1932 the Nazi Party was the largest single party in the Reichstag. Hitler was appointed Chancellor of Germany in January 1933 by President Hindenburg.

When the Reichstag caught fire in February 1933, Hitler was granted emergency powers through the *Enabling Act 1933* – effectively, this provided him with the ability to eventually remove opposition parties and cement himself as a dictator. After Hindenburg's death in 1934, Hitler combined the roles of Chancellor and President, making himself the *Führer* (supreme ruler) of Germany. Hitler's government then began implementing many of the plans and policies described in *Mein Kampf*, a number of which directly violated the restrictions imposed by the Treaty of Versailles. These included the expansion of the military, reintroduction of conscription, expansion of Germany's borders, systematic persecution of the Jewish community, and compulsory sterilisation for many Jewish and Sinti/Roma people, as well as those with disabilities.

For the first three years of World War II, Hitler's popularity remained strong. However, in 1942 Germany suffered severe military losses and German cities were regularly bombed by the **Allied Powers**. Some Germans began to turn against Hitler. There were at least 17 recorded assassination attempts against him and many more were rumoured to have occurred. Hitler gradually withdrew from public life and directed operations from his underground 'bunker' in Berlin.

Hitler took his own life as the Soviet army overran Berlin on 30 April 1945.

Allied Powers
the coalition of countries in opposition to the **Axis Powers** in the World War II; they included Britain, the Commonwealth and France, which were joined by the United States and the Soviet Union in 1941

Axis Powers
the coalition of countries in opposition to the Allied Powers in World War II; they included Germany, Italy and Japan

Quiz me!
A quick quiz on Adolf Hitler

Source 8 Hitler delivering a speech in Germany, 1940 – he was known to be a powerful public speaker, which helped spread his popularity.

8.3 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 In your own words, **define** the 'Great Depression'.
2 **State** Hitler's nationality.
3 **State** four facts about Hitler's childhood and teenage years.

Comprehend

4 **Summarise** Hitler's experience during World War I, including:
- which job he performed in the German army
- why he was never promoted beyond the rank of corporal.

5 **Describe** some of the key characteristics of Hitler's ideology.
6 **Explain** how the Great Depression helped Hitler and the Nazis rise to power.
7 **Explain** how Hitler exploited the democratic process to seize power.

Apply

8 What special treatment did Hitler receive when he was tried for treason after the Nazi Party's first attempt to seize power in 1923? **Propose** two reasons why this may have been the case.
9 **Conduct** a class debate on the following topic: 'Hitler himself was not personally significant. Any dictator could have seized power in Germany at that time.'

8.4 The course of the war in Europe

Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» identify and explain key events in the European theatre of war.

appeasement
a policy adopted by Britain and France towards Germany from the mid-1930s until 1939; it was designed to avoid a second world war by granting certain allowances to Hitler and the Nazi government

Blitzkrieg
a German term meaning 'lightning war'; a military tactic adopted by German forces during World War II that involved launching sudden, intense attacks on enemies using fighter aircraft and tanks followed by the advance of ground troops

On 1 September 1939, Germany invaded Poland. Britain and France abandoned the policy of **appeasement** that had been employed in the hopes of avoiding another war (see Skills in Context task 8A on page 270). Both nations – including British colonies and dominions, such as Australia – declared war on Germany in September 1939.

Initial German success

The German invasion of Poland was the first example of what became known as ***Blitzkrieg*** tactics. These tactics involved the use of coordinated air and land forces to quickly overrun the enemy, followed by slower-moving ground forces – often using horse-drawn transport – that 'mopped up' the shattered defenders and occupied their territory.

Despite the British and French commitment to support Poland, the speed of the German advance made it virtually impossible for either power to offer practical military support. By the end of September, Poland was divided between Nazi Germany and the Soviet Union (which had invaded Poland from the east on 17 September 1939).

The 'Phoney War'

The period after the German invasion of Poland is known as the 'Phoney War'. Although Germany, Britain and France were officially at war from October 1939, there were no major battles until April 1940. While there were some sea battles during this time, Britain and France did not attack Germany on land; instead the British built up their strength and prepared to defend France against German attack. The Phoney War ended in April 1940, when Germany attacked and defeated Denmark and Norway.

For the first two years of the war, Nazi Germany and its allies enjoyed considerable military success. In a series of military campaigns, it used new tactics and equipment to establish an empire that stretched from the English Channel to the Soviet Union; from Norway to the African countries of Algeria and Libya.

The Battle of France

In May 1940, Germany invaded the Low Countries (Belgium, the Netherlands and Luxembourg) and France using *Blitzkrieg* tactics. Despite outnumbering the Germans, the Allied forces were unable to deal with the speed of the German attack. The British Government evacuated 338 000 British and French troops from the port of Dunkirk, in northern France (see Source 10 on the next page). On 22 June 1940, France surrendered, although some military units outside France rejected the surrender and continued fighting Germany as the **Free French Forces**.

Analyse this!
Adolf Hitler at the Eiffel Tower

Source 9 Adolf Hitler at the Eiffel Tower in Paris, following the fall of France in 1940

Free French Forces
a resistance organisation founded by French General Charles de Gaulle in 1940, committed to fighting the Axis Powers

Blitz
a term used to describe a period during World War II when major cities across Britain were the target of sustained bombing campaigns by the German air force

siege
a military strategy to weaken an area by cutting it off from the outside world

Source 10 In May–June 1940, more than 300 000 Allied troops were cut off by the German army and were evacuated from the French port of Dunkirk. This event became known as the Dunkirk evacuation (see the chapter review on page 314).

Source 11 German bombers during the Battle of Britain, 1940

Source 12 Australian troops, nicknamed the 'Rats of Tobruk', occupy a frontline position. (AWM 041790)

The Battle of Britain

Germany turned its attention to defeating Britain, with a military operation called Operation Sea Lion. The plan for an invasion required the *Luftwaffe* (German air force) to destroy Britain's Royal Air Force, before a combined land and sea assault could be launched. If the Royal Air Force was destroyed, the *Luftwaffe* could prevent the Royal Navy from interfering with a German invasion fleet.

Facing stiff resistance from the British, Germany eventually changed its tactics to focus on bombing Britain's industrial cities – a period of the war known as the ***Blitz***. The Royal Air Force, which included around 100 Australians, was extremely successful in resisting the German attacks from July 1940 to May 1941. By then, Germany was focused on the invasion of Russia, and the threat to Britain had passed.

The Siege of Tobruk

Italy entered the war on Germany's side in June 1940. Its leader, Benito Mussolini, planned to conquer Egypt from the Italian territory of Libya. However, Australian troops led a British counter-attack into Libya, capturing Bardia, Tobruk and Benghazi early in 1941. Hitler sent General Erwin Rommel, one of his most experienced officers, with German forces to support the Italians in Libya. Rommel drove the British back into Egypt, although a force of 8000 British and Indian troops, 4000 Polish soldiers, and 14 000 Australians from the 9th Division of the AIF held on to Tobruk after a **siege** that lasted 241 days. Royal Australian Navy ships braved enemy air attack to bring in supplies and evacuate the wounded from the besieged city.

German propaganda described the men defending Tobruk as 'rats' – a name that was embraced by the Australian troops as a compliment. The 'Rats of Tobruk', as they became known, proved very aggressive and successful, despite primitive conditions and a complete lack of air support.

This was Nazi Germany's first land defeat in World War II. By September 1941, however, most of the Australians had been replaced by Polish troops, and Rommel finally captured Tobruk in June 1942. A total of 749 Australians were killed, 1996 were wounded and 604 were taken as prisoners during the siege.

Key skill worksheet
Historical perspectives & interpretations: Sequencing events in Europe during WWII

Operation Barbarossa

The peak of the campaign by the Axis Powers in Europe was the *Blitzkrieg* invasion of the Soviet Union, which began in June 1941. Code-named Operation Barbarossa, it is still the largest military operation – in terms of manpower, area covered and casualties – in human history. The Axis force was made up of more than 3 million troops, 150 divisions, 3600 tanks and 4300 aircrafts.

In 1939, Germany and the Soviet Union had signed a pact, agreeing not to attack each other. Germany's invasion of the Soviet Union in 1941 broke this agreement. There were several reasons for the invasion. Hitler had long argued that the large land mass of Eastern Europe should provide *Lebensraum* ('living space') for ethnic Germans, and useful resources for the war effort. The Nazis also hated communism, and considered Russia's Slavic peoples to be racially inferior to Germans.

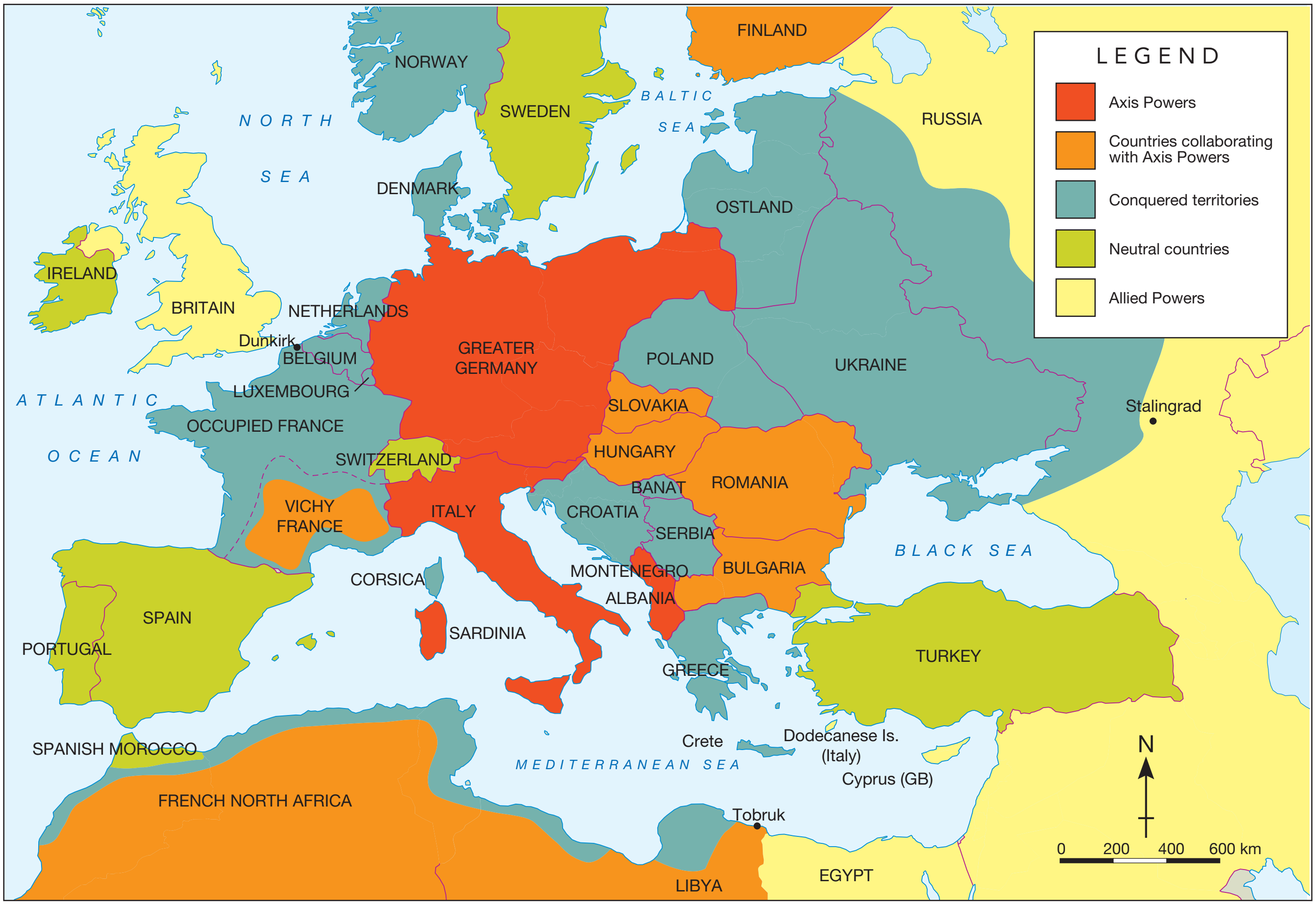
Germany won several major battles and captured huge areas of territory on the **Eastern Front**, while the Soviet army was forced to retreat. By November 1941, German forces were within striking distance of Moscow, the Soviet capital.

Eastern Front
the theatre of war between the European Axis Powers, and the Soviet Union and its allies in World War II; it took place in Central and Eastern Europe, and the Baltic and Balkans regions

However, the Germans were unable to capture Moscow. They were unprepared for the severity of the Soviet winter (see Source 13) and were met by stubborn resistance. When the winter of 1941–42 ended and the Germans could manoeuvre again, Hitler directed his forces to southern Russia and its oilfields. Their advance eventually came to a halt at Stalingrad (now known as Volgograd) in September 1942, in a battle that would become one of the bloodiest in history. The epic siege lasted 890 days. The German army eventually surrendered at Stalingrad in February 1943. Nevertheless, Nazi forces still occupied a great area of the Soviet Union, and their control extended over most of continental Europe (see Source 14 on page 262).

Source 13 German troops were defeated as much by the weather as by the Russian troops on the Eastern Front in 1941–42.

EUROPE AND NORTH AFRICA: THE HEIGHT OF AXIS POWER, 1942



Source 14

Source: Oxford University Press

8.4 Check your learning

Comprehend

1. **Explain** what is meant by the 'Phoney War'.
2. **Describe** the achievements of the 'Rats of Tobruk'.
3. **Explain** how Germany's *Blitzkrieg* tactics contributed to its success in the early years of the war.

Analyse

4. **Examine** Source 14.
   - a Is this a primary or secondary source? Explain your answer.
   - b Describe the Axis territory in 1942.
   - c Compare the Axis territory with the Allied territory in 1942.
5. **Analyse** the significance of Operation Barbarossa as a military operation. Remember, when you analyse something, you must break it down into smaller parts and explain how they relate to each other.

Apply

6. **Create** a diagram or flow chart to explain how *Blitzkrieg* tactics worked. Why do you think they were so effective?
7. During the Battle of Britain, British fighter pilots were instructed to shoot down German sea rescue planes if they thought those planes were being used for surveillance purposes. According to the Geneva Convention – an international agreement signed in 1929, outlining the basic standards of war – this was a crime.
   - a In pairs, **investigate** the Geneva Convention and make a list of the rights protected under it.
   - b With your partner, **discuss** whether shooting down rescue planes is acceptable conduct when your nation is fighting for its survival.
   - c **Compare** your responses with others in your class. Do you all agree?

8.5 The course of the war in Asia and the Pacific

Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» identify and explain key events in the Asia–Pacific theatre of war.

Weblink
Japan enters the war

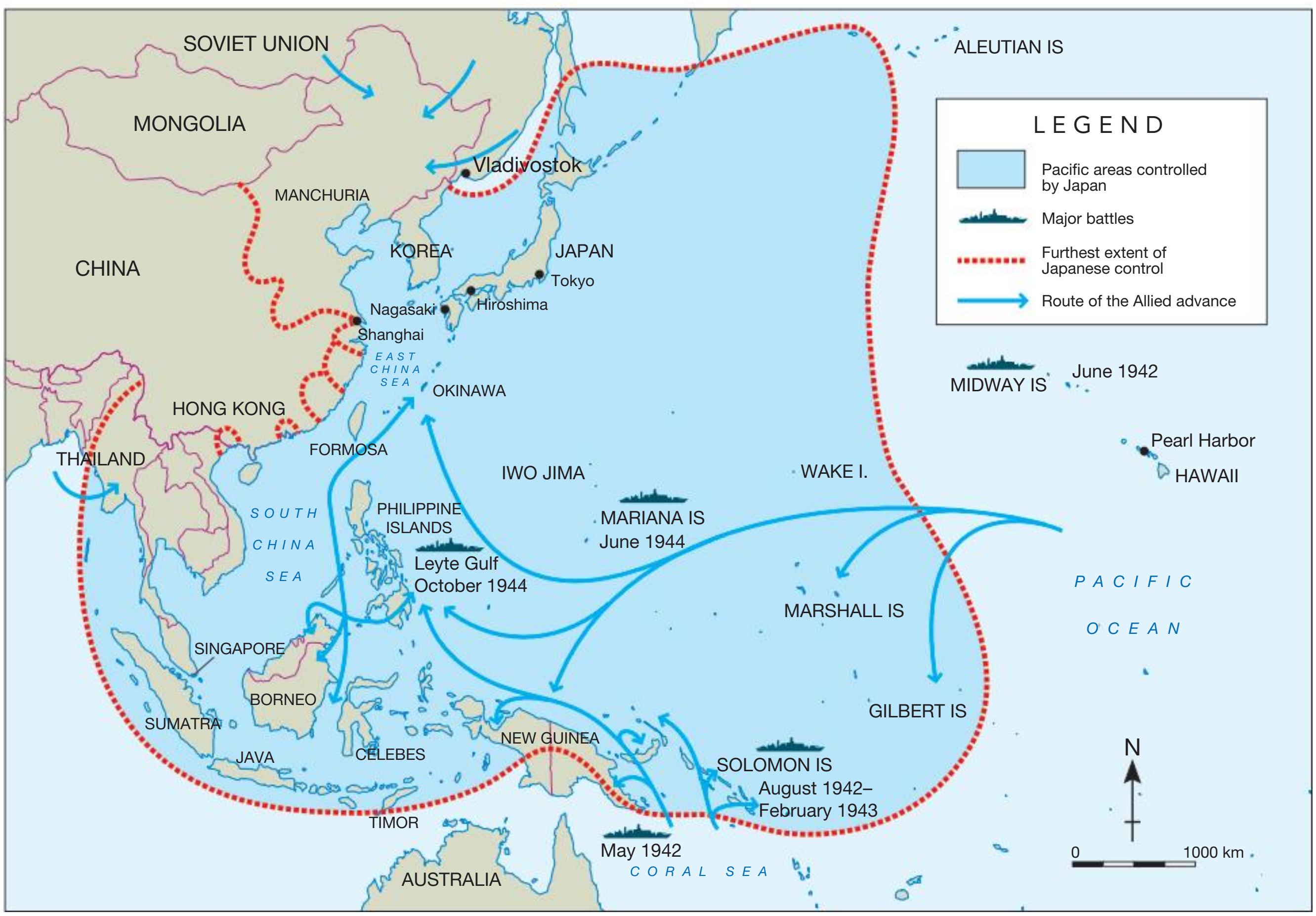
Enlarged map
Asia and the Pacific: The Japanese empire in 1942

When we think about World War II, many of us tend to think exclusively of the devastating events in Europe. However, significant events also took place in the Asia–Pacific region, where one of the Axis Powers was located: Japan.

When World War II began in Europe, the world's attention was diverted away from Japan. Despite evidence of Japanese aggression, there was still a belief that the Japanese did not pose a significant threat.

The Japanese attack on the US naval base at Pearl Harbor, Hawaii, on 7 December 1941 changed this. Japan had hoped to destroy America's Pacific Fleet, as a preventative strike to stop US interference in the Pacific. Twenty US ships and over 300 aeroplanes were destroyed, and 2403 soldiers, sailors and civilians were killed. But while the attack on Pearl Harbor seemed to be successful, the damage inflicted on the US fleet was less than originally thought – mainly because the aircraft carriers were away from the base at the time. Rather than preventing US intervention, the attack caused the United States, Australia and the Netherlands to declare war on Japan. Germany declared war on the United States, which also brought US troops into the war in Europe.

ASIA AND THE PACIFIC: THE JAPANESE EMPIRE IN 1942



Source 15

Source: Oxford University Press

The Pacific War

For the first two years of the Pacific War, Japan appeared to have the upper hand. Following the attack on Pearl Harbor, Japanese forces quickly occupied Malaya, Singapore, Hong Kong, the Philippines, Guam and Wake Island. Malaya was attacked by the Japanese for its rubber resources, quinine was taken from Java, and Borneo was raided for its oil – all resources that were much needed for battle.

Japan also conquered Burma in the west, and pushed south through French Indochina (Vietnam, Cambodia and Laos) and the Dutch East Indies to reach Australia's doorstep in New Guinea (see Source 15 on the previous page). Britain and the United States had seriously underestimated Japan's military ability. This, together with the element of surprise and the imaginative use of combined naval and air forces by the Japanese, gave Japan an early advantage.

I used to think, now I think

Reflect on your learning about significant events that took place in the Asia–Pacific region during World War II and complete the following sentences.

- I used to think ...
- Now I think ...

What has changed in your understanding?

The fall of Singapore

Singapore surrendered to the Japanese on 15 February 1942, and more than 130 000 Allied troops, including 15 000 Australians, became Japanese prisoners of war. Controversially, a small number of soldiers, including the Australian commander Gordon Bennett, escaped on ships to avoid capture.

The fall of Singapore caused great concern in Australia. Singapore had been regarded as almost impossible to invade, and the strong British presence there prior to 1942 had meant that Australia felt protected. The defeat of the British base in Singapore meant that there was nothing to stop the Japanese advance into Australia. Australia's leaders realised that they could no longer depend on Britain, and that they needed new allies against Japan.

Source 16

> I make it quite clear that Australia looks to America, free of any pangs as to our traditional links of kinship with the United Kingdom … We know the problems that the United Kingdom faces. We know the constant threat of invasion … but we know too that Australia can go, and Britain can still hold on … We are therefore determined that Australia shall not go, and we shall exert all our energies towards the shaping of a plan, with the United States as its keystone, which will give our country confidence of being able to hold out until the tide of battle swings against the enemy.
>
> Australian Prime Minister John Curtin, quoted in the Melbourne *Herald*, 27 December 1941

The battle for northern Australia

The fall of Singapore brought the war much closer to Australia than had ever been anticipated. Only four days later, on 19 February 1942, Japan launched over 260 aircraft in an assault on Darwin (see Source 17). A total of 681 bombs were dropped, and 252 people were killed.

Most other Australians were unaware of the seriousness of the attack, as the government played down the bombing and the number of deaths. A royal commission into the events surrounding the attack revealed that some people, including members of the defence forces, had panicked under fire. There were also stories that some people had looted bombed buildings or simply fled the city.

By November 1943, Darwin had suffered 64 air raids. Other towns in the Northern Territory, Queensland and Western Australia were also struck. In total, there were 97 airborne attacks on northern Australia and approximately 900 Allied troops and civilians were killed. Several ships and almost 80 aircraft were lost. Many people felt that the bombing of Darwin was the beginning of a full-scale invasion of Australia, but the truth of this remains unknown.

Key skill worksheet
Historical perspectives & interpretations: Sequencing events in the Asia–Pacific region during WWII

Source 17 Bomb damage to the Darwin post office and surrounding buildings as a result of the first Japanese air raid, 19 February 1942

War comes to Sydney Harbour

On 31 May 1942, three Japanese midget submarines, launched from a group of five larger submarines further out to sea, entered Sydney Harbour. The submarines sank a ferry carrying military personnel. Twenty-one people were killed before Australian forces sank the submarines. A week later, two larger submarines surfaced off the coast at Bondi, shelling several Sydney suburbs and later the nearby city of Newcastle. While little damage was done, the appearance of Japanese vessels emphasised to Australians that the war was now much closer to home.

militia
a fighting force that is made up of non-professional (civilian) fighters

Turning points

In March 1942, Japanese forces established bases on mainland New Guinea, with the objective of capturing Port Moresby, the capital. From there, they could launch regular bomber raids against northern Australia. With this threat looming, Prime Minister John Curtin agreed to place all Australian forces under the command of the US General Douglas MacArthur, formerly the commander of the US-controlled Philippines. While US forces were assembling in Australia, and the battle-hardened soldiers of the Second AIF were returning to defend Australia, it was left to inexperienced Australian **militia** units to stop the Japanese advance to Port Moresby.

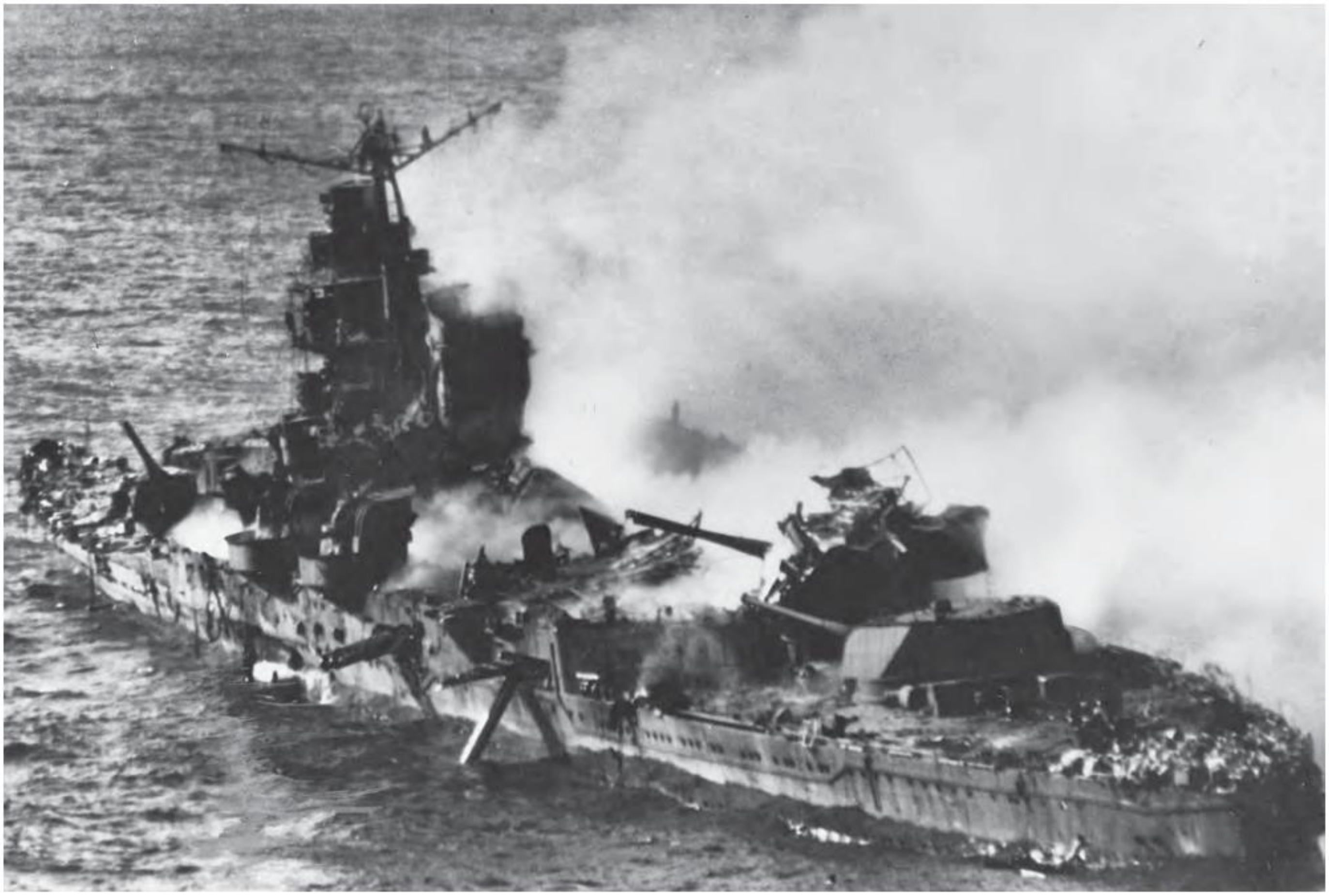
Several battles are identified as key turning points in the Asia–Pacific war zone, including the Battle of Midway (4–7 June 1942). There, Japanese naval forces attempted to lure several US aircraft carriers into a trap to capture the strategically important Midway Islands. US code-breakers intercepted Japanese communications. The US navy destroyed four Japanese aircraft carriers and more than 200 aircraft.

Source 18 A propaganda poster used to rally Australian support following the Japanese attack on Darwin (AWM ARTV09225)

Quiz me!
A quick quiz on the course of the war in Asia and the Pacific

This was an important win for the United States, as they severely weakened Japanese forces. The United States would use this weakness to prevent supply ships from taking war materials, such as oil, munitions and food, to Japanese forces in the region.

Historians have described the Battle of Midway as 'the most stunning and decisive blow in the history of naval warfare'.



Source 19 A Japanese cruiser, after being bombed by US aeroplanes during the Battle of Midway, 1942

8.5 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 Using Source 15, locate and **identify** the countries and areas taken over by Japan between 1937 and 1942.

Comprehend

2 **Summarise** Japan's main reason for attacking Pearl Harbor.

3 Identify and **describe** the turning points in the Pacific War in 1942.

4 In your own words, **explain** how the fall of Singapore was perceived by Australians. Use evidence from Source 16 in your answer.

5 **Explain** why the Battle of Midway was a significant turning point in the Asia–Pacific.

Analyse

6 **Analyse** Source 16. What was Prime Minister John Curtin saying about Australia's changing relationship with Britain and the United States?

Apply

7 **Investigate** the effects of the bombing of Darwin and the submarine attack on Sydney Harbour using library and internet resources. How did these events have an impact on Australia?

8.6 The end of the war

Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» summarise significant turning points in Europe and the Asia–Pacific region that led to Allied victory in the war.

From late 1942, crucial land, air and sea victories for the Allies represented turning points within the European and Pacific theatres of war. Within months, Allied forces were able to advance into Axis-occupied territory in Europe, while simultaneously preventing Japan from expanding its influence in the Pacific.

By 1943, the Germans' *Blitzkrieg* tactics had lost the element of surprise and their wartime success had peaked. That year, Britain, the British dominions (including Australia), the United States, the Soviet Union and the Free French Forces formed an alliance to force Germany and its allies into an unconditional surrender. This would bring about the end of the war in Europe.

The tide of war turns in Europe

After Germany's failed invasion of the Soviet Union, the Soviet army pushed east from 1943, winning a series of battles against Germany. By 1945, Germany had been forced out of most of Eastern Europe, with Soviet troops occupying Russia, Poland, Romania, Czechoslovakia and the Baltic states. The Russians continued their advance into Germany, and reached the German capital, Berlin, in April 1945.

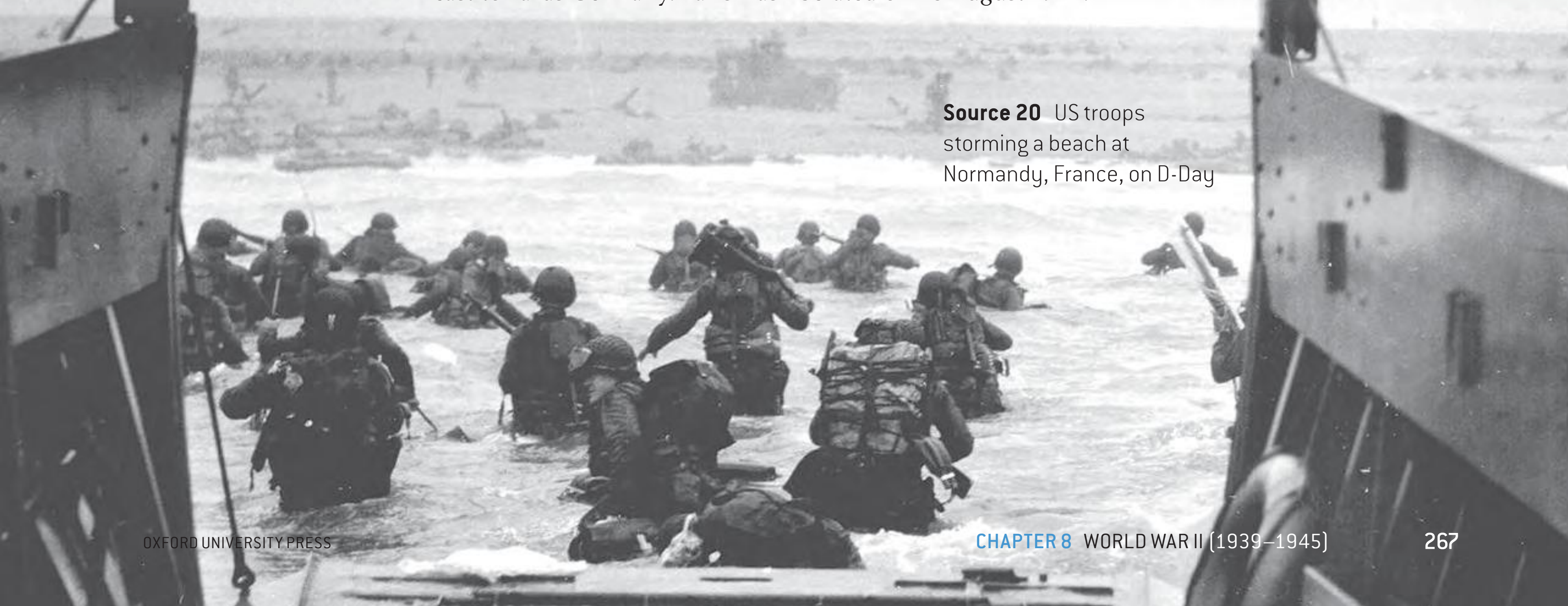
Italy joins the Allies

As the Soviet troops advanced on the Eastern Front, the Western Allies were invading southern Italy from North Africa. Having defeated the German and Italian forces in the North Africa campaign (8 November 1942 to 13 May 1943), the Allies began Operation Husky on 10 July 1943. The aim of this military operation was to invade Sicily – moving 150000 troops, 3000 ships and 600 tanks into the area. This invasion would cause the arrest and fall of the Italian dictator Benito Mussolini. On 13 October 1943 the Italian Government declared war on Germany, joining the side of the Allies.

D-Day

liberation
setting free a country or a person from the control of somebody or something else

Code-named Operation Overlord, the Allied **liberation** of Western Europe began on 6 June 1944 with the largest seaborne invasion in history. This date is commonly known as 'D-Day'. On this day, 156000 American, Canadian and British forces landed across five beaches of Normandy, in northern France. Within a week, the Allies had more than 326000 troops, 50000 vehicles and 100000 tons of equipment ready to push east towards Germany. Paris was liberated on 25 August 1944.



Source 20 US troops storming a beach at Normandy, France, on D-Day

offensive
a large-scale military operation by an attacking force against a defending enemy force

counter-offensives
large-scale military operations by a defending force against an attacking enemy force

The Battle of the Bulge

On 16 December 1944, Hitler launched the Germans last major **offensive** of World War II, with the Battle of the Ardennes, also known as the Battle of the Bulge. With the intent of splitting the Allied line, the Germans sent 250 000 soldiers in a surprise attack against 80 000 US troops. They were initially successful, and continued to confuse the Allies by changing road signs and dressing up in Allied uniforms to spread misinformation and sabotage communications. But by early January 1945, the Allies were able to coordinate **counter-offensives** and they claimed victory on 25 January 1945. The Allies suffered 75 000 casualties, while the Germans lost 120 000 men. The Allies now pushed east to Berlin.

KEY CONCEPT
Interpretations & contestability

Hitler's death

Following the defeat of Germany in World War II, there were many conflicting reports about Hitler's death and what was done with his body.

Some reports claimed that Hitler had committed suicide, and that afterwards his body was burned. Others claimed that his body had been found by Soviet troops when Berlin fell, and shipped back to Russia. Some theories even claimed that Hitler had escaped. While there was little evidence to support the idea that Hitler had escaped, many alleged sightings of him were reported all around the world in the years following the war.

In 2018, the debate was put to rest when French scientists analysed fragments of Hitler's teeth, confirming that he did in fact die by suicide in Berlin in 1945.

For more information on this key concept, refer to page 241 of 'The history toolkit'.


News Chronicle

HITLER DEAD

Doenitz, new Fuehrer, says: We fight on

WEHRMACHT ORDERED TO MAINTAIN DISCIPLINE

All the generals must surrender

The man who now leads the Third Reich

FOOD GOING TO DUTCH BY SEA, AIR, ROAD

Berlin's garrison herded together in last stand

Bernadotte tells his story

Hitler's birthplace

GERMAN NAVY MAY FIGHT ON

HIMMLER WAS OUT OF TOUCH

Her teeth are YOUR concern

Phillips' Dental Magnesia

Source 21 The front page of the *News Chronicle* (London), 2 May 1945, announces the death of Adolf Hitler.

The defeat of Germany

As the Allies entered Germany in Western Europe, the Soviets were advancing from the east. Both forces were heading to Berlin. In April, the Soviets encircled the German capital and launched a final assault. Hitler remained in Berlin to direct the defence of the city from his underground 'bunker'. Although most of Berlin's population was conscripted to fight, the Soviets seized Berlin after just a week of fighting in the streets. Hitler committed suicide on 30 April 1945 (see Source 21), and Germany officially surrendered on 7 May 1945. The war in Europe was over.

The Pacific War

Quiz me!
A quick quiz on the end of the war

By early 1942, Japan was at the height of its influence in the Pacific (see Source 15 on page 263). But the Japanese Empire had suffered two major losses at the Battle of the Coral Sea (May 1942) and the Battle of Midway (June 1942) (see page 265). This shift in the balance of naval power allowed the United States to take the offensive for the first time. In August 1942, the United States landed in Guadalcanal (in the Solomon Islands) to seize a strategic airfield site on the island (see Source 22). This resulted in the six-month Battle of Guadalcanal. Meanwhile, another offensive was taking place in Eastern Papua to prevent Japanese forces from capturing Port Moresby. This was known as the Kokoda campaign, in which Australian forces fought (see topic 8.9 on page 283). By February 1943, both battles had ended with victory for the Allies, who had prevented Japan from pushing further south in the Pacific.

The drive to Japan

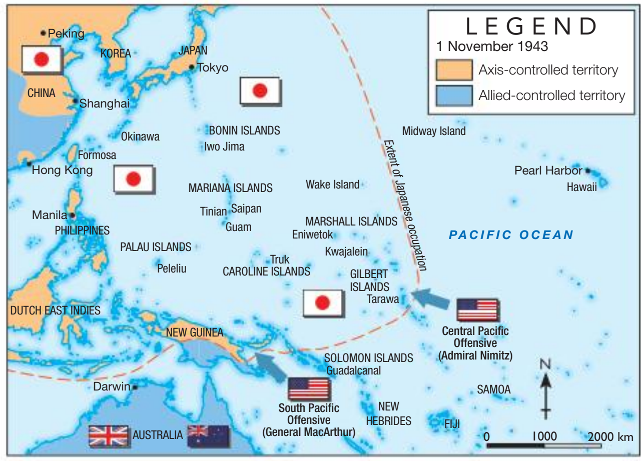
From 1943 the Allies fought their way to Japan by 'island hopping', which involved skipping over the heavily fortified islands to land on weaker ones. By early 1945, the US forces took hold of the Philippines (see Source 23), and in May 1945 Australia was tasked with liberating Borneo.

By the time US forces had established bases in the Marianas, they were able to send B-29 bombers to strike the **Japanese home islands**. On 8 March 1945, a single raid on Tokyo killed 83 000 people, mainly civilians, and left over 1 million homeless. Over the next few months, more than 30 000 bombings raids on the major cities of Japan occurred.

The Japanese defence became more desperate. Japanese **kamikaze** pilots carried out suicide missions – crashing their planes into US ships. The US Government projected that an invasion of the Japanese home islands would lead to massive casualties of more than 225 000 lives. In an attempt to end the war, an atomic bomb was dropped over Hiroshima, Japan, on 6 August 1945, killing at least 70 000. A second atomic bomb was dropped on 9 August 1945 over Nagasaki, Japan, killing at least 35 000. Japan surrendered to the Allies on 15 August 1945.

The Pacific War had claimed the lives of 2 million Japanese, nearly 700 000 civilians, 100 000 Americans and 17 500 Australians.

THE UNITED STATES' TWO-PRONGED OFFENSIVE ACROSS THE CENTRAL AND SOUTH-WEST PACIFIC



Source 22 Source: The National WWII Museum, New Orleans

Source 23 US ships land on the beach at Leyte Island in the Philippines, October 1944.

Japanese home islands
the group of islands forming the country of Japan; this term was commonly used in World War II to define the area of Japan to which its sovereignty and the constitutional rule of the emperor would be restricted

kamikaze
a Japanese term meaning 'divine wind'; during World War II, Japanese pilots who deliberately crashed their planes into Allied ships were called kamikaze

8.6 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 **Identify** the countries that formed an alliance in 1943 to try and force Germany and its allies to surrender.
2 **State** when Germany officially surrendered.
3 **Identify** the two Japanese cities that suffered atomic bombing.
4 **Name** the first offensive battle in the Pacific for the US troops.

Comprehend

5 **Explain** the role that the Soviet army played in recapturing territory in Eastern Europe and, eventually, Berlin.

Analyse

6 Read the key concept box 'Hitler's death' and answer the following questions.
   a Why do you think some newspapers reported that Hitler had escaped?
   b What makes the scientific analysis of Hitler's teeth more reliable than reports from the time?

Apply

7 'By 1943, the Germans' *Blitzkrieg* tactics had lost the element of surprise.' In pairs, **discuss** the extent to which the element of surprise is an important factor in war.

8A

SKILLS IN CONTEXT

Hitler's speeches and the failure of appeasement

Test me!
Once you've finished the topics in this section, test yourself with this quiz and find out which worksheet you should do.

In 1919, Adolf Hitler gave his first public speech in Munich. Between then and January 1945, he would deliver more than 2000 speeches. In so doing, he spread ideals of antisemitism, German nationalism and *Lebensraum* (more 'living space') for ethnic Germans.

Source 24 Hitler is recognised as a great orator (speaker). Here, he addresses crowds during the war.

Beginning as early as 1933, the Nazis broke the terms of the Treaty of Versailles. They re-strengthened the Germany army and invaded neighbouring territories. Meanwhile, Britain, France and the League of Nations were desperate to prevent another global war and, despite Hitler's worrying proclamations, they adopted the policy of appeasement. Many historians believe the failures of appeasement to be the leading cause of World War II. They suggest that the Western powers must have understood Hitler's intentions, and therefore it was their failure to stop him that led to enormous consequences.

Source 25

For our situation in the world results, in its devastating effects for us, only from the fact that we ourselves underrate German strength. Only when we have revised this disastrous assessment can Germany make use of the political possibilities of once more, if we look far into the future, placing German life on a natural and sound foundation: either new *Lebensraum* and the expansion of a large domestic market or the protection of German economy against the outside by deploying accumulated German strength.

Extract from a speech by Adolf Hitler, 27 January 1932, Dusseldorf, Germany

Source 26

[Hitler said:] '[A]ll this seems to be academic; I want to get down to realities. Three hundred Sudetens [ethnic Germans] have been killed and things of that kind cannot go on; the thing has got to be settled at once: I am determined to settle it: I do not care whether there is a world war or not: I am determined to settle it and to settle it soon and I am prepared to risk a world war rather than allow this to drag on.'

To that [Neville Chamberlain] replied: 'If the Fuehrer is determined to settle this matter by force without waiting even for a discussion between ourselves to take place what did he let me come here for? I have wasted my time.'

Extracts from a conversation between British Prime Minister Neville Chamberlain and Adolf Hitler, Berchtesgaden, Germany, 1938

Source 27

In the course of my life I have very often been a prophet, and have usually been ridiculed for it. During the time of my struggle for power, it was in the first instance the Jewish race that received my prophecies with laughter – when I said that I would one day take over the leadership of the State, and with it that of the whole nation, and that I would then, among many other things, settle the Jewish problem … I think that for some time now they have been laughing on the other side of their face [laughter]. Today I will once more be a prophet. If the international Jewish financiers, inside and outside Europe, succeed in plunging the nations once more into a world war, then the result will not be the Bolshevisation of the earth, and thus the victory of Jewry, but the annihilation of the Jewish race in Europe!

Extract from Hitler's 'Prophecy' speech to the Reichstag, 30 January 1939

Practise the skill

1 Write a 500-word historical discussion in response to this prompt:

> Hitler's speeches clearly outlined the intentions of the Nazi Party. Therefore, it is the Western Allies who are to blame for World War II because they failed to stop Hitler.

Use the information and sources in this Skills in Context task, together with your own research, to locate a range of primary and secondary sources that provide evidence about the significance of Hitler's speeches, and the failures of appeasement. Include a bibliography that references all your sources.

Extend your understanding

1 Hitler took advantage of the problems in Germany to rise to power. **Describe** the political and economic problems for the average German citizen when he rose to power.

2 Using the sources in this Skills in Context task and the information you have located, write a paragraph **explaining** why Jews were persecuted and targeted by Hitler.

3 Berlin hosted the 1936 Olympic Games. **Investigate** the games to discover how the Nazi Party used them to promote their ideas and values.

KEY SKILL
Communicating

Writing a historical discussion

Historical discussions present different opinions about particular historical questions or issues. Follow these steps to write your own historical discussion:

Step 1 Consider evidence from a range of sources, and outline different possible interpretations.

- Consider various primary sources – such as newspapers, photographs or political and legal documents from the time.
- Also consider the ideas of other historians, in secondary sources such as textbooks and websites.

Step 2 You need to mention in your writing where information is coming from. For example:

- 'According to the historian Peter Williams …'
- 'Hitler's "Prophecy" speech to the Reichstag on 30 January 1939 shows that …'
- 'The image of Hitler speaking demonstrates …'

Step 3 Conclude with your own point of view on the question or issue.

Step 4 Include a bibliography that references all sources used in the discussion.

Source 28 A summary of the structure of a written discussion

Introduction	• Introduces the topic, question or issue • Outlines why the topic, question or issue is important
Main body	• A series of paragraphs outline different arguments or opinions about the topic, question or issue • Each opinion or argument that is presented should also refer to the evidence that supports it
Conclusion	• Sums up the issue and gives the writer's opinion

8.7 The Holocaust

Learning intentions

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

- » explain the historical context in which the Holocaust occurred
- » explain the scale and significance of the Holocaust.

Holocaust
the deliberate and systematic (planned) mass murder of Jews and other 'undesirables' by the Nazis during World War II

In 1933, it is estimated that the Jewish population of Europe stood at around 11 million. By the end of World War II in 1945, it is estimated that more than 6 million Jews had died at the hands of the Nazis. To put this into perspective, more than half of all European Jews were killed.

This systematic, government-led persecution and murder of Jews took place throughout Nazi-occupied territories under the command of Adolf Hitler. It is among the most brutal and destructive policies of the twentieth century, and is referred to as the **Holocaust**. Hundreds of thousands of German military and civilian personnel were involved in the mass murder. Millions more collaborated or accepted these events without protest.

The word 'Holocaust' is of Greek origin, and means 'sacrificed by fire' or 'burned'. Out of respect for the dead, Jewish communities today use the Hebrew word *Shoah* instead, meaning 'catastrophe'.

Beginnings of the Holocaust

The origins of the Holocaust can be traced back further than Hitler's lifetime. Antisemitism has its roots in the ancient world and was rife throughout Europe in the Middle Ages.

In the 1880s, the eugenics movement became popular. Eugenics – a practice that aimed to 'improve' the human gene pool by controlling the types of people giving birth to children – was taught as a subject at many universities. For a time, eugenics was supported by people like Winston Churchill, who later became the British prime minister, and was government policy in countries such as the United States. By the 1930s the popularity of the eugenics movement was declining, but the Nazi Party's policies were heavily influenced by its ideas.

Hitler outlined the development of his antisemitism and even some of his proposed policies towards Jews in his book *Mein Kampf* ('My Struggle'; 1925). Many of his beliefs were borrowed from the eugenics movement. He declared that 'the personification of the devil as the symbol of all evil assumes the living shape of the Jew'. *Mein Kampf* also outlined Hitler's hatred of communism, and his belief that Germany would have to expand east to provide *Lebensraum* ('living space') for ethnic Germans. The seeds of Hitler's cruel and murderous policies were present in his ideology at least a decade before he became Chancellor of Germany in 1933.

Within months of coming to power, Hitler introduced a law that allowed the compulsory sterilisation of people with mental or physical disabilities.

Source 1 The conical-shaped Hall of Names in the Holocaust History Museum in the Yad Vashem Holocaust complex in Israel – the Hall of Names shows around 600 portraits of Jewish Holocaust victims.

In other words, anyone who was 'disabled' (a broad definition of 'disability' was used, ranging from schizophrenia, to deafness, to alcoholism) could be legally forced to have an operation to ensure they could not have children. More than 400 000 people were sterilised and around 5000 died as a result of these operations. Another 70 000 were killed under a related euthanasia program, where severely disabled children under the age of 17 were given lethal overdoses or faced starvation. This eliminated those who did not fit within Hitler's vision of a racially pure Germany.

Antisemitism and eugenics eventually combined in Germany's racial policies. As well as violence against Jews and **boycotts** of Jewish businesses (see Source 2), the government refused to grant German citizenship to Jews and sought to remove all Jews from the government, the legal professions and universities. Laws limited the number of Jewish students allowed in public schools, banned Jews from many public places, expelled Jewish officers from the army, and transferred ownership of many Jewish businesses to non-Jewish Germans.

Source 2 Nazi **stormtroopers** (also known as 'brownshirts') stand outside a Jewish business, directing people to shop elsewhere, 1933. The sign reads: 'Germans, Attention! This shop is owned by Jews. Jews damage the German economy and pay their German employees starvation wages. The main owner is the Jew Nathan Schmidt.'

As Hitler's policies began to take hold, many Jews (and Germans) refused to believe the reality of what was taking place around them. Some Jews – including the famous scientist Albert Einstein – left Germany. Others believed that they would be protected because they were German citizens. However, the Nuremberg Laws of 1935 stripped Jews of their German citizenship, forbade Jews to marry non-Jews, and took away their political rights.

In 1938 there was a wave of violence directed against Jewish synagogues, businesses and houses across Germany. It was known as *Kristallnacht*, or the 'Night of Broken Glass'. While there is no doubt that this was organised by the Nazis, Hitler claimed that it was a spontaneous attack by German people, and that it showed the depth of anti-Jewish feeling. The Nazi regime was widely criticised in the international press as a result of *Kristallnacht*.

boycotts
withdrawals of political, trade and/or other contact with a country or an organisation

stormtroopers
the Nazi Party's 'assault division'; it was largely made up of former soldiers from World War I, and used methods of violent intimidation

Spread of antisemitism and the formation of ghettos

Soon after the invasion of Poland in 1939, **ghettos** were set up in Nazi-occupied territories, such as Poland, Hungary and areas of the Soviet Union. Ghettos were bricked off or encircled with barbed wire to stop people from escaping. Over the course of the war, many Jewish people were rounded up and forced to leave their homes and move into ghettos.

One of the largest ghettos was in Warsaw, in Nazi-occupied Poland (see Source 5 on the next page). Conditions inside were extremely brutal. It was very crowded and there was often no running water or toilet facilities. Jews were not usually allowed to leave the ghetto and had to depend on the few rations provided by the Nazis. One survivor described the Warsaw ghetto as 'a prison without a roof'.

Approximately 800 000 Jews died in the ghettos from malnutrition, disease and forced labour. Others were openly murdered by shooting.

ghettos
sections of towns or cities established by the Nazis during World War II to confine and isolate Jews and other 'undesirables' from the wider population

Source 3 A cloth Star of David badge that Jews were required to wear in public (the word 'Jude' means 'Jew' in German)

Although the principal victims of the Holocaust were European Jews, Nazi policies also targeted other segments of society, such as Sinti and Romani peoples (often referred to as 'gypsies'), as well as people who did not conform to traditional heterosexuality, communists, Slavs (Polish and Russian people), and people with physical or intellectual disabilities, who were considered *Untermenschen* (subhuman). Between 200 000 and 500 000 Sinti and Romani people alone were killed by the Nazis. These criminal actions were later labelled **genocide** – deliberate attempts to wipe out entire groups of people.

Nazi occupation policies, particularly in Eastern and Central Europe, were also brutal. In Poland and areas of the Soviet Union, for instance, they resulted in the deaths of millions of civilians.

Concentration camps

In addition to forming ghettos in large cities to confine Jews and other 'undesirables', the Nazi government used existing **concentration camps** in Germany and built many new camps throughout the occupied territories, mostly in Poland. The exact number of concentration camps is not known; however, it is generally accepted that there were between 2000 and 8000 camps.

The camps varied in character. Some were forced labour camps, where inmates were compelled to do hard physical labour such as mining and road-building under harsh conditions (see Source 7). Others were prisoner of war (POW) camps, where Allied soldiers were held and often tortured in order to reveal secret information. Still others functioned as extermination camps, designed for the sole purpose of murdering. Many camps, however, served a combination of these functions. The best known and largest of these camps was Auschwitz–Birkenau, where many inmates considered unsuitable for forced labour were gassed and their bodies burned in crematoria (giant ovens: see Source 6). More than 1 million Jews alone were murdered at Auschwitz.

genocide
the deliberate and systematic mass killing of people based on their race, ethnicity, religion or culture

concentration camps
prisons in which civilians, enemy aliens, political prisoners or prisoners of war are detained under extremely harsh conditions

Source 4 A Jewish youth selling compulsory Star of David armbands in Warsaw, Poland

Source 5 The clearing of Jews from the Warsaw ghetto in Nazi-occupied Poland in 1943 – towards the end of the war, German troops cleared ghettos and transported those living in them to concentration camps, either to work or to be killed.

Source 6 Crematoria, where the remains of people killed at Buchenwald concentration camp were cremated

Source 7 Russian, Polish and Dutch slave labourers interned at the Buchenwald concentration camp had an average weight of 75 kilograms each before entering camp. Eleven months later, when this photograph was taken, their average weight had dropped to 31 kilograms.

Mass shootings

With the invasion of the Soviet Union in June 1941, Nazi policy towards the Jews began to move into its most extreme phase. Between the start of the invasion and early 1943, roughly 1.6 million Eastern European Jews were executed in mass killing campaigns that were conducted by members of the *Einsatzgruppen* (mobile killing squads). Local collaborators, the SS (Hitler's elite forces) and some members of the *Wehrmacht* (German armed forces) also participated in this extermination. The process generally involved rounding up the members of a local Jewish community and executing them in an area close to their homes. On 29–30 September 1941 at Babi Yar, near the city of Kiev, 33 771 Jews were executed.

This phase of the Holocaust was the most public, and rumours of executions began to spread in the occupied areas and in Germany itself.

The 'Final Solution'

In January 1942, at a meeting in the city of Wannsee near Berlin, leading Nazi officials identified a process to achieve *Endlösung der Judenfrage* (a 'Final Solution to the Jewish Question'). The aim was to eliminate the estimated 11 million European Jews. The 'Final Solution' was the forced deportation and transportation of Jews to concentration camps before extermination.

Historians generally agree that around 3 million Jews were killed in concentration camps, while another 3 million died in other violent or oppressive circumstances outside the camps. All 6 million Jewish deaths were the result of Nazi extermination policies. A further 5 million non-Jewish people were also victims of this instrument of terror, dying of maltreatment, disease and starvation.

Explore it!
A virtual field trip to Auschwitz–Birkenau

Source 8 Polish inmates dig graves for their fellow prisoners after a mass execution by the Nazis, 1941.

The legacy of the Holocaust

More than 6 million of Europe's 11 million Jews were killed in a deliberate campaign of extermination during the Holocaust. Some survivors endured slave labour in the various camps. Many others hid or were protected by sympathetic non-Jews. There were also those who took up arms against the Nazis – such as the Jewish Combat Organisation, whose members led uprisings in some of the major ghettos.

After the war, many European Jews migrated to other countries, including Australia, where they have established vibrant new communities. After enduring the horrors of the Holocaust, many wished to join their fellow Jews who were already living in their ancient homeland. So, in November 1947, the **United Nations** endorsed the establishment of an independent Jewish state in what became known as Israel. Israel declared its independence in May 1949.

United Nations
an international organisation established at the end of World War II to increase political and economic cooperation among its member countries

The horrors of the mass murders and other atrocities committed by the Nazis shocked people all around the globe. After the war, the nations of the world were determined to prevent such grave crimes from ever happening again, or at least to ensure that people committing such crimes would not go unpunished. The facts and lessons of these events are commemorated in Holocaust museums that have been established in many countries, while memoirs and films communicate the Jewish experience of *Shoah* to the world. New international treaties on human rights, the humane treatment of civilians in times of war, sanctuary for refugees and the elimination of racial discrimination have come into effect since the events of the Holocaust. These treaties, such as the Universal Declaration of Human Rights, recognise the inherent dignity and equal and inalienable rights of all members of the human race as the foundation of freedom, justice and peace in the world.

Source 9 These are the tracks along which trains took people to their death at the Auschwitz–Birkenau concentration camp in Oświęcim, Nazi-occupied Poland.

8.7 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 In your own words, **define** the eugenics movement. How popular was it?

2 **Name** two of the laws implemented during Nazi Germany to persecute Jews.

3 **Name** some of the groups persecuted by the Nazis.

Comprehend

4 **Explain** the meaning of the word 'Holocaust'. What term do Jewish communities use to refer to the Holocaust?

5 **Explain** the purpose and method of the 'Final Solution.'

6 a **Describe** some of the ways in which people have ensured that the events of the Holocaust will not be forgotten.

b **Explain** why it is important that the Holocaust is never forgotten.

7 **Explain** why some sources say that there were 6 million victims of the Holocaust, while others say there were 11 million.

8 Hitler outlined his antisemitic attitudes in his book *Mein Kampf* and introduced antisemitic policies after coming to power in 1933. **Explain** why so few Jews fled Germany before it was too late.

Analyse

9 **Distinguish** between labour camps and extermination camps.

Apply

10 Some Holocaust survivors who spent time in the Auschwitz–Birkenau concentration camp have said that the people who were sent to the gas chambers were the 'lucky ones'. **Investigate** the conditions faced by Auschwitz prisoners. Why do you think survivors have made these types of statements?

I used to think, now I think

Reflect on your learning about the Holocaust and complete the following sentences.

- I used to think ...
- Now I think ...

What has changed in your understanding?

8.8 The atomic bombings

Learning intentions

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

- determine the significance of the race to build the atomic bomb
- explain why atomic bombs were dropped on Hiroshima and Nagasaki.

In addition to the terrible events of the Holocaust, the dropping of the atomic bombs on the Japanese cities of Hiroshima and Nagasaki, which effectively ended the war, is remembered as one of most significant events of World War II.

The development of more sophisticated technology in World War II culminated in the invention of the atomic bomb. In spite of the horrific bombing raids experienced in Europe, it is the use of nuclear weapons that remains a symbol of the terrifying force and destructive effects of war. The use of the two bombs also marked the beginning of the **Cold War** and the ever-present threat of nuclear destruction.

Cold War
the state of political conflict and hostility that existed between the Soviet Union (and its allies) and the United States (and its allies) from 1945 to 1990; it was characterised by threats, propaganda and public competition

The Potsdam Declaration

Following the end of the war in Europe, the Allies turned their attention to the Pacific War with the goal of forcing Japan to surrender. At the Potsdam Conference in July 1945, the Allied leaders from the United States, Britain and China issued the Potsdam Declaration to Japan. This was an ultimatum, threatening that if Japan did not unconditionally surrender it would face 'prompt and utter destruction'. Japanese Prime Minister Kantaro Suzuki replied '*mokusatsu*', which is derived from the Japanese word for 'silence'. This may be interpreted as 'no comment', but the press reported that Suzuki was refusing or ignoring the declaration. Regardless, no further statements were made.

The Manhattan Project

Source 10 Robert Oppenheimer (left) and US General Leslie Groves (right) examine the wreckage of the tower and shack that held the first nuclear weapon, 11 September 1945.

The Manhattan Project was the name given to the research program that developed the first atomic bomb. It had its origins in a letter from two of the world's leading physicists, Leo Szilard and Albert Einstein, that was sent to US President Franklin D. Roosevelt in 1939. The letter outlined their fears that Nazi Germany was beginning research into atomic bombs, and recommended that the United States should begin its own nuclear program. Roosevelt accepted this proposal, and began funding secret research into atomic energy. In 1942, the research program was placed under the command of the US military, and became the Manhattan Project.

Even before the United States entered World War II, it was dedicating huge resources to the Manhattan Project. By 1944, approximately 129 000 people were working on it, including scientists, construction workers and military personnel. Among these was a physicist named Robert Oppenheimer (see Source 10) who became known as the 'father of the atomic bomb' for his role in the project.

After three years of using their research to develop a weapon, members of the Manhattan Project tested the first atomic bomb on 16 July 1945, in New Mexico. This test was code-named 'Trinity'.

The Trinity test was extremely successful. At the time it was the largest human-made explosion in history, and the shock wave was felt up to 160 kilometres away. The test observers immediately contacted the new US President Harry S. Truman, who was at the Potsdam Conference, and told him that they had been successful.

The following month, two other atomic bombs developed by the Manhattan Project would be dropped on Hiroshima and Nagasaki in Japan, in what history would record as the last major acts of World War II.

The Japan campaign

In mid-1945, Japan was losing the Pacific War. America had recaptured the Mariana Islands and the Philippines, and Japan was running out of resources.

The Japan campaign began with a series of minor air raids by the United States. These soon developed into a major strategic firebombing campaign in late 1944, which involved dropping large numbers of small bombs that were designed to start fires. The change to firebombing tactics resulted in devastating attacks on 67 Japanese cities, killing as many as 500 000 people. Despite the damage and the huge civilian death toll, the Japanese military refused to surrender.

The United States therefore continued to push towards the Japanese home islands. Two major land battles – at the islands Iwo Jima and Okinawa – revealed how fierce Japan's defence of the home islands would be. Both islands were heavily fortified and fiercely defended. Around 6800 American and approximately 21 000 Japanese troops were killed at Iwo Jima. The Battle of Okinawa (see Source 11) was the bloodiest in the Pacific War, with 50 000 US troops wounded and 12 000 killed. Approximately 95 000 Japanese troops were killed, including many who committed suicide rather than surrender. It is unknown how many civilians were killed in the US invasion of Okinawa, but estimates vary from 42 000 to 150 000.

Despite the immense loss of life on both sides at Iwo Jima and Okinawa, the US commanders in the Pacific continued preparations for Operation Downfall, the plan to invade Japan. The Soviet commanders also prepared to enter the Pacific War – intending to declare war on Japan and invade the Japanese-occupied region of Manchuria on 9 August 1945. However, these commanders were not aware of the Manhattan Project. Japan's apparent rejection of the Potsdam Declaration in July 1945 caused Truman to authorise the atomic bombings of Japanese cities, hoping that it would force Japan to surrender and save millions of lives that might be lost in Operation Downfall.

Source 11 A demolition crew from the 6th Marine Division watch dynamite charges explode and destroy a Japanese cave, Okinawa, May 1945.

Source 12 Japanese soldiers surrender to US forces after the Battle of Iwo Jima, which ended on 27 March 1945.

The bombings of Hiroshima and Nagasaki

On 6 August 1945, an atomic bomb nicknamed 'Little Boy' (see Source 13) was dropped on the city of Hiroshima. Hiroshima was chosen because it was a large, urban, industrial city that also served as a military storage area and an assembly point for troops. No one knew how much damage the bomb would do, so Hiroshima was one of the few major cities not targeted by the American firebombing campaign. That meant the damage caused by the bomb could be more easily observed.

Source 13 'Little Boy' – the atomic bomb that destroyed almost 70 per cent of Hiroshima in August 1945

The bombing occurred at 9.15 am on a Monday morning in Hiroshima. The city's residents had been given no warning of the attack. The bomb's immediate impact was horrific. Approximately 80 000 people, or 30 per cent of Hiroshima's population, were killed, and another 70 000 were injured. Roughly 69 per cent of the city's buildings were completely destroyed. The long-term effects of the bombing were even worse. People suffered from burns, radiation, cancer and many other side effects. The exact figures are disputed, but the total number of deaths caused by the bomb by the end of 1945 was between 90 000 and 160 000. By 1950, around 200 000 people had died because of side effects.

After the bombing of Hiroshima, Truman released a statement saying that a new weapon had been used, and that 'if they [the Japanese Government] do not now accept our terms, they may expect a rain of ruin from the air'. On the same day, the Soviet Union declared war on Japan and invaded the Manchuria region. However, the Japanese Government still did not respond to the Potsdam Declaration. On 9 August 1945, a second atomic bomb, nicknamed 'Fat Man', was dropped on the port city of Nagasaki.

The bomb's impact on Nagasaki was just as devastating as it was on Hiroshima. Between 40 000 and 75 000 people were killed by the immediate effects of the bomb, and a further 74 000 were injured. By the end of 1945, at least 80 000 were dead because of the bomb's long-term effects.

Source 14 The atomic bombing of Nagasaki, 9 August 1945

KEY CONCEPT
Cause & effect

Explore it!
A virtual field trip to Peace Memorial Park (Hiroshima)

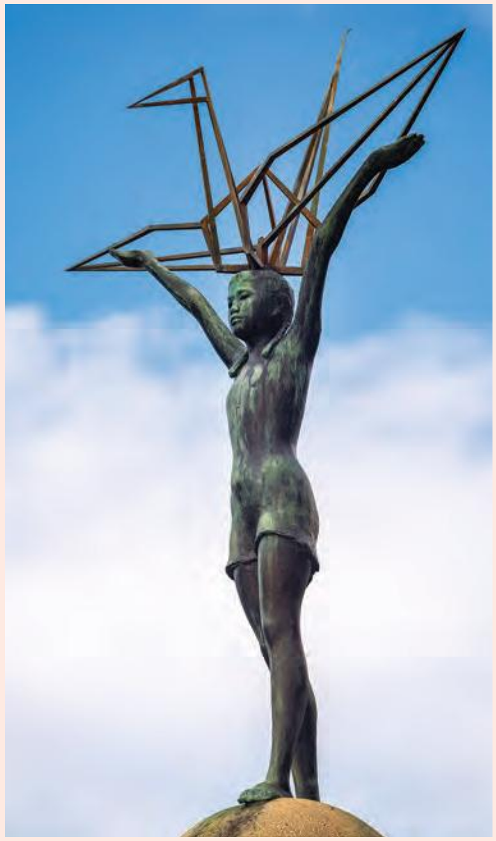
The story of Sadako Sasaki

Sadako Sasaki is one of the most famous victims of the atomic bombings in Japan during World War II. She was only two years old when the atomic bomb was dropped on her home city of Hiroshima. She survived the explosion, but began to experience symptoms nearly a decade later. In November 1954, she developed swelling on her neck, and purple spots on her legs. She was diagnosed with leukaemia, and hospitalised in February 1955.

While in hospital, Sadako was visited by a friend who taught her how to fold paper to make origami cranes. There is a Japanese tradition that folding 1000 paper cranes brings good luck, and grants the person who folds them one wish. Sadako attempted to fold 1000 cranes, but died in October 1955, at the age of 12, before she could complete her task. Her friends and family finished the cranes, and built a memorial to Sadako and all the children who were affected by the bombings.

There were tens of thousands of victims of the atomic bombings. Sadako's death is just one example of the appalling effects caused by the bombing of Hiroshima.

For more information on this key concept, refer to page 235 of 'The history toolkit'.



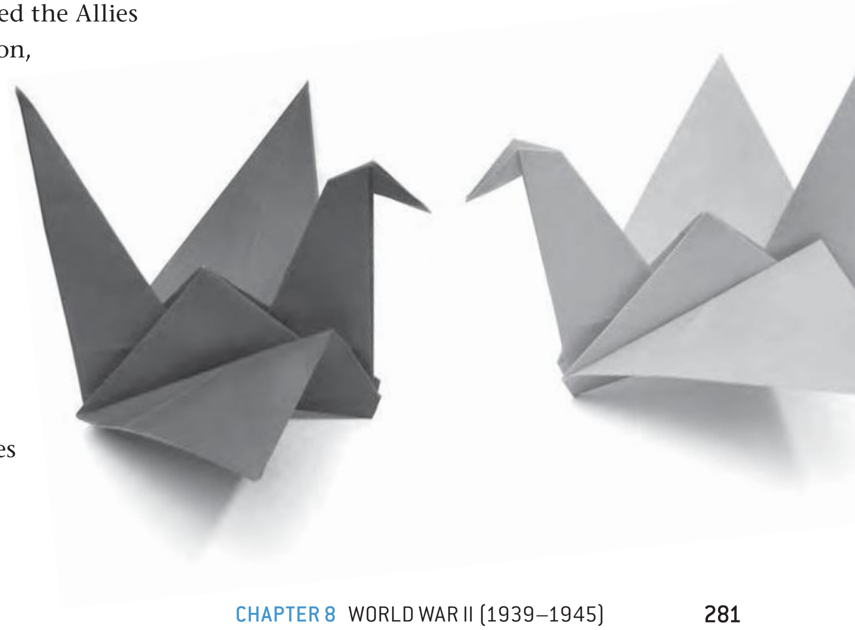
Source 15 A statue of Sadako Sasaki holding a crane in the Peace Memorial Park in Hiroshima

Japan surrenders

Japan was shocked and devastated by the two atomic bombings and the declaration of war by the Soviet Union. Although the Japanese military commanders wanted to continue fighting the war, Emperor Hirohito ordered his government to surrender.

On 14 August 1945, the Japanese Government notified the Allies that it would accept the terms of the Potsdam Declaration, provided the emperor retained full sovereignty over Japan; that is, the right to rule independently and free of foreign influence. That night, members of the Japanese military attempted to overthrow the government and remove Hirohito from power. They were unsuccessful.

On 15 August 1945, Hirohito's surrender speech was broadcast on Japanese radio, marking the end of World War II – a day that became known as 'Victory in the Pacific Day'. The formal declaration of surrender was signed on 2 September 1945, and the Allies occupied Japan from that date until 1952.



Source 16 Hiroshima before (13 April 1945) and after (11 August 1945) the atomic bombing

Debate about the bombings

Immediately after World War II ended, most Americans supported the use of the atomic bombs to force Japan to surrender. Disturbing images of maimed survivors were **censored** in the United States, and many people were so used to anti-Japanese propaganda that they felt little empathy for the victims of the bombings. Since then, however, there have been fierce debates over whether the atomic bombings were justified or necessary to win the war.

Some argue that the bombings saved millions of lives by preventing the need for an invasion of the Japanese home islands. The ferocity with which Japanese soldiers fought at Iwo Jima and Okinawa made this a popular view among US soldiers and their families. Other supporters of the decision to use the atomic bombs say that Japan's 'never surrender' warrior culture meant that, without the bombings, Japan would not have surrendered. Some historians have argued that the atomic bombings were in fact the inevitable result of both sides engaging in total war.

Some critics of the bombings argue that the surprise bombing of civilians with nuclear weapons was fundamentally and morally wrong. Others argue that the bombings constituted war crimes, or crimes against humanity. In a 2003 interview, Robert McNamara, US Secretary of Defence from 1961 to 1968, recalled General Curtis LeMay – who was involved in planning the bombings – telling him: 'If we'd lost the war, we'd all have been prosecuted as war criminals.'

censored
banned or limited information, books or ideas that are considered sensitive or damaging

Think, pair, share

- Think about the consequences of the atomic bombings of Hiroshima and Nagasaki.
- Discuss your ideas with a partner.
- Share your thoughts with the class.

8.8 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 **Name** the people who sent the letter to US President Franklin D. Roosevelt that kickstarted the Manhattan Project, and outline the two main points of the letter.

Comprehend

2 **Summarise** the reasons for the choice of Hiroshima as the target for the first atomic bombing.

3 **Explain** why Operation Downfall was never fully carried out.

Analyse

4 **Apply** the concept of cause and effect to explain how people dying in the 1950s were linked to the bombings of Hiroshima and Nagasaki.

5 **Apply** the concept of significance (see page 243 of 'The history toolkit') to determine how significant the race to build atomic weapons was.

Apply

6 Outline some of the arguments for and against the atomic bombings of Hiroshima and Nagasaki in World War II. Do you believe the bombings were justified? **Justify** your response.

8.9 The Kokoda campaign

Learning intentions

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

- explain the significance of the Kokoda campaign
- explain the continuity of the ANZAC legend in the Kokoda campaign.

Explore it!
A virtual field trip to the Kokoda Track

Japanese forces occupied parts of the north-east of the island of New Guinea in early 1942. As the Japanese navy was halted at the Battle of the Coral Sea, Japan's only option to seize Port Moresby, the capital, seemed to be an overland assault through dense jungle along a narrow path known as the Kokoda Track.

The Kokoda Track (sometimes called the Kokoda Trail) is a roughly 96-kilometre-long narrow path in Papua, connecting Port Moresby to the village of Kokoda (see Source 17). Surrounded by steep mountains and jungle, the track was frequently a river of sticky mud, and it was extremely slippery.

As the risk of a Japanese attack on Port Moresby increased, a military force had to be assembled. Because most Australian troops had been fighting for more than two years in Africa and the Middle East, or had been captured as POWs in the fall of Singapore, a new group of soldiers had to be assembled. Military leaders gathered a group of volunteers from the Citizen Military Force (see topic 8.10 on page 286) and local Papuan soldiers. They became known as Maroubra Force. These troops were young, inexperienced and underprepared for frontline combat. They received little training in jungle warfare, and were equipped with old, outdated weapons. By mid-1942, however, more experienced officers were sent to support the young soldiers.

Some units were kept around Port Moresby in reserve, while a smaller force was posted to the village of Kokoda in July 1942 to defend the airfield there. It took them eight days and nights to reach Kokoda, with the troops arriving on 15 July 1942.

Events and effects

The first clash of the Kokoda campaign occurred on 23 July 1942, when a small Australian platoon slowed the Japanese advance across the Kumusi River, before falling back to Kokoda. On 29 July 1942, 80 men defended Kokoda against a Japanese attack, suffering heavy casualties as they engaged in hand-to-hand fighting. The next morning, they retreated further along the track to the village of Deniki. They suffered heavy casualties attempting to retake Kokoda on 8 August 1942, as well as during the retreat along the track. This retreat was followed by a two-week break in the fighting, when the survivors met with reserves from Port Moresby and prepared to defend the track at Isurava.

The Battle of Isurava was a major turning point in the Kokoda campaign. Maroubra Force defended the track bravely, but was outnumbered and suffered heavy casualties on the first day of battle. At Isurava, however, the first substantial reinforcements from the AIF began to arrive, providing a vital boost for the Maroubra Force. The battle lasted four days, before the Australians had to retreat further, mounting small-scale delaying actions along the way. Further battles took place at Mission Ridge and Imita Ridge, before the Japanese troops began to run out of supplies and their advance stalled. In October,

PAPUA: THE KOKODA TRACK

Source 17 Source: Oxford University Press

Source 18 Steps on the Kokoda Track (AWM 026821)

Australian troops launched a counter-attack along the track, gradually forcing the Japanese back. By 2 November 1942, Kokoda was back in Allied hands. However, months of hard fighting lay ahead before the Allies could shift the Japanese from their bases at Buna and Gona.

Approximately 625 Australians were killed fighting along the Kokoda Track, and at least 1600 were wounded. More than 4000 suffered from serious illnesses, such as malaria. In the immediate aftermath of the campaign, members of Maroubra Force were hailed as 'the men who saved Australia'. The campaign also had an immediate impact on the organisation of both the US and Australian armies. The Australian troops on the track had been poorly supplied because of the unreliability of air drops. Both the Australian and US militaries developed new techniques for dropping supplies after their experiences at Kokoda.

Papuan peoples

Papuan peoples living in the villages along the Kokoda Track prior to World War II lived a traditional life, maintaining little contact with the outside world. From 1942, however, both Australian and Japanese troops trampled crops, destroyed huts and stole food due to the nature of the war. Villages were destroyed and many villagers were killed.

The Papuan peoples had no reason to be loyal to the Australians, who often treated them as second-class citizens in their own country. Yet many assisted the Australians – moving supplies to the frontline and carrying the sick and injured over the track to Owers' Corner. Their compassion for the sick soldiers earned the gratitude of the Australians, who called them the 'fuzzy wuzzy angels'.

After the Kokoda campaign, many villagers continued working for the Allies, building tracks, bridges and huts. Some joined the Papuan Infantry Battalion or the New Guinea Infantry Battalion.

Sapper Bert Beros wrote one of the famous Australian poems of World War II, sending it to his mother who had it published in the Brisbane *Courier-Mail* (see Source 19).

Source 19

Many a lad will see his mother
and husbands see their wives
Just because the fuzzy wuzzy
carried them to save their lives
From mortar bombs and machine gun fire
or chance surprise attacks
To the safety and the care of doctors
at the bottom of the track

May the mothers of Australia
when they offer up a prayer
Mention those impromptu angels
with their fuzzy wuzzy hair.

Extract from the poem *Fuzzy Wuzzy Angels* by Bert Beros

Source 20 Simple houses made of straw and wood in Avatip, modern-day Papua New Guinea; in this region, one can only meet people from isolated local tribes.

The ANZAC spirit at Kokoda

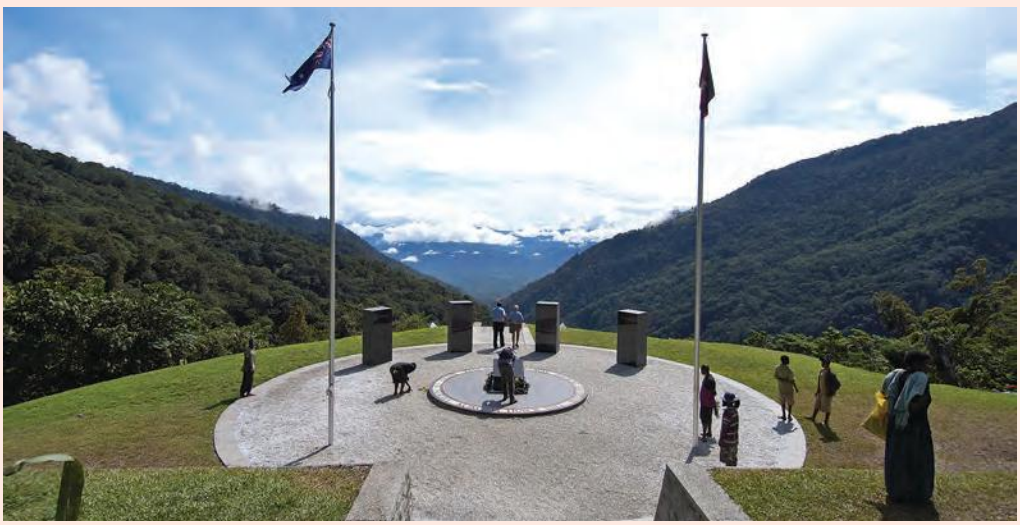
The Kokoda campaign encapsulated and continued the ANZAC spirit, which was born from the courage, mateship and bravery shown by Australian and New Zealand soldiers in World War I.

One brave soldier at Kokoda was an Australian sergeant named Bill Guest. His battalion attempted to reoccupy Kokoda in August 1942, but – outnumbered by the enemy and with no way of accessing supplies – they were forced to pull out. Although most of his battalion retreated, Guest remained behind with 21 other men to make sure the wounded among them would make it out safely. After six days trekking through the jungle with no food, Guest and his men rejoined the battalion at Isurava. They were weak and sick, but fought bravely when Japanese forces launched an attack on 27 August 1942. They were saved from defeat when reinforcements arrived to fight alongside them.

On 14 August 2002, Australian Prime Minister John Howard and the Prime Minister of Papua New Guinea, Sir Michael Somare, unveiled a memorial to the Kokoda campaign at Isurava (see Source 21). Bill Guest was present for the unveiling, representing himself and the 56 000 Australians who were at one time or another involved in the Kokoda campaign.

For more information on this key concept, refer to page 237 of 'The history toolkit'.

KEY CONCEPT
Continuity & change



Source 21 The Isurava Memorial was constructed for the 60th anniversary of the Kokoda campaign.

8.9 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 **Name** the groups of people that made up Maroubra Force.

Comprehend

2 **Describe** the location of the Kokoda Track.

3 **Explain** why the Australians called the local villagers 'angels'.

4 In your own words, **explain** how the Kokoda campaign continued the ANZAC legend.

5 **Explain** why the Kokoda campaign was significant to both Australian and Allied forces during World War II.

Analyse

6 **Analyse** Source 19. How do you think Australians back home would have interpreted this poem? What would they think of the Papuans?

Apply

7 **Investigate** the experiences of Australian and Japanese soldiers fighting in the Kokoda campaign. Prepare a PowerPoint presentation that compares and contrasts the experiences of the two groups.

8.10 The Battle for Australia

Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» analyse different perspectives on the Battle for Australia.

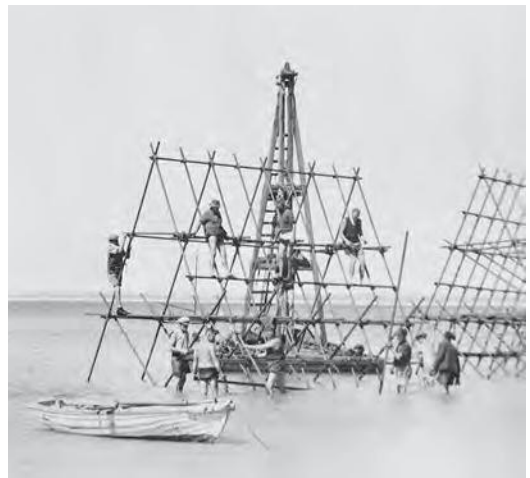
Quiz me!
A quick quiz on the Battle for Australia

Following Japan's success in the Asia–Pacific region, fears grew that it would target Australia next. After Japan took Singapore on 15 February 1942, Australian Prime Minister John Curtin said: 'The fall of Singapore opens the Battle for Australia.' Just days later, the Japanese attacked Darwin, and in May they entered Sydney Harbour (see pages 264 to 265).

Rumours quickly spread about a supposed imminent Japanese invasion. In coastal areas, large anti-boat scaffolds – called 'hurdle defences' – were built on the beaches to defend against enemy beach landings (see Source 22), and Curtin called upon the nation to act:

> You must make a complete sacrifice for Australia, or become a complete sacrifice to the enemy. It's fight, work – or perish.

By mid-1944, however, the threat of Japanese invasion had passed. This was mainly due to Allied success in the Asia–Pacific, including in the Battle for the Coral Sea and the Battle for Milne Bay.



Source 22 Men build large hurdle defences on the beaches in South Fremantle, Western Australia, 1943.

The Battle of the Coral Sea

The Battle of the Coral Sea took place between Japanese and Allied forces (from the United States and Australia) off the north-east coast of Australia from 4 to 8 May 1942. It was the first aircraft carrier battle ever fought, with all attacks carried out by aeroplanes. It also became the largest naval battle ever fought off Australian shores. The Japanese were attempting to capture Port Moresby – to halt the movement of troops and resources between Australia and the United States, while also extending their influence in the Pacific area.

This was the first time in World War II that the Japanese experienced failure in a major operation. The Battle of the Coral Sea prevented invasion of Port Moresby by sea, but the Japanese would soon attempt to capture the city by land.

Source 23 Australian soldiers pass abandoned Japanese tanks in Milne Bay.

The Battle of Milne Bay

Unable to reach Port Moresby via the Kokoda Track (see page 283), around 2000 Japanese landed at Milne Bay – roughly 370 kilometres from the capital – on the night of 25 August 1942. They were equipped with supplies and heavy equipment, such as tanks. However, they had completely underestimated the Allied forces, who numbered almost 9000 troops, including two Australian infantry brigades. The Japanese pushed on, and were soon joined by around 800 reinforcements.

Like the Kokoda Track, the terrain of Milne Bay was difficult, swampy, narrow, covered in dense jungle, hot and humid. While the Japanese were initially successful, capturing the village of Gili Gili, torrential rain soon prevented the tanks from proceeding (see Source 23).

The Australians also had to face enemy jungle snipers. It was reported that the Japanese would call orders out in English at night, sometimes tricking the Australians into abandoning their positions.

On 31 August 1942, a decisive battle around the airstrips resulted in heavy losses for the Japanese, who had to eventually retreat. Australian casualties numbered 373. Of the 2800 Japanese who had landed, only 1318 managed to evacuate the island.

This marked the first land victory in the Pacific War won by Allied forces, and the majority of the soldiers involved were Australian.

Interpretations of the Battle for Australia

Until the mid-1990s, no historian had recorded that Japan had planned to invade Australia. However, with hindsight, the combined actions of the bombing of Darwin, the attack on Sydney Harbour and the fighting in nearby Papua began to look like strategic moves towards Australia. To this day, historians argue about the extent to which Japan really wanted to invade Australia.

Source 24

> The Allied successes on the Kokoda Track, at Milne Bay, and on Guadalcanal ensured the security of Australia … If Port Moresby had been taken by [Japanese] troops advancing over the Kokoda Track, the whole strategic situation would have been transformed. In that sense, Kokoda was the most important battle fought by Australians in the Second World War … during 1942 Australia was in great peril. The Allied policy of 'Beat Hitler First' meant that Australia faced the prospect of a Japanese invasion with only limited support from the United States.

Extract from Dr David Horner, Professor of Australian Defence History, Australian National University, 'Defending Australia in 1942', *War & Society*, May 1993

Source 25

> It seems to be that Australians want to believe that they were part of a war, that the war came close; that it mattered … Set against the prosaic reality, the desire is poignant and rather pathetic.

Extract from by Peter Stanley, Australian historian and research professor, University of New South Wales, 'Threat made Manifest', *Griffith Review*, Spring 2005

Remembering the Battle for Australia

On 3 September 2008, Australian Prime Minister Kevin Rudd honoured the service and sacrifice of all those who served in the defence of Australia in 1942 and 1943, announcing that a 'Battle for Australia' day was to be held each year on the first Wednesday of September.

Commemorations for the Battle for Australia recognise those who fought on land, air and sea in the Kokoda campaign, the Battle of the Coral Sea and the Battle of Milne Bay, and in other nearby places, including Papua, New Guinea and Bougainville.

8.10 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 **Identify** when 'Battle for Australia' day takes place.

2 **Name** the city the Japanese forces were attempting to capture in the Battle of the Coral Sea and the Battle of Milne Bay.

Comprehend

3 **Explain** why Australians began to fear a potential Japanese invasion in 1942.

Analyse

4 **Analyse** the significance of the following events:
   - a the Allied victory in the Battle of the Coral Sea.
   - b the Allied victory in the Battle of Milne Bay.

5 **Analyse** the different interpretations of the Battle for Australia shown in Sources 24 and 25.

Apply

6 How important do you think it is to commemorate the Battle for Australia each year? **Justify** your response.

8B SKILLS IN CONTEXT

Test me!
Once you've finished the topics in this section, test yourself with this quiz and find out which worksheet you should do.

Antisemitism and the Holocaust

There is considerable evidence that details the experiences of those who were subjected to antisemitism in Nazi Germany, before, during and at the end of World War II.

Evidence includes the many laws passed in Germany during the 1930s. Once the war started, the Nazis took photographs in the ghettos and in concentration camps. Then, when the camps were liberated by the Allies in May 1945, there were more photographs taken and views recorded by those who liberated the camps. The soldiers were shocked at what they found. Still later, as Holocaust survivors began to readjust to life after the trauma, many of them documented their experiences and feelings.

Source 26

I hated the brutality, the sadism, and the insanity of Nazism. I just couldn't stand by and see people destroyed. I did what I could, what I had to do, what my conscience told me I must do. That's all there is to it. Really, nothing more.

Quote from Oskar Schindler, a German industrialist who saved the lives of many Jews

Source 27

When people came to gas chamber, they had a soldier going around and said, 'Women here, men here. Undress. Take shower.' They told them, 'You're going to a camp. Going to work. Tie shoes together. And make sure your children tie their shoes together. Because when you come out, you don't so much spend time look for your shoes and your clothes.' All a lie. They were not thinking about it that they will be dead in another fifteen minutes.

Quote from Holocaust survivor Sigmund Boraks

Source 28

A Jew cannot be a citizen of the Reich. He cannot exercise the right to vote; he cannot hold public office … Marriages between Jews and nationals of German or kindred blood are forbidden … Jews are forbidden to display the Reich and national flag or the national colours.

Extracts from the Nuremberg Laws – a series of antisemitic laws put in place in Germany by the Nazis

Source 29

I feel the urge to present to you a true report of the recent riots, plundering and destruction of Jewish property [on *Kristallnacht*]. Despite what the official Nazi account says, the German people have nothing whatever to do with these riots and burnings. The police supplied [stormtroopers] with axes, house-breaking tools and ladders … the mob worked under the leadership of [Hitler's stormtroopers].

Extract from anonymous letter from a German civil servant to the British consul, 1938

Source 30 Buchenwald prisoners liberated by the US army in April 1945

KEY SKILL
Using historical sources

Evaluating the reliability and usefulness of sources

Being able to evaluate the reliability and usefulness of different sources is one of the most important historical skills you need to master. The first thing to understand is that these terms (reliable and useful) are not interchangeable: a source can be both unreliable and useful at the same time, or reliable and not useful at the same time!

Follow the following steps to evaluate reliability and usefulness:

Step 1 **Evaluating reliability:** To determine the reliability of a source, you need to identify whether it is biased. To recognise bias in a source, think about:

- who created it, and when
- why it was created
- how it represents the facts
- whether it shows just one side of the story
- whether the views expressed in the source can be verified.

You can then come to a conclusion about whether the source is biased. You need to explain how and why a source is biased, and how this bias affects its reliability. The more biased the source, the less reliable it is; *but* remember that sources are never completely reliable nor unreliable.

Step 2 **Evaluating usefulness:** Some historical sources are more useful than others. But sources are not simply useful or not useful in their own right. They are useful or not useful depending on what you wish to find out from them.

Just because a source is biased does not automatically mean that it is not useful. It may be extremely useful if you are investigating the opinions of a particular group at a particular time. To make a conclusion about whether a source is 'useful', you need to be very clear about *what* you want to use the source for.

To evaluate a source's usefulness:

- Identify whether the source is biased/reliable.
- Look at what the source is telling/showing you and compare it to what you would like to know. Remember to consider both explicit (clear) and implicit (hidden) messages.
- Ask yourself: what are the uses of this source to answer my historical question? What are the problems of using this source to answer my historical question?
- Make a final judgment about the source's usefulness for your purposes.

For more information on this skill, refer to page 231 of 'The history toolkit'.

Practise the skill

1 **Analyse** each of the sources provided in this Skills in Context task. Then, using the steps above:
   a evaluate each source's reliability.
   b evaluate how useful each source would be in explaining Nazi attitudes towards Jews.
   c evaluate how useful each source would be as evidence that not all Germans supported the Nazi's antisemitic policies.

   For each source, be sure to **explain** how you reached your conclusions.

Extend your understanding

1 **Investigate** some of the main concentration camps that were built by the Nazis in Germany and its occupied territories. For each camp, take notes on the following:
   - name of the camp
   - location
   - when it was built
   - its main purpose
   - the years in which it operated
   - the estimated number of Jews (and non-Jews) killed in the camp.

2 See if you can locate the story of a person who survived the camp, and **summarise** some of their main experiences. If possible, try and also find some images, drawings or photographs of some aspect of the camp.

3 **Create** a PowerPoint presentation that highlights your findings.

8.11 Australia's commitment to the war

Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» summarise the extent of Australia's involvement in the war.

When Britain declared war on Germany on 3 September 1939, Australia gave its full support to the declaration. Only a few hours later, the Australian Prime Minister, Robert Menzies, made a radio broadcast to the nation.

Source 1

> Fellow Australians,
>
> It is my melancholy duty to inform you officially, that in consequence of a persistence by Germany in her invasion of Poland, Great Britain has declared war upon her and that, as a result, Australia is also at war. No harder task can fall to the lot of a democratic leader than to make such an announcement.
>
> Extract from a speech made by Prime Minister Robert Menzies, 3 September 1939

Source 2 Robert Menzies (1894–1978) was prime minister of Australia when World War II was declared.

Despite the declaration of war, Menzies was initially reluctant to commit Australian troops to fight in Europe. Australia's military was in a depleted state, and Menzies wanted to ensure that Australia could defend itself at home if required. The First AIF had been disbanded after World War I. In 1939, the Australian army consisted of around 3000 professional soldiers, and a voluntary militia (non-professional soldiers) called the Citizen Military Force (CMF). The CMF could only serve in defence of Australia. These units were mainly equipped with weapons brought home from World War I by the First AIF.

Despite his doubts, Menzies authorised the creation of the Second AIF in September 1939. The Australian Government had promised 20000 soldiers for the British war effort, but initially struggled to fulfil this commitment. Soldiers in the AIF were paid less than those in the CMF, and AIF wages were even lower than the dole (state benefits). As a result, many members of the CMF were reluctant to transfer to the AIF. The Royal Australian Air Force (RAAF) was also much more attractive to many Australians, because it seemed more exciting and offered higher wages. It took three months to fill the 6th Division of the AIF, in contrast to the three weeks it took to raise 20000 men at the start of World War I.

Source 3 A Second AIF recruitment poster (AWM ARTV06723)

The fall of France in 1940 changed Australia's perception of the war. Recruitment rates surged, three new divisions of the AIF were formed, and the government began to pour money into war-related industries. From 1940 to 1942, the AIF served mainly in Libya, Greece, Crete, Syria, Egypt and Malaya.

Conscription was still a matter of great debate in Australia at the start of World War II. When conscription was introduced in October 1939, it only required unmarried men who were 21 years old to report for three months' militia training and service in the CMF. These men could also choose to serve only in Australia or its territories.

In 1942, however, all men aged 18–35 and single men aged 35–45 became eligible to be conscripted into the CMF. These conscripts, despite being given the derogatory nickname 'Chocos', performed admirably under incredibly difficult conditions in the Kokoda and Milne Bay campaigns. (Choco was short for 'chocolate soldier' because members of the militia were thought to 'melt' in the heat of battle.)

From September 1939 until December 1941, Australia gave full support to the war in Europe. This changed dramatically with the bombing of Pearl Harbor in 1941 and the fall of Singapore in 1942.

After John Curtin was elected prime minister in 1941 and Japan entered the war, Australia's experience of the war changed (see Source 4). Women were encouraged to enter the workforce; industry and the production of goods and equipment became regulated by the government; and coastal defences were extended and reinforced. With the fall of Singapore, it seemed that Australia was directly under threat for the first time (see topic 8.10 on page 286).

Source 5 Soldiers of the Second AIF leave Australia to serve in the war, January 1940. Their helmets show their enlistment numbers and the cases on their chests hold their gas masks. (AWM 011141)

Source 4

> Men and women of Australia, we are at war with Japan. That has happened because, in the first instance, Japanese naval and air forces launched an unprovoked attack on British and United States territory; because our vital interests are imperilled and because the rights of free people in the whole Pacific are assailed. As a result, the Australian Government this afternoon took the necessary steps which will mean that a state of war exists between Australia and Japan. Tomorrow, in common with the United Kingdom, the United States of America and the Netherlands East Indies governments, the Australian Government will formally and solemnly declare the state of war it has striven so sincerely and strenuously to avoid.

Extract from John Curtin's declaration of war on Japan; from the ABC radio broadcast of the prime minister's address to the nation, 8 December 1941

8.11 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 a **Identify** the reasons why the AIF initially struggled to fulfil Australia's commitment of supplying 20 000 soldiers to support British troops in Europe.

b **Identify** the event that boosted recruitment.

Comprehend

2 **Explain** why Prime Minister Robert Menzies was initially reluctant to commit Australian troops to fight in Europe.

3 **Explain** why conscripted members of the CMF were nicknamed 'Chocos'.

4 What do Menzies' words (see Source 1) tell us about the relationship between Britain and Australia in 1939? **Explain** your answer.

5 **Summarise** how and why Australia increased its commitment to the war after 1941. Refer to Source 4 in your answer.

Apply

6 Conduct some additional research and **create** a simple mind map to show Australia's use of troops in the war. Use different colours to represent different contributions to the war effort. In your mind map, include the CMF, the AIF, the RAAF, conscripted troops, and women at home in Australia.

Analyse this!
John Curtin's declaration of war on Japan

8.12 Life on the home front: wartime government

Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» summarise the effects of World War II on the home front, including the use of wartime government controls.

When Australian Prime Minister Robert Menzies committed Australia to the war in 1939, the direct threat to the Australian mainland was low, due to its distance from the European theatre of war. However, after the Pacific War began in 1941, and Japanese forces moved closer to Australia, the perceived threat of invasion meant that the Australian war effort increased significantly. This changed the lives of ordinary Australians on the **home front**.

home front
those citizens who remain at home during a war

National Security Act

One of the first steps towards total war taken by the Australian Government was the *National Security Act*. This Act, passed on 8 September 1939, introduced laws that gave the federal government greater powers to respond to the threat of war. It allowed newspapers and the media to be censored, and legalised the detention of so-called 'enemy aliens'; for example, Germans and Italians living in Australia. It also meant that groups that opposed the war, such as the Communist Party of Australia and Jehovah's Witnesses, were banned.

Censorship and propaganda

During the war years, the Australian Government believed that strict censorship was necessary to maintain national security and boost public morale. The Department of Information was responsible for the administration of censorship. All forms of media, such as newspapers and radio broadcasts, were subject to controls that limited what they could report. For example, when Australian and US soldiers brawled in the so-called 'Battle of Brisbane' on 26 November 1942, the death of one Australian and the injury to others was withheld from the public because the event was seen as threatening US–Australian relations.

Source 6 Mail being censored (AWM 139316)

In addition to this, the Department of Information censored mail (see Source 6) and monitored phone calls to ensure that military information relating to troop movements and locations was not communicated to the enemy.

The Australian Government also relied heavily on propaganda. Propaganda is information designed to influence the ideas and attitudes of a group of people by presenting only one side of an argument. Throughout World War II propaganda was used to encourage Australians to support the war in different ways: enlist to fight; work in certain industries; and support certain causes. Most importantly, propaganda was used to unite Australians against a common enemy. Propaganda did this by encouraging an emotional response from people. Anger, fear and a sense of national pride were all strong motivations.

Censorship and propaganda were used together during the war to ensure that Australians were sympathetic to significant changes being made to laws and government policies.

Internment

During the war, the Australian Government took steps against people living in Australia who they believed threatened national security. Initially, this included the **internment** of Germans and Italians living in Australia who were believed to be pro-Nazi or pro-fascist (see Source 8). When war with Japan began, all Japanese who lived in Australia were also interned. Approximately 7000 'enemy aliens', many of whom had lived peacefully and innocently in Australia for decades, were interned in camps around the country.

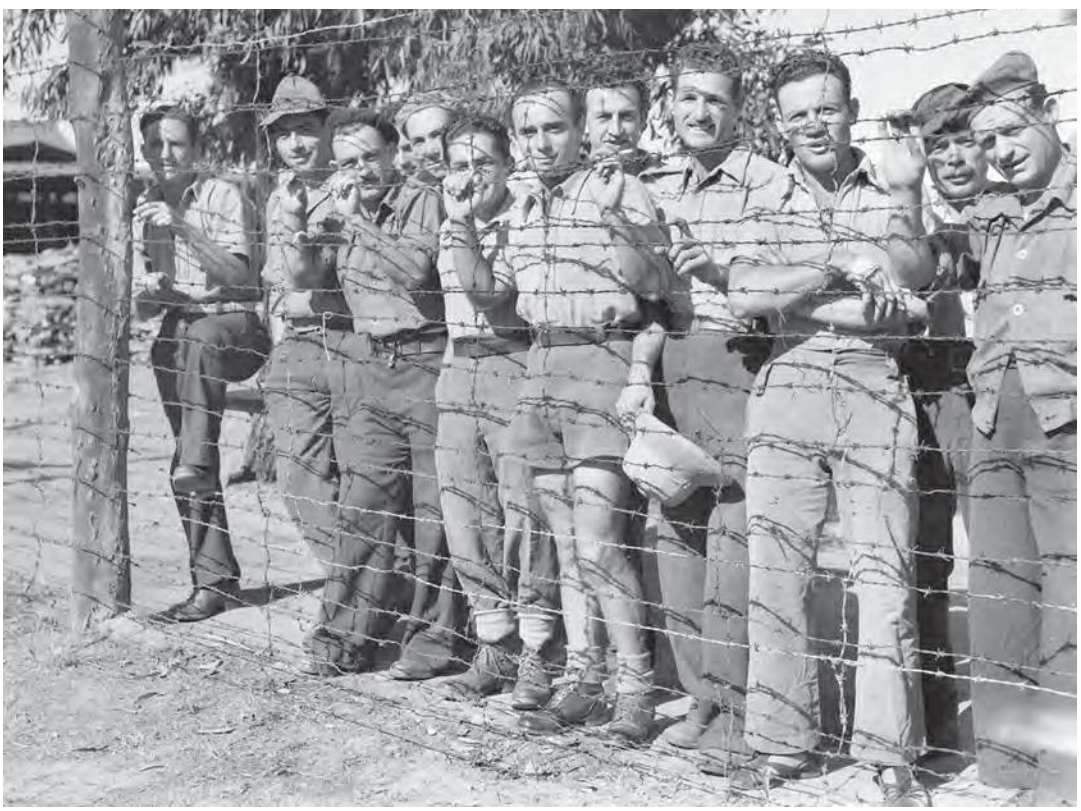
Source 7 A campaign poster urging civilians in Australia not to gossip (AWM ARTV02497)

Everyday life

Although the people of northern Australia suffered numerous air attacks from the Japanese, the lives of most Australians further south were not dramatically affected by the actual fighting of World War II. However, their lives were influenced in other ways, including the types of work they were allowed to perform. The government gave priority to industries such as manufacturing (for war materials such as aircraft and munitions) and agriculture (which was vital for food supplies).

In 1942, the federal government established the Directorate of Manpower to control the workforce. This allowed the government to force people to work in particular jobs or industries. In a way, this was similar to conscription – only for industry service rather than military service.

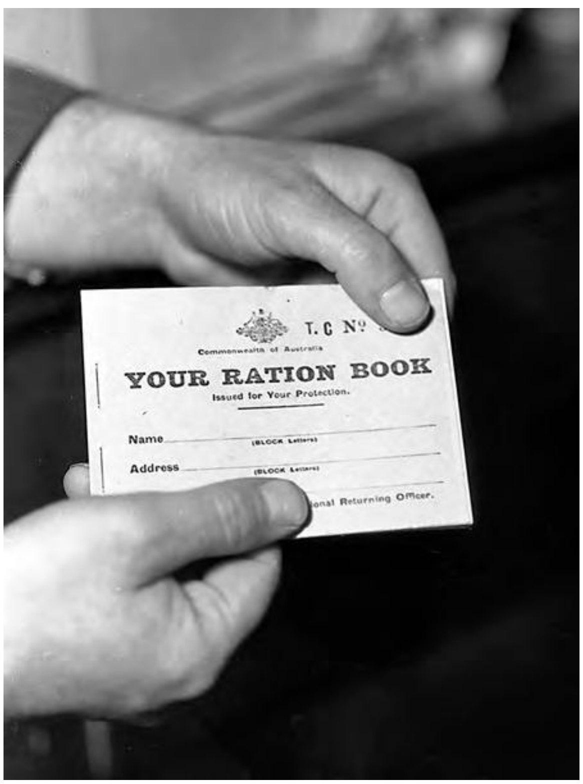
internment
the detention or imprisonment of people (commonly in large numbers) without trial, especially during times of war



Source 8 Italian POWs at Liverpool Prisoner of War and Internment Camp, New South Wales, during World War II (AWM 123706)

Analyse this!
Italian POWs

Source 9 Preparing for the night-time blackout



Source 10 Ration coupons entitled civilians to certain goods.

Other government policies influenced many aspects of Australian life during the war years. The fear of air raids, for example, led to the introduction of blackouts, which plunged major cities into darkness. Streetlights were switched off, car headlights were reduced to narrow beams, and houses were required to have blackout curtains to prevent light showing in the street (see Source 9). Failure to comply could result in fines.

The wartime government also imposed many other restrictions. It reduced hotel and bar trading hours and set maximum prices for restaurants. In 1942, it brought in national identity cards, which included personal details and listed the industry an individual worked in. Daylight saving was introduced to save power, and annual leave entitlements were cut back.

Rationing

As the war dragged on, the supply of many basic goods and products was limited. Restrictions on trading ships coming to Australia and the need to dedicate supplies of food and products to the war effort overseas meant that there were shortages of food and clothing for many ordinary Australians. In order to ensure that available supplies were distributed evenly, the Australian Government introduced a rationing system in May 1942. Products such as butter, milk, eggs, meat, tea, shoes and clothes were all rationed. Alcoholic drinks were also rationed, and people were encouraged to restrict travel unless it was absolutely necessary.

The government issued civilians with ration books containing coupons, which had to be presented when paying for certain goods (see Source 10). Pregnant women and families with young children were given extra rations.

During the war, some items simply could not be produced, such as pyjamas, lawnmowers and children's toys. Recycling was encouraged, and depots were set up for scrap metal, cloth and rubber. People were also urged to grow their own food to supplement their rations. Vegetable patches appeared in front gardens and many families kept chickens in the backyard.

Australians responded imaginatively to wartime rationing. Newspapers and magazines such as *The Australian Women's Weekly* offered advice about how to cope with the shortages. This included handy hints for cooking, and how to paint seams on the backs of their legs to look as if they were wearing stockings. Women were encouraged to avoid buying new items, by repairing and patching clothes for as long as possible.

Men on the home front

Almost three-quarters of a million Australians (mostly men) enlisted in the Second AIF during World War II. However, a great many more men and women were engaged in the war economy. Many men were not allowed to enlist in the armed forces because they worked in **reserved occupations**, such as farming and manufacturing (see Source 11). These men were needed at home to construct vital wartime infrastructure and military buildings, such as ports, aerodromes, bridges and barracks, and also to make war equipment and munitions. The Allied Works Council was set up in 1942 to oversee such projects. As part of this program, the Civil Construction Corps was established. The corps, while a civilian organisation, was run with military-style discipline. By mid-1943, more than 50 000 men served in the corps, which was mostly made up of labourers, carpenters and truck drivers.

Men who were unable to enlist because of age, health or their positions in reserved professions also joined the Volunteer Defence Force. Members of this force, including many veterans of World War I, were trained to protect the home front against enemy attack. The Volunteer Air Observers Corps monitored the sky for potential air raids. Air-raid wardens made sure that everyone followed blackout procedures and participated in evacuation drills.

reserved occupations occupations that were considered vital to the war effort at home, such as farming and manufacturing; men working in these occupations were not allowed to enlist in the armed forces

Source 11 These men are shown producing munitions during World War II. Jobs such as these were known as 'reserved occupations' because they were essential to the war effort.

8.12 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 **State** the items that were rationed in Australia.

Comprehend

2 Identify when the *National Security Act* was passed and **describe** what it did.

3 What was the 'Battle of Brisbane'? **Explain** why details about it were censored.

4 **Explain** the purpose of the Directorate of Manpower.

Analyse

5 **Classify** the different roles for men at the home front during the war.

6 Consider propaganda in the twenty-first century. Can you think of any examples of propaganda produced by the Australian Government today?

Apply

7 In pairs, **discuss** whether you think the Australian Government censors anything today.

8.13 Life on the home front: the changing role of women

Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» summarise the effects of World War II on the changing role of women.

Australian women had a very broad range of duties and responsibilities during World War II. The needs of the armed forces, the war economy and the deployment of many men overseas created new types of work possibilities. Before the war, Australian women were not permitted to serve in the military. Most working women were employed in factories, shops or family businesses. It was expected that women would resign from their employment once they had children. Although the number of women entering the workforce between 1939 and 1945 only increased by about 5 per cent, the types of jobs they were involved in changed dramatically.

Source 12 A recruitment poster to attract women into the services (AWM ARTV00332)

At the start of World War II, women on the home front were encouraged to take the sorts of roles that they had held during World War I. They were expected to knit and sew, pack parcels, raise money, encourage enlistment and maintain the home.

This changed as the war came closer to Australia. From late 1940, women were not only permitted, but were encouraged to join the services (see Source 12). Around 35 000 women served in the army, making up around 5 per cent of the entire force. The Women's Auxiliary Australian Air Force (WAAAF), established in October 1940, was quickly followed by the women's army and navy forces. About one-tenth of the total RAAF ground staff were women. Women were not sent overseas to fight, but were trained in many of the home front tasks so that more servicemen could be freed up to join the overseas forces.

By the end of the war, the WAAAF was made up of 18 500 women, the Australian Women's Army Service (AWAS) had 24 000 (see Source 13), and the Women's Royal Australian Naval Service (WRANS) boasted 2000.

Source 13 AWAS mechanics

Most commonly, women's roles in the armed forces were clerical. However, some were involved in 'traditional men's roles', as signallers, truck and ambulance drivers, intelligence officers, wireless telegraphers or aircraft ground staff (see Source 14). Despite their new skills, women were still generally not permitted to take on combat roles or serve outside Australia. The exception was nurses, who served in most areas where Australian troops were sent. Near the end of the war, however, the AWAS did send women overseas – posting 350 women to Lae, Hollandia and Rabaul. It was the only non-medical service to do so.

Source 14 Female plane-maintenance workers

Outside the auxiliary forces, it was argued that increasing women's employment generally would enable more men to enter military service. However, the understanding was that this employment was only for the duration of the war. So women entered new areas of work, acting as tram conductors, and taxi and truck drivers. As the war progressed, Australian women worked increasingly in war industries, such as manufacturing munitions and military equipment. Under Directorate of Manpower regulations, women could be deployed in occupations that suited their skills. For example, a woman trained as a florist could be compelled to work in a factory because of her skills with wire; while a dancer could be sent to work on a farm because she was agile and physically fit.

By mid-1943, nearly 200 000 women were employed in roles that would assist the war effort. They were paid roughly two-thirds of men's pay rates.

As the war continued, and more and more men were conscripted, many farms suffered from a shortage of workers. The Women's Land Army was set up to distribute female labour to farms and orchards to keep food production going. Around 3000 women were members of the Land Army. Volunteer groups such as the Australian Women's National League continued to take on the more traditional tasks for the war effort, such as knitting socks for the troops, preparing Red Cross food parcels, and raising money for soldiers' families. Other volunteers completed training in emergency services, such as first aid and ambulance driving in case of air raids.

At the end of the war there was a general expectation that women would return to domestic duties in the home and that the returned soldiers would be welcomed back into the workforce. This is mostly what happened, but there were some women (especially single women) who remained in their jobs (see Source 15).

Source 15 Female employment in Australia (thousands)

Year	Employers & self-employed			Wage & salary earners			Total civilians
	Rural industries	Other industries	Total	Rural industries	Other industries	Total	
1933	15.1	56.2	71.3	4.4	447.5	451.9	523.2
1939	16.0	62.0	78.0	4.0	561.6	565.6	643.6
1943	11.7	34.4	46.1	28.1	682.1	710.2	756.3
1945	17.0	43.1	60.1	23.0	667.1	690.1	750.2
1946	16.0	61.0	77.0	21.0	660.9	681.9	758.9

Commonwealth of Australia Yearbook 1946–1947, p. 488

Graph it!
Female employment in Australia

Key skill worksheet
Historical perspectives & interpretations: Exploring the role of women in the workforce

It is often argued that women were forced out of the workforce and back to a dull, domestic existence at the end of the war. There is some truth in this, but there is also evidence that many women wanted to return to traditional roles. Many who had had boring and unfulfilling jobs during the war were glad to be rid of them. Others who had put off marriage and childbearing during the war were delighted to return to domesticity and begin raising their families.

8.13 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 **State** the kinds of jobs that women did in the services and for the general economy during the war.

2 **State** how many Australian women served in the army.

Comprehend

3 **Describe** the purpose of the Women's Land Army.

Analyse

4 **Analyse** Source 12 as a piece of wartime propaganda.

5 **Analyse** Source 15. What do you observe? What does this tell us about women in the workplace in Australia?

Apply

6 To what extent did the war change the role and status of Australian women? Use evidence to **justify** your answer.

7 In pairs, **create** a role-play based around some of the issues women faced at the end of World War II. Adopt the roles of the following two characters:
- A woman who has been working as a meteorologist during the war – she is single and has been earning a good wage during the war. She has also enjoyed the work and the independence. She does not see why she should now be forced to leave the workforce.
- A man who has recently returned from the war and is keen to begin work as an accountant with his previous employer – unfortunately, there are no vacancies at the accounting firm, because all available roles have been filled by well-qualified women.

Each person must speak at least five times during the role-play and support their arguments for and against the sacking of women and the re-employment of men in the workforce after the war.

8.14 First Nations Australians at war

Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» summarise the role of First Nations Australians in World War II.

It is impossible to know how many First Nations Australians served during World War II. At the start of the war, the AIF officially only accepted First Nations peoples who were of 'substantially European descent'. However, First Nations peoples were accepted by the RAAF from the outset, and many joined the AIF by claiming to be another nationality. Furthermore, due to the early shortage of recruits, many recruiters accepted First Nations peoples as volunteers, despite official restrictions. Reg Saunders became the first Aboriginal commissioned officer in the Australian army in 1944. After the bombing of Darwin, the restrictions on First Nations peoples joining the AIF were relaxed. A small number of Torres Strait Islander peoples were also recruited into the US army.

Source 16 First Nations Australian soldiers on parade, 1940 (AWM P02140.004)

It is estimated that around 3000 First Nations Australian soldiers served in the armed forces during World War II, but the number who enlisted under another nationality was probably much higher.

In addition to the regular army, a number of First Nations Australians served in special forces (military units trained to conduct special operations). For example, the Torres Strait Light Infantry was formed in 1941 to defend the strategically important Torres Strait area. Also in 1941, anthropologist and soldier Donald Thomson was authorised to organise and lead the Northern Territory Special Reconnaissance Unit. This unit contained 51 First Nations and five non-Indigenous Australians. They lived off the land while they patrolled the coastline of northern Australia. In the event of a Japanese invasion, they were to conduct a **guerrilla** campaign from behind enemy lines, using traditional weapons. Despite the significant contribution that they made to the war effort, the soldiers in these units were not formally enlisted in the army, and received goods such as tobacco rather than monetary pay until 1992, when backpay and medals were awarded.

Weblink
First Nations Australian men at war

guerrilla
an unconventional method of warfare involving an unseen enemy, surprise and ambush tactics

Other First Nations peoples were employed by the army in a variety of roles. Some worked on farms and in butcheries, and some built roads and airfields. Others were construction workers, truck drivers and general labourers. They also filled more specialised roles, such as salvaging downed aircraft and organising munitions stockpiles. Many First Nations women were also involved in these roles, as well as joining organisations such as the Australian Women's Army Service. For example, Oodgeroo Noonuccal joined in 1942, after her two brothers were captured in the fall of Singapore. Her work during the war would lay the foundations for her later advocacy for First Nations rights.

Despite their important work, pay rates remained low for First Nations workers. The RAAF briefly increased their wages, but was pressured to lower them again by the government.

Source 17 This informal group portrait shows members of the 2/18th Australian Field Workshop, which included First Nations and non-Indigenous soldiers. Alick Jackomos (front row, centre), a Greek Australian, worked for Aboriginal rights and was one of the founders of the Aboriginal Advancement League after the war. (AWM P00898.001)

First Nations peoples made a huge contribution to the war effort. By 1944, almost every able-bodied Torres Strait Islander man had enlisted. This meant that, as a proportion of its population, no other community in the world voluntarily contributed as many men to the war effort. At first, their pay was one-third to that of regular soldiers. After a two-day 'mutiny' in December 1943, it was raised to two-thirds.

There seems to have been remarkably little racism or tension between First Nations and non-Indigenous Australians in the army. When they returned to civilian life, however, many First Nations veterans faced the same discrimination they had experienced before the war. Many were banned from Returned and Services League (RSL) clubs, except on Anzac Day. Most were not given the opportunity to use the skills they had learnt during the war when they returned home. Len Waters, a Kamilaroi (Gamilaraay) man who joined the RAAF in 1942 and flew 95 missions, dreamed of becoming a civilian pilot after the war. However, he was forced to return to his pre-war occupation as a shearer.

One former soldier, Tommy Lyons, who had served at Tobruk, said on his return: 'In the army you had your mates and you were treated as equal, but back here you were treated like dogs.'

8.14 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 **State** the number of First Nations soldiers who are estimated to have fought in the war.

Comprehend

2 a **Explain** why Len Waters was a significant individual.
  b What does Waters' experience suggest about the treatment of First Nations peoples after World War II?

Analyse

3 **Compare** the benefits received by First Nations and non-Indigenous World War II veterans.

4 **Examine** Source 17 and answer the following questions.
  a Explain the context of this image in your own words.
  b What does this image tell us about racism and discrimination during the war?
  c Suggest how the First Nations soldiers pictured may have felt after returning home from the war, and why.

Apply

5 **Investigate** the Coloured Digger Project and the proposed memorial to First Nations soldiers. Record some of the opinions on the proposed memorial.

6 In pairs, **discuss** how significant you think Reg Saunders' promotion to become the first Aboriginal commissioned officer was. Why do you think it took until 1944 for a First Nations soldier to get promoted to officer rank? Compare your responses with those of other pairs in the class.

Quiz me!
A quick quiz on First Nations Australians at war

8.15 How Australians experienced the war

Learning intentions

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

- summarise the experiences of Australians during the war, including as prisoners of war
- analyse Australian sources on the war.

In the early years of World War II, Australia's contribution to the war effort closely mirrored that of World War I. Roughly 550 000 Australians served overseas in the armed forces out of a total population of 7 million. Australian service personnel fought in campaigns in Europe, the Middle East and the Pacific.

In 1941, Australian ground forces were stationed in North Africa, Greece, Crete and Syria as part of the wider imperial commitments. RAAF pilots and crew also played a major role in the Allied bombing campaigns over Germany, where 6500 died.

The bombing of Pearl Harbor and the fall of Singapore increased the level of Australia's involvement. From 1942, the majority of Australian forces were deployed in the South-West Pacific area – in New Guinea, the Dutch East Indies (now Indonesia) and the Pacific Islands.

In 1943, conscription into the armed forces in Australia's overseas territories – including New Guinea and the Solomon Islands – was introduced with little opposition. Because of the real threat of Japanese invasion, the issue of conscription was much less divisive than it had been during World War I.

In Australia, as with the other nations involved in World War II, 'total war' meant that both service personnel and civilians became part of the war effort. From early 1942, when the war came close to Australia's shores, all aspects of the Australian economy were focused on the war effort. 'Luxury' industries such as furniture-making were disbanded, and men involved in 'critical' war-related industries were not allowed to enlist. The United States made Australia its main base for the South-West Pacific, meaning that up to 1 million US service personnel were based in Australia. The economy was geared to meet the needs of these soldiers, as well as supporting the Australian forces and maintaining the war effort.

Source 18 Australian Army Rising Sun Badges, like this one from 1942, were issued to soldiers of the AIF during World War II. They helped identify Australians fighting abroad.

Prisoners of war (POWs)

Australian service personnel were captured by the enemy in all the major theatres of war. Roughly 8184 Australians were held as POWs in German and Italian camps. Of these, 269 died. These men were mostly captured in Greece and North Africa, while many members of the RAAF had been shot down in bombing raids over Germany and captured there. Most Australian POWs in Europe were imprisoned in purpose-built POW camps under decent conditions. Nine Australians were, however, among a group of 168 Allied pilots shot down over France and imprisoned in the Buchenwald concentration camp.

Source 19 Australian POWs in a Japanese prison camp at the end of the war (AWM 019199)

Analyse this!
Australian POWs

By far the highest number of Australian POWs were captured by the Japanese in the Pacific (see Source 19). Between January and March 1942, more than 22 000 Australian service personnel were captured by Japanese forces in the region, with 15 000 taken in Malaya and Singapore alone. By 1945, more than 8000 had died. The significantly higher rate of deaths among POWs captured by the Japanese can be attributed to Japan's attitude towards prisoners. Japanese military culture, shaped by traditional values, meant that the Japanese treated enemy prisoners poorly. Japan refused to follow the terms of the **Geneva Convention**, which outlines the basic standards of war, including in relation to the treatment of captured civilians and military personnel.

Geneva Convention
a term used to describe a number of international treaties and agreements that established a code of conduct for all countries during times of war; they outline the rights of prisoners (both military and civilian), and protections for the wounded and for civilians living in and around war zones

At camps in Ambon in Indonesia and Rabaul in New Guinea, conditions were so appalling that more than half those captured died, and hundreds of Australian prisoners were massacred. POWs were also killed in tragic accidents. In 1942, 1053 Australian POWs were killed while being transported from New Guinea to Japanese-occupied China. The Japanese ship they were on was torpedoed and sunk by a US submarine, unaware that the ship was carrying Allied POWs.

The Japanese also made use of POWs as forced labour, most notably on the Thailand–Burma Railway. Along with British, Dutch and US prisoners, 13 000 Australian POWs were used to build the Thailand–Burma Railway, which was to supply the Japanese campaign. About 2800 Australians died from malnutrition, mistreatment and disease.

Edward (Weary) Dunlop

Among Australia's POWs there were many remarkable stories of heroism and resilience. One of the most notable was the story of Edward (Weary) Dunlop, a Melbourne doctor who was serving in Java. When Singapore fell in February 1942, Dunlop had the opportunity to escape, but he remained behind to tend to his patients and became a POW of the Japanese later that year.

Dunlop was sent to work on the Thailand–Burma Railway, where he often put his own life on the line to care for sick and wounded soldiers. He also stood up to the Japanese on behalf of those unfit for work. In one instance, he saved the life of a blind amputee POW by standing between him and the bayonets of the Japanese soldiers. When the Japanese surrendered in 1945, Dunlop remained in Thailand to coordinate the evacuation of liberated POWs.

Source 20

> [T]housands of us [were] starved, scourged, racked with malaria, dysentery, beri beri, pellagra and the stinking tropical ulcers that ate a leg to the bone in a matter of days, and always Weary Dunlop and his fellow MOs [medical officers] stood up for us, were beaten, scorned, derided, and beaten again.

Quote from an ex-POW, vicnet website

For more information on this key concept, refer to page 243 of 'The history toolkit'.

KEY CONCEPT
Significance

Source 21 Edward (Weary) Dunlop (right) in Singapore, 1942, with Lieutenant Colonel A.E. Oates

Reports on the war

When major battles occurred, many Australians often heard reports delivered by the Australian prime minister or read about them in their local newspapers. By reading primary sources (see Sources 22 to 24), we can try to understand and interpret the attitudes held by people at the time.

While events such as the bombing of Darwin or the submarine attack on Sydney were well documented, other incidents such as the Cowra breakout (see page 305) were not publicised. This censorship of certain events gives us insight into Australia's decision to 'protect' the public.

Source 22

Darwin has been bombed – but not conquered. We must face with fortitude the first onset, and remember that whatever the future holds in store for us, we are Australians and will fight grimly and victoriously. Let us each vow that this blow at Darwin and the loss that it has involved, and the suffering it has occasioned, shall gird our loins and steel our nerve. We, too, in every other Australian city, can face these assaults with the gallantry that is traditional in the people of our stock.

Statements by Prime Minister John Curtin in response to the bombings on Darwin, published in *The Advocate*, 23 February 1942

Source 23

Is our system of reconnaissance, observation and warning as efficient as it should be? Planes were damaged on the ground. Was there proper dispersal and camouflage? Why did these machines not take the air? Has our ingenuity failed to provide other fields from which an invading enemy air fleet can be attacked? There may not be much time to absorb the lessons of Darwin, but they must be examined quickly and applied at once in other centres which may become early targets for enemy raiders.

Extract from an editorial titled 'Are We Learning Darwin Lesson?', *Courier-Mail*, 23 February 1942

Source 24

The news is at once alarming and reassuring. The communiqué from Allied Headquarters is a glowing tribute to the vigilance of our services and the efficiency of our defences. If the vigilance of our defence forces had not been so keen and their counter-stroke so swift and deadly we might at this moment be confronted with a disaster.

Statements by Deputy Leader of the Federal Opposition Billy Hughes following the submarine attack on Sydney, published in *The Sydney Morning Herald*, 2 June 1942

Cowra breakout

In August 1944, Australia held 2223 Japanese POWs. Of these, 1104 were housed in 'Camp B' in a war compound near Cowra in mid-west New South Wales. Many of the prisoners had adopted aliases (different names) in captivity to avoid the news of their capture reaching their friends and family in Japan.

On 4 August 1944, inmates were informed that they were to be relocated to a POW camp in Hay, 400 kilometres west of Cowra. By informing the prisoners of their transport, Australians were acting in accordance with the Geneva Convention, which required advance notification for all prisoner transfers. Instead, the news acted as the catalyst for the largest prison breakout in World War II. At 2 a.m. on 5 August 1944, a Japanese bugle call (see Source 25) was heard across the compound, and 900 prisoners – armed with knives and other weapons – broke fences to escape. The prisoners were fired upon, but their numbers were too great and nearly 400 of them managed to escape.

Source 25 The bugle used to signal the Japanese breakout from Cowra

Over the next nine days, all the prisoners were recovered. In total, 231 prisoners were killed or committed suicide, and another 108 were injured. Four Australians were dead. There was great secrecy surrounding this event, as the authorities feared what might happen to Australian POWs in Japanese camps if the news spread.

Today, there remains controversy over some of the killings of Japanese prisoners, and whether they were necessary. Questions also remain about how the inmates were armed and managed to escape in the first place.

8.15 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 **State** five of the places where Australian soldiers served during World War II.

2 In your own words, **define** the Geneva Convention.

Comprehend

3 **Explain** why there were significantly higher death rates in Japanese POW camps. Use evidence from this topic to support your answer.

4 **Describe** the ways in which the Japanese treated their POWs. Give examples.

Analyse

5 **Analyse** Sources 22 to 24 by reading them closely and answering the following questions:

- a Create a mind map of your impression of each of these sources. What do you notice about each one?
- b Identify the message in each of these sources.
- c Determine how accurate the information in each one is.
- d Compare the tone in each source.

Apply

6 **Determine** the significance of the Cowra Breakout. Refer to page 243 of 'The history toolkit' to help you get started.

7 **Investigate** Edward (Weary) Dunlop and write a short biography that provides details about his early life, his experiences and actions during World War II, and his life after the war, including the work he undertook to help former POWs.

8 **Investigate** the history of the 'Rising Sun' badges worn by Australian soldiers. How has the design changed over time?

8.16 Australia's international relationships

Learning intentions

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

- evaluate the significance of World War II to Australia's international relationships
- summarise the economic and social impacts of World War II on post-war Australia.

Although Australia did not experience the levels of war damage of many of its allies and was never occupied by enemy forces, the conflict had a number of important consequences for the nation. It fundamentally altered Australia's relationship with Britain and the United States. The legacies of World War II also laid the foundations for great economic and social change in the second half of the twentieth century.

Australia and the United States

In 1939, Australia's Prime Minister Robert Menzies had committed Australia to a war in support of the British Empire. By 1945, though, the world had changed. Britain had entered the conflict as one of the world's greatest powers. The countries of the empire cooperated to confront Nazi aggression in Europe. However, as the conflict expanded into a global one, the strains of war took their toll. In confronting Nazi Germany, Britain became dependent on the financial, military and economic support of the United States.

As the war continued, Britain's resources were reduced, and the nation found it increasingly difficult to defend itself, and to fight Germany and Italy in Europe and North Africa. Britain could only send limited resources to Asia, when the war expanded into the Asia–Pacific region. When Japan struck, Britain experienced its greatest wartime defeat with the fall of Singapore in 1942.

Source 26 Australian Prime Minister John Curtin welcomes US General Douglas MacArthur to Australia, 1943.

To address this changing situation, Prime Minister John Curtin moved Australian troops from the Middle East to Australia, against the advice of the British Government. This was a practical, short-term solution to a major strategic problem. The long-term consequence was the realisation that Australia could no longer rely on Britain to defend it. Australia now focused on a strategic relationship with the United States. As a result of this new arrangement, Curtin placed Australian forces under the control of the broader US military campaign in the Pacific. US General Douglas MacArthur also established his base for the South-West Pacific campaign in Australia.

Until this point, Australia's foreign policy had largely been determined by the needs of the British Empire. This relationship with the United States was an important step in establishing an independent Australia, and continues to have an important bearing on Australian foreign policy decisions.

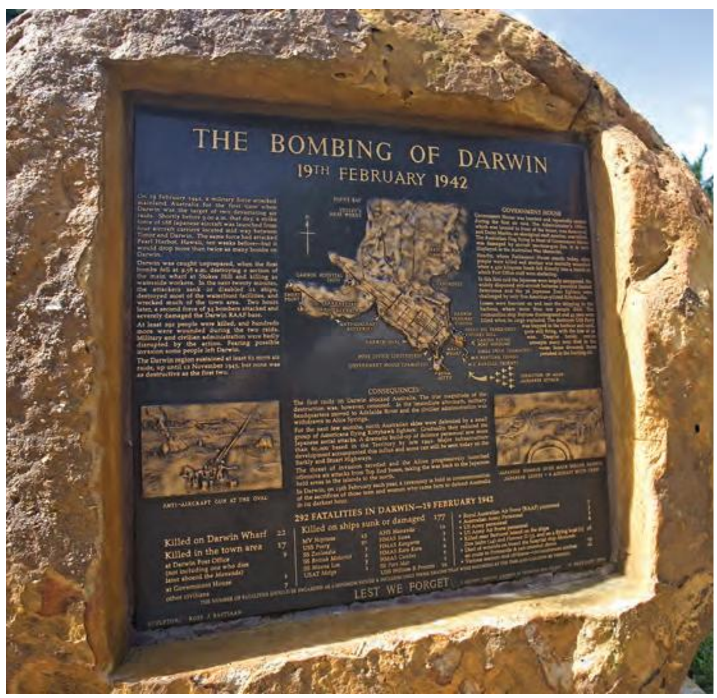
Source 27 US sailors and soldiers quickly made friends in Australia, and were received with hospitality.

Domestic changes

The social and economic implications of the war were far-reaching for Australia. Wartime industries had encouraged the growth of manufacturing and services. For the first time in the nation's history, farming ceased to be the major area of economic activity. Food processing and canning, an increase in steel production, and the manufacture of consumer goods such as washing machines and refrigerators all expanded during and after World War II. The first Holden car rolled off the assembly line at Fisherman's Bend, Victoria, on 29 November 1948, and cost the equivalent of two years' wages for the average worker: £675 ($1350).

The presence of almost 1 million US service personnel in Australia during the war also had a significant cultural impact. For some Australian women these men would become boyfriends or husbands. The influence of US cinema, language and culture made its first major inroads in Australia during this period. Australians had mixed feelings about this cultural 'invasion'. On one level, many feared the loss of Australian culture and traditions. On another, for many younger Australians there was a fascination with US music, dress and slang.

The experiences of the war years also reshaped the role of Australian governments in people's lives, and cemented the place of the federal parliament as the most significant of the three tiers of government in the nation. In order to fight the war, the federal government had significantly expanded the scope of its activities. Income taxation and its spending were now centrally controlled, and the banking system was regulated by the government. The Australian public placed greater reliance and expectations on the government to successfully manage the economy and social issues.



Source 28 A memorial to those who lost their lives in the bombing of Darwin, February 1942

The experience of war and the deaths of roughly 39 000 Australian service personnel and civilians also shaped Australia's future. The commemoration of the 1939–45 fallen was incorporated into commemorations of World War I. Local communities recognised the sacrifice of the more recent deaths by extending and expanding the monuments originally constructed to remember the dead of the 1914–18 conflict, which ironically had been described as 'the war to end all wars'.

Postwar migration

After World War II, many Australians felt that they had only narrowly avoided a Japanese invasion. The government, under the new Prime Minister Ben Chifley, decided that Australia needed to increase its population to protect itself from the threat of foreign invasion. The slogan 'Populate or perish' was coined by the Immigration Minister, Arthur Calwell, to promote this new immigration policy. The 'Populate or perish' campaign initially focused on encouraging British migrants, but this failed to increase the population enough. For the first time, Australia began to actively seek migrants from continental Europe (see Source 29).

Source 29 Immigrants arrived from all corners of Europe as part of the 'Populate or perish' campaign.

See, think, wonder

Look at Source 29.

- What do you see?
- What do you think?
- What do you wonder?

The war had created somewhere between 11 and 20 million refugees in Europe. Many of these refugees – including Holocaust survivors and people who had fled the Soviet occupation of Eastern European nations – were housed in displaced persons' (DP) camps. These camps were initially organised by the armies of various nations, but were gradually taken over by the United Nations. They provided shelter, nutrition and basic health care for the refugees. A more permanent solution had to be found, however. Around 6 million refugees were returned to their own countries by the end of 1945, but a huge number faced persecution in their homelands and remained in the DP camps. In 1947, around 850 000 refugees were still living in DP camps in Europe. The International Refugee Organization (IRO) was founded by the United Nations in 1946 to find homes for these people.

In 1947, desperate to increase its population, Australia reached an agreement with the IRO to resettle 12 000 refugees a year. These 'new Australians', as they came to be called, were accepted on the condition that they agreed to work in government-selected jobs. Australia eventually exceeded its commitment to the IRO, and resettled approximately 180 000 refugees.

As well as refugees, the government sought to encourage people from southern and central Europe to migrate to Australia. In the 20 years after the end of World War II, almost 2 million people migrated to Australia. The influx of migrants from non-English-speaking nations, as well as the belief that Australia's security was linked to its population size, changed Australia's migration policy. The 'dictation test' – which had been used since 1901 to effectively exclude migrants on the basis of race – was abolished in 1959. This led to Australia accepting refugees throughout the rest of the twentieth century, including those from the Middle East and Vietnam; and, eventually, accepting Asian migration.

World War II was the catalyst to change Australia's migration policies and Australia's relationships with the rest of the world.

Foundation of the United Nations

The League of Nations – which had been set up after World War I to provide an international forum to promote peace – had clearly failed. The first step towards establishing its replacement was the Declaration of the United Nations, which was signed by 47 nations between 1942 and 1945. Even while World War II was still in progress, plans were under way to create a new international body.

The United Nations (UN) officially came into existence in 1945, with 51 nations as founding members. The first major meeting to prepare the Charter of the UN was held in San Francisco in April 1945 (see Source 30). Australian delegate Herbert 'Doc' Evatt, the Minister for External Affairs, played a key role in drafting the Charter.

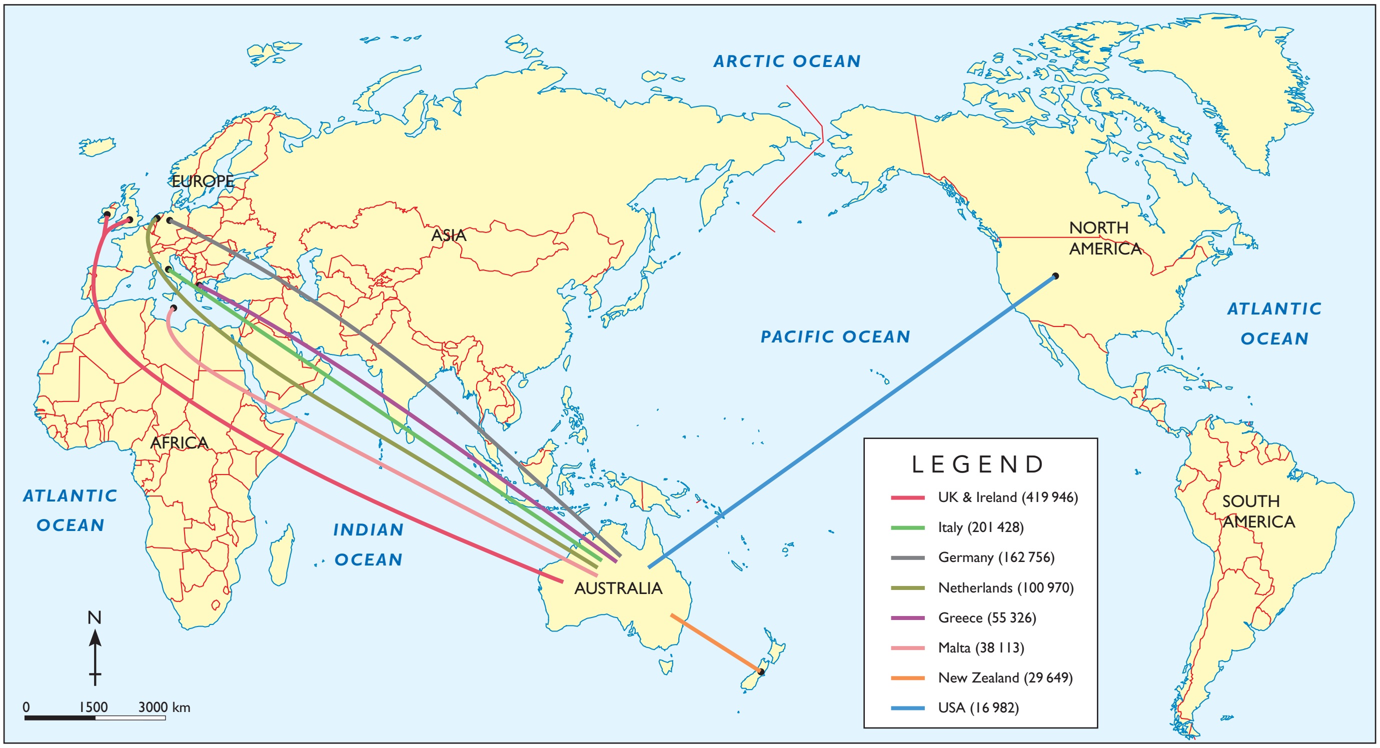
Source 30 Australia's delegation to the UN Conference, San Francisco, 25 April 1945; Herbert 'Doc' Evatt is seated second from the right.

The Charter outlined the role of the UN as an international organisation to prevent war. It also included provisions for the UN to aid refugees, support economic reconstruction after the war, and protect human rights.

Evatt argued that larger powers, such as the United States and the Soviet Union, should not dominate the system, and that smaller nations, such as Australia, had an important role to play. Evatt was involved in negotiating the establishment of the State of Israel, which was one of the first initiatives of the UN. He also played a key role in the drafting of the UN Universal Declaration of Human Rights in 1949.

Evatt went on to become one of the first presidents of the UN General Assembly, the forum for discussing and debating issues of international peace and security. Other elements of the UN – such as the Security Council, the World Health Organization (WHO), the World Bank, the International Atomic Energy Commission (IAEC), the International Court of Justice and the UN Education, Scientific and Cultural Organization (UNESCO) – all had their origins during the foundation of the UN and continue to play a significant part in world affairs.

TOP EIGHT COUNTRIES OF SETTLER MIGRATION TO AUSTRALIA, 1949–1959



Source 31

Source: Oxford University Press

Think, pair, share

- Think about the patterns of settler migration shown in Source 31 and how these migrations have affected Australia.
- Discuss your ideas with a partner.
- Share your thoughts with the class.

ANZUS Treaty

In 1949, the United States, Britain and a number of other European countries formed the North Atlantic Treaty Organization (NATO) to safeguard the freedom and security of all members. At this time, the Australian Government was concerned about political freedoms within the Pacific area, due to the rise of communism in China and Korea after the conclusion of the war. Therefore, Australia, New Zealand and the United States (ANZUS) signed a security treaty on 1 September 1951, committing the three nations to peace and safety in the region. The ANZUS negotiation was the first time that Australia formulated political alliances without the involvement of Britain, choosing to refuse Britain's involvement as head of the Commonwealth.

The ANZUS Treaty has only been invoked once, when Australian Prime Minister John Howard committed Australia to involvement in the 'War on Terror' in response to the 9/11 terrorist attacks on the United States.

Australia's postwar relationship with Japan

From 31 January 1946, the British Commonwealth Occupation Force (BCOF) participated in the Allied occupation of Japan. This was another first for Australia – the first time it was involved in the military occupation of a country it had defeated in war. Of the 45 000 BCOF personnel, 16 000 were Australians. While the United States were responsible for the military government of Japan, the BCOF was required to supervise the **demilitarisation** and disposal of Japan's war operations, including factories and military equipment. By the end of 1948, the BCOF was entirely made up of Australian members.

demilitarisation
the removal of all military forces

By 1952, Australia's relationship with Japan was re-established with the signing of the Japanese Peace Treaty (in San Francisco). The Allies no longer needed to occupy Japan, and Haruhiko Nishi was appointed as Japanese ambassador to Australia. In 1953, a Japanese embassy was established in Canberra, with Australia having already established its embassy in Tokyo in 1947.

Australia and Japan continue to develop diplomatic and economic relations in the postwar period. In 1957 Australia became the first nation to open its doors to trade with Japan after World War II with the Australia–Japan Commerce Agreement. In 1976 Australia and Japan signed the Basic Treaty of Friendship and Cooperation (known as the NARA Treaty), which established non-discriminatory treatment in dealings with trade, investment and migration. Today, Japan remains one of Australia's largest trading partners, export markets and sources of foreign investment.

Source 32 Australian Prime Minister Anthony Albanese and Japanese Prime Minister Fumio Kishida in Tokyo, 24 May 2022

Quiz me!
A quick quiz on Australia's international relationships

8.16 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 **Identify** who coined the slogan 'Populate or perish'.

Comprehend

2 **Explain** why Prime Minister John Curtin turned to the United States for support during World War II.

3 **Summarise** the moves Curtin made once war loomed on Australia's doorstep.

4 **Explain** why Australia wanted a larger population after World War II.

5 **Summarise** the social and economic impacts of the war on postwar Australia.

6 **Describe** the purpose of the ANZUS Treaty.

Analyse

7 **Analyse** the significance of Herbert 'Doc' Evatt as a historical figure.

Apply

8 **Propose** two ways in which you think Australia would be different today if Robert Menzies had remained prime minister throughout World War II. Use evidence to support your answer.

9 Can the wartime relationship between Australia and the United States be described as a 'love–hate' relationship? **Justify** your response.

10 **Evaluate** why you think Australia was the first nation to open its doors to Japanese trade. How strong is the relationship between the two countries today? Use evidence to support your answer.

11 **Evaluate** the significance of World War II to the development of Australia's international relationships following the war.

8C SKILLS IN CONTEXT

Test me!
Once you've finished the topics in this section, test yourself with this quiz and find out which worksheet you should do.

Source 35 Australian soldiers on the Kokoda Track

Commemorating World War II

Each year, Australians commemorate important military moments in the nation's history. The purpose of commemoration is to remember, honour or show respect to a person or event.

The Kokoda campaign (see topic 8.9 on page 283) was arguably the most significant battle for Australian soldiers during World War II. For this reason, the Kokoda Track remains an important symbol.

In recent years, thousands of Australians have chosen to commemorate the battle by walking the Kokoda Track. For these people, the mental and physical challenge is a way of acknowledging the sacrifices of Australian soldiers and the local Papua New Guineans. A highlight is the opportunity to reflect at the Isurava war memorial, jointly erected in 2002 by the governments of Australia and Papua New Guinea.

This type of commemoration, however, raises debate and discussion. Nearly 100 different tourist and trekking companies provide Kokoda tours, but very few are locally owned. The track passes through Oro and Central Provinces, home to people and villages in the north and south. When Australian tourists began arriving, locals engaged in subsistence farming, raising animals and growing their own crops.

The influx of Australian walkers has impacted local communities and the environment. As trekking has become more popular, the local population has increased, with more people being employed as guides and porters for the treks. This has placed a greater demand on the region's resources, which is threatening food security.

Another point of discussion concerns the fact that during the Battle of Kokoda, hundreds of Australian and Japanese lives were lost. Eighty years later, both human remains and remnants of the war continue to be found on the track, and many people question whether these remains should be disturbed by tourists.

Source 33

... In the end they believed in Australia – in the democracy they had built, in the life they had made there, and the future they believed their country held. Not all generations are called on to risk and sacrifice their lives for their beliefs – but all generations need to believe. On this Anzac Day it seems appropriate to remind ourselves of our responsibility to renew that faith and loyalty. There can be no better way, surely, to honour those who so gallantly fought and died here.

Extract from a speech by Prime Minister Paul Keating, 25 April 1992, Port Moresby, Papua New Guinea

Source 34

Original research into Kokoda needs to look beyond narratives of the campaign and the experiences of Australian soldiers. Areas that require attention include Australian war graves along the track, an analysis of the Japanese perspective on the campaign, and a study assessing the cultural significance of the Kokoda Track to the peoples of Papua New Guinea.

Recommendation from study undertaken by military historian Dr Karl James, 2009

Source 36 Modern walkers on the Kokoda Track

Source 37 An aerial view of the Isurava Memorial on the Kokoda Track, showing the dense forest typical of the track.

KEY SKILL
Communicating

Writing a historical discussion

Historical discussions present different opinions about particular historical questions or issues. Follow these steps to write your own historical discussion:

Step 1 Consider evidence from a range of sources and outline different possible historical interpretations.

- Consider various primary sources, such as newspapers, photographs or diary accounts from the time.
- Also consider the ideas of other historians in secondary sources such as textbooks, journal articles and websites.

Step 2 You need to mention in your writing where information is coming from. For example:

- 'According to military historian Dr Karl James …'
- 'Paul Keating's speech at Port Moresby on 25 April 1992 demonstrates that …'
- 'The photo of the Isurava Memorial shows …'

Step 3 Conclude with your own point of view on the question or issue.

Step 4 Include a bibliography that references all sources used in the discussion.

Source 38 A summary of the structure of a written discussion

Introduction	• Introduces the topic, question or issue • Outlines why the topic, question or issue is important
Body	• A series of paragraphs that outline different arguments or opinions about the topic, question or issue • Each opinion or argument that is presented should also refer to evidence that supports it
Conclusion	• Sums up the issue and gives the writer's own opinion about the topic, question or issue

Practise the skill

1 Write a 500-word historical discussion in response to this prompt:

> Acknowledging the sacrifices of the Australian soldiers who fought during World War II is important. Therefore, it is appropriate for Australians today to walk the Kokoda Track as a form of commemoration.

Use the information and sources in this Skills in Context task, together with your own research, to locate a range of primary and secondary sources that provide evidence about the debate and appropriateness of walking the Kokoda Track today as a form of commemoration. Include a bibliography that references all your sources.

Extend your understanding

1 **Investigate** the experiences of the Papuan peoples and 'fuzzy wuzzy angels' during the Battle of Kokoda. Consider their perspective on the debate and discussion of the appropriateness of hiking. Explain how that might compare to your own point of view.

8 CHAPTER REVIEW

Review activity

Read the text below, and answer the questions that follow.

Dunkirk evacuation

By May 1940, more than 300 000 Allied troops had been pushed to Dunkirk – a small town on the northern coast of France – by the superior *Blitzkrieg* tactics used by the Germans. Due to the shallow waters, British destroyers were unable to approach the beaches of Dunkirk to evacuate them, and so they were trapped. This meant they were sitting targets for the German troops who were advancing on them from Nazi-occupied France. It also meant that Britain was vulnerable to invasion.

It thus fell to the 'Little Ships of Dunkirk' to help. The 'Little Ships' were around 850 privately owned vessels, including fishing boats, lifeboats and sailing barges. They sailed from Ramsgate in England across the English Channel to Dunkirk, rescuing 98 761 stranded soldiers.

Between 26 May and 4 June 1940, roughly 338 000 troops were evacuated from Dunkirk in total. It was the biggest evacuation in military history.

However, more than 50 000 Allied soldiers were left behind, with 11 000 killed and the rest taken prisoner. Massive supplies of ammunition and transportation were left in German hands, and Paris fell to the Nazis just 10 days later. Despite this, the Battle of Dunkirk is often referred to as the 'Miracle of Dunkirk'. Historians and public alike believe it encapsulated the 'British spirit', echoed in Winston Churchill's 'We shall fight' speech, in which he asserted: 'We shall never surrender.'

Source 39

> I gazed along the beach at the smoking rubble, abandoned transport and discarded equipment; interspersed with the towering bomb bursts and the still figures sprawled in the sand.
>
> These men had been marching and fighting for a week or more; with little food and less sleep, inadequately armed and on the move the whole time under unrelenting attack from the air; morale should have been non-existent. Their sense of betrayal, lack of direction or purpose must have been soul destroying.
>
> But they could still laugh, crack a joke and help the wounded, who were always lifted in first into the waiting boats ... I never felt more proud of my countrymen until that moment.

Extract from Lieutenant Donald C. Campbell, Dunkirk, 1940

Source 40

> Rarely do people ... give enough credit to the Royal Navy and the larger vessels that were responsible for rescuing the massive majority of troops. Dunkirk was the beginning of the end for the Third Reich.

Extract from historian Patrick Wilson, 'Dunkirk: Victory or Defeat?', *History Review*, September 2000

Examine Sources 39 and 40.

1. **Identify** whether each of the sources is a primary or a secondary source. (2 marks)
2. **Summarise** the importance of considering both primary and secondary sources. What do they each provide for the historian? (2 marks)
3. Use these sources to support your answer to the following questions:
   - a **Explain** how the 'British spirit' was encapsulated in the Battle for Dunkirk. (3 marks)
   - b Was the Battle for Dunkirk a victory or defeat for the Allies? **Justify** your answer. (6 marks)
4. Use your own knowledge to **explain** why Patrick Wilson argues in Source 40 that 'Dunkirk was the beginning of the end for the Third Reich'. (3 marks)
5. Consider Christopher Nolan's 2017 movie *Dunkirk*. Out of all the significant turning points in World War II, Nolan chose to produce a movie about the Battle of Dunkirk. **Propose** reasons for this choice. (4 marks)

(Total: 20 marks)

Chapter checklist

Now that you have completed this chapter, reflect on your ability to do the following:

	I can do this.	I cannot do this yet.
Explain the causes of World War II.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 8.2, page 252.
Summarise key events and influences in Adolf Hitler's life and his rise to power.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 8.3, page 256.
Identify and explain key events in the European theatre of war.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 8.4, page 259.
Identify and explain key events in the Asia–Pacific theatre of war.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 8.5, page 263.
Summarise significant turning points in Europe and the Asia–Pacific region that led to Allied victory in the war.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 8.6, page 267.
Explain the historical context in which the Holocaust occurred. Explain the scale and significance of the Holocaust.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 8.7, page 272.
Determine the significance of the race to build the atomic bomb. Explain why atomic bombs were dropped on Hiroshima and Nagasaki.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 8.8, page 278.
Explain the significance of the Kokoda campaign. Explain the continuity of the ANZAC legend in the Kokoda campaign.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 8.9, page 283.
Analyse different perspectives on the Battle for Australia.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 8.10, page 286.
Summarise the extent of Australia's involvement in the war.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 8.11, page 290.
Summarise the effects of World War II on the home front, including the use of wartime government controls.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 8.12, page 292.
Summarise the effects of World War II on the changing role of women.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 8.13, page 296.
Summarise the role of First Nations Australians in World War II.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 8.14, page 299.
Summarise the experiences of Australians during the war, including as prisoners or war. Analyse Australian sources on the war.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 8.15, page 301.
Evaluate the significance of World War II to Australia's international relationships. Summarise the economic and social impacts of World War II on post-war Australia.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 8.16, page 306.

Check your Student obook pro for these digital resources and more:

pro

Student book questions
Chapter 8

Key skill worksheet
Communicating:
Chapter 8

Quizlet
Play a game of Quizlet on World War II (1939–1945).

Chapter review quiz
Chapter 8

CHAPTER 9

Building modern Australia (post-1945)

The years since World War II have been critical in the development of modern Australia. Since 1945, more than 7.5 million migrants have settled in Australia, making Australia the culturally and ethnically diverse nation it is today.

As in other parts of the world, the women's movement became stronger in the years after World War II, as women fought for their roles and rights to be equal with those of men, particularly in the workforce.

In 1962, all First Nations people were entitled to vote in federal elections for the first time, and in 1967 First Nations peoples gained Australian citizenship. By the 1990s, the Reconciliation movement was in full swing. A formal apology to the Stolen Generations was finally delivered in 2008.

Although Australia in the 2020s is a very different place to the Australia of 1945, racism towards some groups of migrants still exists, First Nations peoples continue to fight for their traditions and rights to be recognised and women continue to fight for rights in areas such as equal pay.

Source 1 During the 2022 Vivid Festival in Sydney, digital artwork entitled 'Yarrkalpa – Hunting Ground, 2021', created by Martumili Artists and Curiious, lit up the Sydney Opera House. This spectacular display highlighted the importance of recognising the traditions and stories of First Nations peoples in modern Australia.

9A
How have world events influenced migration to Australia since World War II?

9B
How have attitudes to migration influenced Australian society since World War II?

9C
How have First Nations peoples in Australia struggled for rights and freedoms?

9D
How have civil rights activists achieved change in Australia since 1945?

9.1 Migration to Australia: a timeline

Sequence this!
Key events and developments in migration to Australia

Arthur Calwell was appointed Australia's first Minister for Immigration in 1945.

1900 — 1940 — 1950 — 1970

1901
Australia federates. The Commonwealth Parliament passes the *Immigration Restriction Act*, limiting immigration to Australia based on race. This, together with other policies, forms the basis of the White Australia Policy (which includes a 'dictation test' to prevent non-European people from gaining entry to Australia).

1939–1945
World War II takes place. Migration to Australia effectively stops.

1945
The Chifley government begins the post-war 'Populate or perish' program to boost migration. Australia's first federal Minister for Immigration is appointed.

1946
The International Refugee Organization is founded. Australia selects displaced persons from Europe and offers them passage to Australia.

1947
The 'Ten Pound Pom' scheme begins. The 'Big Brother Movement' and child migration are increased.

1949
Construction begins on the Snowy Mountains Scheme, employing thousands of migrant workers.

1950
The Colombo Plan to assist regional development in Asia begins.

1950–1953
Australian troops are involved in the Korean War.

1955
Australia joins SEATO (Southeast Asia Treaty Organization), which aims to contain the spread of communism.

1955–1975
The Vietnam War lasts for 20 years.

1958
The revised *Migration Act* is passed, introducing a simpler system of entry permits and, as a result, the dictation test is abolished.

1973
The Whitlam government formally abolishes the White Australia Policy.

1975
The *Racial Discrimination Act* is passed.

1976–1982
The first wave of asylum seekers arrives in Australia by boat – comprising 2000 people from Vietnam.

This badge from 1910 was produced by the Australian Natives' Association, a group made up of Australian-born white people; the prime minister at the time, Alfred Deakin, was a member.

Vietnamese refugees aboard the fishing vessel *Song Saigon* arriving in Darwin in 1979

Source 1 A timeline of some key events and developments regarding migration in Australia

In 2013, Tony Abbott was elected Prime Minister of Australia after a campaign that focused heavily on stopping the flow of asylum seeker boats to Australia.

1990 2000 2010

1977
Multiculturalism becomes an official Australian Government policy.

1989
The second wave of asylum seekers arrives in Australia by boat – from Cambodia, Vietnam and southern China.

1992
The Keating government introduces mandatory detention of asylum seekers.

1997
The One Nation Party is launched on an anti-immigration platform.

1999
The third wave of asylum seekers arrives in Australia by boat – predominantly from the Middle East.

2001
Yearly asylum seeker arrivals by boat exceed 5000 people. The Howard government's handling of the *Tampa* and 'Children overboard' affairs sparks local and international condemnation.

2001–2007
The Howard government implements the Pacific Solution (offshore processing of asylum seekers on Nauru and Manus Island, Papua New Guinea).

2005
The Cronulla riots in Sydney cause racially motivated violence.

2009–2013
There is a huge spike in asylum seeker arrivals by boat. More than 17 000 arrive in 2012 alone.

2013
The Rudd government implements the PNG Solution, resettling all new boat arrivals in Papua New Guinea. Tony Abbott is elected to government after a campaign focused on 'stopping the boats'.

2016
Malcolm Turnbull and Barack Obama sign a deal for the transfer of refugees and asylum seekers from Nauru and Manus Island to the United States.

9.1 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 **State** when the White Australia Policy began and when it was formally abolished.

Comprehend

2 **Describe** how Australia's migration policies changed in the five years following World War II.

Analyse

3 Look at the number of military conflicts in which Australian troops fought during the twentieth century. **Consider** how these conflicts might have affected migration to Australia.

4 Calculate the number of years the White Australia Policy was enforced in Australia.

Apply

5 The arrival of 'boat people' from the 1970s onwards caused considerable controversy. Some Australians were fully sympathetic and supportive towards asylum seekers; others opposed and were even hostile to the new arrivals. **Create** a questionnaire on attitudes to refugees arriving by boat. Ask four people who were adults in the 1970s to complete the questionnaire, and write a summary of your findings.

9.2 Australia: a nation of immigrants

Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» summarise features of migration to Australia.

colonisation
to have established control of a country or territory for financial, political or military gain, e.g. Australia was colonised by Britain

discriminated
when a person or group has been treated unfavourably because of personal characteristics such as their age, race, disability, physical features or political beliefs

White Australia Policy
a term used to describe a series of government policies introduced after Federation in 1901 that prevented 'non-white' immigrants from settling in Australia, instead favouring those from certain European nations (especially Britain)

developed countries
industrialised countries with well-developed economies and relatively high standards of living that are able to support the needs of their citizens

multicultural
when several different cultures coexist peacefully and equitably in a single country

Modern Australia has been created and shaped by national and international population movements. At least 65 000 years ago, the earliest First Nations peoples are believed to have migrated across from Asia into Australia via the land bridge connecting the north of Australia to Asia. When the First Fleet arrived in 1788 to colonise Australia, Australia's Aboriginal population was between 350 000 and 1 million. Since European **colonisation**, Australia has been populated by waves of immigrants. Penal colonies were set up at Sydney, Port Arthur and Fremantle, and large numbers of migrants from Britain and Ireland came to establish towns and farms. By the 1860s, more than 75 per cent of the population was of Anglo–Celtic origin. Even today, a significant percentage of the Australian population has some British heritage. From the middle of the nineteenth century, immigrants arrived from across Asia and the Pacific, and new settlers continued to flow from Europe.

During the first half of the twentieth century, immigrants from Britain continued to dominate. An immigration policy that **discriminated** against all non-white migrants – known as the **White Australia Policy** – was enacted in the first days of the new nation in 1901 and remained in place until the 1970s.

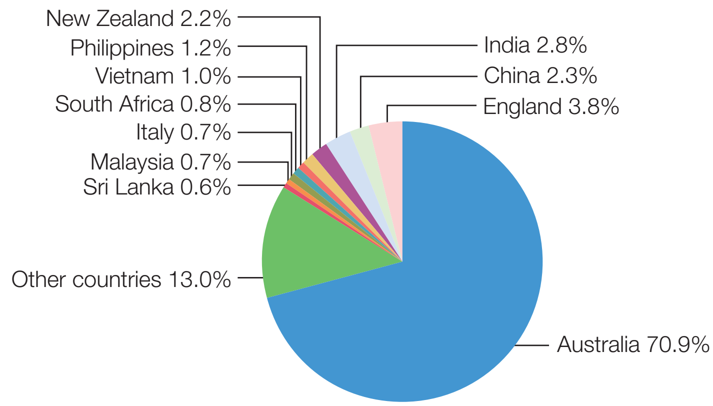
The end of World War II in 1945 saw waves of migrants come to Australia from southern European countries such as Italy and Greece. As immigration policies evolved, these waves were followed by others from the Middle East, Asia and South America.

Australia has one of the highest rates of immigration across **developed countries** and is considered by many to be a **multicultural** country. This description acknowledges that the people of Australia come from a wide range of ethnic and cultural backgrounds.

Source 2 Today, Australians speak more than 260 languages and identify with more than 270 ancestry groups.

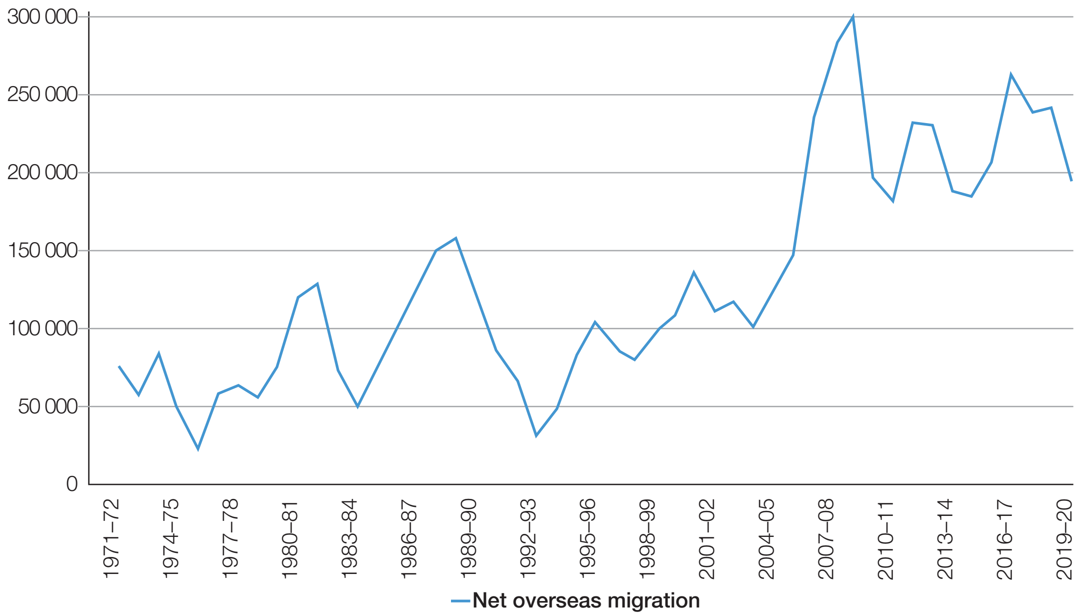
Early migration

After the British established the first Australian colonies, migration was dominated by arrivals from Britain – both **convicts** and **free settlers**. Migration increased with growth of the wool industry in the 1820s and again during the gold rushes of the 1850s, which saw a major influx of new arrivals. Many people chose to migrate to Australia in search of a better life and greater opportunities. Other events also encouraged people to settle in Australia. These included social changes in Britain brought about by the **Industrial Revolution** and the disaster of the Irish famine of the 1840s.



Source 3 Australia's population by country of birth, 2021; our population today is culturally and linguistically diverse.

Data from ABS



Source 4 Net migration (total arrivals less total departures) to Australia from 1971–72 to 2019–2020

Data from ABS

convicts
people found guilty of a crime and sentenced by a court to serve some kind of punishment

free settlers
people who leave their homeland by choice to settle in a new country or colony

Industrial Revolution
the period of rapid development in manufacturing and industry from 1750 to 1900, particularly in Britain

Although the majority of early migrants came from Britain, migrants also arrived from other parts of the world, including Asia. For example, during the gold rush, immigrants from China were the largest non-British group. Labourers were also recruited (or often lured or kidnapped) from Melanesia to work on plantations in Queensland from the 1860s. In the later part of the nineteenth century, divers from Japan assisted in establishing Australia's pearling industry. Another important contribution was made by Afghani, Pakistani and Turkish camel handlers in the construction of telegraph and railway lines in central Australia in the early 1900s.

Pre-World War II migration

The number of Australians born overseas declined dramatically at the end of the nineteenth century. Many factors had contributed to this decline. At the end of the nineteenth century Australia experienced a major economic **depression**. Hostility towards Chinese labourers grew because people believed that cheaper labour would decrease jobs and wages for British Australians. This resulted in colonial governments introducing legislation to restrict entry and impose high taxes on any Chinese people arriving in the colonies. More restrictive legislation was introduced upon Australia's Federation in 1901 with the *Immigration Restriction Act*. This Act formed the basis of a number of policies referred to as the 'White Australia Policy'.

depression
when economic activity is in decline over the long term

When World War I broke out in 1914, migration to Australia came to a standstill.

Postwar migration

The end of World War II marked a turning point in migration in Australia. In the aftermath of the war, Australians reflected on their role in the world, as they faced the second half of the twentieth century. There was a growing recognition that Australia needed a larger population to help defend its shores and strengthen its economic position. This gave rise to the catchphrase 'populate or perish'. The Australian Government reassessed its policies on immigration and began to introduce major policy changes that still influence Australian society and culture to this day. The government opened Australia up to a much broader program of immigration – introducing massive increases in assistance packages and establishing Australia's first Department of Immigration. The government signed international agreements to begin a regular humanitarian intake program, and began accepting displaced persons and refugees from other countries and regions.

The changes were introduced gradually, over time and by successive governments. Often, they came in response to major world events and as a result of changing needs and attitudes in Australia.

As a result of these changes, since the end of the war in 1945 more than 7 million new permanent migrants have settled in Australia, from regions all around the world. Australia's population has since increased from about 7 million people in 1945, to over 25 million people today.

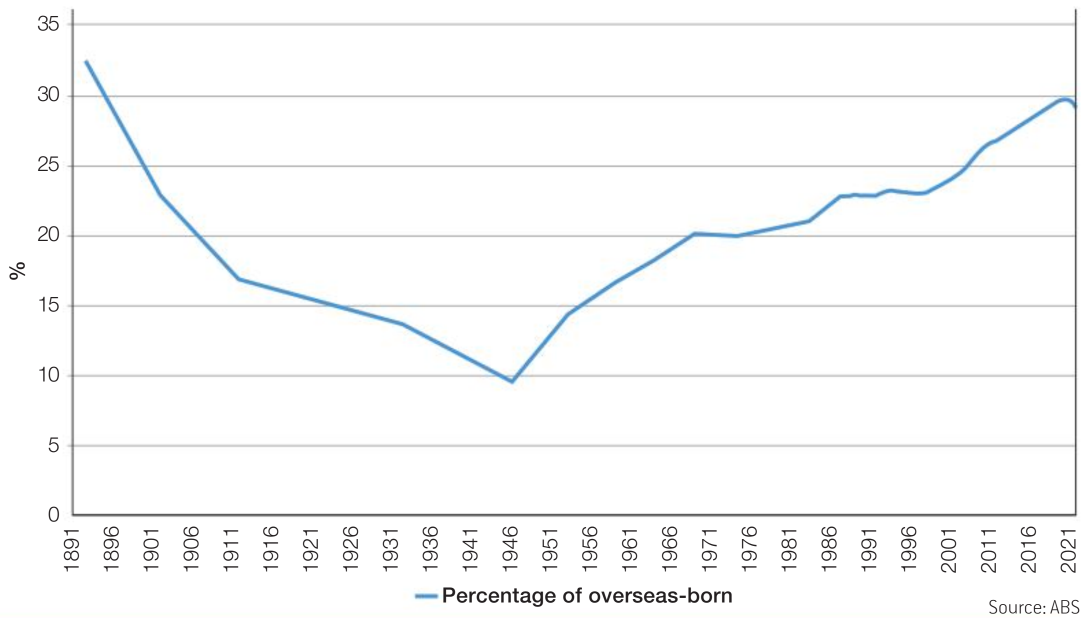
I used to think, now I think

Reflect on your learning about migration to Australia and complete the following sentences.

- I used to think ...
- Now I think ...

What has changed in your understanding?

Quiz me!
A quick quiz on Australia: a nation of immigrants



Source 5 This graph shows the percentage of Australians born overseas, 1891–2021. Migration to Australia increased sharply after the end of World War II and continues to do so.

Key skill worksheet
Communicating: Understanding different types of migration

9.2 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 **State** the population of Australia prior to European colonisation in 1788.

2 In your own words, **define** the Australian Government's White Australia Policy.

Comprehend

3 **Summarise** the main factors driving migration to Australia during the nineteenth century. How are these different today?

4 Using Source 5, describe the trend of Australia's overseas-born population between the 1890s and the 1940s.

Apply

5 Terms relating to migrants and migration are sometimes confused or misused in everyday conversation and in the media. Log on to your obook pro to complete the Key skill worksheet 'Communicating: Different types of migration'.

9.3 The influence of world events

Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» explain the 'push' and 'pull' factors that have influenced migration to Australia.

push factors
factors or characteristics that are unattractive about a place that a person is considering moving away from

pull factors
factors or characteristics that are attractive about a place that a person is considering moving to

Cold War
the state of political conflict and hostility that existed between the Soviet Union (and its allies) and the United States (and its allies) from 1945 to 1990; it was characterised by threats, propaganda and public competition; while there was no direct fighting between the two key protagonists, the tension played out in a number of key conflicts

communism
a way of organising a society in which the means of production (e.g. factories, farms and machinery) are publicly owned (by the state) and goods are distributed equally according to need

World events have had a lasting influence on the types and numbers of people arriving in Australia. For example, World War II resulted in large numbers of displaced persons from Europe and Asia fleeing from conflict, persecution and poverty in the postwar period. This in turn affected migration to Australia in the same period. There was also a shift in Australia's immigration policies and plans to create a larger Australia.

War and conflict, natural disasters, changing economic and political conditions and other '**push factors**' have historically driven people to seek a better or safer life elsewhere. Australia's migration policies, including assisted migration and refugee programs, have adapted in response to these events and, together with other '**pull factors**', have helped to draw migrants to Australia. The key concept box 'Push and pull factors' on the next page sets out some of the main factors that can affect people's decisions to migrate.

Since the end of World War II, there have been many significant world events that have influenced the types of new migrants coming to Australia and the places from which they have come. These include the **Cold War** – including the Korean War, the Vietnam War and the fear of **communism** spreading across parts of Asia in the mid-twentieth century. Tension and famine in parts of Africa in the 1980s, and conflicts following the break-up of the former Yugoslavia in the 1990s, were also influences on migration. All of these events saw a large influx of new migrants from these regions.

Source 6 Refugees fleeing conflict in Afghanistan seek asylum in Australia, *c.* 2001.

In more recent years, major events influencing migration have included the US-led 'War on Terror' in Iraq, Afghanistan and Pakistan, the Global Financial Crisis in 2008 (which created a new wave of economic migrants), civil uprisings in the Middle East from 2010 (collectively called the 'Arab Spring'), and conflicts in Sri Lanka and Syria. Again, these events have all resulted in different groups of people seeking to migrate to Australia for a variety of reasons.

Quiz me!
A quick quiz on the influence of world events

KEY CONCEPT
Cause & effect

Push and pull factors

Migration is influenced by a combination of factors that cause people to leave their home country or region (push factors) and factors that draw people to a new location (pull factors). When analysing historical migrations, the historian needs to be able to understand these reasons in context at the relevant time.

For more information on this key concept, refer to page 235 of 'The history toolkit'.

Source 7 Some of the main push and pull factors that can affect migration

Push factors	Pull factors
Lack of opportunities	Safety and security
War and conflict	Family links
Famine or drought	Government incentives
Fear of persecution	Hope of better employment
Unemployment	Shelter, food and money
Lack of political or religious freedom	Better living standards
Natural disasters (earthquakes, floods)	Better medical care
Poor medical care or education	Educational opportunities
Lower living standards	Political or religious freedom

Source 8 Beginning in 2015, Australia has resettled 12 000 refugees from Syria and Iraq as part of a one-off resettlement program in response to the Syrian crisis.

9.3 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 **Identify** the world event you believe has had the strongest influence on immigration to Australia since the late 1940s, and why.

Comprehend

2 **Summarise** how the countries of origin of new Australian immigrants changed over the second half of the twentieth century.

3 **Explain** how push factors connect with pull factors to influence migration.

Apply

4 Create a table of push factors and pull factors, like the one below.
   a Copy all of the push factors into the first column in the order in which they appear in Source 7.
   b **Determine** (decide) the pull factor or factors that best correspond with each push factor, and put these in the second column. You may mention pull factors more than once. For example:

Push factors	Pull factors
Lack of opportunities	Educational opportunities Hope of better employment

5 **Investigate** one world event or crisis mentioned in this topic and answer the following questions:
   a Summarise the event or crisis.
   b What was it about the event or crisis that led to push factors from the region where it took place?
   c What aspects of Australian life led immigrants to be pulled towards this country?
   d How were people from the region accepted in Australia and what contribution have they made?

Present your findings as a written report, a speech or a PowerPoint presentation.

9.4 Migration to Australia after World War II

Learning intentions

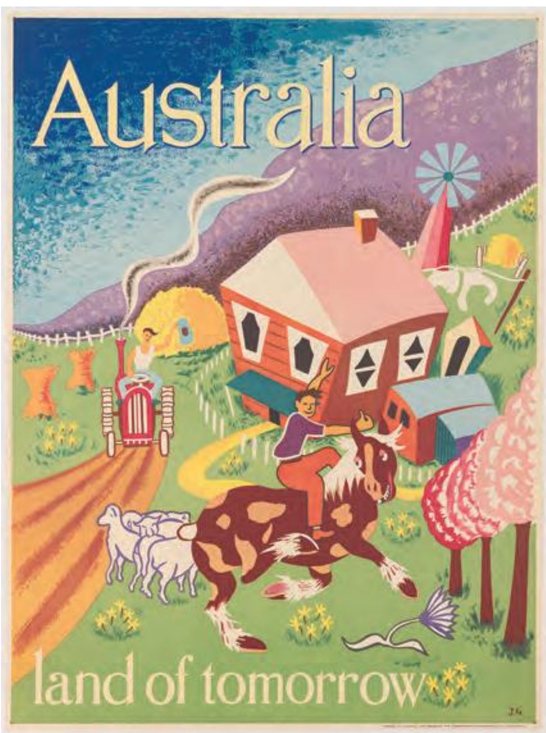
By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

- summarise the causes of increased migration after World War II
- describe the waves of post-war migration.

In the years following World War II, the Australian Government introduced bold new policies and programs designed to boost Australia's population. These changes would transform the face of Australian society forever.

Australia after World War II

The threat of Japanese invasion during World War II came as a shock to Australia. Never before had the government and the Australian people felt so vulnerable to a foreign attack. As part of the government's strategy to strengthen the country and recover from the loss and devastation of the war, it proposed to increase the size of the population and improve military defences. By following a 'safety in numbers' approach, it was believed that Australia would be less vulnerable to any future attacks. As Australia's population was still relatively small, the quickest means of achieving this was to increase Australia's intake of new migrants.



Source 9 This 1948 poster encouraging Europeans to relocate to Australia – the 'land of tomorrow' – was displayed in migration and refugee camps across Europe at the end of World War II.

Ben Chifley became leader of the Australian Labor Party (ALP) and prime minister in 1945, soon after the death of Australia's wartime prime minister, John Curtin. In 1946 Chifley was re-elected to lead Australia's postwar recovery. His government developed a slogan to describe the new policy on immigration – 'populate or perish'.

The Chifley government created Australia's first Department of Immigration in 1945. The first immigration minister was Arthur Calwell who, in his first months in the role, made the government's intentions regarding the size of Australia's population clear (see Source 10). These beliefs were shared by ministers on both sides of politics. As a result, new policies were implemented by the ALP government in the immediate postwar period and continued under the Liberal–Country Party Coalition Menzies government from 1949.

Source 10

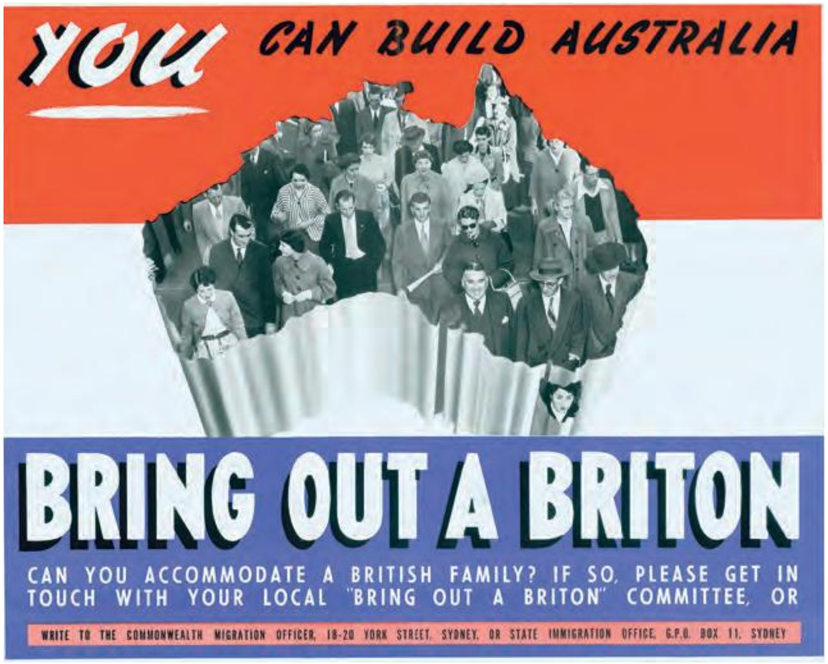
> If Australians have learned one lesson from the Pacific War, now moving to a successful conclusion, it is surely that we cannot continue to hold our island continent for ourselves and our descendants unless we greatly increase our numbers.
>
> Extract from Arthur Calwell, Minister for Immigration, *Hansard: House of Representatives*, 2 August 1945, pp. 4911–15

Analyse this!
'Land of tomorrow'

The government began actively promoting Australia as an attractive destination to resettle for people affected by World War II. As part of this plan, it started to offer new incentives for those looking to make a fresh start, away from the difficulties and challenges facing postwar Europe.

'Bring Out a Briton'

Immediately after the war, large numbers of people from across Britain set sail for Australia. After the wide-scale devastation of World War II, reconstruction in Europe was a massive task and, in Britain, many felt a new beginning in Australia was the best option for their families.



Source 11 The government's 'Bring Out a Briton' campaign urged Australians to nominate British friends and relatives for assisted migration to Australia.

In 1947, the British and Australian Governments launched large programs to subsidise the cost of British migrants' voyages to Australia – a process known as assisted migration. Travel for children was free, and for adults the fare was reduced to just £10 (around AU$18 today), giving rise to the label 'Ten Pound Pom'. This became a common way of describing British migrants coming to Australia during this period.

In 1957 the Australian Government launched a popular campaign called 'Bring Out a Briton' (see Source 11). This encouraged Australians to nominate British friends and relatives to come to Australia. Local committees were formed to sponsor and recommend new migrants to the Department of Immigration for assisted passage. The successful campaign continued into the 1960s.

Child migrants

Children were also encouraged to migrate to Australia after World War II. Although most would arrive with their families under the assisted migration schemes, there were many who migrated alone. This included children, some as young as three, who had been orphaned or were living in very deprived circumstances after the war. In a number of cases, children were taken from their families and communities against their will, or against the will of their parents. Some children were taken in and adopted by families, but most lived in institutions run by church groups or charities. Many received little education.

The emigration of children was controversial, and had occurred for years in the former British colonies, including in the United States, Australia and New Zealand. Younger migrants were attractive to the government. They were seen as more adaptable and able to provide a long-term contribution to Australia. They were also seen as a source of cheap labour. The best interests of the children were rarely the first priority.

Source 12 A group of migrant children from the 'Bring Out a Briton' scheme aboard the SS *Oronsay*, 1957

Source 13

> It is proposed that the Commonwealth seek out in Britain and Europe, in each of the first three post-war years, at least 17 000 children a year (i.e. about 50 000 in three years) suitable and available for migration to Australia ...
>
> Statement on child migration by the acting Australian prime minister, December 1944

Although many had positive experiences, there are reports that many others suffered terrible living and working conditions. In some cases, conditions were reportedly worse than those the children had left behind, and they suffered both physically and emotionally. The Governments of Australia and Britain gave official apologies (in 2009 and 2010 respectively) to children and families affected by these child migration schemes.

The child migrants

An important element in historical understanding is empathy. Empathy involves an attempt to see, hear and feel events and movements in the past, from the perspective of people who lived at the time. One historian described empathy as 'not only standing in another's shoes, but also walking around in them for a time'.

You know from your study of history to date that ideas, values and notions of what is acceptable can change over time. In the 1940s, 1950s and 1960s, there was a widely held belief that bringing out unaccompanied children and teenagers was a good thing for the country. There was little consideration of the physical and emotional impact of the program on the young people themselves. Ideas about the treatment of children and young people are very different today, but to gain a real insight into the thinking of the participants in this program, it is necessary to empathise with both the organisers and the young immigrants.

Use of film and television as evidence

Films and television shows depicting the past can play an important role in developing empathy. When using films and television shows as historical sources, take note of the period that is depicted and also the year when they were made.

Films and television shows that have focused on child migration include:

- *Oranges and Sunshine* (film, 2010)
- *The Leaving of Liverpool* (television series, 1992).

For more information on this key concept, refer to page 228 of 'The history toolkit'.

KEY CONCEPT
Evidence

'Big brothers' and 'little brothers'

The migration of teenagers also boomed after the war. One significant government scheme to encourage this was called the 'Big Brother Movement'. This was based on a similar scheme from the 1920s and 1930s. The scheme matched boys emigrating from Britain ('little brothers') with a responsible adult in Australia ('big brothers') who would provide support and advice to help them adjust to their new life. This provided reassurance and encouragement to youth migrants and their parents, who were often reluctant to let them go.

This scheme was more successful than the child migrant scheme, but it was not without its problems. Some big and little brothers were not suitably matched, and there were little brothers who suffered homesickness and attempted to run away. Most of the little brothers came from urban industrial environments, but their work was mainly in rural areas. About 500 youths per year arrived under this arrangement throughout the 1950s and 1960s.

Source 14 This photograph, taken in 1948, shows a group of 'Beautiful Balts'.

Europe: a new source of migrants

In 1946 the International Refugee Organization (IRO) was founded as a specialised agency of the new **United Nations**, with Australia as one of its founding members. Part of the IRO's work was to deal with the vast number of displaced persons who had been affected by the war. Australia's membership enabled it to assess and select people from displaced persons' camps across Europe and offer them passage to Australia. The Australian Government agreed to accept at least 12 000 displaced persons per year from the European camps.

In particular, the government viewed people from the Baltic states of Lithuania, Latvia and Estonia as a suitable source of new migrants. These countries had suffered invasion from both Nazi Germany and the Soviet Union during the war, and so were viewed kindly by Australians. In addition to filling labour shortages, people from these regions were seen as appealing because, according to Calwell, they 'were red-headed and blue-eyed [and] there were also a number of natural platinum blondes of both sexes'. These physical characteristics earned them the nickname 'Beautiful Balts'. As these groups were Caucasian and often wanted to escape communism, they were seen as the perfect candidates for Calwell's 'new Australia'. The government believed these people would more easily fit into the British culture and values of Australia at the time.

United Nations
an international organisation established at the end of World War II to increase political and economic cooperation among its member countries, to promote peace and to prevent the future outbreak of armed conflicts around the world

In addition to migrants from the Baltic states, large numbers of refugees arrived from Poland, Yugoslavia, Ukraine, Hungary and Czechoslovakia. There was also a large wave of postwar economic migrants from Italy, Greece, Malta, Croatia and Turkey seeking employment and better living conditions. These new migrants were placed in migrant camps across Australia, with allocated huts and often in crowded conditions, to undergo training and resettlement. Although circumstances were sometimes difficult, many of these migrants would go on to make significant contributions to postwar Australia.

Postwar construction

As well as being motivated by a fear of invasion, the Australian Government was keen to increase the population in order to meet an ambitious postwar building and construction program. Projects proposed by the government required a much larger workforce. One of these major building projects was the Snowy Mountains Hydroelectric Scheme, which alone required 10 000 new workers.

New immigrants from migration camps could be required to work for a period of two years wherever the Australian Government decided. As a result, many were sent to work on the Snowy Mountains Scheme and similar projects.

KEY CONCEPT
Significance

The Snowy Mountains Hydroelectric Scheme

The Snowy Mountains Hydroelectric Scheme proposed the development of a complex series of tunnels and dams to divert the Snowy River in south-east Australia. Hydroelectric power stations would provide electricity from the water flow, and the water would then be used to irrigate inland Australia. This project would require about 100 000 new workers, and the huge amount of labour required would mainly come from the wave of European immigrants the government was proposing to bring to Australia.

In Source 15, journalist, commentator and broadcaster Glenn A. Baker gives his point of view on why the scheme, and the people who worked on it, were so significant in shaping postwar Australia.

Today, the scheme is considered significant not only because it remains one of

Australia's largest-ever construction projects, but also because those who worked on it came from a range of different cultural and ethnic backgrounds. These men, their families and their descendants continue to have a significant impact on the cultural diversity of Australian society to this day.

Source 15

> ... the Snowy Mountains Hydro-Electric Scheme ... changed the face of this country. The almost exclusively white Anglo-Saxon character of society was opened up to new ideas, customs, cuisines and celebrations by the men and their families who came from all over the world ... for my generation, the post-war migration surge provided a defining dimension.
>
> Extract from a speech by Glenn A. Baker, Australia Day Ambassador, Lithgow, New South Wales, 2010

For more information on this key concept, refer to page 243 of 'The history toolkit'.

Source 16 The Snowy Mountains Hydroelectric Scheme today

9.4 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 **Name** Australia's first Minister for Immigration. Which political party did he belong to?

Comprehend

2 **Describe** what is meant by the term 'populate or perish'.

3 **Summarise** what Arthur Calwell's words in Source 10 tell you about Australian immigration policy after World War II.

4 **Summarise** the causes of increased migration to Australia after World War II.

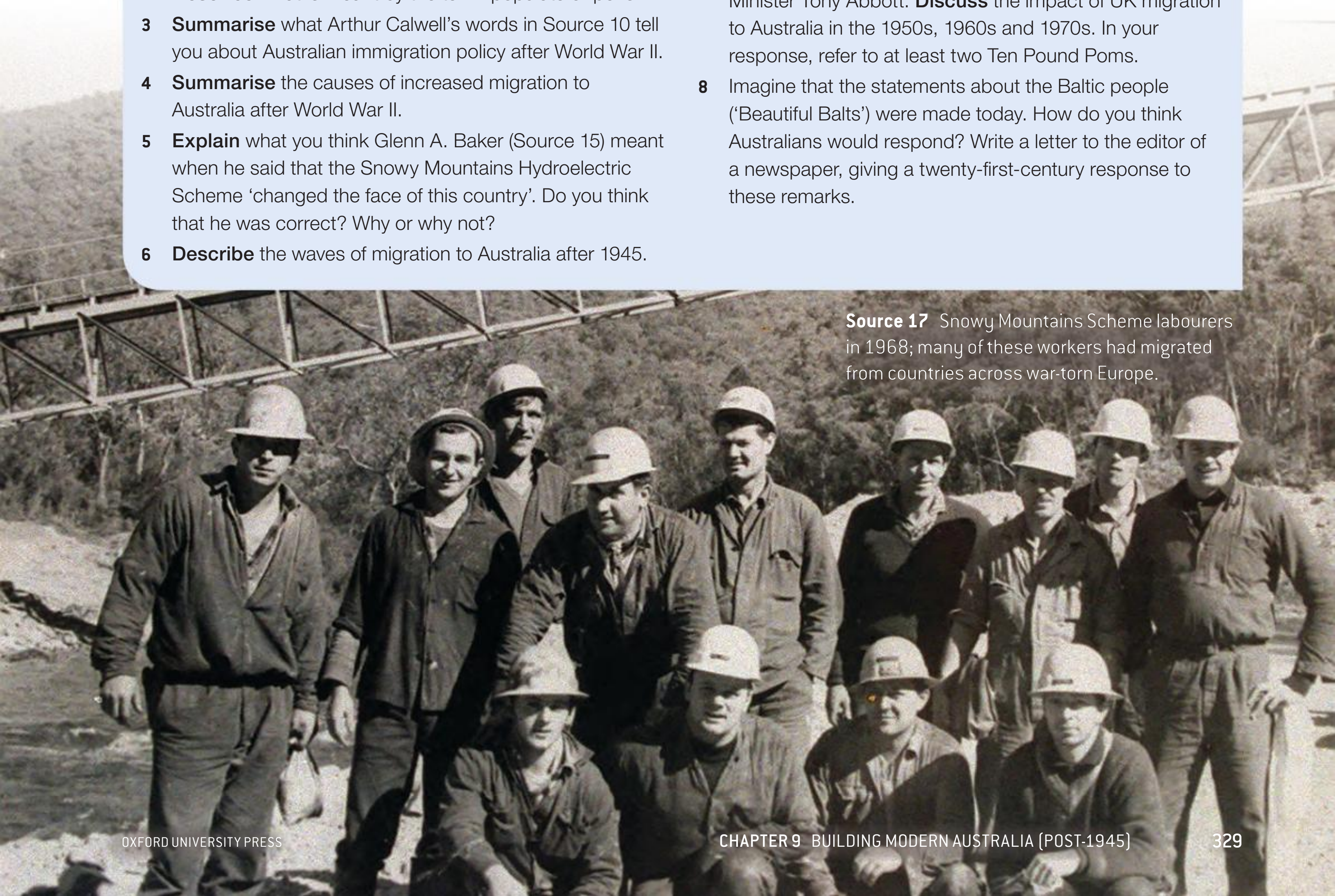
5 **Explain** what you think Glenn A. Baker (Source 15) meant when he said that the Snowy Mountains Hydroelectric Scheme 'changed the face of this country'. Do you think that he was correct? Why or why not?

6 **Describe** the waves of migration to Australia after 1945.

Apply

7 Former Prime Minister Julia Gillard arrived in Australia with her family from Wales in the 1960s, under the assisted migration scheme. Other famous 'Ten Pound Poms' include Olivia Newton-John and former Prime Minister Tony Abbott. **Discuss** the impact of UK migration to Australia in the 1950s, 1960s and 1970s. In your response, refer to at least two Ten Pound Poms.

8 Imagine that the statements about the Baltic people ('Beautiful Balts') were made today. How do you think Australians would respond? Write a letter to the editor of a newspaper, giving a twenty-first-century response to these remarks.



Source 17 Snowy Mountains Scheme labourers in 1968; many of these workers had migrated from countries across war-torn Europe.

9A SKILLS IN CONTEXT

Test me!
Once you've finished the topics in this section, test yourself with this quiz and find out which worksheet you should do.

Interpreting primary and statistical evidence from the Australian Census

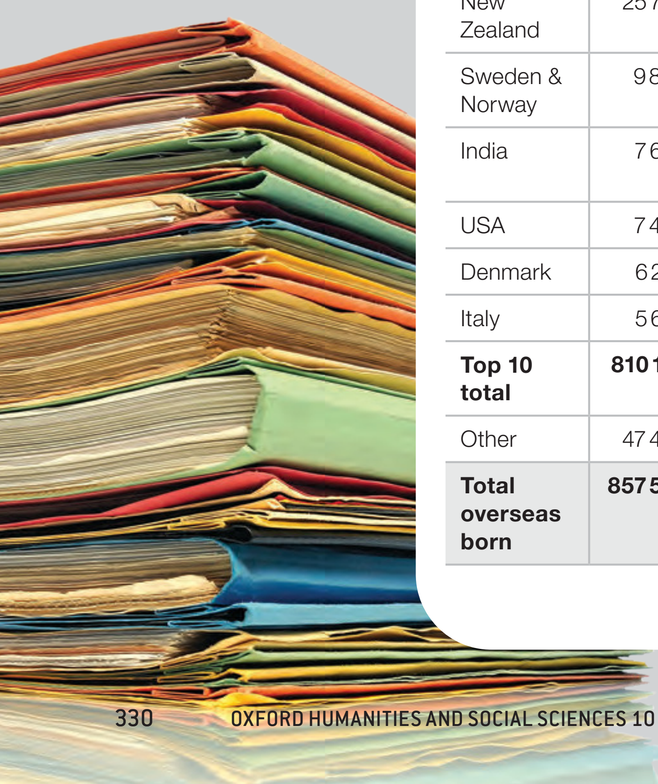
A census collects information and evidence about the population of a country. Census information is collected for many reasons, including allowing governments to determine taxation amounts and more accurately distribute services. The Australian Government conducts the Australian Census every five years.

A census can reveal people's origins, occupations, beliefs, age and gender. As such, it contains detailed information for historians. The evidence in this Skills in Context task allows us to look for continuities and changes in the birthplaces of the Australian population during the twentieth century.

Source 18 Top 10 countries of birth at selected Australian Censuses: Federation (1901), post-World War II (1947) and end of the twentieth century (1996)

1901 census			1947 census			1996 census		
Birthplace	Number	%	Birthplace	Number	%	Birthplace	Number	%
UK	495 074	57.7	UK	496 454	66.7	UK	1 072 562	27.4
Ireland	184 085	21.5	Ireland	44 813	6.0	New Zealand	291 388	7.2
Germany	38 352	4.5	New Zealand	43 610	5.9	Italy	238 246	5.9
China	29 907	3.5	Italy	33 632	4.5	Vietnam	151 053	4.5
New Zealand	25 788	3.0	Germany	12 291	1.7	Greece	126 520	3.2
Sweden & Norway	9 863	1.2	Greece	9 863	1.2	China	111 009	2.8
India	7 637	0.9	India & Sri Lanka	8 160	1.1	Germany	110 331	2.8
USA	7 448	0.9	Poland	6 573	0.9	Philippines	92 949	2.4
Denmark	6 281	0.7	China	6 404	0.9	Netherlands	87 898	2.2
Italy	5 678	0.7	USA	6 232	0.8	India	77 551	2.0
Top 10 total	**810 113**	**94.5**	**Top 10 total**	**672 736**	**90.4**	**Top 10 total**	**2 359 507**	**60.4**
Other	47 463	5.5	Other	71 451	9.6	Other	1 548 875	39.6
Total overseas born	**857 576**	**100.0**	**Total overseas born**	**744 187**	**100.0**	**Total overseas born**	**3 908 382**	**100.0**

Census statistics from the Australian Government, Department of Immigration and Citizenship website



KEY SKILL
Questioning & researching

Generating questions

One of the first and most important steps in conducting historical research is to generate key questions to direct your research. Follow these steps to generate questions:

Step 1 Generate one broad, overarching question for your research.

After that, you need to generate more specific questions that are related to your overarching one. You will need to generate a mixture of:

- closed or simple questions; for example: 'What percentage of overseas-born people in Australia came from Germany in 1947?'
- open (or probing) questions; for example: 'Why do you think the numbers of German-born Australians declined between 1901 and 1947?'
- questions that relate to the *process* of historical research; for example: 'What evidence is there?' and 'What other sources might be needed?'

Step 2 The next step is to think about what you already know about the topic. Use this knowledge as a springboard for questions that will help you understand the topic in more depth.

- Using a table similar to the one in Source 19, brainstorm all the things you know in the first column.
- In the second column, use each point from the first column to generate related questions that will help to deepen or build your understanding. Remember to include a mix of the three question types described in step 1.

For more information on this skill, refer to page 225 of 'The history toolkit'.

Practise the skill

1 Use the process described above and the census data in Source 18 to generate a range of questions related to the overarching question: 'How can the census data help historians to understand the history of migration to Australia?'

  a **Create** a table like the one in Source 19. Identify what you already know and list these ideas in bullet points in the first column.

  b In the second column, use each dot point from the first column to generate related questions to deepen your understanding. The first one has been done for you.

Extend your understanding

1 **Investigate** the latest census statistics and use the results to make a table of the top 10 countries of origin for new Australian migrants. Next, answer the following questions:

  a What are the major changes in migration that have occurred since the 1996 census?

  b What continuities does your table reveal about changes to migration to Australia since Federation in 1901?

2 Using what you have learnt in this chapter, make a new table that features your forecasts of the top 10 countries of origin for new Australians 10 years from now.

Source 19

How can the census data help historians to understand the history of migration to Australia?	
What I already know	**Questions to help deepen or build my understanding**
• Australia sought to attract more migrants from war-ravaged Europe during the post-World War II recovery period.	• What countries were the biggest source of migrants in 1901, 1947 and 1996? (closed or simple question) • How did the countries of origin for migrants change from 1901 to 1996? (open or probing question) • Suggest additional evidence that you might consult to gain a fuller picture of the changing immigrant patterns. (question related to the process of historical research)
Point 2	
Point 3	

9.5 The White Australia Policy

Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» understand the White Australia Policy and how it was implemented.

The White Australia Policy was not a single policy. The term refers to a series of migration policies in Australia that gave favourable treatment to immigrants from Europe (predominantly Britain) and discriminated against those from other parts of the world.

The *Immigration Restriction Act 1901*, along with other pieces of legislation, became the basis of the White Australia Policy after Federation. Although the original Act did not specifically ban people based on race, it was designed to exclude migrants who were considered 'undesirable'.

Source 1 'The Mongolian Octopus – His Grip on Australia': this cartoon by Phillip May in *The Bulletin*, 1886, shows some of the fears Australians had about Chinese migration.

Since the British colonised Australia in the late eighteenth century, Australia's relationship with its Asian and Pacific neighbours had at times been tense. The large numbers of Chinese migrants who arrived during the gold rushes of the 1850s often clashed with the British majority over access to resources and competing claims. They were accused of unfair practices, and resented for finding traces of gold in mounds of dirt that European miners had discarded. Working (or 'fossicking') on these 'mullock heaps' often yielded considerable rewards.

A period of severe economic depression in Australia during the 1890s also saw a rise in anti-Asian sentiment. Many in Australia feared that cheap immigrant labour would take jobs away from British Australian workers. Sources from the time provide many examples of the kind of racial prejudice and fear held by many Australians towards foreigners (see Source 1, for example).

nationalism
a sense of pride in and love of one's country; also the idea that one nation's culture and interests are superior to those of another nation

This ethnic tension combined with a new sense of **nationalism** that grew in the lead-up to Australia's Federation. One of the first acts of the new federal government in 1901 was to create laws that could grant access to European migrants, mainly British, and exclude all others. Australia's first prime minister, Edmund Barton, expressed this sentiment at a speech in 1902:

> We can bring in, without delay, our kinsmen from Britain and, if the numbers be insufficient, such other white races as will assimilate with our own. Or we can … see the doors of our house forced, and streams of people from the lands where there is hardly standing room pour in and submerge us.

The dictation test

The *Immigration Restriction Act 1901* did not mention race or include any reference to excluding migrants based on their ethnic or racial background. This type of openly discriminatory behaviour was frowned upon by Britain and its allies at the time. Instead, the Act included a less obvious legal mechanism to ensure that immigration officials could exclude migrants they considered 'undesirable'. A simple 'dictation test' allowed officials to dictate a 50-word passage in any language they chose, for potential migrants to write down. Initially this was any

European language, but later the test could be given in any language at all. To restrict access to 'less desirable' migrants, Australian officials simply chose languages that they knew would be unfamiliar to them – guaranteeing failure. This was particularly used against Chinese migrants, but other Asian and African migrants were also targeted.

The White Australia Policy after World War II

At the end of the World War II Australia began to pursue a policy of population expansion under the slogan 'populate or perish'. New migration policies focused almost exclusively on migration from Britain and elsewhere in Europe.

Once the war was over, Immigration Minister Arthur Calwell controversially sought to eject migrants who did not meet the strict requirements of the White Australia Policy.

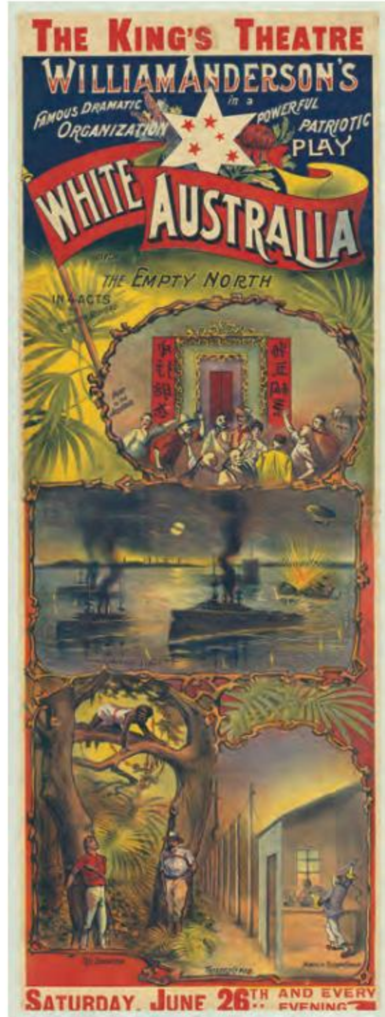
In a speech to the House of Representatives on 2 December 1947, Calwell made clear the government's views on continuing the White Australia Policy.

Source 2

> The government has decided that all persons who came to Australia as evacuees or refugees during the war and who, under our immigration laws, are not eligible to become permanent residents of this country, must leave. We have been very tolerant of these people. ... Most of the evacuees, including the Asiatics, have gone. There are about 500 Chinese, mostly seamen, and about fifty Malays left. All of these people will have to leave Australia ...

Cited in Sally Warhaft (ed.), *Well May We Say … The Speeches That Made Australia*, Black Inc., 2004, pp. 245–6

It was not until the late 1950s that the White Australia Policy finally began to unravel and Australia's modern immigration policies started to take shape. This will be discussed in the following topics.



Source 3 A poster from the King's Theatre, Melbourne, *c.* 1909, promoting the play *White Australia or the Empty North*; this play illustrated the role that race had in creating a national identity after Federation.

9.5 Check your learning

Comprehend

1. **Describe** the aim and impact of the *Immigration Restriction Act 1901*.
2. **Summarise** the mechanism used by immigration officials to exclude non-Europeans from entering Australia.
3. **Explain** how Arthur Calwell justified the decision to deport Asian immigrants from Australia in 1947.

Analyse

4. Consider the point of view of a Chinese-born woman who worked for the Australian Government in a munitions factory during World War II. Write a response to Calwell's speech from her point of view.

Apply

5. The dictation test was used predominantly to restrict entry of non-white immigrants. However, on occasions, it was used against Europeans. One instance was the case of Egon Kisch in 1934. An attempt was made to use the dictation test to deny Kisch entry to Australia on the grounds that he was 'undesirable'. **Investigate** the life of Egon Kisch and answer the following questions:
   a. Why was Kisch regarded as an undesirable immigrant?
   b. What was the outcome of the dictation test?
   c. How was the matter resolved?

Quiz me!
A quick quiz on the White Australia Policy

9.6 The end of the White Australia Policy

Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» summarise the factors that contributed to the abolition of the White Australia Policy.

During World War II and in the years after it ended, the Australian Government made its intentions regarding the White Australia Policy clear – the policy was, and would continue to be, central to Australia's migration program. But by the end of the 1950s this position was becoming increasingly difficult to maintain. Dissatisfaction with the policy was growing in parts of Australian society and the international community. The government's attempts to expel displaced persons after the end of the war were not well received, and Australia's growing involvement in Asia was in direct conflict with its policies at home. The years that followed saw the policy gradually dismantled, before finally being abolished in 1973.

Initial steps

Source 4 Prime Minister Robert Menzies making a radio announcement, *c.* 1950

In 1949 a new Liberal–Country Party Coalition government was elected under Prime Minister Robert Menzies. Menzies appointed Harold Holt as Minister for Immigration, replacing Arthur Calwell. The new Minister for Immigration would oversee a period of change. Shortly after taking office, Holt decided to allow the remaining 800 non-European refugees to stay in Australia. In addition, assisted migration schemes were expanded in parts of Europe, including Italy, West Germany, Belgium, Greece and Spain.

Holt also made the historic decision to grant permission to a number of Japanese wives and fiancées of Australian returned soldiers to settle in Australia; and by the end of 1956, more than 650 Japanese women had migrated to Australia.

In 1957, rules were changed to allow non-European residents over 15 years of age to become Australian citizens, and the following year, the government passed the *Migration Act*. This Act introduced the most significant changes to Australia's migration laws since Federation, replacing the longstanding *Immigration Restriction Act 1901*. Importantly, the *Migration Act* abolished the dictation test, which had long been used as a way of restricting the immigration of non-European migrants (see topic 9.5 on page 332). The revised Act focused on qualifications as a primary criterion for selection. This opened the door to highly skilled Asian migrants. As the then Immigration Minister, Sir Alec Downer, stated: 'distinguished and highly qualified Asians' could begin to immigrate. In 1959, Australian citizens were also allowed to sponsor Asian spouses for citizenship.

Source 5 Japanese war brides and their husbands in the garden of the Parker family home, Ringwood, 1953

Increasing ties with Asia

In 1950, the government set up a fund with other countries in the Asian region to help improve the economic and social development of people in need of assistance. The fund became known as the Colombo Plan. It was an important step towards increasing Australia's ties with Asia and improving stability in the region.

The original signatories to the Colombo Plan were Australia, Ceylon (Sri Lanka), India, Canada, New Zealand, Pakistan, the United Kingdom, North Borneo and Malaya. Australia provided funding for thousands of Asian students to study or train in Australian universities. Although the original idea was that students would return to their home countries after their studies, many would end up settling in Australia permanently.

Key skill worksheet
Historical perspectives & interpretations: Sequencing the White Australia Policy

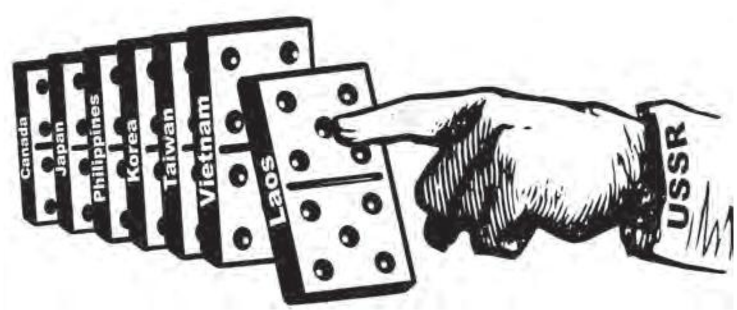
Domino theory and the fear of communism

One of the reasons Australia and other countries gave support to the Colombo Plan was the belief that improving development and stability would help stop the rising spread of communism in the Asian region. In the years after World War II, much of Eastern Europe and significant parts of Asia had fallen under communist control. There was a belief in many Western countries that communism was the bitter enemy of the democratic values that they had fought for in the war.

Many Australians feared that a communist victory in one Asian country would lead to a chain reaction of communist takeovers in neighbouring states, including Australia. This became known as the **domino theory**. It was highly influential on US and Australian foreign policy in the 1950s and a significant reason why Australia became involved in the Vietnam War.

domino theory
the theory put forward by US President Dwight D. Eisenhower that if one nation in South-East Asia adopted communism, others would follow – just like a row of dominoes topple once the first one is pushed over

In 1949, fear of China grew when the Chinese Communist Party under Mao Zedong claimed victory after a long civil war, founding the People's Republic of China. The Menzies government came to power just two months later, and its response was to follow the lead of the US Government by refusing to officially recognise the existence of China. This was a policy that continued for decades, until Richard Nixon in the United States and Gough Whitlam in Australia finally gave formal recognition to communist China in 1972.



Source 6 A political cartoon showing Asian countries falling to communism, with the final domino to fall being Canada (which would represent the greatest threat to the United States)

Source 7 The Australian Prime Minister, Gough Whitlam (third from right), meets the Chinese Premier, Chairman Mao Zedong (centre), 3 November 1973.

capitalist
a society in which investment in, and ownership of, the means of production (e.g. factories, farms and machinery) are privately owned by individuals or corporations and run to generate profits

superpowers
very powerful and dominant nations; especially used during the Cold War era to refer to the United States and the Soviet Union (both nuclear powers, and considered to be most powerful nations on Earth)

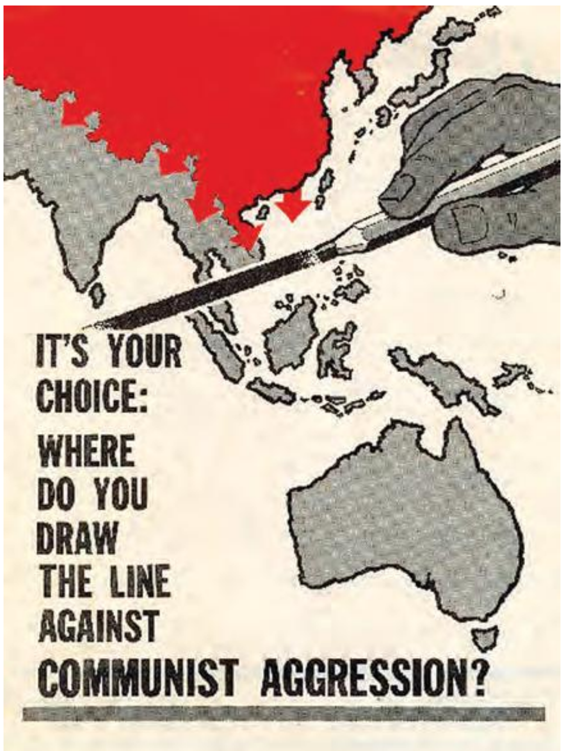
Australia's fear of communism was not just confined to events occurring overseas. During the 1950s, within Australia there was a growing concern about communist spies infiltrating the government and the union movement. This fear of 'Reds under the bed' resulted in the government attempting (unsuccessfully) to ban the Communist Party of Australia in 1951.

Communism and conflict in Asia

As the fear of communism spread in the 1950s, Australia became increasingly involved in conflicts across Asia. This would have a significant influence on domestic migration policies as ties across the region increased, leading to the eventual abolition of the White Australia Policy in the 1960s and 1970s.

Conflict broke out on the Korean Peninsula in 1950 as tensions boiled over between the **capitalist** south (which had been aligned with the West since the end of World War II) and the communist north (which was aligned with the Soviet Union). This was the first major war of the larger conflict between the two postwar **superpowers**, the United States and the Soviet Union – known as the Cold War (see topic 9.3 on page 323).

Australia quickly offered military assistance after the United Nations resolved to protect the south from invasion by the north. About 17 000 Australians served in the Korean War from its beginning in 1950 to the ceasefire of 1953, with 339 Australian casualties. At the time, this was Australia's largest military involvement since World War II.



Source 8 The Australian Government exploited the fear of communism, with postwar propaganda portraying communism as a disease spreading through Asia.

Source 9 Members of the Royal Australian Regiment in the trenches at Majon'ni, Korea, 9 June 1953

guerrilla war
a form of warfare in which small and independent groups of combatants (known as guerrillas) take part in non-traditional fighting methods, such as ambushes, sabotages and raids

Australia also became involved in a regional conflict known as the Malayan Emergency. This was a **guerrilla war** fought between British armed forces and the Malayan National Liberation Army, which was the military arm of the Malayan Communist Party. Australian military forces were sent to Malaya from 1950 until 1960, to support the British and Malayan Governments in opposing communists. Dozens of Australians were killed or wounded.

In 1955, as part of regional efforts to stem the spread of communism, Australia joined the Southeast Asia Treaty Organization (SEATO). This was an alignment of Western powers and Asian countries that was intended to block further communist gains in South-East Asia.

The alliance lasted for 20 years, but achieved very little in practical terms due to internal conflicts. Its educational programs, however, had a lasting effect in the region.

The fear of communism in the Asian sphere culminated in the Indo-Chinese War – a conflict in Vietnam, Laos and Cambodia lasting from 1955 to 1975. Strongly influenced by the domino theory and intending to contain the threat of communism, the United States increased its involvement in the war throughout the 1960s. Australia became heavily involved between 1962 and 1975, sending about 60000 troops. In total, 521 Australian soldiers were killed and more than 3000 were wounded. The war was ultimately unsuccessful and, after 1975, communist governments took over in Vietnam, Laos and Cambodia. However, communism failed to spread any further, disproving the basic premise of the domino theory.

Source 10 Members of the Royal Australian Regiment preparing to be airlifted by US helicopters after completing a military operation during the Vietnam War, 1967

Abolishing the White Australia Policy

Australia's increased ties with the local region and its involvement in successive wars played a significant role in the abolition of the White Australia Policy. After the gradual relaxing of restrictions following the *Migration Act 1958*, the Holt Liberal–Country Party Coalition government introduced major changes to the system of non-European immigration in 1966. These altered the criteria for migration to those of suitability as settlers, ability to integrate into Australian life, and possession of qualifications useful to Australia. This was a critical breakthrough because it finally removed race as a determinant when assessing the suitability of a migrant to enter Australia. As a result, non-European settler arrivals rose from 746 in 1966 to 2696 in 1971.

In October 1971, Gough Whitlam, who was then leader of the opposition, made an address to the press in which he outlined three changes he would be making to the ALP's immigration policy ahead of the 1972 federal election.

Source 11

> We removed the assertion that a primary national objective must be to increase population. We removed the commitment to expand the immigration program. We related our immigration needs simply to the capacity of Australia to provide 'employment, housing, education and social services' – in other words a very specific instruction to the incoming Labor Government that people, the welfare of people, the people already here and the people who may come, must be the prime consideration, not mere numbers. And thirdly we said unequivocally that there must be no discrimination on grounds of race or colour or nationality.

Extract from Gough Whitlam, *The Whitlam Government 1972–1975*, Penguin, 1985, pp. 497–500

Source 12 Mitsuru and Keiko Maeda and their son Naruhito were among the first Japanese migrants to settle in Australia after changes to immigration laws in 1966.

After winning the 1972 election and becoming prime minister, Whitlam and the ALP government formally removed the last remnants of the White Australia Policy. In 1973, new instructions were issued that totally disregarded race as a factor in selecting migrants. This was supported with legislation that all migrants, regardless of origin, could apply for citizenship after three years' permanent residence. In addition to this, the government **ratified** all international agreements (treaties) relating to race and immigration. In 1975, this was followed by the introduction of the *Racial Discrimination Act*, which made the use of racial criteria for official purposes illegal.

ratified
when a national or state parliament has expressly passed legislation that requires it by law to adopt the various rights and responsibilities set out in a treaty

KEY SKILL
Communicating

Writing with evidence

In order to give historical writing credibility and reliability, general assertions must always be supported with evidence. Evidence may come in many forms, including official documents, letters and diaries, statistics, laws, newspaper reports and cartoons or artworks.

Practise the skill

1 Read the following paragraph. Using the information in this topic (9.6), rewrite the paragraph using at least four pieces of evidence to support the general statements made.

During the 1950s, the first steps were taken towards the dismantling of the White Australia Policy. This was partly because Australia was developing increasing ties with Asia. The fear of communism also meant that the Australian Government wanted to strengthen Asian nations so they could better resist the communist spread. Australian involvement in the Vietnam War was a reflection of this fear. Following the election of the Whitlam Labor government in 1972, any reference to race was removed from immigration legislation.

Quiz me!
A quick quiz on the end of the White Australia Policy

9.6 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 **State** the year the White Australia Policy was officially abolished.

Comprehend

2 **Summarise** the changes to Australia's immigration policy introduced by Prime Minister Harold Holt between 1949 and 1958.

3 What was the Colombo Plan? **Describe** how it affected migration to Australia.

4 **Summarise** the significance of the *Racial Discrimination Act 1975* in relation to immigration. What did the Whitlam government do to formally end the White Australia Policy?

5 Communism played a major role in Australia's involvement in the region and its immigration policies between the 1950s and 1970s. **Explain** how the domino theory, fear of communism and Australia's military engagements might have influenced Australians' attitudes to Asian immigration policies at the time.

Apply

6 Organise a class debate on the topic: 'The abolition of the White Australia Policy in 1973 was the most significant event in Australia's immigration history.'

Divide the class into two, with three speakers for the affirmative side and three for the negative side. All members of each side should assist with the research and development of their side's argument. You should use the timeline in topic 9.1 on page 318 and other information from this chapter to **propose** (put forward) a case for your side of this debate.

7 **Investigate** Alfred Deakin's attitude to non-white immigration. Write a few paragraphs outlining his position and why he supported the *Immigration Restriction Act 1901*.

9.7 Towards a multicultural Australia

Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» summarise changing attitudes to migrants after the abolition of the White Australia Policy.

As the White Australia Policy was gradually dismantled during the 1950s and 1960s, new policies began to take its place. Initially, a policy of **assimilation** was introduced, followed by one of **integration**. Over time, it became clear that these approaches were neither possible nor appropriate. As a result, the current policy of multiculturalism was adopted. Multicultural policies aim to recognise and embrace different cultures and traditions.

assimilation
the process by which a minority group adopts the language and customs of a dominant population

integration
an immigration policy introduced during the 1960s after recognition that assimilation was not a practical policy; integration was based around the belief that new migrants should conform to the attitudes, values and beliefs of the wider society while still retaining aspects of their traditional cultures

monoculturalism
the practice of actively preserving a single national culture through the exclusion of external influences; it aims to achieve a single, homogeneous society without diversity

Monoculturalism, assimilation and integration

Immigration policy in the 1950s was based on the concept of assimilation. Broadly, this meant migrants were expected to give up their old culture and adopt Australian culture and customs. Assimilation was part of a push to preserve a single Australian culture by excluding the influence of other cultures and traditions – a practice known as **monoculturalism**.

The problem with assimilation as a policy was that it demanded people deny the culture, beliefs and values they had grown up with. This is an inherent part of an individual's identity – not easily changed by government policies that discourage cultural and ethnic diversity. The advantages of a monocultural society over one made up of diverse cultures were also unclear.

Source 13 Celebrating multicultural Australia: festivities for India's Diwali are usually held at Federation Square in Melbourne, but moved online in 2020 due to the COVID-19 pandemic.

In the 1960s, assimilation gave way to a policy of integration. Under this policy, migrants were encouraged to celebrate their own cultures at home, but to adopt mainstream Australian values and customs while in public.

Even British arrivals, with similar language and culture to Australians, would experience a type of culture shock on arrival in Australia, and could often find it difficult to adapt to their new lives here. When language and cultural difficulties were added to the mix, it is easy to understand why many migrants struggled to assimilate and integrate.

Integration was also difficult where appropriate support was not available. Migrants would often find that their education, skills and qualifications were not officially recognised in Australia. Instead, they had to work in physically demanding labouring jobs in order to earn money.

The beginnings of multiculturalism

Key skill worksheet
Historical perspectives & interpretations: Understanding the significance of multiculturalism

By the mid-1960s there was an increasing awareness of the difficulties migrants faced when adjusting to a new life, new language and new culture in Australia. The end of the White Australia Policy and the influx of new migrants to Australia from all parts of the world meant Australians were increasingly exposed to new cultures, traditions and beliefs that challenged the concept of a monocultural Australia.

Source 14 Chong Chul Rhee, a master instructor of Tae Kwon-Do, demonstrates his skills to Al Grassby at the 1975 August Moon Festival in Sydney. Also known as the Mid-Autumn Festival or Moon Festival, this event is celebrated by many East and South-East Asian people. It was opened by Grassby, as Commissioner for Community Relations.

Multiculturalism involved accepting and embracing the cultural practices and traditions that migrants brought with them to Australia. It was a natural progression from the phasing-out of the White Australia Policy and assimilation policies that had rejected other cultures and ignored the importance of culture to individuals and social groups. Multiculturalism encouraged Australians to accept diversity and to respect and interact with other cultures. For migrants, multiculturalism allowed them to celebrate their cultural origins while still embracing their adopted country.

Multiculturalism was officially recognised by the government in 1973 when the Whitlam ALP government's Minister for Immigration, Al Grassby, issued a reference paper called *A Multi-cultural Society for the Future*. Grassby had been instrumental in formalising the end of the White Australia Policy and calling for increased migration from non-English-speaking countries. Grassby's electorate was targeted by anti-immigration groups in 1974, causing him to lose his seat; but Whitlam appointed him as the first federal Commissioner for Community Relations – responsible for administering the new *Racial Discrimination Act 1975*.

bipartisan
(in a two-party political system such as Australia) an action or vote involving agreement from both parties

Both Prime Minister Whitlam and Liberal Opposition Leader Malcolm Fraser embraced the vision of a multicultural Australia in a **bipartisan** manner. This cooperation was significant during one of the most divisive periods in Australian politics – the dismissal of Whitlam as prime minister in 1975. When the Fraser government took power that year, this bipartisan approach continued.

Quiz me!
A quick quiz on the move towards a multicultural Australia

In 1977 the Ethnic Affairs Council, set up by the Fraser government, recommended that multiculturalism become official public policy. The first official programs were implemented the following year, and in 1979 the Australian Institute of Multicultural Affairs was established by an Act of Parliament to raise awareness of cultural diversity and promote social cohesion, understanding and tolerance.

9.7 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 **Define** the following terms:
- assimilation
- integration
- monoculturalism
- multiculturalism.

Comprehend

2 **Explain** the difference between monoculturalism and multiculturalism.

3 Who was Al Grassby? **Summarise** the role he played in developing a multicultural Australia.

Apply

4 **Propose** two reasons why the policy of assimilation adopted in 1950s Australia was so difficult for new migrants.

5 It is rare in the history of the Australian Commonwealth for the two main parties to take a bipartisan approach to an issue. **Discuss** why the Whitlam and Fraser governments both supported a multicultural policy for Australia.

6 **Create** a list of all the ways in which Australian life has been enriched by multiculturalism over the past 40–50 years. Food is an obvious example, but there are many more. You may like to interview a grandparent or older neighbour to help you with your list.

9.8 The migration debate since 1980

Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» analyse the debates over multiculturalism since the 1980s and how they have changed over time.

After the government's acceptance of multiculturalism in the 1970s, migrants of different backgrounds had largely become accepted in Australian life. Officially, Australia continued to support a migration policy based on skills and not race, and Australia significantly expanded its intake of refugees and displaced persons from around the world. However, it is important to note that not all Australians welcomed multiculturalism and there were still examples of discrimination, especially in subtle and unofficial ways.

The arrival of the first Vietnamese refugees by boat in the late 1970s, following the end of the Vietnam War, marked a turning point in Australia's humanitarian migrant intake. By the mid-1980s Australia was accepting tens of thousands of Vietnamese refugees under international arrangements, and migration from ordinary channels was still increasing. Over the next two decades, the number of **asylum seekers** arriving by boat each year would also increase as conflicts broke out around the world. The numbers reached 5500 in 2001 and sparked heated public debate in government, the media and society.

asylum seekers
people who have applied for recognition (or sought protection) as refugees

This would set the scene for a new Australian debate on immigration relating to refugees and asylum seekers, which continues to this day.

New political debate

In 1983, Bob Hawke was elected prime minister. The Hawke ALP government remained in power from 1983 to 1991, and maintained the political and legislative support it needed to keep multiculturalism as a central immigration policy. Nevertheless, there were voices raised against the policy. In 1984, historian Geoffrey Blainey delivered a speech in which he argued that the rates of Asian immigration to Australia were too high, threatening the social cohesion of Australian society. This helped spark a media and political debate that broke the bipartisan support on migration levels which had characterised much of the previous decade. Although the White Australia Policy had long since been abolished, the debate on levels of Asian immigration continued. Increasingly, it became linked to debate on the acceptance of refugees.

Source 15 Leader of the Opposition John Howard in 1988

The debate was heightened at the end of the 1980s, when then Opposition Leader John Howard developed a new Liberal Party policy on immigration and ethnic affairs called 'One Australia'. When discussing it on radio in 1988, Howard suggested the rate of Asian immigration should be slowed. He questioned multiculturalism, arguing it meant that it was impossible to have an Australian ethos or common Australian culture. He also commented: 'multiculturalism suggests that we can't make up our minds who we are or what we believe in.'

The Hawke government quickly reacted to this, introducing a parliamentary motion rejecting the use of race to select immigrants. In 1989 the government released a statement titled *National Agenda for a Multicultural Australia*, which defined the principles of multiculturalism based on three rights and three obligations (see Source 16).

Source 16

The *National Agenda* defined the fundamental principles of multiculturalism based on three rights and three obligations:

- The right to cultural identity (expressing and sharing one's individual cultural heritage, including their language and religion); social justice (equality of treatment and opportunity, and the removal of barriers of race, ethnicity, culture, religion, language, gender or place of birth); and economic efficiency (the need to maintain, develop and utilise effectively the skills and talents of all Australians).
- The obligation to have an overriding and unifying commitment to Australia, to its interests and future first and foremost; to accept the basic structures and principles of Australia; and to accept that the right to express one's own culture and beliefs involves a reciprocal responsibility to accept the right of others to express their views and values.

Extract from National Multicultural Advisory Council, *Australian Multiculturalism for a New Century: Towards Inclusiveness*, NMAC, 1999

Source 17 A Chinese student in Sydney in tears on hearing of the events taking place in Tiananmen Square, 1989

New initiatives also included a National Office of Overseas Skills Recognition, improved access to government services for all groups, greater support for English language teaching and second language learning, and stronger relationships between government and ethnic communities through a community relations campaign.

In 1989, after the Chinese Government's brutal suppression of pro-democracy demonstrators in Tiananmen Square, Beijing, Hawke granted permanent residency to 2000 Chinese students in Australia at the time and refused China's request to force the students to return home.

Mandatory detention

In 1991, Prime Minister Paul Keating took over as leader of the ALP government and introduced the next major policy change for migration. In response to the increasing number of Vietnamese, Chinese and Cambodian refugees seeking asylum in Australia, and the apparent levels of community concern, the Keating government in 1992 introduced a system of **mandatory detention** of asylum seekers. This meant that anyone arriving in Australia without a valid visa would be detained immediately on arrival while they underwent relevant checks and assessments. The government wished to signal that 'migration to Australia may not be achieved by simply arriving in this country and expecting to be allowed into the community'.

In 1994, the initial time limit on detention was removed, meaning asylum seekers could be detained indefinitely.

mandatory detention
a feature of Australian immigration policy under which all persons entering the country without a valid visa are compulsorily detained while security and health checks are undertaken and the legitimacy of their claims is decided

One Nation

Despite the government's attempts to control the migration debate, the issue continued to grow. It became central to the 1996 federal election, when the Howard Liberal–National Party Coalition government was voted into power. Queenslander Pauline Hanson was elected to federal parliament at this time. Initially a Liberal candidate, she became an Independent after being disendorsed (no longer supported by the party) due to comments she made about the 'special treatment' of First Nations peoples. In her maiden speech after being elected as the Member for Oxley, Hanson said:

> I and most Australians want our immigration policy radically reviewed and that of multiculturalism abolished. I believe we are in danger of being swamped by Asians.

Hanson went on to form her own political party, One Nation, which attracted support in the late 1990s in her native Queensland. Her divisive policies on immigration, First Nations peoples, and her ability to play on the fears of some voters, permanently affected the political landscape. After more than a decade away from politics, in 2016 Hanson was elected to the Senate, representing Queensland.

Source 18 Pauline Hanson was first elected to parliament in 1996.

Source 19 Pauline Hanson delivering her first speech as a Senator for Queensland, 2016

Migration during the Howard years

Since his time as opposition leader in the 1980s, Liberal politician John Howard had rejected multiculturalism. Howard saw an 'Australian tradition' at the centre of national identity, and argued that migrants should embrace that tradition. In 1996, he was elected prime minister, and remained in power until 2007. During his time in office he attempted to implement a citizenship test that required migrants to demonstrate an understanding of Australian history and sport. He also argued for a new preamble to the Australian Constitution that recognised God and 'mateship'. Howard summarised his beliefs on multiculturalism in a 2006 Australia Day address to the National Press Club.

Analyse this!
John Howard 2006 address

Source 20

> Most nations experience some level of cultural diversity while also having a dominant cultural pattern running through them. In Australia's case, that dominant pattern comprises Judeo-Christian ethics, the progressive spirit of the **Enlightenment** and the institutions and values of British political culture. Its democratic and egalitarian temper also bears the imprint of distinct Irish and non-conformist traditions.
>
> Extract from John Howard, address to the National Press Club, 26 January 2006

Enlightenment
a cultural, philosophical and intellectual movement that took place across Europe during the seventeenth and eighteenth centuries; during this time, thinkers and philosophers questioned beliefs about education, religion, government and society that had been accepted for centuries

Source 21 This cartoon by Bill Leak depicts John Howard as Captain Cook, arriving in Australia.

While Howard was prime minister, asylum seekers and refugees became the main focus of Australia's migration debate, because the numbers of arrivals continued to rise. During his first term in office (1996–98), he not only continued the mandatory detention policy introduced by the Keating government, but also took it one step further – by introducing a tough new approach to 'deter and deny'. Central to this approach was the 'Pacific Solution'. Implemented in 2001, this policy involved transporting asylum seekers to offshore detention centres set up on the Pacific islands of Nauru and Manus Island (in Papua New Guinea), where their refugee status would be determined. In addition, the Howard government increased border surveillance and patrols. Islands where boat arrivals usually attempted to land (such as Christmas Island) were also legally excluded from Australia's migration zone. This allowed the Australian Government to avoid being subject to ordinary legal processes that refugees would otherwise be entitled to by law, if they landed on the Australian mainland.

In his 2001 campaign for re-election, in reference to the arrival of refugees to Australia by boat, Howard stated: 'We will decide who comes to this country, and the circumstances in which they come.' Later that year, Australia's treatment of asylum seekers became a highly contested topic as a result of the *Tampa* crisis and the 'Children overboard' affair.

KEY CONCEPT
Interpretations & contestability

The 'Children overboard' affair

On 6 October 2001, the *HMAS Adelaide* intercepted a boat, the *Olong*, carrying Iraqi asylum seekers towards Australia. This event took place the day after Prime Minister Howard had called a federal election, in which the question of asylum seekers was to be a key issue.

Two days later the *Olong* started to sink, and some of the *Adelaide*'s crew dived into the water to help rescue the passengers. Confused reports meant that the government was originally told that parents on the *Olong* had threatened to throw – or actually had thrown – their children overboard so they would be rescued by the *Adelaide*.

Howard, Minister for Immigration Philip Ruddock and Minister for Defence Peter Reith all condemned the asylum seekers for such cruel treatment. They also used this as an opportunity to broadly condemn and be harsh on all asylum seekers. Investigations indicated that there was real doubt about whether children had been thrown overboard, but the government continued to insist they had. The government also refused to release most of the photographs taken from the *Adelaide*, other than those that showed the crew of the *Adelaide* in the water with children.

A Senate committee later found no children had been thrown overboard or had been at risk of being thrown overboard, and that the government had known this prior to the election (which the Howard government won). The government was criticised in the media for misleading the public and cynically exploiting voters' fears of a wave of 'boat people'. The aunt of Laura Whittle, the *Adelaide* crew member shown in Source 22, later told *ABC News*: 'at no stage was anybody throwing anyone overboard'.

For more information on this key concept, refer to page 241 of 'The history toolkit'.

Source 22 This picture, taken with a mobile phone from the *Adelaide*, shows Able Seaman Laura Whittle rescuing a mother and son from the water on 8 October 2001; they were among those who had been on the *Olong*.

Source 23 This photograph of rescued asylum seekers on board the *Adelaide* was taken by a naval officer. West Australian-based Project SafeCom acquired this and other photographs from anonymous sources several weeks after the sinking of the *Olong* on 8 October 2001 and the rescue of the vessel's 219 passengers. (AAP Image/ SafeCom)

See, think, wonder

Look at Sources 22 and 23.

- What do you see?
- What do you think?
- What do you wonder?

9.8 Check your learning

Comprehend

1 **Summarise** how the Hawke government responded to the 1989 Tiananmen Square protests. Suggest two reasons for this response.

2 **Explain** why the government's reaction to the 'Children overboard' affair warranted criticism.

Analyse

3 a **Identify** the main argument of One Nation's Pauline Hanson in her maiden speech to parliament in 1996.

b **Analyse** the census data in Skills in Context task 9A on page 330 to decide whether her claim was accurate.

4 **Analyse** the Bill Leak cartoon in Source 21. Comment on what you see in the cartoon, the meaning behind it and why it is ironic.

Apply

5 Read the extract from John Howard's speech to the National Press Club (Source 20). Identify the influences that he suggests are part of the 'dominant cultural pattern' of Australia. To what extent do you agree with this view? Suggest at least five other influences that you believe should be included; then write your own version of the speech.

6 During the 2001 election campaign, Howard said: 'We will decide who comes to this country, and the circumstances in which they come.' **Evaluate** to what extent this statement reflected a significant change in Australia's approach to immigration since 1901. Remember, when you evaluate something you should talk about its strengths and weaknesses. Be sure to give your overall opinion.

9.9 The ongoing migration debate

Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» discuss aspects of Australia's migration policies from the 1990s to the present day.

Since the Howard years, refugees have become one of the most defining features of the Australian political debate around migration. This is largely because the number of refugee arrivals by boat continued to rise under the Rudd and Gillard ALP governments until 2013. Since the election of the Liberal–National Party Coalition government that year, the number of people arriving by boat has steadily declined (see Source 25) – the result of a range of policies. Nevertheless, the methods used to deter these arrivals has led to controversy, so the issue has remained in the public eye. Debate continues about the best ways in which to manage the numbers of new migrants arriving each year.

'Boat people'

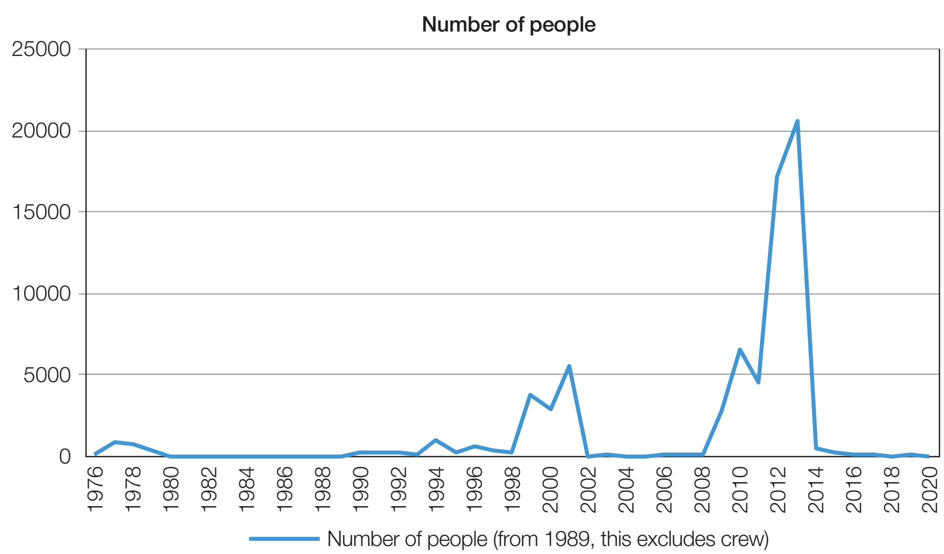
The term 'boat people' was introduced with the arrival of the first wave of refugees in the late 1970s and early 1980s, fleeing Vietnam through neighbouring Asian countries after the end of the Vietnam War and travelling to Australia by the only means they could afford – by sea.

Source 24 A group of Vietnamese 'boat people' fleeing Indo-China

A second wave of asylum seekers arrived in 1989 and in the early 1990s, mainly from Cambodia, Vietnam and southern China. It was at this time that the Keating government introduced its policy of mandatory detention. This was followed by a third wave in 1999 and in the early 2000s, mainly from the Middle East. The numbers of arrivals were larger than ever before, triggering the Howard government's tough response – the Pacific Solution and 'deter and deny' policy described in topic 9.8 on page 344. A fourth wave would soon arrive, bigger than any before. It reached 17 000 people in 2012 alone, and triggered another intense political debate. A noticeable difference with the more recent waves of asylum seekers is that they often arrive with the help of intermediary **people smugglers**.

Source 25 illustrates the pattern of boat arrivals since 1976.

people smugglers
those who arrange for asylum seekers to make a sea voyage to another country in return for a fee

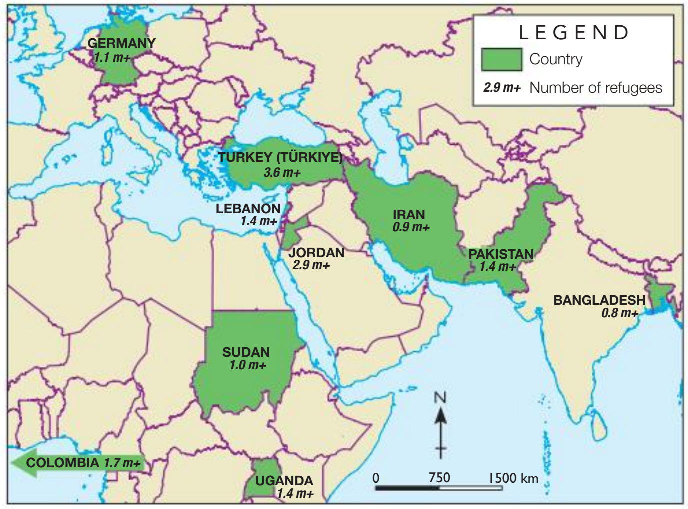


Source 25 Refugees arriving by boat in Australia since 1976, by calendar year

Data supplied by the Refugee Council of Australia

The voyages undertaken by refugees by boat are extremely dangerous, with overcrowded boats and equipment in terrible condition that is not fit for the high seas. These journeys often result in many people drowning. During the third and fourth waves of migration, regular stories arose of tens or even hundreds of people dying from the sinking of a single boat. Some of these boats sank near the shore of Australia's Christmas Island, close to Australia's maritime border with Indonesia and the most common destination for asylum seekers. As these drownings became increasingly visible to the public via the media, the political debate became one of deterrence for reasons of safety, as much as to slow the number of arrivals.

THE TOP 10 REFUGEE HOST COUNTRIES, AS OF 2019



Source 26

Source: Amnesty International

Despite regular changes in Australian government policy and repeated attempts to deter arrivals, many see reaching Australia by boat as the only solution to a highly complex situation. 'Push factors' from source countries (see topic 9.3 on page 323) are outside the control of Australian policy, and for many people they outweigh the risks and dangers of attempting the voyage.

Although the number of arrivals by boat in Australia has increased significantly since 1976, relative to the rest of the world the number remains comparatively small. The increase in people seeking asylum has raised concerns globally, with many destination countries facing much larger numbers. For example, in 2017 in Italy alone there were more than 119 000 irregular boat arrivals, via northern Africa. The number of asylum seekers arriving by land, an issue that does not affect Australia, is even higher and often falls on the world's poorest countries. For example, as of December 2018, Pakistan was hosting 1.40 million refugees and Sudan 1.08 million.

See, think, wonder

Look at Source 26.

- What do you see?
- What do you think?
- What do you wonder?

The 'Malaysia Solution'

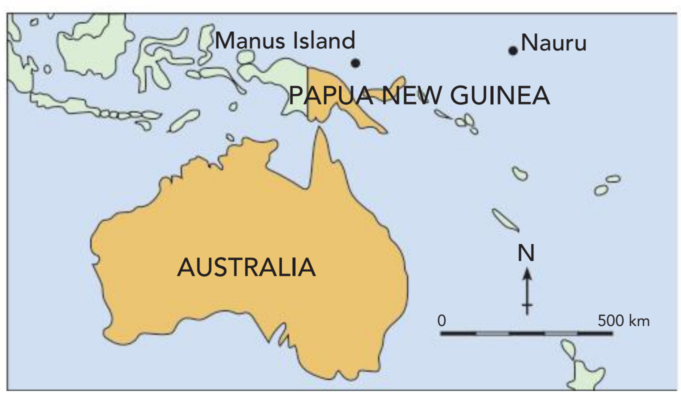
Successive Australian governments since the Howard years have attempted to address the issue. In 2007, the newly elected ALP government, led by Prime Minister Kevin Rudd, set about softening Australia's policies. Soon after taking office, Rudd closed offshore processing centres in Nauru and Manus Island (Papua New Guinea).

quota
an official limit on the number or amount of people or things that are allowed

As the number of refugees arriving by boat increased, the Australian Government (now under the leadership of Prime Minister Julia Gillard) set about toughening these policies again. In 2011, the government reached a deal with Malaysia to send a **quota** of boat arrivals to resettle there, in exchange for Australia accepting a much larger number from Malaysia through refugee-processing centres.

The 'Malaysia Solution' was soon challenged by refugee advocates in the High Court of Australia. The court ruled by a large majority that the proposed arrangement was legally invalid. In response, the Gillard government reopened detention centres in Nauru and Manus Island, and introduced a new 'No advantage' policy. This meant that those who arrived by boat would have no advantage over other immigrant arrivals, and was an attempt to deter people from making the voyage.

MANUS ISLAND AND NAURU



Source: Oxford University Press

Source 27 Manus Island and Nauru, the location of Australian-run refugee processing centres; these are known as offshore processing centres.

The 'PNG Solution'

After Kevin Rudd took over from Gillard as prime minister in 2013, one of the government's first actions was to announce a new refugee resettlement plan. The plan, which was developed in agreement with the Papua New Guinean Prime Minister Peter O'Neill, was called the 'Regional Resettlement Arrangement between Australia and Papua New Guinea', and became known simply as the 'PNG Solution'.

Under the PNG Solution, any asylum seeker arriving by boat without a valid visa would be refused settlement in Australia, even if they were found to be a refugee. Instead the asylum seeker would be resettled in Papua New Guinea. The intent of this plan was to remove any attraction or 'pull factor' for asylum seekers to make the voyage to Australia, and in turn dismantle the business of people smugglers offering voyages. Both major parties welcomed the PNG Solution in an effort to appear tough on 'boat people', but the policy was strongly opposed by the Greens and many church and humanitarian groups. There were several public marches and demonstrations in major cities.

Source 28 An Australian Government advertisement for Operation Sovereign Borders

Source 29 Opposition to the *Australian Border Force Act* was shown by a range of community groups, including doctors.

'Operation Sovereign Borders'

Boat arrivals and refugees were central to the 2013 federal election campaign between the Rudd ALP government and Liberal–National Party Coalition opposition, led by Tony Abbott. During the election campaign, the Coalition proposed a range of policies that were even tougher than the PNG Solution. Central to these policies was a promise to 'Stop the boats'. The policies proposed a military-led response, similar to the one proposed by the Howard government in 2001. They involved 'towing' or 'turning' back any boats discovered on course for Australia. They also included new proposals to buy any boats from people smugglers in Indonesia.

After being elected prime minister in 2013, Abbott set about implementing these new policies under the name 'Operation Sovereign Borders'. During his first days in office, the policies created some diplomatic tensions with Indonesia. Indonesian officials complained publicly that their government had not been consulted on the policies, and argued that the plan could interfere with Indonesia's sovereignty as a country.

In 2015, the *Australian Border Force Act* was passed, setting up the law enforcement agency of the same name and giving it broad powers in relation to border protection.

Refugee resettlement deal with the United States

Key skill worksheet
Historical perspectives & interpretations: Understanding the migration debate

In 2015, Malcolm Turnbull replaced Tony Abbott as Liberal prime minister. At the time there were more than 1250 refugees and asylum seekers in offshore detention. In 2016, Turnbull arranged a deal with outgoing US President Barack Obama to resettle a number of asylum seekers from Nauru and Manus Island in the United States. In return, Australia agreed to resettle a number of Central American refugees in Australia.

In 2017, newly elected US President Donald Trump declared the arrangement 'a dumb deal', but eventually agreed to honour it. As of 2020, over 800 asylum seekers had been sent to the United States under this arrangement.

Source 30 Malcolm Turnbull and Barack Obama signed a deal whereby 1250 refugees and asylum seekers would be transferred from Nauru and Manus Island to the United States.

The Medevac legislation

The policies of Operation Sovereign Borders polarised the Australian community. Supporters of the policies argued that they discouraged refugee boats from attempting to come to Australia, leading to a severe decline in deaths at sea. Opponents criticised the inhumanity of keeping people in offshore detention. The debate became heated when Dr Kerryn Phelps was elected as an Independent to federal parliament in a by-election in November 2018. Phelps had already been a spokesperson for refugees, especially in the area of physical and mental health concerns. She introduced a private member's bill, which became known as 'Medevac'. The Bill, which was passed in February 2019, made it compulsory for seriously ill refugees and asylum seekers in offshore detention to be transferred to Australia for care. Medical transfer required the signatures of two independent Australian doctors.

Medevac was widely celebrated by refugee advocates and many Australians. Under the Medevac legislation, 192 people detained on Nauru and Manus Island were transferred to Australia for medical treatment. However, it was only in place for nine months. At the general election held in May 2019, Phelps was defeated, and the Medevac legislation was eventually repealed in December 2019.

The debate around migration continues to divide Australia. In 2020, the COVID-19 pandemic replaced refugees (and other issues) as the top story in the media, but in 2021 there were protests against refugees and asylum seekers being held in local detention centres or hotels.

The number of detainees on Nauru or Manus Island has declined considerably in recent years, and as of early 2021, fewer than 200 remained there. However, there are still upwards of 1200 asylum seekers in detention in Australia, and many more who are living in the community on temporary visas.

Quiz me!
A quick quiz on the ongoing migration debate

I used to think, now I think

Reflect on your learning about Australian government policies on migration and complete the following sentences.

- I used to think ...
- Now I think ...

What has changed in your understanding?

9.9 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 **Identify** the top three refugee host countries, according to Source 26.

Comprehend

2 **Summarise** the key points of the Malaysia Solution. Why did it not proceed?
3 **Explain** the Medevac Bill.
4 **Summarise** the factors that have driven millions of people to flee their homelands over the past 50 years.

Analyse

5 **Examine** the information provided in Source 25 showing refugees arriving by boat. How does your study of history help you explain the variations in arrivals by boat in Australia between 1976 and 2010?
6 Using the information provided in this topic, **analyse** how successive governments since the 1970s have managed refugees and asylum seekers.

Apply

7 Use the material in this topic and conduct some additional research on attitudes towards 'boat people' and offshore detention. Include in your research at least one interview with a person who supports offshore detention and one who supports a more humane approach to asylum seekers. Use the material to create a two-column chart in which you **synthesise** all of the arguments on both sides of this contentious issue.

9.10 The changing face of Australia

Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» explain how migration and multiculturalism have changed Australia.

Australia has always been a culturally diverse continent. Before the continent was colonised by Europeans, it is estimated that there were around 700 Aboriginal cultural groups speaking more than 250 different languages across Australia. There were many different nationalities among the crew and convicts on the First Fleet, which arrived in Sydney Cove in 1788.

The White Australia Policy in the early twentieth century sought to promote a monocultural Australia by restricting entry to non-Europeans. It was relatively successful until the 1960s, but over the second half of the twentieth century, Australia opened up and embraced a diverse society made up of many cultures, backgrounds and traditions.

Multiculturalism at work

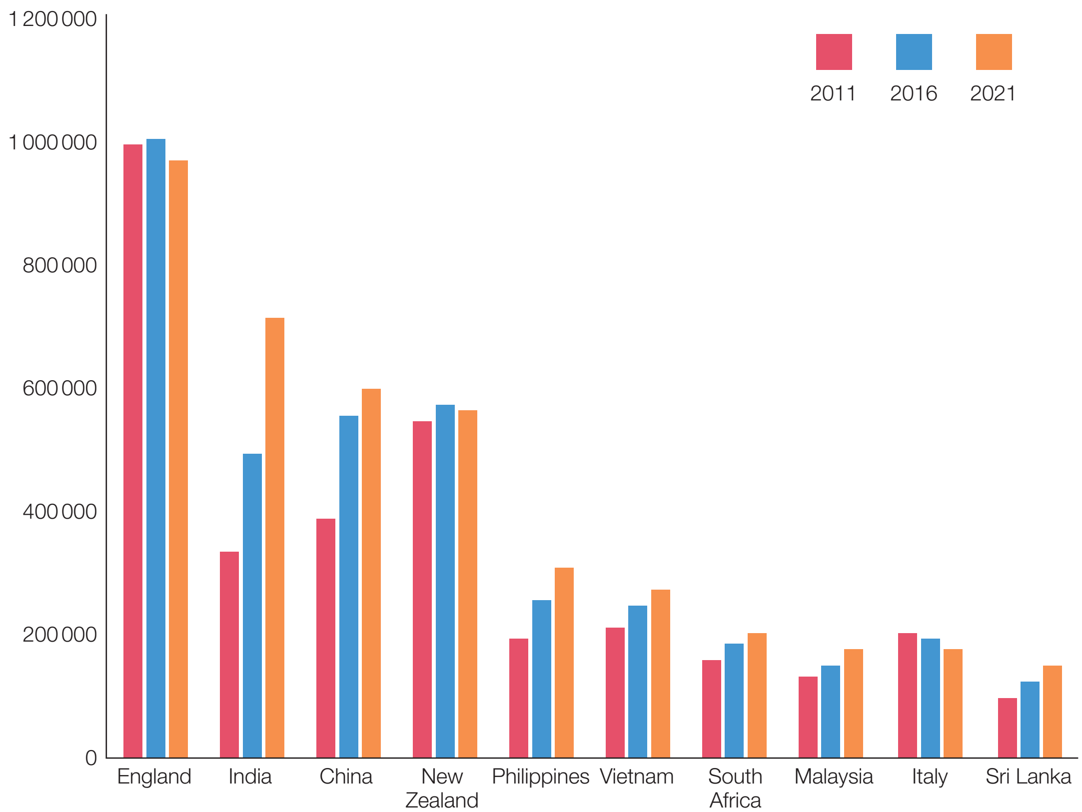
I used to think, now I think

Reflect on your learning about the countries of origin of Australia's migrants and complete the following sentences.

- I used to think ...
- Now I think ...

What has changed in your understanding?

Source 31 shows the origins of people who make up the population of modern Australia. As we have seen, the countries of origin of Australia's migrants have changed continuously since the time of Federation, in response to world events and changes in government policies. For example, in the 1960s around 45 per cent of all immigrants to Australia were born in Britain and Ireland. Although British-born immigrants were still the largest group in 2018, this number had declined to about 18 per cent. In addition to people from Britain, significant numbers of migrants now also come from New Zealand, China, India, Italy, the Middle East and Vietnam to settle in Australia. More recently, the Philippines, parts of Africa, Malaysia and Germany have also become major sources of migrants to Australia. These changes represent a significant departure from previous eras of Australian immigration history.



Source 31 Top 10 countries of birth for Australians born overseas

Source: ABS

As the White Australia Policy was dismantled, other groups of non-European migrants increased. For example, more Vietnamese immigrated to Australia after the Vietnam War, and Chinese and Indian immigrants also began to arrive. After the migration reforms of the twentieth century and the establishment of multiculturalism, refugees from various trouble spots around the world – including Lebanon, Somalia, Sudan, Iran, Iraq and Afghanistan – began to arrive, making Australia their home.

Embracing diversity

In 2011, the ALP government launched a new policy called *The People of Australia: Australia's Multicultural Policy*. The policy was designed to reaffirm the importance of a culturally diverse and socially cohesive nation. As an indication of the changes in Australia since 1945, it was released in 11 different languages: Arabic, Chinese (simplified and traditional scripts), Dinka, French, German, Greek, Hindi, Italian, Spanish and Vietnamese. The geographical and cultural spread of these languages represents the history of Australian postwar immigration.

In a speech at the time, Prime Minister Julia Gillard acknowledged her own immigrant roots. Born in Wales, Gillard came to Australia with her family at the age of five. She was the sixth Australian prime minister to have been born overseas. Tony Abbott was the seventh – he was born in England and his family moved to Australia when he was a young boy.

Source 32 Australian cricketer Usman Khawaja is one of many Australian sporting personalities born overseas.

Source 34 As a young girl, Julia Gillard came to Australia with her family, from Wales

Migration and global relations

Throughout Australia's history, migration has been closely tied to its relationships with other countries around the world. Its history as a British colony and its maintenance of close political ties with Britain has seen that country retain its position as Australia's dominant source of migrants. In addition, Australia's close historical, political and cultural links to New Zealand, together with its close proximity, has seen a rise in the number of New Zealand immigrants. Furthermore, Australia's historical relationships with countries in the Asian region, such as Vietnam and China, have also influenced the numbers of migrants choosing to settle here.

The influence of migration on foreign relations has been two-way – close foreign relationships have encouraged certain groups of migrants to travel to Australia, but the arrival of certain migrant groups has had the effect of strengthening ties between the two countries. For example, Australia's close ties with Britain have enabled it to take advantage of its membership of the **Commonwealth of Nations**. This relationship has enabled close links with regard to trade, travel and foreign policy, and has encouraged other cooperation.

Commonwealth of Nations
a group of 54 nations that are, or were previously, ruled or governed by the United Kingdom; the head of the Commonwealth is the King of England

The arrival of large numbers of migrants has improved Australia's relations with other countries around the world. The close familial and community bonds between people in Italy, Greece, China and Vietnam and migrant families from those countries in Australia have led to closer trade ties, cultural understanding and international cooperation. Informal estimates quoted by the Department of Foreign Affairs and Trade suggest that Australia's Greek community could be as large as 400 000, with Melbourne often described as the third-largest 'Greek city' in the world, after Athens and Thessaloniki.

Source 35 Close familial ties between people in Italy, Greece and other countries with migrants who live in Australia have led to deeper understanding and better international cooperation.

KEY CONCEPT
Significance

The Indian student controversy

Although Australia's international ties have been strengthened through migration, these ties can also result in new challenges. In 2009 the Australian and Indian media published reports of crimes and robberies against Indians living in Australia (particularly in Melbourne and Sydney). Australia has close ties with India and a significant Indian population (2.6 per cent of all Australians). India is also the second-largest source of international students for Australian institutions. In 2009 there were more than 120 000 Indian students enrolled to study in Australia, and in 2019, that number was approximately 140 000. The number dropped due to travel restrictions imposed at the height of the COVID-19 pandemic, but it is expected to grow again.

Although police evidence suggested that a number of crimes may have been racially motivated, several were also opportunistic. It does not appear that any of the crimes were linked, but the Australian and Indian media reported them all as being racially motivated. This led to an Indian Government investigation into the attacks. The investigation concluded that out of the 152 reported assaults against Indian students in Australia that year, 23 had involved 'racial overtones', though this figure may be higher.

The findings received widespread media coverage and resulted in a strong negative reaction in India against Australia. Possibly as a direct result of these events, there was a 46 per cent drop in Indian students applying to study in Australia. International education is Australia's fourth largest export, so this had some consequences for the Australian Government and for Australian educational institutions. However, the number of Indian students applying to study in Australia has risen steadily since 2013, reaching its peak in 2019.

For more information on this key concept, refer to page 243 of 'The history toolkit'.

Source 36 There were 152 assaults against Indian students reported in Australia in 2009. Of those, it was suggested that 23 had 'racial overtones'.

Quiz me!
A quick quiz on the changing face of Australia

9.10 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 **State** the number of different Aboriginal cultural groups estimated to have lived in Australia before European colonisation in 1788.

Comprehend

2 **Explain** the significance of the Indian student controversy of 2009. What effect did the incident have on Australia's Indian student numbers in the short term and the longer term?

3 **Explain** how migration and multiculturalism have changed the Australian nation and its people.

Analyse

4 **Analyse** Source 31. What trends can you identify regarding countries of birth for overseas-born Australians? How have these trends changed over time?

Apply

5 By 2021, seven of Australia's prime ministers had been born overseas and migrated to Australia. **Investigate** one of these leaders. Investigate why their family decided to come to Australia, aspects of their migration experience and the contribution that they have made to Australia. Use this material to write a speech that your prime minister could deliver at a citizenship ceremony for new Australians.

9B SKILLS IN CONTEXT

Test me!
Once you've finished the topics in this section, test yourself with this quiz and find out which worksheet you should do.

Big Australia

Australia has undergone tremendous change since the Chifley government announced its 'populate or perish' immigration policy at the end of World War II. Our population has grown from less than 8 million in 1947 to nearly 26 million in 2021.

Australia has relied on a natural population increase as well as an influx of younger skilled migrants to help replace the ageing workforce. However, Australian governments have not always agreed on how high immigration rates should be.

In 2009, Prime Minister Kevin Rudd stated his support for high immigration and population growth, and used the term 'Big Australia' to describe the policies needed to respond to it. In 2021, Treasury forecasts showed that Australia's population was likely to increase to more than 38 million by 2060–61. Much of this growth was expected to come from high rates of immigration.

In March 2021, former Prime Minister Rudd again advocated for the need to increase Australia's population through immigration, arguing that a larger (and younger) population is essential, due to the loss of productivity from Australia's ageing population.

Source 37

> One in two exporters are born overseas, two-thirds of our entrepreneurs, one in four Australians. Just look at a city skyline and you see Westfield, Myer, Bing Lee. Everyone who's come here has been a migrant who's created great jobs for everyone.

Extract from an interview with University of New South Wales economist Tim Harcourt on ABC Radio National's *Mongrel Nation* program, 4 August 2013

Source 38

> Australia is being transformed. We are losing core elements of what was once shared. Almost all could once aspire to a house and land – living in garden city settings different only in scale from their better-off counterparts, and sharing a common language, sporting culture, and heritage.
>
> Once we go down the high-migration pathway, there may be no going back.

Extract from sociologist Bob Birrell, 'The Risks of High Migration', *Policy*, Autumn 2010

Source 39

> [Dry Liberal says: 03:32pm | 28/09/12]
>
> We ought to be proud our Country is growing healthily like it is! What these negative-nellie chicken-little dooms-day shrieksters inexplicably fail to understand is that every new addition to our population adds net potential to our wealth and power …

Online comment responding to an article titled 'We're Hurtling Down the Track to a Big Australia'

KEY SKILL
Communicating

Writing historical discussions that use evidence from a range of sources

Historical discussions present different opinions about particular historical questions or issues. They consider evidence from a range of sources, and outline different possible interpretations of that evidence (see Source 40). This involves considering not only various primary sources, but also the ideas of other historians – presented in secondary sources. Historical discussions usually conclude with the writer's own point of view, although sometimes the question may remain open. All sources that you use in a written historical discussion must be referenced. To do this, follow the steps below.

Step 1 In your writing, mention where information is coming from. Some examples of how you can do this include:

- 'According to the economist Tim Harcourt …'
- 'The depiction of migrants from non-English-speaking backgrounds in the article 'The Risks of High Migration' shows that …'

Step 2 In your writing, you also need to include all the sources you have referred to in your discussion in a bibliography. When citing a book in a bibliography, include the following information, in this order: author surname(s) and initial(s), year of publication, title of book (in italics), edition (if relevant), publisher, place of publication and page number(s).

When citing an online source in a bibliography, include the following information, if it is available: author surname(s) and initial(s) or organisation name, year of publication or date of webpage (last update), title of document (article) enclosed in quotation marks, organisation name (if different from above), date you accessed the site, URL or web address enclosed in angle brackets.

Source 40 Summary of the structure of a written discussion

Introduction	• Introduces the topic, question or issue • Outlines why the topic, question or issue is important • Indicates controversies relating to the topic
Main body	• Paragraphs outline different arguments or opinions about the topic, question or issue • Each argument or opinion presented should refer to evidence that supports it • The last paragraph should contain the strongest points
Conclusion	• Sums up the issue and gives the writer's opinion

Practise the skill

1 Write a 500-word essay in response to the question: 'To what extent have Australia's political leaders supported the idea of a "Big Australia" since the end of World War II?'

Your essay should examine the history of arguments for and against high immigration and population policies in Australia. Some points to consider are:

- You will need to conduct your own research to locate a range of sources of information that provide evidence about other factors, events and attitudes that contribute to the debate.
- You could conduct some interviews to gain contemporary views on the issue. Reference these as follows: Jackson Tom (age 57), interviewed at … on …
- Make sure you include a bibliography that references all your sources, using the conventions outlined above.

Extend your understanding

1 **Compare** the views put forward in Sources 37, 38 and 39. Present your findings in the form of a table, like this one.

Source	View on a Big Australia	Two pieces of evidence from source
37		
38		
39		

2 Which source do you believe best argues for and supports its view? **Explain** why.

9.11 Rights and freedoms of First Nations peoples in Australia: a timeline

1935 · 1945 · 1960 · 1970 · 1990

1938
Australia's sesquicentenary (150th anniversary) is celebrated around Australia. Aboriginal leaders in Melbourne hold 'Day of Mourning and Protest' events and call for citizenship rights.

1948
The Universal Declaration of Human Rights is adopted by the United Nations.

1965
Australia's Freedom Riders became aware of de facto segregation throughout country New South Wales while touring the regions on a 'fact finding' mission.

1967
There is overwhelming support for the referendum to change the Constitution to allow the Commonwealth to make laws for First Nations peoples, and to include them in the census.

1972
The Aboriginal Tent Embassy is established on the lawns of Parliament House in response to the McMahon Government's refusal to accept native title.

1975
The Whitlam government returns 3300 square kilometres of land to the Gurindji people – a beginning to land rights for First Nations peoples in Australia.

1990
The Aboriginal and Torres Strait Islander Commission (ATSIC) is formally established as the key representative body responsible for the implementation of self-determination policies.

1992
The High Court overturns *Terra Nullius* and acknowledges native title in the historic *Mabo* ruling. Prime Minister Paul Keating's 'Redfern Park' speech includes frank admissions about the removal of First Nations children from their families.

The Day of Mourning and Protest in 1938 was held in defiance of the national sesquicentenary (150th anniversary) celebrations.

Supporters at the Aboriginal Tent Embassy

Source 1 A timeline of some key events and developments relating to civil rights and freedoms of First Nations peoples in Australia

Sequence this!
Events and developments in rights and freedoms for First Nations peoples

Adam Goodes was named Australian of the Year in 2014.

2000 — 2010 — 2020

1997
The *Bringing Them Home* report is tabled in parliament. The report includes thousands of testimonies from the members of the Stolen Generations.

1998
26 May 1998 is the first National Sorry Day. Prime Minister John Howard refuses to apologise.

2004
The Howard government abolishes ATSIC.

2008
Prime Minister Kevin Rudd issues a formal apology to the Stolen Generations.

2010
Prime Minister Julia Gillard announces plans to recognise First Nations peoples in the Constitution.

2011
For the first time, Aboriginal people join Anzac Day marches in Canberra, with banners reading: 'Lest We Forget the Frontier Wars'.

2014
Adnyamathanha man Adam Goodes receives the Australian of the Year Award for his 'leadership and advocacy in the fight against racism both on the sporting field and within society'.

2019
Uluru climb is closed. Budj Bim Cultural Landscape is added to the UNESCO World Heritage List.

2020
Black Lives Matter protests in the United States inspire protests in Australia about the deaths of Aboriginal people in custody.

2021
The words to the national anthem are changed to 'Australians all let us rejoice, for we are one and free'.

9.11 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 **Identify** when the first Day of Mourning and Protest was held.

2 **Identify** when *Terra Nullius* was overturned by the High Court.

Analyse

3 Calculate how many years there were between the *Bringing Them Home* report and Prime Minister Kevin Rudd making a formal apology to the Stolen Generations.

Apply

4 The US Freedom Rides and the Black Lives Matter protests inspired and influenced Australian movements. **Propose** reasons why you think this was the case.

5 The year 2019 saw two culturally significant landmarks protected (Uluru and Budj Bim). **Propose** why this was so important.

9.12 The struggle for First Nations peoples' rights

Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» understand the attitudes and policies that forced segregation and assimilation on First Nations peoples.

colonised
took full or partial control of another country, and occupied it

segregation
in Australian history, the government policy and practice of separating First Nations peoples from European settlers

assimilation
in Australian history, the process by which a minority group adopts the language and customs of a dominant population; in the mid-1900s assimilation of First Nations peoples into white society became official government policy

When the British **colonised** the east coast of Australia in 1788, they did not understand the culture of the Aboriginal population there. The British looked for signs of 'civilisation' as being permanent residences such as they would have found in Britain. They could find none, so they did not negotiate any treaties with Aboriginal peoples. They proclaimed Australia *Terra Nullius* – a Latin term that means 'nobody's land'. In 1835 Sir Richard Bourke, Governor of New South Wales, issued a proclamation formally implementing the doctrine of *Terra Nullius*.

Today, we know that the British explorers were very wrong, as Aboriginal peoples had very sophisticated forms of agriculture and their own unique way of living. The Eurocentric world view of the explorers meant that they did not value the Aboriginal peoples' way of life.

The negative effects of European settlement on Aboriginal peoples that had started in 1788 continued with the policies of Australian colonial and state governments in the late nineteenth and early twentieth centuries. The expansion of British colonial settlements into established Aboriginal lands destroyed many traditional ways of life. High numbers of Aboriginal peoples died prematurely as the result of violence and disease. By the time of Federation in 1901, European settlements dominated most of the continent.

First Nations cultures were not officially recognised, and public policy was dominated by ideas of **segregation** and **assimilation**. Both of these ideas were based on the assumption that Aboriginal peoples were inferior to Europeans.

Aboriginal Protection Boards

Before Federation in 1901, Aboriginal Protection Boards were established in the colonies around Australia to 'manage' Aboriginal populations. After Federation, these boards became the responsibility of state governments. Removing children from their families was the core work of these boards (see 'The Stolen Generations', page 361). The new Commonwealth took no responsibility for the wellbeing of this significant minority. Chief Protectors were appointed to watch over the Aboriginal peoples in each state and oversee what many thought to be a 'dying race' of people.

Source 2 Aboriginal children at the Catholic Little Flower Mission in Arltunga, Northern Territory, *c.* 1946

Aboriginal **Reserves** and **Missions** were established by governments and religious organisations across Australia to support the assimilation policy (see Source 2). But most agree that the real reason for these Missions was segregation – to keep black people away from white society. For many First Nations peoples, these institutions meant separation from families and communities, isolation and loss of language, culture, identity and control.

The situation at Federation

When the Australian colonies federated in 1901, First Nations peoples remained politically and legally marginalised. Many of the rights extended to the citizens of the new Commonwealth of Australia were denied to the nation's original inhabitants. A number of Acts passed by the new Commonwealth Parliament specifically excluded them. Aboriginal peoples were not entitled to vote in federal elections unless previously registered to vote in their state. They did not receive the basic wage and they were not eligible for aged and invalid pensions. Travel restrictions were often enforced on them. Aboriginal peoples were excluded from military training and Aboriginal mothers did not receive the 'baby bonus' that was given to non-Indigenous mothers. When a **census** was held, First Nations peoples were not counted as members of the Australian population.

Western Australian Senator Alexander Matheson was one of the strongest opponents of Aboriginal people being given the right to vote. (Note: some of the language used in the following extract is now regarded as highly offensive. It is not appropriate to use such language today in anything but a historical context.)

Source 3

> We must take steps to prevent any Aboriginal from acquiring the right to vote. Surely it is absolutely repugnant to the greater number of the people of the Commonwealth that an Aboriginal man or Aboriginal lubra or gin [woman] – a horrible, degraded, dirty creature – should have the same rights that we have decided to give to our wives and daughters … The honourable gentleman [New South Wales Senator James Walker] fails to recognise that we have taken this country from the blacks, and made it a white man's country, and intend to keep it a white man's country, so that there is no earthly use in the honourable gentleman saying that 100 years ago this was a black man's country … We are aware of the fact that it is very regrettable, and the only consolation we have is that they are gradually dying out.

Extract from a speech by Western Australian Senator Alexander Matheson, Commonwealth Parliamentary Debates, Senate, 22 May 1901, responding to New South Wales Senator James Walker's statement: 'This was a black-fellow's country before it was a white man's country'

After Federation, state governments and religious organisations continued to dominate policies affecting First Nations peoples. The trend to assimilation underpinned work in relation to Aboriginal peoples in two key areas: the Christian Missions and the removal of mixed-race First Nations children from their families.

Controlled by colour

The 'assimilation policy' was officially adopted at the Aboriginal Welfare Conference of Commonwealth and State Authorities in 1937. First Nations people of mixed race were to be assimilated into white society whether they wanted to be or not. This was a new form of control. The view was that if Aboriginal peoples were not going to simply 'die out', then all efforts should be directed to ensuring that those of mixed race, in particular, could be assimilated (see Sources 4 and 5 on the next page). The removal of First Nations children continued, and new powers were given to 'welfare' officials to judge whether children were 'progressing'.

Reserves
settlements established during the nineteenth century in Australia (usually by colonial powers) to move First Nations peoples away from European-occupied areas, and to assimilate them into European culture and beliefs

Missions
settlements established during the nineteenth century in Australia (usually by Christian missionaries) to convert First Nations peoples to Christianity and assimilate them into European culture and beliefs

census
a 'head count' or audit of the number of people living in a particular place at a particular time

Analyse this!
Senator Alexander Matheson

Source 4

> The destiny of the natives of aboriginal origin, but not of the full blood, lies in their ultimate absorption … with a view to their taking their place in the white community on an equal footing with the whites.
>
> Extract from a conference paper from the Aboriginal Welfare Conference of Commonwealth and State Authorities, 1937

New government resources were aimed at changing the ways that Aboriginal people lived. Traditional Aboriginal camps were demolished and additional assistance was given to Missions to 'do the job'.

Jackson's Track

In 1936, a white man called Daryl Tonkin set up a sawmill at Jackson's Track in Gippsland, Victoria. The settlement was occupied by many Aboriginal people – including the family of Lionel Rose, Australia's first boxing world champion. Tonkin, who married an Aboriginal woman, recalls the idyllic life of those living there in his book *Jackson's Track*. However, from the 1940s, government and church officials began putting pressure on the Aboriginal Elders to move their families to somewhere more 'civilised'. 'Welfare' would visit frequently, and in 1961 the community was dismantled.

Source 5

> It wasn't long before people at the Track found out what the authorities had decided to do. The church people came around to all the camps and explained how they had the welfare of the blackfellas in mind and that they truly felt this was the best thing for them. They said the good people of the church had worked together to build some housing for the blackfellas and that in one week a truck would be out to fetch them.
>
> Extract from Daryl Tonkin, *Jackson's Track*, Viking Australia, 1999, p. 254

apartheid
a system of racial segregation enforced in South Africa from 1948 to 1994; literally meaning 'the state of being apart'

Tonkin explains a few pages later that the promised 'housing' was actually tents, and that a number of previously employed, teetotal Aboriginal men began drinking for the first time in their lives to escape the boredom and depression of their new lives away from 'the Track'.

Source 6 Two dwellings at Jackson's Track, Victoria, *c.* 1947–60 (Source: Museum Victoria. Photographer: Richard Seeger)

Segregation

Another effective means of controlling First Nations people was to prevent them from fully participating in society. 'Colour bars' – bans that prevented Aboriginal people from entering clubs, pubs, restaurants, theatres, public swimming pools or using public transport – resulted in a form of **apartheid**.

First Nations people were not allowed to work in certain jobs – including in post offices – and were expected to work for much less money. For the first 30 years after Federation, segregation was applied quite consistently across the states and territories of Australia.

Despite assimilation being the official policy of the government, the practice of segregation continued until the

1960s. Separate sections in theatres, separate wards in hospitals, and denial of school enrolment to First Nations children were common. Aboriginal rights activists in the 1960s had plenty of evidence that obvious discrimination continued across Australia.

Stolen Generations
First Nations children who were forcibly removed from their families by government officials and church Missions in Australia and raised by white Australians; this practice was official government policy from around 1909 to 1969

The Stolen Generations

From the late 1800s to the 1970s many thousands of First Nations children were forcibly removed from their families. These children, now referred to as the **Stolen Generations**, faced ongoing emotional and social difficulties because of this.

In most states, it was believed that if mixed-race Aboriginal children could be brought up in a 'white' community, their Aboriginality could be 'overcome' and their 'white' attributes would shine through. These children were raised in Missions or placed with white families (see Source 7). Unfortunately, they often ended up being rejected by both the Aboriginal and European communities.

'Full-blooded' Aboriginal children were also removed from their families. They were put into state-run institutions where they were prepared for unskilled and semi-skilled work. For example, the Cootamundra Girls' Home in New South Wales trained girls to be domestic servants.


Homes Are Sought For These Children

A GROUP OF TINY HALF-CASTE AND QUADROON CHILDREN at the Darwin half-caste home. The Minister for the Interior (Mr Perkins) recently appealed to charitable organisations in Melbourne and Sydney to find homes for the children and rescue them from becoming outcasts.

Source 7 A Darwin newspaper advertisement from 1934 seeking homes for children of mixed race

The *Bringing Them Home* report

In 1997, the Human Rights and Equal Opportunity Commission collated the stories of the Stolen Generations for the Commonwealth Parliament. Its report, entitled *Bringing Them Home*, revealed the pain felt by the many Australians who were affected by this policy.

Think, pair, share
- Think about the perspectives of the children shown in Source 7.
- Discuss your ideas with a partner.
- Share your thoughts with the class.

Source 8

> Most of us girls were thinking white in the head but were feeling black inside. We weren't black or white. We were a very lonely, lost and sad displaced group of people. We were taught to think and act like a white person, but we didn't know how to think and act like an Aboriginal. We didn't know anything about our culture.
>
> We were completely brainwashed to think only like a white person. When they went to mix in white society, they found they were not accepted [because] they were Aboriginal. When they went and mixed with Aborigines, some found they couldn't identify with them either, because they had too much white ways in them. So that they were neither black nor white. They were simply a lost generation of children. I know. I was one of them.

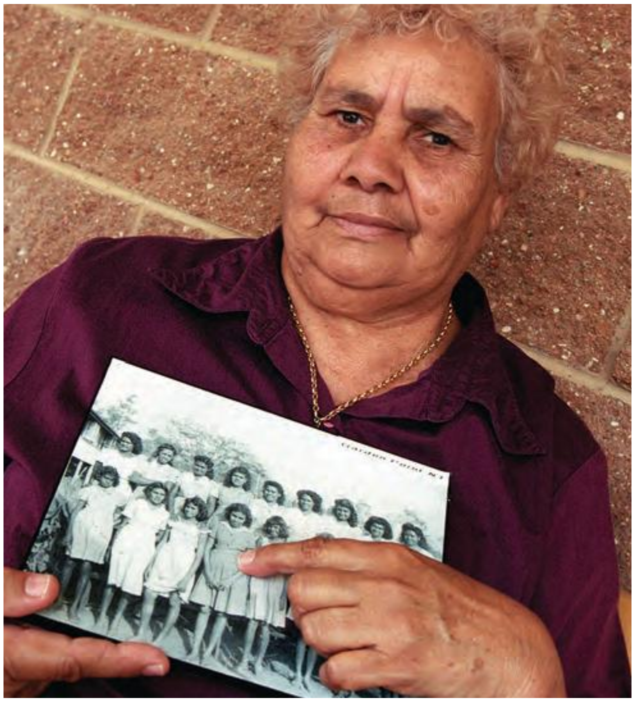
Extract from *Bringing Them Home: Report of the National Inquiry into the Separation of Aboriginal and Torres Strait Islander Children from their Families*, Human Rights and Equal Opportunity Commission, April 1997, p. 131

In the discussions around the release of the *Bringing Them Home* report, a number of 'justifications' for these policies of separating First Nations mixed-raced children from their families were raised by non-Indigenous society. Common ones included 'child protection', beliefs that Australia's First Nations peoples would 'die out', and a desire to 'civilise' First Nations children through their assimilation into white society, and enabling them to attend secondary school (unavailable in many remote locations). However, the report dealt with many of these questions by making comparisons with non-Indigenous children removed from their families (see Source 9 on the next page).

Source 9

In contrast with the removal of non-Indigenous children, proof of 'neglect' was not always required before an Indigenous child could be removed. Their Aboriginality would suffice. Therefore, while some removals might be 'justifiable' after the event as being in the child's best interests, they often did not need to be justified at the time.

Extract from *Bringing Them Home*, p. 9



Saving children from 'neglect' was not the main motive behind the forcible removal of First Nations children from their families. More often, it was the desire of European settlers to civilise or 'breed out' Aboriginality. Dr Cecil Cook, Chief Protector of the Northern Territory between 1927 and 1939, was perhaps the most famous government official involved in the removal of Aboriginal children during this period. His controversial views were that Aboriginal women who had a white parent should be 'elevat[ed] … to "white" standards with a view to their absorption by mating into the "white" population'. This assimilationist argument was used as motivation to remove thousands of First Nations children from their families.

Source 10 Marita Ah Chee – an Anmetjere woman from Alice Springs – was taken from her family to Garden Point Mission on Melvin Island, Northern Territory, in 1947. After 13 years she came back to Alice Springs to work as a nanny. Her Aboriginal mother, having heard that she was back, went 'doorknocking' until mother and daughter were finally reunited after 15 years.

9.12 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 In your own words, **define** the following terms: assimilation, segregation, Stolen Generations, Missions and Reserves.

Comprehend

2 **Summarise** why British colonisers did not recognise Aboriginal peoples' way of life.

3 Using Sources 7 and 8, **explain** how the forcible removal of children affected (and continues to affect) First Nations children and their families.

4 Dr Cecil Cook argued that Aboriginal women who had a white parent should be 'elevat[ed] … to "white" standards with a view to their absorption by mating into the "white" population'. **Explain** why this view is racist. Consider the language used. What does it say about government policy and attitudes at the time?

Apply

5 **Investigate** the *Bringing Them Home* report. Summarise the reasons why this report was created and the impact it has had on Australia.

6 **Create** a timeline showing some of the ways First Nations peoples were discriminated against in Australia from 1788 to the 1960s. Use square brackets to demonstrate a long period of time and colour-coding to highlight overlap.

7 In your opinion, what was the greatest impact that European settlers had on First Nations peoples? Could this impact have been lessened if the policy of *Terra Nullius* had not been applied when Australia was colonised? **Justify** (give reasons for) your point of view in a 200-word TEEL paragraph, citing at least two historical sources.

9.13 First Nations peoples' activism in the nineteenth and twentieth centuries

Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

- summarise historical campaigns for the rights and freedoms of First Nations peoples, including the significance of the 1938 Day of Mourning.

Despite the many discriminatory policies of Australian colonial and state governments in the late nineteenth and early twentieth centuries, First Nations peoples have made repeated attempts to have their traditions and rights recognised. Many of the people who would go on to become important figures in the struggle for the **civil rights** of First Nations peoples came from the Aboriginal Reserves and Missions that had been set up by Aboriginal Protection Boards.

KEY CONCEPT
Significance

civil rights
the rights belonging to every individual, including civil liberties, due legal process, equal protection under the law and freedom from discrimination

Cummeragunja Station: Birthplace of a movement?

Cummeragunja Station was a farming settlement established in 1881 on the New South Wales side of the Murray River, near Moama. It was set on about 700 hectares of land not far from the Maloga Mission, which is where many of the original inhabitants came from. It was in the heart of the Yorta Yorta Nation, and not far from Corowa, where colonial leaders would meet 12 years later to plan for a 'new' Australian Commonwealth. Originally, the Aboriginal residents managed Cummeragunja Station with little interference from the government. It was a productive farm and was home to many Aboriginal families when Maloga Mission closed down some years later. In 1906, the Aboriginal Protection Board began to assert greater control over the Mission and its residents; but fortunately, the first manager it appointed – J.G. Danvers – was sympathetic.

For a time, the school at Cummeragunja Station allowed Aboriginal children to continue studying well beyond the legislated three years. The outcome of this was that in the early part of the century, a number of future Aboriginal leaders acquired knowledge and skills that would later support their efforts to bring greater rights and freedoms to their people. Jack Patten (see page 366) attended primary school there and William Cooper was one of many leaders to take advantage of adult literacy classes.

Cooper – a Yorta Yorta man who had spent most of his life fighting for justice for his people from his home at Cummeragunja – eventually left in 1933. He moved to Footscray in Melbourne at the age of 72 in order to qualify for the aged pension. From his new home, he joined together with many other former Cummeragunja residents to form the Australian Aborigines League. These included Doug Nicholls, Margaret Tucker and Thomas Shadrach James, who had been one of the teachers at Cummeragunja decades before.

Source 11 William Cooper and his cousin, Margaret Tucker, in 1936

continued on the next page

continued from the previous page

In 1938, the Aboriginal Protection Board appointed a notoriously cruel and brutal manager at Cummeragunja called Arthur McQuiggan. With Cooper's help, the residents petitioned the board to remove him, but were unsuccessful. The following year, Cummeragunja was the focus of the national Aboriginal rights movement when more than 200 people walked off the Mission and crossed the river to Victoria, to protest against poor treatment and conditions. This was the first ever mass strike of Aboriginal people in Australia.

For more information on this key concept, refer to page 243 of 'The history toolkit'.

The early protests

When the centenary (100th anniversary) of the British colonisation of Australia was celebrated in 1888, little attention was paid to First Nations peoples. All colonies except South Australia proclaimed 'Anniversary Day' a public holiday in order to allow people to celebrate. First Nations people refused to attend the festivities, but very few people of European descent noticed. First Nations peoples were excluded from public life and largely ignored.

On 26 January 1938, the sesquicentenary (150th anniversary) of British colonisation took place. Organised groups of Aboriginal Australians decided to use it as a chance to protest for their rights. They referred to these protests as a Day of Mourning and Protest (see Source 13).

The Australian Aborigines League (in Victoria) and the Aborigines Progressive Association (in New South Wales) had previously been involved in petitions calling for civil rights for Aboriginal peoples. They refused to participate in the re-enactment of the First Fleet's landing at Farm Cove in Sydney, which was the focus of white celebrations. Instead, the Aboriginal groups planned a protest march from the Sydney Town Hall.

After they were refused permission to meet at the Town Hall, they decided to march to the Australian Hall in Elizabeth Street instead. They were refused entry to the Australian Hall through the front door and were forced to enter through a rear door. The meeting was the one of the earliest civil rights meeting in Australian history.

Think, pair, share

- Think about the 1938 re-enactment of the First Fleet landing. How do you think the different people involved would have felt?
- Discuss your ideas with a partner.
- Share your thoughts with the class.

Source 12 Twenty-five Aboriginal men from Menindee were forced to participate in this 1938 re-enactment of the landing of the First Fleet, watched by a group of white dignitaries. They were told their families would starve if they refused.

Day of Mourning and Protest

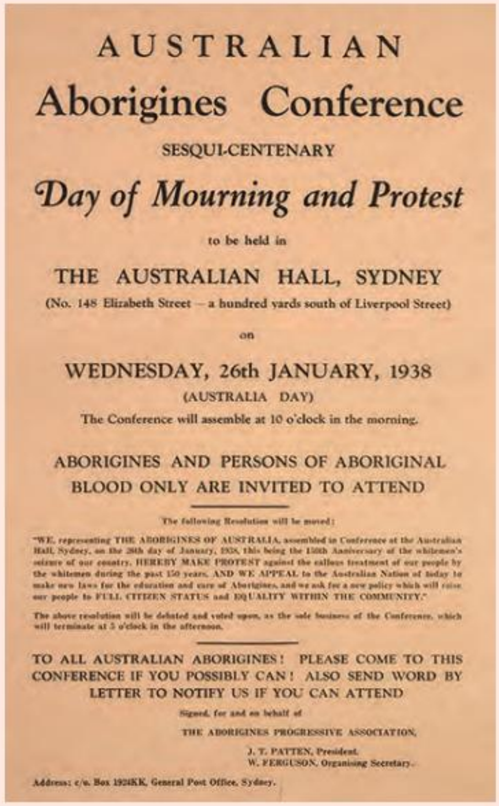
The 1938 Day of Mourning and Protest is remembered as one of the most historically significant events in the struggle for Aboriginal civil rights in Australia. A manifesto (written declaration) titled *Aborigines Claim Citizen Rights* was distributed at the meeting in the Australian Hall. The manifesto opened with a declaration:

> This festival of 150 years of so-called 'progress' in Australia commemorates also 150 years of misery and degradation imposed on the original native inhabitants by white invaders of this country.

It was a powerful statement that introduced white Australians to an alternative view of their history.

One of the protesters at the meeting, Jack Patten, delivered an address that marked a turning point in the fight for acceptance by Aboriginal Australians (see Source 15 on page 367). Patten would go on to be one of the most significant figures in this struggle.

For more information on this key concept, refer to page 243 of 'The history toolkit'.


AUSTRALIAN
Aborigines Conference
SESQUI-CENTENARY
Day of Mourning and Protest
to be held in
THE AUSTRALIAN HALL, SYDNEY
(No. 148 Elizabeth Street — a hundred yards south of Liverpool Street)
on
WEDNESDAY, 26th JANUARY, 1938
(AUSTRALIA DAY)
The Conference will assemble at 10 o'clock in the morning.
ABORIGINES AND PERSONS OF ABORIGINAL BLOOD ONLY ARE INVITED TO ATTEND
The following Resolution will be moved:
"WE, representing THE ABORIGINES OF AUSTRALIA, assembled in Conference at the Australian Hall, Sydney, on the 26th day of January, 1938, this being the 150th Anniversary of the whitemen's seizure of our country, HEREBY MAKE PROTEST against the callous treatment of our people by the whitemen during the past 150 years, AND WE APPEAL to the Australian Nation of today to make new laws for the education and care of Aborigines, and we ask for a new policy which will raise our people to FULL CITIZEN STATUS and EQUALITY WITHIN THE COMMUNITY."
The above resolution will be debated and voted upon, as the sole business of the Conference, which will terminate at 5 o'clock in the afternoon.
TO ALL AUSTRALIAN ABORIGINES! PLEASE COME TO THIS CONFERENCE IF YOU POSSIBLY CAN! ALSO SEND WORD BY LETTER TO NOTIFY US IF YOU CAN ATTEND
Signed, for and on behalf of
THE ABORIGINES PROGRESSIVE ASSOCIATION,
J. T. PATTEN, President.
W. FERGUSON, Organising Secretary.
Address: c/o. Box 1924KK, General Post Office, Sydney.

Source 13 A flyer advertising the Day of Mourning and Protest, 1938

KEY CONCEPT
Significance

Analyse this!
Day of Mourning and Protest flyer

9.13 Check your learning

Comprehend

1 **Describe** the action taken by the Australian Aborigines League and the Aborigines Progressive Association on 26 January 1938.

2 **Summarise** why many First Nations people do not want to celebrate on 26 January each year.

Apply

3 **Propose** reasons why the Cummeragunja Station produced so many important leaders of the civil rights movement in Australia.

4 **Investigate** further to complete the following task.

a Research one of the following individuals who (at some point) lived on Cummeragunja Station:
- Doug Nicholls
- Margaret Tucker
- William Cooper
- Thomas Shadrach James.

b Create a short biography outlining some interesting facts about this person's early life and provide a summary of their key achievements in the struggle for civil rights of First Nations peoples.

5 Investigate the 1938 Day of Mourning. **Discuss** its significance and how it helps you understand criticisms that Australia Day is not an inclusive event.

9.14 Significant individual: Jack Patten

Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» describe the life of Jack Patten and his contribution to the rights and freedoms of First Nations peoples.

Quiz me!
A quick quiz on Jack Patten

John Thomas Patten, known as Jack Patten, was an Aboriginal civil rights activist and journalist who made a huge contribution to the fight for the rights and freedoms of First Nations people.

Early life

Jack Patten was born on 28 March 1905 at Cummeragunja Station in the Yorta Yorta Nation, near Moama on the New South Wales side of the Murray River (see page 363). He was the eldest of six children to John James Patten, a blacksmith and police tracker, and his wife Christina Mary, a local farmer's daughter.

After he attended high school in West Wyalong, New South Wales, Patten won a scholarship and tried to join the navy to continue his education. He was rejected because of his race. He then took on a number of labouring jobs and joined a boxing troupe that travelled around Australia. On these travels, and on subsequent journeys around Australia, he developed a very clear picture of the issues facing First Nations people.

Great Depression
a period of severe economic downturn between 1929 and 1934 that affected most countries around the world

Political awakening

Patten moved with his family to Salt Pan Creek, Sydney, in 1929. At this **Great Depression**-era camp he joined a group of dispossessed Aboriginal peoples who were already beginning to organise themselves into a political movement. Patten would speak about Aboriginal citizenship and equality on Sundays in the Domain in Sydney and, in 1938, published the first Aboriginal newspaper, *The Australian Abo Call* (see Source 14).

With his political partner, William Ferguson, Patten founded the Aborigines Progressive Association in 1937, and worked with the Australian Aborigines League in Victoria to coordinate the first Aboriginal Day of Mourning and Protest in Sydney on 26 January 1938 (see Source 15).

Five days later, Patten and the other Aboriginal leaders met with Prime Minister Joseph Lyons and presented their 10-point plan for citizens' rights.

In 1939, Patten responded to a call from his relatives at Cummeragunja to help support their struggle against management. Patten and his brother George were arrested for inciting the Aboriginal people to leave the Reserve. He was then labelled a Nazi agent by the Sydney press.

Once released from jail, Patten won a long battle when he convinced the government to overturn a ban preventing Aboriginal people from enlisting in the armed forces. Until then, Aboriginal people needed to lie about their Aboriginality to be accepted. Patten was finally able to enlist, and he served in the Middle East with the 6th Division of the Australian Imperial Force in World War II. He was wounded in 1942 and retired from active service. He returned to work in northern Australia, helping build infrastructure as part of the effort to protect the area from invasion.


Representing 80,000 Australian Aborigines

The Australian
ABO CALL
THE VOICE OF THE ABORIGINES
EDITED BY J. T. PATTEN

We ask for Education, Opportunity, and Full Citizen Rights

No. 1 MONTHLY, 3d. APRIL, 1938

To all Aborigines!

OUR TEN POINTS

Source 14 *The Australian Abo Call – The Voice of the Aborigines* was the first Aboriginal newspaper.

Source 15

On this day the white people are rejoicing, but we, as Aborigines, have no reason to rejoice on Australia's 150th birthday. Our purpose in meeting today is to bring home to the white people of Australia the frightful conditions in which the native Aborigines of this continent live. This land belonged to our forefathers 150 years ago, but today we are pushed further and further into the background.

The Aborigines Progressive Association has been formed to put before the white people the fact that Aborigines throughout Australia are literally being starved to death. We refuse to be pushed into the background. We have decided to make ourselves heard. White men pretend that the Australian Aboriginal is a low type, who cannot be bettered. Our reply to that is, 'Give us the chance!'

We do not wish to be left behind in Australia's march to progress. We ask for full citizen rights, including old-age pensions, maternity bonus, relief work when unemployed, and the right to a full Australian education for our children. We do not wish to be herded like cattle and treated as a special class. As regards the Aborigines Protection Board of New South Wales, white people in the cities do not realise the terrible conditions of slavery under which our people live in the outback districts.

I have unanswerable evidence that women of our race are forced to work in return for rations, without other payment. Is this not slavery? Do white Australians realise that there is actual slavery in this fair progressive Commonwealth? Yet such is the case. We are looking in vain to white people to help us by charity. We must do something ourselves to draw public attention to our plight. That is why this Conference is held, to discuss ways and means of arousing the conscience of white Australians, who have us in their power but have hitherto refused to help us.

Extract from an address delivered by Jack Patten, President of the Aborigines Progressive Association, on the Day of Mourning and Protest, 26 January 1938

Stolen children

After the war, when Patten was clearing land where his family had settled in Grafton, northern New South Wales, six of his children were taken from him by the Aboriginal Protection Board. Patten was unable to secure the release of his five daughters, who were trained as domestic servants in Cootamundra, but he was able to find and release his son, John. Together, they fled to Barmah, Victoria, near Patten's family at Cummeragunja.

John Patten, professionally known as Johnny Jarrett, would later become a well-known Aboriginal Elder and community leader himself, as well as a successful rugby league footballer and boxer.

His final years

Suffering depression from his war experience, Patten left his family and made a living as a labourer in Melbourne. He continued to be a powerful advocate for Aboriginal issues, and spoke out against British atomic weapons testing at Maralinga in South Australia.

Patten was killed in a motor accident in Fitzroy in 1957. Unlike many of his contemporaries, he was not returned to a final resting place at Cummeragunja. He was buried at Fawkner Cemetery in Melbourne.

9.14 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 **State** the Aboriginal nation of which Jack Patten was a member.

Comprehend

2 **Summarise** why Patten was unable to join the navy.

3 State the name and **summarise** the purpose of the first Aboriginal newspaper in Australia.

4 **Summarise** what happened to Patten's children.

Analyse

5 **Analyse** Source 15.

a Explain some of Patten's main concerns.

b Summarise what he was asking for on behalf of Australia's Aboriginal population.

c Identify which of these rights were already given to white Australians.

Apply

6 Write a short paragraph of 150 words that **evaluates** the significance of Patten's contributions to the Aboriginal rights movement.

7 Write a newspaper article about Patten written just after his death in 1957. Include his achievements, challenges and legacy.

9C SKILLS IN CONTEXT

The Stolen Generations

At different times during the past 200 years a range of laws, practices and policies in Australia have resulted in the forcible removal of First Nations children from their families. The 1997 *Bringing Them Home* report (see page 361) has now ensured that the perspectives and stories of members of the Stolen Generations can be heard and understood by members of the wider Australian public.

Test me!
Once you've finished the topics in this section, test yourself with this quiz and find out which worksheet you should do.

Analysis of relevant primary sources reveals there were a range of justifications and motives for this tragic and unjust practice that had serious and long-term effects.

In 1937, government representatives from each state and territory (except Tasmania) attended the first Commonwealth and state 'Aboriginal Welfare' Conference to discuss issues affecting First Nations peoples. This was the first time such discussions had been held at a national level. Source 17 is an extract from comments made by a Chief Protector at the conference.

Source 16 Melbourne Town Hall is lit purple to mark National Sorry Day on 26 May 2020. The first National Sorry Day was held on 26 May 1998 – one year after the tabling of the *Bringing Them Home* report.

Source 17

In Western Australia we have power under the act to take any child from its mother at any stage of its life, no matter whether the mother be legally married or not … Although the children were illegitimate, the mothers were greatly attached to them, and did not wish to be parted from them. I adopted the practice of allowing the mothers to go to the institution with the children until they satisfied themselves that they were properly looked after. The mothers were then usually content to leave them there, and some eventually forgot all about them.

Are we going to have a population of 1 000 000 blacks in the Commonwealth, or are we going to merge them into our white community and eventually forget that there ever were any aborigines in Australia?

Extract from a speech by A.O. Neville, Chief Protector of Aborigines, Western Australia, 1937

Source 18

It was winter 1957, seven o'clock in the morning. The sun was up and the sounds of birds drifted down into our small kitchen. My brother Lenny was sitting on the floor, eating toast; my brothers Murray and David and I, rubbing our eyes in a state of half sleep, were waiting for mum to smear Vegemite on our bread before we dressed for school. A routine day in the Simon household.

Someone rapped loudly on the door. My mother didn't answer it. We hadn't heard anyone come up the path. The knocking got louder, and finally my mother, who was reluctant to answer any callers when my father wasn't home, opened the door and exchanged words with three people. We strained to hear what they were saying. Three men then entered the room.

A man in a suit ordered my mother to pick up Lenny and give him to me. My mother started to scream. One of the policemen bent down and picked up my brother and handed him to me. My mother screamed and sobbed hysterically but the men took no notice, and forced my brothers and me into a car.

My mother ran out onto the road, fell on her knees and belted her fists into the bitumen as she screamed. We looked back as the car drove off to see her hammering her fists into the road, the tears streaming down her face …

An extract from the account of Bill Simon, an Aboriginal man who was forcibly removed from his family when he was 10 years old

KEY SKILL
Historical perspectives & interpretations

Considering perspectives

The key historical concept of perspective (see page 239 of 'The history toolkit') refers to the position from which people see and understand events around them. Primary and secondary sources reflect and represent many different perspectives, points of view, attitudes and values. People who create sources are influenced by their gender, age, family and cultural background, education, religion, values, political beliefs, life experiences and the time in which they live. It is the historian's job to make sure that they consider a range of perspectives in their investigations, allowing more voices to be heard and a more complete picture to be formed. To identify and analyse different perspectives, you need to understand the social, cultural and emotional contexts and factors that shaped people's lives and actions in the past.

Follow these steps when practising this skill:

Step 1 Identify a historical issue around which there may be different opinions or interpretations.

Step 2 List the various groups and/or people who may have been involved in or affected by this issue.

Step 3 Identify the role or position of these groups/people in society.

Step 4 Locate primary sources that provide evidence about the points of view of these groups/people.

Step 5 Analyse each source, using the following questions:

- Why was the source written or produced?
- Who was the intended audience of the source? Was it meant for one person's eyes, or for the public? How does that affect the source?
- What was the author's message or argument? What ideas were they trying to get across? Is the message explicit (obvious), or are there implicit (subtle) messages as well? What can the author's choice of words tell you? What about the silences – what does the author choose *not* to talk about?
- How does the author try to get the message across? Do they give a detached, balanced account, or is it biased for or against the issue?
- Compared to what we face today, what relevant circumstances and experiences were different for the author of the source in the past? (Some examples might include religion, economy, family life, technology, etc.) How do you think these factors and experiences influenced their thoughts and actions?

For more information on this skill, refer to page 240 of `The history toolkit'.

Practise the skill

1 Read Sources 17 and 18 and follow the steps above to **identify** and **analyse** the perspectives of A.O. Neville and Bill Simon. Pay particular attention to the questions provided in step 5 when analysing both of the sources.

Extend your understanding

1 Look again at your list of groups/people involved in or affected by the practice of forcibly removing First Nations children from their families and communities. Of these groups and individuals, whose perspectives are *not* represented in Sources 17 and 18?

2 **Investigate** to locate additional primary source documents that help to illustrate the perspectives of these other groups or individuals. Identify and analyse these perspectives, using the steps provided.

9.15 The US civil rights movement

Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

- describe key events in the movement for civil rights for Black Americans.

segregation
in US history, the policy of separating Black American people from white people

During the 1960s, the struggle for civil rights for Black Americans gained worldwide attention. A series of events and significant individuals in the US civil rights movement would go on to inspire and influence civil rights campaigners in Australia.

During World War II, considerable numbers of Black Americans left the former slave-owning states in the south to work in war industries in California, Michigan and Pennsylvania. These states offered a better quality of life and more equality than the southern states. After the war, in 1948, **segregation** in the US army was officially abolished. Many Black American men had served in the war and many had died for their country. It was felt that they could no longer be denied their rightful place in their country and armed services.

In the southern states, segregation had been legally enforced since the American Civil War ended in 1865. Following the action taken in the US army, the US Supreme Court began to rule against segregation generally. In 1954, the Supreme Court ruled that segregation in US schools was unconstitutional – meaning that it was illegal under US law. This ruling became famous as the *Brown vs The Board of Education* ruling. However, state governments, particularly in the south, resisted federal intervention.

Source 1 A separate waiting area for Black Americans at a bus station in the United States

Source 2 Martin Luther King Jr. waves to the crowd gathered for the March on Washington in support of civil rights for Black Americans, 1963.

The case of Emmett Till

In August 1955, a 14-year-old Black American boy called Emmett Till was murdered near the town of Money in Mississippi. He had been brutally beaten and shot after being accused of flirting with a white woman. His body was dumped in the Tallahatchie River. Before the funeral in his home city of Chicago, his mother displayed his body in an open casket. She wanted the world to see the brutality of his murder. The two white men accused of his murder were found not guilty in a trial conducted before an all-white jury in Mississippi in September 1955. They later admitted to the murder in a 1956 magazine interview, knowing they could not be tried twice for the same crime.

The death of Emmett Till became a major turning point for the civil rights movement. The momentum generated by the case led to the 1957 *Civil Rights Act*. This Act aimed to ensure that all Black Americans could exercise their right to vote. It provided resources for ongoing monitoring of civil rights abuses, and it also called for a government report on race relations.

The Emmett Till case went on to become a symbol for the civil rights movement across the United States. Authors used the case in many books to challenge public racism, and in 1962 the famous musician Bob Dylan recorded a song called 'The Death of Emmett Till'.

Emmett Till's death was a tragedy that inspired thousands to change US society.

Bus boycott and segregation

At roughly the same time, Black Americans across the country began to assert their demands for equality in a number of different ways. In 1955, Rosa Parks was arrested in Montgomery, Alabama, after refusing to give up her seat at the front of a bus for a white passenger. The arrest resulted in a boycott of the Montgomery bus service by Black American passengers, beginning in December 1955. One year later, the Montgomery Bus Boycott ended when the City of Montgomery was ordered by the US Supreme Court to stop segregating black and white passengers on its bus services. This victory inspired further efforts to end segregation in the United States.

Source 3 Emmett Till's mother at his funeral in 1955

Source 4 Rosa Parks is fingerprinted following her arrest.

Analyse this!
The Little Rock Nine

Source 5 The Little Rock Nine entering Little Rock Central High School under the protection of the US army, 1957

In 1957, nine Black American students tried to enrol in the all-white Little Rock Central High School in the State of Arkansas. Despite the 1954 *Brown vs The Board of Education* Supreme Court ruling banning segregation of black and white children in schools, the Arkansas governor used armed officers to prevent the nine students from entering the school. The students also had to face a white crowd threatening to hang them. President Dwight D. Eisenhower intervened, sending in the US army to allow the students to enter the high school they were legally entitled to attend (see Source 5).

President John F. Kennedy's inaugural address in 1961 inspired many Black Americans. Among these was Mississippi student James Meredith, who exercised his democratic right by attempting to enrol in the Oxford Campus of the University of Mississippi. This action prompted riots at the campus and threats from the **Ku Klux Klan**.

Ku Klux Klan
a secret society of white supremacists originally formed in the southern states of the United States after the American Civil War to protest against the granting of civil rights to freed Black slaves; the group uses violence and acts of intimidation to achieve its goals

The Ku Klux Klan is a group of white Protestants who have historically been opposed to rights for people of colour, Catholics, Jews and immigrants. The organisation has been responsible for many hate crimes. Eventually, Kennedy was forced to bring in the US Marshals and the Mississippi National Guard to control the crowd. Two people were killed and hundreds of soldiers and protesters were injured. Despite these violent protests, Meredith was eventually enrolled.

The Freedom Riders

The US Freedom Riders were activists who wanted to test the effect of the US Supreme Court's decision to end racial discrimination on public transport. The first group of Freedom Riders (seven Black Americans and six white Americans) boarded public buses from Washington DC to the southern states of Virginia, North and South Carolina, Georgia, Alabama, Mississippi and Louisiana in 1961. The riders' strategy was a simple one. They held **sit-ins**. They would sit side by side, Black and white, and at least one Black rider would sit in the front section, previously reserved for 'white' passengers. They ate in restaurants together, and they ignored segregation signs when using toilets and drinking fountains. These were forms of **passive resistance**.

sit-ins
a form of non-violent protest where demonstrators occupy a place open to the public, such as a racially segregated lunch counter or bus station, and then refuse to leave

passive resistance
non-violent opposition to authority, including a refusal to cooperate with laws

The Freedom Riders' journeys were interrupted by frequent mob attacks – usually organised by the Ku Klux Klan – and arrests by southern law enforcement officers on various charges. Once in jail, the riders would sing freedom songs as a continued protest and, in some cases, they were released simply because the police could not stand the singing. When the county jails were full, a number of riders were transferred to the Mississippi State Penitentiary, put into maximum-security units and denied many basic rights.

The Freedom Riders also faced difficulty seeking medical treatment after their frequent beatings by the mobs and law enforcement officers. This racist brutality was one of the reasons that many other riders joined the campaign over the course of the summer of 1961. After pressure from Dr Martin Luther King Jr. and other leading activists, Attorney General Robert Kennedy intervened. In September 1961, he insisted that states comply with federal **desegregation** laws.

desegregation the elimination of segregation

These victories resulted largely from the courage of ordinary US citizens, brave enough to participate in the civil rights struggle. They also helped to make leaders such as Martin Luther King Jr. household names. King went on to be acknowledged as the main leader of the US civil rights movement.

In 1963, King led the March on Washington, calling for civil and economic rights for Black Americans. It was attended by 250 000 people, many of whom demanded an end to segregation. At this march, King redefined the civil rights movement. While the US Supreme Court had delivered a legal plan for desegregation, King's famous 'I have a dream' speech was a moral plan for change.

After Kennedy's assassination in November 1963, the new President Lyndon B. Johnson accepted the challenge that King's success had created. On 2 July 1964, the US Congress (parliament) enacted the *Civil Rights Act*, which outlawed discrimination based on race or gender. It was landmark legislation, but the challenge of changing racist attitudes among members of the general public still remained.

Source 6 Freedom Riders sitting on board an interstate bus escorted by Mississippi National Guardsmen (a reserve military force of the US army)

9.15 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 **State** when the *Civil Rights Act* was passed by the US Congress. What did it change?

Comprehend

2 **Summarise** the connection between *Brown vs The Board of Education* and the Little Rock Nine.

3 **Describe** what is meant by 'passive resistance'. Use examples from the Freedom Riders.

4 **Explain** the significance of *Brown vs The Board of Education*.

Apply

5 Many Black Americans were murdered during the civil rights movement, but Emmett Till's death is often spoken about as being a spark for change. Explain what his death inspired and **propose** reasons why you think this was the case.

6 In the context of the US civil rights movement, many people argue that 'while laws changed, social attitudes did not'. To what extent do you agree with this? A lot (strongly), a little bit (somewhat) or not at all? Write a short paragraph to **justify** your position.

7 **Investigate** Rosa Parks and the Montgomery Bus Boycott. Create a short presentation that provides information about her life, her personal characteristics and the contribution she made to the US civil rights movement.

8 Write a 150-word diary entry from the point of view of one of the Little Rock Nine students on their first day at Little Rock Central High School. In your entry, **discuss** how the student is feeling.

9.16 Australia's civil rights movement

Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» describe significant events in Australia's civil rights movement.

life expectancy the average number of years a person in an area of population can expect to live from the year in which they were born

land rights the rights and interests in land and the resources in the land of First Nations peoples; also refers to the struggle for those rights

Australia's Aboriginal rights leaders in the 1960s inherited a movement that had evolved from the Day of Mourning and Protest a generation before (see page 365). The success of the US civil rights movement also inspired many non-Indigenous Australians to fight for greater equality for First Nations peoples. By the 1960s, First Nations peoples had a **life expectancy** almost 20 years less than non-Indigenous Australians.

Some legislative changes around this time included:

- In 1959, the government agreed to provide welfare payments to First Nations peoples under the *Social Services Act*, though the Act required that these payments be paid to a third party.
- In 1962, all First Nations peoples were given the right to vote in federal elections.
- In 1968, First Nations peoples achieved equal pay with other Australians.

Unfortunately, the equal pay legislation had some unintended consequences. Until that time, most Aboriginal workers had only been receiving half the minimum wage paid to white Australians. In some areas, particularly in farming communities, some Aboriginal workers were sacked because their bosses refused to pay the higher wages or could not afford them.

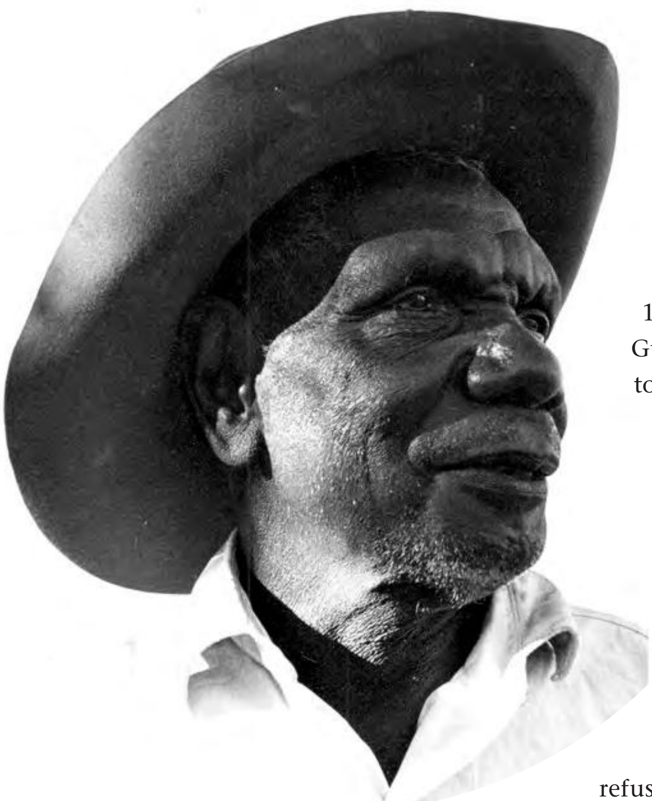
Despite these legislative changes, racist attitudes towards First Nations peoples were still prominent in society. As in the United States, the small steps of some brave individuals created a momentum for genuine change.

The Wave Hill Walk-off

One of the most significant turning points in the struggle for Aboriginal rights was the Wave Hill Walk-off (strike) on 23 August 1966. The walk-off at Wave Hill Station, which was on traditional Gurindji land, was in response to the British Vestey Company's refusal to pay the Gurindji farm workers their wages of $25 per week.

The walk-off highlighted the entrenched discrimination that existed in Australian society. But it also brought attention to the issue that would become central to Aboriginal claims for the next two generations: **land rights**.

Vincent Lingiari, who entered public life dramatically when he led the Gurindji people in the Wave Hill Walk-off, quickly ensured that this protest had a more fundamental goal – returning traditional lands. Lingiari and other Gurindji leaders petitioned the Governor-General in 1967, arguing that morally the land was theirs and should be returned to them. This claim was refused by the Governor-General.



Source 7 Vincent Lingiari

In 1971, a song called 'The Gurindji Blues' was written and released by white folk artist Ted Egan. It was created in response to the Wave Hill Walk-off. The lyrics of the song supported the fight for acceptance of the Gurindji people. It features the voice of Aboriginal leader Galarrwuy Yunupingu and is introduced by Lingiari.

Although the song received very little radio play due to racist attitudes of the time, it continued the battle for recognition of the rights of the Gurindji peoples.

The walk-off finally ended in 1973, and in 1975 one of the decisive moments in Aboriginal Australian history took place. Prime Minister Gough Whitlam symbolically poured earth into Lingiari's hand as he handed over 3300 square kilometres of land to the Gurindji peoples.

The federal *Aboriginal Land Rights (Northern Territory) Act 1976* granted the Gurindji and other Aboriginal groups in the Northern Territory title to some of their traditional lands. For the first time, a specific group of First Nations peoples had recognition of their connection to their land.

The story of the Wave Hill struggle has become a part of Australian popular culture. Bundjalung and Lamalama singer Kev Carmody and non-Indigenous singer Paul Kelly wrote the song 'From Little Things Big Things Grow' as a tribute to Lingiari's pioneering campaign.

Source 8 Gough Whitlam and Aboriginal Elders Victor Lingiari (son of Vincent Lingiari, left) and Mick Rangiari (right) mark the thirtieth anniversary of the Wave Hill Walk-off at Wave Hill mob's first campsite on the banks of the Victoria River, near Kalkarindji in the Northern Territory, 23 August 1996.

The Australian Freedom Riders

The Australian Freedom Riders who toured regional New South Wales in early 1965 had a similar agenda to their US Freedom Rider comrades (see page 372). The tour began as a fact-finding mission by a group officially known as Student Action for Aborigines, and ended as a genuine protest against segregation across Australia. The students were mostly non-Indigenous and had been involved in organised protests in Sydney.

The Freedom Riders were led by a man called Charles Perkins, who would become the first Aboriginal man to graduate from an Australian university. Perkins modelled the Australian rides on the 1961 US Freedom Rides. He took a bus into parts of rural New South Wales where racist attitudes were most prominent. The Australian Freedom Riders left Sydney on 12 February 1965, and headed initially for Wellington and Gulargambone (see Source 9).

Enlarged map
New South Wales:
The route taken by the
Australian Freedom Riders

NEW SOUTH WALES: THE ROUTE TAKEN BY THE AUSTRALIAN FREEDOM RIDERS

Source 9 Source: Oxford University Press

Source 10 Freedom Riders protesting outside the RSL Club in Walgett; the word 'Tobruk' in one sign refers to the Siege of Tobruk in World War II, where Aboriginal Australians fought bravely for their country

Walgett and Moree

In Walgett, Aboriginal people were banned from entering the town's Returned and Services League (RSL) Club. This 'home' of the ANZAC spirit was a symbolic target for the Freedom Riders who protested outside the club (see Source 10). The actions of the Freedom Riders angered some in the town, and their bus was run off the road as they left.

In Moree, Aboriginal peoples were banned from swimming in the council swimming pool. The Freedom Riders staged protests at the Town Hall and the local swimming pool, ensuring that Aboriginal children could enter the swimming pool alongside their non-Indigenous peers. Again, the Freedom Riders were attacked. Up to 500 locals forced them to leave town.

By this stage, the Freedom Riders were being followed closely by journalists (including television reporters), and as a result their protests were known nationwide.

referendum
the method for changing the wording of the Australian Constitution; it requires a proposal for change to be approved by the Australian people in a compulsory public vote

While the Australian Freedom Riders did not stop racist actions, they highlighted the practices to millions of urban Australians who were not aware that these types of discrimination were common in many Australian country towns. The media coverage they attracted helped develop a movement for further change. Australians moved towards a **referendum** to include Aboriginal people in the census and to enable the Commonwealth to deliver direct services to Aboriginal people. Thus the media played an important role in the Aboriginal rights campaign.

Source 11 Campaigning for 'Yes' in the 1967 referendum

The 1967 referendum

In 1967, the Liberal government of Harold Holt had rejected the land rights claim of the Gurindji people at Wave Hill in the Northern Territory. However, recognising that there were inequalities to address, Holt called a referendum seeking authority to count First Nations people in the Australian census that same year. The change would also allow the federal government to legislate for First Nations peoples, rather than leaving this to different state governments. All major political parties supported the proposal.

As with all referendums, campaigns were organised and leaders were mobilised to explain the reasons for and against change (see Source 11). By 1967, 87 per cent of households owned a television, so, in addition to the traditional poster and newspaper campaigns of previous referendums, voters could actually watch the debate take place on their televisions.

During the lead-up to the referendum, both major political parties publicly endorsed the 'Yes' case and the Federal Council for the Advancement of Aborigines and Torres Strait Islanders (FCAATSI) arranged a number of public actions in Canberra and the state capital cities to promote the cause. The churches were also big supporters.

One of the main issues that led to people supporting the referendum was the discrepancies that were created by having different state laws. For example, First Nations Australians who were acting within the law in New South Wales could be arrested for doing exactly the same thing in Queensland. Others voted 'Yes' because there was a view that resources for First Nations people, including social services, would be more readily available if they were delivered by the Commonwealth. Many people simply thought it was fair that First Nations peoples be counted as human beings in the Commonwealth of Australia.

Contrary to popular belief, this referendum did not 'give Aboriginal people the vote'. That right had already been granted in all states by an Act of Parliament in 1962. In fact, between 8000 and 10000 Aboriginal people voted in the 1967 referendum.

The referendum was the most successful ever passed, with more than 90 per cent of Australians agreeing to the proposal (see Source 12). (However, the 'Yes' vote was closer to 80 per cent in Western Australia and far lower in some rural areas.) In Australian political history, this was an extraordinary result. Between 1901 and 2011 there have been 44 referendums, of which only eight have been carried.

Many First Nations leaders today, however, question the success of the referendum in changing attitudes. Mick Dodson, a leader and activist who is a member of the Yawuru people of north-west Australia, expressed concerns that when **native title** was being debated in federal parliament in the late 1990s, few First Nations leaders were even consulted – even after 30 years of public land rights campaigns.

native title
the recognition by Australian law that some First Nations peoples have rights and interests to the land that come from their traditional laws and customs

Source 12 Referendum results by state

State	Yes		No		Informal (invalid) votes
	Votes	Percentage	Votes	Percentage	
New South Wales	1 949 036	91.46	182 010	8.54	3 461
Victoria	1 525 026	94.68	85 611	5.32	19 957
Queensland	748 612	89.21	85 611	10.79	9 529
South Australia	473 440	86.26	75 383	13.74	12 021
Western Australia	319 823	80.95	75 282	19.05	10 561
Tasmania	167 176	90.21	18 134	9.79	3 935
Total for Commonwealth	**5 163 113**	**90.77**	**527 007**	**9.23**	**91 464**

Graph it!
The 1967 referendum results by state

9.16 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 **Name** the traditional owners of the land on which the Wave Hill Station stood.

Comprehend

2 Which prime minister returned land to its traditional owners at the end of the Wave Hill Walk-off? **Describe** the symbolism of his gesture.

3 Who led the Australian Freedom Rides in 1965? **Summarise** the aim of the Australian Freedom Riders.

4 **Explain** what was and what wasn't achieved by the 1967 referendum.

Apply

5 **Investigate** the lyrics to 'From Little Things Big Things Grow' by Kev Carmody and Paul Kelly, and 'Gurindji Blues' by Ted Egan featuring Galarrwuy Yunupingu. Compare the context and messages of the two songs.

6 Write a diary entry from the point of view of one of the students on the Freedom Rides of 1965. Make sure you describe:
- a your motivation for joining the Freedom Riders
- b what you hoped the Freedom Riders might achieve
- c some of your key experiences; for example, at Moree.

9.17 Land rights: a continuing struggle

Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» summarise the history of land rights, including the impact of events such as the Tent Embassy and the *Mabo* and *Wik* decisions.

The Aboriginal struggle for land rights has a long and important history in Australia. Throughout the nineteenth century, the sites of British colonisation and settlement continued to expand onto Aboriginal land almost without restriction. The concept of *Terra Nullius* established at the time of British colonisation – and reinforced by the proclamation of Sir Richard Bourke, Governor of New South Wales, in 1835 – ensured that there would be no recognition of Aboriginal rights to land. Early farmers leased large amounts of land from the Crown (the British Government) and white occupation of the land equated to ownership.

However, there is some evidence that this situation was contested from time to time. From the 1840s onwards, the British wanted the Australian colonies to give formal recognition to native title and to grant rights for Aboriginal peoples to share rural lands. Farmers and their allies rejected this. In the 1870s, Aboriginal groups in parts of New South Wales petitioned unsuccessfully for their right to own farming land.

The challenges faced by First Nations peoples were immense, but the 1970s offered some hope for activists. The Whitlam government was elected in 1972 and announced **self-determination** as the framework for Aboriginal Affairs policies, introducing the idea that Aboriginal people were best placed to determine what happened to them and their lands.

self-determination
the right of the people in a particular place to choose the form of government they will put in place and the course of action they will take

embassy
a group of people who represent their country in a foreign land; also refers to the building where these people are based

In 1976, after Whitlam had left office, Malcolm Fraser's government passed the *Aboriginal Land Rights Act*, which officially granted land title to the Gurindji people and other Aboriginal groups in the Northern Territory. This represented the beginning of a powerful shift in the Aboriginal rights movement.

While these power shifts provided some hope to Aboriginal peoples, leaders knew they still had a long way to go. For example, state governments continued to grant licences to mining companies without consulting traditional land owners, resulting in land being devastated by the effects of mining. The civil rights movement and land rights campaigns of the 1960s and 1970s laid the basis for great change, but many issues remained unresolved.

Source 13 The Tent Embassy, 1972

Tent Embassy

Before Whitlam's election, the Aboriginal Tent **Embassy** had been established on the lawn in front of the Australian Parliament in 1972 as a peaceful protest site (see Source 13). It was called an 'embassy' because as they had no rights in their land, the Aboriginal protesters thought of themselves as aliens – and as aliens, they would need their own embassy.

The embassy was erected in response to the slow progress being made on Aboriginal land rights. While the 1967 referendum had delivered administrative responsibility for First Nations peoples to the Commonwealth, many felt that there still needed to be an acknowledgment of traditional ownership.

Key figures of the embassy, including Roberta (Bobbi) Sykes (an Australian activist and poet), Gary Foley (a Gumbainggir activist) and Michael Anderson (an Euahlayi leader) established the embassy in the middle of the night on Australia Day in 1972. The embassy sought to draw attention to wrongs carried out against First Nations peoples and to air their grievances. One of its placards linked it to land rights, reading: 'White Australia you are living on stolen land.'

As well as highlighting significant symbolic goals, the embassy leaders had a list of practical demands that they wanted to negotiate. These included:

- legal and title rights to land currently being mined
- the preservation of all sacred sites
- compensation for lands not returnable – a $6 billion down payment plus an annual percentage of gross national income.

reconciliation
a term used to refer to the bringing together of Aboriginal and Torres Strait Islanders and non-Indigenous Australians; reconciliation is a process that involves working to overcome past divisions and address inequalities between Aboriginal and Torres Strait Islanders and non-Indigenous Australians

The demands were rejected and the police removed the tents and arrested a number of activists. Over the next five years, the embassy was erected, demolished and re-erected several times, until Charles Perkins negotiated its temporary removal on the promise of action on land rights. In that time, a number of commitments by the Commonwealth led many to believe that progress was being made. Whitlam established a significant bureaucracy to support Aboriginal welfare and land rights claims, and Fraser passed the *Aboriginal Land Rights Act 1976*.

The Tent Embassy was re-established on the grounds of Old Parliament House in 1992, where it continues to remind the nation of the ongoing issues relating to **reconciliation**.

Source 14 The Tent Embassy was re-established in 1992 on the twentieth anniversary of its founding. It remains in place today.

Mabo decision and *Native Title Act*

In June 1992, a group of Torres Strait Islander people led by activist Eddie Mabo won a historic land rights case in the High Court of Australia. The judgment meant that the Torres Strait Islander peoples had a right to their land because they had been the original owners before European settlement. The court ruled that native title may apply to all claims to land that had not been sold or given away; in other words, **Crown land**. The ruling stated that:

Crown land
land belonging to the monarch or to the state in a self-governing country that is part of the British Commonwealth

> there may be other areas of Australia where an Aboriginal people maintaining their identity and their customs are entitled to enjoy their native title.

In December 1993, the federal government passed the *Native Title Act* to place the *Mabo* decision in piece of formal legislation. The *Native Title Act* also addressed some concerns of non-Indigenous Australians who felt their ownership of property could be challenged as a result – it confirmed land ownership for those who had purchased property. It also declared that future native title claimants must prove that First Nations peoples had an unbroken link with the land in question. The federal government established a National Native Title Tribunal and developed a research process that was necessary before a native title application could be made. This was done to reassure groups such as landowners and miners who feared that their titles or claims might be taken from them.

Source 15 Bethel, Bonita and Maleta Mabo celebrate the 1992 *Mabo* decision

KEY CONCEPT Significance

Eddie Mabo

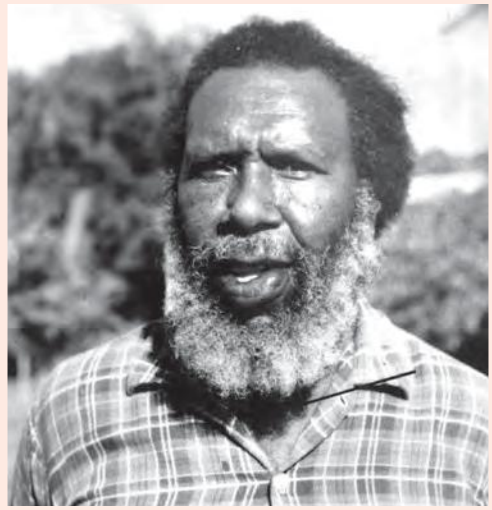
Eddie Koiki Mabo was a Meriam man born in 1936 on Mer (known as Murray Island) in the Torres Strait. His mother died shortly after his birth and he was adopted by his mother's brother, Benny Mabo, and his wife Maiga.

Mabo learnt from a young age that he would inherit Benny's land and he knew exactly where the boundaries were by looking at land features, trees and rocks. However, after breaking Mer Island law as a teenager, he was exiled and it was many years before he returned to his land.

On the mainland, he worked on pearling boats and on the railways. He became involved in the trade union movement and began speaking out for First Nations peoples. In 1959 he married Bonita Neehow, and few years later he secured a job as a gardener at James Cook University in Townsville, where he began to read and attend lectures.

When a land rights conference was held at James Cook University in 1981, Mabo made an important speech about his ownership of land on Mer. He was immediately encouraged by a lawyer at the conference to test his ownership claims in the courts. When he told the people of Mer they were very supportive and a 10-year legal battle began, with Mabo as the leader. In particular, the peoples of Mer were challenging the legal concept of *Terra Nullius*.

The case was known as *Mabo v Queensland* and, in the course of proceedings, officials of the Queensland Supreme Court visited Mer to clarify details of Mabo's claim. He was able to show the judges (and the media) exactly where his land started and finished.



Source 16 Eddie Mabo

The legal battle took a toll on Mabo's health. In 1991, he became ill and in January 1992 he died of cancer. The High Court of Australia ruled in favour of Mabo five months later. The government refused to pay for Mabo's widow, Bonita, to attend the court case, so she had to drive from Townsville to Canberra. She was delayed and missed the final ruling.

The *Mabo* decision was the most important legal judgment for First Nations peoples in the twentieth century.

For more information on this key concept, refer to page 243 of 'The history toolkit'.

Wik decision

In 1996, the question of native title on pastoral leases was raised and investigated in the High Court of Australia in the *Wik* case. Pastoral leases are unique to Australia. They allow Crown land to be used by farmers and graziers, but do not grant them sole tenure. As these leases account for 42 per cent of the Australian land mass, it was a major issue in the land rights campaigns.

The Wik people of Cape York, Far North Queensland, argued in court that native title could exist alongside a current or defunct pastoral lease. The court agreed, but stressed that where pastoralists' rights and the rights of First Nations peoples were in conflict, the rights of the pastoralists would prevail. The court pointed out that pastoralists had the exclusive right to pasture, but not exclusive rights to the possession of land.

Key skill worksheet
Historical perspectives & interpretations: Sequencing the struggle for land rights

Because of criticism and concern expressed by pastoralists and conservative leaders, in 1997 the Howard government introduced the *Native Title Amendment Act*. This legislation, which took effect in 1998, effectively extinguished native title – not only on pastoral land, but also on most other Crown land.

The United Nations Committee on the Elimination of Racial Discrimination demanded that Australia explain its stance. Australia was the first Western nation to have to explain its human rights position to this committee.

Quiz me!
A quick quiz on the continuing struggle for land rights

Jabiru returned to Mirarr traditional owners

In 1982 the Ranger uranium mine was established in the town of Jabiru, which is located in Kakadu National Park. Since then, the traditional owners – the Mirarr peoples – have fought for the mine's closure. Their application for native title was lodged in the Federal Court on 1 September 1997 and, on 26 June 2021, the land was returned to the Mirarr peoples, who intend to rehabilitate the mine site and turn the township into a vibrant hub for tourism and culture.

Source 17 Jabiru – 'This land was left to us by our ancestors and now it comes back to us again,' said senior traditional owner Yvonne Margarula on 26 June 2021.

9.17 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 In your own words, **define** the term 'self-determination'.

2 **State** when and where the Aboriginal Tent Embassy was set up, and what its purpose was.

Comprehend

3 Describe the location of Eddie Mabo's traditional land, and **explain** how his knowledge of this land was relevant in *Mabo v Queensland*.

4 **Explain** what the *Aboriginal Land Rights Act* meant for First Nations peoples.

5 **Summarise** the High Court's ruling in the *Wik* decision, and its significance.

Apply

6 The *Mabo* decision is one of the most significant moments in Australian history. **Evaluate** the significance of the *Mabo* decision, using the 5Rs of historical significance to structure your response (see page 243 of 'The history toolkit').

7 Research the Aboriginal flag and the Torres Strait Islander flag and their history. **Create** a brief presentation for the class. Be sure to explain the origins of the flags, the symbolism in the designs, and any significant individuals who had a role in the development of the flags, up to their final acceptance as flags of Australia.

9.18 Towards reconciliation

Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» explain why the reconciliation of First Nations Australians and other Australians is an ongoing process.

The concept of reconciliation is best understood as a continuing process and not a single event. It is the way in which First Nations and non-Indigenous Australians can come together and share common goals as unified Australians. The acceptance of the 1967 referendum, a bipartisan commitment to land rights in the mid-1970s and the passage of the *Aboriginal Land Rights Act 1976* saw the Gurundji people achieve land recognition. These events were seen as steps towards genuine reconciliation.

These small successes paved the way for more organised and consistent efforts to acknowledge the wrongs committed by governments and individuals against First Nations peoples in the past.

ATSIC and Aboriginal rights movements

The Hawke government established the Aboriginal and Torres Strait Islander Commission (ATSIC) in March 1990. ATSIC was an elected body selected by First Nations people. It was designed to be an organisation through which all First Nations peoples could be formally involved in government processes. It was also seen as a first step towards self-determination – that is, First Nations people taking control of their own affairs.

executive
relating to or having the power to put plans or actions into effect

ATSIC was to have both representative and **executive** roles, with 35 regional offices and a budget. The Hawke government saw it as an important vehicle for managing the affairs of First Nations people.

The *Aboriginal and Torres Strait Islander Commission Act 1989* was passed in early November. Its objectives were designed to ensure full participation by First Nations peoples in decision making:

Quiz me!
A quick quiz on the move towards reconciliation

- to ensure maximum participation of First Nations peoples in government policy formulation and implementation
- to promote self-management and self-sufficiency among First Nations peoples
- to further First Nations peoples' economic, social and cultural development
- to ensure coordination of Commonwealth, state, territory and local government policy affecting First Nations people.

By the early 2000s, however, criticism was growing in regard to what was seen as a lack of achievements by ATSIC for First Nations communities. Some felt that there were problems due to the structure of ATSIC, and that the Western democratic process did not sit easily with traditional First Nations values, where family group relationships are most important. Lowitja O'Donoghue, the first chairperson of ATSIC, described the problems this way:

> You elect your own mob [and they] vote for funding for their own mob rather than those who have the greater need … What I've always said is, 'We're dealing here with taxpayers' money. This is a white fella organisation, not a black fella one. And so we've got to operate in a different way.' That's the dilemma.

Think, pair, share *

- Think about the dilemma Lowitja O'Donoghue identified with the way ATSIC was run.
- Discuss your ideas with a partner.
- Share your thoughts with the class.

ATSIC was also constrained in regard to its funding. In 2003–04, it only received 46 per cent of the total budgeted Commonwealth expenditure for Aboriginal Affairs. ATSIC was not given responsibility for the areas of health care, social security or education. This severely limited what it could achieve.

In its last few years, the majority of ATSIC's budget was spent on economic development programs, including the Community Development Employment Project (CDEP) scheme. Supporters saw this as providing genuine work for young First Nations people who chose to live in traditional communities. Others were concerned that it could never deliver the skills training and economic benefits that it set out to provide.

Following continued concerns over mismanagement and funding discrepancies, ATSIC was abolished in 2004 by the Howard government. The CDEP continued to operate, although a number of CDEP programs were abolished in 2007 as part of the Howard government's Northern Territory National Emergency Response (see page 390). This was a reflection of the Howard government's reluctance to recognise and respect First Nations people.

Source 18 Aboriginal people protesting against the abolition of ATSIC

Lowitja O'Donoghue

Lowitja O'Donoghue was born in 1932 in Indulkana, South Australia. She was taken away from her mother, a Pitjantjatjara woman, at the age of two and did not see her again for 33 years. She never knew her father, who was white and of Irish descent.

O'Donoghue grew up in the Colebrook Home in Quorn, South Australia, far away from her community. After a long struggle, she won admission to the nursing school at the Royal Adelaide Hospital in 1954, where she was the first Aboriginal Australian to qualify. After working as a nurse for several years, she became a public servant in Aboriginal Affairs in 1962 – first in South Australia and then for the Commonwealth.

Since then, she has been involved in various senior positions, helping to give a voice to the Aboriginal people of Australia. She was the founding chairperson of ATSIC and co-chairperson of the Australian Citizens' Parliament.

In 1976, O'Donoghue became the first Aboriginal woman to receive the Order of Australia. She became a Commander of the Order of the British Empire in 1983, and in 1984, she was named Australian of the Year. In 1992, at the launch of the United Nations International Year for the World's Indigenous People, O'Donoghue became the first Australian Aboriginal person to address the United Nations General Assembly. Since then, she has been further honoured by awards of the Companion of the Order of Australia in 1999 and the Papal Award (Dame of the Order of St Gregory) in 2005.

O'Donoghue stood beside Prime Minister Kevin Rudd as he made the nation's apology to the Stolen Generations on National Sorry Day, 13 February 2008.

For more information on this key concept, see page 243 of 'The history toolkit'.

KEY CONCEPT
Significance

Source 19 Lowitja O'Donoghue

9.18 Check your learning

Comprehend

1. **Summarise** the main objectives of the *Aboriginal and Torres Strait Islander Commission Act 1989*.
2. **Describe** Lowitja O'Donoghue's main achievements.
3. **Explain** what reconciliation means in an Australian political sense. To what extent is this definition limited?
4. In a short paragraph, **summarise** the role of ATSIC. Use the 5Ws (who, what, when, where, why) to structure your response.

Analyse

5. Reflect on the critique of ATSIC that began in the early 2000s. **Analyse** what other factors were responsible for limiting ATSIC's achievements. What could the government have done to be more supportive?

Apply

6. **Propose** why Kevin Rudd asked Lowitja O'Donoghue to stand next to him at the National Sorry Day ceremony.

9.19 Two speeches, two perspectives

Learning intentions

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

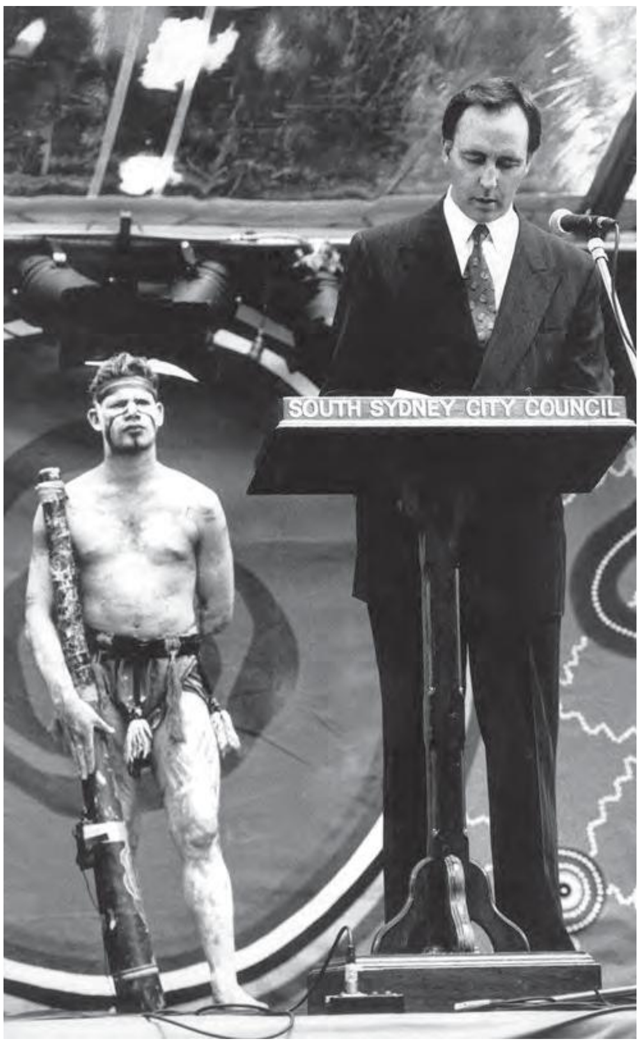
- explain the significance of the Redfern Park speech
- compare the perspectives of two prime ministers on Reconciliation.

Weblink
Redfern Park speech

Civil rights remains a divisive and contentious issue for some people. This division and the different positions taken by political parties in Australia over the years are clearly reflected in two major speeches made by two different prime ministers in Australia during the 1990s.

The 'Redfern Park' speech

In December 1992, six months after the *Mabo* decision (see page 379), Prime Minister Paul Keating gave a speech to launch the United Nations International Year of the World's Indigenous People. Keating spoke to a mainly Aboriginal audience in the Sydney suburb of Redfern (see Source 20). His speech was written by one of Keating's main speechwriters, Don Watson. Known as the 'Redfern Park' speech, it is one of the most significant delivered by an Australian prime minister on issues related to First Nations peoples.



Source 20 Paul Keating giving his 'Redfern Park' speech, December 1992

The speech was historic because it was the first time an Australian prime minister had publicly acknowledged the injustices First Nations peoples had experienced because of past policies. It challenged non-Indigenous Australians to imagine what it would have been like if they had experienced such wrongs. It kept the reconciliation debate alive by keeping the issue in the public eye.

Perhaps the most powerful moment of the speech was when Keating said:

> [T]he starting point might be to recognise that the problem starts with us non-Aboriginal Australians. It begins, I think, with that act of recognition. Recognition that it was we who did the dispossessing. We took the traditional lands and smashed the traditional way of life. We brought the diseases. The alcohol. We committed the murders. We took the children from their mothers. We practised discrimination and exclusion.

These were words many First Nations peoples never thought they would hear from an Australian prime minister.

It was thought the 'Redfern Park' speech heralded a major breakthrough on the path to reconciliation by honestly recognising the injustices of Australia's past.

In 2007, Radio National listeners voted the 'Redfern Park' speech as the third most unforgettable speech in history, behind Martin Luther King Jr.'s 'I have a dream' and Jesus' 'Sermon on the Mount'.

Rejection of an official apology

During his term as prime minister, John Howard rejected the idea that an official apology to First Nations peoples was needed, and made it clear in 1997 that none would be made for the past actions of non-Indigenous people or to groups such as the Stolen Generations.

Howard and other conservative political and social leaders argued that previous generations were responsible for the experience of Australia's First Nations peoples. An apology was therefore not necessary from members of today's society and would place 'blame' on those who were not responsible. They also argued that the intent of those who initiated the actions or events was good, even if the result was damaging.

Source 21 A mural of the Aboriginal flag – the flag is one of the most significant symbols of Aboriginal rights because it is so powerful visually and provides a single banner under which all Aboriginal nations can unite.

Contrary to this view, a groundswell of opinion saw state premiers offering such apologies. Queensland started the process with a parliamentary apology on 26 May 1997. Western Australia followed on 27 May 1997, South Australia on 28 May 1997, the Australian Capital Territory on 17 June 1997, New South Wales on 18 June 1997, Tasmania on 13 August 1997, Victoria on 17 August 1997 and the Northern Territory on 28 October 2001.

The federal government, however, did speak of reconciliation. On 26 August 1999, Howard said that parliament expressed:

> … its deep and sincere regret that Indigenous Australians suffered injustices under the practices of past generations, and for the hurt and trauma that many Indigenous people continue to feel as a consequence of those practices.

The Leader of the Opposition, Kim Beazley, spoke emotively of the need to:

> … unreservedly [apologise] to Indigenous Australians for the injustice they have suffered, and for the hurt and trauma that many Indigenous people continue to suffer as a consequence of this injustice.

See, think, wonder

Look at Source 22.

- What do you see?
- What do you think?
- What do you wonder?

The Australian Reconciliation Convention

In May 1997, Howard gave a speech at the Australian Reconciliation Convention in Melbourne. This was designed to celebrate the 30 years since the famous referendum of 1967. The aim was to achieve reconciliation by 2001.

As prime minister, Howard was to deliver the keynote address. His stance against a formal apology had angered delegates, and when he spoke some turned their backs on him, while others booed (see Source 22).

Source 22 John Howard's speech at the Reconciliation Convention upset some delegates who responded by turning their backs on him.

Howard made his position clear when he stated:

> In facing the realities of the past … we must not join those who would portray Australia's history since 1788 as little more than a disgraceful record of imperialism, exploitation and racism … Australians of this generation should not be required to accept guilt and blame for past actions and policies over which they had no control.

For those who saw such hope in Keating's 'Redfern Park' speech, Howard's approach seemed a step backwards. As prime minister he controlled the political agenda, and Australia had to wait until he lost his seat in the 2007 election to move towards a formal apology to First Nations peoples (see page 388).

Quiz me!
A quick quiz on the speeches by prime ministers Paul Keating and John Howard

Source 23 'Sorry – couldn't be bothered', a political cartoon by Eric Löbbecke, published in *The Australian*, 9 February 2008; Howard refused to attend Prime Minister Kevin Rudd's apology to the Stolen Generations at parliament in 2008.

9.19 Check your learning

Comprehend

1 **Explain** the significance of Paul Keating's 'Redfern Park' speech.

2 Look at Sources 20 and 22. **Explain** how the location and setting of each speech reflect the views of the prime minister of the time. Which do you think is more respectful?

Analyse

3 **Compare** Keating's speech to the one John Howard gave at the Australian Reconciliation Convention. What are the similarities and differences?

4 **Analyse** Howard's statement: 'In facing the realities of the past … we must not join those who would portray Australia's history since 1788 as little more than a disgraceful record of imperialism, exploitation and racism.' Do you think his characterisation of Australia's history is accurate? Explain why or why not.

Apply

5 **Evaluate** Howard's reasoning for not wanting to make an official apology. What are the strengths and weaknesses of his position? What is your overall opinion?

6 Locate the full text of both Keating's 'Redfern Park' speech and Martin Luther King Jr.'s 'I have a dream' speech. **Create** a Venn diagram to identify the similarities and differences between the two.

9.20 The reconciliation movement

Learning intentions

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

- discuss the role of events such as the apology to the Stolen Generations in the reconciliation movement
- identify areas where change is still required in civil rights for First Nations peoples.

Popular support for the Stolen Generations grew significantly around the end of the 1990s. Central to the claims of many Australians was the view that the nation would be strengthened by a formal acknowledgment of past wrongs. This idea was suggested in 1996 by the Governor-General, William Deane, and featured as Recommendation 5 in the *Bringing Them Home* report (see page 361).

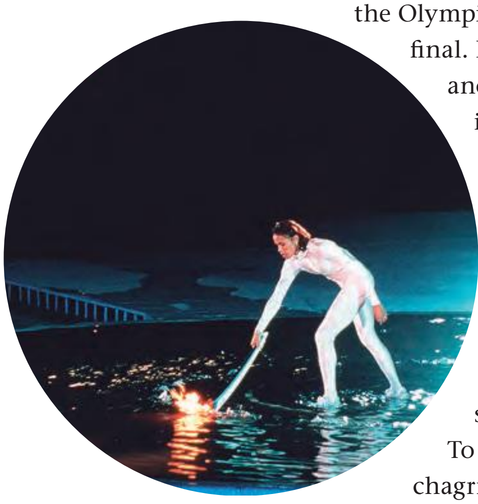
The first National Sorry Day was held on 26 May 1998, to mark the first anniversary of the handing down of the *Bringing Them Home* report. Each year since then, events have been staged to commemorate the findings and consider the government's scorecard on responding to the recommendations in the report. In 2005, the day was temporarily renamed the National Day of Healing for All Australians – a gesture of goodwill from the National Sorry Day Committee, which frequently acknowledged the support given to its movement by a wide range of Australians.

Source 24 A National Sorry Day march in Sydney, 2007

Popular culture and the 2000 Olympics

The reconciliation movement stimulated wide-ranging creative expression, from films such as *Rabbit-Proof Fence* (2002), to songs by Aboriginal artists Archie Roach and Ruby Hunter, and works by performance artists such as the Bangarra Dance Company. Roach's award-winning album *Charcoal Lane* (1990), contained the heartbreaking song 'Took the Children Away'. Roach had been removed from his family as a young child and the honesty of his song-writing introduced a wide audience to the pain and trauma that would surface in the *Bringing Them Home* report.

The 2000 Sydney Olympics also provided a stage for popular support of reconciliation. Cathy Freeman became one of the most popular individuals in Australia when she both lit the Olympic flame at the opening ceremony (see Source 25) and then won the 400-metres final. Her victory lap, where she draped herself in both the Aboriginal and Australian flags, was seen as a decisive moment in the history of reconciliation.



Source 25 Cathy Freeman lights the Olympic flame.

The closing ceremony of the Sydney Olympics provided one further step towards reconciliation. The rock band Midnight Oil performed as part of the ceremony. The band chose to perform its song 'Beds Are Burning', a statement of support for First Nations peoples. To Prime Minister John Howard's chagrin, the band also performed in specially designed 'sorry' suits (see Source 26).

Source 26 Midnight Oil at the closing ceremony of the 2000 Sydney Olympics

The international scene

The 2000s saw significant global interest in the right of Indigenous peoples. In New Zealand, Māori peoples had secured more historic rights than First Nations peoples in Australia, yet problems linked to poverty within the Māori population remained significant throughout the 1990s. The 1994 movie *Once Were Warriors* highlighted the degrading influence of alcohol and violence on poor Māori families. Government efforts saw some gains made, particularly with regard to cultural reconciliation and politics. A Māori Party was formed in 2004 and won five seats at the 2005 election. Māori television began broadcasting in Te Reo (the language of the Māori people) in 2004.

In Canada, formal recognition of First Nations, Inuit and Métis peoples was marked by a Statement of Reconciliation in 1998. In 2008, the Canadian Government established the Truth and Reconciliation Commission to investigate the impacts and consequences of the Indian Residential Schools on Indigenous Canadian children during the twentieth century. These schools had been established to assimilate indigenous children into Euro-Canadian culture.

The United Nations declared 2007 the International Year of Indigenous People. By 2010, most governments around the world had endorsed the United Nations Declaration on the Rights of Indigenous Peoples.

Source 27 Kevin Rudd giving the apology to the Stolen Generations

The apology to the Stolen Generations

In his first week in parliament in 2008, the new prime minister, Kevin Rudd, apologised to First Nations peoples for poor or unwise treatment from the time of European settlement through to recent years. No offer of compensation was made, but the nation recognised that First Nations peoples had been wronged. This had been one of Rudd's key election promises, and a moment that many people had been waiting for. Brendan Nelson, the Leader of the Opposition, affirmed Rudd's sentiment.

Parliament was packed as the apology was made, and many people gathered in public spaces, schools and offices all over the country to view the live telecast of the speeches.

Source 28

We apologise especially for the removal of Aboriginal and Torres Strait Islander children from their families, their communities and their country.

For the pain, suffering and hurt of these Stolen Generations, their descendants and for their families left behind, we say sorry.

To the mothers and the fathers, the brothers and the sisters, for the breaking up of families and communities, we say sorry.

And for the indignity and degradation thus inflicted on a proud people and a proud culture, we say sorry.

Extract from Kevin Rudd's apology to the Stolen Generations, 13 February 2008

Analyse this!
Kevin Rudd's apology to the Stolen Generations

These were words that many First Nations peoples had died without ever hearing. It was a turning point in our national history, and brought Australia into line with other Commonwealth countries.

Many prominent Aboriginal rights leaders were in parliament, including Pat Dodson, who is sometimes described as the father of the reconciliation movement. Media coverage of the apology continued for many days, with the word 'sorry' featuring prominently on all major newspapers the following day. Opinion polls showed that a significant number of Australians rated Rudd's apology as 'good', 'great' or 'excellent'.

As part of the apology, Rudd made a promise 'to close the gap between Indigenous and non-Indigenous Australians on life expectancy, educational achievement and employment opportunities'. Each year the prime minister must release a *Closing the Gap* report on the progress that has been made.

The major criticism of the apology was the ambiguity over compensation. Many in the community still regarded this as a major challenge that the government would have to meet.

It was noted by Aboriginal leaders that although an official apology was an important step, its symbolism was meaningless unless it was immediately accompanied by practical measures to remove disadvantage for First Nations peoples. They argued that such measures were necessary for First Nations peoples to be in a position where they are on an equal footing with other Australians. Only once health, education and job opportunities are similar to those of non-Indigenous Australians will it be possible to feel that a true reconciliation has come about and that First Nations peoples have been recognised fully.

Source 29 Public support at the time of the apology was high – the word 'sorry' appeared everywhere.

A sense of urgency

The path to reconciliation is a long one. It requires much effort to deal with the continuing misery, poverty, poor physical and mental health, low life expectancy, and general social and political marginalisation of Australia's First Nations peoples.

Source 30 Life expectancy in Australia

	First Nations peoples	Non-Indigenous people
Male life expectancy (in years)	71.6	80.2
Female life expectancy (in years)	75.6	83.4

Source: Australian Institute of Health and Welfare (2019)

Unfortunately, the apology to the Stolen Generations and the *Mabo* victory (see page 379) were not accompanied by improvements in social outcomes for First Nations peoples. In fact, there has been significant worsening of social wellbeing in many communities. Disadvantage is particularly concentrated in rural Aboriginal communities around Australia.

I used to think, now I think

Reflect on your learning about First Nations peoples and their fight for rights, and complete the following sentences:
- I used to think …
- Now I think …

What has changed in your understanding?

This was certainly not expected by Aboriginal leaders who fought for improved rights from the 1960s onwards. In *The Politics of Suffering* (2009), anthropologist Peter Sutton chronicles how well-intentioned Aboriginal Affairs policies in Australia from the 1970s – including improved services and welfare – inadvertently resulted in increased child abuse, domestic violence, and drug and alcohol use. Sutton's message has been difficult to comprehend by politicians and non-Indigenous Australians. How could self-determination, the opposite of the enforced assimilation of generations past, not deliver significant improvements?

Obviously the answers to this question are complicated. Fundamentally, while the policies offered some funding and other resources to Aboriginal communities, they did not provide lasting employment, effective education, and adequate policing or regulations against the sale of alcohol – the cause of many of the problems. The issue of alcohol is a particularly complex one, tied in with the marked social and economic disadvantage and trauma that extends across generations.

Little Children are Sacred report

In 2007, the Northern Territory Government's *Little Children are Sacred* report was released. This was the report of a board of inquiry into the Protection of Aboriginal Children from Sexual Abuse. It highlighted the extent of disadvantage for First Nations peoples, particularly among children.

The Howard government quickly took action. The result was the Northern Territory National Emergency Response (NTER) in 2007, also known as 'the Intervention'. This policy package included restrictions on welfare payments to ensure that money was spent on food and other necessities rather than alcohol; immediate bans on the sale of alcohol and hard-core pornography in many Aboriginal townships; medical checks for evidence of sexual abuse; and additional police assigned to investigate claims of sexual abuse of children.

While some people in the community expressed concern about the 'heavy-handed' nature of the NTER, both sides of parliament and many Aboriginal leaders ultimately supported it.

Source 31 An Aboriginal woman and child at a camp in Alice Springs, Northern Territory, 2007

Noel Pearson, a Guggu Yalanji man and founder of the Cape York Land Council, was one of the first to give 'qualified' support for the NTER, and had already argued for a decade that so-called 'progressive' policies were failing young Aboriginal people. Pearson's 'Light on the hill' speech, delivered in 2000 to an Australian Labor Party audience, included a frank and honest assessment of the difference between white and black Australia.

The NTER was not, however, supported by all Aboriginal leaders. Some raised concerns that it would be a return to the **paternalism** of old and that it represented an infringement of the human rights of Aboriginal peoples – the federal government had to suspend the *Racial Discrimination Act 1975* (Cth) in order to implement the NTER, as the laws relating to welfare restrictions and the possession of alcohol applied only to Aboriginal peoples.

Source 32 Protesters in Alice Springs march against the NTER.

Source 33 Noel Pearson (left) with Mal Brough, the Coalition minister responsible for the NTER

Closing the gap?

Supporters and critics alike closely observed the progress of the NTER. In 2010, Mal Brough – the Coalition minister originally responsible for the NTER – complained that bureaucracy and poor leadership had held up key work. Data released by the government that year, in a *Closing the Gap* report, showed that reports of child sex abuse, alcohol-related violence and assault had increased in the three years since the NTER began. This brought into question the success of the NTER.

In the following *Closing the Gap* report (2011), law and order data was replaced by details of government investments and achievements in areas such as health, education and land rights. Many of these achievements are to be celebrated, but do they collectively amount to overall improvements for First Nations peoples in Australia?

paternalism
controlling people in a paternal ('fatherly') manner, especially by deciding their needs without allowing them rights or responsibilities

9.20 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 **State** when most governments around the world endorsed the United Nations Declaration on the Rights of Indigenous Peoples.

Comprehend

2 **Explain** why the apology to the Stolen Generations was significant.

Analyse

3 **Examine** the data in Source 30. What do you think are some of the reasons that would account for such a difference in life expectancy?

4 Research the lyrics of 'Beds Are Burning', the song performed by Midnight Oil at the 2000 Sydney Olympics. **Analyse** the message of this song and suggest why it upset John Howard.

5 Find the latest *Closing the Gap* report online.
- a **Identify** the changes (both positive and negative) that have been recorded since the previous year.
- b **Compare** the national figures with those in your state.

Apply

6 'Do you think that we should try to record and teach all sides of our history, or only the parts we are proud of?' Write a short paragraph that responds to this question, using evidence from this topic to **justify** your response.

7 **Investigate** why Pat Dodson is considered to be the father of the reconciliation movement.

8 **Evaluate** whether the 2000 Sydney Olympics was a significant landmark on the path to reconciliation. Provide evidence to support your view.

9 **Create** a closing ceremony for an Olympics held in Australia this year that shows the world the state of reconciliation in Australia.

9.21 The changing role of women since 1945

Learning intentions

By the end of this topic, you will:

» summarise the changing roles and rights of women in the workforce since 1945

» examine the contributions of significant female leaders in Australia.

World War II brought many opportunities for Australian women, including entering the paid workforce in unprecedented numbers to fill roles left by men who had gone off to fight. After the war, when men who had served in the military returned to Australia, women went back to the more traditional roles of mother and housewife. During the 1950s in Australia, education, patterns of paid employment and social attitudes all reinforced the notion that a woman's place was primarily in the home. However, having been provided with economic and social opportunities during World War II, many women did not want to return to these traditional roles.

The Women's Liberation Movement

Women's Liberation Movement
the movement aimed at achieving recognition of women's rights, which began in the United States in the late 1960s

However, change did not come easily and in an effort to gain equality with men, Australian women were forced to struggle for social and legal rights. A global movement known as the **Women's Liberation Movement** became a force in Australia from the late 1960s. Throughout Australia, women established hundreds of groups to provide support for each other and campaign for significant women's issues. Their aims were to achieve equality for women under the law, in education and within the workplace, particularly focusing on:

- fighting discrimination on the basis of sex
- equal pay
- access to childcare facilities
- equal employment opportunities
- parental leave.

Source 34 International Women's Day Rally in Melbourne, 8 March 1975; it was estimated that between 3000 and 5000 women joined the march.

Women advanced these campaigns by attending meetings and joining protest marches, and continuing to pressure state and federal governments and law-makers. From 1972 onwards, women in Australia began attending rallies on International Women's Day on 8 March to demonstrate support for each other and raise awareness of their campaigns.

Repeal of the 'marriage bar'

Under the *Commonwealth Public Service Act 1902*, married women were barred from public service employment in both permanent and temporary positions. If an unmarried woman working in the public service got married, she had to retire from her position. In November 1966, the *Public Service Act* was amended and the 'marriage bar' was repealed, allowing women public servants to retain their permanent employment status if they married, and married women to be appointed to public service positions. By 1970, all Australian states had lifted the 'marriage bar'. This was a significant achievement and saw an increase in the number of women being employed in their early twenties, putting their employment levels almost on par with men's. Despite this, there still was a distinct decrease in employment levels for women aged 25 to 40 – the traditional childbearing age range. Societal attitudes encouraged women to have a family and expected them to stay at home to raise their children. These attitudes were reinforced by restrictive leave arrangements and lack of flexible working arrangements.

Further changes to legislation

By the early 1980s, women had forced governments and the wider society to recognise their rights, particularly in the workplace. Following the establishment of the National Women's Advisory Council in 1978 and the Office of the Status of Women in 1983, legislation called the *Sex Discrimination Act 1984* was enacted. This made it illegal to discriminate on the basis of sex, marital status or pregnancy. It also made sexual harassment illegal. The Act was significant because it identified structures, procedures, rules and behaviours that led to indirect discrimination. Less than two years later, the *Affirmative Action (Equal Opportunity for Women) Act 1986* was passed. This required workplaces to identify discriminatory policies and practices and develop strategies to encourage disadvantaged groups, particularly women, to gain promotion and employment. By 2020, Australian women made up almost half the paid work force, compared to 30 per cent in 1960.

Towards equal pay

In addition to wanting more opportunities in the workplace, a key issue for women was wage discrimination in favour of men. In 1949–1950, two women's organisations – the National Council of Women and the Australian Federation of Business and Professional Clubs – put cases to the **Basic Wage Inquiry** in support of equal pay. The inquiry established a basic wage for women and increased female wages to 75 per cent of the male rate. The Equal Pay Case 1969 was brought before the **Arbitration Commission** and resulted in a requirement that women receive the same wage as men for the same work. In reality, the decision was not the victory it seemed to be.

Basic Wage Inquiry
an inquiry held periodically by the Commonwealth Court of Conciliation and Arbitration

Arbitration Commission
a Federal court and tribunal with powers to make decisions under the Workplace Relations Act 1953–2010

Source 35 Working women protesting and fighting for equal pay, 1969; during this time, some females were accused of keeping male breadwinners out of work.

Source 36 Equal Pay Day is held each year to raise awareness of the continuing battle for gender pay equality in Australian workplaces. (Photo courtesy of BPW Australia)

In 1973, an equal minimum wage was implemented for all Australians, regardless of their sex. However, by the late 1980s, it was rare for women to be receiving more than 85 per cent of the weekly wage paid to men in the same type of work. Women have continued to protest and raise awareness of this gender pay gap. Australia's national gender pay gap has hovered between 13 per cent and 19 per cent for the past two decades. In 2012, the **Fair Work Commission** moved to address this pay gap by gradually increasing the amount people were earning in female-dominated industries. Recent International Women's Day Marches have highlighted that while significant progress has been made in achieving rights for women, the fight for equality in the workplace continues.

Fair Work Commission Australia's national workplace tribunal, which carries out a range of functions concerning working conditions and resolution of workplace disputes

KEY CONCEPT
Significance

Significant Australian female leaders

Many Australian female leaders have made significant contributions to their fields, while also advancing the role and status of women.

Elizabeth Reid

Elizabeth Reid was teaching at the Australian National University in the early 1970s when she became active in the Women's Liberation Movement. In 1973, she was appointed to the newly created position of adviser on women's affairs to Prime Minister Gough Whitlam, the first such appointment in the world. During her three years in this position, she worked to achieve delivery of women's health and refuge services and pushed for equal opportunities for women in employment, training and education, including the introduction of three months' paid maternity leave for the public service. She continued working as an adviser, administrator and researcher on topics related to women, including as the principal officer of the United Nations Secretariat for the 1980 World Conference of the Decade for Women.

Source 37 Elizabeth Reid (right) with Australian feminist writer and academic Germaine Greer at the United Nations International Women's Day Conference in 1975

Tayla Harris

Prominent athlete Tayla Harris, a professional AFLW player and boxer, rose to fame following the 2019 publication of a powerful photograph of her demonstrating great athletic skill in kicking a ball during an AFL match. The photograph became the target of significant sexist abuse on social media. Harris spoke out strongly against this abuse, helping to bring attention to the sexualised abuse that women often receive on social media. Later in 2019, a statue immortalising her famous kick was unveiled in Melbourne's Federation Square. In 2021, she was named Victoria's Young Australian of the Year in recognition of her strong advocacy in preventing gender-based online discrimination.

Source 38 Tayla Harris with the statue depicting her famous kick, in 2019

See, think, wonder
Look at Source 38.
- What do you see?
- What do you think?
- What do you wonder?

Vivienne Binns

Australian artist and painter Vivienne Binns contributed to the development of the Women's Art Movement (WAM) during the 1970s, alongside other feminist contemporaries, including Barbara Hall and Beverly Garlick. WAM was founded in 1973 in Sydney with the aim of addressing discrimination and sexism within the art world through various exhibitions. Binns was particularly dedicated to the development of the Women's Art Register, an organisation run by artists that supports and advocates for women artists. Many of her works focused on feminism and the heritage of women.

Source 39 Vivienne Binns, working as an artist in the community, 1980

For more information on this key concept, refer to page 243 of 'The history toolkit'.

Quiz me!
A quick quiz on the changing role of women

9.21 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 **Identify** two changes to legislation during the 1980s that supported the changing rights of women in the workforce.

Comprehend

2 **Summarise** the changing roles for women in the workforce since 1945.

3 **Explain** what was and wasn't achieved by the repeal of the 'marriage bar'.

4 **Explain** the significance of the *Sex Discrimination Act 1984* in supporting women's rights in the workforce.

Analyse

5 Examine Sources 35 and 36. **Compare** and **contrast** what the photographs reveal about the context and messages of each of the equal pay protests.

Apply

6 Research the lyrics of the song 'I am Woman', written by Australians Helen Reddy and Ray Burton, and sung by Reddy. **Discuss** the message of the song and why it was used as the anthem for the Women's Liberation Movement in the 1970s.

7 'While laws changed for women during the 1970s and 1980s, social attitudes did not.' **Evaluate** the extent to which you agree with this statement. Write a paragraph explaining your position.

8 **Investigate** one of the following significant Australian female leaders and write a biography about their life and significance in their chosen field.
- Nova Peris
- Faith Thomas
- Linda Burney
- Ash Barty
- Professor Fiona Wood
- Julia Gillard
- Marita Cheng
- Dame Quentin Bryce
- Dr Kerryn Phelps
- Elizabeth Ann Macgregor
- Toni Collette.

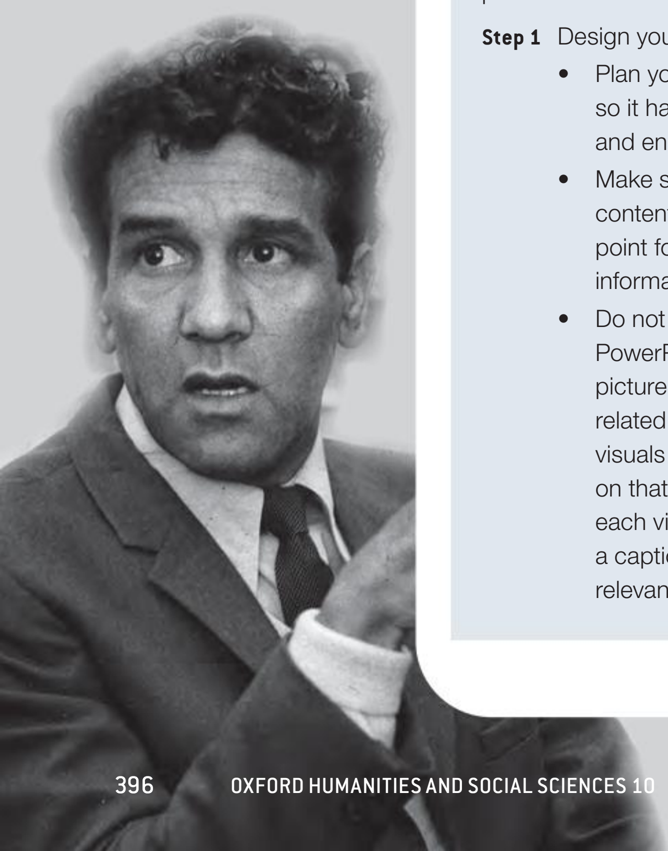
9D

SKILLS IN CONTEXT

Charles Perkins: a significant individual

Test me! Once you've finished the topics in this section, test yourself with this quiz and find out which worksheet you should do.

In 1965, Charles Perkins was the first Aboriginal person to graduate from an Australian university, when he received a Bachelor of Arts from the University of Sydney. Charles Perkins was an Arrernte and Kalkadoon man. A former professional soccer player with a charismatic personality, he became one of the most important Australian Aboriginal activists and leaders. His involvement in the Australian Freedom Rides through New South Wales in the 1960s (see page 375) played a significant role in bringing to attention the racial discrimination that was so rife in rural Australia.



Source 40 Charles Perkins was a central figure in the Australian civil rights movement.

KEY SKILL
Communicating

Creating and delivering an audiovisual presentation

It is likely that as part of your school work, you have already created many PowerPoint presentations. You may have also tried out some other audiovisual presentation software, such as Prezi, which is freely available on the internet. Whichever program you choose, it is important to use it effectively, and avoid the common problems of these types of presentations. Follow these steps to help you avoid these typical problems:

Step 1 Design your presentation:

- Plan your presentation carefully so it has a clear beginning, middle and end.
- Make sure you present the content in clear, concise bullet-point form, not huge slabs of information in paragraph form.
- Do not simply fill up your PowerPoint with lots of random pictures that are only loosely related to the content. Include visuals that relate to the content on that particular slide. Make sure each visual is accompanied by a caption that explains why it is relevant to the presentation.
- A common mistake is to have objects and text moving on the screen in a way that distracts the audience. Use graphics, sound, video, animations and transitions only if they add value to the point being made, not just because you think it will look good.
- Use a design that ensures your audience can clearly see and read the slides. Make sure there is enough contrast between the text colour and the background colour on the slide, and make sure your font size is large enough.

Step 2 Deliver your presentation:

- When delivering an audiovisual presentation to an audience, do not just stand up and read out the text on each slide. Rather, talk in a way that develops and expands upon the points. Carefully plan in advance what you are going to talk about during each slide. Record this plan on cue cards, and refer to these during your speech to remind you of what to say.
- Remember: one thing at a time. At any moment, what is on the screen should be the thing that you are talking about. Your audience will quickly read every slide as soon as it is displayed. If there are four points on the slide, they'll have read all four points while you are still talking about the first point. Plan your presentation so just one new point is displayed at any given moment. Click to go to the next point only when you are ready to talk about that next point.
- Speak clearly – not too fast, not too slow. Vary your tone and pitch to make your presentation more interesting.
- Make eye contact with different members of your audience. Do not just look down at your cue cards.

Practise the skill

1 **Investigate**, prepare and deliver an audiovisual presentation about Charles Perkins and his role in achieving change for Aboriginal peoples in Australia. Your presentation should be based on relevant and reliable sources.

Use the following questions to guide you:

a What was Perkins' childhood like and how did this motivate him with regard to his later activism?

b What were some of his sporting and academic achievements?

c What were the Australian Freedom Rides and what was Perkins' role in them?

d How was Perkins influenced by the US Freedom Riders?

e What were some key features of his political career in the years after the Freedom Rides?

Extend your understanding

1 As you listen to the presentations of your classmates, complete a peer reflection in the form below for each one.

As part of a class discussion give your classmates some 'warm' (positive) and 'cool' (constructive criticism) feedback, remembering to always be supportive and tactful. Only mention feedback that will help them improve for next time.

2 When you are listening to feedback on your own presentation, remember to thank each person and afterwards reflect using the below questions:

- What did I do well in terms of my PowerPoint design?
- What could I improve in terms of my PowerPoint design?
- What did I do well in terms of my oral presentation?
- What could I improve in terms of my oral presentation?

Name of presenter:		
Topic of presentation:		
What are 3–5 things you learnt during this presentation?		
	PowerPoint design	**Oral presentation**
What is some 'warm' feedback you can give the presenter (positive/ achievements)?		
What is some 'cool' feedback you can give the presenter (constructive criticism)?		

9 CHAPTER REVIEW

Review activity

Read the text, and then answer the questions that follow.

Land rights battle in 2020

In 2014 an archaeological report revealed that caves in the Juukan Gorge in Pilbara, Western Australia, were of 'high archaeological significance' after several unique artefacts were discovered, including:

- a belt made of human hair dating back 4000 years.
- a sharpened kangaroo bone dating back 28 000 years (the oldest examples of bone technology found in Australia)
- grinding and pounding stones (believed to be the earliest use of grindstone technology in Western Australia)
- evidence of continuous human habitation since the last Ice Age.

Archaeologist Dr Michael Slack stated that:

> … this site was something special. It was a massive cave, it had such a rich cultural deposit, such an old occupation. And so significant in that respect that it's one of those sites you only excavate once or twice in your career.

On 28 May 2020, mining company Rio Tinto destroyed this 46 000-year-old Aboriginal site to expand an iron ore mine. Rio Tinto was aware of the existence of the site after receiving the archaeological report and sponsoring a documentary about the site's significance. Rio Tinto's actions were entirely legal as it was abiding by Western Australia's *Aboriginal Heritage Act 1972*. Section 17 of this Act makes it illegal to excavate, destroy, damage, conceal or in any way alter any Aboriginal site without ministerial consent; however, Rio Tinto had received such consent in 2013. Traditional owners do not have the right to appeal the decision and they were not consulted.

Rio Tinto's actions made international headlines. Rio Tinto released an apology statement, promising not to repeat its actions, and several senior figures at the company – including the CEO – resigned over the incident. A parliamentary inquiry was also established, entitled 'Never Again', which highlighted the failings of Rio Tinto, the Western Australian Government, the Australian Government and native title law.

1 **Explain** what made the Juukan Gorge so culturally significant. (3 marks)

2 **Explain** why Rio Tinto's actions were legal. (3 marks)

3 **Explain** why this event made international headlines and sparked protests. (3 marks)

4 The destruction of this cultural site highlighted a continuing lack of respect from the Western Australian and Australian governments with regard to Aboriginal land rights. **Compare** the destruction of the Juukan Gorge to another land rights battle discussed in this chapter. (5 marks)

5 **Propose** what needs to change in order for events like this to never occur again. (6 marks)

(Total: 20 marks)

Source 41 A Jim Pavlidis cartoon in *The Age* commenting on the sacred landmark destruction by Rio Tinto

Source 42 People protesting the destruction of Aboriginal sacred sites, 2020

Chapter checklist

Now that you have completed this chapter, reflect on your ability to do the following:

	I can do this.	I cannot do this yet.
Summarise features of migration to Australia	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 9.2, page 320.
Explain the 'push' and 'pull' factors that have influenced migration to Australia.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 9.3, page 323.
Summarise the causes of increased migration after World War II. Describe the waves of post-war migration.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 9.4, page 325.
Understand the White Australia Policy and how it was implemented.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 9.5, page 332.
Summarise the factors that contributed to the abolition of the White Australia Policy.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 9.6, page 334.
Summarise changing attitudes to migrants after the abolition of the White Australia Policy.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 9.7, page 339.
Analyse the debates over multiculturalism since the 1980s and how they have changed over time.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 9.8, page 341.
Discuss aspects of Australia's migration policies from the 1990s to the present day.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 9.9, page 346.
Explain how migration and multiculturalism have changed Australia.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 9.10, page 350.
Understand the attitudes and policies that forced segregation and assimilation on First Nations peoples.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 9.12, page 358.
Summarise historical campaigns for the rights and freedoms of First Nations peoples, including the significance of the 1938 Day of Mourning.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 9.13, page 363.
Describe the life of Jack Patten and his contribution to the rights and freedoms of First Nations peoples.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 9.14, page 366.
Describe key events in the movement for civil rights for Black Americans.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 9.15, page 370.
Describe significant events in Australia's civil rights movement.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 9.16, page 374.
Summarise the history of land rights, including the impact of events such as the Tent Embassy and the *Mabo* and *Wik* decisions.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 9.17, page 378.
Explain why the reconciliation of First Nations Australians and other Australians is an ongoing process.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 9.18, page 382.
Explain the significance of the Redfern Park speech. Compare the perspectives of two prime ministers on Reconciliation.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 9.19, page 384.
Discuss the role of events such as the apology to the Stolen Generations in the reconciliation movement. Identify areas where change is still required in civil rights for First Nations people.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 9.20, page 387.
Summarise the changing roles and rights of women in the workforce since 1945. Examine the contributions of significant female leaders in Australia.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 9.21, page 392.

Check your Student obook pro for these digital resources and more:

Student book questions
Chapter 9

Key skill worksheet
Communicating:
Chapter 9

Quizlet
Play a game of Quizlet on Building modern Australia (post-1945).

Chapter review quiz
Chapter 9

CHAPTER 10

The globalising world (post-1945)

The world has changed immensely since the end of World War II in 1945. Technology has enabled the spread of popular culture across the world and although international influences are strong in Australia, the country has developed strong industries of its own in the areas of music, film and television.

Advances in technology, communication and medicine have had a profound effect on the modern world. Appliances have replaced back-breaking work in the home, smartphones let us communicate with people all over the world and aeroplanes have made international travel faster and more comfortable. More than ever before, the 8 billion people on Earth are part of a single global community.

Such enormous change, however, comes at a cost. The rapid increase in world population and unprecedented growth in the consumption of resources have put our planet under serious strain. The world's dependence on fossil fuels continues to contribute to climate change. More than ever before, governments and businesses are being pressured to adopt policies that promote environmentally friendly products and processes.

Source 1 Once one of the world's busiest airports, Hong Kong Airport was deserted in 2020 due to the COVID-19 pandemic. The reach of COVID-19 and the speed at which it spread were effects of living in a connected, globalised world.

The globalising world (post-1945)

obook pro

obook only chapter

Log in to your obook pro to access this chapter.

10A
What developments have influenced the globalising world since 1945?

10B
How have global events and changes influenced popular culture in Australia since 1945?

10C
How have global events and changes influenced the environment movement in Australia since 1945?

10.1 Changes in technology since 1945

Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» summarise key technological developments since 1945.

The twentieth century was a time of extraordinary technological change and innovation. The first half of the century saw the first powered aeroplane flight, the expansion of industrialisation and mechanisation, the invention of penicillin and advances in theoretical physics that laid the groundwork for what became known as the 'nuclear age', which began after the first atomic bomb was detonated. By the end of the second half of the century, people had orbited the Earth and walked on the moon, developed new treatments for many medical conditions, eradicated diseases such as smallpox, and witnessed the birth of the internet.

Technology in the home

Some of the technological innovations that had the most immediate impacts during the twentieth century were designed for the home. From the 1920s, the growing availability of electricity in ordinary homes allowed people to change traditional housekeeping routines. Electric ovens and hot water services freed people from the need to burn wood and clean chimneys. Vacuum cleaners meant that rugs and carpets no longer had to be taken up and beaten by hand to remove dust (see Source 1).

Source 1 An advertisement from the 1940s for Hoover vacuum cleaners

By the 1950s, a wide range of appliances and whitegoods were available. Electric kettles, toasters and mixers transformed the kitchen, but the invention of the washing machine and the electric refrigerator were arguably the most important of the time. Before the washing machine, laundry was commonly washed by hand using a copper boiler, soap and a washboard. After that, it was wrung out in a hand-wringer and hung out to dry. The first washing machines had no spin or rinse cycles, but still represented enormous savings in time and effort.

Various methods of refrigeration existed prior to 1950, but these were far less effective than the type of refrigerators we are used to today. Before the 1950s, food could be stored in a Coolgardie safe, where it was kept cool by the evaporation of water from a gauze covering. Alternatively it could be stored in an ice chest, but this method relied on a daily delivery of a slab of ice from the local ice-works. The invention of the electric refrigerator allowed people to store food for much longer periods than ever before. This changed their shopping and eating habits.

Later, electric refrigerators were followed by electric freezers and microwaves that once again revolutionised food preparation in the home.

Source 2 Television revolutionised home entertainment for families in Australia from the 1950s onwards.

Home entertainment

Entertainment was transformed by the invention of radio and television. The first radio station to go to air in Australia was 2SB in Sydney, in November 1923. Others quickly followed. Radio was increasingly popular from the 1920s to the 1940s, as the technology improved. Radios became smaller and more portable, and more stations and types of shows were offered.

Television arrived in Australia in 1956. At first, it was offered in black and white only, but by 1975, colour television had become available. In the 1980s the video cassette recorder (VCR) arrived, allowing people to record television shows to watch at their leisure. Together, these technologies provided much wider opportunities for people to entertain themselves at home.

Travel and trade

Just a century ago, the world was a much less mobile place than it is today. Horse-drawn transport was still in use in Australia at the start of the twentieth century, international travel and trade were only possible by sea, and most Australians spent their holidays much closer to home.

Road travel

In the postwar period, the motor car became much more affordable and more common. The first traffic lights in Australia were installed in Melbourne in 1928 and the first Australian-produced car, the Holden FX, went on sale in 1948 (see Source 3). Roads were sealed to reduce dust from the ever-growing volume of traffic, and highways expanded to connect cities and towns all over the country. By 2020, car registrations exceeded 19.8 million. However, while the growth of car ownership has meant greater freedom for many people and a boom to the tourism industry since World War II, many people are now questioning its broader impacts, including pollution and greater congestion in cities.

Source 3 The Holden FX, the first car produced in Australia, went on sale in 1948.

Source 4 In 1922, Alexander Kennedy, an 84-year-old cattleman, was the first paying passenger on Qantas.

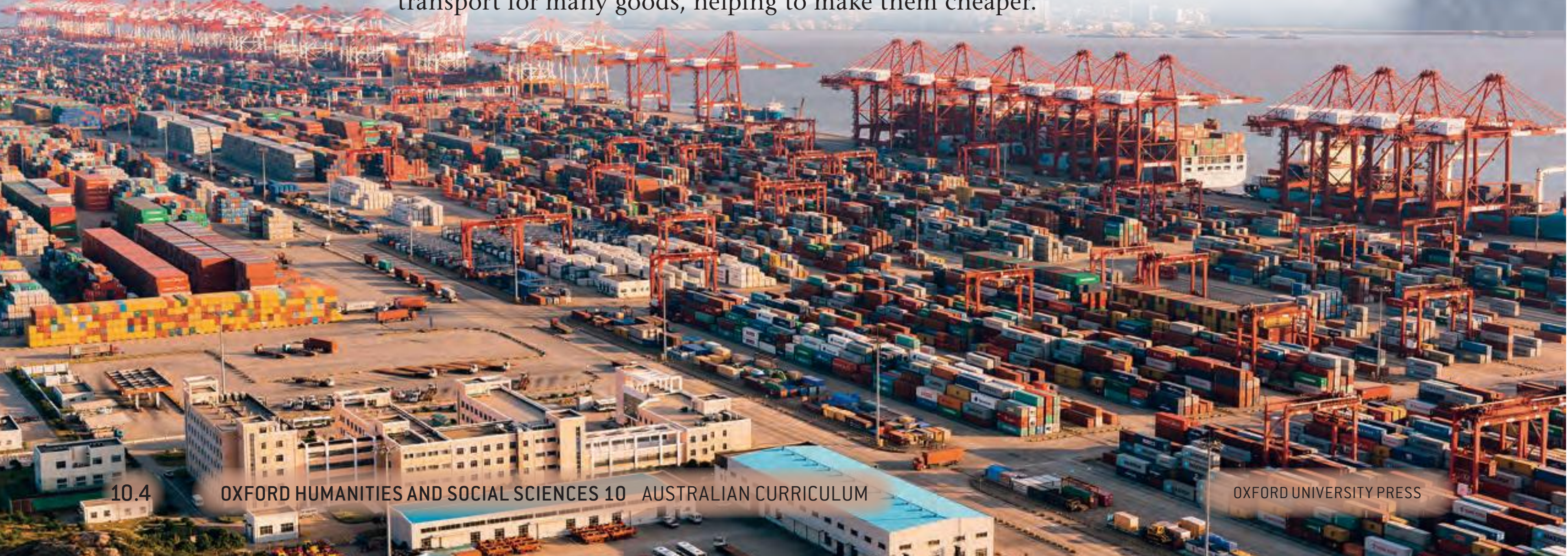
Source 5 Today, Qantas is Australia's biggest airline. Pictured is a Qantas Boeing 747.

Air travel

Passenger aviation arrived in Australia in the 1920s (see Source 4). Qantas was established in 1921, and by the 1950s other commercial airlines were operating domestically, including Trans Australian Airlines (TAA) and Australian National Airways (ANA). Up until the first jet aeroplane arrived in Australia, aeroplanes were propeller-driven. The so-called 'jet age' began in 1959 with the arrival of Qantas's first Boeing 707 and expanded during the 1970s. The arrival of the Boeing 747 (see Source 5) allowed larger planes to travel longer distances. Prices became more affordable, and both domestic and international travel by air came within the reach of many Australians.

Trade

Even the nature of shipping has changed dramatically during the postwar period. Ships became far larger and more powerful, allowing for the bulk transport of vast quantities of resources. Containerisation of freight developed after World War II, allowing goods to be shipped all over the world in standard-sized metal containers. These containers can be loaded and unloaded from ships using heavy machinery, and can be easily transferred to trains or trucks for rail or road transport. Containerisation led to the loss of jobs for dock workers who had traditionally loaded and unloaded ships, but also reduced the costs of transport for many goods, helping to make them cheaper.



Source 6 The Port of Shanghai in China has been the world's busiest container port since 2010. Each year, more than 700 million tonnes of cargo are usually processed through the port and shipped all around the world.

Communications

The way that Australians communicate with each other and the world has transformed entirely since 1900. At the start of that century, Australians often had to wait for significant lengths of time to receive news from overseas relatives and interstate friends. Mail was the main form of communication, and was transported by ship from overseas or by rail within the country. However, as aviation technology improved, postal services began to use airmail.

The other main method of sending messages was sending telegrams, by telegraph. Although instantaneous, a telegram still had to be delivered by a messenger to the recipient. Furthermore, messages tended to be short, as the technology was expensive.

Several advances contributed to a gradual reduction of Australian isolation. A telegraph line was connected to Britain by 1927, allowing instantaneous overseas news. Cinema newsreels also became more common. Though these had to travel in the same way as letters, people were now able to see what was happening elsewhere. Radio station broadcasts began in 1923 and, by the middle of the century, telephone use became widespread, with direct long-distance (or subscriber trunk dialling, known as STD) and overseas telephone services becoming available in the 1970s.

Then, in the last part of the twentieth century, another communications revolution began with the invention of the microchip. Mobile phones, computers and the internet changed personal correspondence and the way people conducted business. The number of emails and SMS messages sent around the world now far outnumber traditional letters. In addition, households are now shifting away from fixed lines ('landlines') in favour of mobile telephone and wireless internet services. Satellite communication allows the transfer of data, voice and images instantaneously around the globe. Together, these technologies have allowed people from all over the world to communicate and carry out a range of tasks in real time – something that could never have been imagined at the end of World War II.

Source 7 Early mobile phones

Quiz me!
A quick quiz on changes in technology since 1945

10.1 Check your learning

Retrieve

1. In your own words, **define** the term 'containerisation.'

Comprehend

2. **Explain** the impact that the introduction of containerisation had on society.
3. **Summarise** some of the key developments in household technology that occurred in the first half of the twentieth century.

Analyse

4. **Analyse** the significance of air travel. How significant was it in creating the globalised world we live in today?

Apply

5. Of the inventions discussed in this unit, select two that you believe are the most significant. **Justify** (give reasons for) your decisions.
6. **Discuss** one serious problem raised by technology. Why is it a problem and how do you think it could be best addressed?
7. Write a letter to an Australian person living in 1950s Australia explaining how important technology is to your daily life. In your response, consider it is likely that the recipient of your letter could never have imagined the types of technology that we have access to today.

10.2 Changes in health and population since 1945

Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» identify and describe changes in health and population since 1945.

World population

At the end of World War II, the world's population stood at approximately 2.2 billion people and Australia had a population of around 7 million. Just 75 years later, the world's population is nearly 8 billion and Australia's population has more than tripled to over 25 million. Based on current trends, experts believe that world population will reach 9 billion by 2050.

World population has increased so rapidly for many reasons. Advances in agricultural production (leading to better food supply), better sanitation, and improvements in health and medicine have all played a role. **Life expectancy** has also increased in many parts of the world, meaning that many people (particularly in the developed world) are living longer than ever before.

life expectancy
a statistical measure of the average number of years a person in an area of population can expect to live from the year in which they were born

While it is possible to regard the growth of human population as a reflection of human success, concerns have also been expressed in recent years that a large human population, coupled with increasing consumption of natural resources, is putting the natural environment at risk.

Changes in life expectancy across the globe

Australia has one of the highest life expectancies in the world. A non-Indigenous Australian boy born between 2015 and 2017 can expect to live for 80.5 years, and a girl for 84.6 years. However, life expectancy is not as high for Aboriginal and Torres Strait Islander people. The Australian Institute of Health and Welfare estimated in 2020 that an Aboriginal or Torres Strait Islander person born in the same period has a life expectancy of 71.6 years (males) and 75.6 years (females). The causes for this include poverty and poor health, both of which link directly to the history of land dispossession and oppression that Aboriginal and Torres Strait Islander peoples have experienced since Australia was colonised in 1788.

United Nations
an international organisation established at the end of World War II to increase political and economic cooperation among its member countries, to promote peace and to prevent the future outbreak of armed conflicts around the world

By contrast, the **United Nations** estimates that people living in the Central African Republic have the lowest life expectancy in the world. There, on average, men only live to the age of 52.8 and women to the age of 55.5.

Source 8 The capital of Japan, Tokyo, has a population of around 38 million people, and has grown from around 9 million people since the end of World War II. It is the most populated city on Earth. Improvements in health, sanitation and agricultural production have all contributed to its growth.

Measures of life expectancy are not static, and many areas of the world have seen dramatic increases since the end of World War II. For example, life expectancy rates in developing countries such as China and Brazil have risen substantially over the past 65 years – almost doubling by some estimates. Sadly, life expectancy has also decreased in some places. The HIV/AIDS pandemic has been devastating for Sub-Saharan Africa (see Source 9). Botswana, Zimbabwe and South Africa all saw life expectancy drop significantly from the late 1980s, as infection rates soared. By 2006, life expectancy in Zimbabwe was only around 44 years for men and 43 years for women, although this has now increased to 61.6 years (males) and 62.9 years (females).

Source 9 A woman receiving medicine in an HIV centre in Zambia, Africa. The spread of HIV/AIDS in Sub-Saharan Africa has dramatically affected the life expectancy of people living there.

Improvements in public health and standards of living

In 1967, the World Health Organization declared its intention to eradicate smallpox, a disease that killed up to one-third of all sufferers and disfigured many survivors. Through a vaccination program the target was achieved, with the last case of smallpox recorded in 1977. Other diseases, although not eradicated, have been dramatically curbed through widespread vaccination. Polio and measles are two examples, with polio cases in the developed world reduced by 99 per cent.

In spite of these examples, many of the advances in public health have been due to simple factors such as improved sanitation, better urban planning and better nutrition. From the 1950s, the **Green Revolution** vastly increased the food output of farms in all continents except Africa, leading to improved nutrition and food supply. The Green Revolution involved a combination of methods such as:

- increased mechanisation (for example, the use of tractors and irrigation pumps)
- the development of new, higher-yield crops
- the invention of new fertilisers and pesticides.

World trade also intensified in the years after World War II, aided by improved communications and transport systems. By the end of the twentieth century, the world had entered the era of **globalisation**, meaning that goods are now being traded more freely across many parts of the world. Commerce and banking have also become globally integrated, as the 2008 Global Financial Crisis (in which losses by banks in the United States led to worldwide shortages of financial credit) demonstrated.

Many people believe that increased global trade has led to higher standards of living. Advocates of globalisation argue that poorer countries are able to sell their goods to a much greater market than before, and that people in the developing world have access to more jobs. However, critics point out that globalisation does not necessarily mean that any new wealth created will be shared. For Australia, globalisation has seen an increase in exports of mineral resources to overseas markets, but it has also brought with it the collapse of some manufacturing industries, as companies have looked to source the skills of cheaper workers in other countries.

Green Revolution
a period of research, development and alteration of agricultural techniques that took place between the 1940s and 1960s, most markedly in the developing world, which saw increased global agricultural production

globalisation
the increasing interconnections between countries all around the world, particularly economic, political, trade and cultural exchanges

Environmental pressures

The twentieth century has seen continued urbanisation and industrialisation. As a result, more and more people are now engaged in the production of goods and services, rather than the production of food. Urban populations drain energy resources, and create large amounts of waste and pollution. Industry, previously concentrated in Western countries, has become more global since the end of World War II, due to the growth of industries in Japan and South Korea, and more recently in China and India.

These trends have had serious ecological implications and, over time, the public concern for the environment has increased greatly. By the end of the twentieth century, there were clear differences between those who saw the planet as a resource to be exploited, and those who saw it as a unique biological system to be preserved. Development and conservation frequently clashed, as a range of issues and campaigns made the environment movement a critical part of historical change.

The second half of the twentieth century saw the emergence of environmental thinking. A major development in environmental thinking was the Gaia hypothesis. This proposed that life on Earth was interconnected and formed a self-contained system that allowed life to flourish – in other words, the Earth is a single, interdependent system. The idea of **sustainability** has also become increasingly important during the twentieth century. It requires human beings to take a long-term view when it comes to using resources. It also requires the exploitation of natural resources to be measured and managed, so they are safeguarded for future generations.

sustainability
a concept that relates to the ongoing capacity of the Earth to maintain all life; this means developing ways to ensure the Earth's resources are used and managed responsibly, so they can be maintained for future generations

In the postwar period, environmental movements developed in response to the belief that governments were not dealing with environmental threats appropriately. Individuals formed activist groups to focus attention on issues at a range of scales – local, regional, national, international and global. International non-government organisations such as Greenpeace have brought a range of environmental issues to the world's attention, from nuclear testing in the Pacific to whaling in the Southern Ocean. Local conservation groups in Australia have fought to protect endangered species and the natural environment against development.

See, think, wonder

Look at Source 10.

- What do you see?
- What do you think?
- What do you wonder?

Source 10 The Gulf of Mexico oil spill in 2010 is one of the most significant environmental disasters ever recorded. The oil platform operated by BP gushed crude oil for 87 days before it could be capped. During this time, it released around 800 million litres of crude oil into the Gulf of Mexico, devastating animal and plant populations and destroying many local businesses.

Green politics has gradually made an impact on the international political scene, and Green parties now participate at various levels of government in many countries. The environment is increasingly becoming a global issue, as world governments recognise the need for coordinated efforts against threats such as **climate change**. The Kyoto Protocol, signed by Australia in 2007, is an international commitment to reduce **greenhouse gas** emissions in an attempt to limit the potentially devastating effects of global warming.

climate change
a change in global or regional climate patterns; in particular, a change apparent from the mid to late twentieth century onwards and attributed largely to the increased levels of atmospheric carbon dioxide produced by the use of fossil fuels

greenhouse gas
a gas, such as carbon dioxide, that absorbs radiation from the sun's rays, trapping heat in the Earth's atmosphere

Source 11 Concerned students in Melbourne gather in protest for the School Strike for Climate, 2019. The movement was started by Swedish activist Greta Thunberg.

Quiz me!
A quick quiz on changes in health and population since 1945

10.2 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 **Identify** the disease that was eradicated by 1977.

Comprehend

2 **Summarise** three reasons for the rapid growth in world population since 1945.

Apply

3 **Investigate** the website of the Australian Conservation Foundation.

a What environmental issues does this organisation see as currently important to Australia's future?

b What actions has it taken, is it taking, or does it intend to take, in order to address these concerns?

10.3 Australia's role in global conflicts since 1945

Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» summarise Australia's role in global conflicts since 1945.

The involvement of Australian troops in Europe and the Pacific during World War II – together with events such as the fall of Singapore and the bombing of Darwin by the Japanese – encouraged Australians to think more closely about issues of national security in the postwar world. In order to protect Australia from future attacks, Prime Minister Robert Menzies (who was in office from 1949 to 1966) set out to build stronger relationships with our neighbours in the Asian region and to ally Australia more closely with the United States.

Communism in Asia and the domino theory

communist
a supporter or follower of communism, a way of organising a society in which the means of production are publicly owned (by the state)

In 1949, after years of civil war, Mao Zedong became the **communist** leader of the People's Republic of China. This was the first powerful communist revolution to take place in Asia. Many people in Australia feared that a communist government in China would have an influence on other countries in the region. As a result, Australia's key foreign policy objective at this time was to increase national security and stop the spread of communism in Asia by joining regional treaty organisations.

In 1951, a treaty – known as the ANZUS Treaty – was signed by Australia, New Zealand and the United States. This was a military alliance that committed the three nations to assisting each other in terms of defence. In September 1954, another alliance – known as the Southeast Asia Treaty Organization (SEATO) – was formed between the United States, Britain, France, Australia, New Zealand, Pakistan, Thailand and the Philippines. The members of SEATO were all anti-communist countries. Like ANZUS, SEATO was essentially a **Cold War** pact designed to limit or stop the spread of communism around the world. At this time, many leaders in the Western world believed that if one country fell to communism, neighbouring countries would follow. This became known as the **domino theory**.

Cold War
the state of political conflict and hostility that existed between the Soviet Union (and its allies) and the United States (and its allies) from 1945 to 1990

domino theory
the theory put forward by US President Dwight D. Eisenhower that if one nation in South-East Asia adopted communism, others would follow – just like a row of dominoes topple once the first one is pushed over

The Australian Government's belief in the domino theory encouraged it to support Britain and the United States in a number of conflicts across South-East Asia in the 1950s and 1960s, especially when communist rebels were attempting to seize power. The most significant of these were Australia's involvement in the Korean War and the Vietnam War.

The Korean War

Source 12 Australian troops in the Korean War, *c.* 1951

When Japan surrendered at the end of World War II, the area of land it controlled on the Korean peninsula was divided into two halves – North Korea and South Korea. North Korea was occupied by the Soviet Union, and South Korea was occupied by US-led United Nations (UN) forces.

In June 1950, the leader of the Soviet Union, Joseph Stalin, encouraged the leader of North Korea, Kim II-Sung, to invade South Korea. US President Harry S. Truman immediately called on the UN to take action. The UN ordered the North Korean army to retreat, but they refused. In response, the UN sponsored a military intervention that was led by US troops under the command of General Douglas MacArthur.

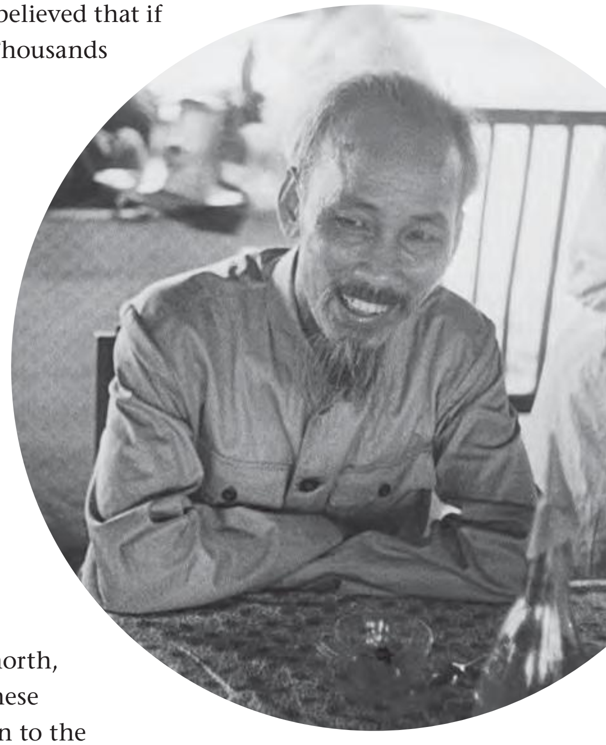
Australian Prime Minister Robert Menzies, who was strongly anti-communist, believed that if communism was not stopped in Asia, it would eventually spread to Australia. Thousands of Australians enlisted and volunteered to fight in Korea (see Source 12).

The fighting eventually ended with a negotiated ceasefire on 27 July 1953, which left Korea a divided country, just as it had been before the Korean War broke out. It remains this way today.

The Vietnam War

Since the mid-nineteenth century, a large section of Indochina (including modern-day Vietnam, Laos and Cambodia) had been part of the French Empire. During World War II, Japanese forces invaded this region and occupied it. A communist group, known as the Viet Minh, formed under the leadership of Ho Chi Minh to fight the Japanese.

After Japan's surrender in 1945, the Viet Minh formed a government and declared Vietnam's independence. However, the French wanted to take Vietnam back as one of their colonies. By December 1946, the French and the Viet Minh were involved in a war that would last for nine years.



Source 13 In the Vietnam War, the Viet Minh fought for Vietnamese independence under the leadership of Ho Chi Minh.

By 1952, Vietnam had become divided. The Viet Minh had control of the north, and the French had set up a rival government in the south, under the Vietnamese Emperor Bao Dai. The Soviet Union and China offered support and recognition to the Viet Minh in the north, while the United States and Britain did the same for Bao Dai in the south. Bao Dai was ousted from power in the south by Ngo Dinh Diem, a corrupt landowner who had little support from within Vietnam. However, because he was anti-communist, he had the support of the United States. Diem's police tortured and killed peasants suspected of supporting the Viet Minh.

In 1957, the Viet Minh in North Vietnam began a **guerrilla** war (a war fought by small, independent groups of fighters) against South Vietnam in order to reunify their country. The United States, under President John F. Kennedy, started sending US advisers to support the anti-communist government of South Vietnam.

Quiz me!
A quick quiz on Australia's role in global conflicts since 1945

In December 1960, the National Liberation Front for South Vietnam was formed in opposition to Diem's government. It allied with North Vietnam and became known as the Viet Cong. North Vietnam dramatically increased its military assistance to the Viet Cong, which then began attacking South Vietnamese military units. The Viet Cong continued to use guerrilla warfare against the government of South Vietnam and the United States through the war.

guerrilla
an unconventional method of warfare involving an unseen enemy, surprise and ambush tactics

US military involvement in the Vietnam War increased from 300 military advisers in 1955 to more than 500 000 US troops by 1968. To justify this level of intervention, US President Eisenhower, and presidents following him, all declared their belief in the domino theory.

Australia's involvement in Vietnam

Australia's prime minister at the start of the Vietnam conflict was Robert Menzies. Menzies fully supported the United States' anti-communist policy, and was a committed ally throughout the war. He was also a strong believer in the domino theory. In 1962, the Australian Government sent its first military advisers to South Vietnam. The initial commitment of 30 men would grow to 60 000 over the next decade and would lead to the introduction of **conscription** in Australia for overseas military service. Public opinion polls at this time indicated that most Australians supported the government's decision. This would change dramatically in the coming years (see Source 14). By 1970, mass demonstrations were being held in the major capitals of Australia to demand a suspension of the war to allow for peace talks.

conscription
the compulsory recruitment of people to serve in the armed forces, often during times of war

When the United States began withdrawing troops from Vietnam in 1969, Australia followed suit. Between 1970 and 1972, all Australian combat troops were withdrawn. On 27 December 1972, the newly elected Labor government ended all Australian military aid to South Vietnam.

Around 500 Australians died during the Vietnam War, including 185 national servicemen (conscripts). Until the deployment of Australian soldiers to Afghanistan in 2001, Vietnam had been Australia's longest war.

Australian involvement in the UN

Australia was a founding member of the UN and played an active role in the drafting of its Charter at the San Francisco Conference of 1945. The Australian delegation, led by Herbert 'Doc' Evatt, actively promoted the rights of smaller nations. Since then, Australia has served five terms on the UN Security Council (which has the task of maintaining peace and security at an international level): 1946–47, 1956–57, 1973–74, 1985–86 and 2013–15. In 1946, Labour politician Norman Makin was the first Australian to act as President of the Security Council. In 1948, Evatt was elected President of the UN General Assembly (which makes decisions about issues of international peace and security).

Australia has played an active role in the UN Commission on Human Rights and has been a strong supporter of the work of the expert UN bodies dealing with the implementation of international human rights conventions. Australia also has a long history of contributions to UN peacekeeping operations. Australia currently has peacekeeping forces in many places around the world, including the Persian Gulf and Timor-Leste (East Timor) (see Source 15).

superpower
a very powerful and dominant nation; especially used during the Cold War era to refer to the United States and the Soviet Union (both nuclear powers, and considered to be the most powerful nations on Earth)

Enduring allies

Despite the best efforts of the UN Security Council, the world remains an unpredictable and uncertain place. Since the end of the Cold War in 1991, the United States has been the last **superpower** of the twentieth century. But on 11 September 2001, the world looked on as a series of deadly coordinated attacks on key targets in the United States took place, including the deliberate crashing of two passenger jets into the World Trade Center towers in New York and another into the Pentagon in the state of Virginia.

Source 14 Images of the Vietnam War – such as this one of children fleeing a village that had been bombed with napalm (a flammable sticky jelly used in bombs and flame-throwers) – caused many Australians to turn against the war.

The events of 11 September marked the beginning of a new era in global conflict that became known as the 'War on Terror'. Military action since 2001 has centred on wars in both Iraq and Afghanistan. Throughout the War on Terror, Australia has continued to be a strong ally of the United States. Australian troops have served both in Iraq and Afghanistan, and specialist military advisers and strategists have worked closely with US command. Australian troops were withdrawn from Iraq in 2008, but continued fighting in Afghanistan until 2013. During the 12 years of fighting there, 40 members of the Australian Defence Force were killed and 261 were seriously wounded. In 2021, US troops were also withdrawn from Afghanistan. Shortly afterwards, the Afghan capital, Kabul, was seized by the Taliban regime.

Source 15 An Australian peacekeeping soldier in Timor-Leste

Source 16 Australia's peacekeeping missions, 1947–2020

Australia's involvement in peacekeeping missions, 1947–2020, including military and policing operations	
Indonesia	1947–1951
Kashmir	1950–1985
Middle East (Israel and surrounding areas)	1956–present day
Cyprus	1964–present day
Zimbabwe	1979–1980
Iran	1988–1990
Namibia	1989–1990
Pakistan–Afghanistan	1989–1993
Persian Gulf	1990–present day
Iraq	1991–1999
Western Sahara	1991–1994
Cambodia	1991–1998
Somalia	1993–1995
Rwanda	1994–1995
Bougainville (Papua New Guinea)	1994, 1998–2003
Timor-Leste	1999–present day
Sierra Leone	2000–2003
Solomon Islands	2000–2013
Ethiopia/Eritrea	2000–present day
Sudan	2005–present day
Darfur	2007–present day

10.3 Check your learning

Comprehend

1 **Summarise** the key motivators behind Australia's involvement in overseas conflicts during the Cold War period.

2 **Explain** why the United States supported Ngo Dinh Diem during the Vietnam War.

3 Identify and briefly **describe** the two treaties that Australia signed to help combat the spread of communism.

4 **Explain** the domino theory.

Analyse

5 **Examine** Source 14.

  a Identify the type of source this is: primary or secondary.

  b Why do you think this source (and others like it) caused many Australians to reconsider their views on the war?

Apply

6 **Propose** one reason why the Soviet Union and China supported the Viet Minh during the Vietnam War.

7 'The Australian Government made the correct decision to become involved in the Vietnam War.' To what extent do you agree with this statement? Write a short paragraph **justifying** your position.

8 **Create** an anti-communism poster encouraging the Australian public to support the commitment of Australian troops to the conflict in Vietnam during the Menzies era.

10.4 The Universal Declaration of Human Rights

Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» describe the development of and the reasons for the Universal Declaration of Human Rights.

Millions of people were massacred during World War II. Many millions more never saw their families or homes again as a result of the destruction. During the war, a number of world leaders started to develop an ambitious global response to these atrocities. The commitment to form the United Nations – a 'world government' of sorts – was designed to ensure that such events would never happen again. Part of this involved establishing a set of international laws and treaties to protect people. Immediately after the end of World War II, the United Nations was formed and work started on formalising a set of basic **human rights**.

human rights
rights that all human beings possess, regardless of their nationality, place of residence, sex, national or ethnic origin, colour, religion, language, or any other status

Australia's role

Because of the horrors brought about by World War II, there was enthusiasm to begin the work of protecting certain human rights by law. Leaders of emerging powers, including Australia's Minister for External Affairs, Herbert 'Doc' Evatt (see Source 17), convinced traditional powers (such as Britain and France) that the United Nations General Assembly – which discusses and makes decisions about issues of international peace and security – must be seen to take a leading role in the development of laws to protect human rights. The world could not afford to be caught up in another catastrophe such as World War II. Evatt was President of the General Assembly in 1948 and 1949, during which time he led the drafting of the Universal Declaration of Human Rights.

This landmark document has 30 articles and has informed many international and national treaties and covenants (agreements) relating to human rights (some of which are outlined in Source 18). Most significantly, the declaration holds that human rights are inalienable – meaning that they cannot be taken away from any one of us.

Source 17 Herbert 'Doc' Evatt (right) with Israeli Foreign Minister Moshe Sharett in 1949, when Israel was admitted to the United Nations

Analyse this!
Universal Declaration of Human Rights

Source 18

Article 1 All human beings are born free and equal in dignity and rights. They are endowed with reason and conscience and should act towards one another in a spirit of brotherhood.

Article 2 Everyone is entitled to all the rights and freedoms set forth in this Declaration, without distinction of any kind, such as race, colour, sex, language, religion, political or other opinion, national or social origin, property, birth or other status. Furthermore, no distinction shall be made on the basis of the political, jurisdictional or international status of the country or territory to which a person belongs, whether it be independent, trust, non-self-governing or under any other limitation of sovereignty.

> **Article 3** Everyone has the right to life, liberty and security of person.
>
> **Article 4** No one shall be held in slavery or servitude; slavery and the slave trade shall be prohibited in all their forms.
>
> **Article 5** No one shall be subjected to torture or to cruel, inhuman or degrading treatment or punishment.
>
> **Article 6** Everyone has the right to recognition everywhere as a person before the law.
>
> The first six articles of the Universal Declaration of Human Rights, 1948

Evatt was supported by many other leaders, including Eleanor Roosevelt, a US delegate and the widow of former US President Franklin D. Roosevelt. Eleanor Roosevelt's speech to the General Assembly on 2 December 1948 impressed upon the world the need for action. Eight days later, the Universal Declaration of Human Rights was ratified (endorsed) by the General Assembly.

The start of civil rights

Many historians argue that the Universal Declaration of Human Rights set the scene for the civil rights struggles in the following decades. Germany was a developed economy with a functioning democracy before World War I, and yet, in less than a generation, it had become a **fascist** dictatorship where only the rights of certain people were protected. The fear was that unless action was taken in other places to protect the human rights enshrined in the declaration, the same situation could once again develop elsewhere in the world.

The Australian context

Although Australia played a key role in arguing for the Universal Declaration of Human Rights on the world stage, the **White Australia Policy** was still in force and was responsible for restricting the types of people arriving in Australia based on race and ethnicity.

There was only limited legal and public recognition of the rights of First Nations peoples. The acceptance of the rights contained in the declaration gave great encouragement not only to First Nations peoples, but also to many others whose access to basic human rights had been denied through war, conquest and colonisation.

fascist
based on or supporting fascism; fascism is a way of organising a society in which a government ruled by a dictator has complete power over the lives of the people, commerce and industry, and in which any criticism of or opposition to the government is suppressed by force

White Australia Policy
a term used to describe government policies introduced after Federation in 1901 to stop 'non-white' immigrants from settling in Australia, instead favouring those from certain European nations (especially Britain); these policies were overturned from 1949 to 1973

10.4 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 In your own words, **define** 'human rights'.
2 **Identify** who spoke in support of the declaration on 2 December 1948. What was their message?

Comprehend

3 **Summarise** why people were inspired to create the Universal Declaration of Human Rights.
4 **Summarise** the role Herbert 'Doc' Evatt played in the creation of the declaration.
5 **Explain** the policy Australia maintained for much of the twentieth century, despite the fact that it was against the spirit of the declaration.

10A SKILLS IN CONTEXT

Test me!
Once you've finished the topics in this section, test yourself with this quiz and find out which worksheet you should do.

The influence of popular culture in Australia

Many of us today have a television in our bedroom and watch movies online – even on our phone. It is hard to believe that only 60 years ago, radio was the main way Australians accessed news and entertainment. The growth of television and new forms of music reflect upheavals in values and culture that our society has undergone since the end of World War II.

For the generation that grew up before the 1950s, the only way to watch moving images was to visit a cinema. The arrival of television in Australia in the 1950s relocated the movie screen into people's living rooms and fundamentally changed the ways in which people accessed popular culture.

With the birth of rock'n'roll around the same time, popular music was undergoing a revolution of its own. Rock'n'roll became more than just another music trend – it influenced fashion, lifestyle, language and attitudes, especially among teenagers and young people.

Older Australians were concerned that the popularity of rock'n'roll through television and radio was encouraging young people to challenge boundaries around taboo topics, such as sex. This letter to the editor appeared in *The Sun* newspaper in January 1957, while Bill Haley was touring Australia. It was printed under the heading 'Menace of rock and roll':

Source 19

It will be interesting to note the effects of the visit to Sydney of a band of American entertainers. Reports of the way 'rock and roll' has been received by overseas audiences, coupled with the almost unanimous acceptance of Elvis Presley who, despite his repulsive antics, is now the current idol of the younger set, lead one to believe that the arrival of Mr Haley could be regretted for years to come.

We have only to glance through the daily papers to read the shocking manner in which teenagers of today, throughout the world, carry on.

The morals of the modern generation, with the exception of a small minority, have nearly reached an all time low, and 'rock and roll' has done nothing to improve them.

Already the general outlook of the Australian teenager has begun to deteriorate rapidly and to such an extent that something must be done to prevent the low level which they are gradually approaching, being attained.

Strongly opposed by most leading musicians, both modern and classical, 'rock and roll' represents a serious threat to the community.

In both Britain and the United States riots are prevalent where this form of entertainment is played. We must see that it is not given the same opportunity to take a grip on our own youth.

Letter to the editor by John J. Sutton, *The Sun*, Sydney, January 1957 (reprinted in Bernie Howitt, *My Generation: Growing up in Australia 1950s to 1980s*, Longman Cheshire, 1992, pp. 25–6)

Disc jockey and music news reporter Stanley Rofe was the first to present rock'n'roll music on Melbourne radio in 1956. Rofe later noted that he 'played to a young audience', revealing who he believed encapsulated Australia's radio audience in the 1950s.

Source 20

> Everybody had a rock'n'roll dance and no matter which side of Melbourne you went to there was rock'n'roll … [My perspective on rock'n'roll, then and now, is] don't knock any generation of music because each and every decade has something to say.
>
> Interview with Stanley Rofe, 28 March 1993

KEY SKILL
Historical perspectives & interpretations

Identifying and analysing different historical interpretations

Historians use two types of sources to gather evidence about the past:

- primary sources – objects or materials created or written at the time being investigated
- secondary sources – accounts about the past that were created after the time being investigated.

Much of the historical study and research you will complete in school will involve you reading secondary sources (for example, textbooks and websites about the historical period you are studying). While these secondary sources may appear to provide an objective, unbiased and balanced view of the historical events or periods they are writing about, this is not always the case. All historians write from a particular perspective. There is no objective 'truth' that historians uncover; rather, all historians must interpret historical events and issues using their own perspective.

Of course, historians must use evidence to justify their interpretations, but there is no absolutely 'correct' way of interpreting evidence, and historians can also use (or disregard) different sources of evidence to support many different interpretations. For example, many historians writing in the early 1900s about the British colonisation of Australia presented it in a very positive light, and virtually ignored the negative experiences of Aboriginal and Torres Strait Islander peoples.

It is therefore very important that you are able to identify and analyse different historical interpretations. To do this, ask yourself the following questions:

- What historical event is being interpreted?
- What particular features, incidents, actions or behaviours are seen as important in this interpretation?
- What particular features, incidents, actions or behaviours are seen as positive in this interpretation?
- What particular features, incidents, actions or behaviours are ignored or left out of this interpretation?
- What particular features, incidents, actions or behaviours are seen as negative in this interpretation?
- What motives or characteristics are being attributed to the humans involved in this interpretation?
- What primary sources are used to support the interpretation? How?
- What primary sources might have been left out or ignored by this interpretation?
- Does this interpretation involve a critique of other interpretations? If so, what is being said about other interpretations?

For more information on this skill, refer to page 241 of 'The history toolkit'.

Practise the skill

1 Use the questions above as a guide to write a 250-word report to **describe** the changing nature of popular culture in Australia since the 1950s. **Identify** how each of the sources in this task offers different interpretations of the changes.

Extend your understanding

1 Consider how the sources in this task provide different interpretations of the arrival of rock'n'roll in Australia. **Explain** what technology or trends you see in society today that might compare to the upheaval older generations of Australians faced when television and rock'n'roll emerged.

2 **Create** a presentation for your class on a modern trend or technology of your choice (such as Facebook, Twitter, Instagram or TikTok), and describe:
   - what benefits the trend is bringing to society
   - what problems the trend could have for society
   - what effects you believe the trend might have on society in 15 years' time.

10.5 Changes to radio and film

Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» examine how post-World War II society affected radio and film in Australia.

The link between technology and **popular culture** was clearly established in the 1920s. In the period before the arrival of television and rock'n'roll, radio and film were the main sources of popular culture. The impact of technology on popular culture became a consistent theme throughout the second half of the twentieth century. Ongoing developments in technology also help to explain the ways in which popular culture is able to change and evolve.

popular culture
music, film, television, sport, etc., that has broad appeal and is international in scope

Radio

By 1946, radio was established as the most accessible form of communication in Australia. All capital cities and most regional centres had one or more radio stations, which helped overcome the great distances involved in communicating across the country. Radio first took off during the 1930s, and was the perfect medium for introducing audiences to new forms of recorded music coming from the United States.

The increasing popularity and accessibility of radio led to change. Until World War II, pianos and pianolas (self-playing pianos) were the centrepieces of home entertainment. Sales of sheet music boomed as families gathered to entertain themselves at home. When radio station 2GF in Grafton, New South Wales, first went on air in December 1933, it was the 63rd radio station in the country. When World War II broke out, radio also became crucial as a way for Australian people to keep updated with military news from overseas and at home. Apart from wartime news and updates from the troops, radio stations broadcast music and drama programs, which were important for entertaining the Australian public and keeping up morale.

By the twenty-first century, radio had split into **AM and FM radio**, and community and digital broadcasting. Contrary to some expectations, the medium of radio continues to thrive as an important means of entertainment and information.

Film

In 1906, the world's first full-length feature film was produced in Australia, titled *The Story of the Kelly Gang*. Until governments banned bushranger films in 1912, Australia led the world in feature film production. The federal government set high import **tariffs** on films during World War I. When they lifted them in 1918, the Australian film industry was destroyed by American imports. There was a brief revival in Australian films in the 1930s, when the influence of Hollywood and the introduction of 'talkies' (films with sound) began to dominate the film industry.

Source 1 This photograph, taken in the late 1940s, shows a group of young friends sunbaking at Bondi Beach, Sydney, while listening to the radio.

Source 2 *Smiley* (1956) was one of the films that featured the Australian star Chips Rafferty. Like many films made in Australia around that time, it was a United States–United Kingdom co-production. This image shows Rafferty (left) in a scene from the film's sequel, *Smiley Gets a Gun* (1958).

A newsreel documentary, *Kokoda Front Line*, won Australia's first Academy Award in 1943, but the Australian film industry struggled in the years after World War II. Although major Australian stars such as Errol Flynn, Peter Finch and Chips Rafferty became famous in Australia and had success overseas, as a general rule US actors were far more successful internationally. US magazines played a major role in this. Around this time, magazines became a popular medium through which popular culture was transmitted and advertised. As a result, Australian actors began to travel to Hollywood to further their careers.

Although films were made in Australia in the 1940s and 1950s, these were usually co-productions with US and British film companies. The 1955 film *Jedda* stands out as a significant milestone in Australian cinema because it had two Aboriginal lead actors. It was also the first Australian film to be shot in colour (see Source 3). In addition, by introducing non-Indigenous audiences to First Nations issues, it showed that films had the potential to generate debate and stimulate social change.

AM and FM radio
the technology that allows information to be transmitted and received over electromagnetic waves; AM radio creates larger waves, at varied lengths, meaning they can be received from further away; FM radio transmits more consistent waves, which do not travel as far, but create a better sound.

tariffs
taxes (usually applied to goods being imported or exported)

Source 3 *Jedda* (1955) was the first Australian film to star Aboriginal actors in lead roles.

Sequence this!
Changes to radio and film

The Walt Disney Studios became the main source of children's entertainment. The animated films *Dumbo* and *Bambi* had been major hits during the war, and by the 1950s Disney films were clearly established as 'must-sees' for Australian children. US serials and cartoons also emerged as staples of Saturday afternoon picture shows, and ensured that Australian children in the postwar period were introduced to a constant diet of US popular culture. These animated cartoons and serials merged different American popular culture influences. They frequently drew on printed comic strip heroes – such as Batman, the Phantom and Green Hornet – for ideas.

It must be remembered that before television, newsreels at picture theatres were the only way people could actually see major news events in moving pictures. Along with serials, newsreels were the main reasons why people in the postwar period kept coming to the cinema, week after week. As a result, local picture theatres became major sources of popular culture. This also explains why newsreels remained popular even after the Australian film industry went into decline after World War II. In fact, newsreel production continued until television was introduced to Australia in the mid-1950s.

Source 4 *Bambi* was released in 1942 by Walt Disney Studios. It was one of the early animated films from Disney, and it captivated children across the globe.

10.5 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 Radios were introduced into Australian homes during the 1930s. **Identify** the other forms of home entertainment they replaced.

Comprehend

2 **Describe** how Australians saw news items before the arrival of television.

3 **Summarise** why *Jedda* was such an important film.

Analyse

4 **Analyse** the significance of radio for Australian popular culture in the 1940s.

Apply

5 **Discuss** why you think older Australians in the 1950s would have worried about Disney films and serials becoming so popular with Australian children.

6 **Investigate** the career of one of the following Australian actors: Errol Flynn, Peter Finch or Chips Rafferty. Write a 250-word historical description outlining the contributions your chosen person made to the film industry, both in Australia and internationally. See page 245 of 'The history toolkit' for more information on writing historical descriptions.

10.6 Changes to music

Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» examine how post-World War II society affected music in Australia.

On the surface, Australian society in 1956 did not appear to be too different from Australian society 10 years earlier. Cricket, rugby league, tennis and horse racing were all popular sports that showed the influence of Australia's largely British cultural heritage. Radio continued to be the most popular and important medium for communication. In addition to this, most city suburbs and country towns had a picture theatre showing US and British films along with newsreels and serials. Then something changed – rock'n'roll arrived in Australia.

The Sun, a Sydney-based newspaper, reported on 21 June 1956 that 'rock and roll raised no more than a flutter' in Australia. Three weeks later, Elvis Presley's 'Heartbreak Hotel' was released locally, and the same newspaper published the first rumour that Elvis was to tour Australia. By December, Bill Haley's 'Rock Around the Clock' had established an Australian sales record of 175 000 45s and 78s, and 12 000 LPs (all are types of vinyl records). On 20 December, a 'rock dance' was held at Sydney's Redfern Oval, and within six months rock'n'roll had become part of popular culture for good.

There is no doubt that rock'n'roll brought about many changes in 1950s Australia. Teenagers of the 1950s had a different outlook from the generation that had experienced the **Great Depression** and World War II. Even the term 'teenager' only became popular in the postwar period, as they became an important, rising market for music and brands. Attending rock'n'roll concerts became a symbol of the fact that they were different from earlier generations and signalled a break with their parents. It also showed how enthusiastically they adopted US popular culture. As Australian musicians such as John Manners and Johnny O'Keefe absorbed these influences, they also started practising rock'n'roll and developing their skills in this new form of popular culture. Eventually these artists would start writing and performing uniquely Australian rock songs to sell-out crowds, but in 1957 rock'n'roll was only just starting to bring about social change in Australia and create a **generation gap**.

Great Depression
a period of severe economic downturn between 1929 and 1934 that affected most countries around the world

generation gap
where older and younger people (different generations) do not understand each other because of their different experiences, opinions, habits and behaviour

KEY CONCEPT
Significance

Bill Haley's tour

Rock'n'roll became one of the most distinct products designed specifically for teenagers. Radio, television and film all helped spread the music, and tours by live acts were the next step. Although Australia was geographically isolated in the 1950s, a US promoter living in Australia called Lee Gordon realised the potential of bringing rock'n'roll artists to the nation. He organised the first rock'n'roll tour outside North America when he booked Bill Haley and the Comets, Big Joe Turner, The Platters, LaVern Baker, and Freddie Bell and the Bell Boys on a package tour of Australia.

As an indication of just what a major undertaking this first tour was, in January 1957 it took Bill Haley six days to travel from the east coast of the United States to Sydney. There were three stops on the trans-Pacific flight. In addition, this was the first-ever tour in Australia to include mixed races and genders – both certain to attract controversy in a 'white' Australia where women were yet to achieve any kind of equality.

The tour was a huge success, playing to 330 000 people at a time when Australia's population was still under 10 million. Teenagers danced in the aisles before ushers made them sit down. A reviewer called it 'the noisiest show to ever hit Sydney'. It was reported that 'plates rattled half a block away, dogs cringed in their kennels and the boxing stadium at Rushcutters Bay loosened its nails'.

A second tour, with Little Richard, Eddie Cochran, Gene Vincent and Alis Lesley, arrived in October 1957, and it was clear that rock'n'roll was building a wide generation gap.

For more information on this key concept, refer to page 243 of 'The history toolkit'.

Source 5 Police hold back Beatles fans at Sydney Airport in June 1964, as drummer Ringo Starr and manager Brian Epstein arrive – the pair missed the early part of the Australian tour because Ringo needed to have his tonsils removed.

The Beatles tour Australia

On 11 June 1964, The Beatles arrived in Australia for their first and only visit. By June 1964, the four members of the band were the most famous people on the planet. Concerts in Adelaide had been added because of public demand, and 350 000 people lined the entire drive from the airport to the centre of Adelaide. Crowds appeared wherever The Beatles went. For two weeks, Australia was the centre of the popular culture universe.

The Beatles' tour had a direct impact on Australian society. Teenagers disobeyed authority for the first time in their lives, ignoring police instructions as they massed anywhere that The Beatles might appear. The mobilisation of so many teenagers was an early sign of the mass movement that went on to play an important role protesting against the Vietnam War.

The tour also showed that Australia retained very strong cultural links with Britain. The Beatles entered the Australian charts six months before the US charts. British migrants arriving in Australia would bring their records with them, ensuring that Australia was kept up to date with the pop music boom that was exploding in England.

Quiz me!
A quick quiz on changes to music

The Beatles' tour changed the face of Australian music. Pop music became the quickest way for many migrants to assimilate into Australian culture. The Easybeats in Sydney and The Twilights in Adelaide were two bands that formed in the aftermath of The Beatles' tour, and both consisted mainly of migrants. These bands would go on to create original Australian music, as well as to tour England.

10.6 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 **Identify** who staged the first rock'n'roll concert tour of Australia and in what year the tour was staged.

Comprehend

2 **Summarise** evidence that suggests rock'n'roll became an almost instant success in Australia.

3 **Explain** why Bill Haley's and The Beatles' tours of Australia were important developments in Australian popular culture.

Analyse

4 Describe ways in which Australian teenagers during the 1950s adopted aspects of American culture. **Compare** this with the way US popular culture influences Australian teenagers today.

Apply

5 Listen to the music of some of the artists who toured Australia in the 1950s and prepare a line-up for a concert by some of these artists.
   a **Create** a poster to advertise the concert.
   b Write two reviews of the imaginary concert – one for a daily newspaper and one for a teenage magazine – that **compare** the different attitudes held by older and younger generations of Australians towards rock'n'roll.

6 **Investigate** an Australian pop group from the 1950s or 1960s and one current Australian pop artist. In two to three paragraphs, compare their careers and impact on the international music scene.

10.7 The impact of changing technology on television and film

Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» analyse the impact of changing technology on television and film in Australia.

Think, pair, share *

- Think about the decision of the Australian Government to have publicly funded broadcasters and privately owned broadcasters. What are some positives and negatives of each of these approaches?
- Discuss your ideas with a partner.
- Share your thoughts with the class.

Television had proved critical in the United States in allowing rock'n'roll to develop from local to national acceptance. Regardless of distance, television meant that teenagers across the country could turn on their sets and see Elvis Presley on nationally broadcast shows such as *The Ed Sullivan Show* (originally called *Toast of the Town*) and *The Milton Berle Show*.

Television had the same potential in a country the size of Australia, especially because of its small population, vast distances and physical isolation from the rest of the world. However, legal and political arguments in Australia about the ownership model of television stations delayed the introduction of television here.

After much discussion, it was finally decided that Australia would have a government-funded network run by the Australian Broadcasting Commission (ABC) (based on the British BBC model), as well as allowing privately owned stations to draw their income from advertising (based on the US model). This compromise between British and US influences was typical of Australian society in the 1950s.

The Melbourne Olympic Games in November 1956 were the main motivation for the introduction of television. Government and commercial stations were operating in Sydney and Melbourne in time to televise the games, and by 1960 Brisbane, Adelaide and Perth also had stations.

As with many new technologies, television sets were expensive in the beginning. In 1956, the average weekly wage was the equivalent of around $30 a week but a new television set could cost the equivalent of $400 or more. As a result, it is estimated that only about 5 per cent of households in Melbourne and 1 per cent of households in Sydney had television sets by 1960.

Source 6 A family watches television in a department store 'television lounge', where customers could browse for a new television set, in Sydney, 24 November 1956.

Source 7 The Melbourne Olympics, held in 1956, were one of the main motivating factors for the introduction of television in Australia. The games were broadcast as a test transmission by all three television stations operating in Melbourne at the time.

quota
an official limit on the number or amount of people or things that are allowed

To encourage investment in television stations, the Menzies government had decided not to have a local content **quota** for programming. As a result of this decision, the early years of television in Australia were dominated by US programs. There were few television studios and other facilities to produce local programs in Australia at the time, and very little equipment to record and broadcast material. Therefore, most local content had to be broadcast live. It consisted mainly of quiz and game shows that had been popular on radio. When a Senate Committee reported on Australian television content in 1963, it estimated that 97 per cent of all television drama shown between 1956 and 1963 was from the United States. These programs had a significant influence on Australian society over the period.

With rock'n'roll and television established in Australia by the end of the 1950s, both became major vehicles for social and cultural change around the country. They enabled the transmission of US popular culture in a more immediate and direct way than either film or the visits of US troops during World War II had been able to achieve.

KEY CONCEPT
Evidence

'Welcome to television'?

For historians, one of the difficulties in studying the early years of Australian television is that so little primary source material survives. With no videotape or equipment to record television shows, live broadcasts were unique events that have been lost to time. There is even controversy surrounding the historic first words spoken on Australian television.

On 16 September 1956, Bruce Gyngell greeted the Australian people in the first television broadcast from TCB 9 in Sydney with the words: 'Good evening and welcome to television.' Although these are the first words spoken on Australian television, if you were to watch this footage today, the chances are that you would be watching a fake. According to Gerald Stone (a respected Australian television and radio journalist), the original film of the event was lost. The version we see today, showing Gyngell standing in front of a world map, was re-created a year after the original broadcast. As a result, it probably looks quite a bit more rehearsed and professional than the broadcast that originally went to air.

For more information on this key concept, refer to page 228 of 'The history toolkit'.

Source 8 Bruce Gyngell in 1957, re-enacting his introduction to the first regular television broadcast service that aired in 1956

The great film revival

Australia has had a vibrant film industry at various times throughout its history, and film has become a significant way for Australians to reflect on their national identity and confront aspects of Australian life. The early 1970s saw the emergence of what has been called the 'New Wave' of Australian film.

The timing of the New Wave reflected a growing interest in Australian culture and had the political support of two Australian prime ministers: John Gorton (Liberal prime minister 1968–71) and Gough Whitlam (Labor prime minister 1972–75). These two politicians laid the groundwork for Australian film to emerge as a major contributor to a national popular culture in the early 1970s.

Gorton established the Australian Council for the Arts, the Australian Film Development Corporation, and the National Film and Television Training School. Whitlam continued the support by creating the Australian Film Commission to help finance and produce films that could reach an international market. This was the first time film had received such specific government support, and the result was a boom in Australian films.

Directors such as Peter Weir, Gillian Armstrong, George Miller and Bruce Beresford got their start during this period. Actors also thrived under the system. Future international stars such as Mel Gibson, Jacki Weaver and Judy Davis all began their careers in the 1970s New Wave.

The themes the films in this period covered also signalled a new confidence in Australian culture. *Stork*, *The Adventures of Barry McKenzie* and *Alvin Purple* celebrated the larrikin Australian spirit. The vastness of the Australian outback was captured in *Walkabout*, which introduced Australians to Yolngu actor David Gulpilil. *Wake in Fright* focused on the darker side of country life. This theme was taken to apocalyptic lengths in the *Mad Max* series, which led to international success for the films, actor Mel Gibson and director George Miller. The sinister depiction of the Australian countryside was a recurrent theme throughout the 1970s, and paved the way for twenty-first-century successes such as *Wolf Creek*.

In 1986, *Crocodile Dundee* became the highest-earning Australian film of all time, banking US$328 million worldwide. The highest-earning Australian films have all been made since then, and include *Strictly Ballroom* (1992), *Babe* (1995), *Red Dog* (2009) and *The Dressmaker* (2015). All of these have told distinctly Australian stories. In 2015, *Crocodile Dundee* was replaced by *Mad Max: Fury Road* (see Source 10) as the highest-earning Australian film ever, taking home US$378 million at the box office.

Source 9 *Picnic at Hanging Rock*, 1975

Source 10 In 2015, *Mad Max: Fury Road* became the highest-earning Australian film ever made.

Sequence this!
The impact of changing technology on television and film

10.7 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 **Identify** which event was the main motivating factor for the introduction of television in Australia in 1956.

Comprehend

2 **Describe** how television helped the development of rock'n'roll in the United States.

3 **Summarise** the Menzies government decision that allowed television to introduce US culture into Australia.

4 **Explain** why the introduction of television in Australia was delayed.

Analyse

5 Select an Australian film that has been released since World War II.
   a **Explain** the image of Australia it portrays.
   b **Analyse** the ways in which the film you have chosen has contributed to Australian popular culture.

6 **Analyse** the significance of the highest-earning Australian films – such as *Strictly Ballroom* and *Red Dog* – telling distinctly Australian stories.

10.8 The birth of Australian soapies and mini-series

Learning intentions

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» define and identify soap operas in Australia

» explore the development of Australian television.

Think, pair, share

- Think about the storylines of soapies and their focus on real life. Why do you think these storylines are so popular?
- Discuss your ideas with a partner.
- Share your thoughts with the class.

The term 'soap opera' was originally used in reference to ongoing radio serials. They were called soap operas because they were usually sponsored by soap companies and featured commercials for soap throughout. Over time in Australia, soap operas simply became known as 'soapies'. These serials were aired during the day, when the main audience was usually comprised of women, who were typically the homemakers. The idea transferred to television in the United States in the early 1950s.

Soapies are characterised by an ongoing storyline that runs across a number of episodes. They often try to depict 'real life', with an emphasis on family life, relationships, emotional and moral conflicts, and topical issues. Cliffhanger endings – unresolved endings that are usually suspenseful – are frequently used to end individual episodes or seasons to encourage the audience to tune in again for the next instalment.

Australia's first television soapie was *Autumn Affair*, which ran on Channel 7 for 15 minutes a day in 1958 and 1959. In 1967, the ABC launched the first early evening soapie, *Bellbird*, dealing with life in a fictional rural town of the same name (see Source 11). The 15-minute episodes were the lead-in to the ABC news. *Bellbird* drew a large and loyal following at a time when the ABC was the only network to broadcast nationally. It was shown until 1977, when it ended abruptly as a result of government budget cuts to the ABC.

Source 11 The local pub in *Bellbird*; from 1967 to 1977, Australians were glued to their television sets watching the first early evening soapie in Australia on the ABC.

Soapies in the 1970s

The 1970s were a time of social, political and cultural change in Australia. By this time, there had been 23 years of conservative government by the Liberal–Country Party Coalition. Australia at the end of the 1970s was largely unrecognisable from Australia during the 1960s. The 1960s had been a time of black-and-white televisions, conscription of young people to fight in Vietnam, and a refusal by the government to allow most Asian people to settle in Australia.

The sense of excitement and social change of early 1970s Australia was reflected in television programs at the time. *Number 96* was launched in 1972 (see Source 12). The series explored the relationships of the residents of a small, inner-city apartment block named Number 96. It caused a sensation because it dealt with issues that had previously been considered taboo (offensive and distasteful) and unsuitable for showing on television. Topics such as nudity, divorce, homosexuality, racism and drugs were explored in the storylines.

Number 96 brought previous cultural barriers crashing down, and it was followed in 1974 by *The Box*. Set in a television station, *The Box* tried to take the sexual themes and nudity of *Number 96* a step further.

The first soapie aimed at teenagers, *The Class of '74*, was launched in the same year, and attracted considerable attention. Set in a high school, it suggested that teenagers had more interest in social activities than schoolwork. This meant that the program was subject to intense legal scrutiny. The Broadcasting Control Board would often demand script changes to make it more 'acceptable' for early evening viewing.

The first Australian soapie, *Bellbird*, had led to a film version as early as 1971, and films based on *Number 96* and *The Box* soon followed. Film versions of television soapies in the early 1970s had several advantages – they could be filmed in colour and they were able to show more nudity than was allowed on television at the time. The arrival of colour television to Australia in 1975 took away some of the advantages held by movie theatres before then.

A new style of 'period drama' soapie was introduced in 1976 when *The Sullivans* was launched. Set in World War II-era Melbourne, it ran until 1982, and drew viewers into the lives of its fictional family. *The Sullivans* echoed the success of Australian films in the 1970s, and reflected an interest in Australians exploring their own culture. Its success was echoed in the 1980s by *A Country Practice*, which revived a *Bellbird*-style of storytelling set in a country town. *Prisoner* and *Sons and Daughters* also found long-running success in the 1980s, and reinforced the dominant position of television in Australian popular culture.

Source 12 Actors Abigail and Joe Hasham in a scene from the television show *Number 96*

Source 13 A still from *Bangkok Hilton* starring Nicole Kidman, shown here with Denholm Elliott, which aired on Australian television in November 1989

Mini-series in the 1980s

The election of Bob Hawke as prime minister in 1983 returned the Australian Labor Party to power. Hawke had a down-to-earth Australian image, and was able to draw a wide following in the community. He was re-elected in 1984, 1987 and 1990. He still holds the record for the highest approval rating of any prime minister, evidenced by the enormous public outpouring of grief when he died in 2019.

The Hawke years were characterised by economic reform and a confidence in Australian popular culture. Television launched a number of mini-series that showed aspects of Australian life. Mini-series were longer than traditional films, but limited to a single, self-contained story rather than the open-ended narrative that had previously been the basis of soapies.

Mini-series boomed during the 1980s as Australian history and culture became hot topics for producers to explore. They included *Bodyline*, which looked at the events behind the 1932–33 cricket series between Australia and England; *The Dismissal*, which examined the sacking of the Whitlam government; *The Cowra Breakout*, which was about a famous incident from World War II; and *Vietnam*, which was a major examination of a war that was still a hotly debated topic in Australian society.

Australian novels such as Ruth Park's *The Harp in the South* and *Poor Man's Orange*, memoirs such as Albert Facey's *A Fortunate Life*, and novels about Australia such as *A Town Like Alice* all provided material for successful mini-series. Aboriginal and Torres Strait Islander issues were firmly placed on the television agenda with the acclaimed *Women of the Sun*, while *Bangkok Hilton* starring Nicole Kidman (see Source 13) fictionalised the experience of young Australians caught smuggling drugs from Asia.

Source 14 Scott Robinson (Jason Donovan) and Charlene Robinson (Kylie Minogue) in their wedding scene from *Neighbours*, 1987; this episode remains one of the most-watched in the history of the show. It aired to an audience of 20 million in Britain in November 1988.

Neighbours and *Home and Away*

Australia's interest in gathering around the television to share the lives of fictional soap characters culminated in two extraordinarily long-running shows that aired for the first time in the 1980s – *Neighbours* and *Home and Away* (see Sources 14 and 15). When *Neighbours* was first shown in 1985, Ronald Reagan was president of the United States, the Cold War still pitted the United States and the Soviet Union against each other, and Bruce Springsteen was touring Australia for the first time. A 15-year-old who watched the debut episode of *Neighbours* turned 50 in 2020. *Home and Away* followed shortly after, premiering in January 1988 – the same year that Australia recognised its bicentennial (200th anniversary) of British colonisation.

These two television soapies have, between them, aired almost 20 000 episodes. As with the mini-series boom, they emerged from an Australia that was becoming increasingly confident in using popular culture to explore its own stories. As the bicentennial of Australia's colonisation approached, there was a focus on national reflection, and a questioning of what being Australian meant. The lives of 'ordinary'

Australians shown in fictionalised settings, such as Erinsborough (*Neighbours*) and Summer Bay (*Home and Away*), were now seen as a valid source of entertainment. Teen audiences emerged as a major target for advertisers. This helped both soapies to dominate Australian and international ratings throughout the 1990s and early 2000s. After a 37-year run, *Neighbours* was cancelled due to a lack of funding and aired its last episode in July 2022. Months later, it was announced that *Neighbours* would recommence filming in early 2023.

The shows have also proved a rich training ground for aspiring actors and musicians. Among the talent to have emerged from *Neighbours* and *Home and Away* are Guy Pearce, Kylie Minogue, Jason Donovan, Melissa George, Julian McMahon, Isla Fisher and Margot Robbie. All played recurring roles in the soapies before moving on to major international success.

Although celebrating the life of average Australians, both shows have been criticised for focusing on a 'white' view of Australia. And while both series have dealt with controversial social issues – such as drugs, sexuality and teen pregnancy – race and ethnicity have rarely featured. Token attempts at introducing minor characters have failed to challenge criticism that the racial composition of Erinsborough and Summer Bay does not reflect that of modern Australia.

Sequence this!
The birth of Australian soapies and mini-series

Both series project a vision of Australia that has proven extremely attractive to overseas viewers. The image of Australia as a country of sunshine, surf and white faces proved irresistible in many markets. *Neighbours* was so successful in Britain that, in 1988, programmers were forced to move it from early to late afternoon because so many school students were failing to return to school after going home at lunch. *Neighbours* was shown in countries as diverse as Kenya, Barbados, Iceland and Ireland. In the 1990s it was even shown in the prized US market. *Home and Away* has been popular throughout Europe, as well as in Israel and Canada.

Each show enthusiastically embraced social media as a way of interacting with a new audience, which was necessary to sustain such longevity. In 2009, *Neighbours* became the first Australian television show to establish Twitter accounts for its characters and, in 2011, was the first television show to be available on an iPhone app for an increasingly tech-savvy young audience. Both shows offered viewers the opportunity to catch up on missed episodes and preview forthcoming stories through their websites.

Source 15 Morag Bellingham (Cornelia Francis), Alf Stewart (Ray Meagher) and Eric 'Ric' Dalby (Mark Furze) in the long-running Channel 7 soapie *Home and Away*

10.8 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 **Identify** the first Australian soapie.

Comprehend

2 **Describe** the main characteristics of soapies.

3 **Explain** how Australian soapies changed during the 1970s.

Analyse

4 **Analyse** the influence of Australian television on the development of Australian popular culture.

Apply

5 Explain why you think Australian soapies have become so popular overseas. **Justify** (give reasons for) your answer.

6 Do you think Australian soapies such as *Neighbours* and *Home and Away* should include characters from a broader range of racial/ethnic backgrounds? **Discuss** your answer by giving a reasoned argument for and against, and concluding with your opinion.

10.9 Changes in the music industry

Learning intentions

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

- examine significant developments in Australian music
- analyse the significance of *Countdown* and Triple J.

From its earliest days in Australia, rock'n'roll was branded as rebellious music for teenagers. The supposed link between rock'n'roll and teenage misbehaviour was established before there were any rock'n'roll bands in Australia. The first rock'n'roll film, *Rock Around the Clock*, was released in Sydney on 14 September 1956. Ten days later two youths were fined for dancing in Pitt Street after viewing the film.

The origins of Australian rock

In the early years of the Australian rock industry, most songs were covers of US artists and bands. The first original Australian song was probably 'Rock'n'Roll Washboard' by the Schneider Sisters, written in November 1956. The Schneider Sisters came from a country music background. This was typical of the early Australian rock acts, with established artists from other music genres attracted to rock'n'roll because of its novelty value and links to the emerging teenage market.

KEY CONCEPT
Evidence

The first rock'n'roll star?

To this day there is considerable discussion about who released Australia's first rock'n'roll record. The most likely pioneer of Australian rock'n'roll was a First Nations man called George Assang. He was born on Thursday Island, Queensland, and his smooth singing voice gained him regular work fronting jazz and swing bands on the Australian circuit. On 12 July 1956, under the stage name Vic Sabrino, he released a version of 'Heartbreak Hotel' simultaneously with Elvis Presley's version.

There is some debate about when Assang recorded a cover of Bill Haley's 'Rock Around the Clock', but whether it was 1955 or 1956, the Vic Sabrino jazz/swing version of 'Rock Around the Clock' could be Australia's earliest attempt at rock'n'roll, coming some two or three years before Johnny O'Keefe's 'Wild One' in 1958.

For more information on this key concept, refer to page 228 of 'The history toolkit'.

Johnny O'Keefe

Johnny O'Keefe is remembered as one of the most significant Australian rock'n'roll performers of all time. O'Keefe was born in 1935 and began his singing career in the 1950s. From humble beginnings, he went on to have national and international success with songs such as 'Wild One', 'Shout!' and 'She's My Baby'.

A riotous night of partying was the inspiration for 'Wild One'. Released in 1958, this was the first genuinely Australian rock'n'roll hit record. It has subsequently been recorded by artists as diverse as Jerry Lee Lewis, Joan Jett, Status Quo and, most famously, Iggy Pop. In fact, the Iggy Pop version has been used as the theme to ABC TV's *Rage* for more than 25 years.

In his 20-year career, O'Keefe released more than 50 singles, 50 EPs (extended play records) and 100 albums. To this day he remains Australia's most successful chart performer, with 29 Top 40 hits to his credit in Australia between 1959 and 1974.

Source 16 Johnny O'Keefe performing on stage in 1963

Surf music

The massive popularity of **surf music** that started around 1962 launched the next phase of Australian music. Sydney band The Atlantics created a huge local hit, 'Bombora', which was released internationally, even receiving the US *Cashbox Magazine* Record of the Week award. Suddenly surf bands were everywhere, playing suburban dances and sending teenage boys in search of guitars so they could imitate their favourite band and be 'cool'.

surf music
a style of music originating in the United States in the early 1960s, characterised by high-pitched, harmonised vocals and lyrics relating to surfing

The classic rock line-up of guitars, bass and drums emerged at this point, and major international recording labels such as CBS and HMV began investing in the local Australian music industry. As The Beach Boys made the charts in the early 1960s, their vocal style started to influence surf music. A 14-year-old Australian singer by the name of Little Pattie entered the charts with 'He's My Blonde Headed Stompie Wompie Real Gone Surfer Boy' late in 1963. The summer of 1963–64 was the high point of the surf music craze in Australia.

The beat boom

The 'beat boom' was a period during the early 1960s when a style known as beat music became popular in the charts. Put simply, beat music was a fusion of rock'n'roll and rhythm and blues (R&B) that developed in Britain at this time, and led to a 'British invasion' of the music charts around the world. The overwhelming popularity and success of The Beatles was one example of the British invasion. Their Australian tour in June 1964 revolutionised the Australian music industry (see Source 17). Teenagers across the country were hungry for new records and live concerts. As a result, many new Australian rock bands formed and the music industry in Australia boomed from 1964.

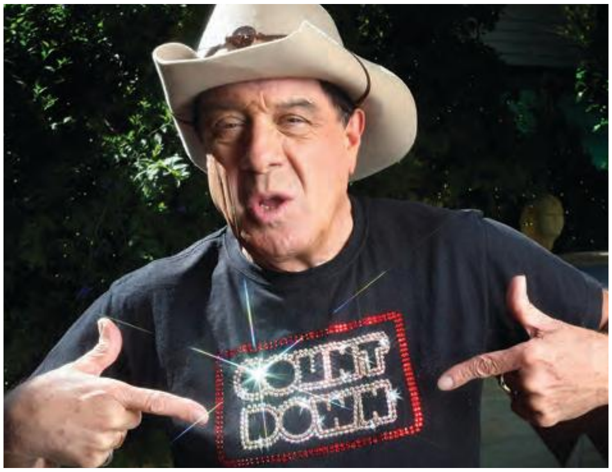
By 1966, The Easybeats and Normie Rowe, two of the biggest names in Australia, had moved to England in search of international fame and success. The Easybeats recorded 'Friday on My Mind' in London in 1966. It reached the Top 20 in the United States and the Top 10 in Britain, and would go on to be voted the best Australian song of all time in 2001. Rowe recorded a number of songs in London that were huge hits back in Australia.

Source 17 The Beatles arrive in Adelaide, 12 June 1964.

The 1970s: *Countdown* and Triple J

Australian music became much more diverse in the 1970s and the ABC launched a television show that brought young people's music to an even wider audience.

Television had played a significant role in allowing access to rock music since Johnny O'Keefe was given a show called *Six O'Clock Rock* in 1959. Because the ABC was the only national broadcaster at the time, any show on the ABC was key in broadcasting material to the more remote areas of Australia.



Source 18 *Countdown* provided a national stage for promoting new Australian acts to young people. Rock icon Ian 'Molly' Meldrum was the host of this influential television music show, which screened from 1974 to 1987.

When a new music program called *Countdown* started on 8 November 1974, its host, Ian 'Molly' Meldrum, became a household name. *Countdown* provided a national stage for promoting new Australian acts to young people. Sunday evenings became primetime viewing for teenagers wanting to know what was happening in Australian music. The show made stars of acts such as Skyhooks, Sherbet and John Paul Young. The show ran until 1987 and became the most popular music program in Australian television history.

In 1975, the Whitlam government granted the ABC the first new radio licence in an Australian capital city since 1932. The ABC used the licence to set up Australia's first non-commercial rock radio station, known as Double J. Double J started broadcasting in January 1975. Committed to alternative music and challenging the commercial monopoly on rock, Double J started broadcasting with Skyhooks' 'You Just Like Me 'Cos I'm Good in Bed', which had been banned by commercial radio stations.

Double J changed its name to Triple J in 1980 when the FM band was opened for radio broadcasting; and the dream of a national youth radio network was finally realised in 1989, when Triple J became a national network.

Since its first broadcast, Triple J has played a crucial role in championing Australian music, often playing music that commercial radio programmers deemed unsuitable. The annual Triple J Hottest 100 has become a staple of Australian music. It gives Australian bands the opportunity to compete with international artists. The 2016 and 2022 Hottest 100s, for example, were topped by Australian musician, DJ and producer Flume, and the Number 1 track in 2018 was by Ocean Alley.

Source 19 Radio presenters Adam Spencer and Helen Razer in the Triple J studio in Ultimo, New South Wales, 1998; both Spencer and Razer moved from Triple J to careers in more mainstream media, and Triple J continues to give new young radio presenters an opportunity.

Perhaps the greatest indicator of Triple J's contribution to the Australian music industry is its support for emerging independent Australian bands. Sydney band The Jezabels reached Number 16 with 'Mace Spray' and number 49 with 'Easy to Love' in the 2010 Hottest 100. Spacey Jane won the 2018 Triple J Unearthed competition, which resulted in their inclusion in the 2018 Falls Festival line up. Both The Jezabels and Spacey Jane achieved these goals while being totally independent acts without the backing of a major label. Providing opportunities for these artists over the years indicates why the government's support for a youth radio network was such a critical decision in the development of the Australian music industry.

By harnessing new technological developments such as colour television (*Countdown*) and FM broadcasting (Triple J), Australian music was able to enter an era of genuine international acceptance.

Australian music goes global

From Johnny O'Keefe's attempt to get into the US market in 1959 to The Jezabels' independent assault on Europe and North America in 2011, Australian acts have always attempted to test themselves against the rest of the world. The 1980s saw an explosion of Australian acts that had a genuine global impact on the music scene. From the early 1980s, bands such as Brisbane's The Go-Betweens developed a cult following across Europe and North America. Following in their path were bands such as INXS, Midnight Oil, AC/DC, Nick Cave and the Bad Seeds, Jet, The Vines and Savage Garden, who have achieved global recognition representing a diversity of sounds. More recently, Australian artists such as Gotye, Sia, Troye Sivan and The Kid Laroi have achieved international fame and won a host of awards – an indication of the wider success and acceptance of Australian music on the world stage.

Australian popular music is critical for Australia's cultural life. It allows a range of Australians to express views and opinions, and establishes an understanding of modern Australia on a global scale. It has also grown from a cultural form that was despised by an older generation into a major contributor to the Australian economy. It was estimated that music-related activities added $1.55 billion of value to the Australian economy in 1984–85, and between $4 and $6 billion in 2017. That is an enormous change from the days when Vic Sabrino recorded a cover of 'Rock Around the Clock'.

Sequence this!
Changes in the music industry

The next step in securing the future of rock music as Australian popular culture came on 5 October 2011, when Triple J launched Triple J Unearthed, a new station devoted entirely to promoting the music of unsigned Australian bands. The digital and online station was set up to help the next generation of musicians prepare to follow in the footsteps of artists ranging from Johnny O'Keefe to Ocean Alley.

Source 20 Australian singer and songwriter Sia began her career in Adelaide in the 1990s. Today, she is one of the most internationally recognised Australian recording artists in the world. In 2014, her single 'Chandelier' charted in the Top 5 in more than 20 countries around the world, and the video of the song has been viewed more than 2.3 billion times on YouTube.

10.9 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 **Identify** when surf music became popular in Australia.

2 **Identify** at least three Australian acts that have achieved musical success overseas.

Comprehend

3 **Summarise** how the Whitlam government helped the Australian music industry.

4 **Explain** what impact The Beatles' tour of Australia had on the local music industry.

Analyse

5 **Analyse** the significance of *Countdown* as a part of Australian popular culture.

Apply

6 **Evaluate** how artists such as Flume and Ocean Alley highlight the importance of Triple J to the Australian music scene.

10.10 Changes in the film industry

Learning intentions

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

- summarise significant contributions to the Australian film industry
- identify US and Asian influences on the Australian film industry.

By the 1950s, most Australian cities and suburbs had access to a picture theatre. Going to the 'flicks' was a popular pastime for people of all ages and generations. Signs of change were apparent in 1954 when the first drive-in cinema opened in Melbourne. This reflected the emergence of the private car as the main means of transport, as suburbs expanded in the postwar baby-boom era. The most significant change for the Australian film industry at this stage was the emergence of television from 1956. With families able to stay at home to watch entertainment, many suburban picture theatres had closed by the end of the decade.

The *Crocodile Dundee* phenomenon

On 30 April 1986, the film *Crocodile Dundee* premiered in Australia. It was produced on a budget of about $10 million and starred the Australian comic actor Paul Hogan, who had risen to prominence after winning *New Faces*, a popular talent contest broadcast on television. Two versions of *Crocodile Dundee* were released at the time – an Australian version and an international version that replaced Australian slang with more easily understood words.

Source 21 Paul Hogan in *Crocodile Dundee*, 1986

Hogan's Michael J. 'Crocodile' Dundee became a huge hit in Australia with his 'blokey' humour and 'no worries' attitude. The international appeal of such an obviously Australian character was put to the test when *Crocodile Dundee* was released in the United States on 26 September 1986. It proved a sensation, eventually becoming the second-highest-grossing film of the year there, taking more than US$174 million at the box office. Hogan also won a Golden Globe award for his performance, and the film was shown worldwide, from Argentina to Zimbabwe.

Crocodile Dundee placed Australian film firmly on the world stage, and was arguably the greatest boost to the Australian tourist industry ever. Hogan became the face of Australian tourism with his 'Put another shrimp on the barbie' campaign. *Crocodile Dundee* remained the highest-grossing Australian film of all time until 2015, when it was eclipsed by *Mad Max: Fury Road*. Even though the two sequels, *Crocodile Dundee II* and *Crocodile Dundee in Los Angeles*, failed to achieve anything like the success of the original film, it remains the most popular Australian film series of all time in terms of international success. In 2020, Hogan revisited the role of 'Crocodile' Dundee in the film *The Very Excellent Mr Dundee* (which achieved less-than-excellent success).

Towards a global film industry

The US film industry is the most dominant force in world film. Its sheer financial power and deals with distributors mean that independent theatre owners in Australia are often disadvantaged financially if they do not show major Hollywood films. The power exerted by Hollywood has meant that government support and financial assistance have become essential for the Australian film industry to survive.

The success of small-scale films such as *Animal Kingdom* prove that this ongoing support for the Australian film industry is not wasted. *Animal Kingdom* won the 2010 AFI award for best film, and saw Jacki Weaver receive an Academy Award nomination for best supporting actress. It has been adapted into a US television series, which aired several successful seasons and reached Australian audiences via Netflix. Government support has allowed Australia to retain a viable and relevant film industry – essential for genuine cultural expression in the twenty-first century.

An alternative to Hollywood domination has emerged in the twenty-first century with the development of Australian links with India's thriving Bollywood film industry. The term 'Bollywood' is a combination of two words: Bombay (the city at the heart of the Indian Hindi film industry, now known as Mumbai) and Hollywood (a reference to the similarities between the industries in India and the United States). Indian film producers have prepared a handbook for working with Australian film producers and media, and many Bollywood films have started using Australia as an 'exotic' backdrop during filming. By late 2006, major Indian films such as *Love Story 2050*, *Heyy Babyy* and *Chak De! India* were being filmed in Australia, and crews were routinely moving between Australia and India.

Source 22 Advertisements for Bollywood films

Australia's increasing cultural links with Asia have also seen anime (Japanese animated cartoons) emerge as an important element of the film scene. The Japanese anime film *Akira* (1988) became a cult hit in Australia, and was the predecessor of an art form that has gained increasing attraction in popular culture through the rise of video and computer games.

Blockbusters in Australia

The development of major film production studios in Sydney, Melbourne and across Queensland has meant that Australian studios have gathered highly skilled workers. Major blockbusters – including *The Matrix* series, *Star Wars* Episodes 2 and 3, and *Thor Ragnarok* – have been made in Australian studios.

In 2021, following the devastation of the COVID-19 pandemic, Marvel Studios announced that their multibillion-dollar production studio would move from the United States to Sydney for the next five years. This is partly due to Australia's management of the pandemic, which allowed the Australian industry to continue making films while much of the United States remained under threat from the virus. Additionally, the Australian Government offers lucrative tax incentives for businesses that want to produce films locally.

Quiz me!
A quick quiz on changes in the film industry

10.10 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 **Identify** Australia's most successful film. How successful was it?

Comprehend

2 **Explain** what caused the slump in the Australian film industry from the 1950s.

3 **Explain** why government support has been so important for Australian film makers.

4 **Summarise** how the COVID-19 pandemic affected Marvel Studios.

Apply

5 Explain how important film is in promoting Australia as a tourist destination. **Propose** (put forward) the film you think would be best for promoting Australia overseas.

6 **Discuss** the evidence suggesting that Australia is moving closer to Asia in terms of the film industry.

7 **Evaluate** the significance of Hollywood blockbuster films being filmed and produced in Australia.

10.11 Changes in the television industry

Learning intentions

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

- describe the development of the Australian television industry
- explore recent changes in technology on television.

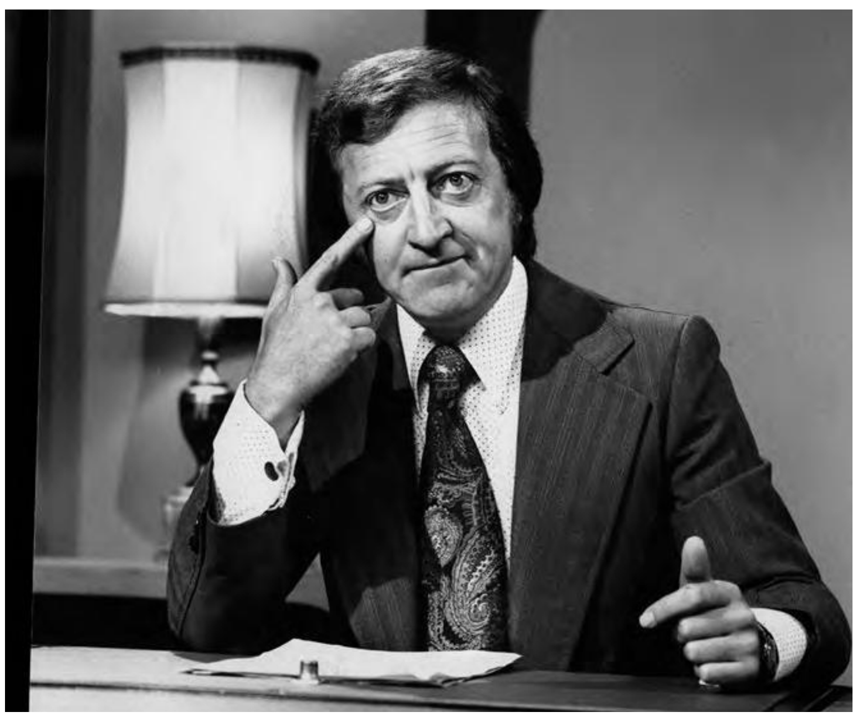
sitcoms
situation comedies; television shows with set characters who, every episode, find themselves in humorous situations

The arrival of television in Australia in 1956 was a major catalyst for change. It ensured easy access to US popular culture, and the Menzies government's decision not to apply any local content requirements (see topic 10.7 on page 10.23) meant that early television was dominated by US shows. Australian children grew up with the *Mickey Mouse Club* and *The Wonderful World of Disney*, while cowboys such as Roy Rogers and Hopalong Cassidy meant Australians became more familiar with the Wild West than with the outback. Crime-based shows such as *Perry Mason* and *Dragnet* were popular adult fare, and **sitcoms** such as *Father Knows Best* and *I Love Lucy* also attracted large audiences.

Television expands

The early 1960s saw the expansion of television into more markets with the introduction of regional stations in places such as Gippsland in Victoria in 1961, and Newcastle in New South Wales the following year. The ABC also continued to expand nationally, and in 1964 new commercial stations Channel 0 (Melbourne) and Channel 10 (Sydney) commenced broadcasting. The introduction of a coaxial cable (an electric cable that transmits radio frequencies) between Sydney and Melbourne paved the way for closer networking between stations in the two major Australian markets. This allowed for such innovations as a split screen that would allow Graham Kennedy in Melbourne and Don Lane in Sydney to appear simultaneously on the Nine Network's *In Melbourne Tonight* (see Source 24).

Source 23 A still from *Father Knows Best*, a 1950s US television program shown in Australia



Source 24 Graham Kennedy hosting the television show *In Melbourne Tonight*, 1973

The other major change to television in the 1960s was the development of satellite broadcasts. Perhaps more than any other technological development, this helped bring the world to Australia. In 1964, *Everybody's Magazine* had boldly predicted that Australians would be able to watch the 2000 Ashes series live on television from England; but in 1967, Australians were watching The Beatles recording 'All You Need is Love' live from Abbey Road studios as part of the historic *Our World* broadcast. Aired to the largest worldwide audience of the time (400 million) on 25 June 1967, *Our World* linked the world by satellite, with contributing countries showing the world an aspect of life in their country. Britain had The Beatles and Italy had Franco Zeffirelli directing his ground-breaking film version of *Romeo and Juliet*. Australia's contribution was a shot of trams leaving their Melbourne depot in the pre-dawn.

Television and sport join forces

The 1967 Sydney Rugby League Grand Final between South Sydney and Canterbury Bankstown was the first sporting event since the 1956 Olympic Games to be broadcast live in Australia. Channel Nine paid $5000 for the rights to a game that was won by Bobby McCarthy's famous intercept try. This telecast proved that sport was the perfect product for television.

By the 1970s, major sports events were regularly televised. The importance of the link between television and sport was shown in 1977 when Kerry Packer (then owner of Channel Nine) launched a 'raid' on the sport of cricket, creating a private World Series Cricket competition in a successful bid to force the Australian Cricket Board to allow him the right to broadcast test matches. The 1976 Olympic Games from Montreal had its opening and closing ceremonies broadcast live, and by the 1984 Los Angeles Olympics, a wide range of popular events were being broadcast live into Australian homes. The 1977 AFL Grand Final between Collingwood and North Melbourne was the first shown live in Melbourne. The exciting match showed that all football codes could be major drawcards in attracting viewers.

Source 25 Kerry Packer

Multicultural programming

The composition of the Australian population had changed significantly since World War II, and the establishment of the Special Broadcasting Services (SBS) in Melbourne and Sydney in 1980 under the Fraser government was the first real mainstream media recognition of this. Broadcasting in a wide range of languages, it played a crucial role in helping immigrants adjust to Australian life. By the mid-1980s, SBS had expanded throughout most of the country.

Children growing up in 1960s Australia had been watching **multicultural** television without the term ever being used. Channel Nine had started showing a Japanese series called *The Samurai* in 1964 to cash in on the interest generated by the forthcoming Olympic Games in Tokyo. It invited viewers to write in if they wished to see more episodes and were deluged with positive replies. *The Samurai* became a massive hit in Australia. The sight of children jumping from trees while flinging imaginary star knives became commonplace, as Australian viewers were introduced to the intricacies of medieval Japanese society.

The success of *The Samurai* revealed the generation gap as vividly as rock music had. For older people in Australian society, World War II had finished fewer than 20 years earlier, and inviting Japanese culture onto Australian television was unimaginable. For children brought up in the Cold War, however, the **communist** Russians were a more logical enemy than the Japanese; and Shintaro, hero of *The Samurai*, became a major popular culture figure in Australia.

multicultural
when several different cultures coexist peacefully and equitably in a single country; a policy of multiculturalism aims to achieve a society in which a range of different cultures are made to feel included, accommodated and protected by law

communist
a supporter of communism, a way of organising a society in which the means of production (e.g. factories, farms and machinery) are publicly owned (by the state) and goods are distributed equally according to need

Source 26 A still from *Astro Boy* (in Japanese: *Tetsuwan Atomu*, literally meaning 'Mighty Atom'), 1963

Japanese anime was also introduced to Australian television viewers in the 1960s. *Astro Boy* was a mid-1960s favourite, and the Japanese-style drawing marked it as significantly different from the traditional US-style cartoons that were the staple of most afternoon television (see Source 26). Its futuristic plot – set in the year 2000, where robots and humans coexist peacefully – had resonance in the Cold War-influenced world in which Australian children were growing up.

The theme of cooperation was echoed in the other Japanese cartoon series to be a 1960s hit in Australia, *The Adventures of Kimba the White Lion*. By the time *Sailor Moon* arrived on Australian television screens in the 1990s, Australian viewers had long accepted anime as a form of television popular culture.

Pay TV

The early 1990s saw two major changes to the Australian television landscape. A policy introduced by the Hawke government meant that regional areas suddenly had access to three commercial channels rather than one. This meant that, for the first time, regional Australia was able to view virtually the same programs as people living in major cities.

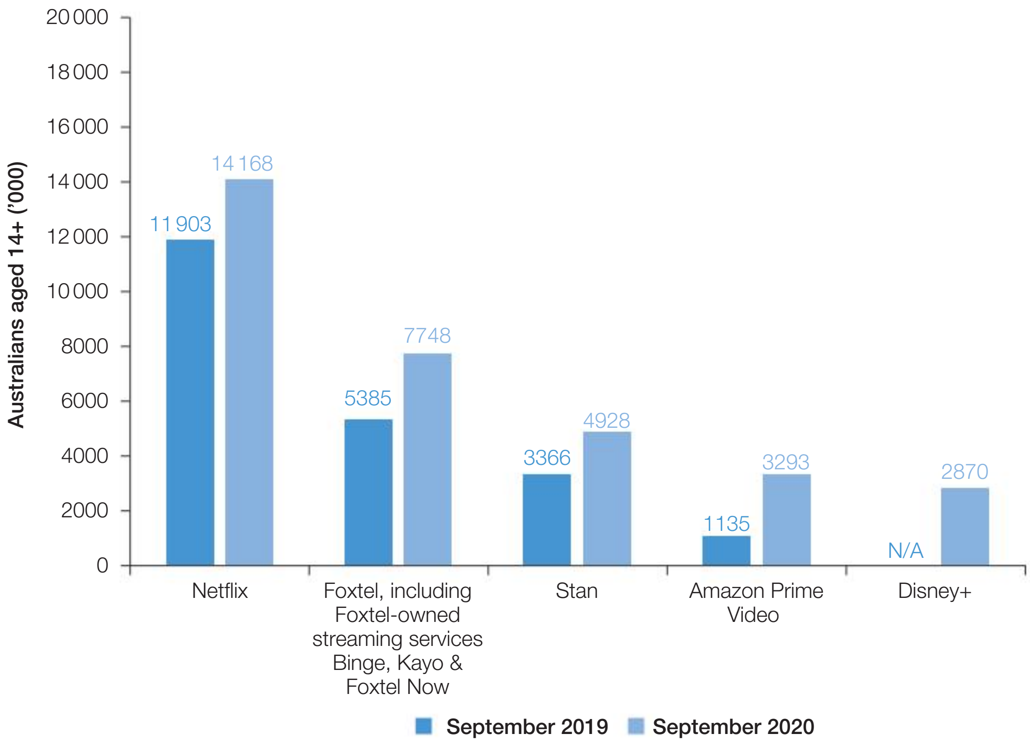
The other change was the introduction of subscription television, or pay TV. The idea of paying for extra services was a major change to the way Australians viewed television. Paying for something that had always been free (except for television licences, which had been removed in 1974 by the Whitlam government) went against the general Australian understanding of the medium.

The first Australian pay TV provider was Galaxy, which began in 1995. Foxtel, Optus and Austar were introduced to the market in 1995, and by 1998 Foxtel had absorbed Galaxy. The first major impact of pay TV was the rugby league dispute known as the 'Super League war'. Rugby league had proved a popular sport on television, and Rupert Murdoch's News Ltd realised it would be a key to the company's investment in Foxtel being profitable. In an attempt to secure exclusive broadcast rights, News Ltd secretly signed clubs and players to create a breakaway competition. Court action during 1995 and 1996 failed to resolve the dispute, and two rugby league competitions existed in 1997. The warring parties came together in 1998, with News Ltd gaining a 50 per cent partnership in the running of rugby league, as well as obtaining broadcast rights for most games for the Foxtel network.

Online streaming television and movie services

In 2015, a number of new video-on-demand services launched in Australia – once again changing the media landscape. Providers such as Netflix, Stan, YouTube Red and Foxtel Now offer a different kind of experience to more established pay TV models. These services enable viewers to stream video content via their televisions and a range of other devices (such as tablets and mobile phones), and to access a large bank of content for a single monthly fee. Many of these services do not require customers to sign up for a minimum contract period.

In 2020 during the COVID-19 pandemic, popularity of streaming services skyrocketed as many states in Australia experienced long, government-enforced lockdowns to help combat the spread of the virus. Source 27 shows the jump in streaming subscriptions between September 2019 – when they had already reached a high level of popularity – and September 2020, when many Australians were staying home during the pandemic.



Source 27 Number of users per subscription services in Australia, 2019–20

The free-to-air television revolution

The Australian Government committed the country to a digital-only television platform by mid-2010. This was a new means of broadcasting that was slowly implemented across the country from 1 January 2001. Digital broadcasting meant higher-quality image and sound, as well as additional channels. Free-to-air stations were given the opportunity to broadcast smaller niche channels, and each commercial network has developed a number of spin-off channels. The Ten Network, for example, launched One (a lifestyle channel), Eleven (a comedy channel) and TVSN (a shopping channel). At the same time, the Seven Network launched 7mate (aimed at males aged from 16 to 49), as well as 7TWO and 7flix (a movie channel). The ABC launched a 24-hour news channel and ABC Kids (a channel aimed purely at children).

Quiz me!
A quick quiz on changes in the television industry

10.11 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 **Identify** the first sporting event broadcast live in Australia.

2 **Identify** the hero of the 1960s television show *The Samurai.*

3 **Identify** the two sports that had major splits over the purchase of television rights.

Comprehend

4 **Explain** why the development of communication satellites was so important for Australian television.

5 **Explain** how 1960s Australian children's television showed that there was a generation gap in Australian society.

Analyse

6 **Examine** Source 27.

a **Describe** the trend in this graph.

b **Explain** the reasons for this trend.

Apply

7 Explain why sport is so important to Australian television. Use examples to **justify** your response.

8 As a class, **discuss** which events you think should be guaranteed free-to-air television broadcasting.

10.12 Australian music goes global

Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» investigate the contribution of the Australian rock'n'roll industry to the world.

Rock'n'roll established itself as a significant part of Australian popular culture by the late 1950s (see topic 10.9 on page 10.30). It quickly became associated with teenagers, and the challenge was whether it would be able to change and adapt as these teenagers grew older.

The first wave of Australian rock'n'rollers, who followed Johnny O'Keefe's example in the 1957–63 period, stayed in Australia. Rock'n'roll was still considered a novelty, and many musicians were amazed they could get paid for having such fun. The Beatles and other bands made famous during the beat boom of the 1960s made rock'n'roll an international business and broke the US monopoly on originality. The explosion of Australian acts after The Beatles' tour of Australia in 1964 developed a uniquely Australian take on rock'n'roll.

KEY CONCEPT
Significance

The Easybeats

The Easybeats are regarded by many as the greatest Australian rock'n'roll band of the 1960s. The band formed at Villawood Migrant Hostel in Sydney. After becoming the biggest band in Australia in 1965, they travelled to England in search of international success.

In 1966, they recorded 'Friday on My Mind' in London. The song reached the Top 10 in England and the Top 20 in the United States, and it made The Easybeats major European stars. The song is still played regularly on many classic hits radio stations across America, and was a feature of the 2009 British film, *The Boat that Rocked*, about a pirate radio station in the 1960s.

Arguably the greatest recognition of the song's impact on a global stage was a tribute found on Bruce Springsteen's 1980 album, *The River*. At the end of the second verse of the popular song 'Out in the Street', Springsteen sings the words: 'I've already got Friday on my mind'. For an artist with Springsteen's deep understanding of rock'n'roll history, this showed just what a major contribution The Easybeats made to international popular culture.

For more information on this key concept, refer to page 243 of 'The history toolkit'.

Source 28 Australian rock band The Easybeats, 17 November 1966

Widespread success

The significant contribution that Australian music made to international popular culture was not always reflected in record sales. For example, Brisbane band The Go-Betweens became the favourite band of music lovers across three continents without ever having a major hit record. Bands such as Men at Work, INXS and Midnight Oil certainly sold more records internationally, but The Go-Betweens, whose music was described as 'striped sunlight sound', took Brisbane to the world. Despite this, the desire to achieve overseas success has continued to drive Australian acts to this day.

International success can be measured in record sales, as was the case with Savage Garden, who dominated late 1990s charts in the United States and Britain. A sell-out concert at a key venue is another measure of cultural achievement. INXS at Wembley Stadium in London in 1991 and the John Butler Trio in 2010 at Red Rocks in Colorado are two examples.

It has been a continuity in Australian cultural life that overseas success is widely regarded as the measure of 'making it'. Australian artists such as The Teskey Brothers and Gang of Youths (see Source 30) have revealed how strongly that desire still burns; for example, in 2019 Gang of Youths signed with the US label Warner Records.

Australian music continues to make a significant international contribution to the popular culture of rock'n'roll.

Source 29 Daniel Jones and Darren Hayes of Savage Garden perform at the Melbourne Glasshouse, 1998.

Source 30 Sydney indie rock band Gang of Youths are taking Australian popular music to the world.

Quiz me!
A quick quiz on Australian music going global

10.12 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 **Identify** Australian musicians who achieved international success in the 1960s, 1990s and 2000s.

2 **Identify** which Bruce Springsteen song is linked to The Easybeats' 'Friday on My Mind'.

Comprehend

3 **Explain** ways in which international success for Australian musicians can be measured.

Apply

4 **Investigate** the career of one of the following: The Easybeats, The Twilights or Normie Rowe. Analyse their significance in Australian cultural history.

5 With a partner, **discuss** the suggestion that music is Australia's most significant cultural export since World War II.

10.13 Australian film goes global

Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» investigate the contribution of the Australian film industry to the world.

Since the New Wave of the 1970s, Australian film has helped establish a vision of Australia for many people overseas. The use of *Crocodile Dundee* star Paul Hogan in tourism advertisements helped ensure the connection between film and a national image.

In 1986 *Crocodile Dundee* became the highest-grossing Australian film of all time because of its international success (until 2015, when it was overtaken by *Mad Max: Fury Road:* see topic 10.10 on page 10.34). Its celebration of Australia as a laid-back culture with a vast outback full of strange wildlife and interesting characters became a highly marketable vision of the county. In 1994 came *The Adventures of Priscilla, Queen of the Desert* (see Source 31), which also brought Australia's outback scenery onto the screen. While the film was both praised and criticised for its presentation of LGBTQIA+ characters, its positive depiction of drag queens certainly helped to make it a significant film and contributed to its international success.

The film gave rise to a musical version, *Priscilla, Queen of the Desert*, in 2006. This was another example of popular culture changing and evolving over time, and marked a further Australian contribution to international popular culture. The show, based on the film, has mounted successful productions in London, Toronto and New York. The film had won an Academy Award for costume design, and the Broadway production in New York won a Tony Award in the same category in 2011.

Source 31 A still from *The Adventures of Priscilla, Queen of the Desert*, 1994, starring Hugo Weaving, Terence Stamp and Guy Pearce

Gallipoli

The 1981 film *Gallipoli* was a major example of the revival of the Australian film industry. Directed by Peter Weir, and starring Mark Lee and Mel Gibson, it not only dramatised the role of Australian troops at Gallipoli, but also linked the Australian soldiers to Australian cultural values such as mateship, larrikinism and a disdain of authority.

The film focused on Western Australian members of the Australian Light Horse enlisting, training in Egypt and finally participating in World War I. It showed the attempt to capture The Nek on the Gallipoli Peninsula from the Turks. Written by playwright David Williamson, it placed the blame for the needless slaughter of Australian troops firmly on the shoulders of the British leadership.

Gallipoli has been criticised for historical inaccuracies, including: The Nek was a diversion for New Zealand troops, not the British; other groups such as the Royal Welsh Fusiliers also suffered losses trying to support the Australians at The Nek; and the failure to call off the attack was an Australian, not a British decision.

This film has proved just how influential popular culture can be. Despite the inaccuracies mentioned above, it has been a staple of high school history lessons since its release. More broadly, it has contributed to the elevation of Gallipoli as the most significant campaign of World War I for Australia, despite its unsuccessful outcome and the far greater losses – and higher stakes – on the Western Front in France.

By linking the Gallipoli campaign so closely to Australian identity and values, such as mateship, the film also fostered the politicisation of the Gallipoli campaign; that is, it caused it to become political in character. Before 1981, it was an important part of Australia's historical story, but it was not politicised. In 1990, Prime Minister Bob Hawke travelled to Gallipoli for a dawn service with veterans and called the site 'a part of Australia'. Prime Minister John Howard visited Gallipoli in 2000 and 2005, although his 2005 visit attracted criticism because of his decision to attend a barbecue with Australian soldiers on the beach rather than attend the New Zealand service.

continued on next page

KEY CONCEPT
Significance

Quiz me!
A quick quiz on Australian film going global

Source 32 *Gallipoli*, 1981, starring Mark Lee and Mel Gibson

continued from previous page

The downplaying of the New Zealand contribution to the ANZAC legend and the criticism of British leaders have been two aspects of the politicisation of the Gallipoli campaign since the release of the film in 1981. Former Prime Minister Paul Keating ignited further controversy in 2008 when he said:

> the truth is that Gallipoli was shocking for us. Dragged into service by the imperial government in an ill-conceived and poorly executed campaign, we were cut to ribbons and dispatched – and none of it in the defence of Australia.

At the time, he was widely criticised, despite the fact that he was expressing a sentiment that was common in the 1970s.

Perhaps the best evidence of the significance of the film is that it was denied government funding at the time because it was seen as 'uncommercial'. A decade after its release, the Australian Government started the process of linking Gallipoli, Anzac Day and Australian identity tightly together with the dawn services.

For more information on this key concept, refer to page 243 of 'The history toolkit'.

10.13 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 **Identify** the director, main actors and writer of the 1981 film *Gallipoli*.

Comprehend

2 **Describe** the image of Australia the films mentioned in this topic portray.

3 a **Explain** why *The Adventures of Priscilla, Queen of the Desert* was criticised when it was released in 1994.

b With reference to the historical concept of continuity and change, suggest how the film would be received today (see page 237 of 'The history toolkit' for more on continuity and change).

Apply

4 **Propose** (put forward) two reasons why linking films and tourist advertisements (as with *Crocodile Dundee*) is a way to encourage tourism in Australia.

5 **Evaluate** whether you think the film *Gallipoli* did or did not change attitudes to the Gallipoli campaign.

6 'Films such as *Gallipoli* do not always need to be historically accurate.' To what extent do you agree with this? A lot (strongly), a little bit (somewhat) or not at all? Write a short paragraph **justifying** your position.

10.14 Australian television goes global

Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» investigate the contribution of the Australian television industry to the world.

Australian television suffered initially because of the Menzies government's decision to not require a quota of locally produced shows when television was launched in 1956 (see topic 10.7 on page 10.23). As a result, Australian television was filled by US and, to a lesser extent, British popular culture. Despite occasional hit shows – and moments of real originality, such as *The Mavis Bramston Show* in the 1960s – it is difficult to talk about an Australian industry with the potential to contribute globally until the 1980s.

Skippy the Bush Kangaroo

Australians had finally accepted Australian stories on television with the success of *Bellbird* from 1967, and the great soapie boom of the 1970s with *Number 96*, *The Box*, *The Sullivans* and *The Restless Years*. *Skippy the Bush Kangaroo*, which was made in Sydney between 1966 and 1968, went international. The stories of the adventures of an incredibly perceptive kangaroo who guided her human friends to safety and captured baddies with ease presented a distinctly Australian vision to the world.

Skippy's international success was unique at the time. It was sold to the United States and Canada, was translated into Spanish and was sold throughout Central America, where it gave many people their only knowledge of Australia. It was sold in countries as culturally diverse as Spain and Iran. The one country *Skippy* could not get into was Sweden, where authorities refused to show it because they were afraid it would give children false ideas about the capabilities of animals.

Source 33 Garry Pankhurst as Sonny Hammond with Skippy in a scene from *Skippy the Bush Kangaroo*

From *Prisoner* to *Bluey*

Quiz me!
A quick quiz on Australian television going global

While Australian music and film had made inroads into the US market, Australian television had traditionally been more closely linked to Britain. Culturally, Australia's ties to Britain had always been strong, and a shared sense of humour often meant that British and Australian shows were incomprehensible to US audiences.

The premiere of *Prisoner* in 1979 was the start of Australia producing shows that had some potential to influence the global marketplace. *Prisoner* ran until 1986 in Australia, and developed strong audiences internationally, particularly in Britain and Sweden. Set in a women's prison, it often dealt with controversial social topics such as sexuality, drugs and domestic violence. Despite its often grim content, *Prisoner* generated at least two different stage productions in Britain. In 2013, it was rebooted as *Wentworth*. *Wentworth* is a modern retelling of *Prisoner* and it ran for eight seasons.

The success of *Prisoner* paved the way for the *Neighbours* and *Home and Away* phenomenon that began in the 1980s (see topic 10.8 on page 10.26). The attractiveness of the Australian lifestyle depicted in these two shows helped boost their popularity in the gloomier climates of northern Europe.

In 2005, comedian Chris Lilley's mockumentary *We Can Be Heroes* appeared on the ABC. It was followed in 2007 with *Summer Heights High*. Both shows created controversial but memorable characters who reflected aspects of the 'typical Australian'. They were sold to overseas markets, including the United States and Britain, and *Summer Heights High* reached markets as far afield as Togo and Kenya. The international success of these shows helped finance Lilley's third show, *Angry Boys,* which premiered in Australia in 2011. With guaranteed airplay in the major markets of the United States and Britain, as well as New Zealand, *Angry Boys* was an important contributor to international popular culture. In recent years, however, Lilley has been criticised for certain characterisations in his shows, particularly those involving race and ethnicity. In 2020, Netflix removed all the shows mentioned above from its platform.

A more recent Australian export to the United States, Britain and China is *Bluey* (see Source 34). This Brisbane-made children's television series first aired in 2018, amassing an impressive 261 million views on ABC iView (the ABC's digital streaming platform). The show has been widely praised for the way in which it tackles real-world issues, including recycling, smartphones and gender stereotypes. Although aimed at five-to-seven-year-olds, *Bluey* is widely loved by people of all ages. In 2019, a deal between BBC Studios and Disney allowed the show to be streamed internationally. In the first three months of 2020, season one of *Bluey* was viewed 15.6 million times from the United States, Britain, the Middle East and Central America. In 2019 it received the Logie Award for Most Outstanding Children's Program and an International Emmy Kids Award in the preschool category.

Source 34 A promotional image from *Bluey*

Kath & Kim

Kath & Kim is an Australian sitcom that ran for four seasons and spawned two films, *Da Kath & Kim Code* (2005) and *Kath & Kimderella* (2012). The show focuses on the lives of Kath, an optimistic middle-aged mum, and Kim, her self-centred adult daughter who moves home suddenly after leaving her husband. The show follows their day-to-day exploits with family and friends, including Kath's 'great hunk-a-spunk' partner Kel, Kim's sporty 'second-best friend' Sharon, and Kim's dopey husband Brett.

The show premiered on the ABC in 2002 and was immediately met with acclaim in Australia. Audiences fell in love with the honest observations of Australian culture that the show offered. It is particularly loved for its use of language, including the famous phrases 'look at me' (pronounced 'moooiyy') and 'it's "noice", it's different, it's unusual'. *Kath & Kim* is credited with coining the phrase 'muffin-top' in relation to the section of stomach that hangs over Kim's low-rise jeans. Famous guests appeared throughout the show's four-season run, including Kylie Minogue, Geoffrey Rush, Eric Bana, Michael Bublé and Shane Warne.

In 2008, *Kath & Kim* was remade for US audiences. The show's success in European markets had alerted the US studios to its potential, but they felt that it must be remade because of the inherent Australianness of the show. Producers thought that the Australian slang and humour would make it incomprehensible in the United States. However, the US version lasted only one season, and was a failure both in the United States and when shown on Australian television.

Kath & Kim is undoubtedly one of the most culturally significant television shows to have been created in Australia. Today, new generations of fans are discovering the show, thanks to its availability via streaming services such as Netflix.

For more information on this key concept, refer to page 243 of 'The history toolkit'.

Source 35 Jane Turner and Gina Riley as Kath and Kim

KEY CONCEPT
Significance

10.14 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 **Identify** the first Australian television show to have any real impact internationally.

Comprehend

2 **Summarise** why Sweden refused to show *Skippy*.

3 **Explain** what enabled *Bluey* to be easily accessible internationally.

Analyse

4 In 2020, amid the global Black Lives Matter protests, Chris Lilley's television shows were removed from Netflix. Suggest two reasons why you think this occurred.

Apply

5 **Evaluate** the impact of *Kath & Kim* on Australian popular culture.

6 Research popular phrases from *Kath & Kim*. In pairs, **discuss** how many of them you already know and what this tells you about the significance of the show.

10B SKILLS IN CONTEXT

Test me!
Once you've finished the topics in this section, test yourself with this quiz and find out which worksheet you should do.

'Ozploitation'

The Australian New Wave movement of the early 1970s through to the mid-1980s marked the revival of Australian cinema (see topic 10.7 on page 10.23). Nearly 400 movies were produced during these years – more than had ever been made in the history of the Australian film industry. The Australian New Wave movement is best remembered for critically acclaimed movies such as *Picnic at Hanging Rock* (1975) and *Gallipoli* (1981). However, at the same time, a series of low-budget B-grade movies were being produced.

These films took advantage of the introduction in 1971 of the R-rating (restricting movies to people aged 18 years and older). They exploited themes such as sex, nudity, horror, adrenalin-fuelled action and car chases, and 'ocker' comedy in order to excite audiences. Many became box office hits. Hollywood director Quentin Tarantino became a fan of Australian 'exploitation films', such as *Patrick* (1978) and *Mad Max* (1979). In a 2008 documentary, *Not Quite Hollywood*, Tarantino used the term 'Aussiesploitation' to describe these films. This was later shortened to 'Ozploitation'. Tarantino even cited *Patrick* – a horror film about a coma patient with psychic powers – as influencing his own blockbuster *Kill Bill* films (2003–04).

Often considered to be a smaller wave within the Australian New Wave movement, 'Ozploitation' films are today remembered as some of the most defining artefacts of Australian popular culture.

Source 36 Mel Gibson in *Mad Max*

Source 37

I always remember that actor [Robert Thompson, who played the title role in *Patrick*]. I thought he was amazing looking, with his eyes wide open and everything, and in the original script [for *Kill Bill*] I had it written like that. I showed it to Uma [Thurman], and she goes 'I'm not gonna do that', and I go 'Why?' She goes 'You wouldn't have your eyes wide open like that if you were in a coma. That's not realistic.'

And I go 'Actually, I never thought was it realistic or not, it's just *Patrick* did it, and it looked really cool!'

Extract from an interview with Quentin Tarantino, taken from the documentary *Not Quite Hollywood*, 2008

Source 38 Director Quentin Tarantino was heavily influenced by 'Ozploitation' films such as *Patrick* (1978) when writing and filming the *Kill Bill* films (2003–04), starring Uma Thurman.

KEY SKILL
Questioning & researching

Locating and evaluating relevant sources

Being able to locate relevant primary and secondary sources using the internet is an important historical skill. However, not all information you find on the internet is necessarily true, accurate, reliable or credible. You need to be able to evaluate the reliability and credibility of the information you find. Use the following steps to apply this skill:

Step 1 Identify key words related to your topic and type these into a search engine. (Use only key words – do not type in whole sentences or questions.)

Step 2 Add further relevant key words to refine your search.

Step 3 Assess the reliability of each site by asking yourself the following questions:

- Who is the author or creator? If it is an individual, does this person have credentials listed (for example, a degree or title?) If it is an organisation, is it a reputable organisation such as a government or university department?
- What is the purpose of the website? Is it trying to inform, persuade or sell?
- Is the site objective? Is the author biased?
- Is the information accurate? Can the information be verified?
- Does the site contain spelling mistakes or grammatical errors? (If so, this is usually an indication that the site is not particularly reliable.)
- Is the information current? Can you find evidence of recent updates?

For more information on this skill, refer to page 226 of 'The history toolkit'.

Practise the skill

1 Using the steps outlined above, locate and **identify** relevant, credible and reliable source material about the making and reception of:
   a three Australian Ozploitation films released between 1971 and 1985
   b three other Australian films of the New Wave era.

2 Record the key points in a data chart like the one below. Make sure you record the URLs of the sites you have used.

Extend your understanding

1 Refer to the information about Australian New Wave cinema in this chapter and use the internet to find posters of two highly acclaimed films from this era (for example, *Picnic at Hanging Rock* or *My Brilliant Career*). Write a report to **explain** how the different ways these films were promoted can help historians draw conclusions about the different perspectives of audiences at the time.

	Title	Budget	Distribution	Reception	Earnings	URLs of websites
Ozploitation films						
Film 1						
Film 2						
Film 3						
Australian New Wave films						
Film 1						
Film 2						
Film 3						

10.15 The birth of the environment movement

Learning intentions

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

- summarise the conditions that led to the environment movement
- analyse the historical impact of the pictures of the Earth taken during the *Apollo 8* mission.

Quiz me!
A quick quiz on the birth of the environment movement

On Christmas Eve in 1968, the three-man crew of *Apollo 8* became the first people to orbit the moon. When they came around from the dark side of the moon, they saw Earth rise as a single, fragile ball in space, just as we see the moon. William Anders, the pilot of the lunar module, took a photograph of an 'Earthrise' (see Source 1). That image impressed upon many people the idea that the Earth was a small and vulnerable part of the universe. It emphasised how precarious and unique Earth's continued existence was. *Life* magazine commented on the 'Earthrise' photograph, saying that it 'inspired contemplation of our fragile existence'.

Source 1 *Earthrise* – this well-known photograph of Earth, taken from space in 1968, changed how people perceived the planet.

Much of what we now regard as **environmentalism** originated in the 1960s, but a study of the historical roots of environmental thought and action is essential to really understand what happened in that decade.

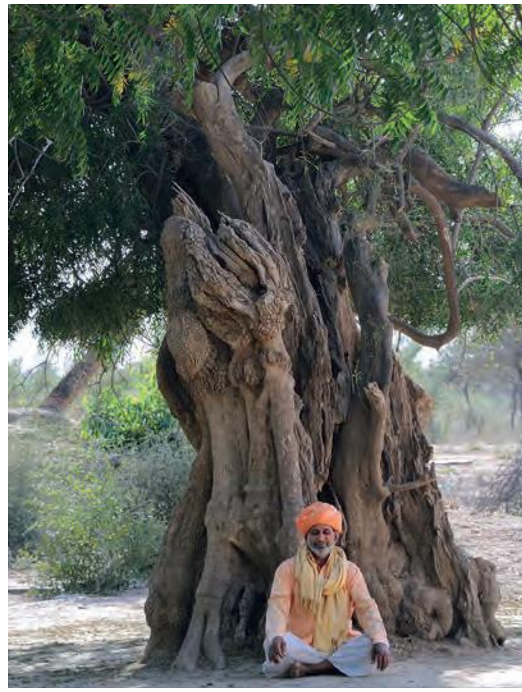
environmentalism
a broad philosophy and social movement concerned with environmental protection

Concerns about the human impact on the environment are not new. There is evidence that as early as 6000 BCE, **deforestation** was contributing to the collapse of societies in the Middle East. By 200 BCE, the Greek physician Galen was observing copper miners and noting the danger of 'acid mists'.

deforestation
the removal of trees and other plant life from a forested area, usually carried out to clear the land for farming

Throughout history, there have been individuals and groups determined to protect their environment. One example is the Bishnois tribe of Rajasthan (a region in modern-day India) in the eighteenth century. The Bishnois linked environmental activism with strong spiritual beliefs. They worshipped nature, and their warrior heritage led to their aggressive protection of all living things.

In 1730, more than 300 Bishnois were massacred while protecting a grove of Khejri trees. A local king had needed wood to build a palace, and so he sent officials into Bishnois territory to cut down a forest of Khejri trees. A Bishnois woman hugged a tree to protect it, saying that she would rather die than give up her beliefs, so a soldier cut her head off. Eventually, the king gave way to the Bishnois protesters, and today the Bishnois territory is a green oasis in a largely desert area.



Source 2 A Bishnois man meditates under a Jal tree. The tree is estimated to be 1000 years old.

The Industrial Revolution and environmental awareness

From the mid-eighteenth century, the world underwent dramatic and rapid changes that we now refer to as the **Industrial Revolution**. Britain, and then other countries in Europe, began to **industrialise** quickly. Agricultural changes – in the way crops were produced and the introduction of labour-saving machinery – meant that fewer farm labourers were needed. People had to change their living situations and move to cities in search of jobs at the fast-growing factories. The demand for coal increased, as it became the fuel to drive the machinery of the Industrial Revolution. The invention of the **internal combustion engine** was the final step in the revolution that saw the increasing use of other **fossil fuels**, such as petroleum, to produce energy. People at this time considered themselves to have gained control over nature.

Early impacts of the Industrial Revolution

Historians have argued about the impact of the changes brought about by the Industrial Revolution, but it has become clear that major environmental degradation began in this period. Smoke spewed out of factory chimneys day and night, and the worsening air quality became obvious.

The burning of coal, smoke and other by-products of manufacturing polluted the air in cities. In 1852, **acid rain** – which forms when sulphur dioxide and nitrogen oxide mix in the atmosphere – was identified as being a result of manufacturing processes. With populations concentrating in cities, the disposal of waste also became a problem. Advanced farming techniques contributed to the rapid degradation of soil, and the deforestation of previously untouched land began in many of the colonised countries of the world.

The demand for fuel resources meant mining expanded rapidly, as did international trade. Steamships required massive amounts of coal – thousands of tonnes for one transatlantic crossing. For the first time in history, large-scale burning of coal, and later oil, was pouring pollution into the atmosphere.

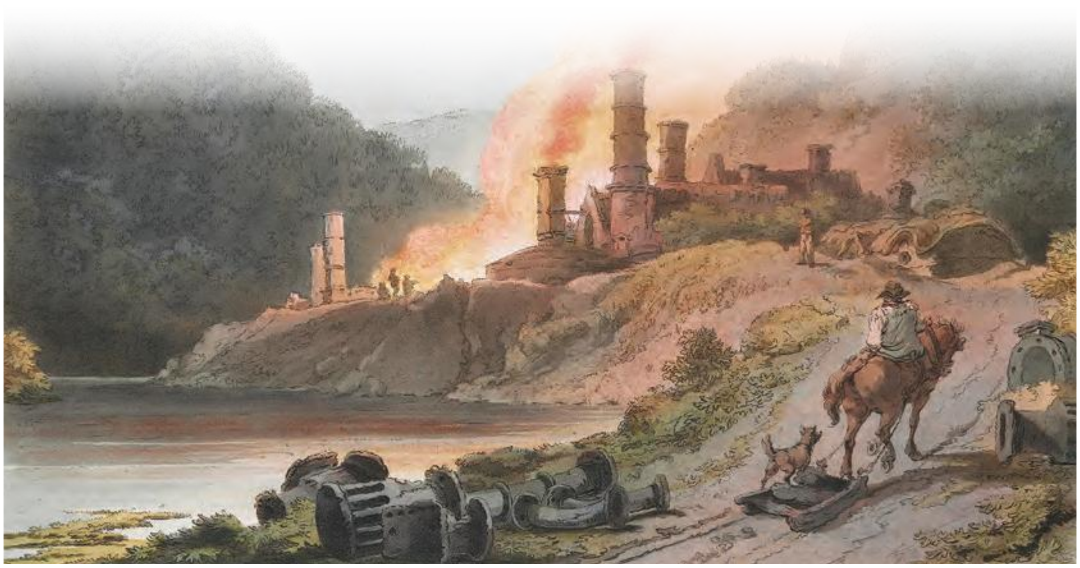
Industrial Revolution
the period of rapid development in manufacturing and industry from 1750 to 1900

industrialise
to transform from an economy based primarily on agriculture and farming to one based on manufacturing and industry

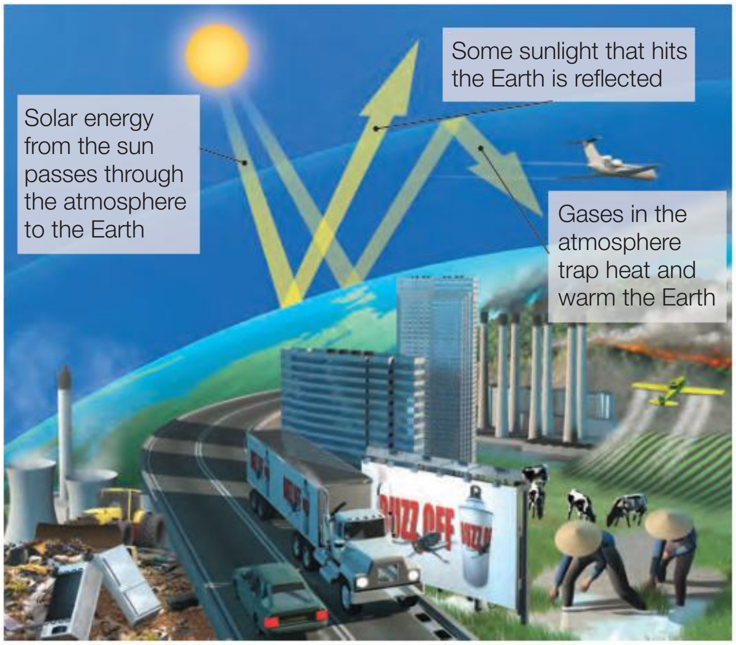
internal combustion engine
an engine that generates power by burning petrol, oil or another fuel with air inside the engine itself

fossil fuel
a fuel made from the decomposed (fossilised) remains of plants and animals that lived millions of years ago (e.g. coal, oil, gas)

acid rain
rainfall made acidic by pollution in the atmosphere



Source 3 The Industrial Revolution saw working people move off the land and into factories. Coal was burned to drive steam-powered engines, causing the first examples of industrial pollution.



Source 4 The greenhouse effect causes the sun's warmth to become trapped in the Earth's atmosphere.

The greenhouse effect

The greenhouse effect is a term that came into common use in the late twentieth century. When gases in the Earth's atmosphere (such as carbon dioxide) hold onto the heat from the sun and redirect it back to the Earth, the resulting warmth is similar to that of a greenhouse (see Source 4).

In its natural state, the greenhouse effect makes life on Earth possible because it allows the sun's warmth to be retained in the atmosphere and on the surface of the Earth. Since the Industrial Revolution, however, the burning of fossil fuels and the clearing of forests have made the greenhouse effect more severe. This is called the enhanced greenhouse effect. Scientists have shown that when we burn fossil fuels, there is an increase in carbon dioxide. This means that less heat can escape from the atmosphere, which leads to the warming of the planet. Because the Earth is warming too much now, sea levels are higher. Higher sea levels have led to the destruction of many island and coastal habitats.

French mathematician and physicist Joseph Fourier first introduced the theory of a greenhouse effect. In 1824, he calculated that the Earth should be significantly colder than it is, because of its distance from the sun. His research suggested that the Earth's atmosphere may act as an insulator, helping it retain warmth. Fourier's work was expanded by British physicist John Tyndall in 1858. Tyndall developed technology that measured the ability of various gases to absorb infrared radiation. His experiments proved that water vapour absorbed large amounts of infrared radiation, and was the major controller of air temperature. Tyndall was the first to accurately measure the capacity of gases such as nitrogen, oxygen, carbon dioxide and ozone to absorb infrared radiation. This work proved the existence of the greenhouse effect.

Despite the pioneering work of Fourier and Tyndall, there are still arguments about the enhanced greenhouse effect among scientists and politicians. There is considerable debate about whether human activity (such as in large-scale manufacturing and the use of fossil-fuelled cars) is responsible for or contributes to global warming and **climate change**.

climate change
a change in global or regional climate patterns; a change apparent from the mid to late twentieth century onwards and attributed largely to the increased levels of atmospheric carbon dioxide produced by the use of fossil fuels

10.15 Check your learning

Comprehend

1 Identify and **describe** the event that took place in the 1960s and prompted people to consider the fragility of the Earth.

2 **Summarise** how increasing levels of carbon dioxide in the atmosphere cause the Earth to become warmer.

3 **Explain** how the Industrial Revolution increased environmental damage.

Analyse

4 **Analyse** the significance of the pictures of the Earth taken during the *Apollo 8* mission.

Apply

5 **Apply** the historical concept of cause and effect to explain how using appliances in your home contributes to the greenhouse effect.

6 **Determine** the impact the Bishnois tribe had on protecting the environment in which they lived.

7 **Create** a poster for your school that encourages people to turn off unused appliances. Ensure you mention the effects this would have on the environment.

8 a Using the internet, **investigate** current arguments for and against the concept of the enhanced greenhouse effect.

b **Create** a table that briefly outlines these arguments.

10.16 The impact of population increase and urbanisation

Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» explain the impact of increasing industrial production and trade on the environment.

Since the beginning of the twentieth century, the population of the world has grown immensely and people have become increasingly urbanised. Where once most people lived in rural communities, now half the world lives in urban centres.

Population increase in the twentieth century

Our planet has sustained a rapidly growing population. The total world population in 1900 was estimated to be 1.6 billion. In 2021 it reached 7.8 billion. In 1901, the first **census** of the newly federated Australia revealed a population of 3 773 801. In March 2021 the Australian Bureau of Statistics (ABS) estimated the population of Australia to be 25 756 097.

census
a 'head count' or audit of the number of people living in a particular place at a particular time; information collected during a census often includes age, occupation, income, etc.

Malthus and overpopulation

Thomas Malthus (1766–1834) was an English clergyman and scholar. Unlike most people of his time, he did not think that society would keep progressing forever. He developed a theory that linked population growth with the ability of the environment to sustain that growth. He believed that population growth is eventually stopped by famine or disease.

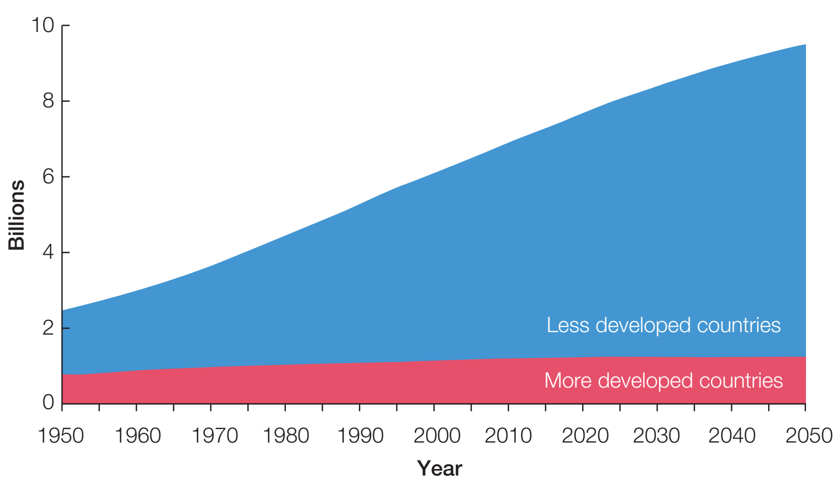
In 2007, it was suggested that the Industrial Revolution meant the world had broken free of the Malthusian cycles of growth and decline. The following year, it was argued that Malthus was right because of the pressure that rising consumption and industrialisation in developing economies, such as China and India, was placing on the environment.

United Nations
an international organisation established at the end of World War II to increase political and economic cooperation among its member countries, to promote peace and to prevent the future outbreak of armed conflicts around the world

Future population predictions

According to the **United Nations** (UN) publication *World Population Prospects: The 2012 Revision*, by 2050 the world will have a population of 9.6 billion. It is expected that India will have the largest population of any country – India and China will both have populations of 1.45 billion by 2028, but China's population will decrease after that date, while India's will continue to grow. Many African countries will continue to see increased populations. For example, the report states that Nigeria's population will be double that of the United States; it is currently about half that of the United States. The population of Europe, in contrast, will decrease by 14 per cent.

UN predictions have historically had to be updated regularly, but they can give us a general idea of what the world can expect in the future.



Source 5 The UN's predicted world population growth to the year 2050

Source 6 High-density living in large apartment buildings, such as these in Hong Kong, is becoming an increasingly common urban experience.

Source 7 The world's most populous cities through time, based on the work of historian Tertius Chandler, 1987

Year (CE)	Most populous city	Population
100	Rome, Italy	450 000
1000	Cordova, Spain	450 000
1500	Beijing, China	672 000
1900	London, UK	6 480 000
1950	New York, USA	> 12 000 000

Graph it!
The world's most populous cities through time

Urbanisation

The 2018 revision of the *UN World Urbanization Prospects* report showed that the world's urban population had increased from 13 per cent in 1900 to 49 per cent in 2005. It showed that 2007 was the 'tipping point' year, when more people on Earth lived in urban areas than rural areas.

In the early years of the twenty-first century, city centres – that had previously become neglected as people had moved to suburbs – started to once again attract people to live as well as work. Australian cities were part of this trend, as high-rise living in city centres such as Sydney, Melbourne and Brisbane became more popular.

The growth of cities has major ecological implications, including:

- Most of an urban population is engaged in producing goods and services rather than growing food.
- Cities are a major drain on energy resources.
- Cities lead to a concentration of problems, such as waste disposal.
- Cities are built over the natural environment.

10.16 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 **Identify** the figure predicted by the UN for the world's population in 2050. Do you think this is accurate?

Comprehend

2 **Summarise** the view of Thomas Malthus on population growth.

3 **Explain** why the UN has to constantly update its predictions of what we can expect for the future.

4 **Summarise** some of the environmental problems associated with cities.

Analyse

5 Calculate by how much the world's population increased between 1900 and 2021.

Apply

6 The UN was not able to foresee the timing of a global pandemic such as the COVID-19 pandemic when it wrote its report in 2012. At the time of writing, more than 6 million people have died as a result of COVID-19.

a **Propose** the impact COVID-19 will have on global population data. Write a paragraph explaining your prediction.

b **Propose** two potential problems the world could face if the UN's predictions are in fact accurate.

7 In 1987, a historian named Tertius Chandler did the first serious study of urban population through history. Source 7 summarises his findings on the world's most populous cities over time. In 2010, Karachi in Pakistan was the world's largest city (excluding the wider metropolitan area) with 15.5 million people. **Investigate** to find out what the world's most populous city is today. Write a paragraph to explain the impact that city is having on the environment.

10.17 The influence of popular culture

Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

- investigate the impact of popular culture on the environment movement.

As has been shown, environmental concerns are not new. During the twentieth century, however, awareness of these concerns grew rapidly. Popular culture played a critical role in boosting both awareness and understanding of environmental concerns. Books, magazines and music all helped to bring people together and provide a focus for shared ideas. This, in turn, helped spur the mass movements that have pressured governments over environmental concerns in the twentieth and twenty-first centuries.

Silent Spring

One of the most influential books in increasing awareness of the environment was *Silent Spring* by US marine biologist Rachel Carson, published in 1962. At that time, technological advances had led to the development of increasingly effective pesticides, which removed pests from crops and enabled larger yields. In *Silent Spring*, Carson condemned the use of pesticides and their impact on the environment. She explained how the powerful pesticide DDT not only killed insects, but also entered the food chain and accumulated in the tissues of animals, including people.

Carson was willing to challenge the chemical industry, and alleged that it was spreading misinformation. Furthermore, her accusations that public officials often failed to critically and objectively analyse chemical industry claims became a blueprint for environmentalists who followed her. *Silent Spring* is now seen as one of the foundation stones of the modern environmental movement.

Source 8 A statue of marine biologist and conservationist Rachel Carson, at Woods Hole in Massachusetts, USA; the statue depicts Carson with her notebook, looking out to sea.

Key skill worksheet
Historical perspectives & interpretations: Determining the significance of *Silent Spring*

Impact of *Silent Spring*

A year after the book appeared, US President John F. Kennedy asked his Science Advisory Committee to investigate Carson's claims. The committee's findings led to greater regulation of the use of pesticides. The banning of DDT – which is now known to be toxic to birds and fish, and thought to cause cancer in humans – in the United States in 1972 was hailed as a vindication of Carson's work. Despite these acknowledgments relating to the danger of DDT, it was not banned in Britain until 1984, and is still used today in some countries, including India and North Korea.

A legacy of *Silent Spring* has been its use of scientific evidence to challenge official complacency. By using evidence, Carson created a strong argument that reached a mass audience, and was able to force politicians and public officials to take action. The book also encouraged the public to question the claims of companies that profited from products which affected the environment.

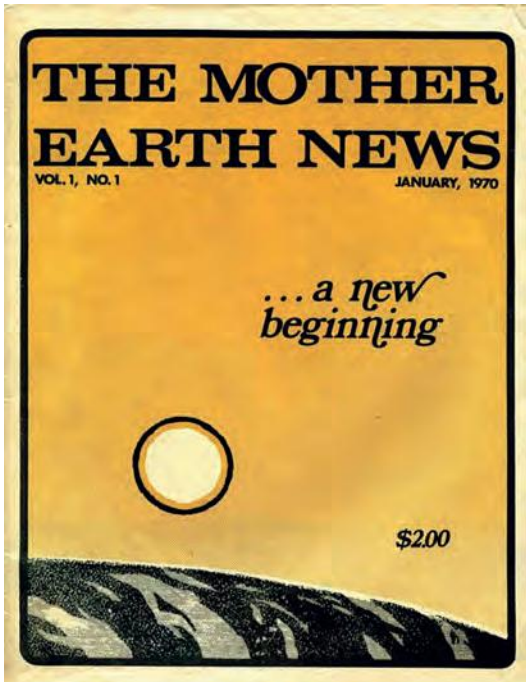
Increased awareness of the effects of pesticides led to the development of an organic farming approach, which entailed a reversion to natural methods of fertilisation and pest control. The popularity of this approach increased with the introduction of genetically modified crops. Genetic modification allows plant breeders to produce crops with specific characteristics that cannot be bred naturally; for example, canola that is tolerant to herbicides and has a high content of omega-3 oil. In 1998, the Organic Federation of Australia was formed to draw together all areas of this emerging contributor to Australian agriculture. The organic food industry in Australia has now reached mainstream supermarkets; cruelty-free, free-range animal farming has become normalised. The contamination of organic crops by genetically modified crops has also emerged as a significant issue in Australian agriculture.

The Mother Earth News

Two US publications found their way into Australia by the early 1970s, and influenced a movement usually referred to as 'back to the land'. *The Mother Earth News* and *The Whole Earth Catalog* and were influential – initially in the United States and eventually globally. They encouraged a more sustainable, and often communal, living style that coincided with the social changes of the late 1960s associated with the hippie movement.

First published in January 1970 by John and Jane Shuttleworth, *The Mother Earth News* contained practical advice about 'getting back to nature'. It gave advice on how to build sustainable housing, self-supporting gardens and effective methods of recycling. Although many of these approaches have been incorporated into mainstream thinking since then, at the time *The Mother Earth News* was revolutionary.

In Australia, the Aquarius Arts Festival of 1973 was held at Nimbin, on the northern coast of New South Wales (see Source 10). At the conclusion, a number of festival-goers remained in the town. An alternative community developed that embraced many of the ideals of the back to the land movement: communal living, sustainable food production and people removing themselves from what they regarded as the commercial rat race.



Source 9 The first issue of *The Mother Earth News*

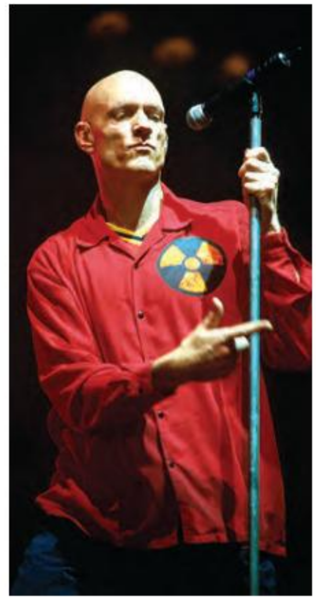
Source 10 Festival-goers at the Aquarius Arts Festival, Nimbin, 1973

The influence of music

From the birth of rock'n'roll in the 1950s, music was a common form of popular culture for young people. Environmental concerns grew rapidly at the same time as rock'n'roll, and music became a powerful means of raising consciousness about social and political issues. Protests against the Vietnam War are well known in music, but rock'n'roll also played a major role in spreading awareness about the fragility of our environment. Well before political campaigns, several artists had hits warning about the potential destruction of the Earth. These songs and artists were major hits globally and, as the music spread, countries such as Australia were heavily influenced. Artists who expressed their concern about environmental issues from the 1960s to the 1990s are summarised in Source 11.

Source 11 Artists concerned about environmental issues, 1960s–1990s

Artist and year	Song and theme
Verdelle Smith, 1965	'Tar and Cement' – an early warning about urbanisation
Joe South, 1969	'Don't It Make You Want to Go Home' – describing the changes around Atlanta, Georgia
Zager and Evans, 1969	'In the Year 2525' – a look into the future and what it holds
Joni Mitchell, 1970	'Big Yellow Taxi' – urbanisation and loss of nature
Marvin Gaye, 1971	'Mercy, Mercy Me (The Ecology)' – the spoiling of the natural environment
The Beach Boys, 1971	'Don't Go Near the Water' – water quality
Randy Newman, 1972	'Burn On' – the Cuyahoga River fire of 1969 (discussed in topic 10.19 on page 10.60)
Midnight Oil, 1990	'Blue Sky Mine' – the experiences of workers who were contaminated at the Wittenoom asbestos mine in Western Australia



Source 12 Peter Garrett is an environmentalist and an activist. He was the lead singer of the Australian rock band Midnight Oil, and is a former minister for the environment.

10.17 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 List the environmental issues highlighted by recording artists from the 1960s to the 1990s.

Comprehend

2 **Explain** the impact of *Silent Spring* on people's increased awareness of pesticides and their effect on the environment.

Analyse

3 Watch the music video for Midnight Oil's 'Blue Sky Mine'. Research the meaning behind the lyrics before responding to these questions:

- **a** The music video begins with a voiceover of news reports. List some of the words or phrases that you hear before the music begins.
- **b** **Explain** why Wittenoom is considered Australia's greatest industrial disaster.
- **c** **Apply** the historical concept of continuity and change to identify which issues raised by the song are still relevant today.
- **d** This song was popular not only in Australia, but also in the United States and the United Kingdom when it was released. Suggest two reasons why this may have been the case.
- **e** **Analyse** the usefulness of song lyrics as primary sources for historical study.

Apply

4 **Investigate** a more recent song that focus on environmental issues. Write a paragraph explaining which issues the song addresses and how it does so.

5 **Evaluate** how useful songs such as 'Mercy, Mercy Me (The Ecology)' might be for a historian.

6 Over the past few years, scientists have noticed a severe reduction in the number of honey bees worldwide. Alarms were raised and fingers were pointed at agriculturalists using pesticides to control a variety of insects that are harmful to crops. One set of pesticides – known as neonicotinoids – is killing animals, including honey bees, that are vital to the life cycle on Earth. **Investigate** honey bees and the use of neonicotinoids for pest control. In a brief report, answer the following questions:

- **Define** the term 'neonicotinoids'.
- **Explain** what neonicotinoids do to honey bees.
- **Explain** the function honey bees perform that is of benefit to farmers and people in general.
- **Propose** what might happen if honey bees were killed off.

Quiz me!
A quick quiz on the influence of popular culture

I used to think, now I think

Reflect on your learning about the influence of music in spreading environmental awareness and complete the following sentences.

- I used to think ...
- Now I think ...

What has changed in your understanding?

10.18 The influence of environmental ideas

Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

- explain the significance of ideas about the environment, including the Gaia hypothesis, sustainability and the rights of nature.

As the twentieth century progressed, the emergence of theories about the interconnectedness of life and the importance of nature clashed with mainstream beliefs about the necessity of growth and development. Some of these key environmental ideas are explored in this unit.

Gaia hypothesis

One development in environmental thinking was the Gaia hypothesis. This theory proposed that the Earth was a single, interconnected, self-contained system that allowed life to flourish.

The original theory was developed by an English chemist, James Lovelock, and a US microbiologist, Lynn Margulis. Their work suggested that the Earth was self-regulating, and that organisms adapted the environment in their favour. It has inspired scientific investigation, and is winning acceptance as more evidence is found. Its idea of interconnectedness has had significant impact on environmental thinking.

Source 13 The Gaia hypothesis sees the Earth as a self-regulating organism, supporting life.

The Limits to Growth

In 1972, a book entitled *The Limits to Growth* was published. It was written by a group of economists who used computer modelling to predict the effects of uncontrolled economic and population growth on the Earth's finite resources. They looked at five variables for their modelling: world population, industrialisation, pollution, food production and resource depletion. The authors came to the conclusion that if the average rate of consumption growth continued, virtually all major minerals and energy resources would be used up by 2070.

In 2008, Graham Turner – an applied physicist at the Commonwealth Scientific and Industrial Research Organisation (CSIRO) in Australia – published a paper comparing figures from the previous 30 years with the predictions made in 1972. He found that the actual changes in industrial production, food production and pollution matched the predictions made by the authors of *The Limits to Growth*.

Sustainability

The idea of sustainability became increasingly important during the twentieth century.

An example of what happens when sustainable management of the environment is ignored is found in the history of Easter Island. There is evidence that Easter Island once contained giant palms, but the inhabitants of the island cut them all down until they were extinct. As a result, Easter Island's society collapsed when its environment was destroyed. Today it can no longer sustain a large population and relies on tourism for its economy.

Countries today are caught between the need to develop economically and the necessity of doing this without ruining the natural environment. If we want to sustain the natural resources we need, we have to take a long-term view of how we will live in our world. In Australia, we are moving towards a more sustainable way of living and working.

Source 14 The recycling of bottles, papers and cans has become common practice in Australia.

An increased emphasis on recycling is an example of sustainability. Planting forests specifically for paper production, rather than exploiting natural forests, is another. In the early 2000s, water restrictions in many Australian cities became commonplace, as governments investigated ways to make our use of water more sustainable; and since 2011 Melburnians have had 'Permanent Water Use Rules'.

Calls for 'paperless' offices tap into a similar demand for more sustainable practices in business. The annual Earth Hour campaign – which asks that lights be turned off between 8.30 p.m. and 9.30 p.m. on the last Saturday in March – is an example of a global movement for sustainability. Earth Hour started as a lights-off campaign in Sydney in 2007 to raise awareness of environmental issues. It has now spread to more than 7000 towns and cities worldwide.

Quiz me!
A quick quiz on the influence of environmental ideas

Source 15 A sustainable forest is managed so that older trees, felled to produce paper and other products, will be replaced by younger plants that will grow into mature trees.

The rights of nature

There has been a growing acceptance of the idea that nature has rights. It picks up on indigenous peoples' relationships with the Earth, and recognises that ecosystems – plants, oceans and mountains – deserve recognition, as do animals. This has always been a component of many traditional beliefs, and has become increasingly influential.

The rights of nature, however, are frequently in conflict with development, and are therefore regarded as a restriction on progress by opponents. It is this division that will prove significant in environmental discussions in the twenty-first century.

10.18 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 In your own words, **define** the Gaia hypothesis.

Comprehend

2 **Explain** how unsustainable living has led to the collapse of Easter Island's society.

3 Identify and **describe** some examples of sustainability that have started to become accepted.

4 **Explain** the link between the rights of nature and indigenous peoples' relationship with the Earth.

Apply

5 **Propose** why some people might be critical of *The Limits to* Growth even after the CSIRO paper in 2008.

6 **Investigate** sustainability practices in place at your school. Write a post for the school Facebook page to make the community more aware of these practices.

7 **Create** a table of the four concepts and ideas discussed in this topic. In the first column, briefly explain the concept or idea; and, in the second column, outline the impact of the concept or idea.

10.19 Key campaigns and events, 1945–75

Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

- investigate a range of key environmental campaigns and events.

decolonised
when a country that was previously a colony of an imperial power becomes politically independent

biosphere
all regions of the Earth occupied by living things (plants, animals, humans and other organisms); the zone of life on Earth

The introduction and use of nuclear weapons in World War II terrified many, but also prompted people to seriously consider the environmental consequences of human actions. Furthermore, as the world recovered from the war, the increasing pressure on economic development had environmental consequences. For example, when countries in Asia and Africa **decolonised**, they found the exploitation of their own natural resources was the key to economic and social progress. Environmental groups developed around the world as a response to business and government indifference to environmental threats.

Environmental activists became increasingly militant as threats to the Earth grew during the second half of the twentieth century. Just as social activism in areas such as civil rights, conscription and the anti-war movement became more acceptable, so did environmental campaigns. People who had previously been dismissed as crackpots and 'tree huggers' began to be taken seriously. Caring for the environment was becoming normalised.

As the end of the twentieth century approached, there were clear differences between those who saw the planet as a resource to be exploited, and those who saw it as a unique **biosphere** to be preserved. Development and conservation frequently became opponents at this time in history.

Smog incidents after World War II

As the world settled into postwar prosperity and industrial expansion after World War II, there were clear warning signs that the environment was suffering. In 1948, in the mill town of Donora, Pennsylvania, 20 people and 800 animals died, and 7000 of the town's 14 000-strong population became ill when a wall of poisonous smog descended. A temperature inversion (in which cold air is trapped beneath a warmer airflow) prevented the escape of emissions of hydrogen fluoride and sulphur dioxide from nearby factories. The situation continued for five days until rain helped clear the poisons from the air. The factories, however, did not begin shutting down until the fifth day – and they reopened the next morning, after rain fell. About 200 more people died in the days after the smog lifted, and many people were left with permanently damaged lungs and hearts.

Source 16 London smog in 1952

In New York City in November 1953, around 200 more people died in another major smog incident.

The Donora smog incident is credited with starting the campaign for clean air – leading to the US Congress passing the *Air Pollution Control Act* in 1955, and, finally, the *Clean Air Act* in 1970.

This movement was echoed in Britain after the Great Smog of 1952 in London. In similar conditions to Donora, the smog lasted five days, and it is now thought that up to 12 000 people may have died as a result of the pollution. Britain enacted a *Clean Air Act* in 1956.

Other key events

In the second half of the twentieth century, several events occurred that forced people to confront the impact humans were having on the environment.

See, think, wonder
Look at Source 16.
- What do you see?
- What do you think?
- What do you wonder?

The Minimata Bay incident, 1956

During the 1950s, Minimata Bay in Japan was heavily contaminated by mercury. Mercury – which is highly toxic – was a waste product that had been pumped into the bay from a chemical and plastics factory. Fish caught in the bay were contaminated, as were the residents, who regularly ate the fish from the bay. In 1956, mercury poisoning led to the deaths of 9000 people, and an estimated 2 million others suffered permanent health problems, such as blindness and paralysis.

Maralinga nuclear tests, 1956–57

In Australia, the Maralinga nuclear tests conducted in South Australia by Britain in 1956 and 1957 (see topic 10.20 on page 10.63) contaminated the food chain, with radioactivity found in cows' milk far from Maralinga. At the time of the Cold War, Australians tended to broadly accept nuclear tests as necessary for their survival. The anti-nuclear campaign really started to develop as Australia was dragged more deeply into the Vietnam War in the 1960s. Anti-nuclear campaigns are discussed in topic 10.24 on page 10.80.

Analyse this!
A fire on the Cuyahoga River in 1952

Earthrise photograph, 1968

As discussed in topic 10.15 on page 10.50, the circulation of a single image, called *Earthrise* – which revealed the Earth as a single, fragile biosphere floating in space – was a profound moment in history. It revealed the interconnected nature of all life on the planet, and started movements such as the 'back-to-the-land' movement.

Cuyahoga River fire, 1969

The Cuyahoga River in northern Ohio was renowned as one of the most polluted rivers in the United States. For many years, industrial waste had been dumped into the river – so much that the river caught fire on at least 13 occasions. The first fire on the river was in 1868, and the largest was in 1952, which caused millions of dollars' worth of damage to bridges and other structures. It was not until 1969, however, after there had been several more fires on the river, that one was reported in *Time Magazine*. The incident caught the attention of the nation, and stimulated a campaign that culminated in the *Clean Water Act* of 1972. It showed that people were starting to effectively organise themselves to oppose the unrestricted expansion of industry at the planet's expense.

Source 17 Firemen spray water at a fire on the Cuyahoga River in 1952.

The flooding of Lake Pedder, Tasmania, 1972

In the late 1960s, the Tasmanian Government cancelled the national park listing of Lake Pedder, and later flooded the region as part of a dam system to provide cheap electricity for industry. The environmental and political consequences of this are discussed in topic 10.22.

Karen Silkwood and the Kerr-McGee company, 1974

Source 18 Karen Silkwood

Karen Silkwood was a chemical technician and union activist at the Kerr-McGee nuclear fuel production plant in Oklahoma in the United States. The company was a major employer in the region, and produced plutonium pellets for nuclear reactor fuel rods. As part of her union activities, Silkwood was responsible for investigating health and safety issues. At an Atomic Energy Commission hearing in August 1974, she revealed employee safety risks, such as exposure of workers to contamination, faulty respiratory equipment and improper storage of samples.

Silkwood was herself tested for contamination on 5 November 1974, where it was found that she was 400 times over the safe limit for exposure to plutonium. There has been considerable debate over how Silkwood became so contaminated at this time. Kerr-McGee later suggested she was deliberately poisoning herself to make the company look negligent. There has been other evidence to suggest the source of the contamination may have been from within her house.

On 13 November 1974, Silkwood had decided to go public with her investigations of safety breaches at Kerr-McGee. According to a witness, she left a union meeting with a folder of documents to meet a *New York Times* reporter and a union official. On the way to that meeting, Silkwood's car ran off the road and she was killed. Local police investigations called it a single-car accident, caused by Silkwood falling asleep at the wheel. Later investigations, however, raised doubts about the circumstances of her death. The documents she was supposedly carrying to her meeting were never found in the car. There was evidence that her car may have been rammed from the back and forced off the road.

Silkwood's death led to a number of inquiries into the nuclear fuel industry. One of the revelations was that more than 40 pounds of plutonium had gone missing from the Kerr-McGee plant where Silkwood worked – enough to make two atomic bombs. It has not been recovered.

In 1975, Kerr-McGee closed all its nuclear plants. The plant where Silkwood worked was not decontaminated and decommissioned until 1994. At the end of the twentieth century, no nuclear-related plants existed in Oklahoma.

The film *Silkwood* (1983) tells the story of Silkwood's time at Kerr-McGee and her death. She has become a symbol of the struggle for regulation of the nuclear power industry.

I used to think, now I think

Reflect on your learning about the perception of environmental activists and complete the following sentences.

- I used to think …
- Now I think …

What has changed in your understanding?

Additional resource
World: Blank map

10.19 Check your learning

Apply

1. **Create** a timeline to summarise key environmental events and campaigns from the end of World War II to 1975, based on the information in the text.
2. Use the information in the timeline you created in question 1 to annotate a world map, showing the events and dates in the timeline. There is an outline map of the world available on your obook pro. **Investigate** to find out about other significant environmental events and campaigns in this period.
3. Choose one environmental event in this topic to **investigate** further, and write a short story or news article based on the event.

10.20 Nuclear weapons testing

Learning intentions

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

- summarise the impact of nuclear testing
- explain why the United Kingdom conducted major nuclear weapons tests in Australia
- explain how opposition to nuclear testing grew, including the formation of Greenpeace.

A weapon as powerful as the atomic bomb has to be tested, with each test releasing radioactive material into the atmosphere. The first test of a nuclear weapon took place on 16 July 1945, when the United States detonated one nicknamed 'The Gadget' in New Mexico. This was less than a month before the use of the atomic bomb in World War II on the Japanese cities of Hiroshima and Nagasaki. Weapons were also tested in Nevada during the 1950s.

US nuclear tests in the Marshall Islands, 1946–58

As the Soviet Union, Britain and France – and later China, India and Pakistan – acquired nuclear weapons, testing increased. The United States conducted 67 nuclear tests in the Marshall Islands in the Pacific between 1946 and 1958. This included the detonation of the first hydrogen bomb, codenamed 'Castle Bravo', on Bikini Atoll in 1954. Its blast was far more powerful than scientists expected, contaminating the entire area. After the wind changed, it also contaminated fishing boats.

The United States seemed unconcerned about the effects on the soldiers and locals who would be exposed to nuclear fallout after the Bikini Atoll nuclear tests. Although the locals were removed from the region before the blasts, they returned within three years. Many developed symptoms of radiation sickness, so they were removed once again. In 1956, the Marshall Islands were declared the most contaminated place on Earth by the Atomic Energy Commission. The area is still unliveable, more than 60 years after the test.

Source 19

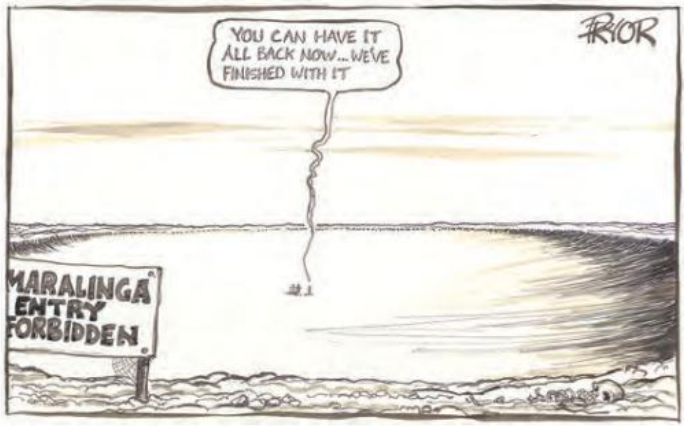
> It would be very interesting to go back and get good environmental data … so as to get a measure of the human uptake, when people live in a contaminated environment … Now, data of this type has never been available … While it is true that these people do not live, I would say, the way Westerners do, civilized people, it is nevertheless also true that they are more like us than the mice.

Extract from a statement by a scientist in a secret meeting held in January 1956, where the decision was made to allow Marshall Islanders to return to live on Rongelap Atoll, 160 kilometres east of Bikini Atoll

Source 20 A view of the second atomic bomb explosion at Bikini Atoll, codenamed 'Baker', 25 July 1946

British nuclear testing in Australia

Britain tested its nuclear weapons in Australia because Australia had more open spaces and underpopulated areas than Britain. Australia also still had close ties with Britain, due to colonial links. Weapons were exploded at the Monte Bello Islands just off the Western Australian coast, on Christmas Island in the central Pacific, and in Maralinga and Emu Field in South Australia. Australian newspapers reported Royal Australian Air Force pilots flying through the aftermath of the nuclear cloud to gather dust samples during the 1950s tests. In spite of British assurances that limited radiation would be released by the tests, there is clear scientific evidence of radioactive material entering the food chain in Australia in the 1950s.



Source 21 Cartoon (1984) by Geoff Pryor, National Library Australia, nla.obj-156502334

British nuclear tests stopped in 1963 and Maralinga was closed in 1967, after British authorities conducted an unsatisfactory clean-up. In 1985 a Royal Commission into British nuclear tests in Australia was conducted, which was highly critical of the British and Australian Governments at the time and stated that there was a lack of commitment to ensuring the safety and welfare of Aboriginal people.

Between 1996 and 2000, 3080 square kilometres of Maralinga country had been cleaned to a standard considered safe for unrestricted access. Maralinga was formally returned to the Tjarutja people in November 2009.

Analyse this!
Cartoon by Geoff Pryor

The formation of Greenpeace

In the early 1950s, the United States had considered the Alaskan island of Amchitka, at the western end of the Aleutian Islands, for nuclear testing. After about 34 test holes had been drilled, the site was deemed unsuitable, and the project was moved to Nevada. But in the 1960s, the United States announced its intentions to continue nuclear testing on Amchitka, despite there being a major tectonic fault in the region, and therefore a risk of earthquakes and tsunamis. The first weapon was detonated there in 1965.

In British Columbia, Canada, some Canadians and US citizens formed a group to oppose the tests and sail into the testing area. They were called the Don't Make a Wave Committee, their name referencing the danger of tsunamis at Amchitka. To raise the funds needed to hire a ship, they organised a fundraising concert in Vancouver, British Columbia, with Joni Mitchell, James Taylor and Phil Ochs, which took place on 16 October 1970. The protesters, who would soon be known as Greenpeace, sailed to Amchitka for the first – and ultimately successful – **direct action** campaign in September 1971. Although the US Navy forced them to turn back, the publicity and public exposure of the dangers of the weapons testing meant that no further nuclear testing took place at Amchitka.

direct action
action that seeks to achieve an end directly and by the most effective means, e.g. by the use of strikes, boycotts and sit-ins

Greenpeace established itself with the aim of ensuring 'the ability of the Earth to nurture life in all its diversity'. Since its formation, Greenpeace has successfully campaigned against many environmental abuses, including French testing of nuclear weapons in the Pacific, whaling, mining in Antarctica and the illegal dumping of nuclear waste.

In 2020, Greenpeace celebrated its fiftieth anniversary with the theme '50 Years of Making Waves'. It remains one of the most significant environmental activist groups in the world, with branches in 55 countries. On the official Greenpeace website, it describes itself as a global network of 'ordinary people willing to do extraordinary things to protect the environment'. It also acknowledges that after 50 years of activism, 'there is still a lot to do'.

Key skill worksheet
Historical perspective & interpretations: Sequencing nuclear weapons testing

Sinking of the *Rainbow Warrior*

Source 22 The Greenpeace ship the *Rainbow Warrior* after it was bombed in Auckland Harbour

The *Rainbow Warrior* was Greenpeace's flagship. In July 1985, the *Rainbow Warrior* was berthed in Auckland Harbour on its way to a protest against French nuclear testing at Mururoa Atoll in the South Pacific. Greenpeace had been sailing into the French nuclear testing zone since 1972, and had embarrassed the French Government by exposing the massive environmental degradation the tests had caused in the region.

France's reputation in the Pacific was suffering as protests increased against its nuclear tests, and French intelligence services developed a plan to prevent the *Rainbow Warrior* from reaching Mururoa Atoll. On 10 July 1985, an explosion rocked the *Rainbow Warrior*. It was designed to blow a hole in the ship and start it sinking, giving people on board time to leave. A second explosion was triggered several minutes later to complete the sinking. A Greenpeace cameraman, Fernando Pereira, had gone back into his quarters to retrieve camera gear when the second explosion occurred. He was drowned.

Investigations in New Zealand ultimately revealed the involvement of French intelligence agents Alain Mafart and Dominique Prieur. They were arrested and jailed, but were later released into French custody after France had instigated an economic boycott of New Zealand.

above-ground nuclear testing
the test detonation of nuclear weapons above ground; such tests can cause large amounts of nuclear fallout

underground nuclear tests
test detonations of nuclear weapons underground; when the device being tested is buried at sufficient depth, the nuclear explosion may be contained, with no release of radioactive materials to the atmosphere

Nuclear testing bans

The impact of nuclear testing in the South Pacific is still felt today. Nuclear contamination will remain for an undetermined number of years. France continued its **above-ground nuclear testing** in the Pacific until 1974, and China tested above ground until 1980. A ban on nuclear weapons testing was signed by most nuclear countries in 1996, when France finally ceased its **underground nuclear tests** in the South Pacific. India and Pakistan, which did not sign the ban, last tested weapons in 1998. The most recent nuclear weapons test was conducted by North Korea in 2017.

10.20 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 **Identify** how long it was after the hydrogen bomb tests on Bikini Atoll that islanders were returned.

Comprehend

2 List the sites of nuclear testing in Australia. **Describe** what they have in common.

3 **Explain** why Greenpeace was established.

Analyse

4 Read the statement in Source 19 closely:
- a **Explain** the context of this source.
- b What evidence does this source provide about the knowledge, among scientists and the public, of the effects of nuclear contamination during the 1950s? **Explain** your answer.

Apply

5
- a **Investigate** three campaigns Greenpeace has been involved in.
- b Select one of these campaigns and answer the following question: 'To what extent has Greenpeace been successful in this campaign?'

6 Conduct in-depth research about what actually happened in the 'Castle Bravo' test at Bikini Atoll in the Marshall Islands. List the ongoing effect on the environment and the Marshall Islanders.

7 Australian Prime Minister Robert Menzies readily agreed to Britain's request for a permanent nuclear testing site at Maralinga, South Australia. Write a letter to the editor about this decision from the perspective of someone who lives near the proposed test sites.

10.21 Nuclear disasters

Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» investigate the impact of nuclear disasters in the twentieth century.

Since the first commercial nuclear power plant was built in the Soviet Union in 1954, nuclear power has been championed by supporters as a cleaner and more sustainable source than coal-generated power, but it comes with significant risks. Three nuclear disasters, in particular, have had a significant impact on the way people view nuclear power, highlighting the dangers inherently involved with its production.

Three Mile Island, 1979

On 28 March 1979, the Three Mile Island nuclear power plant in the US state of Pennsylvania (north of New York) experienced a partial core meltdown. A core meltdown, which is caused by overheating, is the worst-case scenario for a nuclear power plant, and triggers the widespread release of deadly radiation. Prior to this event, fears about the safety of nuclear power plants were largely dismissed as alarmist. Three Mile Island changed that complacency forever.

In the lead-up, a stuck-open valve in one of the nuclear reactors released a significant amount of coolant from the reactor. An operator, unable to see a hidden indicator light, misread the situation and thought there was too much coolant in the reactor. He overrode the automatic system and released more steam into the reactor, raising the temperature and causing a meltdown.

A couple of days after this initial incident, radioactive gas was released into the atmosphere. A state of emergency was declared, and contradictory reports from officials at the plant about the amount of radiation released had locals hiding in their houses for fear of contamination. The Nuclear Regulatory Commission then authorised the release of 40 000 gallons of radioactive waste water into the Susquehanna River.

A clean-up of the area commenced in August 1979 and public inquiries were held to try to understand the causes of the disaster. In 1993, after a cost of US$1 billion, the clean-up was complete. Although studies have found that residents have not reported increased levels of cancer as a result of any exposure to radiation from the Three Mile Island meltdown, the incident affected public trust in the nuclear power industry.

Source 23 Anti-nuclear power protesters near Three Mile Island, 1979

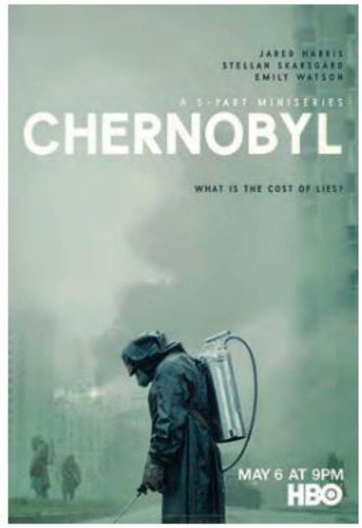
Chernobyl, 1986

On 26 April 1986, the Chernobyl nuclear power plant in Ukraine (then a part of the Soviet Union) exploded. Large quantities of radioactive material were released into the atmosphere – more than 400 times the amount that was released when the atomic bomb was dropped on Hiroshima in 1945. For several weeks, weather reports included the location of the cloud of radioactive material as it made its way west across Europe, and eventually spread across Greenland, Canada and the United States.

Chernobyl is considered the world's worst nuclear disaster.

In the months after the disaster, more than 100 000 people were evacuated from within a 30-kilometre radius of the nuclear plant. A further 230 000 people would eventually be relocated.

Source 24 The abandoned town of Pripyat, near Chernobyl



Source 25 In 2019, the Chernobyl incident was brought to life in an HBO miniseries. The five-part television drama was met with critical acclaim for how it portrayed the human impact of the events at Chernobyl.

Estimates of the number of deaths that can be attributed to Chernobyl vary widely. There is agreement that 31 workers died as a direct result of the explosion. The problem with a nuclear accident, however, is in accounting for the later deaths from radiation and related cancers. Estimates ranged from 4000 to 200 000. A Russian publication from 2007 conducted major research into the question, and came to the stunning and verifiable conclusion that 985 000 people worldwide had died prematurely from exposure to radiation and fallout from Chernobyl.

Fukushima Daiichi, 2011

The Fukushima Daiichi nuclear power plant in east Japan suffered major damage when a massive earthquake and subsequent tsunami struck on 11 March 2011. The earthquake disabled the reactor cooling systems, leading to nuclear radiation leaks and closing the plant. A 30-kilometre evacuation zone was put in place around the plant, and 100 000 people were evacuated from their homes. Some areas are expected to stay within an exclusion zone for decades. It is still too early to assess its full environmental impact.

Fukushima Daiichi is the world's second-biggest nuclear disaster, after Chernobyl. It changed attitudes in Japan, leading to mass protests and what one commentator described as 'a nationwide loss of faith' in nuclear power. Japan looked to be moving away from reliance on nuclear power and towards alternative renewable power sources for the future. But as of 2021, there were nine nuclear reactors in operation, with a further seven approved for restart.

Quiz me!
A quick quiz on nuclear disasters

10.21 Check your learning

Analyse

1 **Analyse** the causes and effects of nuclear disasters by copying and completing the table below.

Nuclear disaster	Causes	Effects on people
Three Mile Island, 1979		
Chernobyl, 1986		
Fukushima Daiichi, 2011		

Apply

2 **Evaluate** the usefulness of a television show as a secondary source on the Chernobyl incident.

3 a As a class, **discuss** the lessons to be learnt from the Chernobyl and Fukushima Daiichi incidents.

b Working individually, write a letter to the UN explaining how you think the world should move forward in light of what we know about both incidents.

10.22 Significant events and campaigns in Australia

Learning intentions

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

- discuss significant environmental events in Australia
- explain why environmental movements and the Australian Greens gained increasing public voice in Australia.

From the late 1970s to the 1990s, significant events and campaigns led to a growing awareness of environmental issues in Australia and the world. In Australia, Tasmania was the battleground between developers and environmentalists.

Lake Pedder

The area around Lake Pedder in south-west Tasmania had been a national park since 1955, but in 1967 the Tasmanian Government withdrew the national park listing so that the region could be flooded by damming the Gordon, Serpentine and Huon Rivers. The damming was regarded as necessary because Tasmania planned to attract industry with the lure of cheap, renewable electricity. The Hydro-Electric Commission was going to provide that cheap electricity.

Both the state government and the Hydro-Electric Commission rejected opposition to the damming, and dismissed any environmental issues that were raised. The Premier of Tasmania, Eric Reece, even refused an offer from future Prime Minister Gough Whitlam to pay whatever was necessary to save Lake Pedder.

Opposition to the proposal became widespread as awareness of the ecological significance of the region started to grow. Supporters came from around the world to see such unique features as the pink quartzite beach, and to demand recognition of the precious nature of the region.

In spite of opposition, the damming took place in 1972. The original, natural Lake Pedder was completely submerged by the new and much larger artificial lake. Three species appear to have been made extinct by the flooding: an earthworm, a flatworm and a fish.

Source 26 A view of Lake Pedder in 1972, before it was flooded

Source 27 The Lake Pedder protests were the start of a continued campaign to save Australia's natural environment.

The growth of green politics

Although the flooding of Lake Pedder was a significant loss for the emerging environmental movement, it encouraged further resistance. The United Tasmania Group – the world's first green political party – was formed in 1972, and it paved the way for green issues to become political. More powerful political organisation developed to fight further plans for the destruction of the south-western Tasmanian wilderness. In many ways, the loss of Lake Pedder created the modern green movement.

The Franklin Dam campaign, 1978–83

The Lake Pedder campaign had been a failure for the Tasmanian environmental movement, but the activists were determined to learn from that failure. When the Hydro-Electric Commission announced plans in 1978 to dam the Franklin River in south-western Tasmania, there was immediate and planned opposition. The Tasmanian Wilderness Society had emerged from the United Tasmania Group. It was to become a significant political force.

If completed, the Franklin Dam would destroy even more of the pristine south-western Tasmanian wilderness. Tasmania already had 39 dams and 26 hydroelectricity stations. The area was being considered for listing as a World Heritage Area, and the decision to build a dam while that process was under way was seen as particularly provocative.

Quiz me!
A quick quiz on significant events and campaigns in Australia

The Tasmanian Government tried to negotiate compromises. A referendum (public vote) to give people the choice of two dam locations or no dam at all suddenly changed to become a vote for one of two dams. Opponents were outraged and almost 45 per cent of the Tasmanian electorate cast informal votes (that is, they spoiled their ballots so they would not be counted) as a protest against the 'no dam' option being removed from the ballot paper. The state Labor government was defeated in the May 1982 election, and a new Liberal government attempted to force the dam through.

A national campaign

Under the leadership of a young doctor, Bob Brown, the Tasmanian Wilderness Society's political organisation was supported by a publicity campaign that made the south-western Tasmanian wilderness a national issue. Men and women from all walks of life held public meetings, distributed pamphlets, wrote letters to the media, appeared on television, spoke to politicians and hosted trips up the Franklin River.

Source 28 Bob Brown leading protests against the Franklin Dam in the early 1980s; he would later become the leader of the Australian Greens and a senator in the federal parliament.

Source 29 Protesters blockade the Franklin River.

By mid-1980, Wilderness Society membership had risen to almost 2000. People flocked in their thousands to Tasmania to join a huge blockade. Arrests became common as a wide range of people decided that the Franklin Dam was the issue on which they would make a stand. As Brown said in the foreword to Alice Hungerford's 2012 book *UpRiver: Untold Stories of the Franklin River Activists*:

> All up, some 6000 people registered to help, nearly 1500 protectors of the wilderness were arrested and 600 went in paddy wagons [police vans] across the island, overnight, to Risdon Prison.

The non-violent blockade continued for almost a year, drawing international attention.

In January 1983, Prime Minister Malcolm Fraser tried to negotiate a compromise by offering the Tasmanian Government $500 million in compensation. This offer was rejected. After Fraser called a federal election the following month, the Labor opposition, led by Bob Hawke, promised to stop the dam. When Labor won the election, it meant the issue was headed for the courts.

On 1 July 1983, the Australian High Court decided by the narrowest majority (a vote of 4 to 3) that the federal government had the power to stop the dam. This finally resolved the issue.

The Australian environmental movement took a huge step forward with the Franklin Dam campaign. The lessons of Lake Pedder had been learnt. The combination of political activism, non-violent direct action and effective publicity created a large amount of support. For the first time in Australian politics, the environment had been a major political issue.

'Save the Whales'

Whaling was one of Australia's earliest export industries, with whale products earning more than land produce for the first 40 years of the colony until the 1830s, when wool production took over. The demand for whale oil for lighting and heating dropped as petroleum became increasingly available in the early twentieth century.

A whaling station operated on Moreton Island in Queensland between 1952 and 1962. In that time, it processed more than 6000 humpback whales. Also, more than 1000 whales were processed in a whale factory at Byron Bay in New South Wales at the same time.

In 1977, Australia still had one whaling station – at Frenchman's Beach near Albany in Western Australia.

As technology improved, exploding harpoons and faster ships meant that the whaling industry hunted many whale species almost to extinction.

Source 30 Whalers using explosive harpoon heads

The movement against whaling in Australia

The movement against whaling grew in the 1970s as science and popular culture combined to create an awareness of the significance of marine mammals. Musicians such as David Crosby and Graham Nash, bands such as Yes, and novels such as *Musco: Blue Whale* (1978) by Vincent Smith all helped raise awareness of the disappearance of whale species. Biologists documented the details of whales' family relationships, their communication systems, the cruelty of their slaughter, and their rapidly declining numbers.

Greenpeace started a major campaign in the 1970s to draw attention to the nature of the whaling industry, and the formation of the activist group Project Jonah gave a specific focus to moves to ban whaling in Australia. Through direct action and publicity campaigns, Project Jonah made whaling an important environmental issue in Australia. Protesters travelled to Albany and took direct action by riding out to sea in rubber dinghies and placing themselves between whales and the whaling ships' explosive harpoons.

When Phoebe Fraser, 11-year-old daughter of Prime Minister Malcolm Fraser, wore a 'Save the Whales' badge during the 1977 federal election campaign, the movement took off. After Fraser won the election, he instigated an inquiry that recommended the end of whaling and a ban on all whale-related products. Australia moved from being a supporter of whaling to a major opponent in the deliberations of the International Whaling Commission.

The legacy of Fraser's decision can be seen in the growth in tourism associated with whale-watching cruises, and the public excitement when previously endangered species come close to human habitats, such as Sydney's waterways. There has also been rising hostility towards nations that still participate in whaling, such as Japan.

Source 31 Protesters near Australia's last whaling station in Albany, Western Australia, 1977; the last whale to be harpooned in Australian waters was killed on 20 November 1978, and the whaling station closed the following day.

The Jabiluka mine protests, 1990s

Jabiluka is a uranium deposit within – but not part of – the World Heritage-listed Kakadu National Park in the Northern Territory. It is on land belonging to the Mirarr people. Because uranium is a key ingredient in the nuclear industry, it is a valuable resource and any mining of it has significant economic implications for Australia.

Uranium was discovered in the Northern Territory in the 1960s. In 1980, mining commenced at Ranger, adjacent to Jabiluka, and there was a move to mine the deposits at Jabiluka at the time of the 1983 federal election. However, the victorious Hawke Labor government made it clear that it would resist the granting of export licences for uranium, preventing overseas investors profiting from the resource. As a result, work on the mine stopped.

There was renewed interest in the project in 1996 when John Howard was elected as prime minister and sought to begin work on the mine again. In 1998, the Mirarr people called for volunteers to join a blockade to prevent the mine's development. In a campaign that was similar to the Franklin Dam confrontation, more than 5000 people took part in an eight-month blockade and over 500 people were arrested. But the concerns of the Mirarr people were largely ignored, and work began.

In 1998, falling uranium prices put an end to the further development of the mine, and a sale of the lease saw the project shelved. The Mirarr people have been given the right to reject any future project, and they successfully campaigned for work to begin on restoring the site. Rehabilitation work began in 2003 and involved returning 50 000 tonnes of material that had been removed from the land. This was concluded in 2015, and in 2021 all uranium mining ended in Kakadu.

*

I used to think, now I think

Reflect on your learning about the motivations and actions of environmentalists and complete the following sentences.

- I used to think ...
- Now I think ...

What has changed in your understanding?

Source 32 Jabiluka mine protest, 1998, with environmentalist, activist and musician Peter Garrett in the centre

Green parties in Australia and the world

In 1972 the United Tasmania Group contested the 1972 state election. Shortly afterwards, similar parties formed in New Zealand, Switzerland and Britain. Western Europe has been the major centre of green politics; in fact, Germany's Green Party was part of the governing coalition between 1998 and 2005.

Today, green participation in various levels of government has become a regular part of political life. The Australian green movement formally organised into the Australian Greens political party in 1992, with four core values: ecological sustainability, social justice, grassroots democracy, and peace and non-violence.

Source 33 In the 2010 federal election, Adam Bandt was the first Greens candidate elected to the House of Representatives.

Since 1992, the Greens have become politically successful and their members have been elected at state and federal level. They had their first member elected to the House of Representatives in the Commonwealth Parliament in 2010, when Adam Bandt (see Source 33) won the seat of Melbourne. He has continued to retain the seat in subsequent elections, and now leads the federal Australian Greens.

The European Parliament became a key source of influence for green parties after it elected green representatives from Germany, Belgium and the Netherlands in 1984. They combined with other small parties to form a coalition to push for environmental and animal protection, and safeguards against nuclear power and urban heritage destruction.

10.22 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 **Identify** the government that ultimately saved the Franklin River.

2 **State** the methods used to oppose the building of the Franklin Dam.

Comprehend

3 **Explain** the environmental costs of damming Lake Pedder.

4 **Summarise** the role Australian prime ministers have played in the issues addressed in this topic.

Analyse

5 a **Identify** the group of Aboriginal people on whose land the Jabiluka uranium deposit was located.

b **Compare** the perspectives of these people and the perspective of the Howard government.

c Suggest two reasons why the Aboriginal peoples' perspectives were not considered at this time.

6 **Compare** the outcome at Lake Pedder with the outcome at the Franklin River. Remember, when you compare two things you must talk about how they are similar and how they are different.

Apply

7 **Propose** (put forward) why environmental movements and the Greens gained an increasing public voice in Australia.

8 The issue of whale conservation emerged again in the 1980s when Japan issued itself licences to hunt whales for 'scientific purposes', despite increasing opposition.

a **Investigate** the direct action campaign against Japanese whaling by the environmental group Sea Shepherd.

b As a class, **discuss** whether you think Sea Shepherd's tactics are successful because they focus media and public attention on the sustainability of marine life, or more likely to lose mainstream environmental support because of the use of violence.

9 On 31 March 2014, the UN's International Court of Justice ruled that Japan should halt its annual whale hunt in the Antarctic. **Investigate**, and then write a paragraph on the part that Australia played in this court case and the reason for the ruling.

10 **Create** two diary entries that describe the activity shown in Source 29:

a one from the perspective of a protester blockading the river to physically stop the building of the dam

b one from the perspective of a dam worker on a barge in the river, whose work is being stopped by protesters.

10.23 Australian government responses

Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» investigate different Australian government responses to environmental issues.

Key skill worksheet
Historical perspectives & interpretations: Exploring Australian government responses

Australian governments have rarely become involved in environmental matters until forced to do so. Most Australian governments have been followers rather than leaders on the environment.

The first environment ministry, 1971

In 1971, Liberal Prime Minister William McMahon created a Ministry for Environment, Arts and Aboriginal Affairs and appointed Peter Howson as its first minister. Howson had previously been defence minister, and was known to have been angry about his new appointment, complaining: '[McMahon] gave me trees'. Howson's attitude was an indication of the low opinion many politicians had of the environment.

Very little was achieved in Howson's ministry. However, the government's recognition of the need for an environment ministry reflected the changes that were taking place in Australian society. In Sydney, the Builders Labourers Federation started taking direct action – called 'green bans' – by refusing to work on sites where development threatened significant buildings, landmarks and bushland. This movement preserved many important Sydney buildings.

Source 34 In 1971 a group of women from Hunter's Hill in New South Wales sought the help of the Builders Labourers Federation to save Kelly's Bush – the last remaining open space in the area – from development. This was the first 'green ban'. It was a complete success.

The Whitlam government, 1972–75

When Gough Whitlam became prime minister in December 1972, he kept the environment ministry, renamed the Department of Environment and Conservation. He appointed Moss Cass as minister. By giving Cass a portfolio that enabled him to focus completely on environmental issues, Whitlam gave these issues much greater importance.

Although Cass was unable to prevent the flooding of Lake Pedder (see topic 10.22 on page 10.68), he ended sand mining on Fraser Island off the Queensland coast, and helped protect and preserve the Great Barrier Reef. His actions ensured that these two significant natural attractions are still available for the current generation of Australians to visit. Cass continued to work in environmental areas after his retirement from parliament in 1983.

The Fraser government, 1975–83

Malcolm Fraser's government built on some of the achievements of Moss Cass. It implemented Cass's recommendation to end sand mining on Fraser Island, and prohibited oil exploration and drilling on the Great Barrier Reef. Fraser also banned whaling and trading in endangered species. However, the Fraser government allowed limited uranium mining in the Northern Territory, and Fraser's conviction that the Franklin Dam was a state rather than a federal matter meant that he refused to intervene meaningfully in that area (see topic 10.22 on page 10.68).

The Hawke and Keating governments, 1983–96

When Bob Hawke replaced Fraser as prime minister in 1983, he arrived in government with a clear understanding of the importance of environmental issues. At least in part, he owed his election to his pre-election promise to stop the Franklin Dam in Tasmania. He used legislation and the courts to ensure the Franklin River was saved. He introduced the *World Heritage Properties Conservation Act 1983* to give the Commonwealth Government responsibility for World Heritage areas. This was important in battles with pro-development state governments, such as the Bjelke-Petersen government in Queensland. Hawke also prioritised the selection of Kakadu National Park as a World Heritage site.

Hawke's successor, Paul Keating, signed the Madrid Protocol in 1991, to protect the environment, endangered species and ecological communities in Antarctica.

Source 35 Protecting the Franklin River in Tasmania was a key election promise for Bob Hawke.

The Howard government, 1996–2007

Although John Howard established a reputation for hard-line conservatism on environmental matters, it must be remembered that his government did pass an environmental Act: the *Environment Protection and Biodiversity Conservation Act 1999*. This Act was introduced as part of Howard's negotiations with the Australian Democrats to win their support for the introduction of the goods and services tax. Its objectives included to:

- provide for the protection of the environment, especially matters of national environmental significance
- conserve Australia's **biodiversity**
- protect biodiversity internationally by controlling the international movement of wildlife
- provide a streamlined environmental assessment and approvals process where matters of national environmental significance are involved
- protect our world and national heritage
- promote ecologically sustainable development
- recognise that Aboriginal and Torres Strait Islander peoples have an important role in the conservation and sustainability of natural ecosystems.

biodiversity
the variety of living organisms (e.g. plants, animals, bacteria and fungi) found in an environment

This Act ensured that the Howard government was keeping step with the major demands of the environmental movement. It remains Australia's central piece of environmental legislation.

The biggest block to environmental progress under Howard was his refusal to compromise on Australia's economic development and advancement. For him, this was always the priority, meaning that environmental matters would only be considered if they did not conflict with it.

Source 36 Aboriginal and Torres Strait Islander peoples have an important role in managing Australia's natural ecosystems

The Rudd and Gillard governments, 2007–13

While he was still opposition leader in 2007, Kevin Rudd commissioned a study by Dr Ross Garnaut, a prominent Australian economist, on the impact of climate change on Australia's economy. This was recognition that environmental decisions were becoming more pressing. The link between climate change and the economy was seen as controversial, and the commission of Garnaut's report was an effort to examine the evidence.

By the time the final report was delivered in 2008, Rudd was prime minister. The report's key findings were that Australia should commit to reducing greenhouse gases and implement an **emissions trading scheme (ETS)**. This would require major polluters to pay for the emissions they were producing. Garnaut also found that Australia could cope economically with the costs of dealing with climate change. Perhaps more crucially, he recognised that the costs of doing nothing would be higher than the costs taking action.

emissions trading scheme (ETS)
a scheme that can play out on both a national and international level which offers incentives to businesses and companies for reducing emissions, or pollution

In 2010, Garnaut was asked for an update on the report. This update, which was delivered to Julia Gillard's government in 2011, examined the evidence for climate change. According to Garnaut:

> [N]ew data and analysis generally are confirming the likelihood that outcomes will be near the midpoints or closer to the bad end of what had earlier been identified as the range of possibilities for human-induced climate change.

The Gillard government introduced an ETS in 2011 that basically placed a price on all carbon that was emitted by industry, and made businesses responsible for paying for their emissions. Businesses could offset the costs by purchasing credits against future emissions.

The Abbott and Turnbull governments, 2013–18

In 2011, the then-Leader of the Opposition, Tony Abbott, opposed the ETS, and it became a divisive political issue. Abbott's view was that Australia should not act on its own because it risked losing projects to countries that do *not* place a price on carbon. Removal of the ETS became Abbott's first priority after winning the 2013 federal election. The ETS was finally abolished in July 2014.

In 2013, the Abbott government sought to expand the Abbot Point coal terminal in Queensland, which is located near the Great Barrier Reef Marine Park. The expansion would require the dredging (removal) of 1.1 million cubic metres of material from the sea floor. The Abbott government requested this despite the 2009 Great Barrier Reef Marine Park Authority's *Outlook Report* concluding that the long-term outlook for the reef was already poor because of the impacts of climate change. The expansion was approved following a report by the World Heritage Committee in 2015, which decided not to include the Great Barrier Reef on its 'in danger' list; and includes more machinery, ship loaders and an additional wharf. Since then, pressure has increased to place the reef on the 'in danger' list.

Source 37 The conservation of the Great Barrier Reef continues to be the subject of political debate.

Quiz me!
A quick quiz on Australian government responses

The election of the Abbott government appeared to tilt the balance in favour of development over environmental protection. Many of the government's first actions in office involved winding back legislation such as that relating to the ETS and to mining tax, and removing advisory or research bodies investigating the impact of climate change. When in 2014 the Minister for the Environment, Greg Hunt, proposed removing World Heritage listing from 74 000 hectares of Tasmanian wilderness area that had been listed in 2012, it appeared that environmental protection would once again become a major issue in Australian politics.

In his first months as prime minister in 2015, Malcolm Turnbull signalled a new approach to climate policy when he announced the government would retain two clean energy funds (money used to stimulate the clean energy sector) that Abbott had planned to abolish. Turnbull's ascension to the role of prime minister was seen as a victory for those who had a more moderate political approach to environmental matters.

Under Turnbull's government, Australia signed the Paris Agreement in 2016 – a global agreement within the UN Framework Convention on Climate Change that was signed by nearly 200 countries. The aim of the agreement is to limit 'the increase in the global average temperature to well below 2°C above [pre-Industrial Revolution] levels'. To achieve this long-term goal, the countries that signed aim to reduce greenhouse gas emissions as soon as possible. For Australia, the aim is to reduce greenhouse gas emissions to be between 26 and 28 per cent below 2005 levels by 2030.

The Morrison government, 2018–2022

In 2018, Turnbull was replaced by Scott Morrison. Morrison returned to the conservative approach towards climate change that Abbott had modelled years earlier. While he was Treasurer under Turnbull, Morrison had attended parliamentary Question Time in 2017 holding a lump of coal and saying: 'Don't be afraid, don't be scared, it won't hurt you. It's coal.' Morrison was widely criticised for this at the time, as Australia was experiencing a heatwave that many believed was linked directly to climate change.

Morrison, a long-term climate change denier, was forced to accept its reality amid the 2019–20 bushfires. The public criticised his environmental approach as fires raged in every state of Australia.

Source 38 Morrison brandished a lump of coal during Question Time in 2017, when he was Treasurer in the Turnbull government.

For much of his time in government, Morrison ignored pleas from environmentalists, protesters and businesses to adopt a target of net zero emissions by 2050 – an approach that many other nations have taken. 'Net zero emissions' refers to achieving an balance between greenhouse gas emissions produced and greenhouse gas emissions removed from the atmosphere.

In November 2021, at the UN Climate Change Conference in Glasgow – known as 'COP26' – Morrison did announce Australia's goal to reach net zero carbon emissions by 2050. He also claimed that Australia's method for reaching net zero carbon emissions was by funding technological advancements while still relying on fossil fuels. This was criticised by many world leaders and environmental experts.

Australia was ranked fifty-eighth in the 2021 Climate Change Performance Index (CCPI), below countries that included the United Kingdom, India, Switzerland, the Philippines, the Russian Federation and the United States. Despite this, Morrison confirmed at the end of the summit that he would not change Australia's climate policy.

The Albanese government, 2022–

In May 2022, the Morrison government was replaced by a Labor government led by Anthony Albanese. Albanese signalled that he wanted to change climate policy in Australia and 'end the climate wars'. Later that year, the government enacted climate change legislation that committed Australia to an emissions reduction target of 43 per cent from 2005 levels by 2030, and net zero emissions by 2050. In the 2023 CCPI, Australia's ranking had improved slightly to number 55, although it still ranked below many other developed economies.

10.23 Check your learning

Comprehend

1 **Summarise** the environmental achievements and failures of different Australian governments by copying and completing the table below.

2 **Explain** how combining several portfolios into a single Department of Environment, Arts and Aboriginal Affairs, and the personal views of the minister, might affect the changes made to environmental policy.

Analyse

3 **Analyse** the significance of the Paris Agreement.

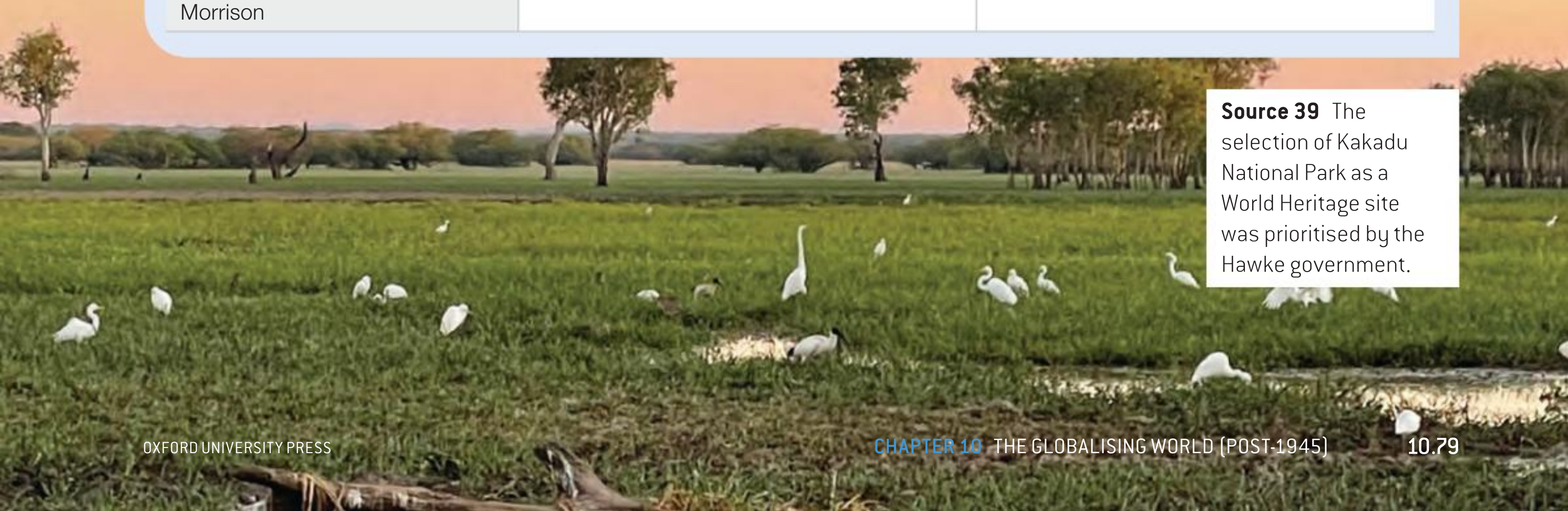
Apply

4 As a class, **discuss** the competing priorities of economic development and environmental protection.

5 **Evaluate** which government has been most successful in encouraging environmental reform and change.

6 **Create** a timeline of significant political and environmental events in Australia from 2013 onwards.

Government	Environmental achievements	Environmental failures
McMahon		
Whitlam		
Fraser		
Hawke and Keating		
Howard		
Rudd and Gillard		
Abbott and Turnbull		
Morrison		



Source 39 The selection of Kakadu National Park as a World Heritage site was prioritised by the Hawke government.

10.24 International responses, protocols and treaties

Learning intentions

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

- explain the responses of governments and organisations to environmental threats
- evaluate the effectiveness of international protocols and treaties created to support the environment.

Sequence this!
International responses, protocols and treaties

Environmental concern has become an international phenomenon. Established political parties have been reluctant to address environmental concerns, as they have valued traditional links between industrialisation, economic wealth and political power. As a consequence, new groups have emerged – particularly political parties, such as the Australian Greens – to challenge existing values. In addition to this, international groups have formed to combat environmental concerns and hold each other to account in terms of environmental goals.

National responses to environmental threats

Two examples of when governments have taken action in response to environmental threats are the US *Comprehensive Environmental Response Compensation Liability Act* (CERCLA) and New Zealand's nuclear ban.

CERCLA

The US Government passed CERCLA, also known as the 'Superfund law', in 1980 in response to the widespread dumping and mismanagement of hazardous waste by industrial companies in the 1970s. Two significant events that spurred the US Government to pass this legislation took place in the Valley of the Drums in Kentucky, and in Love Canal in the state of New York.

Love Canal was a community in Niagara Falls that was built near a dumping ground for toxic waste (see Source 40). Chemicals leached into the soil, and surfaced in backyards and in the school playground. The entire community was evacuated in 1978 after health authorities found an increase in miscarriages and birth defects, and it was demolished in 2004.

CERCLA authorises the Environmental Protection Authority (EPA) to identify sites where the environment or public health are threatened. It establishes a 'Superfund' – through taxing certain industries – so that the EPA can take action to remove hazardous materials and clean up contaminated sites if the companies responsible cannot be identified or do not comply with requests to do so.

Source 40 A sign warns of dangerous waste at a school in Love Canal, New York

See, think, wonder
Look at Source 40.
- What do you see?
- What do you think?
- What do you wonder?

New Zealand's anti-nuclear policy, 1984

New Zealand's former prime minister David Lange made international news in 1984 when he barred nuclear-powered or armed ships from entering New Zealand's waters. He effectively created a nuclear-free zone around New Zealand that became enshrined in legislation in 1987. New Zealand emerged as a strong, forward-thinking and independent nation.

The roots of Lange's decision were in New Zealand's vulnerability as a Pacific island, while Britain, France and the United States tested nuclear devices in the region (see topic 10.20 on page 10.63). The ongoing French testing on Mururoa Atoll in the South Pacific had caused widespread resentment in New Zealand. France was never able to explain why nuclear testing was not carried out closer to mainland Europe if the testing was as safe as was claimed.

The sinking of the Greenpeace ship *Rainbow Warrior* by French secret agents further hardened New Zealand attitudes towards the French (see topic 10.20 on page 10.63). The agents were responsible for two explosions in July 1985 that sank the ship while it was berthed in Auckland Harbour, killing a Greenpeace cameraman.

New Zealand's anti-nuclear policy made it the champion of the French territories in the South Pacific.

Source 41 Prime Minister David Lange was instrumental in creating a nuclear-free New Zealand.

Source 42 A 2015 Greenpeace demonstration in France recalls the killing of Fernando Pereira in the 1985 *Rainbow Warrior* explosions.

Global initiatives

Another pathway to international environmental action has been through the UN and its associated organisations.

Source 43 The UNESCO logo

World Heritage listings

The role of UNESCO in preserving significant natural areas through World Heritage listing is well known. World Heritage listings have raised the status of many national parks and other special natural areas to international importance, worthy of preservation for future generations.

UN Framework Convention on Climate Change

In 1992, 154 countries signed the UN Framework Convention on Climate Change – an international treaty seeking to limit average global temperature increases and to consider the potential impacts of climate change, which were emerging as a major political topic.

By 1995, the signatory countries had realised that the emission reduction provisions in the Convention were not sufficient to make any meaningful change. Negotiations to strengthen the global response to climate change began, leading to the Kyoto Protocol two years later.

Kyoto Protocol

The Kyoto Protocol was developed at the UN Framework Convention on Climate Change in 1997 in Kyoto, Japan. This was an international meeting to develop an environmental treaty that would attempt to limit the production of greenhouse gases. It was argued that these gases were damaging the **ozone layer** that surrounded the Earth and thereby contributing to global warming.

ozone layer
a layer of gases, with a large proportion of ozone, high in the atmosphere that protects the Earth from harmful amounts of the sun's rays

The main aim of the Protocol was to have nations that were members of the UN commit themselves to reducing greenhouse gas emissions from their 1990 levels by 5.2 per cent. This was not radical, but some climate change deniers used it as an opportunity to resist potential change. It made the conflict between unrestricted development and environmental protection more obvious.

Source 44 The Kyoto Protocol is an international agreement to limit the emission of greenhouse gases.

The signing of the Kyoto Protocol became a major political issue in Australia during the first decade of the twenty-first century. Along with the United States, Australia – under the Howard Liberal government – initially refused to sign it. While the Protocol allowed a number of flexible approaches, the government consistently argued that it would not compromise economic growth for the sake of cutting greenhouse gas emissions. This stance contributed to the Liberal Party's loss at the 2007 election, as well as Howard's loss of his own seat in parliament.

Signing the Kyoto Protocol was one of the first actions of the Rudd Labor government after it won power in November 2007. The United States remained the only major country to refuse to sign it.

Following the Kyoto Protocol, delegates from leading industrial countries, which became know as the G8 (the United States, Canada, the United Kingdom, France, Germany, Italy, Japan and Russia), as well as delegates from Brazil, China, India, Mexico, Ethiopia and South Africa, met for a climate change summit in Washington DC in 2007. This resulted in a non-binding agreement that **developing countries** as well as **developed countries** would have to meet targets relating to greenhouse gas emissions.

developing countries
non-industrialised (i.e. largely agricultural) countries with a relatively fragile economy and a low standard of living that is not always able to support the needs of its citizens

developed countries
industrialised countries with a well-developed economy and a relatively high standard of living that is able to support the needs of its citizens

Copenhagen Summit

The major follow-up to Kyoto was the 2009 UN Climate Change Conference held at Copenhagen in Denmark. The major aim of this conference – commonly known as the 'Copenhagen Summit' – was to develop a plan for action on climate change that would operate beyond 2012. However, countries often find it very difficult to move beyond their own narrow interests; ultimately, the Copenhagen Summit reflected all the challenges involved in dealing with environmental issues at a global level. Disputes about the validity of scientific evidence also gave governments an excuse to do very little.

Source 45 Climate change activists protest on the final day of the Copenhagen Summit.

After reports that the conference was not accomplishing its goals, the Copenhagen Accord was drafted by the United States, China, India, Brazil and South Africa. The Accord was never officially adopted. It recognised that climate change was one of the greatest challenges of the present day and that actions should be taken to keep any temperature increases to less than 2°C. The document was not legally binding and failed to contain any formal commitments for reducing carbon dioxide emissions.

Climate change and global warming continue to be a threat to our world, but very little has been achieved at a global level to guarantee that the Earth will be a functioning planet for future generations. The UN has continued to host climate change conferences, which have been held annually since 2011. However, there still remains no fundamental global agreement on how to tackle the world's most pressing environmental issues.

Paris Agreement

In 2016, all members of the UN Framework Convention on Climate Change signed the Paris Agreement to limit global warming (see topic 10.23 on page 10.74). The following year, however, then-US President Donald Trump announced that he was withdrawing the United States from the agreement. The withdrawal officially took place in 2020. Within hours of being sworn in as president, Joe Biden recommitted the United States to the agreement in January 2021.

As part of the Paris Agreement, each country is required to plan and report on its progress towards its target. Australia, under the Morrison government, was the only one of almost 200 countries intending to meet its 2030 target by using 'carryover credits' from the Kyoto Protocol – that is, credits representing the volume of emissions Australia could have released, but did not. This was met with widespread criticism, both locally and internationally.

Morrison officially abandoned the plan to use carryover credits at the Pacific Islands Leaders' Summit in 2020, where he was confronted with Pacific leaders who demanded that their homes not become 'the "sacrificial canaries" in the coalmine of climate change's existential threat'.

In June 2022, the newly elected Albanese government pledged to reduce greenhouse gas emissions by 43 per cent below 2005 levels by 2030, with a target of net zero emissions by 2050. These targets were enshrined in legislation later that year. The Albanese government also confirmed that it would not use 'carryover credits' from the Kyoto Protocol in order to meet its Paris Agreement targets.

Source 46 Joe Biden recommits the United States to the Paris Agreement within hours of being sworn in as the 46th President of the United States.

10.24 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 **Identify** when the Kyoto climate change conference was held, and outline its aims.

Comprehend

2 **Summarise** the role of the US EPA under CERCLA.

3 **Explain** the impact of the anti-nuclear policy brought in by New Zealand Prime Minister David Lange.

Analyse

4 **Analyse** the significance of the 2009 Copenhagen Summit.

5 The Paris Agreement sets out a global framework to avoid dangerous climate change. Visit the Climate Action Tracker website (available on your obook pro). **Compare** Australia's progress with that of one other developed nation. Remember, when you compare two things you must talk about how they are similar and how they are different.

Apply

6 **Propose** (put forward) a theory about how two presidents of the United States (Donald Trump and Joe Biden) can have such different views on environmental policy.

7 In groups, do some research on carbon emissions trading as a way to tackle climate change. As a class, **discuss** the arguments for and against the introduction of an emissions trading scheme.

8 **Investigate** the Australian version of the EPA. List the initiatives it has been working on.

9 As a class, **investigate** a range of projects that have taken place in your local area over the past 50 years and how these have positively or negatively affected the environment. Using a shared online document, create a booklet about these projects. Each student should take responsibility for presenting information on one issue.

10 In this chapter, you have examined the development (and rejection) of policies to deal with threats to the environment in Australia and globally. You now have the opportunity to investigate this important issue that concerns your future.

a Review the material in this chapter and **create** two lists: one that lists the most significant environmental issues facing Australia in the immediate future, and another that lists global issues. You should expect to have issues that appear on both lists.

b **Investigate** these issues, and rank them from the most urgent to least urgent.

c In small groups, **discuss** your lists. How different is your perception from that of others? After the discussion, adjust your priorities if necessary.

d Drawing on your research and discussion, create a recommendation for the federal environment minister, in which you give your assessment of the important environmental issues facing Australia and the world. In your recommendation, explain what the government's environmental priorities should be, and **justify** why your recommendation should be implemented.

e As a class, **discuss** your ideas and how you view the future. See if you can come to an agreement about the single greatest environmental priority facing Australia and the world. Discuss solutions and ways in which your findings could be made available to a wider audience.

Weblink
Climate Action Tracker

10C SKILLS IN CONTEXT

Test me!
Once you've finished the topics in this section, test yourself with this quiz and find out which worksheet you should do.

Environmental threats to the Daintree Rainforest

The World Heritage-listed Daintree Rainforest in Queensland is one of the oldest continuous living tropical rainforests in the world. It is home to the largest range of rare or threatened plant and animal species anywhere in the world. This beautiful ecosystem is at risk not only from climate change, but also from deforestation.

Source 47 Mount Alexandra Lookout, Queensland, where two World Heritage sites meet: the Daintree Rainforest and the Great Barrier Reef

Source 48

I speak for the trees,
for the trees have
no tongues.

Dr Seuss, *The Lorax*

In 2011, the World Wide Fund for Nature identified the eastern area of Australia, including the Daintree Rainforest, as one of the 24 global deforestation fronts; that is, one of the worst areas in the world for deforestation.

Source 49

[World Wide Fund for Nature Australia conservation scientist Dr Martin Taylor] said eastern Australia's forests have been declared a global biodiversity hotspot …

'Forest destruction was already bad enough for the region to be declared a global deforestation front, then the 2019–20 bushfires burned about 12.6 million hectares in eastern Australia,' he said … 'To stop extinction Australia needs to step up our efforts to protect critical forest habitats for Australian wildlife, particularly unburned low fire-risk refuges, and let those that have been cleared regenerate …

'That will not happen until state safeguards axed in the past decade are restored and until the national environment law starts to be fully enforced.'

Extract from 'Australia remains the only developed nation on the list of global deforestation fronts', World Wide Fund for Nature Australia website, 13 January 2021

KEY SKILL
Questioning & researching

Conducting research to locate sources

Being able to locate relevant primary and secondary sources using the internet is an important historical skill. However, you need to keep in mind that not all information you find on the internet is necessarily true, accurate, reliable or credible. So, in addition to being able to find source material online, you need to be able to evaluate the reliability and credibility of the information you find. Use the following steps to apply this skill:

Step 1 Identify key words related to your topic and type these into a search engine such as Google. (Use only key words – do not type in whole sentences or questions.)

Step 2 Add further relevant key words to refine your search if you cannot find what you want on your first attempts.

Step 3 Look beyond the first page of results. The best results do not always appear first.

Step 4 Assess the reliability of each site by asking yourself the following questions:

- Who is the author or creator? If it is an individual, does this person have credentials listed (for example, a degree or title?) If it is an organisation, is it a reputable organisation such as a government or university department?
- What is the purpose of the website? Is it trying to inform, persuade or sell?
- Is the site objective? Is the author's point of view biased?
- Is the information accurate? Can the information be verified if you cross-check it with other sources of information?
- Does the site contain spelling mistakes or grammatical errors? (If so, this is usually an indication that the site is not particularly reliable.)
- Is the information current? Can you find evidence of recent updates?

For more information on this skill, refer to page 226 of 'The history toolkit'.

Practise the skill

1 Using the steps outlined above, **investigate** to identify relevant, credible and reliable source material about:
- the impact of climate change and deforestation on the Daintree Rainforest, and
- the impact of climate change and deforestation on either the Amazon in Brazil or the Borneo Rainforest in Indonesia.

2 Read the source material you have located and record the key points in the appropriate in the appropriate column in a data chart, like the one below. Make sure you record the URLs of the sites you have used.

Impact of climate change and deforestation on …

	URL	One-paragraph summary of key points	Is the information in the source relevant, credible, reliable? Why/why not?
Source 1			
Source 2			
Source 3			

Extend your understanding

1 **Investigate** and then write a report on the Australian Government's responses to environmental threats to the Daintree Rainforest, as well as government decisions that may negatively impact its future.

10 CHAPTER REVIEW

Review activity

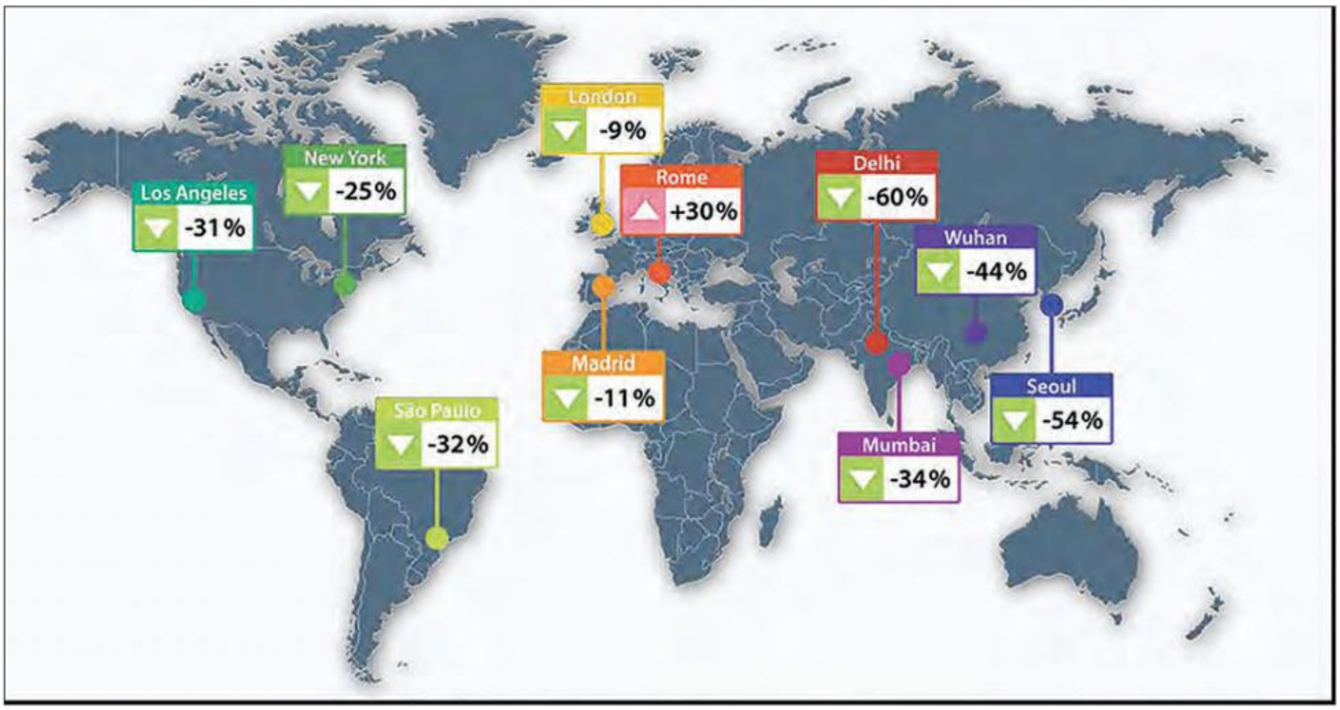
Read the text below, and answer the questions that follow.

Environmental impact of COVID-19

The COVID-19 pandemic has affected everyone in a variety of ways. Its long-term impacts are still widely unknown, but one impact we have already seen is on our environment.

Due to travel bans, lockdowns and quarantines, there was a decrease in the air and water pollution visible in many parts of the world. *CBS News* reported in 2020 that daily levels of carbon dioxide emissions were down by 17 per cent globally.

Although these environmental changes were temporary, and will unfortunately revert when humans return to normal activities, they are a stark reminder of what is possible if we act to decrease greenhouse gas emissions.



Source 50 The percentage reduction in levels of pollution – measured by the amount of 'particulate matter' (PM) in the air – when comparing the 2020 COVID-19 lockdown period to the same time period in 2019

Source 51

> I am sorry, but saying everything will be all right while continuing doing nothing at all is just not hopeful to us. In fact, it's the opposite of hope … And if you still say that we are wasting valuable lesson time, then let me remind you that our political leaders have wasted decades through denial and inaction. And since our time is running out we have decided to take action. We have started to clean up your mess and we will not stop until we are done.

Extract from Greta Thunberg, Swedish environmental activist and founder of School Strike for Climate, speaking to the European Economic and Social Committee, Brussels, Belgium, 21 February 2019

Source 52

> Right now we are facing a man-made disaster of global scale. Our greatest threat in thousands of years is climate change. If we don't take action, the collapse of our civilisations and the extinction of much of the natural world is on the horizon.

Extract from Sir David Attenborough, environmentalist, broadcaster and natural historian, speaking at the opening ceremony of United Nations-sponsored climate talks in Katowice, Poland, 2 December 2018

1. Source 50 shows show some of the positive impacts of COVID-19 on the natural environment globally. **Propose** some factors that would have accelerated pollution levels in the 100 years before the global pandemic in these areas. (6 marks)
2. Sources 51 and 52 are both quotes from respected modern environmentalists. **Summarise** the perspectives of each of these environmentalists. (4 marks)
3. 'Travel bans and lockdowns are the only way to decrease carbon dioxide emissions.' To what extent do you agree with this? Using your knowledge from this chapter, write a short paragraph **justifying** your position. (10 marks)

(Total: 20 marks)

Chapter checklist

Now that you have completed the chapter, reflect on your ability to do the following:

	I can do this.	I cannot do this yet.
Summarise key technological developments since 1945.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 10.1, page 10.2.
identify and describe changes in health and population since 1945.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 10.2, page 10.6.
Summarise Australia's role in global conflicts since 1945.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 10.3, page 10.10.
Describe the development of and the reasons for the United Nations Declaration on Human Rights.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 10.4, page 10.14.
Examine how post-World War II society affected radio and film in Australia.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 10.5, page 10.18.
Examine how post-World War II society affected music in Australia.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 10.6, page 10.21.
Analyse the impact of changing technology on television and film in Australia.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 10.7, page 10.23.
Define and identify soap operas in Australia. Explore the development of Australian television.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 10.8, page 10.26.
Examine significant developments in Australian music. Analyse the significance of *Countdown* and Triple J.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 10.9, page 10.30.
Summarise significant contributions to the Australian film industry. Identify American and Asian influences on the Australian film industry.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 10.10, page 10.34.
Describe the development of the Australian television industry. Explore recent changes in technology on television.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 10.11, page 10.36.
Investigate the contribution of the Australian rock'n'roll industry to the world.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 10.12, page 10.40.
Investigate the contribution of the Australian film industry to the world.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 10.13, page 10.42.
Investigate the contribution of the Australian television industry to the world.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 10.14, page 10.45.

	I can do this.	I cannot do this yet.
Summarise the conditions that led to the environment movement. Analyse the historical impact of the pictures of the Earth taken during the *Apollo 8* mission.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 10.15, page 10.50.
Explain the impact of increasing industrial production and trade on the environment.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 10.16, page 10.53.
Investigate the impact of popular culture on the environment movement.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 10.17, page 10.55.
Explain the significance of ideas about the environment, including the Gaia hypothesis, sustainability and the rights of nature.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 10.18, page 10.58.
Investigate a range of key environmental campaigns and events.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 10.19, page 10.60.
Summarise the impact of nuclear testing. Explain why the United Kingdom conducted major nuclear weapons tests in Australia. Explain how opposition to nuclear testing grew, including the formation of Greenpeace.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 10.20, page 10.63.
Investigate the impact of nuclear disasters in the twentieth century.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 10.21, page 10.66.
Discuss significant environmental events in Australia. Explain why environmental movements and the Australian Greens gained increasing public voice in Australia.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 10.22, page 10.68.
Investigate different Australian government responses to environmental issues.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 10.23, page 10.74.
Explain the responses of governments and organisations to environmental threats. Evaluate the effectiveness of international protocols and treaties created to support the environment.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 10.24, page 10.80.

Check your Student obook pro for these digital resources and more:

pro

Student book questions
Chapter 10

Key skill worksheet
Communicating:
Chapter 10

Quizlet
Play a game of Quizlet on The globalising world.

Chapter review quiz
Chapter 10

H&M
UNI QLO
Little Sparrow
opening soon

PART 3

Economics and business

Skills

Productivity, growth and living standards

CHAPTER 11

The economics and business toolkit

Economics examines the connections between people, business and government, both here in Australia and globally. It is about how we produce goods and services to satisfy the needs and wants of everyone using the limited resources available, and how we can manage these resources in a way that is sustainable.

To coordinate and organise these processes, we have an economic system that is modelled on how a market works. A business produces goods or provides a service in exchange for money, and it can be as small as one individual or as large as a multinational company. As consumers, individuals make choices about what to buy and use, as well as how they will earn an income to buy products by participating in the workforce.

As a student of economics and business, you will explore the skills necessary to help you better understand a constantly changing world and how you might participate in the global workforce.

Source 1 Economics skills enable us to study how people, organisations and governments satisfy people's needs and wants with limited resources.

11A
What are the economics and business skills?

11.1 Economics and business skills

A great way for economics and business students to develop their skills is by using real-life examples to help generate questions, interpret information and argue their points of view. They also learn through experience, where they make use of role-plays, simulation games and enterprising activities that provide an opportunity to be innovative, show leadership and display the ability to make wise business decisions.

Studying economics and business requires you to ask a range of questions and analyse information to find out more about an issue. You will learn to question and research information by asking 'what', 'why', 'when', 'who' and 'how' to uncover the truth. You will learn to weigh up the costs and benefits of an economics or business proposal, make recommendations and communicate your conclusions.

Source 1 The skills used while studying economics and business

Questioning and researching	• Developing and modifying questions to investigate a contemporary economics and business issue • Locating, selecting and analysing data and information from a range of sources
Interpreting and analysing	• Interpreting information and data to explain economics and business issues, trends and cause-and-effect relationships, and make predictions about consumer and financial impacts
Evaluating, concluding and decision making	• Developing and evaluating a response to an economics and business issue, using cost-benefit analysis or criteria to decide on a course of action
Communicating	• Using economics and business knowledge, concepts and terms to create descriptions, explanations and arguments that incorporate research findings

Source 2 Work experience or a part-time job working in a local business can provide great insights and opportunities for economics and business students.

11.2 Questioning and researching

Developing questions

Economics and business students ask questions. They seek out economics and business cases, and try to learn from mistakes made in the past and avoid such mistakes in the future. They also check facts and look at the arguments for and against a certain issue before reaching their own conclusions. When they state their own viewpoint, they support this with evidence such as statistics, cases from the past, quotes and sound reasoning.

Gathering data and information

Although books and newspapers are valuable sources of information, most research today is conducted online. To ensure the sources you locate and select online are accurate, reliable and relevant, a number of guidelines should be followed:

- Search engines such as Google are useful, but the material found on websites suggested by search engines may not be reliable, or may contain inaccuracies or misleading information, or be out of date. When using search engines, define your search by using keywords.
- A reliable way of searching for sources is to use sites linked to educational institutions, government departments, reputable companies and universities. A quick way of telling if a site is reputable is to look at the suffix of the domain name, which is part of the URL (internet address). Some of the most common domain suffixes are listed in Source 3.
- Avoid blogs posted by unknown individuals. If you find information relevant to your investigation on a blog or social media site, always verify it by using a more reliable source.
- Never copy information from the internet straight into your own work. Taking someone else's work and ideas and using them as if they were your own is plagiarism.

Source 3 Guidelines for determining the reliability of websites

Domain suffix	Description
.edu	• The site is linked to an educational institution, such as a university or school. • These sites are generally very reliable.
.gov	• The site is linked to a government institution, e.g. the RBA (Reserve Bank of Australia). • These sites are generally very reliable.
.net	• The site is linked to a commercial organisation or network provider. • Anyone can buy a domain name with this suffix, and generally nobody regulates the information posted on the site. As a result, these sites can be unreliable.
.org	• The site is linked to an organisation. • Usually, these organisations are not-for-profit, e.g. the UN (United Nations). • If the organisation is reputable and can be contacted, this generally means that the information provided has been checked and verified by that organisation. • You need to be aware of any special interests that the organisation may represent (e.g. particular political, religious or commercial interests), as this may influence what it has to say on an issue.
.com	• The site is linked to a commercially based operation and may be promoting certain products or services, e.g. banks. • Domain names with this suffix can be bought by anyone, so the content should be carefully checked and verified using another, more reliable source.

Nature What is the source?
Origin Who created the source? When was it created?
Purpose Why has this source been created? Who is the intended audience?

Source 4 Factors to identify when researching a source

In your research, you may collect information from two types of sources:

- *Primary sources* are from the time or event being investigated; they include interviews, and official documents such as laws and census data.
- *Secondary sources* are about the time or event being investigated and were created later; they include data analysis and newspaper articles.

It is important to be able to distinguish between the two types of sources, and to identify the nature, origin and purpose of a source.

KEY SKILL
Questioning & researching

Assessing sources

Research involves finding factual information or different perspectives on a topic. For instance, we may want to research the the profitability of a business we use (see Sources 5 and 6 on McDonald's).

Step 1 Identify the nature, origin and purpose of the source. Is it a primary or secondary source?

Step 2 Assess if the source is reliable and trustworthy. Stay away from blogs or forums, as they may not be reliable.

Step 3 Assess whether the source is biased. Some sources may contain factual information, but may also contain emotive statements that reflect the perspectives of different groups in society. You can still use the source; it can be useful if your research covers varying viewpoints.

Practise the skill

1. **Identify** the nature, origin and purpose of Sources 5 and 6.
2. Are Sources 5 and 6 trustworthy?
3. How could you determine whether these sources are biased?
4. **Discuss** how you would find out the revenue figures for McDonald's global and McDonald's Australia for 2020. What sources would you use?

Source 5 2017–19 statistics on McDonald's global assets and revenue

Year	Total assets (in US$ billions)	Revenue (in US$ billions)
2019	$32.811	$21.076
2018	$32.811	$21.025
2017	$33.804	$22.820

Source: MoneyAustralia website, September 2021

Source 6

McDonald's Australia profit gets bitten by Chicago

McDonald's grew its Australian revenue in 2020, despite being forced to temporarily close many of its restaurants ...

... Drive-throughs and a new home delivery service were credited by McDonald's Australia chief executive Andy Gregory with 'offsetting challenging COVID-19 market operating conditions', in accounts lodged with the corporate regulator last month.

Those accounts showed that McDonald's Australia, which operates about 150 McDonald's restaurants in Australia and is franchisor for over 850 more, grew revenue 2.5 per cent to $1.72 billion in [the calendar year] 2020.

Extract from *Financial Review*, 6 May 2021

Check your learning
Topic 11.2

11.3 Interpreting and analysing

Interpreting data

cause-and-effect relationship
the link between what causes an action and the outcome of that action; an appreciation of the fact that events that take place (both short term and long term) are linked and can have impacts on people and places for many years to come

Economics and business students use charts, statistical tables, case studies, interviews and simulation games to help identify the cause of a problem or event and its likely outcome or effects. For example, the decline in demand for mining commodities such as coal, iron ore, zinc, nickel, copper and bauxite (the cause) has led to unemployment (the effect) in some parts of rural Australia. This is an example of a **cause-and-effect relationship**. Economics and business students also analyse data to identify patterns and relationships and make predictions.

In economics and business, the answer to a question may not always be black or white; it may be many shades of grey. This is because it is a subject area where there are a number of alternative perspectives. For example, there are many reasons why youth unemployment is higher than the general rate of unemployment in Australia, and statistics may not provide all the answers. Numerous issues require you to weigh up alternative perspectives, all of which may be valid.

KEY SKILL
Interpreting & analysing

Calculating income taxes

Analysing sources involves interpreting information to identify key points. Being able to interpret information from charts, graphs and tables is an important skill to develop when studying economics. Analysing data from these sources allows us to identify and explain relationships and trends.

The data in Source 7 shows the Australian income tax brackets for the 2021–22 financial year; that is, from 1 July 2021 to 30 June 2022. The text in the 'tax on this income' column shows the amount of tax a person pays for every dollar they earn. The more income a person earns, the higher their rate of tax.

Practise the skill

1 Calculate how much income tax each of these people will pay, using the income tax brackets in Source 7.
   a Cecilia is a university student who earns $18 000 a year in her part-time job.
   b Samantha is a dentist who earns $220 000 a year.
   c Rafael is a teacher at a secondary school. He earns $100 000 a year.
   d Hanif is an apprentice carpenter earning $42 000 a year.

Source 7 Australian income tax brackets for the 2021–22 financial year

Taxable income	Tax on this income
0–$18 200	Nil
$18 201–$45 000	19 cents for each $1 over $18 200
$45 001–$120 000	$5092 plus 32.5 cents for each $1 over $45 000
$120 001–$180 000	$29 467 plus 37 cents for each $1 over $120 000
$180 001 and over	$51 667 plus 45 cents for each $1 over $180 000

Source: ATO

Check your learning
Topic 11.3

11.4 Evaluating, concluding and decision making

Evaluating alternatives

In an economics or business situation, there will usually be more than one way to solve a problem or find the right solution. Before examining possible options, you must first do some preliminary work to find out about the topic. Read widely, consult your textbook, conduct research online and find out what experts say about the issue or question you are examining. Write a summary, and then refine your notes by writing a list of all the options. Next to each option, write the advantages and disadvantages or costs and benefits, and then delete those that are weak. Concentrate on the stronger options, and either make a decision about which one is best or conduct further research before deciding what is the best option.

Applying strategies to resolve economics and business issues

Reading about economics or business in your textbook or using online resources can only teach you so much. Applying knowledge to a real business situation is a valuable experience, and there are a number of ways you can do this:

- Talk to someone in business about their experiences to see how the things you have learnt in class apply in real life.
- Observe the world around you. When you next go shopping think about some of the things you have been studying, such as customer service, competition, **marketing** techniques and types of businesses.
- Evaluate the short- and long-term implications of a financial decision, such as buying a mobile phone or borrowing money from a friend.
- Use opportunities to role-play or play simulation games as a chance to hone your skills and put what you learn into practice.

marketing
activities that businesses undertake to promote the buying or selling of products

Source 8 Talking to people in business will give you valuable insight into their experiences.

Check your learning
Topic 11.4

11.5 Communicating

An important skill in economics and business is the ability to be able to communicate your thoughts and findings. You can present your findings in many ways, such as through multimedia presentations, posters or reports. Whichever format you decide to use, it is a good idea to include these features:

- an introduction – explain your question and define key terms
- an explanation of what research you did – why did you use the particular sources you chose?
- an explanation of your results – you might present your results in a range of formats
- a conclusion – explain how you came to the conclusion you reached
- a proposal for action – what needs to be done now? Predict the consequences of your proposal.

When presenting your findings, remember that a common language is used in economics and business, just as it is in science and mathematics. Source 9 defines some commonly used terms. Additional economics and business terms can be found in the glossary at the end of this book, and are also defined throughout the chapters.

Additional resource
Using cognitive verbs

Quizlet
Become familiar with economics and business terms by reviewing them on Quizlet.

Check your learning
Topic 11.5

Source 9 Some useful economic and business terms

business	activity that involves producing goods or providing services in exchange for money
cost–benefit analysis	estimating what will need to be paid (costs) and what possible profits will be derived (benefits) from a business proposal
economics	the study of how people produce, consume and share wealth
gross domestic product (GDP)	the total monetary value of all the goods and services produced by a country over a specific time period (usually a year)
interest rate	the amount a borrower must pay to a lender for the use of assets such as money – usually expressed as a percentage of the total amount borrowed
investing	putting money into shares, property or other financial schemes in the hope of making a profit
opportunity cost	what we miss out on when making a choice
unemployment rate	the percentage of people in the labour force who are actively seeking employment but cannot find work

Presenting data and information

How you choose to present economic and business data and information is important when communicating your findings to an audience. You may choose to use a visual display, such as a flowchart, infographic, table or graph, to display your results. Presenting data in a graphic form is an effective way to show patterns, trends and irregularities. Incorporating primary sources such as financial statements or interview transcripts will also help support your conclusions.

Source 10 Businesses can be affected by external forces, such as the COVID-19 pandemic, which caused many businesses to shut down either temporarily or permanently due to government restrictions.

CHAPTER 12

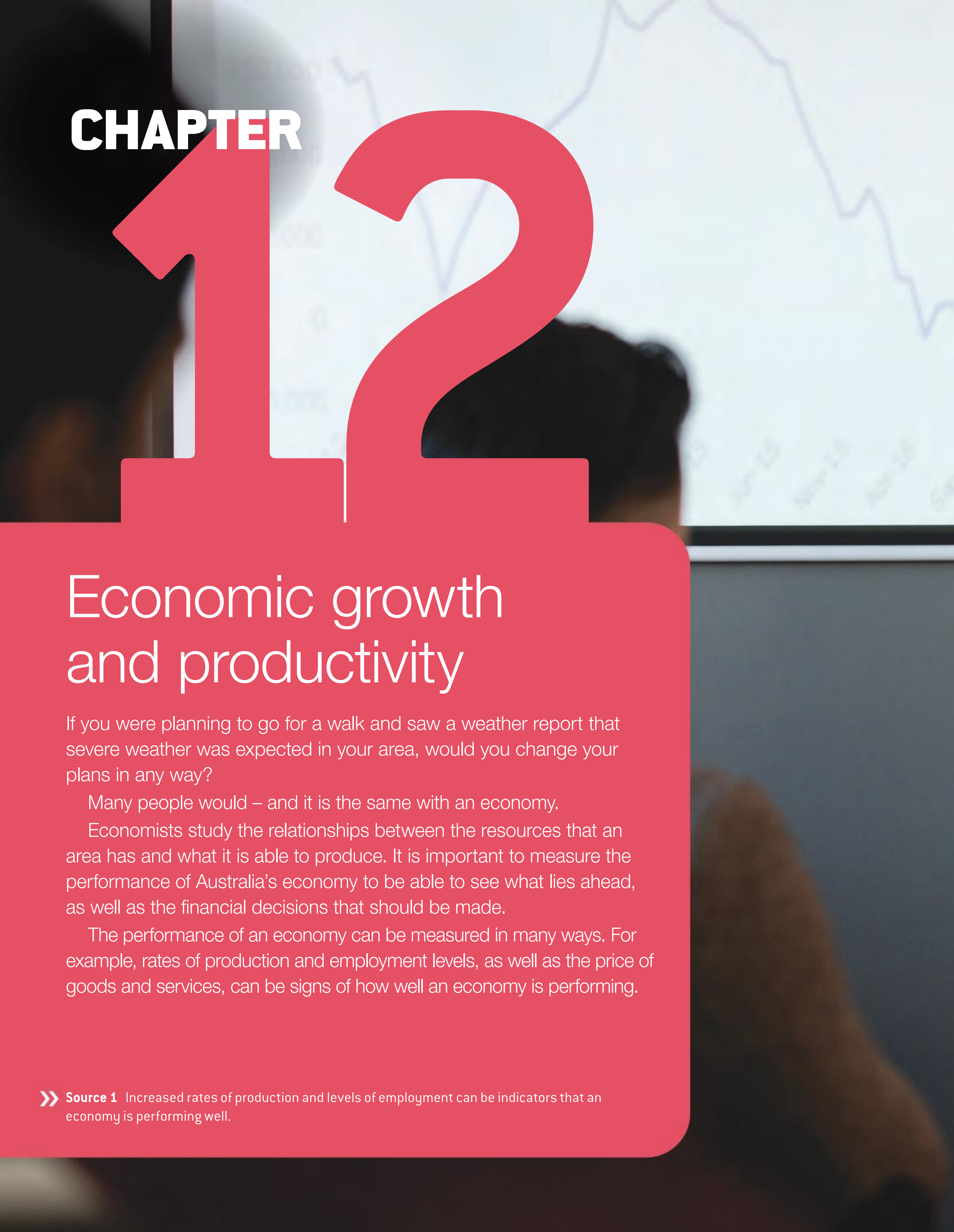
Economic growth and productivity

If you were planning to go for a walk and saw a weather report that severe weather was expected in your area, would you change your plans in any way?

Many people would – and it is the same with an economy.

Economists study the relationships between the resources that an area has and what it is able to produce. It is important to measure the performance of Australia's economy to be able to see what lies ahead, as well as the financial decisions that should be made.

The performance of an economy can be measured in many ways. For example, rates of production and employment levels, as well as the price of goods and services, can be signs of how well an economy is performing.



Source 1 Increased rates of production and levels of employment can be indicators that an economy is performing well.

12A

How is the performance of the Australian economy measured?

12B

How well does the Australian economy perform compared with other economies around the world?

12.1 Measuring growth – GDP

Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» explain GDP as an indicator of economic performance.

One way of measuring your performance at school is checking how well you have performed on a test. One way of measuring the performance of the economy is checking **Gross Domestic Product (GDP)** figures. If GDP increases, we know that the economy is growing. If GDP decreases, we know the economy is contracting, or shrinking.

Understanding GDP

Let us look at the term 'Gross Domestic Product' in more detail:

- 'Gross' means that tax or other deductions are not taken into account when calculating GDP. GDP is a measure of value before these are deducted. For example, machinery decreases in value over time due to wear (known as **depreciation**), but this is not taken into account when calculating GDP.
- 'Domestic' refers to production within a country, such as Australia.
- 'Product' refers to **goods** (such as bread, mobile phones and clothes) and **services** (such as haircuts, tax returns and school fees). Only **final goods and services** are included when calculating GDP. For example, an apple pie is a final good because it is no longer being used to produce another good.

Source 1 GDP is one way to measure economic growth in an economy.

Source 2 Annual percentage change in real GDP for Australia, 2017–2022 (adjusted for inflation: see page 416)

Year	2017	2018	2019	2020	2021	2022*
Annual percentage change	2.4	2.8	2.0	–2.1	4.9	3.8

*IMF forecast from the October 2022 *World Economic Outlook* report

Source: IMF

Why economic growth is important

The Australian Bureau of Statistics (ABS) releases its GDP figures every quarter (that is, every three months). It is the percentage change in GDP that makes the news and tells us whether the economy is growing. On a yearly basis, economists hope to see **economic growth** exceed 2 per cent.

Economic growth is important because if more goods and services are being produced, this means that more people are being employed (and paid wages) to make them. People are then able to spend their wages on a wider variety of goods and services that may improve their **living standards**. When economic growth falls, it means that there is a decline in the number of goods and services being produced, which usually means a decline in the number of people being employed, and the wages they are paid. In turn, this often means a decline in their living standards.

Gross Domestic Product (GDP)
the total monetary value of all the goods and services produced by a country over a specific time period (usually a year)

depreciation
a reduction in value of an asset (such as a computer) over time due to wear and tear

goods and services
products made for consumers; goods are tangible products that can be touched; services are intangible products that cannot be touched but benefit the consumer in some way

final goods and services
goods and services that are at their furthest stage of production; that is, they will not be used to produce other goods and services

Graph it!
GDP change in Australia

economic growth
an increase in the amount of goods and services produced, per person, within a specific period of time

living standards
the level of wealth, material goods, comfort and life necessities available to people living in a geographical area

An economic **recession** is where economic growth falls for two or more quarters in a row (that is, for six or more months). Australia has had five recessions since 1960: 1961, 1974–75, 1982–83, 1991–92 and 2020. A **depression** is more severe, and is classed as an extreme recession lasting two or more years. In a depression, economic growth falls, there is a decrease in the amount of money lent, a significant increase in unemployment, and little consumer confidence.

Limitations of GDP as a measure

At school, your test results alone do not always paint a true picture of your performance. Most of the time, good performance can only be assessed by looking at a range of different measures, such as your attitude and behaviour in class, and your relationships with your classmates. In a similar way, GDP alone does not accurately assess the true performance of the economy. In fact, producing more goods and services may have some undesirable environmental and social consequences.

Source 4 lists important factors for a worthwhile life. None of these factors are considered when calculating GDP.

Source 3 Boys collect bricks during the Great Depression. In mid-1932 almost 32 per cent of Australians were out of work. Many young people took up extremely low-paying and physically demanding jobs to help provide income for their families during these hard times.

Source 4 Important factors for a worthwhile life

Factors
Having enough leisure time
Spending time with family and friends
Contributing to the community
Having a job that you find rewarding
Enjoying nature
Having good health
Being in a pollution-free environment
Living in a society where income and wealth are distributed fairly

recession
when economic growth falls for two or more quarters in a row

depression
when economic activity is in decline over the long term

12.1 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 What does GDP stand for?
2 **Identify** one possible reason why we measure GDP.
3 **Recall** at least three factors that affect a nation's progress, but are not measured by GDP.
4 In your own words, **define** 'economic depression'.

Comprehend

5 **Summarise** the consequences of a depression.
6 **Explain** how you think producing more goods and services each year might affect our environment.
7 What percentage change in GDP do economists like to see? Why do you think this is?

Apply

8 Look at Source 2. Why do you think there was a significant decline in GDP growth in 2020? **Discuss** what events may have had an impact.
9 Refer to the Chart Pack at the Reserve Bank's website (a link is provided on your obook pro) and find the latest annual and quarterly GDP figures. **Investigate** how GDP has changed since 2018. What trends can you identify?
10 **Create** a diagram or infographic showing how increases in GDP can lead to increased employment and improved living standards.

Weblink
Reserve Bank Chart Pack

12.2 Measuring price changes – inflation

Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» explain inflation as an indicator of economic performance.

Inflation occurs when there is an increase in the general level of prices paid for goods and services over a certain period of time. Usually we measure the change in prices on a yearly basis. Rising prices means the **consumer** must pay more for goods and services if they want to continue to consume the same amount and maintain their living standards. For example, $100 spent on goods and services in 1980 would cost $480.10 in 2020 (assuming an average inflation rate of 4 per cent over those 40 years). It must be remembered, however, that wages and salaries also increase. In 1980, the average weekly wage (before tax) was $275.60 and in November 2020 it was $1711.60. The Reserve Bank of Australia and Treasury have an inflation target of 2–3 per cent per year, so if the rate is not higher than that, inflation is considered low enough.

inflation
an increase in the general level of prices paid for goods and services over a certain period of time

consumer
a person who buys goods or services for personal use

Reasons for inflation

One of the main reasons that prices rise is stronger demand in the economy for goods and services. If the demand is such that companies are unable to keep up with the demand for their products, this can lead to a shortage of goods and services. The result of this is that prices increase. Increased spending might be due to:

- consumers feeling confident about their income and employment in the future
- businesses feeling confident about the future – they may therefore expand their business operations, employ more staff and invest in better **capital equipment**
- trading partners demanding our exported goods and services
- relatively low **interest rates**, encouraging consumers and business to borrow more
- lower taxes and increased government spending.

Inflation may also occur due to increasing costs:

- If wages increase, this extra cost may be passed on to consumers as higher prices.
- Higher taxes and higher interest rates may lead to increased costs that businesses must bear.
- Businesses using imported raw materials may have to pay more if the value of the Australian dollar falls relative to other currencies.
- An increase in oil or energy prices can have a big impact on costs for many businesses.

capital equipment
physical items, such as vehicles, machines and computers, that are used in production

interest rates
the amount a borrower must pay to a lender for the use of money – usually expressed as a percentage of the total amount borrowed

Inflation winners

- **High-income earners** – people with jobs, whose incomes increase at the same rate or faster than inflation
- **Borrowers** – rising prices means it may be better to borrow with a fixed interest rate and purchase now
- **Importers** – the price of imported goods may be cheaper than the price of goods produced in Australia

Inflation losers

- **Low- to middle-income earners** – people on incomes that do not increase as fast as inflation, such as part-time workers, the unemployed and pensioners
- **Bank savers** – money sitting in the bank may not buy as much as it previously did due to price rises
- **Exporters** – as exported goods become more expensive, demand from overseas consumers will fall

Source 5 Higher inflation rates affect purchasing power. They have an adverse impact on some groups in our community. This means that some people benefit, while others do not.

CASE STUDY

How much do you pay for a cup of coffee?

As you have seen, inflation refers to the rise in the general level of prices, not just the price of a single type of good or service. Nevertheless, it is interesting to look at the price of frequently consumed items, such as a cappuccino.

A Brisbane coffee machine supplier, Gilkatho, started a 'cappuccino price index' in 2003. It first began monitoring coffee prices in Brisbane in 2003, and now monitors prices in the major capital cities in Australia. In the last quarter of 2010, for example, the average price of a takeaway cappuccino in Melbourne was $3.15. By 2019, it was over $4. The most expensive place to buy a cappuccino is Darwin and the least expensive is Sydney.

The demand for coffee fell slightly in 2020 due to COVID-19 restrictions, with fewer people visiting cafes. The prices of particular blends of coffee – such as Arabica, which is more commonly served in cafes than consumed at home – decreased more significantly than others.

In the long term, increasing demand in emerging markets such as China, India and Brazil, as well as more frequent droughts brought about by climate change, are expected to push prices up.

Measuring inflation

The Australian Bureau of Statistics (ABS) measures inflation by using the **Consumer Price Index (CPI)**. The CPI measures the price change of a typical basket of goods and services purchased by Australian households every quarter. The CPI 'basket' includes goods such as food, clothing and furniture, as well as services such as health, insurance and education. The change in these prices from one quarter to another is referred to as the inflation rate. We therefore know the rate at which prices are changing in the economy.

Source: Graph compiled by the RBA, using data from the ABS

Source 6 The target range of inflation, as measured by the CPI

12.2 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 In your own words, **define** 'inflation'.

2 **Identify** the Reserve Bank's target inflation rate.

3 How does the ABS measure inflation?

Comprehend

4 Decide which of the following factors may contribute to an increase in inflation caused by strong demand. In each case, **explain** why or why not.

a Consumer confidence falls.

b Business confidence rises.

c Income tax is increased.

5 Look at Source 6 and **describe** Australia's inflation trend from 2015 to 2020.

6 **Explain** why people on the aged pension are more likely to be affected by higher inflation rates than employed people.

Apply

7 **Investigate** hyperinflation in either Zimbabwe or Venezuela. Write a 200-word paragraph describing how the economy and the people were affected.

Consumer Price Index (CPI)
a measurement of retail price changes of a constant basket of goods and services

Quiz me!
A quick quiz on measuring price changes – inflation

12.3 Measuring participation – the unemployment rate

Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» explain the causes and consequences of unemployment.

According to the ABS, a person only needs to be employed for one hour per week to be considered 'employed'. This includes all Australians aged 15 years and over, from teenagers to older people.

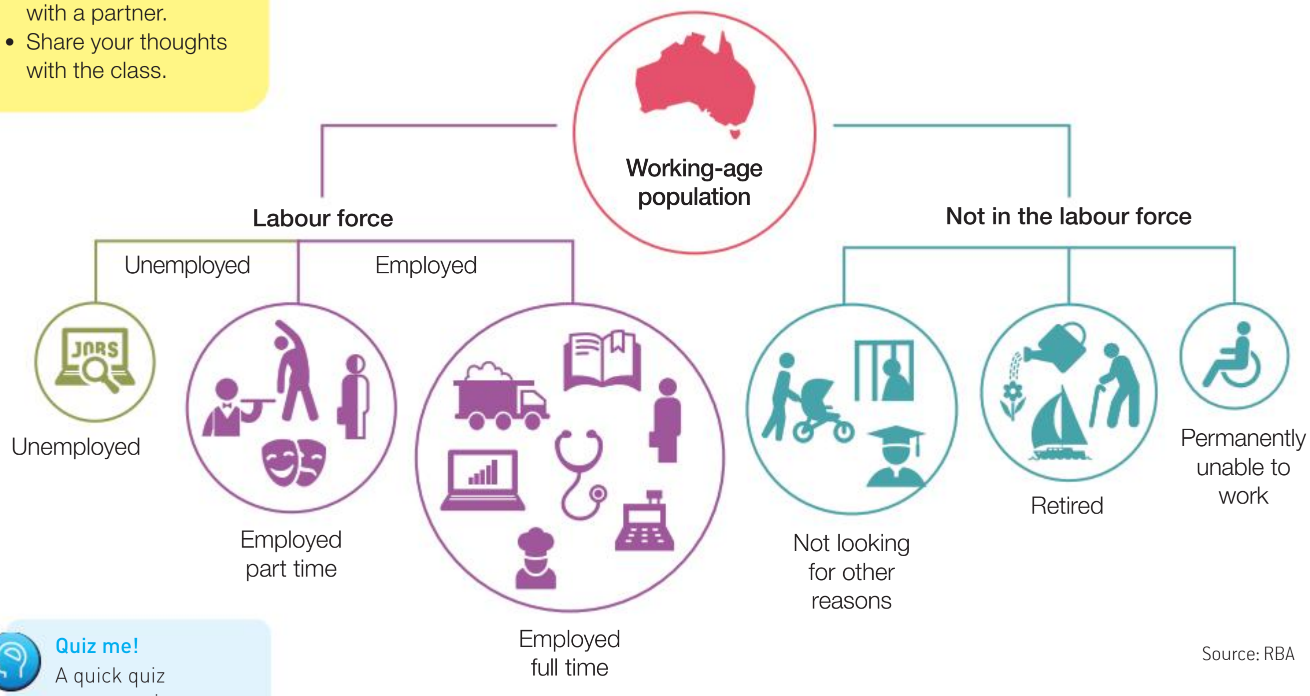
The labour force, or workforce, is made up of both employed and unemployed people. People who are not included in the labour force figures include:

- children under 15 years of age
- retired people
- full-time students
- discouraged people (who have given up looking for work)
- home carers (people who stay at home to look after the house and children)
- people who are institutionalised (for example, in prisons and medical care homes)
- people in the military services.

Source 7 summarises those who are in the labour force and those who are not.

Think, pair, share

- Think about the groups of people who are not included in the workforce figures. Should they be?
- Discuss your ideas with a partner.
- Share your thoughts with the class.



Source 7 The working-age population is made up of those in the labour force and those not in the labour force.

Quiz me!
A quick quiz on measuring participation – the unemployment rate

unemployment rate
the percentage of people in the labour force who are actively seeking employment but cannot find work

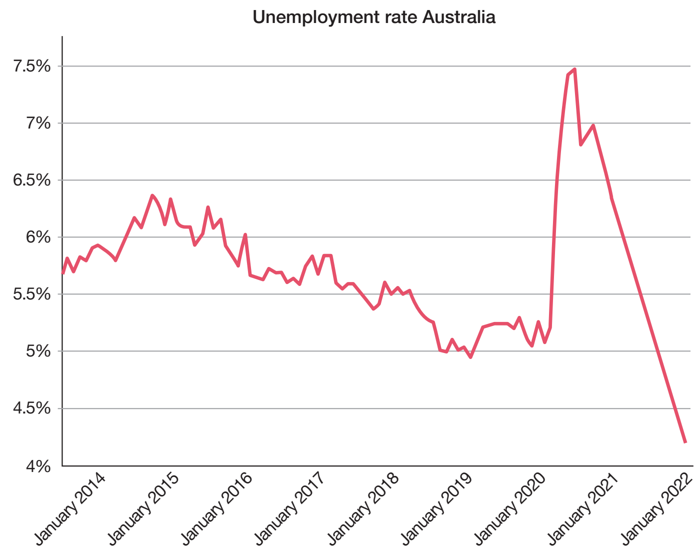
An important indicator of how well the Australian economy is performing is the **unemployment rate** – the percentage of people in the labour force who are unemployed.

When the total unemployment rate in Australia is high, the government collects less revenue in the form of taxes and must also pay more to assist the unemployed in the form of social benefits (for example, unemployment payments) and welfare programs (for example, social housing). There are, of course, a range of other social consequences associated with high unemployment rates, such as reduced living standards, loss of skills from the workforce, and the possible psychological effects of not working (such as depression).

Causes of unemployment

There are many causes of unemployment. When production or GDP is weak and spending in the economy has decreased, businesses may not hire new staff or may cut back on staff to save money and stay in business. Unemployment may also rise because of factors such as increased competition from overseas, making it difficult for Australian businesses to compete. Businesses may move their operations to other countries or may close down. Labour-saving technology may also be introduced, which may lead to unemployment, even if it is in the short term.

In 2020–21, the impact of the COVID-19 pandemic led to a spike in the unemployment rate in Australia (see Source 8). This was because government restrictions to limit the spread of the disease meant that many businesses were unable to trade as normal, and there was no work for their employees. In April 2022, the unemployment rate bounced back to 3.9 per cent – the lowest it has been in nearly 50 years.



Source: Data provided by the ABS

Source 8 Australia's unemployment rate fell from over 10 per cent in the early 1990s to under 5 per cent in the mid-2000s. In 2022, it fell to a record low.

CASE STUDY

Will robots take our jobs in the future?

According to a study conducted at Oxford University, nations in the industrialised world, like Australia, could lose half of all jobs to automation. Automation is when a machine does the work of a human. It is already impacting the mining industry, where half of the iron ore in the Pilbara region is being transported by driverless robots. The big advantage to business of automation is the prospect of cutting labour costs and therefore remaining competitive on the world market.

The Royal Adelaide Hospital is one of Australia's most technologically advanced hospitals. It uses autonomous vehicles (AGVs) to deliver meals, using sensors to help navigate elevators and wards.

Some experts say that the advance in technology means that the type of work we do is changing. There will be fewer low-skilled jobs, but the opportunity to do higher-skilled work that robots cannot do will provide increased opportunities for some.

Source 9 Robotic capsicum harvester 'Harvey' was developed by the Queensland University of Technology.

12.3 Check your learning

Comprehend

1 Using Source 8, **describe** the trend in Australia's unemployment rate from 2015 to 2021.

2 What are some of the social consequences of unemployment?

3 **Summarise** three examples of where machines have reduced the need for labour.

4 **Explain** how unemployment affects government revenue.

Apply

5 **Discuss** why lower levels of production are likely to result in increased unemployment.

6 'A business that does not take advantage of automation risks closing down and then no one will be employed in that business.' To what extent do you agree with this statement? A lot (strongly) a little bit (somewhat) or not at all? Write a paragraph to **justify** your response.

12.4 Productivity

Learning intention

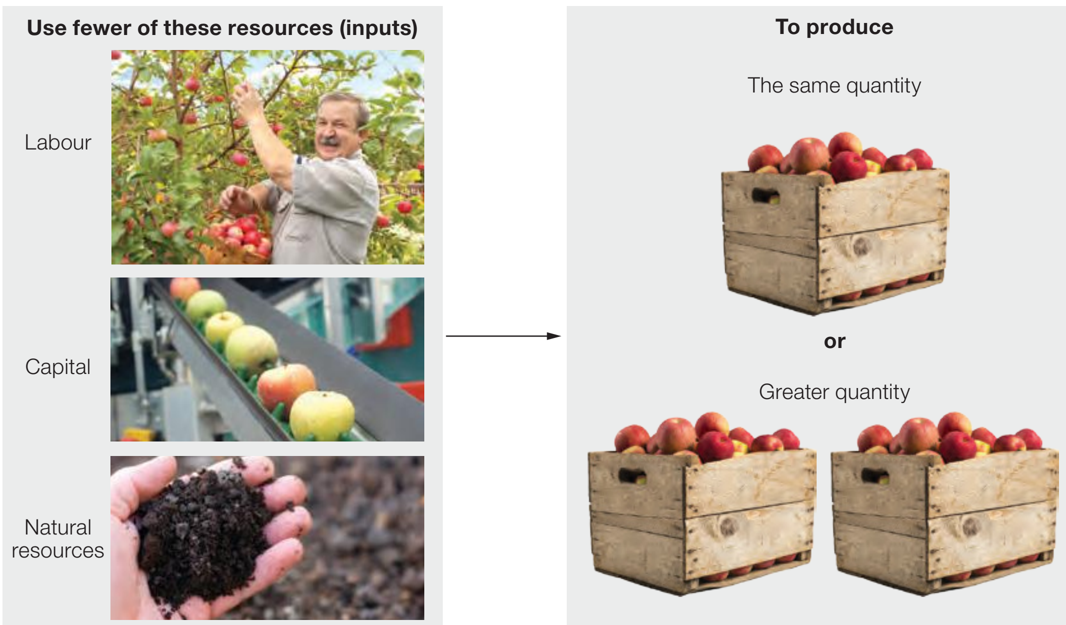
By the end of this topic, you should be able to:

» understand the processes that businesses use to manage the workforce and improve productivity.

productivity
a measurement of what is produced (output) from a given amount of resources (input)

Productivity measures what can be produced (output) from a given amount of resources (input). Measuring productivity is used as a guide to see whether production is becoming more or less efficient. When production is more efficient, such as when fewer resources are being used to produce the same or a greater amount of goods and services (as shown in Source 10), there is economic growth. When production is less efficient, it means that less goods and services are being produced – which also means a decline in the number of people employed – and results in economic decline.

Businesses try to improve productivity by managing the labour, capital and natural resources used in the production process. Governments also seek to support economic growth by providing support to businesses and entrepreneurs through various programs and awards.



Source 10 Businesses try to improve productivity by producing the same or a greater amount of goods (for example, apples) from fewer resources.

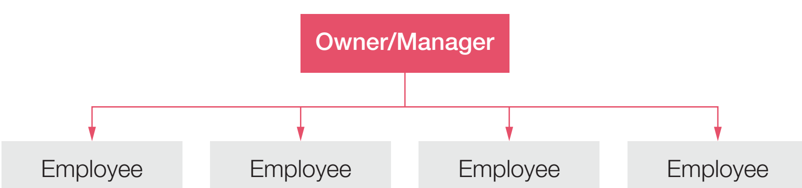
Labour productivity

Quiz me!
A quick quiz on productivity

Labour productivity measures the amount of goods and services that a worker produces in a given amount of time. A business might take action to increase the productivity of its workforce in the following areas.

Organisational structure

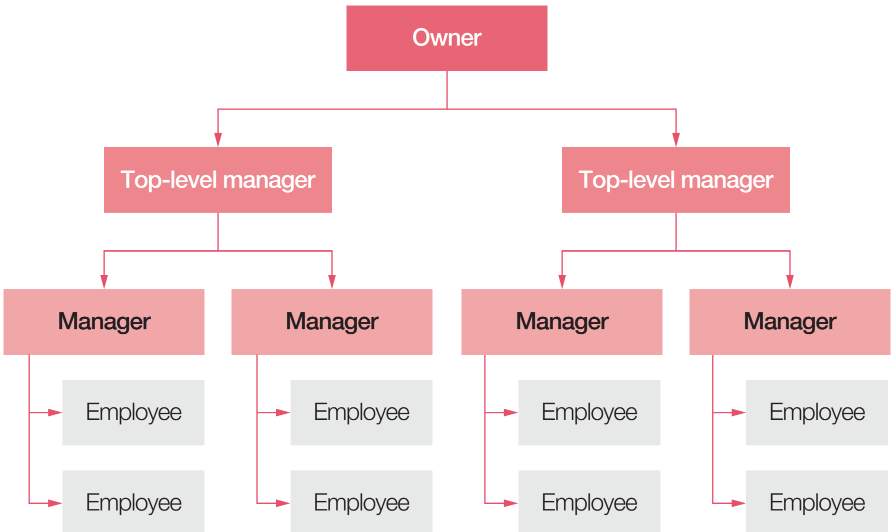
The way a business is organised can affect the productivity of employees by determining how involved they are in the decision-making of the company they work for. A horizontal organisational structure (also known as a flat structure) has few managers and many employees. In this structure, the communication pathway between employees and managers is shorter and therefore more effective, often increasing the sense of satisfaction in employees and improving productivity.



Source 11 A horizontal organisational structure

A vertical organisational structure (also known as a tall or hierarchical structure) has many layers of management and a long **chain of command**. Managers have a relatively small number of employees in their team and have more control over what employees do. While an employee is less independent in this structure, they also have more opportunity to progress into a leadership role.

chain of command
the system by which instructions are passed from one person to another



Source 12 A vertical organisational structure

Training and upskilling

Employees who develop better skills and knowledge are likely to improve labour productivity. Developing employee skills and knowledge may take place through attending training, taking part in conferences, or participating in e-learning courses. Employees can also gain new skills and knowledge through job rotation, where an employee experiences what it is like to undertake different jobs within the business.

Mentoring programs, where a more experienced employee provides guidance and support to a less experienced employee, can also increase labour productivity. Secondment is another way to develop an employee's abilities and may involve an employee working in another role or organisation temporarily. Employees who develop their skills and knowledge through training may experience higher levels of job satisfaction, leading to reduced staff turnover (staff leaving the business) and absenteeism. Skilled staff are better able to serve customers and use the equipment required to do their job.

Workplace culture and flexibility

Each business has its own way of conducting business. A business's 'culture' is influenced by such things as values, beliefs, the vision for the business and habits. If an organisation is considered to be a good place to work, labour productivity is likely to be higher.

A business might also improve productivity by providing employees with the support they need to do their job. During the COVID-19 pandemic, many businesses were able to continue operations by supporting employees to work remotely. For many people, this was the first time they had experienced doing their job away from the office. Flexibility of working location and hours has increasingly become an important factor in the productivity of Australian workers.

Employee incentive schemes

Employees may be offered a financial incentive over and above their normal wage for meeting agreed performance targets. Incentives take many forms, such as cash bonuses, shares in the business, or non-monetary rewards, such as vacations or additional paid leave. The incentive is linked to performance and therefore can improve productivity in a business.

Key skill worksheet
Interpreting & analysing: Analysing productivity

Capital productivity

Capital is used in the production of goods and services and includes such things as machinery, computers, mines, tools and buildings. Capital productivity measures the amount of goods and services that can be produced using a fixed amount of capital in a given amount of time. Businesses can improve capital productivity in a number of ways.

Technology

Businesses can increase their productivity by using the most advanced technology and equipment available in order to save time and cost.

Source 13 During the COVID-19 pandemic, many restaurants introduced contactless ordering systems where customers could access the menu, order and pay by scanning a QR code on their smartphone.

Improving processes

All businesses use a number of processes to produce a product. A simple example of a process is taking an order at a restaurant. A waiter may take the order, using a pen and paper or a computer, or the customer may need to go to the counter to order. Many restaurants use 'self-serve' or contactless ordering systems, where customers order and pay using their smartphone.

Certain processes are also used to produce goods. Some manufacturing businesses use just-in-time inventory systems so that materials arrive at the right time without the need to hold vast amounts of stock. This reduces storage costs and the possibility of waste or damage to stock.

CASE STUDY

Diversity in the workplace

Studies have shown that workplaces committed to employing people of different ages, genders, ethnicities, sexual orientations, cultural backgrounds and abilities are more likely to achieve success. Companies with diverse workforces benefit from a broad range of knowledge and perspectives, and are able to connect with a wide range of consumers. Having a team that includes people from different backgrounds and with different experiences allows for better, more informed decision making and can be crucial for creativity and innovation.

Research from the McKinsey Global Institute, a business and economics research firm, shows that companies with greater racial and ethnic diversity are 36 per cent more likely to achieve above-average financial returns. Similarly, companies that are more gender diverse at an executive level are 25 per cent more likely to outperform their non-diverse counterparts.

IBM is a global technology and consulting corporation responsible for inventions such as the magnetic swipe strip found on credit cards, the common barcode and the hard drive. It is also one of the largest employers in the world. IBM has a strong diversity and inclusion strategy that its leaders say is instrumental in the company's continuing success.

Chairman and CEO of IBM Arvind Krishna says, 'I fundamentally believe that as we continue to uphold the values of diversity, inclusion, and equity, we will make IBM a better and stronger company'.

Since the 1990s, IBM has implemented numerous strategies and programs to create a more diverse workforce, including removing education requirements for positions, providing mentoring and networking opportunities for minority groups, partnering with representative organisations, and even using AI to remove bias in recruitment and promotion.

Source 14 IBM believes diversity in the workplace is critical for success.

12.4 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 In your own words, **define** productivity.

2 **Recall** two ways labour productivity could be increased.

Comprehend

3 **Explain** how diversity in the workplace can lead to increased productivity.

Analyse

4 **Examine** the following business scenarios and suggest how these business owners could improve productivity.

a Ez owns and runs a bakery. Their bread is the best in the area, but customers have to queue for a long time to be served.

b Joel owns his own hairdressing business, where he is the only worker. He does everything, from making appointments to cleaning tools at the end of the day. He is often too busy to take calls and loses potential customers.

c Debbie runs her own accountancy practice. She has two accountants working for her but can't keep up with customer demand around tax time.

d Bayani manages a busy restaurant in the city. He finds he has to constantly hire and train new wait staff because many of his employees quit. They often complain to him about the lack of breaks and the long hours.

e Ji-min owns a small gardening business that is growing in popularity. However, he avoids taking appointments that involve tree stump removal, as he doesn't have the equipment to complete this work.

f Octavia is the Chief Executive Officer (CEO) of a large construction firm. She mainly works from a private office with a few other managers and doesn't ever visit the construction sites or talk to the employees. Sometimes it will be more than a month before she finds out about an accident that has occurred on the site.

g Alister is the manager of an analytics company. He is worried he is about to lose one of his best workers as they are planning on moving to a different state.

Apply

5 Select a business you frequently use and create a flow chart that shows the process used to serve customers or the process used to take a booking. **Propose** (put forward) any productivity improvements you could make to the business's processes.

6 Look at the way you study at school and at home. Write down your study habits, taking into consideration such things as when and where you study, why you study, how you try to remember facts, and any aids you use. How could you improve the processes you use to study?

12A SKILLS IN CONTEXT

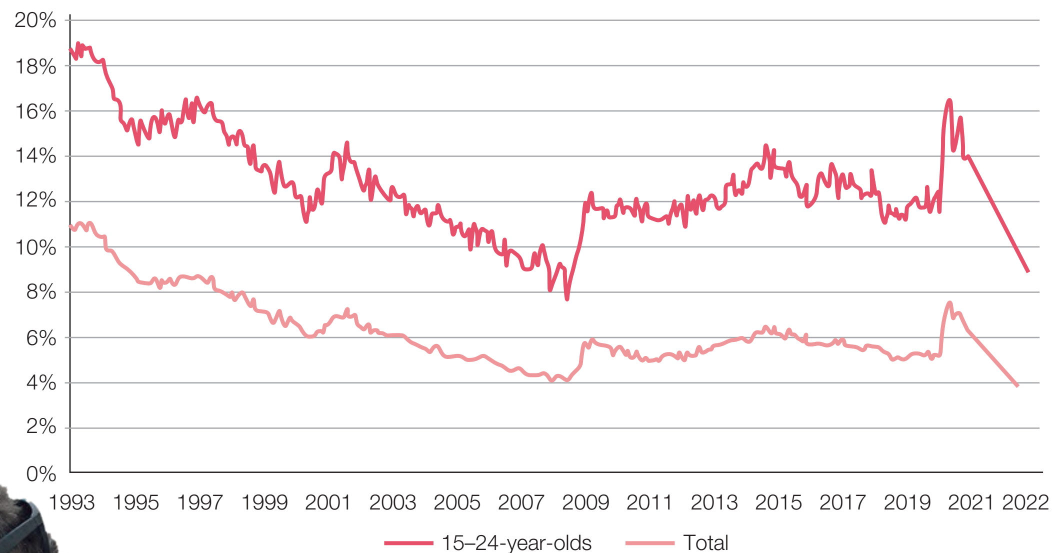
Youth unemployment

Test me!
Once you've finished the topics in this section, test yourself with this quiz and find out which worksheet you should do.

The youth unemployment rate in Australia is close to 9 per cent – that is, approximately double the general unemployment rate according to ABS figures released in 2022 (see Source 16). It includes all those aged 15–24 who are able and willing to work, but are not currently employed. Some geographical regions suffer higher rates of youth unemployment than others.

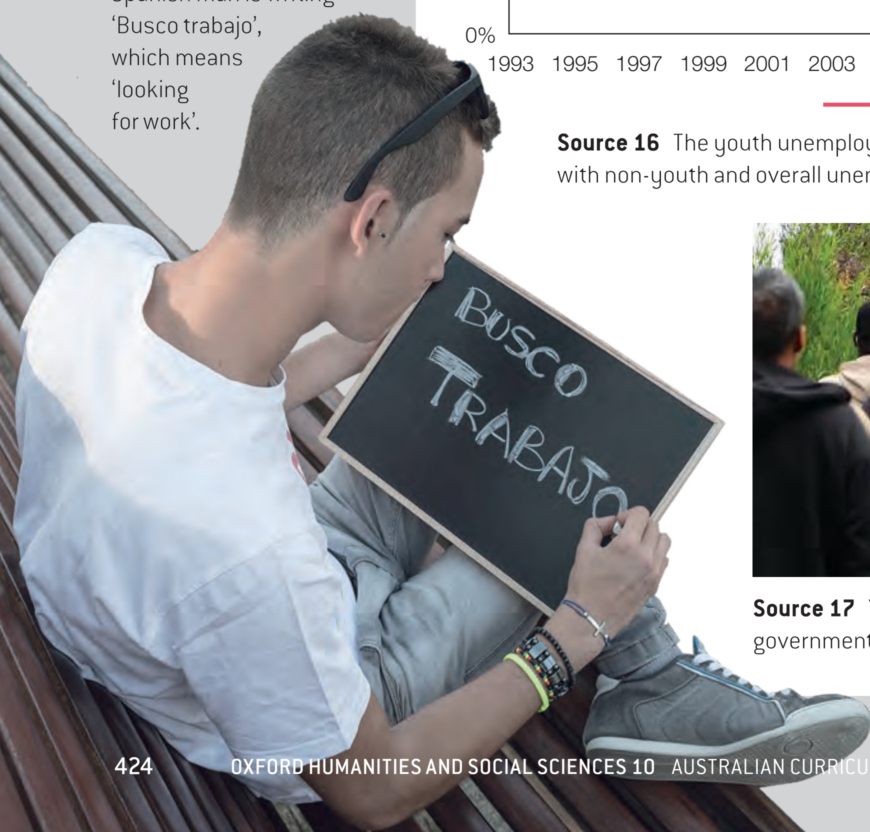
Technological change has contributed to youth unemployment. Jobs such as working on a cash register or becoming a sales assistant are no longer as plentiful as they once were. This has meant that many young people have found it difficult to 'get their foot in the door' and gain much needed work experience. Professor Phil Lewis at the University of Canberra says:

> Employers increasingly want people with skills and experience and that's a challenge for young people … A young person who leaves school in year 10 would be very lucky to find a job these days.



Source 16 The youth unemployment rate in Australia compared with non-youth and overall unemployment rates at May 2022

Source: Data provided by the ABS



Source 15 Work builds not only a person's self-esteem, but also their bank balance and future. While youth unemployment in Australia is close to 9 per cent, in Spain this figure exceeds 28 per cent. This young Spanish man is writing 'Busco trabajo', which means 'looking for work'.

Source 17 Young Australians who are unemployed may be entitled to government payments through Centrelink.

KEY SKILL
Questioning & researching

Formulating questions about an economic issue

Formulating questions is an important skill that will help you investigate an economic issue on your own. The questions that you generate will frame or direct the research that you then undertake.

Once you have established the economic issue you would like to explore, it is useful to generate one broad, overarching question to guide your inquiry. For example, if the economic issue was 'the problem of youth unemployment', the question posed might be: 'Why is youth unemployment a problem in Australia?'

After that, you need to generate more specific questions that are related to your overall inquiry question, including a mixture of question types.

Follow these steps:

Step 1 Identify the economic issue you wish to explore.

Step 2 Decide on your broad, overarching question.

Step 3 Generate some closed (or simple) questions; for example: 'Are young people more likely to be unemployed than those in higher age brackets?'

Step 4 Generate some open (or probing) questions; for example: 'What are the consequences of youth unemployment?'

Step 5 Generate some questions that relate to the evidence surrounding the issue; for example: 'What evidence is there that confirms youth unemployment is rising?' 'What other sources might be needed?'

Use a table, similar to the one in Source 18, to guide you through the process of formulating questions. Remember to include a mix of the three question types discussed.

Source 18 Process for formulating questions about an economic issue

1. Devise an overarching inquiry question	
2. Make a list of what you already know about this issue and then formulate sub-questions related to each point:	
Point 1	Sub-questions related to point 1
Point 2	Sub-questions related to point 2
Point 3	Sub-questions related to point 3
3. Make a list of what you do not know about this issue and then formulate sub-questions related to each point:	
Point 4	Sub-questions related to point 4
Point 5	Sub-questions related to point 5
Point 6	Sub-questions related to point 6

Practise the skill

1 Choose one of the following issues about youth unemployment, or propose one yourself:
- the social impact of youth unemployment
- the economic impact of youth unemployment
- solutions to youth unemployment
- problems caused by youth unemployment.

Now that you have chosen an issue, formulate an overarching question and fill in a table, similar to Source 18. **Investigate** to find out the answers to the questions you have proposed.

Extend your understanding

1 Do you know anyone who has experienced youth unemployment? It could be a friend, sibling or classmate – or even yourself. Ask them about their experiences and write a short description about what problems they (or you!) faced finding work and what the consequences were.

12.5 How Australia's economy compares

Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» understand how Australia's economy compares to other countries.

The performance of an economy is sometimes measured by how well it compares to other economies around the world. Australia ranked thirteenth in the world in terms of GDP in 2019 but it is still a relatively small economy, responsible for around 2 per cent of the world's production. Let us look at how well Australia compares with other countries in terms of achieving low unemployment and inflation rates, and higher economic growth.

Source 2 Australia's long period of uninterrupted economic growth contributed to the boom in high-rise building for offices and apartments, particularly in cities such as Melbourne.

Unemployment

Leading up to 2020, the unemployment rate in Australia was generally higher than that of its major trading partners (see Source 1). In 2020, however, Australia's unemployment rate was significantly surpassed by those of the United States and India, which experienced even greater economic difficulties as a result of the COVID-19 pandemic. In 2022, the **OECD** average unemployment rate stabilised at 5 per cent, which is the lowest it has been since the series began in 2001.

Source 1 Unemployment rates for Australia and its major trading partners

	2017	2018	2019	2020	2021	2022*
Australia	5.6	5.3	5.1	6.9	5.1	3.6
China	3.9	3.8	3.6	3.8	4.0	4.2
India	5.4	5.3	5.3	9.1	7.7	6.4
Japan	2.8	2.4	2.4	3.3	2.8	2.6
UK	4.4	4.1	3.8	5.4	4.5	3.8
USA	4.3	3.9	3.7	8.9	5.4	3.7

Source: IMF World Economic Outlook Database (October 2022)

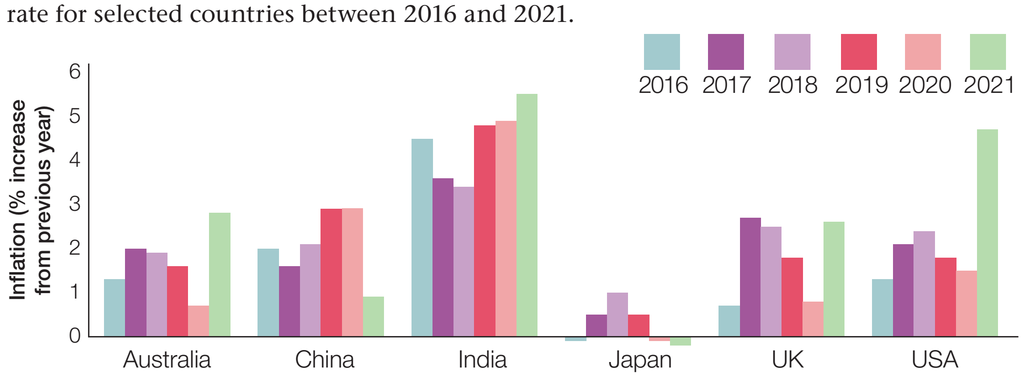
*Figures from 2022 are estimates and are subject to change.

Note: These unemployment rates indicate the percentage of the labour force that is unemployed and are seasonally adjusted. This means the data has been corrected to allow for some sort of comparison.

OECD
the Organisation for Economic Co-operation and Development, which consists of 30 member countries that discuss and promote economic and social policy

Inflation

Australia and trading partners such as China and the United States experienced relatively low levels of inflation in the years leading up to 2021. In 2022, Australia, the United Kingdom and the United States experienced some of the highest inflation rates in 30 years. At the time of writing, the full impact of these rate increases was not known. Source 3 shows the inflation rate for selected countries between 2016 and 2021.



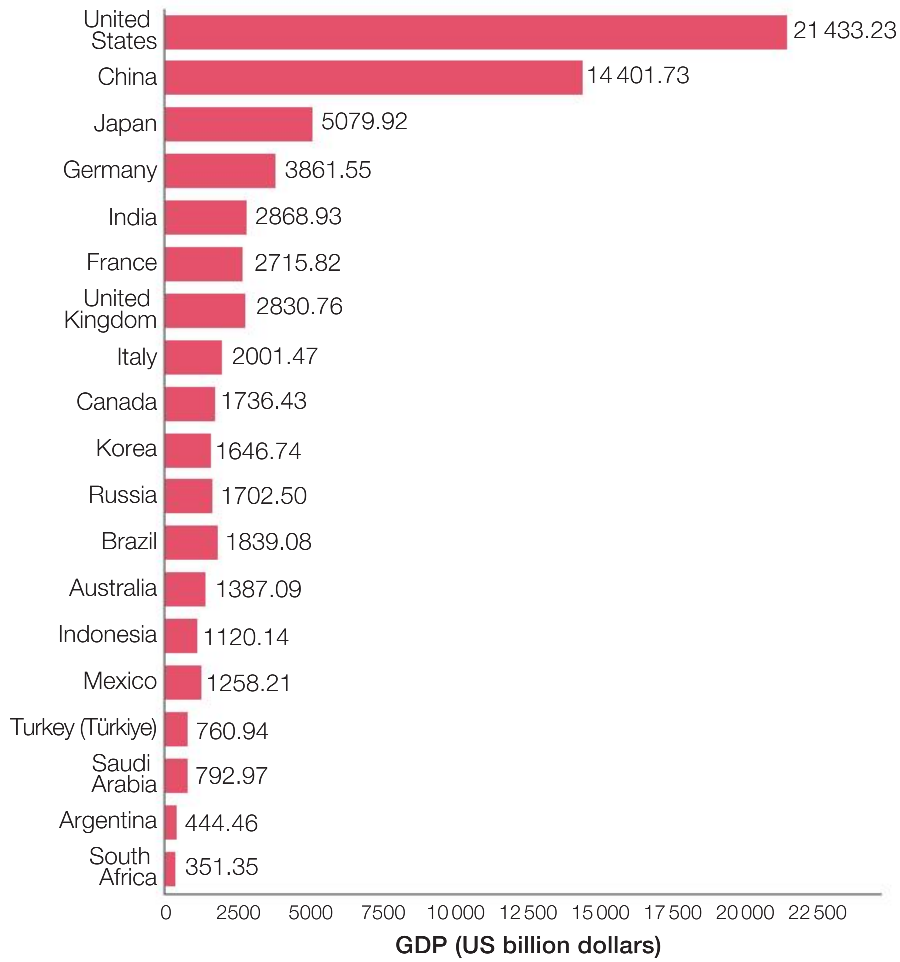
Source: IMF World Economic Outlook Database (October 2022)

Source 3 Inflation rates for selected countries, 2016–2021

GDP

Up until 2020, Australia had experienced uninterrupted economic growth since its last recession in 1991–92. This growth set a record that has not yet been equalled by any other developed nation in the world. During the Global Financial Crisis of 2007–08 (a time when many businesses collapsed and consumer confidence was very low), GDP fell in many developed countries. Australia was one of the few nations that still experienced positive economic growth.

Australia's economy is recovering from the 2020 recession, and it is forecast that it will continue to do so.



Source: Data from the IMF *World Economic Outlook* report, October 2020

Source 4 The GDP of G20 nations in 2020; the G20 is a group of nations that are considered important to the global economy due to factors such as their size, impact on trade and regional importance.

12.5 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 **Identify** how Australia's GDP compared with other G20 countries in 2020.

Analyse

2 Using Source 1, **compare** Australia's unemployment rate to its major trading partners in 2019.

3 Is Australia a large economy by world standards? Give reasons for your answer.

4 **Analyse** Source 3.
   a Which country had the highest rate of inflation from 2016 to 2021, and which had the lowest?
   b Which country has come closest to achieving a steady rate of inflation in the 2–3 per cent range that the Reserve Bank of Australia sets as its target?

Apply

5 **Evaluate** how the performance of the Australian economy in 2020 compared to the performance of other countries. Write a short analysis based on your reading.

Quiz me! A quick quiz on how Australia's economy compares

Source 5 When prices rise, we can no longer buy as much as we previously did for the same amount of money.

12B SKILLS IN CONTEXT

Understanding Australia's economic growth

Test me!
Once you've finished the topics in this section, test yourself with this quiz and find out which worksheet you should do.

Australia's strong record in economic growth has largely depended on the fact that it has abundant natural resources. Natural resources include such things as fossil fuels, minerals, forests, farmland and fisheries. The unfortunate side effect of this is that these resources become depleted over time and their extraction can cause environmental damage.

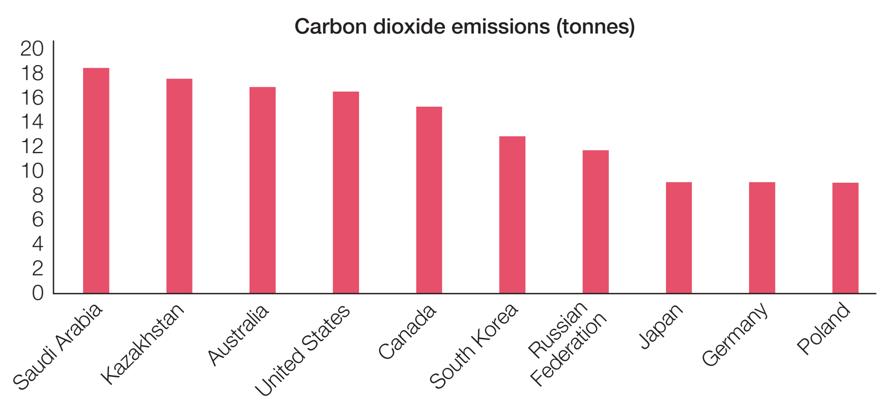
The Happy Planet Index (HPI), developed by the New Economics Foundation, attempts to measure factors that are crucial to the progress of societies but are not captured by GDP. These factors include wellbeing, life expectancy, inequality and ecological footprint. According to Nic Marks, creator of the HPI:

> The Happy Planet Index provides a compass to guide nations, and shows that it is possible to live good lives without costing the Earth.

In the most recent HPI, Australia ranked 105th out of 140 nations due to its huge carbon footprint per capita. Bhutan, on the other hand, is the world's only carbon-negative nation. It ranks 56th on the HPI and has adopted Gross National Happiness (GNH) instead of GDP as its primary measure of economic performance.

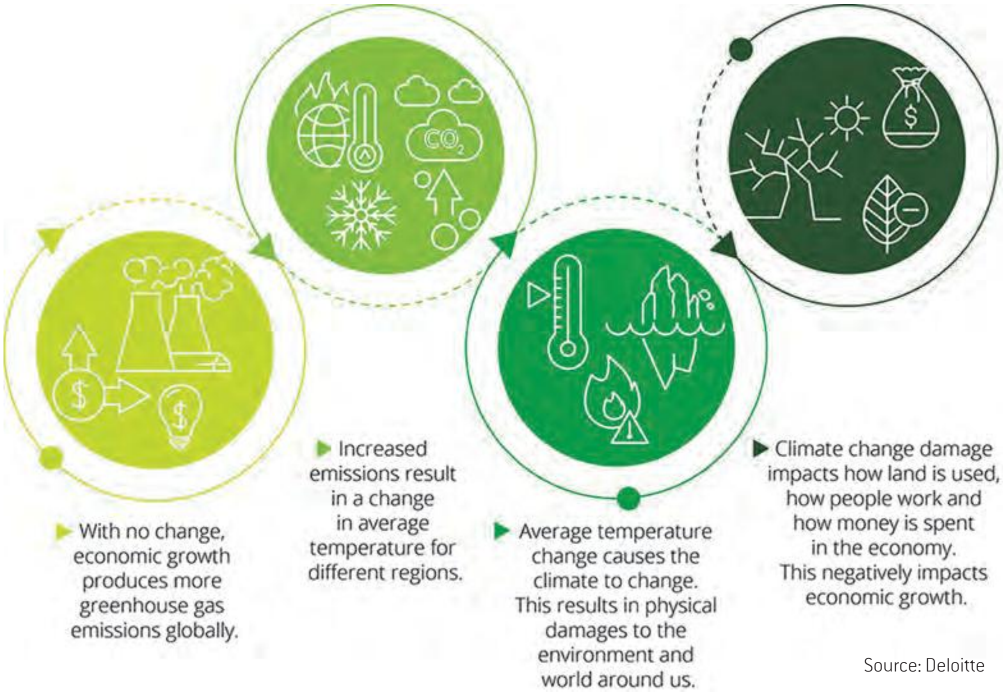
In recent years, Australia has been criticised for setting what many are calling unambitious targets to reduce greenhouse gas emissions. Greenhouse gases are those that absorb radiation from the sun's rays, trapping heat in the Earth's atmosphere. They include carbon dioxide and methane. Australia is the sixteenth-largest carbon dioxide emitter on the planet, and Australians are the third-largest carbon dioxide emitters per capita, as seen in Source 6. The average Australian emits 16.92 metric tonnes of carbon dioxide each year – a huge amount.

Source 7 Australia has abundant natural resources (including coal), the exports of which have boosted our economy.



Source: Data from the Union of Concerned Scientists

Source 6 Carbon dioxide emissions per capita, 2018



Source 8 Climate change will negatively impact economic growth.

KEY SKILL
Communicating

Preparing an infographic

A popular way for economists to present their findings and data is to prepare an infographic. Infographics use pictures and symbols to represent complex ideas and data so that the information is clear and quickly accessible. To prepare an infographic, follow these steps:

Step 1 Decide on a topic and the message that you want to communicate to your audience. In the infographic in Source 8, for example, the key message is that climate change will negatively impact the economy.

Step 2 Research your topic and collect data that helps to communicate your key idea. Try not to have too much data – do not include more than 10 key facts or numbers.

Step 3 Use pictures or graphics to communicate each of your key facts, as shown in Source 8.

Step 4 Lay your pictures of graphics out in a logical way that links together the key ideas. Make sure your infographic is not too cluttered. Give it a title or caption that communicates your message.

Practise the skill

1 **Create** an infographic that compares the performance of the Australian economy with the performance of another country or countries. Use the statistics on pages 426 to 427 as the basis for your infographic. You may like to do additional research to find more relevant statistics that enhance your infographic.

2 When completed, **compare** your infographic with your classmates' infographics. Which techniques did others use to best present the data in a visual way? How did they make the data easier to interpret?

Extend your understanding

1 **Create** another infographic on the effects of pursuing higher economic growth rates through increased production. Pick one of the following topics and do some initial research about the topic before creating your infographic:

- deforestation
- desertification
- extinction of species
- soil erosion
- oil depletion
- ozone depletion
- greenhouse gas emissions
- water pollution
- natural hazards/ natural disasters.

12 CHAPTER REVIEW

Review activity

Read the following text on how to analyse political and economic cartoons, then answer the questions that follow.

Analysing political and economic cartoons

Have you ever heard the saying 'a picture says a thousand words'? Images can be very powerful, and cartoons in particular have been used to convey messages for centuries. Cartoons have the ability to highlight the absurdity or silliness of something in a way that is both visually appealing and easy to understand for people who are not able or do not want to read a great deal of text about the issue. Cartoons can use unrealistic images to convey messages about real issues.

Analysing political and economic cartoons can be both enjoyable and thought-provoking. It is a skill that, when developed, will make it easier for you to pick up on all of the subtle details in cartoons and help you understand what the artist was trying to say.

Consider the following:

- Cartoons are often featured in print and digital news sources, and can express a point of view or support a piece of text.
- Often, cartoons can take a subversive or scathing tone and use caricature, satire or irony to communicate serious messages.
- Cartoons target emotions in seeking to appeal to the general public, businesses, community leaders, politicians or the government.
- Common techniques used by cartoonists include size (often features in cartoons will be disproportionate, to convey a message), labels, symbols, and angle or perspective.
- Some cartoons – especially political or economic cartoons – rely on the reader having some background knowledge or awareness of the event or topic shown in the cartoon.

Analyse the cartoon depicted in Source 9 and answer the following questions:

1 **Identify** where the cartoon is set. (1 mark)

2 **Identify** what the elephant represents. What can you observe about the elephant in this cartoon? (2 marks)

3 **Describe** how the globe is depicted. (2 marks)

4 **Describe** how the circus master is depicted. (2 marks)

5 **Describe** the relationship between the elephant and the globe, and what this represents in the real world. (4 marks)

6 Describe the role of the circus master and **explain** who or what you think they represent in the real world. (4 marks)

7 To what extent do you agree or disagree with the message of the cartoon? **Justify** your response. (5 marks)

(Total: 20 marks)

Source 9 *Economic Growth* by cartoonist Adrian Teal

Chapter checklist

Now that you have completed this chapter, reflect on your ability to do the following:

	I can do this.	I cannot do this yet.
Explain GDP as an indicator of economic performance.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 12.1, page 414.
Explain inflation as an indicator of economic performance.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 12.2, page 416.
Explain the causes and consequences of unemployment.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 12.3, page 418.
Understand the processes that businesses use to manage the workforce and improve productivity.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 12.4, page 420.
Understand how Australia's economy compares to other countries.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 12.5, page 426.

Check your Student obook pro for these digital resources and more:

Student book questions
Chapter 12

Key skill worksheet
Communicating:
Chapter 12

Quizlet
Play a game of
Quizlet on Economic
growth and productivity.

Chapter review quiz
Chapter 12

CHAPTER 13

Living standards

Meet Australian twins Oliver and Amelia, born 1 February 2021. According to the latest life expectancy figures for non-Indigenous Australians, Oliver will live until he is 80.90 years of age and Amelia will live until she is 85.0 years of age. Statistics show that they are likely to enjoy high living standards. They are unlikely to experience extreme poverty.

Despite these statistics, Oliver and Amelia's prosperity isn't guaranteed. Will the economy stay strong and offer them good job opportunities throughout their lives? Will their quality of life be affected by climate change?

Nothing is certain with regard to the economy, but the government must manage economic factors to ensure we continue to enjoy high living standards as a nation.

Source 1 Newborn twins Oliver and Amelia are Australians. Based on current statistics, they are likely to enjoy high living standards compared to babies born in many other countries around the world.

13A
Why do living standards vary?

13B
What is the connection between economic performance and living standards?

13.1 Living standards

Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» understand material and non-material living standards.

Source 1 Physical possessions, such as cars and houses, contribute to our material living standards.

A standard is a certain level of attainment or achievement. For example, you either pass Year 10 or you don't. When we talk about a country's living standards, we are specifically looking at what it is like to live in that country in terms of the material and non-material **wellbeing** of its citizens.

wellbeing
the ability of human beings to access the things they need in order to live happy and healthy lives

Material living standards

material living standards
standards that can be easily measured in terms of income per person, or consumption or purchase of goods and services

Material living standards refer to our access to physical goods and services. The car we drive, the house we live in and the food we eat are all examples of physical possessions that contribute to our material living standards. The material living standards of a nation are usually assessed or measured by the quantity of goods and services available each year as measured by Gross Domestic Product (GDP) (see topic 12.1 on page 414).

Many would agree that if the citizens of a country have access to more goods and services to satisfy their needs and wants, life is generally better. The production of goods and services provides citizens with employment, and therefore an income with which to buy those goods and services that improve their lives.

Non-material living standards

non-material living standards
standards that are not easily measured as they are intangible and refer to aspects of our lives such as feeling safe in the community

Non-material living standards must also be considered when assessing the quality of life. Non-material living standards cannot be measured in dollar terms, and are intangible (cannot be touched), but affect our enjoyment of life.

The following factors affect our non-material living standards:

- *freedom of speech* – such as being able to peacefully protest against the government of the day
- *free elections* – that provide the right to choose and dismiss parliamentary representatives
- *low levels of crime and discrimination* – where citizens can live without fear of constant crime or being treated differently because of factors such as race, disability or age
- *preservation of the environment* – allowing citizens to enjoy nature, breathe clean air and drink clean water
- *adequate leisure time* – so that employees have adequate rest periods away from work and time to spend with family.

While non-material living standards are not as easily measured as material living standards, some indicators do attempt to include non-material living standards to assess overall wellbeing. One example is the OECD Better Life Index.

The OECD Better Life Index

Weblink
OECD Better Life Index

GDP is an indicator of economic wellbeing that does not take into consideration the environmental costs of producing goods and services. The OECD Better Life Index, on the other

hand, seeks to provide a more holistic picture of the true living standards of 40 different countries. It measures wellbeing based on 11 criteria relating to material living conditions and quality of life. Source 2 provides a snapshot of five of these criteria with regard to Australia and Chile.

Quiz me!
A quick quiz on living standards

Source 2 The OECD Better Life Index: Wellbeing in Chile and Australia

Wellbeing indicator	OECD average	What are living standards like in Chile?	What are living standards like in Australia?
Jobs: Percentage of people aged 15–64 who have a paid job	66 per cent	Over 56 per cent	Over 73 per cent
Income: Average household income per capita	US$30 490 per annum	US$18 477 per annum	US$37 433 per annum
Education: Average student score in reading literacy, maths and science in the OECD's Programme for International Student Assessment (PISA)	488	438	499
Health: Life expectancy at birth	81 years	81 years	83 years
Environment: *Level of atmospheric PM2.5* (air pollutants that can cause damage to the lungs)	14.0 micrograms per cubic metre	23.4 micrograms per cubic metre	6.7 micrograms per cubic metre
Water quality: Percentage of people who say they are satisfied with the water quality	84 per cent	62 per cent	92 per cent

Source: OECD Better Life Index, 2022

13.1 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 **Define** the term 'living standards'.

2 **Recall** three examples of non-material living standards.

Analyse

3 **Examine** Source 2.

a Based on the criteria presented, identify the country with the highest living standards.

b Does Australia compare well in all criteria compared to the OECD average? Use evidence to support your response.

4 **Classify** each of the following living standard criteria from 1 to 5, according to its importance to you. If you do not consider a criterion to be important when assessing living standards, rate it as 1. If you consider it to be extremely important, rate it as 5.

a Primary and secondary school education is available.

b The air is clean.

c You can drink the water because it is clean.

d You have the right to vote.

e You are expected to live a long life.

f You are happy.

g You feel safe in your community.

h You have enough leisure time.

i You are likely to get a job.

j You can earn a decent income.

k You have enough to eat.

l You have shelter.

5 **Compare** your ratings in question 4 with those of a classmate, and explain why assessment of living standards can be subjective.

Apply

6 Consider a country that is relatively wealthy, producing an abundance of goods and services, but where the majority of the population is close to poverty and only a minority are wealthy. Would you consider the living standards in that country to be high or low? **Justify** (give reasons for) your answer.

7 **Create** a similar table to Source 2, but choose another country with which to compare Australia's living standards. Use the OECD Better Life Index website to conduct your research (a weblink has been provided on your obook pro).

13.2 Variations in living standards between countries

Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» understand the factors leading to different living standards between countries.

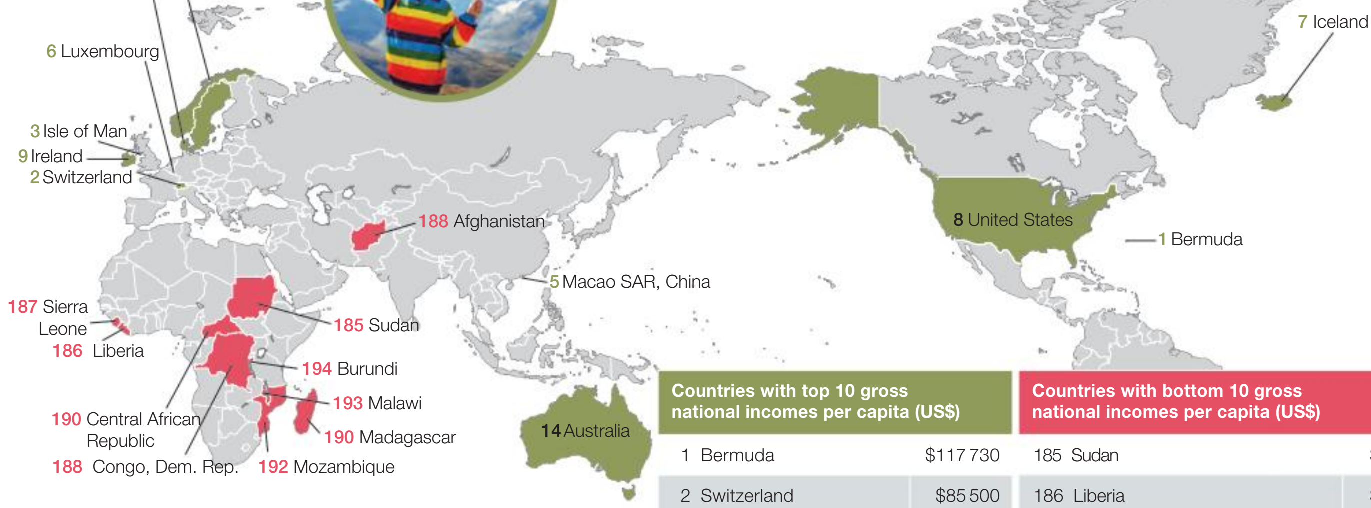
Quiz me!

A quick quiz on variations in living standards between countries

If you had a choice, what country would you most like to live in? Many might choose Australia, because our living standards are high by world standards.

The income that citizens earn on average is an important indicator of living standards, as it means that consumers can buy basic goods and services such as food, shelter and clothing, but also afford additional goods and services that make life easier. These additional goods – such as cars, refrigerators, washing machines and computer equipment – provide an additional level of convenience and enjoyment.

Children in Switzerland live in a country with a high standard of living.



Children in Sudan live in a country with a low standard of living.

Countries with top 10 gross national incomes per capita (US$)	
1 Bermuda	$117 730
2 Switzerland	$85 500
3 Isle of Man	$83 160
4 Norway	$82 500
5 Macao SAR, China	$78 640
6 Luxembourg	$73 910
7 Iceland	$72 850
8 United States	$65 850
9 Ireland	$64 000
10 Denmark	$63 950
14 Australia	$55 100

Countries with bottom 10 gross national incomes per capita (US$)	
185 Sudan	$590
186 Liberia	$580
187 Sierra Leone	$540
188 Afghanistan	$530
188 Democratic Republic of the Congo	$530
190 Central African Republic	$520
190 Madagascar	$520
192 Mozambique	$490
193 Malawi	$380
194 Burundi	$280

Source: Gross national income per capita (per person) in US dollars, 2019 (Atlas Method) (Data derived from the World Bank)

Source 3 Why are there such huge variations in living standards between countries?

Why living standards vary between countries

The **economist** Adam Smith (1723–90) spent a lot of time pondering why some countries were rich while others were poor. In the end, he concluded that the economies of countries that gave people the freedom to work and benefit directly from their labour were more likely to be wealthy. He thought the motivation of each citizen to generate profit would create prosperity for the population as a whole. As a result, Smith recommended that the governments of all countries should only play limited roles in the **economy**.

Other economists believe that factors such as a nation's **natural resources** have a bearing on living standards and the wealth that can be created. Australia has large supplies of natural resources – such as coal, iron, copper, gold, natural gas, uranium and renewable energy sources – that have allowed us to trade with other nations, earn income and improve our living standards.

The stability of government is another factor that is cited as having an impact on living standards. In countries where there is political instability and civil war, the focus on producing more goods and services for the population becomes secondary, making it difficult for a nation to raise its living standards.

Many believe the main reason some countries enjoy better living standards is **labour productivity**. Labour productivity can be increased by providing workers with machines that can help them produce better quality goods and services faster. Improving the skill of the labour force through education and training can also improve labour productivity.

How a country utilises its labour resources also impacts upon living standards. The proportion of those in the labour force who are employed rather than unemployed is important. An increase in employment means a country is better off, as it is using one of its most important resources – people. Employment provides people with a means to earn an income, and income tax paid to the government allows it to improve infrastructure such as roads, ports, water and power, which in turn allows companies to operate more efficiently.

economist
an individual who studies the relationship between the resources that a geographic area (such as a country) has and what it is able to produce

economy
a system that involves the production, distribution, trade and consumption of goods and services by individuals, businesses, organisations or governments

natural resources
materials or substances from nature, such as water, forests and fertile land, that can be used in the production of goods and services

labour productivity
the amount of goods or services that a worker produces in a given amount of time

13.2 Check your learning

Comprehend

1 **Explain** how Australia's natural resources have improved its living standards.

2 **Describe** how political instability such as a civil war might affect a country's ability to raise the living standards.

3 **Summarise** how earning a higher income leads to better material living standards.

Analyse

4 Imagine your class is told to make as many paper planes as they can in a single lesson.

- a **Consider** what might happen to the level of production of planes in the classroom if each student was paid for each plane.
- b What does this tell you about the link between productivity (level of production) and payment?

Apply

5 Decide which of the following factors might lead to increased labour productivity, and then **discuss** why that would be the case.

- a Staff are not given a wage rise.
- b Staff are trained to give better customer service.
- c A library uses 'robocall' to remind borrowers that books are overdue.
- d A business refuses to adopt new technology.
- e A high proportion of a country's population now completes Year 12.
- f Staff are given regular performance reviews.

6 Choose one of countries with the lowest national income per capita (see Source 3) to research. **Investigate** the possible causes for the country's low comparative material living standards and the effects of having such poor standards.

13.3 Major consumer and financial decisions

Learning intention

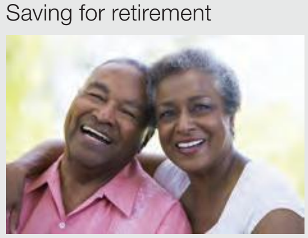
By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» explain factors that influence major consumer and financial decisions.

At many different times in our lives, we will need to make major consumer decisions such as buying a car or renting a house. We will also need to make financial decisions, such as borrowing money or saving for retirement. These decisions can sometimes involve large amounts of money, as shown in Source 4.

Decisions made earlier in life can affect our individual standard of living later in life. Forgoing spending on some items in order to save for future purchases can be beneficial, especially if those purchases (such as a house) are likely to increase in value over time. Carefully assessing the risk of major purchases and investment decisions can help improve the material living standards of individuals and communities.

Major consumer and financial decisions	Cost
Buying a car 	Australians spend an average of $40 000 on a new car. Used cars can be purchased for as little as $4000.
Renting 	The median weekly rent households pay in Australia is approximately $500 in capital cities. Rental prices are often lower in regional and rural areas, but the rental market is also much smaller.
Completing tertiary education 	An undergraduate bachelor degree at university can cost between $15 000 and $33 000. Courses such as veterinary science and medicine cost more.
Travelling 	Australians spend an average of $3962 on each overseas trip (Visa's latest Global Travel Intentions Study).

Major consumer and financial decisions	Cost
Buying a home 	The mean price of a residential dwelling in Australia was $921 500 in 2022 (Australian Bureau of Statistics).
Having children 	The cost of bringing up two children for a typical middle-income family is $812 000.
Saving for retirement 	The Association of Superannuation Funds of Australia estimates individuals will need $28 000 to $44 000 per year in retirement.

Source 4 Some major consumer and financial decisions that many of us will be faced with in a lifetime

Factors that influence a consumer's decision to buy

Price

Not all consumers are interested in paying the lowest price for an item. This is because price can be associated with the quality of the product. Research suggests that consumers have lower and upper price limits for products: if the price is too low, the consumer becomes suspicious of its quality, and if it is too high, the product is viewed as not worth the price. A consumer may also be influenced to buy the highest-priced item in the market because of prestige: the item becomes a status symbol of wealth and power.

Quiz me!
A quick quiz on major consumer and financial decisions

Availability of credit

Credit is an agreement where money is lent to a borrower and must be repaid (usually with interest) at a later date. Credit cards are an example of credit that is relatively easy to obtain and use, which can influence a person's decision to purchase goods and services. Spending too much on credit can lead to debt that is difficult to repay.

Marketing

A company's **marketing** methods can influence a consumer's decision to buy a product. Marketers divide the market into groups of consumers with common needs and characteristics to target and increase the likelihood of selling a product or service. For example, older people are targeted to buy funeral insurance so that in the event of their death the person's family is paid a lump sum to cover funeral expenses.

marketing
activities that businesses undertake to promote the buying or selling of products

Convenience

Items that save the consumer time and are easier to use can provide a huge advantage to those marketing a product. Ready-made meals are a convenience product that has experienced 2.9 per cent annual growth over the last five years, while food delivery services like Uber Eats are also incredibly popular in Australian cities.

Ethical and environmental considerations

Ethics are standards that provide guidance on what is considered right and wrong. Many consumers wish to purchase products that have been ethically produced and may boycott products that have been produced unethically. Human rights, the environment and animal rights are issues that are often considered when purchasing products.

Weblink
Shop Ethical

13.3 Check your learning

Retrieve

1. What are the consequences of spending too much on credit?
2. **Identify** three purchases you have made in the last month. What factors may have affected your decision to buy these products?

Comprehend

3. **Explain** why a consumer may be reluctant to buy a lower-priced item.
4. What are the long-term consequences of spending more than you earn and not saving?

Apply

5. Use a timeline to list some of the major consumer and financial decisions you are likely to make in your lifetime. Write a sentence describing how each purchase is likely to improve your living standards.
6. Visit the Shop Ethical website (a link has been provided on your obook pro) to **investigate** one of the following ethical consumer issues: factory farming, overfishing, palm oil production, packaging and waste, or animal testing. Write a paragraph explaining the issue and propose a solution to the issue.

13A SKILLS IN CONTEXT

Poverty in Australia

Many of us think of poverty in terms of not having basic human necessities such as enough food, water, shelter and clothing. This type of poverty – called 'absolute' or 'extreme' poverty – is often found in developing countries, such as Malawi.

Test me!
Once you've finished the topics in this section, test yourself with this quiz and find out which worksheet you should do.

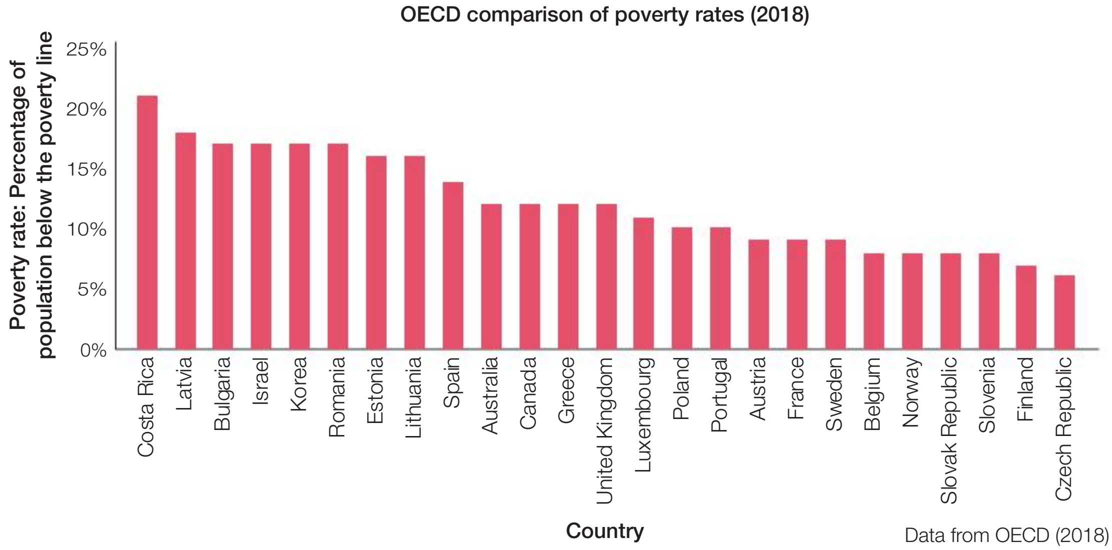
In Australia, we tend to think of poverty in terms of people who do not have the amount of income they need to sustain the average living standards that we expect. This is called 'relative' poverty.

There are many ways of measuring relative poverty, such as setting a 'poverty line', where anyone who falls below a certain amount of income is considered to be in poverty. According to the OECD's method of measuring relative poverty, 12 per cent of Australians live on an income that is less than half the median (middle) household income in Australia, and are therefore said to live in relative poverty.

Some of the general reasons why some Australians fall below the poverty line include:

- lack of paid employment
- low levels of income; for example, those relying on social security payments as their main form of income experience higher rates of poverty
- low levels of education, which ultimately affect people's ability to gain employment and earn money
- difficulty finding affordable and suitable housing
- a person's family and health situation – families with sole parents often struggle economically, as do those suffering physical and mental illness
- lack of access to affordable community services to assist the economically disadvantaged.

Source 5 According to Australian Bureau of Statistics (ABS) data in 2016, more than 116 000 people were experiencing homelessness in Australia. The causes of homelessness are complex and varied. They include, but are not limited to, poverty, domestic violence and difficulty in securing housing.



Source 6 Out of 25 developed nations, Australia had the tenth-highest poverty rate in 2018.

KEY SKILL
Evaluating, concluding & decision making

Identifying causes and effects in economics

A cause is the reason an event, problem or success occurred – the 'why'. An effect is what actually happened as a result of the cause. We learn about cause and effect from an early age. If we touch something that is too hot (the cause) we might burn ourselves (the effect). In simple terms, cause and effect is identifying why 'this leads to that'. Identifying causes can help us take steps to make changes so that effects or outcomes are more suitable.

It may be difficult to make a distinction between cause and effect. Here are some simple steps to help you:

Step 1 To help identify the effect, ask yourself *what* event, problem or success has occurred.

Step 2 Note who or what has been affected as a result of what has taken place. There may be several effects. Words associated with 'effect' include 'situation', 'ramification', 'outcome', 'result' and 'consequence'.

Step 3 To help identify the cause, ask *why* the event, problem or success occurred. Look for reasons that provide a good explanation.

Step 4 Remember, there can be several causes, so it may be useful to prioritise what the major and minor causes are. Words associated with 'cause' include 'reasons for', 'due to', 'since' and 'because'.

Practise the skill

1 Read the information in this Skills in Context task about poverty in Australia. Use the above steps to help you **identify** the causes of poverty, and then **describe** the effects of poverty.

When describing the effects of poverty, you will need to think more broadly than the information provided here. Think about the human or social cost of living below the poverty line, and also the economic impact of having such a disadvantaged section of the community.

Extend your understanding

1 Gain a better understanding of what it is like to live in extreme poverty. Log onto your obook pro and access the *Live Below the Line* website. Try living on $2 a day for five days. **Describe** what you ate and what the experience has taught you.

Weblink
Live Below the Line

13.4 Improving living standards

Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» identify ways the Australian Government intervenes in the economy to improve living standards.

Improving living standards is a key economic goal of many countries. This is mainly because higher living standards lead to a stronger and more prosperous nation – and a stronger and more prosperous nation in turn maintains higher living standards. When the citizens of a country are employed and earning an income, more goods and services can be purchased. **Government revenue** from taxes paid by workers (on the money they earn and the products they buy) can then be used for services such as education and health care. These government services benefit us all.

government revenue income a government receives predominantly from taxes, but also from non-tax sources such as loans and dividends from government-owned businesses

The government of any country is constantly making economic policy decisions; that is, outlining actions that need to be taken in order to manage different aspects of the economy. Let us first look at macroeconomic policy.

Macroeconomic policy

Macroeconomic policy is economic policy that affects the whole of the nation, such as budgetary policy and monetary policy. It targets changes that affect the entire economy, such as unemployment, economic growth and inflation.

Budgetary policy

You or your family may use a budget to track revenue and **expenditure**. The Australian Government has the role of managing the budget for the whole of Australia and therefore sets budgetary policy, also referred to as **fiscal policy**. Each year the government delivers or hands down the federal budget (usually in the month of May), which provides a plan of the government's revenue and spending. Source 2 outlines the revenue that the government receives and the areas in which it spends this revenue.

expenditure the amount of money spent by a person, business or government

fiscal policy the government's management of the federal budget – adjusting expenditure and tax rates to influence the performance of the economy

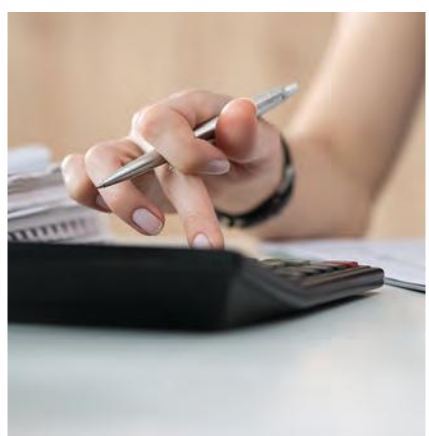
The federal budget affects the living standards of all Australians. If taxes increase or spending on services and welfare changes, this can affect each person's personal budget.

There are three different budgets the government may hand down, depending on the economic circumstances:

- *balanced budget*, where government spending is equal to the revenue it has received
- *deficit budget*, where government spending is greater than the revenue it has received
- *surplus budget*, where the government has received more revenue than it has spent.

Key skill worksheet Communicating: Presenting findings

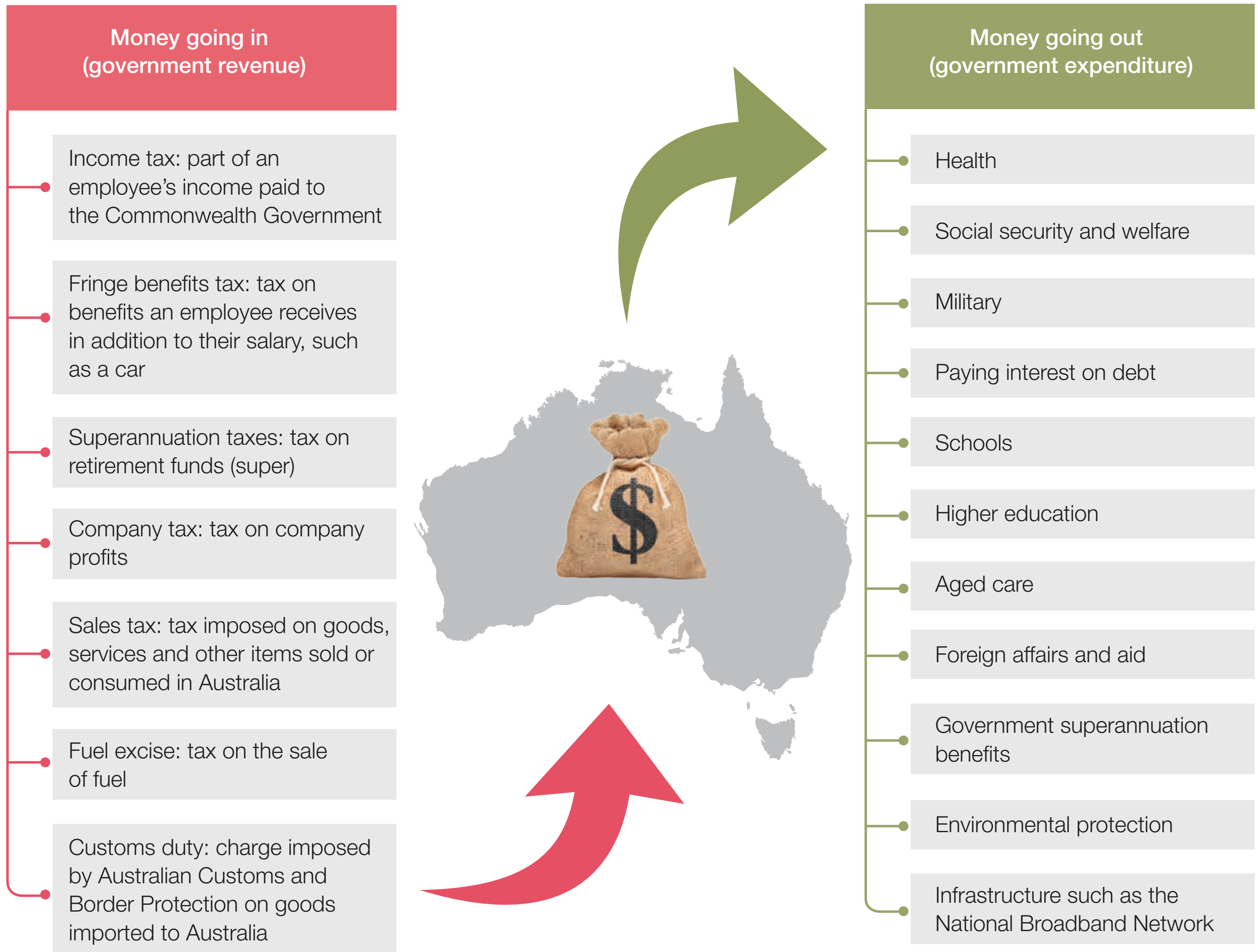
The type of budget chosen depends on the economic conditions being experienced. When a deficit budget is used, more money is being 'pumped in' to the economy than is being taken out. This tends to increase consumer and business spending, and therefore the production of goods and services. This in turn can lead to increased employment, as companies need more labour to produce more goods and services. Greater demand may, however, lead to **inflation**, as stronger demand may lead to shortages



Source 1 The federal budget can affect your personal household budget, depending on the government's revenue and spending plans.

inflation an increase in the general level of prices paid for goods and services over a certain period of time

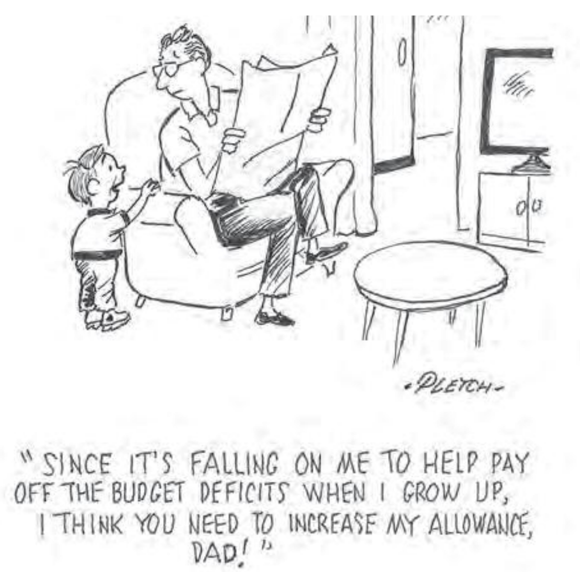
recession when economic growth falls for two or more quarters in a row



Source 2 The federal budget is like any other budget. It itemises money coming in (revenue) and money going out (expenditure).

of goods and services. This causes prices to rise. At the time of the Global Financial Crisis of 2007–08, and similarly during the financial downturn caused by COVID-19 in 2020–21, many governments around the world (including our own) tried to 'kick start' their economies by spending more than they received in revenue in the hope of reversing the economic downturn.

When a surplus budget is used, more money is being 'pumped out' of the economy. This tends to decrease consumer and business demand, and can restrict production and employment, while inflation is unlikely to rise substantially. Since 2008, Australian federal budgets have been in deficit. Despite concerns about a growing government debt and the desire for the country to live within its means, the 2020 **recession** due to the COVID-19 pandemic saw the Australian Government commit to a record \$214 billion deficit (forecast 11 per cent of GDP). The government has understandably chosen to prioritise stimulating the economy towards a recovery over the long-term concern surrounding increasing government debt. Net debt is forecast to peak at \$966 billion – the equivalent of 44 per cent of GDP – in 2024.



Source 3 Deficit budgets tend to be more popular with voters; but they add to the federal debt, which falls on future governments to repay with interest.

CASE STUDY

Should the government support small business?

Around 97 per cent of all businesses in Australia are small businesses. The ABS defines a small business as one that has fewer than 20 employees. Small businesses are important to the overall health of the economy, employing over 5.6 million Australians. We probably all know someone who runs a small business. Recent budget measures are good news for small business owners, who have been offered tax cuts and a promise to reduce unnecessary administration (often referred to as 'red tape').

Small businesses have also been offered government incentives to take on unemployed job seekers. An example of this is the JobMaker Hiring Credit, which pays businesses to take on unemployed workers aged 16–35 from the JobSeeker program. It is hoped that this will stimulate the economy by creating jobs and reducing the labour costs of businesses.

Source 4 Small businesses are expected to play an important role in Australia's economic recovery.

Think, pair, share

- Think about the kind of support that governments give small business. What other kinds of support could be offered?
- Discuss your ideas with a partner.
- Share your thoughts with the class.

Monetary policy

The Reserve Bank of Australia (RBA) provides banking services to the government and other banks in Australia. It also implements **monetary policy**. The main focus of monetary policy by the RBA is changing the official **interest rate**, which ultimately changes the rate of interest paid on a bank loan. Interest is the cost of borrowing money, or the return on lending money.

Changes in interest rates affect living standards. If interest rates rise, then demand for goods and services may be curbed, as consumers and businesses who have borrowed devote more of their money to paying higher interest rates on their loans, rather than spending. Some may defer borrowing entirely because of higher interest rates. The opposite occurs when interest rates fall. The RBA uses interest rates as a 'lever' to adjust the level of spending, or demand, depending on the economic circumstances.

Higher demand or spending in the economy may lead to inflation, which may prompt the RBA to increase interest rates to curb spending and reduce inflation. This reduced spending in the economy may reduce inflation, but possibly lead to higher unemployment.

monetary policy
actions by the Reserve Bank of Australia that affect the money supply and interest rates

interest rate
the amount a borrower must pay to a lender for the use of assets such as money – usually expressed as a percentage of the total amount borrowed

Source 5 Low interest rates encourage people to borrow and spend their money rather than save. This boosts the economy, but also drives inflation.

Key skill worksheet
Evaluating, concluding & decision making: Evaluating policies to improve economic outcomes

Microeconomic policy

Microeconomic policy affects a particular company (such as Qantas), an industry (such as the car industry) or a market (such as the export market). It often focuses on promoting competition, productivity and efficiency. The following are examples of some government microeconomic policies.

Quiz me!
A quick quiz on improving living standards

Trade liberalisation

Trade liberalisation involves opening up markets for free trade so that countries can trade without restrictions. Trade restrictions include **tariffs**, **subsidies** and **import quotas**.

It is thought that the removal of these trade restrictions will promote efficiency, as Australian producers must find ways to compete on the world market by cutting costs and becoming more innovative. There will be some producers, however, that will not survive.

In 2020, trade liberalisation came under criticism when China imposed high tariffs on some imports from Australia, including barley and wine.

Deregulation

Deregulation is the removal or elimination of government regulation (rules) in a certain area of the economy to promote better competition in that area. For example, wool growers were once guaranteed a minimum price for their wool by the government, but this policy was abandoned over 20 years ago. Another example is the deregulation of the telecommunications industry, which saw Optus, Vodafone, AAPT and other small providers enter the market in the 1990s, resulting in price decreases and growth in mobile phone and internet markets.

Labour market reform

Labour market reform has seen a movement away from government institutions determining wages and working conditions, to a system of enterprise agreements. These are agreements made directly between employers and employees about wages and working conditions. By negotiating such agreements, the employer may gain improvements in work efficiency and the employee might gain better benefits and more flexibility.

trade liberalisation
removing or reducing restrictions or barriers to trade between nations

tariffs
taxes (usually applied to goods being imported or exported)

subsidies
payments by the government or a public body to a producer or industry to support its business and to keep the price of its goods or services low or competitive

import quotas
physical limits placed on the quantity of an imported good that can enter a country

labour market reform
changes in laws and government policies in relation to employment; such reforms aim to increase competitiveness and economic growth while safeguarding against the unfair treatment of workers

13.4 Check your learning

Comprehend

1 **Summarise** the difference between a surplus budget and a deficit budget.
2 **Describe** why small businesses are important for the Australian economy.
3 What type of budget would be appropriate if a severe economic downturn is predicted, spending has slumped and growth in the economy has declined?
4 **Explain** what trade liberalisation is and how it may be beneficial to Australians.

Analyse

5 **Judge** if the RBA is likely to increase or decrease official interest rates in the following situation:

Economic growth is negative. The unemployment rate continues to increase, while inflation remains low.

6 Inequality occurs when resources are unevenly distributed among people. **Infer** (suggest) one reason why returning the budget to a surplus may cause some groups in society to suffer in the long term.

Apply

7 Reflect on why the government wants to encourage small business in Australia. What effect might this have on the economy? **Justify** (give reasons for) your answer.
8 Examine Source 3. In pairs, **discuss** the point the cartoonist is trying to make about the effects of budget deficits.
9 Research areas where expenditure in the latest federal budget has been increased. **Create** a cartoon or word cloud that illustrates the effects these increases in government spending may have.

13.5 Living standards in retirement

Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» explain the importance of Australia's superannuation system.

retirement
a permanent withdrawal from the labour force, usually because of age

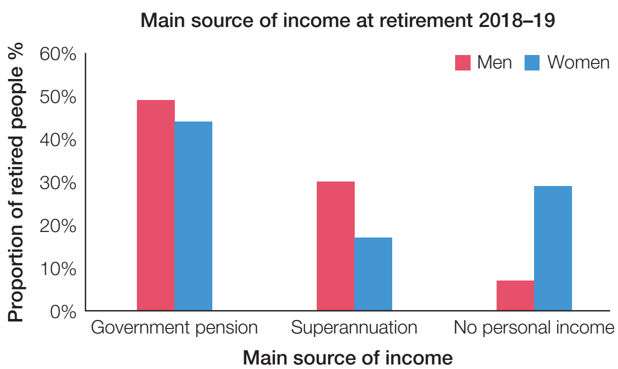
retirement age
the age when someone can retire and still receive an income

Most people will work the majority of their adult lives in order to earn an income to live. When we get older, our bodies and minds may no longer able to work in the same way, which is when people enter **retirement**. Retirement is a permanent withdrawal from the labour force and can be entered into at any time, but is usually taken up at an age when the retired person is eligible to receive a form of 'unearned' income – usually the age pension, superannuation, or a combination of both. Planning for retirement is a major financial decision that will affect you throughout your life.

The age pension

The age pension is a form of unearned income provided by the government and paid for by taxes. It ensures that all citizens in the country are able to have a decent standard of living once they stop working. Currently in Australia, the **retirement age** – which is the age that the age pension can be accessed – is 66, rising to 67 by mid-2023. While many people save money for retirement while they are still working, most people will also receive an age pension from the government to supplement their savings.

Not everyone is eligible for the age pension once they retire, and the amount of money a retired person will receive varies depending on what other wealth they possess. To receive an age pension, people in retirement face both an income test and an assets test. This is because the provision of the age pension is based on need. Pensions are provided to people in retirement because they have no other way of earning an income, and the money they have earned from savings and investments is not enough to provide a decent standard of living. The tests mean that if a retired person earns an income from other sources or owns a lot a wealth in property, they will not be able to access the pension.



Source 6 The age pension was the main source of income for retirees in 2018–19.

Source: Data provided by the ABS

Graph it!
Sources of income at retirement

Superannuation

Superannuation, or super, is a form of compulsory saving for all Australian workers. Money paid into a superannuation fund account cannot be accessed until you reach a certain age and have stopped working, known as the **preservation age**.

preservation age
the earliest age you can access your superannuation once you stop working

During the twentieth century, the government supported retirees by funding an age pension. This was made available when people retired, which was at the age of 55 for women and 60 for men. However, with better medicine and health, people are living longer. This means it costs the government much more money to provide a pension. In addition, families are having fewer children, which means that there are fewer taxpayers (known as 'non-dependants' because they earn their own form of income) who pay taxes that fund age pensioners (known as 'dependants' because they depend on the government for an income). As a result, the government brought in compulsory superannuation as a way to make people save money for retirement and therefore supplement the age pension.

Source 7 Many people look forward to retirement as it allows them to enjoy their free time and pursue interests that were not possible during their working lives.

How is super managed?

Superannuation is managed by a super fund, which is a financial company that invests and manages the money on your behalf in order to increase your funds through interest. Like banks, there are many different super funds to choose from, and you can change funds at any time. If you start work and don't already have an account set up, you will automatically be signed up to the super fund designated by your employer.

Contributing to super is compulsory, which means employers are legally bound to pay a portion of your earnings into a superannuation fund account on your behalf. Employers will do this automatically for most employees, regardless of how much they earn. Employees under the age of 18 need to work for the same employer for more than 30 hours a week to be eligible. The minimum percentage of income that employers are obliged to contribute to super is also set by the government and is currently set at 10.5 per cent, but will rise to 12 per cent by 2025. This is called the superannuation guarantee.

Sometimes, the government will add to your contributions if you earn a low income, and you can also add further contributions yourself. Over the course of your working life, these contributions will grow or 'accumulate' so that, combined with the age pension, you will have a suitable income to live off when you retire.

Weblink
Moneysmart: Super and pension age calculator

13.5 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 In your own words, **define** superannuation.

2 **Identify** the purpose of a superannuation guarantee.

Comprehend

3 **Explain** why there is an income and assets test for people to receive an age pension.

4 **Explain** why superannuation is compulsory.

Apply

5 If you worked and paid taxes all of your life, invested your savings wisely and became very wealthy, do you think you should be disqualified from receiving an age pension? **Justify** (give reasons for) your response.

6 The retirement age and preservation age often change according to government policy. Use the Moneysmart super and pension age calculator (a link is provided on your obook pro) to **determine** how old you will be before you can access the age pension and superannuation.

13B SKILLS IN CONTEXT

Living standards and climate change

Test me!
Once you've finished the topics in this section, test yourself with this quiz and find out which worksheet you should do.

'Climate change' refers to a change in global or regional climate patterns. The long-term climate trend shows that the world's atmosphere and oceans are getting warmer. This is called 'global warming'. Australia's average air and ocean temperatures are almost a degree warmer than they were in 1910, and most of this increase has occurred since 1950.

The effects of global warming

Greenhouse gas emissions have serious consequences. Greenhouse gases are those that absorb radiation from the sun's rays, trapping heat in the Earth's atmosphere. They include carbon dioxide and methane.

The projected effects of the change in climatic conditions for Australia include an increase in the number of 'extreme fire weather' days in southern and eastern Australia, more severe cyclones, and more hot days and drought in southern Australia. Those people living amid cyclones, fires and drought will find their living standards change. Future generations may not be able to enjoy our environmental assets, such as the Great Barrier Reef. It is also believed that climate change will affect our agricultural productivity and increase the costs associated with bushfires and floods.

Environmental policy

Governments can take action to reduce carbon dioxide and other greenhouse gas emissions. There are two methods of cutting greenhouse gas emission that involve businesses paying for the emissions they make. It is thought that if businesses have to pay for their emissions, they will eventually move to more environmentally friendly production methods.

1. An Emissions Trading Scheme (ETS) involves the government setting a limit on how much carbon dioxide can be produced by businesses. Some businesses will emit carbon dioxide below this limit, and will therefore have 'credits' they can trade with companies that have emitted carbon dioxide above the set limit.
2. A carbon tax was introduced by the Labor government in 2012 and axed by the Coalition government in 2014. It involved forcing polluting companies emitting over 25 000 tonnes of carbon dioxide to purchase emission permits from the Australian Government. The companies would have to purchase permits set at $23 per tonne of carbon, with a 2.5 per cent increase each year until the transition to an ETS.

Policy in relation to how businesses pay for the pollution they cause, however, has been controversial. Whatever scheme is used, an extra cost pressure will be placed on businesses – which may result in job losses and the possibility of businesses passing the extra costs on to the consumer by raising prices. The carbon tax was axed as it was thought to create an unnecessary burden on the cost of living for all Australians.

Source 8 Carbon dioxide is released into the atmosphere. The ETS and carbon tax are two ways of making businesses pay for the emissions they make.

Source 9 The increased severity and frequency of bushfires is one of many consequences of a failure to address climate change.

A global agreement on emissions – referred to as the 'Paris Agreement' – was reached in December 2015 at the twenty-first United Nations Climate Change Conference (known as 'COP 21'), with nearly 200 countries agreeing to take action. The Australian Government pledged to reduce greenhouse gas emissions to be between 26 and 28 per cent below 2005 levels by 2030.

The world's leaders gathered again in 2019 and 2021. At both conferences, Australia received bad publicity for its perceived inaction on climate change. The Morrison government was criticised for planning to use an accounting loophole to meet Australia's emissions target. According to the Lowy Institute, in 2019 six in ten Australians (61 per cent) considered global warming to be 'a serious and pressing problem' about which 'we should begin taking steps now even if this involves significant costs'.

KEY SKILL
Communicating

Presenting an oral report

Presenting an oral report is an important skill to master. Follow these steps to help you:

Step 1 Decide on a topic that will interest both you and your audience – what would you like them to understand by listening to your presentation?

Step 2 Research your topic. You could start with a question that you then seek to answer through your presentation. Collect information from a wide variety of sources and keep a bibliography.

Step 3 Organise your findings into a draft outline of your report. It should have a clear introduction and conclusion. In your introduction, it is often a good idea to use something to 'hook' your audience. It may be your overarching question, a personal story or a challenging image. After your introduction, develop your report in a series of clearly defined sections (like paragraphs in a written report). Your conclusion usually summarises your key points. If your report is going to be assessed, make sure you have fulfilled the criteria for assessment.

Step 4 Support your verbal report with your visual – and possible audio – material.

Step 5 Practise your presentation. Avoid holding a single piece of paper if you are prone to nerves – memory cards are sturdier and won't tremble. If you are worried about being nervous, practice will help.

Step 6 Deliver your presentation. Make sure that you speak clearly and vary your pitch and tone. Stand up straight, keep your hands out of your pockets and don't lean on a desk.

Step 7 Invite your audience to ask questions. If you are unsure of an answer, don't make something up; just answer as best you can.

Practise the skill

1. Prepare and deliver an oral report on an aspect of climate change and living standards. Your report must be supported by visual material, and you must respond to questions asked by the audience. Here are some possible topics to choose:
   - Australia's greenhouse gas emissions compared to those of other countries
   - why climate change will lead to lower living standards
   - the Paris Agreement 2015 and what it seeks to achieve
   - Australia's position at COP 26 in Glasgow, 2021
   - how an ETS and a carbon tax work to reduce greenhouse gas emissions.

Extend your understanding

Investigate the 17 Sustainable Development Goals (SDGs). A weblink is available on your obook pro to help you get started.

1. Name three goals towards which significant progress has been made and three that are far from reaching their target.
2. Which regions of the world seem least likely to achieve the SDGs? Which seem most likely? Why do you think these differences exist between world regions?

Weblink
Sustainable Development Goals

13 CHAPTER REVIEW

Review activity

2021–22 federal budget analysis

Analyse the pie chart in Source 10 which shows how the Australian Government allocated funds in the 2021–22 budget, and answer the questions below.

1 In your own words, **describe** the information being displayed by the chart. (2 marks)

2 **Identify** which category received the greatest government outlay in the 2021–22 federal budget. (1 mark)

3 **Identify** which category received the smallest government outlay in the 2021–22 federal budget. (1 mark)

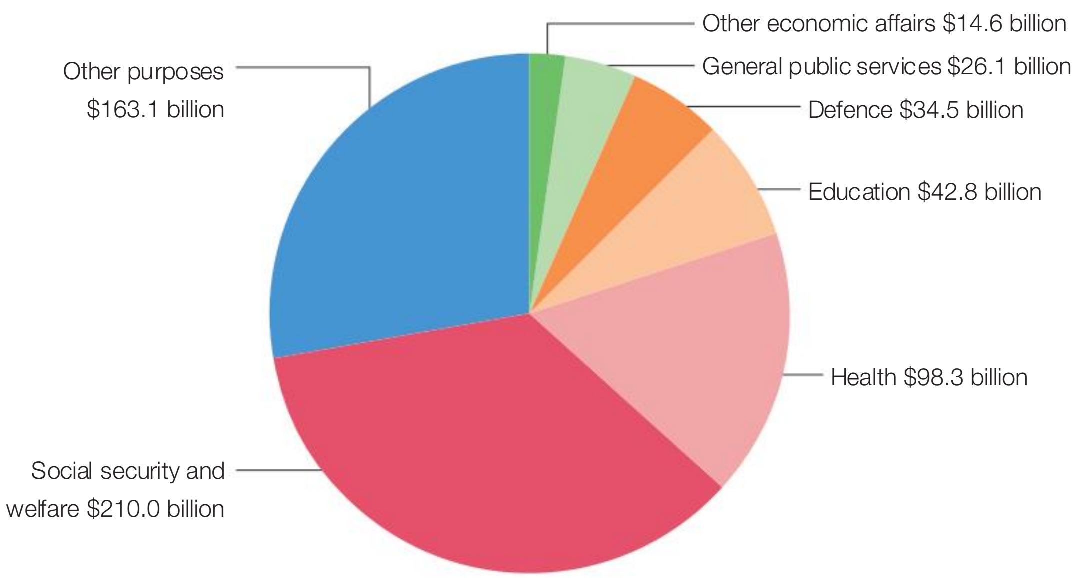
4 **Summarise** the importance of the following categories of expenditure in improving Australia's living standards:

- a social security and welfare (2 marks)
- b health (2 marks)
- c education. (2 marks)

5 Using a calculator and the figures shown in Source 10, calculate the percentage of government expenditure allocated to each category. (To do this, divide the spending in each category by the sum of all the categories combined; then multiply by 100.) (4 marks)

6 Identify a category that you feel was underfunded in the 2021–22 federal budget. **Justify** (give reasons for) your choice, explaining how increased funding in this area could be used to improve living standards. (6 marks)

(Total: 20 marks)



Source 10 Government expenditure

Chapter checklist

Now that you have completed this chapter, reflect on your ability to do the following:

	I can do this.	I cannot do this yet.
Understand material and non-material living standards.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 13.1, page 434.
Understand the factors leading to different living standards between countries.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 13.2, page 436.
Explain factors that influence major consumer and financial decisions.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 13.3, page 438.
Identify ways the Australian Government intervenes in the economy to improve living standards.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 13.4, page 442.
Explain the importance of Australia's superannuation system.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 13.5, page 446.

Check your Student obook pro for these digital resources and more:

Student book questions
Chapter 13

Key skill worksheet
Communicating:
Chapter 13

Quizlet
Play a game of Quizlet on Living standards.

Chapter review quiz
Chapter 13


Please
4

PART 4

Civics and citizenship

Skills

Government and democracy

Laws and citizens

Citizenship, diversity and identity

14 The civics and citizenship toolkit

Civics and citizenship is the study of Australia's system of government and legal system. Civics and citizenship will help you understand how Australia is governed and how rights are protected in Australia.

Understanding the features of Australia's system of government helps us to understand the challenges to a resilient democracy and a cohesive society in Australia, and to understand Australia's regional and global responsibilities and obligations.

Source 1 Parliament House in Canberra is the meeting place of Australia's federally elected politicians, and is where decisions about how our country is run are debated and made.

14A
What are the civics and citizenship skills?

14.1 Civics and citizenship skills

Civics and citizenship studies help us learn to question, analyse, evaluate and interpret information and argue our point of view. The classroom is a forum for you to share your opinions and see things from a wider range of perspectives when examining topics such as how Australia's system of government compares to others and Australia's role at a regional and global level.

Studying civics and citizenship requires you to ask and develop a range of questions about civic issues. To answer these questions, you will develop an understanding of how to locate and select information to help you investigate contemporary civic issues. You will learn how to analyse information and how to evaluate different perspectives. You will explore the meaning of active citizenship and understand how Australian citizens can create change in local, national and global communities. You will learn how to use evidence and civics and citizenship terminology to communicate your explanations and arguments.

Source 1 The skills used while studying civics and citizenship

Questioning and researching	• Developing questions for investigation • Locating and sorting information and ideas from a range of sources • Researching online
Analysis, evaluation and interpretation	• Analysing information • Separating fact from opinion • Understanding different perspectives and interpretations
Civic participation and decision-making	• Reflecting on our roles as active citizens in Australian, regional and global contexts • Evaluating methods for civic participation
Communicating	• Presenting evidence-based civics and citizenship arguments using subject-specific language

Source 2 Australian citizens have both rights and responsibilities. One of these responsibilities is to vote in elections. By voting for the issues that are important to us, we have the power to influence the way our country is run.

14.2 Questioning and researching

Developing questions

An active and engaged citizen is curious and asks lots of questions. As a student of civics and citizenship, you should develop questions to investigate Australia's political and legal systems and contemporary (modern) civic issues. One way to start investigating a topic or issue is to develop sub-questions. Sub-questions are additional, narrower questions that will help you find information in order to answer a larger question (see Source 3).

It is also important to come back to or revisit questions once information relating to the question or sub-questions has been located and analysed, as questions can be modified based on the information gathered.

Research or inquiry question
What processes ensure accountability?

Sub-question
How do all members of parliament hold the government of the day accountable?

Sub-question
How can members of the public hold the government accountable?

Sub-question
What role does the media play in ensuring accountability?

Source 3 An example of sub-questions relating to a larger, overarching question

Locating information

Sources provide information for informed citizens. They can take many forms – from written records in books or online to live interactions that may be captured by different forms of media. Some examples of sources include case transcripts and judgments, newspaper articles, letters, tweets, blogs, social media posts, cartoons, diaries, interviews and live debates.

Locating a range of relevant sources involves a number of research methods, such as:

- using online search engines, such as Google
- visiting government websites
- looking at newspaper and magazine articles online
- contacting local members of parliament or asking a person with expertise in the subject
- interviewing class members or family members to gain an insight into their views on a particular issue.

Researching online

Although books and newspapers are valuable sources of information, a lot of research today is conducted online. To ensure that sources gathered online are accurate, reliable and relevant, a number of guidelines should be followed:

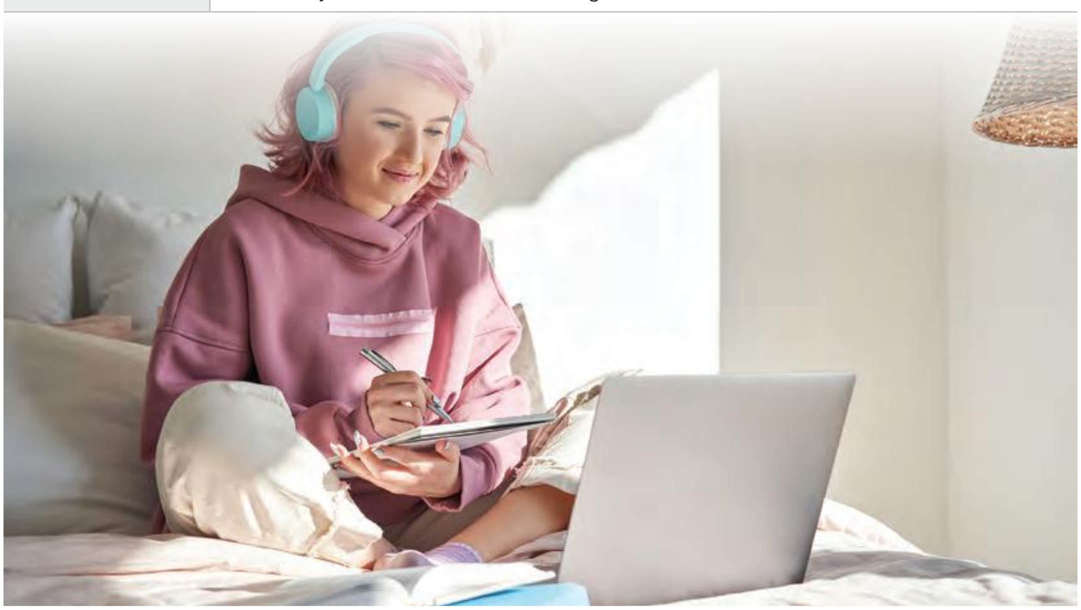
- Search engines such as Google are useful research tools, but much of the material found on websites suggested by search engines is not reliable and may contain inaccuracies, or false and misleading information, or be out of date. When using search engines, be sure to define your search using keywords. Your librarian or teacher is a good person to ask for help and information.

- A reliable way of searching for sources is to use sites linked to educational institutions, government departments, reputable companies and universities. A quick way of telling whether a site is reputable is to look at the suffix of the domain name, which is part of the URL (internet address). Some of the most common domain suffixes are listed in Source 4, along with some information about their reliability.
- Avoid blogs posted by unknown individuals. If you find information relevant to your investigation on a blog or social media site, always verify it by using a more reliable source.
- Never cut and paste information from the internet straight into your own work. Taking someone else's work, ideas, words or images and using them as if they were your own is called plagiarism. Plagarism is unethical and can result in your work being rejected.

Source 4 Guidelines for determining the reliability of websites

Domain suffix	Description
.edu	• The site is linked to an educational institution, such as a university or school. • These sites are generally very reliable.
.gov	• The site is linked to a government institution, e.g. the RBA (Reserve Bank of Australia) or the ABS (Australian Bureau of Statistics). • These sites are generally very reliable.
.net	• The site is linked to a commercial organisation or network provider. • Anyone can buy a domain name with this suffix, and generally nobody regulates the information posted on the site. • As a result, these sites may be unreliable.
.org	• The site is linked to an organisation. • Usually, these organisations are not-for-profit, e.g. the UN (United Nations) or the OECD (Organisation for Economic Co-operation and Development). • If the organisation is reputable and can be contacted, this generally means that the information provided has been checked and verified by that organisation. • You need to be aware of any special interests that the organisation may represent (e.g. particular political, religious or commercial interests), as this may influence what it has to say on an issue. • If you are unsure about the reliability of information found on a website with this domain name suffix, check with your teacher or librarian.
.com	• The site is linked to a commercially based operation and is likely to be promoting certain products or services, e.g. banks. • Domain names with this suffix can be bought by anyone, so the content should be carefully checked and verified using another, more reliable source.

Check your learning
Topic 14.2



Source 5 You need to ensure that sources of information gathered online are accurate and reliable.

14.3 Analysis, evaluation and interpretation

Analysing information

Once you have located information from a range of sources, you can analyse the information and sources you have found. A useful source is one that will add to your understanding of a civics and citizenship question or issue. The source needs to be relevant to the topic or question asked and must also be reliable. The following are good questions to ask in order to determine the usefulness of a source.

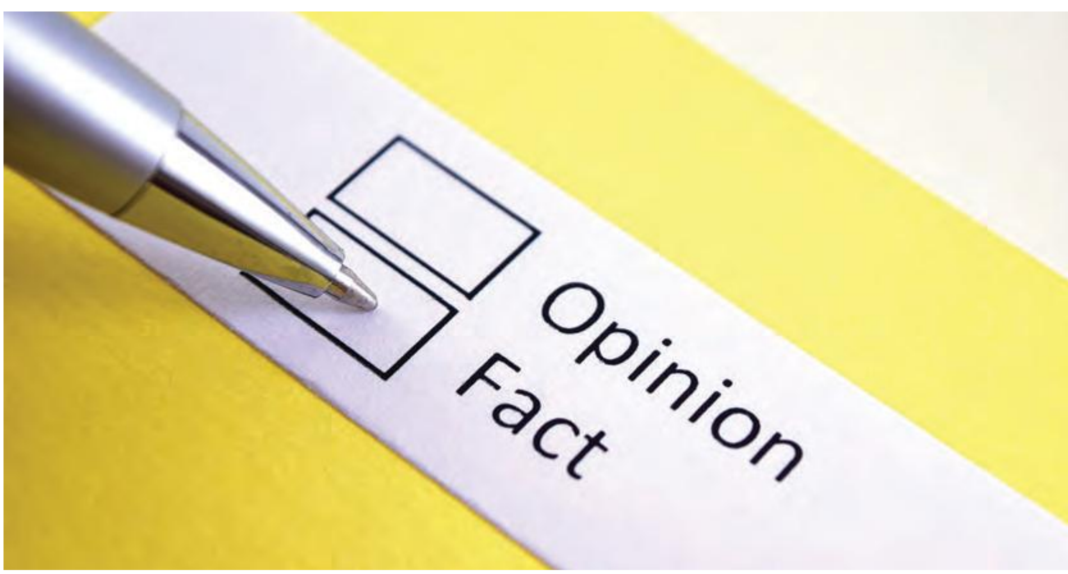
- Is the information current?
- Is it a reliable source?
- Is there enough detailed information in the source?
- Does the information support evidence from other sources?
- Is it balanced or does it present one point of view (bias)?
- Is it based on fact or opinion?

Separating fact from opinion

The conclusions you draw about the sources you have found will determine their usefulness. In many cases, this means separating fact from opinion. A fact is something that can be proved: when an event took place, what happened and who was involved. An opinion is based on what a person, or persons, may believe to be true.

A simple way to detect whether a statement is fact or opinion is to look closely at the language used. The use of words such as ‘might’, ‘could’ and ‘think’ all indicate that an opinion is being expressed. For example:

- Fact: Australia is part of the British Commonwealth and King Charles III is our head of state.
- Opinion: The King has no involvement in the daily running of the country so he should not be our head of state. It is time Australia became a republic so we can elect our own head of state.



Source 6 As a civics and citizenship student, it is important that you can tell the difference between fact and opinion.

Understanding different perspectives and interpretations

Perspective is the position from which people see and understand events going on in the world around them. People will have different points of view about issues depending on their perspective, which can be affected by their age, gender, social position, beliefs and values. The more controversial an issue is, the more likely it is that there will be different points of view. In politics, people often write or speak about issues from their own perspective. In some cases, authors of sources may be motivated to write about an issue in a particular way, regardless of facts. This is referred to as bias and is often aimed at persuading a reader or viewer to agree with the person who created the source. Perspective and bias are not just limited to the people who create source material. Interpretations of sources can also vary widely from person to person.

KEY SKILL
Analysis, evaluation & interpretation

Identifying and describing points of view in sources

People will always have different points of view about issues relating to politics or citizenship. The more controversial an issue is, the more likely it is that there will be strong, competing points of view.

These are just some controversial civics and citizenship issues:

- Australia becoming a republic
- Australia's treatment of asylum seekers
- the treatment of First Nations peoples, including the issue of deaths in custody
- retaining the jury system
- policy on climate change
- foreign investment in Australia.

Use the following steps to help you analyse controversial issues.

Step 1 Identify a controversial issue.

Step 2 List the people affected by the issue.

Step 3 Locate sources depicting all points of view about the issue.

Step 4 For each point of view, describe the point of view being expressed. Why is this view being expressed? Who is expressing it? What are they saying?

Step 5 What affects this person's point of view? Think about the person's role and personal experience, whether they stand to benefit financially and their ability to tolerate difference in others.

Practise the skill

1 Use the steps above to look closely at a controversial issue of your choice. You may choose one of the issues listed above, or select a more localised issue, such as:
- the use of mobile phones at school
- your school's efforts to protect the environment
- your school's efforts to provide healthy food and drink options at the canteen.

Source 7 Controversial civics and citizenship issues include Australia's treatment of First Nations peoples and asylum seekers.

Check your learning
Topic 14.3

14.4 Civic participation and decision-making

Source 8 Ronni Kahn (right, pictured with federal Labor member of parliament Tanya Plibersek) started OzHarvest when she saw how much food was going to waste from her events business. With one van, she began delivering surplus food to charities to help feed people in need.

Source 9 In 2021, Grace Tame was named Australian of the Year for her work as an activist and advocate for survivors of sexual assault. Tame experienced sexual abuse as a teenager.

Source 10 Fred Hollows was known for working with people around the world to restore the eyesight of those who could not otherwise access corrective surgery.

Many Australian citizens go beyond the legal responsibilities they have as citizens, and help make the world a better place by contributing to their community on a local, regional or national, or global level. They do this because they care about the community they live in and believe they have a social responsibility to make it a better place.

Local citizens

At the local level, a citizen may give their time or resources to help others in need, such as by volunteering in local organisations or schools, or giving to local charities. For example, Ronni Kahn (see Source 8) founded OzHarvest in 2004 in Sydney. This charity collects quality, surplus food that would otherwise go to waste from places such as supermarkets, cafes, restaurants, hotels and airlines, then delivers it to charities to help feed people in need.

Regional or national citizens

A regional citizen may work at the national level to provide a better future for all Australians. One of the most common ways for regional citizens to achieve this is by supporting or campaigning for a charity or cause. Grace Tame is an example of an Australian citizen who has campaigned to raise awareness of sexual assault in Australia, after her own experience of being sexually abused as a teenager.

Global citizens

A citizen may act on the global level to help make the world a better place to live in. The late Fred Hollows is an example of a global citizen. He used his skills as an eye specialist to restore eyesight to thousands of people in Australia and in many other countries around the world.

Methods for civic participation

Participation is an important part of living in a democracy. In Australia, we participate in society in a number of ways, such as by voting in an election or referendum, serving on a jury or paying taxes. One of the most important ways we participate in a democracy is by voting in an election. By voting according to the issues that are important to us, we have the power to influence the way our country is run. Other ways of participating in a democracy might include:

- volunteering
- protesting or demonstrating about important social issues
- signing petitions
- contacting your local member of parliament (such as by calling or writing emails)
- campaigning for a person or party who is trying to get elected.

Participation is important as it allows citizens to have a say in how our democratic society is run.

Check your learning
Topic 14.4

Plans that are developed to address civic issues should include the opportunity for all members of the relevant community or group to express their views. This means that all members of a community or group should be informed about the issue, have their views heard, and have the opportunity to contribute to any plans to address the issue.

Source 11 In a democratic process, everyone has the opportunity to have their say. Taking a vote is one way to reach an outcome that reflects the majority view.

14.5 Communicating

Communicating in civics and citizenship

Quizlet
Become familiar with civics and citizenship terms by reviewing them on Quizlet.

The ability to communicate your findings and use evidence is an important skill in civics and citizenship. You can communicate your findings in many ways, including through multimedia presentations (using software such as PowerPoint or Prezi), posters, reports, blogs or letters to someone who can help you take action (such as your teacher or local council).

Whichever format you decide to use, it is a good idea to include these features:

- an introduction – state what your research or inquiry question was, why you asked that question and why it is important. This is also a good place to define any key terms.
- an explanation of what research you did – why did you use the particular sources you chose? Discuss the facts and the arguments for and against a certain issue.
- an explanation of your results – you can present your results as graphs, tables or photographs for your audience.
- a conclusion – what were your findings? Explain how you came to that conclusion. Support your viewpoint with evidence such as statistics and quotes.
- a proposal for action – what needs to be done now? How can your audience get involved? Predict the consequences of your proposal for action.

When presenting your findings, remember that a common language is used in civics and citizenship, just as it is in science and mathematics. Source 12 defines some commonly used terms. Additional civics and citizenship terms can be found in the glossary at the end of this book, and are also defined throughout the chapters.

Additional resource
Using cognitive verbs

Source 12 Some useful civics and citizenship terms

citizen	a person who legally lives in a geographical area, such as a town or country
citizenship	a person's status as a citizen; in a wider context, citizenship encompasses the rights and responsibilities that citizens exercise
civics	the study of the rights and responsibilities of citizens and how government works
conventions	unwritten rules of political procedures based on traditional and established practices that are widely accepted; Australia's political system has adopted many of the conventions of the British Westminster system
democracy	a political system (or system of government) where the people determine how they will be managed or governed, and may exercise the power to directly govern themselves or elect representatives to govern on their behalf
diversity	having many different forms; when referring to people, diversity means that people come from different racial, ethnic, socio-economic, geographical, educational or professional backgrounds
globalisation	the process that involves all the countries of the world being linked together, resulting in an exchange of views, ideas, products and culture
government	the elected members of parliament who make decisions for a nation or state; the government is made up of the party or coalition that has won a majority of seats in the lower house of parliament
parliament	a formal assembly where elected representatives gather together to discuss political issues and make laws
pluralist society	a diverse society where there is tolerance of different beliefs

Check your learning
Topic 14.5

CHAPTER 15

Australia's democracy and the global context

A democracy is a system of government in which the people have the power to determine how they will be ruled or managed. A strong democracy must be based upon the core beliefs and values held and respected by the majority of society. Democratic governments should be elected by the people to make and implement laws on their behalf, and be able to justify their actions.

As a strong democracy in the Asia–Pacific region, Australia has a role to play regionally as well as globally.

Source 1 One of the key principles of Australia's democracy is the protection by law of rights such as freedom of assembly. This freedom grants us the right to protest and is protected by law. Here, protesters in Sydney wearing traditional Samoan outfits lead the front of a march on the Global Day of Action on Climate in 2021.

15A
What are the key features of Australia's system of government and democracy?

15B
How does Australia's system of government compare to others in the region?

15C
What are Australia's global roles and responsibilities?

15.1 Key features of Australia's system of government

Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» summarise the role of the government in Australia.

Australia is a unique country made up of over 26 million people. Our population includes Aboriginal peoples, who are one of the world's oldest continuous cultures (dating back over 65 000 years). It also includes people who have migrated from countries all around the world. With approximately 30 per cent of Australia's total population being born overseas, Australia is truly a **multicultural** society. Although many of us may eat different foods, celebrate different festivals, play different sports and embrace different religions and values, most of the time we manage to live together in unified way, with a high level of **social cohesion**.

multicultural
a society in which many cultures coexist peacefully and equitably

social cohesion
the willingness of members of a community to live together in a peaceful and cooperative way in order to survive and prosper

The role of government in Australia

In Australia we have a variety of systems, structures and laws designed to ensure that all members of our society can live together in a united, safe and peaceful manner. For example, our court system enforces the law and resolves disputes in a fair and unbiased way. Our system of government makes laws that reflect the prevailing views and moral standards held by most Australians. In addition, our **governments** aim to ensure that all Australians have access to basic goods and services, including health care, food, housing, education, roads, public transport, and utilities such as water, electricity and internet connection.

Government also supports all Australians in maintaining reasonable **living standards**. This involves making sure that people who wish to work have jobs, and that those who are unable to work or find it difficult to work – for example, the elderly, people with disabilities, carers, refugees and asylum seekers – are provided with income support and access to basic goods and services.

governments
elected members of parliament who make decisions for a nation or state; the government is made up of the party or coalition that has won a majority of seats in the lower house of parliament

living standards
the level of wealth, material goods, comfort and life necessities available to people living in a geographical area

Australia's system of government

In Australia's system of government, our laws are made by parliaments. A national 'system of government' broadly refers to the way in which a country is managed or controlled; while a **parliament** is a group of representatives who have been elected by the people to make laws on their behalf. A parliament performs a variety of tasks, including:

- making new laws and altering existing laws so they reflect the views and values of the majority of the people, and benefit society
- discussing and debating matters that affect the community
- examining problems that exist within society
- reviewing perceived injustices in the law.

parliament
a formal assembly where elected representatives gather to discuss political issues and make laws

Australia's system of government is based on a **federal parliamentary system**. This means that the nation is divided into states, each of which has its own parliament that is responsible for making laws for the residents of that state. In addition, there is one central or federal parliament, which has the power to make laws that apply to the entire country. In Australia, we have parliaments for

federal parliamentary system
a political system where the responsibility to make or change laws is shared by one national (or federal) parliament and several state parliaments

Source 1 People protesting to urge the Australian Government not to reduce its spending on basic services

each of the states and territories, and one Commonwealth Parliament (often referred to as the federal parliament) which is located in our nation's capital, Canberra.

Each state and territory also has local governments. These are called local or municipal councils, and have been given the power by the state and territory parliaments to make local laws – often called by-laws – and provide services for a local community, district or region. Like the federal, state and territory parliaments, local councils are elected by the residents in each local area. There are more than 530 local councils in Australia today, with approximately 55 per cent being located in regional, rural or remote areas.

Quiz me!
A quick quiz on key features of Australia's system of government

Source 2 Australia's three levels of government

Level of government	Examples of areas of law-making power
Commonwealth (federal)	• currency • defence • marriage • customs and border protection • Australian citizenship
State and territory	• primary and secondary education • health services • water • electricity • public transport
Local	• local infrastructure (e.g. roads, footpaths, waste collection) • recreational facilities (e.g. parks, libraries and swimming pools) • aged care facilities • child care facilities

Source 3 Australia's three levels of government have different law-making powers, covering areas such as defence (federal), education (state/territory), and waste collection (local).

15.1 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 **Identify** three roles of government in Australia.

2 **State** three tasks performed by Australian parliaments.

Comprehend

3 **Explain** why Australia's system of government is referred to as a federal parliamentary system.

Analyse

4 Briefly **distinguish** between the three levels of government in Australia.

Apply

5 Using the internet, **investigate** the role of your state or territory government and complete the following tasks.

   a Identify 10 different services that it provides to the community.

   b Identify the premier or leader of your state or territory's government, and the political party to which they belong.

   c Locate and briefly describe three laws that have been introduced or changed within the past two years. Suggest why these laws were introduced or changed. Do you support the introduction or change of these laws? Why or why not?

   d Imagine you could introduce two new laws in your state or territory. What would they be? Justify (give reasons for) your choices and compare them with those of your classmates.

6 **Create** a PowerPoint presentation or poster that illustrates the role and responsibilities of one of the three levels of government in Australia.

15.2 Principles of Australia's system of government

Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» describe the key principles of Australia's system of government.

As we have seen, Australia's system of government is based on the federal parliamentary system, with one central Commonwealth Parliament, six state parliaments and two mainland territory parliaments. It is also based on a variety of underlying principles or beliefs that aim to ensure that our nation is managed in a fair and just manner. These include that governments:

- must protect the rights and freedoms of individuals
- must make laws that reflect the views and values of the people
- must be accountable to the people
- must not abuse their power.

Governments must protect the rights and freedoms of individuals

Our system of government is also often referred to as a liberal democracy. This means it aims to protect a range of basic human rights, freedoms and values that advance the wellbeing of individuals, and place limits on the level of government control or interference. While the parliaments have the power to make laws that regulate the behaviour of people, they should not make laws that are excessive, or unnecessarily limit the activities of individuals.

For example, we have laws that:

- protect our broad right to **freedom of speech**
- protect our basic right to **freedom of assembly**
- limit individuals from behaving in an offensive or indecent manner in public.

freedom of speech the right of individuals to publicly express their views and opinions (provided these statements are not false, hateful or cause harm) on political issues without fear of being punished by the government

freedom of assembly the right of individuals to peacefully gather together to form a group or association to pursue a common goal

Source 4 The law protects our general right to freedom of speech and peaceful assembly. In this image, people march in Brisbane in August 2021 protesting the sexual harassment of women.

Governments must make laws that reflect the views and values of the people

One key feature of Australia's system of government is that it is based on the principle of **representative government**. This means our Commonwealth, state and territory parliaments consist of members who are elected by the people to make laws on their behalf. One way the principle of representative government is upheld in Australia is by holding regular free and fair elections, where the people can vote for individuals to represent them in parliament. If these elected members of parliament fail to make laws that represent the views, values and moral standards of the majority of voters, they jeopardise their chance of being re-elected.

In Australia, federal parliament elections are held every three years, while elections are held for state and territory parliaments every four years. Voting in federal and state/territory elections is compulsory for all eligible citizens aged over 18 years. Those who do not enrol to vote, or do not vote on election day, may be fined approximately $85. Australia is one of only a few nations in the world that has compulsory voting in elections.

representative government
a system of government in which the people elect members of parliament to make laws and manage the country on their behalf; also called representative democracy

Key skill worksheet
Analysis, evaluation & interpretation: Acknowledging different perspectives when making laws

Governments must be accountable to the people

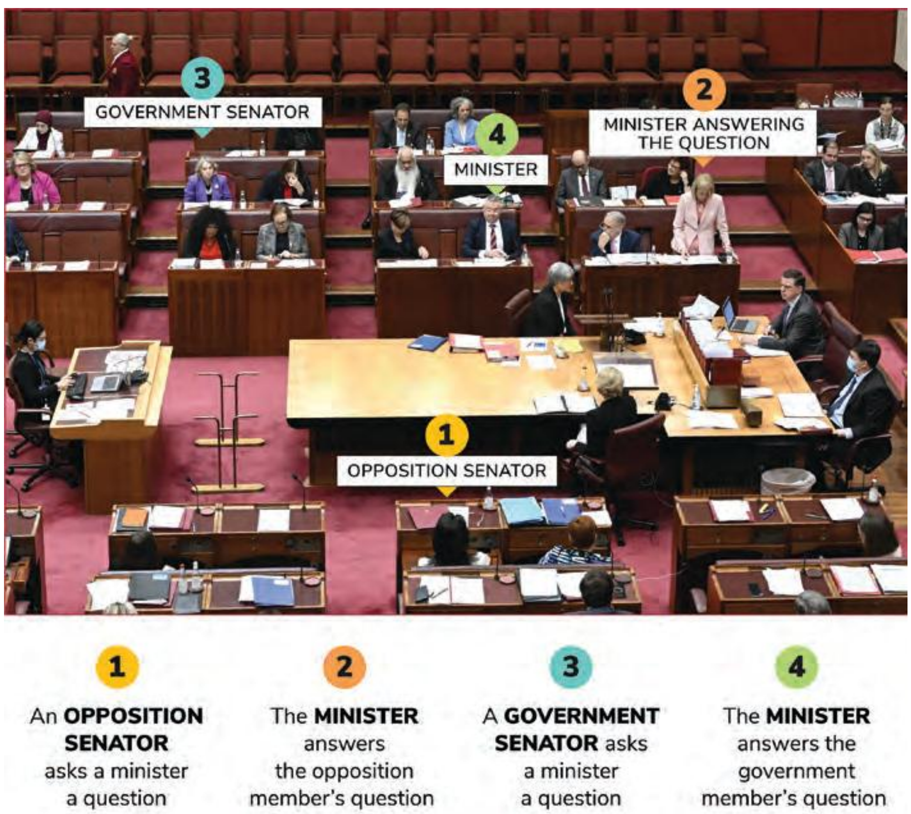
The principle that the government must be accountable – or answerable – to the people is also known as the principle of **responsible government**. Being accountable to the people means that governments must be able to justify their actions and decisions to the voters.

One way that Australian governments are accountable is in parliamentary Question Time (see Source 5), where all members of parliament are given the opportunity to question the government on its policies and actions. Often parliamentary Question Time can become quite intense, as members of the government and the opposition disagree about political issues.

responsible government
the requirement that the government must be accountable to the people for its actions and decisions, and that members of the government must carry out their duties in an honest manner or resign

Members of the public can also hold the government accountable by emailing or visiting their local member's office to directly question them.

The principle of responsible government also ensures our governments are accountable by stating that any member of the government who acts in a dishonourable or irresponsible manner has a duty to resign from their position. Throughout the years many elected members of state and federal governments have voluntarily resigned from their positions after being accused or proven to have acted dishonestly.



Source 5 An example of Question Time in the Senate; questions to ministers alternate between government and non-government senators.

Governments must not abuse their power

separation of powers
the principle of government that ensures no single group in the parliamentary system can administer the law, make the law, and interpret and apply the law

The principle of the **separation of powers** prevents our governments from abusing their power, or making laws beyond their power, by ensuring that no single group or body within our parliamentary system holds more than one of the three main powers of government. The three main powers are:

- *executive power* – the power to administer or implement the law, held by the government; at federal level, this power is exercised by the Governor-General (as the King's representative), the prime minister and senior ministers
- *legislative power* – the power to make the law, held by parliament
- *judicial power* – the power to interpret and apply the law, held by the courts; this allows the courts to enforce the law and settle disputes.

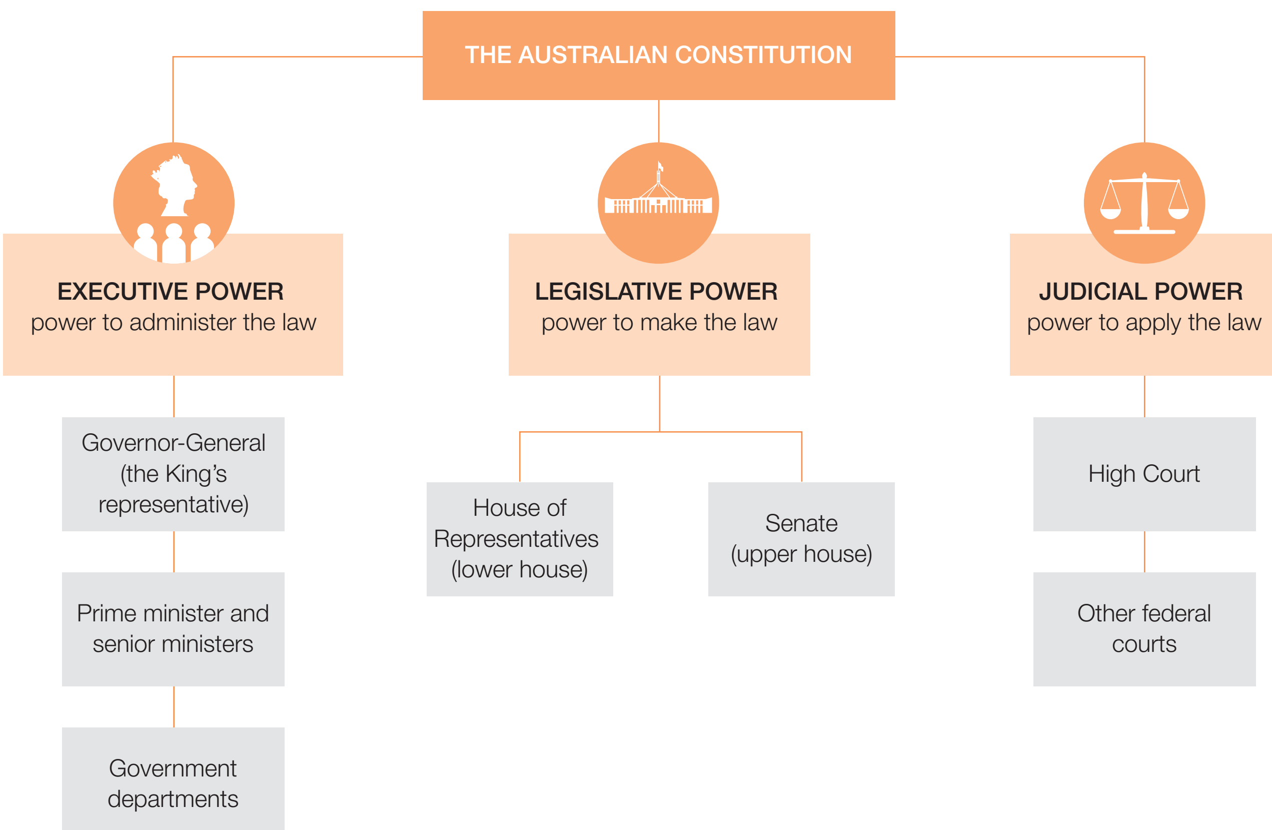
Australian Constitution
a set of rules and principles that guide the way Australia is governed

judiciary
a legal term used to describe the courts and judges

In Australia, the separation of powers at federal level is established by the **Australian Constitution** (see Source 6).

In practice, however, the executive power and the legislative power are combined, while the **judiciary** remains independent. For example, the government and the parliament have the power to make and administer the laws, but they do not have the power to apply and interpret the law, which is the role of the courts. This independent court system allows our judges to resolve disputes without any outside influence from government, party politics or voters. Judges are free from political bias, which means they are impartial when applying the law.

Keeping the judiciary independent means the courts can act as a check on parliament, and make sure that parliaments do not make any laws beyond their power. If a person or organisation believes that a parliament has made a law that abuses its powers, they can challenge the law in court. If this challenge is successful, the law can be declared invalid by a judge.



Source 6 The principle of the separation of powers at federal level, as set out in the Australian Constitution

CASE STUDY

The separation of powers

In 2021, a single judge in the Federal Court of Australia heard a case under the tort of negligence (a tort is a legal wrong, with negligence actions relating to failures by one person to take reasonable care not to harm another). The case was brought by Anjali Sharma, a 16-year-old climate activist from New South Wales, against the Minister for the Environment. Ms Sharma argued that the minister owed a duty of care when exercising their role as a member of the executive to 'avoid causing personal injury or death to Australian children arising from the emissions of carbon dioxide into the Earth's atmosphere.' Ms Sharma argued that the minister's duty arose when they were 'putting the law in action', the law being the *Environment Protection and Biodiversity Conservation Act 1999*.

While initially the Federal Court found in favour of Ms Sharma, the minister appealed this finding to the Full Federal Court of Australia, who overturned the original decision. On appeal, the Full Federal Court held (among other things) that while the threat of climate change and global warming is accepted, it is not appropriate for the courts to determine the merits of government decisions. Doing so would blur the separation of powers, as the role of the judiciary is to interpret the law, not to decide whether the minister's decision was a good one or not. While separation of powers is not complete in Australia – as the executive (the government) is drawn from and responsible to the legislative (the parliament) – it is vital for the rule of law that the judiciary remains completely independent of the other arms of government. This means that the courts are able to most effectively hold the legislative and executive accountable for their actions through judicial review of laws made by parliament and government policy.

Source 7 The Federal Court of Australia heard the case *Minister for the Environment (Commonwealth) v Anjali Sharma & Ors* [2022].

15.2 Check your learning

Retrieve

1. In your own words, **define** the term 'liberal democracy'.
2. **Identify** two other principles upon which the Australian system of government is based.

Comprehend

3. **Describe** how the Australian parliamentary system achieves representative government.
4. With reference to the separation of powers, **explain** why judges may not be elected as members of parliament and serve in the government.

Analyse

5. **Consider** one way, other than the risk of not being re-elected, that governments in Australia are held accountable for their actions.

Apply

6. **Create** a flow chart that categorises the key principles of Australia's system of government.
7. Imagine you have been commissioned (asked) by the federal government to investigate compulsory voting. Research the pros and cons of compulsory voting, and prepare a 300-word submission that discusses the abolition of compulsory voting in Australia.

Quiz me!
A quick quiz on principles of Australia's system of government

15.3 Australia's Commonwealth Parliament

Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» describe the structure and role of Australia's Commonwealth Parliament.

At the time of the arrival of the First Fleet in 1788, Australia's First Nations peoples – Aboriginal and Torres Strait Islander peoples – had their own well-established system of law, rights, responsibilities and codes of behaviour. Despite this, the British **colonists** swiftly imposed their own laws and legal system.

From 1788 onwards, the British began developing a system of government whereby each of the six **colonies** (which are now called states) was able to establish its own parliament. Together with the British Parliament, these colonial parliaments each had the power to make laws for its own colony.

The colonial parliaments each followed the British parliamentary model, called the Westminster parliamentary system, whereby the parliament consists of one or two houses and the reigning English monarch, or 'the Crown'.

The Westminster parliamentary system is still followed in Australia today, as each of the state/territory parliaments and the Commonwealth Parliament consists of one or two houses and the Crown. A parliament consisting of two houses is called **bicameral**. The Commonwealth Parliament and each of the state parliaments (except Queensland) are bicameral because they consist of a lower and an upper house. The parliaments of Queensland and the territories are **unicameral**, because they have only the lower house and the Crown.

colonists
those who take control of a country or territory for financial, political or military gain

colonies
countries or areas under the full or partial control of another country, and occupied by colonisers from that country

bicameral (parliament)
a system of government in which the legislature is made up of two houses

unicameral (parliament)
a system of government in which the legislature is made up of one house

The Crown is represented by:

- the Governor-General in the federal parliament and the Australian Capital Territory
- the Governor in the state parliaments
- the Administrator (appointed by the Governor-General) in the Northern Territory.

Creating the Commonwealth Parliament

As Australia grew throughout the 1800s, problems began to arise between the colonies, as each made different laws in a range of common areas. For example, there were constraints on inter-colony trade, due to the colonies having different railway systems, different postage stamps and different taxes. There were also defence concerns, including the following:

- Each colony had its own independent army.
- There was no uniform defence force capable of protecting the entire country.
- Concern was growing over the arrival of non-British immigrants and the lack of a common immigration policy.

These issues made it increasingly obvious that, in addition to having separate parliaments in each colony, a central parliament was needed to make consistent laws that could apply to and benefit the entire country.

In the 1880s, the colonies began formal discussions to consider which laws would be best made by a central parliament and which areas of law-making power should be kept by the individual colonies. In the following decade, each colony sent a group of representatives to special meetings – called **constitutional conventions** – where it was decided that a new central Commonwealth Parliament would be created. This parliament would be given the power to make laws on national matters that affected the whole country, such as:

- defence
- currency
- postal services
- overseas matters
- immigration and trade.

constitutional conventions
meetings of representatives from the colonies to consider the benefits of, and terms and conditions associated with, creating one central law-making authority

The colonial parliaments would keep the power to make laws relating to areas such as:

- hospitals
- roads
- education
- public transport
- water
- law enforcement.

On 1 January 1901, known as Federation Day, the British Parliament passed a law called the *Commonwealth of Australia Constitution Act 1900:*

- to unite the six separate British colonies and form one Australian nation with a new federal system of government
- to create the new Commonwealth Parliament of Australia, and outline its structure and law-making powers.

This law is more commonly known as the Australian Constitution.

Source 8 This souvenir booklet was published to celebrate Federation Day on 1 January 1901, when the separate colonies united to form one Australian nation – a process known as Federation.

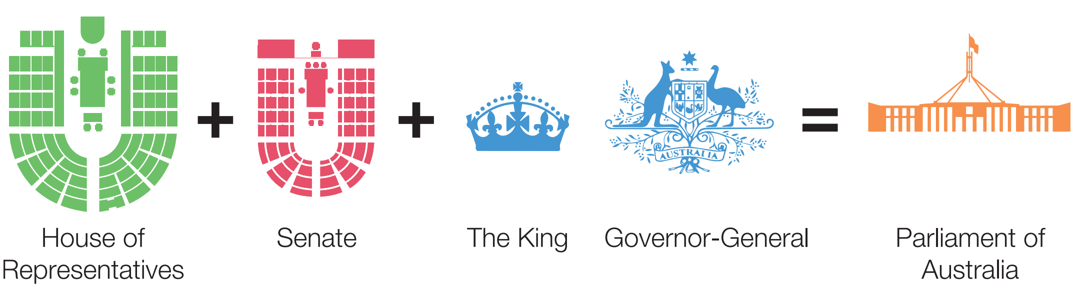
The structure of the Commonwealth Parliament

In keeping with the Westminster parliamentary system, the Australian Constitution states that:

- the Commonwealth Parliament must consist of two houses and the Crown (represented by the Governor-General)
- the lower house of Commonwealth Parliament is called the House of Representatives and the upper house is called the Senate
- all laws made by the Commonwealth Parliament must be passed or approved by a majority of members in both houses of parliament and the Crown.

Source 9 The structure of the Commonwealth Parliament

Lower house: House of Representatives	Upper house: Senate	Crown: Governor-General
151 members elected by the people to serve a three-year term	76 members elected by the people to serve a six-year term	One person chosen by government to serve a five-year term



Source 10 The key elements of the Commonwealth Parliament

The House of Representatives

electoral divisions (or electorates)
geographical areas containing a specified number of people who can vote in an election

political party
a group of people with similar views and ideas about how a country, state or territory should be managed or governed

coalition
two or more political parties that join together in an attempt to win an election and form government

absolute majority
the requirement for a candidate (or political party) to win more than half the votes to be declared the winner of the electoral division (or form the government)

The lower house in the Commonwealth Parliament, the House of Representatives, consists of 151 members. Each of these members is elected by eligible voters who live in one of 151 designated areas – called **electoral divisions (or electorates)** – throughout Australia. The electoral divisions are determined in proportion to population size, meaning that the most populated states, such as New South Wales and Victoria, have more elected representatives in the lower house than the less populated states, such as Tasmania. In this way, the house is made up of members who can represent the views, values and desires of people from all around the country. For this reason it is often referred to as the 'People's House'. Members of the House of Representatives are elected for a three-year term.

The main role of the House of Representatives is to:

- determine the government of the day. In simple terms, the government is the **political party** (or **coalition** of parties) that has an **absolute majority** in the lower house. For example, at the federal election in 2022, members of the Australian Labor Party won 77 of the 151 electorates and so formed the government of the day.
- discuss, debate and scrutinise proposals for creating and changing Commonwealth laws. In fact, most proposals for introducing new laws or changing existing laws commence in the lower house.

Source 11 The House of Representatives in the Commonwealth Parliament

Source 12 The Senate in the Commonwealth Parliament

The Senate

The upper house in the Commonwealth Parliament, the Senate, consists of 76 members – made up of 12 members elected from each of the six states, and two members elected from each of the mainland territories (the Northern Territory and the Australian Capital Territory). This structure is designed so that the Senate can, in theory, equally represent the views, values and interests of each state of Australia. While the House of Representatives consists of members elected from electoral divisions that are determined in proportion to the state's population size, the Senate is made up of an equal number of members from each state, regardless of the state's population size. Individuals elected to the Senate, called senators, are elected for a six-year term.

The main role of the Senate is to:

- represent the interests of the states. Given that the Senate consists of an equal number of senators from each state (that is, 12), in theory it can equally represent the interests of each state. It can also help prevent the Commonwealth Parliament from passing laws that discriminate against any particular state. This is because all proposals for new laws must be passed or agreed to by a majority of members in both houses of parliament.

- initiate, discuss and review new laws. Like the House of Representatives, proposals for creating new Commonwealth laws, or changing existing Commonwealth laws, can be initiated and discussed in the Senate. However, because most laws start in the lower house, the Senate tends to act more as a 'House of Review' – by debating and scrutinising proposals that have already been passed by the House of Representatives.

CASE STUDY

Federal government spending

One of the main responsibilities of the Australian federal government is to manage the nation's finances and provide services to the community. Each year, the federal government must prepare a federal budget that outlines how much money the government expects to receive and how it plans to spend it.

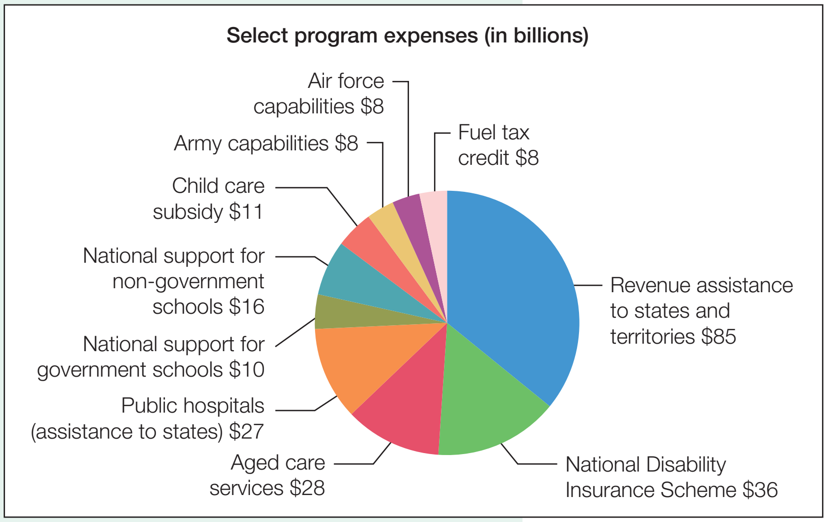
Typically, the federal budget for the new financial year (that is, 1 June to 30 July) is announced in May. However, due to election timing, the 2022–23 federal budget was announced in March 2022 (with another federal budget announced by the new Labor government in October 2022). The budget announced in March 2022 outlined how the federal government intended to spend the estimated $561 billion of income that it expected to receive, and whether the government would need to spend more money in the 2022–23 year than it expected to earn. This is known as a budget deficit.

Due to a variety of factors, including the rising cost of living resulting from the COVID-19 pandemic, Russia's invasion of Ukraine and extreme weather events, the government decided to spend approximately $78 billion more than it expected to receive in 2022–23.

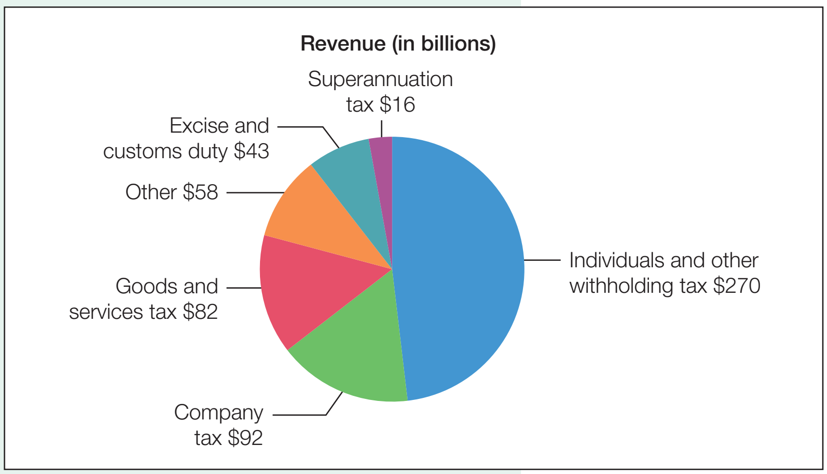
The government spends most of its income (or revenue) on:

- social security and welfare. This includes the provision of pensions and other forms of support to the aged, people with disabilities and their carers, families with children, the unemployed and veterans.
- health care
- education
- national defence.

Deciding where to spend government revenue is a difficult task and always creates controversy. This is because some individuals and groups benefit by receiving government assistance and services, while others feel their needs are overlooked.



Source 13 Where does the federal government spend its money? (2022–23)



Source 14 Where does the federal government get its money from? (2022–23)

budget deficit
a situation where an organisation plans to spend more money in the coming year than it expects to earn (or receive)

The Crown

Source 15 The King is represented in the Commonwealth Parliament by the Governor-General.

In addition to the two houses, the third component of our Commonwealth Parliament is the Crown – that is, the reigning British monarch, currently the King – who is represented in the Commonwealth Parliament by the Governor-General. The Governor-General is appointed by the monarch on the advice of the Australian **prime minister**. They are always a prominent and well-respected Australian. The current Governor-General, who took up his five-year position in July 2019, is David Hurley. He is a retired chief of the Australian Defence Force and a former Governor of New South Wales.

The main role of the Governor-General is to:

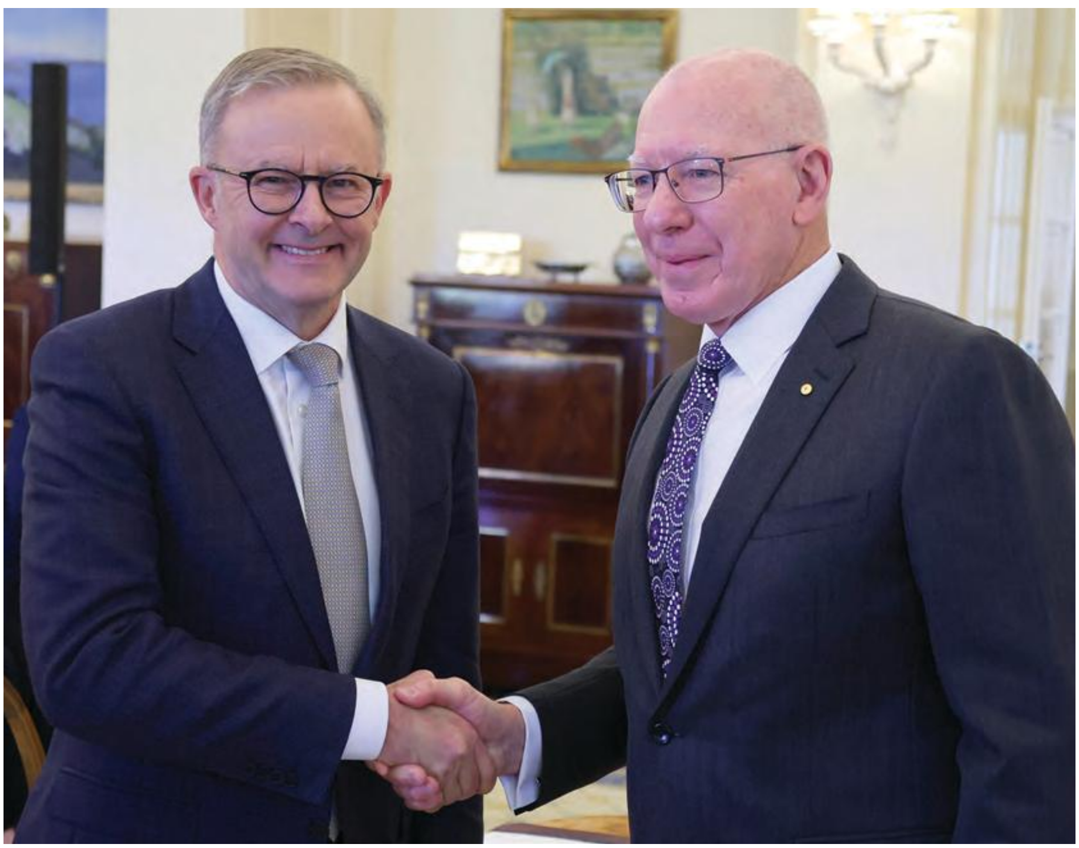
- grant **royal assent** (give final approval), on behalf of the Crown, for a **bill** (proposed law) to become an Act of Parliament (law)
- perform ceremonial duties. For example, the Governor-General often represents Australia at important national and international events, such as Anzac Day ceremonies and the Olympic and Commonwealth Games. They also present awards granted under the Australian honours and awards system (recognising individuals who have made outstanding contributions to our society) and offer encouragement to Australians by supporting a wide range of charitable, educational and cultural events.

The Governor-General may also 'dissolve', or end, the term of parliament and call a federal election if both houses fail to agree over the passing of a significant law. This power is used rarely, and only in extreme circumstances.

prime minister
the leader of the party that forms the government

royal assent
the formal signing and approval of a proposed law (called a bill) by the King's representative, after which the proposal becomes law

bill
a proposal to implement a new law or change an existing law



Source 16 Governor-General David Hurley (right) shakes hands with Prime Minister Anthony Albanese after Mr Albanese was sworn in following the federal election in May 2022.

The structure of the state and territory parliaments

Each state parliament in Australia – with the exception of Queensland, which only has a lower house – follows the Westminster parliamentary system, and consists of two houses and the Crown. The parliaments of the two mainland territories – the Australian Capital Territory and the Northern Territory – consist of only one house and do not include the Crown. This is because they were created and given limited power to govern themselves by the Commonwealth Parliament after Federation.

Source 17 outlines the structure and names of each house in the Australian state and territory parliaments.

Quiz me!
A quick quiz on Australia's Commonwealth Parliament

Source 17 The Australian state and territory parliaments

State	Name of lower house	Number of elected members	Name of upper house	Number of elected members	Crown representative
Victoria	Legislative Assembly	88	Legislative Council	40	Governor
New South Wales	Legislative Assembly	93	Legislative Council	42	Governor
Western Australia	Legislative Assembly	59	Legislative Council	36	Governor
South Australia	House of Assembly	47	Legislative Council	22	Governor
Tasmania	House of Assembly	25	Legislative Council	15	Governor
Queensland	Legislative Assembly	93	N/A	N/A	Governor
Australian Capital Territory	Legislative Assembly	25	N/A	N/A	Governor-General
Northern Territory	Legislative Assembly	25	N/A	N/A	Administrator (appointed by the Governor-General)

15.3 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 In your own words, **define** the term 'the Westminster parliamentary system'.

2 **Identify** three ways the Crown is represented in the Australian system of government.

Comprehend

3 **Explain** why the Australian Commonwealth Parliament was established in 1901.

Analyse

4 Read the case study 'Federal government spending'.

a Imagine you are responsible for preparing the federal budget for the coming year.

i **Identify** three areas of government spending where you believe spending should be increased and briefly explain your decision.

ii **Identify** an area of government spending where you believe spending should be decreased and briefly explain your decision.

b What is a budget deficit? **Consider** one reason why the federal government might plan for a budget deficit and one problem associated with a budget deficit.

Apply

5 **Create** a poster that outlines the composition and role of the two houses of the Commonwealth Parliament.

6 In 1999, a proposal was put to the Australian people to remove the Crown from the Commonwealth Parliament, so that Australia could become a republic. While the proposal failed, support for the republican movement has grown over recent years.

- Use the internet to research the debate about Australia becoming a republic.
- **Investigate** the strengths and weaknesses associated with Australia becoming a republic. Prepare a report that evaluates whether Australia should become a republic. Be sure to give your own opinion on the debate.

15A SKILLS IN CONTEXT

Australia's international democratic ranking

Test me!
Once you've finished the topics in this section, test yourself with this quiz and find out which worksheet you should do.

Various organisations gather statistics and publish information on global democracies in an effort to determine which nations are the most and least democratic. The Democracy Index (which has been published by the Economist Intelligence Unit each year since 2006) is one of the best-known surveys on global democracy.

The Democracy Index attempts to measure the level of democracy in 167 countries and rank them in terms of regional and global performance. In order to do this, the Index examines approximately 60 different indicators to assess five broad criteria:

- the nation's electoral process
- basic civil rights and freedoms
- the manner in which the government operates
- the level of political participation
- the nation's overall political culture.

After these areas have been assessed, each country is classified as being either a full democracy, a flawed democracy, a hybrid regime (a mix of democracy and authoritarian rule) or an authoritarian regime. Each country is then ranked from 1 to 10, with the most democratic countries being awarded 10.

According to the 2021 Democracy Index (see Source 19), Norway was the most democratic country in the world. Australia was ranked ninth, drawing equal place with Switzerland. The United States ranked 26th (having fallen from being ranked 20th in 2015), and the United Kingdom ranked 18th. Some of the lowest ranked – or least democratic – countries in the world were Afghanistan, Burma, North Korea, the Democratic Republic of the Congo, the Central African Republic, Syria, Turkmenistan and Chad.

Only 12.6 per cent of the 167 countries examined in the Index were classified as having a full democracy. Approximately 35 per cent were categorised as having authoritarian regimes. This is where a nation is ruled by a central organisation or government that is not accountable or responsible to the people. An authoritarian regime often relies on mass acceptance by the people, rather than being popularly elected in free and fair elections.

Less than half of the world's population was categorised as living in a democracy of 'some sort'.

Source 18 Norway is the most democratic country in the world, according to the Democracy Index.

Source 19 The 10 most democratic countries in the world, 2021

Ranking	Country	Score
1	Norway	9.75
2	New Zealand	9.37
3	Finland	9.27
4	Sweden	9.26
5	Iceland	9.18
6	Denmark	9.09
7	Ireland	9.00
8	Taiwan	8.99
9=	Australia	8.90
9=	Switzerland	8.90

Source: The Economist Intelligence Unit Limited

KEY SKILL
Questioning & researching

Developing an inquiry

Developing an inquiry is an important skill to learn. It enables us to research new information and knowledge, rather than just memorising information that has been provided to us.

While developing an inquiry is an excellent way to investigate and develop a deeper understanding of an issue or topic, it is not always an easy thing to do. It requires careful consideration and planning. Follow the steps below to develop an inquiry:

Step 1 Think about what you already know about the topic. What sort of information might you need to collect to develop this understanding?

Step 2 Based on your thoughts in step 1, devise an overarching inquiry question; that is, one big, guiding question that you are hoping to answer. For example: 'How democratic is Australia?'

Step 3 Based on the overarching inquiry question you developed in step 2, create a series of smaller questions to help guide your investigation. For example:

- Are there any laws or rules that make Australia a democracy?
- What types of threats to democracy exist in Australia?
- Are there any other groups like the Economist Intelligence Unit that rank and judge democracy in Australia?

Step 4 Now that you know what you are looking for, work out where might be the best place to find this information. You may like to research using the internet or library, conduct interviews or surveys, or simply begin by reading through your textbook and your notes from class.

Step 5 Decide on the best way to evaluate the information you have collected. For example, you might prepare a table of pros and cons, draw diagrams and/or create a flow chart or concept map.

Step 6 Decide how you will present or display the information you have gathered from your inquiry questions.

For more information on this skill, refer to page 457 of 'The civics and citizenship toolkit'.

Practise the skill

1 Conduct an inquiry to **investigate** the extent to which Australia is a democracy. Use the steps listed above to help you design your inquiry questions. Consider posing some questions based on the key features of a democracy that have been outlined in this chapter. For example:
- Does the parliament really make laws that represent all Australians?
- Is the government really accountable to the people?

Extend your understanding

1 **Create** a presentation on Prezi that outlines and examines one or more key features of our Australian parliamentary system. In your presentation, make links between the Australian parliamentary system and democracy.

Source 20 Australia is ranked as one of the top 10 most democratic countries in the world. Some of our democratic values are the right to freedom of speech and assembly, and the right to peacefully protest. This image shows an 'Invasion Day' rally held in Melbourne to highlight the injustices faced by First Nations peoples.

15.4 Key features of Indonesia's system of government

Learning intentions

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

- summarise the key features of Indonesia's system of government
- compare Indonesia's system of government with that of Australia.

Source 1 A range of different religions are practised in Indonesia. Here, a Hindu leader gives out flower petals during a mass preparing for the Hindu Ngaben ceremony in Bali.

The Republic of Indonesia is made up of over 17 500 islands. The largest and most well-known islands are Java (where the capital city Jakarta is located), Sumatra, Kalimantan, Sulawesi and Papua. More than 280 million people live in Indonesia, making it the fourth-most populated nation in the world, following China, India and the United States. Indonesia is also one of the most ethnically diverse nations in the world – it has approximately 1300 different ethnic groups who speak over 740 different languages and dialects. A range of different religions are also practised in Indonesia, with approximately 87 per cent of the population being Muslim, approximately 10 per cent being Christian, and the remainder mainly practising the Hindu, Buddhist and Confucian religions.

The following are key features of Indonesia's system of government:

- a representative democratic republic
- three levels of government
- separation of powers.

A representative democratic republic

Indonesia became a **republic** in 1945 after the Indonesians claimed their independence from the Dutch and Japanese. In recent years, Indonesia has moved towards a representative democracy, in which the people vote to elect the parliaments and governments that make and implement Indonesian law.

republic
a system of government in which the power lies with a group of elected officials rather than a king or queen

History of Indonesian democracy

The Dutch ruled Indonesia for 300 years, until Japanese forces invaded and occupied the nation in 1942, during World War II. After the Japanese surrendered in 1945, a small group of Indonesians set up a temporary government and declared the nation an independent republic. However, the existence of many different political and religious groups, and ongoing disputes with the Dutch, meant that it was difficult to form a stable government. Since then, there have been a number of significant leaders of Indonesia. These are outlined in Source 2.

Source 2 Indonesia's leaders

GENERAL HAJI MUHAMMAD SUHARTO
IN OFFICE: MARCH 1968 TO MAY 1998

General Haji Muhammad Suharto was the head of the military, and was then installed as the nation's president. During his rule, Suharto was criticised for restricting the right to protest and freedom of speech. He was also criticised for breaching human rights, including ordering the 1991 massacre of hundreds of East Timorese people, who resisted Indonesian's occupation of their nation in 1975. In 1998, after months of anti-government riots and economic and political unrest, Suharto resigned.

Source 3 General Haji Muhammad Suharto

DR SUSILO BAMBANG YUDHOYONO
IN OFFICE: OCTOBER 2004 TO OCTOBER 2014

Indonesia slowly moved towards establishing more democratically elected parliaments. In 2004, Dr Susilo Bambang Yudhoyono won the nation's first direct presidential elections by popular vote, after approximately 110 million people (70 per cent of the 150 million registered voters) participated in a relatively free, fair and non-compulsory election. Yudhoyono was re-elected in 2009. He was unable to stand again in the 2014 elections. This was because, under changes to the Indonesian Constitution, the president can only serve a maximum of two five-year terms.

Source 4 Dr Susilo Bambang Yudhoyono

JOKO WIDODO
IN OFFICE: OCTOBER 2014 TO PRESENT

In 2014, Joko Widodo ran as the presidential candidate for the Indonesian Democratic Party of Struggle (PDI-P) and was elected. He was then re-elected in the 2019 election, after winning 55.5 per cent of the vote. When Widodo's presidential victory was announced, supporters of his opponent gathered in the nation's capital, Jakarta, to protest the result. The protest developed into a riot in which eight people were killed and hundreds were injured.

Source 5 Joko Widodo

Three levels of government

Indonesia has three levels of government: the national, **provincial** and district (or city) levels. Each parliament at each level of government is elected by the people to make laws on their behalf, and elections are held once every five years, on the same day.

provincial (level of government)
an intermediary (or secondary) tier or level of government; in Indonesia, for the purposes of governing, the nation is divided into 34 provinces or subdivisions

The structure of the national parliament

The Indonesian national parliament, which is responsible for making laws that apply to the whole country, is called the People's Consultative Assembly. It is similar to Australia's Commonwealth Parliament in that, since 2004, it consists of two houses:

- the lower house – the People's Representative Council (often referred to as the House of Representatives), which consists of 575 seats, or members
- the upper house – the Regional Representatives Council, which consists of 136 seats, or members.

While the People's Consultative Assembly consists of two houses, it differs from the Australian bicameral system in that a bill does not have to be passed by both houses to become a law. The final power to make and change laws is held solely by the People's Representative Council.

The political party that wins at least 288 of the 575 seats in the People's Representative Council also earns the right to govern.

Each of Indonesia's 34 provinces, except one, has its own parliament, called the Provincial Legislative Assembly, which is elected by the residents of the province. Each province is further subdivided into municipalities, or regencies, most of which also have their own parliaments, or District Legislative Assemblies. To encourage greater female participation in parliament, since 2004 a political party cannot contest the Indonesian elections unless at least 30 per cent of their **candidates** at each level are women.

candidates
people who put themselves forward (i.e. stand) to be elected as a member of parliament

Challenges to voting in Indonesia

Having the national, provincial and district elections all on the same day makes the Indonesian electoral process challenging. In terms of organisation, enrolment must be finalised, and ballot papers must be printed and distributed throughout each of the provinces, including many that are in remote and isolated places.

Informing voters about their voting rights, the voting process and the candidates is a very difficult task, given the number of people vote in Indonesian elections and the number of candidates. In the 2019 elections, approximately 187 million people were eligible to vote at just 805 000 official polling centres, potentially causing major delays. Also in 2019, around 300 000 candidates put themselves forward to be elected to one of the 20 000 seats in the national, provincial and district parliaments.

Source 5 A woman votes in West Java during an Indonesian election.

To be eligible to vote in an Indonesian election, a person must be aged at least 17 years, or be married, and must hold an 'electronic identification card'. The requirement to hold an electronic identification card has meant that perhaps millions of otherwise eligible voters were not able to cast their vote at the 2019 elections. For example, people who are members of disadvantaged or low-income groups (such as people who live in remote areas or social housing, or who work in farming or mining) find it difficult, or are not able, to obtain a card.

Separation of powers

Like Australia, the Indonesian system of government is based on the principle of the separation of powers. This means that no one group or body can hold all three of the main branches of power in the Indonesian parliamentary system. In Indonesia:

- the power to administer or implement the law (*executive power*) is held by the president, who is elected as the head of the Indonesian Government in a separate presidential election held a few months after the parliamentary elections
- the power to make the law (*legislative power*) is held by the national, provincial and district parliaments that are elected by the people in parliamentary elections held every five years
- the power to interpret and apply the law (*judicial power*) is held by the courts; this allows the courts to enforce the law and settle disputes.

Quiz me
A quick quiz on the key features of Indonesia's system of government

The Indonesian system of government is also similar to Australia's in that different political parties contest each election, although in Australia the two major parties (the Liberal Party and the Australian Labor Party) dominate the voting, while in Indonesia a variety of large and small political parties compete at election time. This means the party composition of the People's Consultative Assembly can change significantly with each election. Some of Indonesia's main political parties are the Indonesia Democratic Party of Struggle (known as the PDI-P), the Great Indonesia Movement Party (known as Gerindra) and the Functional Groups Party (known as Golkar).

Key skill worksheet
Communicating: Using a Venn diagram to compare systems of government

CASE STUDY

The death penalty in Indonesia

In April 2015, two Australian men named Andrew Chan and Myuran Sukumaran were executed by the Indonesian Government after being convicted for drug-trafficking offences. Both men were members of the 'Bali Nine', a group of nine Australians who were arrested in Denpasar, Bali, for trying to smuggle approximately 8 kilograms of heroin – worth $4 million – from Indonesia to Australia in 2014. Four other members of the group were also sentenced to death, but had their sentences reduced to life imprisonment on appeal.

In recent years, the Indonesian courts have continued to impose the death penalty, mostly for drug-related offences such as drug trafficking, with 89 people being sentenced to death in 2021 for committing drug-related offences. Other offences that have resulted in offenders receiving the death penalty include murder, terrorism and sexual offences against children. While Indonesia has not carried out an execution since 2016, there were approximately 404 prisoners waiting for their death sentence to be carried out in 2021.

As of 2022, 55 countries around the world have death penalty laws, including Indonesia. The death penalty is still strongly supported in Indonesia, with surveys suggesting as many as 69 per cent of the population may be in favour. Support for the death penalty is particularly high among members of the police, security forces and some Muslim groups who believe that it is an appropriate punishment for those who commit very serious crimes (such as terrorism, mass murder and trafficking large quantities of illegal drugs). Those who oppose the death penalty, in Indonesia and elsewhere, argue that it is 'state-approved murder', and that it does not make a society safer or reduce the likelihood of similar crimes happening in the future.

Source 6 In 2015, Australian citizens Andrew Chan and Myuran Sukumaran were executed by an Indonesian firing squad after being convicted of drug-trafficking in 2005.

* **Think, pair, share**

- Think about whether Australia should reintroduce the death penalty for people who have been found guilty of terrorism offences.
- Discuss your ideas with a partner.
- Share your thoughts with the class.

15.4 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 **Identify** who ruled Indonesia before the Japanese invasion in 1942.

2 **State** the three levels of government in Indonesia.

Comprehend

3 State the name and **summarise** the basic role and structure of Indonesia's national parliament.

Analyse

4 Create a table to **compare** Indonesia's system of government with Australia's. Explain two similarities and two differences between these systems of government.

5 **Distinguish** between the types of government that existed in Indonesia under the rule of President Haji Muhammad Suharto and President Susilo Bambang Yudhoyono.

6 Read the case study 'The death penalty in Indonesia'.

   a **Explain** why Andrew Chan and Myuran Sukumaran were executed.

   b **Identify** the offences that are most likely to result in the offender being sentenced to death in Indonesia.

   c **Discuss** whether or not Indonesia should abolish the death penalty. Remember, the best discussions always consider both sides of the argument.

Apply

7 **Create** a timeline that illustrates key changes in the Indonesian Government since 1942.

15.5 International and national influences on systems of government

Learning intentions

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

- identify international influences on Australia's system of government
- summarise how First Nations people in Australia have engaged with Australia's legal and political system since 1788.

Many factors can influence systems of government. New political ideas, global events, economic change, and social and technological developments can all influence political systems.

International influences on Australia

Over the years, a range of international factors have influenced Australia's system of government and the democratic values that underpin this system. For example, in 2020 the global COVID-19 pandemic resulted in limitations being placed on some of the basic democratic freedoms that Australians value, including freedom of movement and freedom of assembly. The pandemic also affected our living standards, as many Australians lost their jobs and income. This in turn increased inequality and caused some people to feel dissatisfied with the federal and state governments' response to the pandemic.

Another example is the 2020 Black Lives Matter protests, which began in the United States in May following the death of a 46-year-old Black American man named George Floyd. Floyd died after being held to the ground by the knee of a US police officer. After protests erupted in every state of the United States, they spread to Australia. Thousands of people defied COVID-19 restrictions to participate in demonstrations and urge the government to improve the rights of First Nations peoples. These Black Lives Matter demonstrations were just some of many protests that have taken place since Australia became a nation (in 1901) to increase the rights and recognition of Australia's First Nations peoples which, in so many ways, have been neglected since the British colonised Australia.

Source 7 Government restrictions across Australia during the COVID-19 pandemic prohibited crowds from gathering in public places.

Source 8 In 2020, thousands of Australians joined in Black Lives Matter demonstrations demanding increased recognition, rights and living standards for First Nations peoples.

Influences on the recognition of First Nations peoples in Australia

Australia inherited its democratic system of government from the British, who colonised Australia in 1788. However, when the British arrived to set up the first colonies, they simply imposed British laws and failed to respect and acknowledge the rights and existing laws of Aboriginal peoples who had been on the land (or Country) for thousands of years. The British Government did not recognise that First Nations peoples (Aboriginal and Torres Strait Islander peoples) owned the land, and imposed the legal principle of ***Terra Nullius***, meaning that Australia was officially considered to be an 'empty land' before British settlement. This false legal principle remained a part of Australian law until 1992, when the High Court made a significant ruling – in a case called the *Mabo* decision – that recognised First Nations peoples as the traditional owners of the land.

Source 9 An Australian stamp, *c*. 2013, recognises the work of activist Eddie Koiki Mabo, a Meriam man from the Torres Strait Islands who brought a legal action challenging the principle of *Terra Nullius*.

Additionally, when the Australian Constitution was drafted in the late 1800s, it reflected the widespread prejudices that existed against First Nations peoples at the time. For example, the Constitution originally contained a clause that specifically prohibited the Commonwealth Parliament from making laws for 'the aboriginal race'. This meant that the federal parliament could not make uniform laws that applied to, and for the benefit of, First Nations peoples. First Nations peoples were also not counted in the national **census**, which symbolised a blatant disrespect for these people and their cultures.

It took until 1962 – 60 years after non-Indigenous women were granted the democratic right to vote in Australia – for all First Nations peoples to be given the right to vote, following sustained campaigns by First Nation peoples for this right. Furthermore, it was not until 1967 that a successful **referendum** led to a change in the Australian Constitution that allowed the Commonwealth Parliament to make laws with regard to First Nations peoples, and to include First Nations peoples in the national census. First Nations peoples were counted in the national census for the first time in 1971.

Terra Nullius
a Latin expression meaning 'land belonging to no one'; a principle used by British colonists to justify the occupation of Australia without treaty or payment

Quiz me!
A quick quiz on international and national influences on systems of government

census
a 'head count' or audit of the number of people living in a particular place at a particular time

referendum
the method for changing the wording of the Australian Constitution; it requires a proposal for change to be approved by the Australian people in a compulsory public vote

Legal and political changes since 1967

Since the 1967 referendum, other significant events and changes in the law have taken place, although relatively slowly, to increase the rights of First Nations peoples and improve democracy in Australia. These include:

- the 1973 abolition of the **White Australia Policy** and the subsequent introduction of a policy of **self-determination** for First Nations peoples, who were given the limited right to 'cultural and linguistic management of natural resources on Aboriginal land'
- the 1987 Royal Commission into Aboriginal Deaths in Custody, which highlighted the alarmingly high proportion and death rate of First Nations people in Australian prisons
- the 1992 High Court of Australia *Mabo* decision that recognised First Nations peoples as the traditional owners of the land
- the 1997 *Bringing Them Home* report by the Australian Human Right Commission, which detailed the forced removal of First Nations children or the **Stolen Generations**
- the 2008 national apology, by Labor Prime Minister Kevin Rudd, to First Nations peoples for the discriminatory and unjust policies of past governments, including policies that led to the 'Stolen Generations'
- the 2019 establishment of a formal partnership agreement between the Commonwealth, state/territory and local governments and over 50 First Nations organisations to enable these bodies to work together to develop a national strategy for reducing the inequality experienced by First Nations peoples – called the *National Agreement on Closing the Gap*.

White Australia Policy
a series of government policies introduced after Federation in 1901 that prevented 'non-white' immigrants from settling in Australia, instead favouring those from certain European nations (especially Britain)

self-determination
the right of the people in a particular place to choose the form of government they will put in place and the course of action they will take

Stolen Generations
First Nations children who were forcibly removed from their families by government officials and church Missions in Australia and raised by white Australians

While these changes have aimed to improve the rights of First Nations peoples, much more needs to be done to raise the living standards in Australia's First Nations communities and acknowledge the importance of Australia's Aboriginal heritage. Perhaps the next major step in evolving our democracy will be to alter the Constitution to include a formal acknowledgment of Aboriginal and Torres Strait Islander peoples as First Nations peoples and original inhabitants of the land. This recognition would help continue the process of **reconciliation** between First Nations peoples and the wider Australian community, and increase awareness and acknowledgment of First Nations rights, cultures, languages and heritage.

Source 10 While the formal acknowledgment of First Nations peoples in the Australian Constitution would be a symbolic step towards reconciliation, there is much more to be done in ensuring equality for Australia's First Nations peoples.

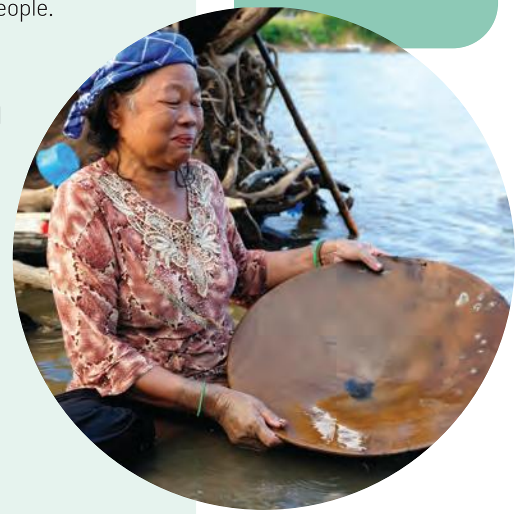
CASE STUDY

Political and legal experiences of the Indigenous peoples of Indonesia

In the 1600s Indonesia came under the control of Dutch merchants, who wanted to profit from the rich natural resources of the area. During hundreds of years of Dutch colonisation, the Indonesian population were brutally exploited as a source of manual labour. The Dutch ruled Indonesia until Japan invaded during World War II. When Japan surrendered in 1945, Indonesia declared its independence.

Indonesia is a very diverse country with hundreds of ethnic groups. Under General Suharto, the government of Indonesia rejected the concept of Indigenous peoples, arguing that most Indonesians had ancestors from the region. Today, Indonesia's government only recognises certain Indigenous communities, who are typically geographically isolated from the rest of the population. Indigenous peoples in Indonesia experience marginalisation and discrimination and are underrepresented politically and socially. Indigenous peoples have less access to education and healthcare and are more likely to experience violent crimes.

Source 11 A Dayak woman working in Borneo, Indonesia; Dayak people are the Indigenous peoples of Borneo. There are many different language and cultural groups between Dayak people.



Freedom from violence and access to cultural education are among the main goals of Indigenous activist groups who want to protect their communities and keep their traditional way of life alive. Much of the ancestral land of Indigenous peoples is around forests, and these groups work hard to protect the area from logging and development that would endanger the environment. The Indonesian Constitution gives Indigenous peoples and tribes the right to live traditionally but does not guarantee the use of their customary lands. While there are laws in place that recognise customary lands and require permits to use the land, these permits are given by local governors, meaning that the land is still beyond the control of Indigenous peoples.

reconciliation
the bringing together of First Nations and non-Indigenous Australians; it involves working to overcome past divisions and address inequalities between First Nations and non-Indigenous Australians

15.5 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 **State** the principle that the *Mabo* decision overturned.

2 **Identify** two changes that have taken place since 1967 to improve the legal rights of First Nations peoples in Australia.

Comprehend

3 **Describe** how the global COVID-19 pandemic impacted upon basic democratic freedoms in Australia.

4 **Describe** the effect of the Black Lives Matter protests on Australia.

Analyse

5 Using a table or Venn diagram, **compare** the experiences of First Nations peoples in Australia and Indigenous peoples in Indonesia by identifying any similarities and differences between these experiences.

6 In pairs, **reflect on** the cultural influences which shape Australia's political system. List as many influences as you can.

Apply

7 Go online to **investigate** the experiences of Indigenous peoples in another Asian nation (such as the Ainu people in Japan, or the Veddas people in Sri Lanka) and how they engage with the political system of their countries. Use dot points to summarise your research.

8 a **Create** a timeline that summarises the significant events and changes in the law that have taken place since the 1967 referendum to increase the rights of First Nations peoples in Australia.

b Research one of the changes in the law identified on your timeline. **Discuss** whether the change has been successful in improving the rights or living standards of First Nations peoples.

15B SKILLS IN CONTEXT

Test me!
Once you've finished the topics in this section, test yourself with this quiz and find out which worksheet you should do.

Australia's international obligations to First Nations peoples

The colonisation of Australia by the British from 1788 onwards was the beginning of severe and devastating problems for First Nations peoples, the effects of which are still being seen today. For example, First Nations peoples have lower life expectancy, higher child mortality rates and higher unemployment rates compared to non-Indigenous people in Australia.

Government policy in relation to First Nations peoples has been fraught with difficulties in the past. While there may have been some good intentions behind these policies, there has been a failure to properly work in partnership with First Nations peoples in deciding policy that affects them.

Does Australia meet its international obligations?

The United Nations Declaration on the Rights of Indigenous Peoples (UNDRIP) was adopted by the United Nations General Assembly in 2007. Australia was one of four countries who voted against adopting this legislation, but since 2009 it has supported the Declaration. The Declaration provides a universal framework of standards for the survival, dignity and wellbeing of the Indigenous peoples of the world. It is also significant because many Indigenous and First Nations peoples, including Aboriginal and Torres Strait Islander peoples, were involved in its drafting.

Australia is regularly criticised by international organisations (including the UN) for its treatment of First Nations peoples. For example, in 2021, the UN Human Rights Council (see page 521) criticised Australia for failing to address racism and the treatment of First Nations peoples in the criminal justice system (including the overrepresentation of First Nations adults and youth in the prison system and deaths in custody). Unlike countries such as New Zealand, Canada and the United States, in Australia there are no signed treaties between First Nations peoples and the federal Australian government. While countries such as Norway and Bolivia recognise the Indigenous peoples of those countries in their Constitutions, in Australia our Constitution does not currently recognise First Nations peoples.

Source 12 Each year, First Nations and non-Indigenous Australians join demonstrations to demand improved rights and recognition for First Nations peoples in Australia.

KEY SKILL
Communicating

Creating and delivering an audiovisual presentation

Creating and delivering effective presentations is an important skill because you can practise talking in front of large groups of people – a task most of us are faced with at some stage in our lives. The following steps will help you avoid some of the pitfalls in creating and delivering a presentation, and increase the chances of the audience remembering and enjoying what you said:

Step 1 Plan and design your presentation:

- Plan your presentation carefully so it has a clear beginning, middle and end.
- Present the content in clear, concise bullet-point form, not as large slabs of text.
- Choose appropriate images.
- Remember that having objects and text moving on screen is distracting.
- Use a design that ensures your audience can clearly see and read the slides.

Step 2 Deliver your presentation:

- Do not simply stand up and read out the text on each slide. Plan what you will say to go with each slide. Record this on cue cards, and use these during your speech.
- One thing at a time! What is on the screen should be the thing you are talking about.
- Speak clearly – not too fast, not too slow. Vary your tone and pitch to make your presentation more interesting.
- Make eye contact with different members of your audience. Do not just look at your cue cards.

Practise the skill

1 Research, prepare and deliver an audiovisual presentation about Australia's international obligations to First Nations peoples. Your presentation should be based on relevant and reliable sources.

In your presentation, address the following:

a why First Nations peoples are a disadvantaged group within Australia

b positive steps in government policy affecting First Nations peoples

c an assessment of whether Australia meets its international obligations towards First Nations peoples.

Extend your understanding

1 As you listen to the presentations of your classmates, complete a peer assessment in the following form for each one.

Name of presenter:		
Topic of presentation:		
What are 3–5 things you learnt during this presentation?		
	PowerPoint design	Oral presentation
What is some 'warm' feedback you can give the presenter (positive/ achievements)?		
What is some 'cool' feedback you can give the presenter (constructive criticism)?		

15.6 Australia's regional role and responsibilities

Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» describe ways Australia participates in the Asia–Pacific region.

Australia is part of the geographical area known as the Asia–Pacific region (see Source 1). While definitions of the Asia–Pacific region vary, countries within or bordering on the Pacific Ocean are typically included as part of this region. Historically Australia has focused on its relationship with Europe (particularly Britain); however, Australia's prosperity and physical proximity to other countries in the Asia–Pacific region allow it to play a significant role in the region.

As a country in the Asia–Pacific region, the stability of this region is important to Australia's interests. Australia works cooperatively with other countries in the region on issues such as border management, climate and disaster resilience and economic growth. Australia contributes to the Asia–Pacific region through aid programs, membership to regional organisations and activities such as peacekeeping (see page 495).

Enlarged map
Asia–Pacific region

ASIA–PACIFIC REGION

Source 1 Source: Oxford University Press

Aid programs

In its 2021–22 budget, the Australian Government provided about $4 billion in overseas aid as Australian Official Development Assistance (ODA). This figure increased to $4.09 billion in the 2022–23 budget. Most of Australia's aid is spent on countries in the Asia–Pacific region, particularly Indonesia, Papua New Guinea and the small island nations in the Pacific (see Source 2). Aid is given to countries to improve the lives of those living in poverty and to make the countries in the Asia–Pacific region more stable. Not only does this aid help improve people's lives, it also supports Australia's economic and security interests by helping to build stronger, healthier countries in our region. Australia also gives aid to countries outside the Asia–Pacific region when there is a humanitarian disaster, such as famine or war. For example, the 2022–23 budget included $65 million for humanitarian assistance for civilians affected by the Russian invasion of Ukraine in 2022.

In 2021–22, Australia provided additional COVID-19 support to our close neighbours in the Asia–Pacific region, by supplying further aid, such as:

- $162 million for vaccinations throughout the Pacific and South-East Asia
- $100 million to address the impacts of COVID-19 in Timor-Leste
- $67 million for emergency medical supplies in India.

Membership to regional organisations

Membership in regional organisations, forums, partnerships or agreements helps Australia to remain integrated in the Asia–Pacific region. Regional organisations also help develop cooperative responses to important regional issues.

Australia became a member of the Asia–Pacific Economic Cooperation (APEC) when it was established in 1989. The goal of APEC is to support economic growth and prosperity throughout the Asia–Pacific region by promoting free trade. Since World War II, Australia has joined more than 20 regional organisations or agreements, including:

- Australia-India-Indonesia **Trilateral**: encourages discussion on regional maritime (sea) security and humanitarian and disaster relief efforts
- Pacific Island Forum (PIF): encourages cooperation between the governments of 16 Pacific island countries, Australia and New Zealand.

Source 2 Australian Official Development Assistance (ODA), 2022–23

Country	2022–23 budget estimate of ODA: AU$ (millions)
Papua New Guinea	596.2
Indonesia	299.3
Solomon Islands	161.1
Bangladesh	147.7
Timor-Leste (East Timor)	105.7
Burma	98.6
Fiji	85.6
Vanuatu	79.9
Vietnam	79
Philippines	78.5
Cambodia	67.9
Afghanistan	66.4
Samoa	42.5
Laos	40.3
Tonga	40.2
Kiribati	32.7
Nauru	32.3
Sri Lanka	22.7
Nepal	22
Tuvalu	13.8

Source: DFAT

trilateral
involving three parties

Quiz me!
A quick quiz on Australia's regional role and responsibilities

15.6 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 In your own words, **define** the Asia–Pacific region.

2 **Identify** the top five countries receiving ODA from Australia in 2022–23.

Comprehend

3 **Explain** why Australia provides aid to countries overseas, especially countries in the Asia–Pacific region.

4 **Summarise** why Australia is involved in regional organisations such as APEC.

Apply

5 Go online and investigate three additional regional organisations, forums, partnerships or agreements that Australia is involved in. For each regional organisation, forum, partnership or agreement, **identify:**
- the stated aim or goal of the organisation
- countries who are members
- when Australia joined the organisation.

6 In pairs, **propose** other ways in which Australia could contribute to the Asia–Pacific region.

15.7 Australia's role as a member of the United Nations

Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» understand Australia's role in the United Nations.

United Nations
an international organisation formed in 1945 with the aim of increasing political and economic cooperation among member countries

Key skill worksheet
Civic participation & decision making: Determining the UN's effectiveness

climate change
a change in global or regional climate patterns; in particular, a change attributed largely to the increased levels of atmospheric carbon dioxide produced by the use of fossil fuels

human rights
basic freedoms or standards that promote and uphold the dignity of all people and are guaranteed by a moral sense of duty or by the law

discriminated
when a person or group is treated unfavourably because of personal characteristics such as their age, race, disability, physical features or political beliefs

As a part of its commitment to ensuring global peace and development, Australia has been an active member of the **United Nations** (UN) since it was first established over 75 years ago. Throughout this time Australia has worked together with other nations to help maintain international peace and security, and improve the protection of universal human rights and living standards – both within Australia and abroad.

The United Nations

The UN is a global organisation that was created at the end of World War II. It was founded with the purpose of promoting international cooperation and addressing issues that affect the international community, which cannot be resolved by one nation acting alone. In other words, the UN attempts to deal with issues that transcend national borders. The UN aims to bring countries together to find solutions to issues that face all nations, such as **climate change**, global poverty and disease, and threats to human rights and international security.

Source 3 The UN headquarters in New York are built on international land owned by the people of the world. The UN has its own flag, showing a map of the world encircled by olive branches, which are a symbol of peace. The UN also has its own postage stamp.

There are 193 nations that are a part of the UN. These nations are referred to as UN Member States.

The UN has four main purposes:

1 maintaining international peace and security in the world
2 creating and developing friendship between nations
3 helping nations work together to solve major problems (for example, global poverty and disease, income inequality and climate change) and promote **human rights** (for example, the right to life, the right to freedom of religion, and the right to not be **discriminated** against on the basis of gender, race, religion, sexual orientation or disability)
4 providing a central meeting place where nations can come together to discuss and achieve the aims mentioned above.

The Sustainable Development Goals (2015–2030)

While governments around the world aim to make laws that benefit the citizens in their own country and promote their own national interests, they must also consider the impact of their actions on other countries. In addition, individual nations often need to work together to address shared problems that affect the entire world.

Source 4 The Sustainable Development Goals (SDGs)

In 2015, each of the UN Member States, including Australia, promised to take action to end global poverty, protect the global environment and improve the lives of all citizens throughout the world. To do so, the Member States, agreed to adopt or take action to promote the achievement of 17 **Sustainable Development Goals (SDGs)** by 2030 (see Source 4).

Sustainable Development Goals (SDGs)
a set of 17 goals developed by the UN in 2015 that are designed to end poverty, protect the Earth from unsustainable development, and improve the wellbeing of all people by 2030

Weblink
UN Sustainable Development Goals

Weblink
UN International Days and Weeks

Quiz me!
A quick quiz on Australia's role as a member of the United Nations

Australia's role

Australia was one of the first 51 countries to become a member of the UN when it started in 1945. Due to our relatively small population size, we are not considered a powerful nation by world standards; however, we do play a major role in the UN. For example, Australia is the twelfth-largest financial contributor to the UN and plays an important role in the UN's peacekeeping activities.

In addition, membership of the UN allows Australia to have a voice in international affairs and play a role in promoting stability and human rights throughout the world. UN membership also helps Australia protect its own economic and security interests.

15.7 Check your learning

Comprehend

1 **Describe** the main purpose of the UN.

Analyse

2 **Identify** four groups of people that might benefit from the work of the UN.

3 **Consider** why membership of the UN is beneficial for Australia.

Apply

4 The SDGs are a universal 'call to action' to help create a more just world by addressing 17 important global issues.
   a Go to the SDG website (a link is provided on your obook pro) and **investigate** five different SDGs. For each goal:
      - Put forward reasons why this goal is important to achieve. Provide some statistics to support your view.
      - Explain how Australia might be able to help achieve this goal.
   b **Create** a poster that illustrates your five chosen goals. Present your findings to the class.

5 The UN has named certain days and weeks to be observed as international days and weeks. Go to the UN website (a link is provided on your obook pro) and choose a day or week in the upcoming months that you are interested in. Research the issue and devise a way to create awareness of the day or week within your school. You could do one of the following:
   - write a paragraph for the school newsletter or daily bulletin
   - make an announcement to the school
   - create a symbol for the day or week that will spark curiosity, or a slideshow that can be projected onto a wall as students enter a common room.

15.8 Australia's international role and responsibilities

Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» describe the main ways Australia upholds its international role and responsibilities.

humanitarian crises
events that cause, or threaten to cause, significant harm and suffering to a community or nation; e.g. armed conflicts, global pandemics and natural disasters

alliances
agreements between one or more nations or organisations to work together to achieve a common or mutual interest

Commonwealth of Nations
a group of 54 nations that are, or used to be, ruled or governed by the United Kingdom; the head of the Commonwealth is the Queen or King of England

rule of law
the principle that everyone in society is bound by law and must obey the law, and that laws should be fair and clear, so people are willing and able to obey them

As the world become increasingly interconnected, it is essential that nations work together to resolve common global issues. As a member of the international community and one of the world's wealthiest nations, Australia has a role to play. Our responsibilities include helping to maintain global peace and security, strengthen human rights, protect the environment, improve global living standards and respond to **humanitarian crises**.

Maintaining global peace and security

Australia works with a number of countries and organisations to help promote peace and security, both within our Asian–Pacific region and throughout the world. For example, over the years the Australian Government has entered into a variety of military and defence **alliances** with other countries to ensure the security of our nation. These include alliances with the United States, New Zealand, Indonesia, Japan, Malaysia and Papua New Guinea.

Australia is also a member of a number of organisations that work to maintain global security, including the UN and the **Commonwealth of Nations**.

Since 1947, Australia has been involved in over 60 UN peacekeeping operations. The main aim of these operations is to assist countries that have been involved in conflict to achieve lasting peace. UN peacekeeping operations achieve this by:

- maintaining peace and security in a region
- protecting civilians (that is, those who are not on active duty with the military, navy, police or firefighting organisations)
- overseeing elections to ensure they are free and fair
- disarming those who were involved in fighting; for example, controlling and disposing of weapons
- protecting and promoting human rights
- restoring the **rule of law** to a region, so that legal institutions – including the government, police, courts and prisons – are strengthened and accountable for their actions.

Source 5 Australian peacekeeping soldiers patrol a street in the Solomon Islands. Australia's Regional Assistance Mission to the Solomon Islands ran from 2003 to 2017.

The three basic principles that guide UN peacekeeping are:

- *the consent of parties* – in simple terms, this means the main parties to the conflict must agree to the UN peacekeeping operation taking place
- *impartiality* – UN peacekeepers must remain independent and unbiased when dealing with the parties involved in the conflict
- *the use of force as a measure of last resort* – UN peacekeepers can only use force (such as military force or weapons) in very limited circumstances; for example, when it is the only option available to protect themselves and/or civilians from physical harm or attack, assist authorities to maintain law and order, or deter a party from disrupting political processes, such as elections.

Key skill worksheet
Questioning & researching: Investigating Australian peacekeeping

CASE STUDY

Why does the world's youngest nation need our help?

South Sudan became a nation in 2011. Since 2013, it has experienced a civil war, with fighting taking place between seven armed groups within the country. Around 1.5 million people have been displaced due to war, and thousands more have been killed. There have been massacres of civilians in hospitals and churches, with bodies being dumped in mass graves. South Sudan also experiences food insecurity, which means that its people do not always have access to safe, nutritious food. As a result, hunger and starvation are widespread and growing.

Australia is involved in the UN's peacekeeping mission in South Sudan. This mission involves protecting civilians and delivering humanitarian assistance, such as providing food and setting up camps for those who have been forced to leave their homes. Support is also provided to help establish rule of law in South Sudan and to assist in the economic development of the nation. Australia does this by deploying Australian Defence Force personnel to the region.

Since 2013, Australia has provided South Sudan with approximately $113 million for humanitarian assistance.

Source 6 In 2019, the Australian military helped transport Vietnamese peacekeepers from Hanoi to South Sudan.

humanitarian
concerned with or seeking to promote the welfare of humans

Strengthening human rights

Australia is committed to promoting and strengthening human rights both within Australia and around the world. Human rights are basic freedoms or standards that promote and uphold the dignity of all people. They are guaranteed by a moral sense of duty or by the law. Human rights belong to all human beings regardless of their nationality, place of residence, gender, ethnic origin, sexual orientation, religion or any other status.

As one of the founding members of the UN, Australia was involved in drafting the Universal Declaration of Human Rights (1948) following the end of World War II. This declaration sets out most of the basic human rights that all nations and governments, including Australia, should strive to promote and uphold. It is considered to be the basis of international human rights law.

Different types of human rights

Some of the rights in the Universal Declaration of Human Rights are:

- all people are born free and equal
- everyone is entitled to the same rights and freedoms
- everyone has the right to life
- no one should be subject to torture or slavery
- everyone is equal before the law
- no one should be subject to randomly being arrested, detained or exiled
- everyone has the right to be presumed innocent until proven guilty
- a person has the right to seek and be given **asylum** in another country.

Quiz me!
A quick quiz on Australia's international role and responsibilities

asylum
protection or shelter provided by a nation to a person who has been forced to leave their home country due to conflict or political unrest

Australia has also committed to seven international human rights agreements. Two of these elaborate on the principles established in the Universal Declaration of Human Rights and are legally enforceable in Australia. They are:

- the International Covenant on Civil and Political Rights (ICCPR) which includes, among many rights, the right to life, freedom of religion, freedom of speech and freedom of assembly, the right to vote, and the right to a fair trial
- the International Covenant on Economic, Social and Cultural Rights (ICESCR) which includes, among many rights, the right to equal pay, the right to health and education, and the right to an adequate standard of living.

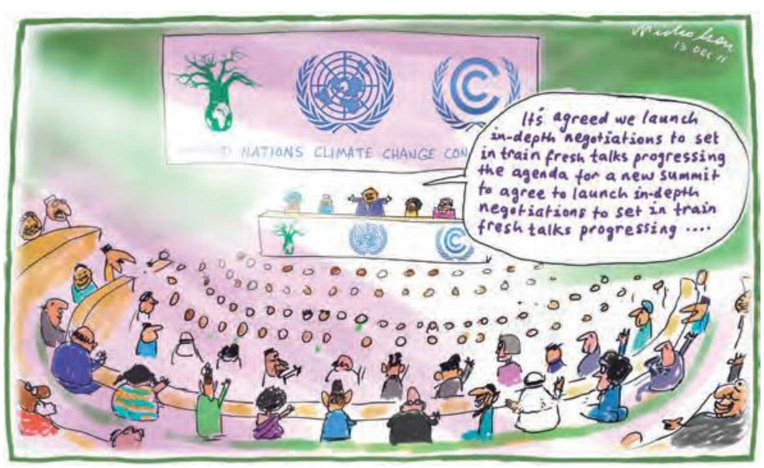
Protecting the environment

Australia has been involved in many international agreements that serve to protect the environment. Perhaps the most important area of environmental protection is dealing with climate change. Australia has a national and international responsibility to reduce its environmentally harmful **greenhouse gas** emissions to avert the effects of climate change.

greenhouse gas
a gas, such as carbon dioxide, that absorbs radiation from the sun's rays, trapping heat in the Earth's atmosphere

In 2016 Australia became a party to the Paris Agreement, which is an agreement within the UN Framework Convention on Climate Change, whose members commit to reducing greenhouse gas emissions. The objective of the agreement is to limit 'the increase in the global average temperature to well below 2°C above [pre-Industrial Revolution] levels'. To achieve this long-term goal, the countries that signed aim to reduce greenhouse gas emissions as soon as possible. Australia committed to reducing greenhouse gas emissions by between 26 and 28 per cent below 2005 levels by 2030.

In 2022, Australia made a further commitment to reduce greenhouse gas emissions by 43 per cent below 2005 levels by 2030. Australia has previously been criticised for its failure to follow through on the Paris Agreement. While the Australian Government has previously been condemned for failing to commit to a 'zero emissions' target and for continuing to support the coal industry – one of Australia's major contributors to greenhouse gas emissions – as of 2021, Australia is formally committed to net zero emissions by 2050 through the Paris Agreement.



Source 7 Pressure is mounting on the international community to seriously consider climate change and commit to emissions-reduction targets for the future. Many believe the international community needs to turn talk into action.

Improving global living standards and responding to humanitarian crises

Over the years, Australia has undertaken a range of actions to improve global living standards and has provided assistance to many countries that have experienced humanitarian crises. For example, Australia has a humanitarian strategy that outlines how we respond to international humanitarian crises and, as a member of the UN, is committed to assisting the achievement of the 17 UN Sustainable Development Goals by 2030 (see page 493).

foreign aid
assistance in the form of money, skills, goods and services transferred from one country to another, mainly for humanitarian reasons

One way Australia can help other nations improve their living standards is by providing **foreign aid**. Foreign aid may be given to help alleviate poverty and assist a community to develop a better standard of living; for example, to help build schools, roads or water infrastructure. It can also be used to provide food aid and medical care. Foreign aid may be offered by one country to another that is experiencing a humanitarian crisis which threatens the health and safety of its community.

For example, following the volcanic eruption and tsunami in Tonga in early 2022, Australia coordinated the delivery of humanitarian supplies for disaster release. In addition to the Australia ODA allocated to Tonga, Australia provided a surveillance flight to assess the damage.

Source 8 Australia gives foreign aid in many forms, mostly to countries in need within our region.

15.8 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 In your own words, **define** 'humanitarian crisis'.

2 **State** two international human rights agreements that Australia is party to.

Comprehend

3 **Explain** why some countries need foreign aid.

4 **Explain** why South Sudan requires help from the international community.

Apply

5 Imagine you are involved in a peacekeeping operation. **Predict** what dangers you might face as you carry out your work.

6 **Determine** (decide) why it is important that all countries agree on greenhouse gas emissions-reduction targets. What problems might arise if no agreements are reached?

7 Using the internet, research:
   a three recent examples of Australia providing foreign aid
   b where Australia is ranked in terms of providing international foreign aid. Do you think Australia gives enough foreign aid compared to other countries? Why do you think this?

8 Form small groups. Imagine the Australian Government is willing to provide assistance to help one other nation that is facing a humanitarian crisis or needs to improve its living standards. Your group has been employed to decide which nation should receive the assistance and what type of assistance it should receive. You must **justify** (give reasons for) your choice.

15C SKILLS IN CONTEXT

Test me!
Once you've finished the topics in this section, test yourself with this quiz and find out which worksheet you should do.

Australia's treatment of asylum seekers

Australia has international obligations to refugees and asylum seekers. A refugee is a person who has been recognised under international law as having been forced to flee their country due to war, persecution or natural disaster, and who cannot safely return under the existing conditions. Refugees have asked governments in different countries for protection and have been granted it.

By contrast, an asylum seeker is a person who has been forced to flee their country due to war, persecution or natural disaster, but whose claim for refugee status has not been determined. In other words, an asylum seeker has asked another country for protection, but is waiting for their claim as a refugee to be processed. If this claim is not granted, the asylum seeker will be returned to their country of origin.

Perspectives on asylum seekers

Source 10

My name is Najeeba Wazefadost, and 12 years ago I risked my life on a dangerous journey. I escaped my country Afghanistan and came to Australia by boat … Afghanistan has been in a state of war for many decades, a war that has left little evidence of justice, humanity and peace for its people. Even now, villages are frequently attacked and there is continuous persecution of minorities.

Najeeba Wazefadost (refugee from Afghanistan)

Source 11

These people just see that Australia is open for business. It's hotel Australia, the red carpet is laid out and there's no attempt to contain any of this. Border security does not exist.

Alan Jones (radio broadcaster) commenting on the arrival of 66 Sri Lankan asylum seekers in 2013

Source 12

If you pay a people-smuggler, if you jump the queue, if you take yourself and your family on a leaky boat, that's doing the wrong thing, not the right thing, and we shouldn't encourage it. We will stop these boats in any test of will between the Australian government and the people-smugglers. We will and we must prevail.

Tony Abbott (former Prime Minister of Australia)

Source 9 For more than a decade, asylum seekers who arrive in Australia have been sent to Nauru or Papua New Guinea and held in detention while their claim for refugee status is processed. There is no time limit. As a result, many people have been held in detention for years.

KEY SKILL
Analysis, evaluation & interpretation

Recognising and considering multiple perspectives

A person's perspective is their point of view – the position from which they see and understand events going on in the world around them. People often have different points of view about particular events or issues depending on their age, gender, social position and beliefs or values. Looking at multiple perspectives can help you understand an issue in greater depth.

Follow these steps to practise the skill of identifying multiple perspectives:

Step 1 Identify a civics and citizenship issue about which there may be different opinions.

Step 2 List the various groups and/or people who may have been involved in or affected by this issue.

Step 3 Identify the role or position of these groups/people in society.

Step 4 Locate sources that provide evidence about the point of view these view these groups/people had on the issue.

Step 5 Analyse each source, using the following questions as a guide:

- Why was the source written or produced?
- Who was the intended audience of the source? Was it meant for one person's eyes, or for the public? How does that affect the source?

Source 13 Asylum seekers who arrived in Australia by boat risked their lives to get here.

- What was the author's message or argument? What ideas were they trying to get across? Is the message explicit (obvious), or are there implicit (subtle) messages as well? What can the author's choice of words tell you? What about the silences – what does the author choose *not* to talk about?
- How does the author try to convey the message? For example, do they give a detached, balanced account, or is it biased for or against the issue?
- Compared to what we face today, what relevant circumstances and experiences were different for the author of the source in the past? (Some examples might include religion, economy, family life and technology.) How do you think these factors and experiences influenced their thoughts and actions?

For more information on this skill, refer to page 460 of 'The civics and citizenship toolkit'.

Practise the skill

1 **Identify** as many different groups/people as you can who are involved in or affected by travelling by boat to Australia in order to seek asylum.

2 **Describe** the roles or positions that these groups/people hold in society.

3 Consider Sources 10 to 12. Identify and **analyse** the perspectives portrayed in each of these sources, using the process outlined in step 5 above.

4 Now that you have considered multiple perspectives, what is your opinion of how Australia treats asylum seekers who arrive by boat without a visa? **Justify** (give reasons for) your response.

Extend your understanding

1 **Investigate** the Australian Government's 'enhanced screening process' for asylum seekers who arrive by boat. Explain what it is and whether it may violate our international human rights obligations.

2 Go online and locate the latest data of 'People at risk' in Australia according to the Rights Tracker created by the Human Rights Measurement Initiative (HRMI). **Identify** which rights are most as risk for refugees and asylum seekers.

15 CHAPTER REVIEW

Review activity

Read the information about the threats from climate change to Tuvalu, and then answer the questions that follow.

Tuvalu and climate change

Tuvalu is a small country in the South Pacific Ocean. It consists of nine islands and has a population of only about 11 000 people. Tuvalu is also one of the least-developed countries in the world. The total value of goods and services (referred to as the Gross Domestic Product, or GDP) produced in Tuvalu in 2021 was the equivalent of approximately US$5200 per capita (per person), compared to Australia's GDP of approximately US$59 000 per capita.

Climate change is having a devastating effect on this tiny nation. Increasing global temperatures are causing rising sea levels and extreme weather events that are damaging the fishing and agricultural industries in Tuvalu and destroying coastal villages. In fact, as the average height of the islands in Tuvalu is less than 2 metres above sea level, scientists have suggested the entire country may disappear within 80–100 years.

In August 2019, leaders of Pacific nations, including Australia's then-Prime Minister, Scott Morrison, met at the Pacific Islands Forum, held in Tuvalu, to discuss issues that affect the security, development and wellbeing of their nations. During the conference, the Prime Minister of Tuvalu, Enele Sopoaga, made a plea for all countries around the world – particularly those in the Pacific region – to take action against climate change. This includes specifically banning the building of more coal mines, and moving towards the use of more sustainable and renewable energy in an attempt to secure the survival of Tuvalu and other small Pacific nations.

Morrison announced that the Australian Government would provide $500 million between 2020 and 2025 to help Pacific nations invest in renewable energy and undertake building works to ensure that essential services – such as roads, hospitals and schools – were strong enough to withstand extreme weather events. However, his government did not commit to reducing Australia's coal production or further reductions to Australia's greenhouse gas emissions. Coal is an important source of fuel and income for Australia.

1. **Describe** the negative impacts that climate change is having on Tuvalu. (2 marks)
2. **Summarise** what action the government of Tuvalu wanted the Australian Government to take to help resolve the issues facing its country as a result of climate change. (3 marks)
3. In your own words, **define** the term 'foreign aid'. (1 mark)
4. **Determine** (decide) the appropriateness of the Australian Government's response to Tuvalu's plea for assistance. (4 marks)
5. 'Relatively wealthy nations, such as Australia, should be required to help other smaller and/or developing nations, such as Tuvalu, resolve the issues facing their nation.' In a short paragraph, **discuss** this statement, and explain your position. (10 marks)

(Total: 20 marks)

Source 14 An aerial view of Tuvalu

Chapter checklist

Now that you have completed this chapter, reflect on your ability to do the following:

	I can do this.	I cannot do this yet.
Summarise the role of the government in Australia.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 15.1, page 466.
Describe the key principles of Australia's system of government.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 15.2, page 468.
Describe the structure and role of Australia's Commonwealth Parliament.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 15.3, page 472.
Summarise the key features of Indonesia's system of government. Compare Indonesia's system of government with that of Australia.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 15.4, page 480.
Identify international influences on Australia's system of government. Summarise how First Nations people in Australia have engaged with Australia's legal and political system since 1788.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 15.5, page 484.
Describe ways Australia participates in the Asia–Pacific region.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 15.6, page 490.
Understand Australia's role in the United Nations.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 15.7, page 492.
Describe the main ways Australia upholds its international role and responsibilities.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 15.8, page 494.

Check your Student obook pro for these digital resources and more:

Student book questions
Chapter 15

Key skill worksheet
Communicating:
Chapter 15

Quizlet
Play a game of Quizlet on Australia's democracy and the global context.

Chapter review quiz
Chapter 15

CHAPTER 16

Rights in Australia and Australia's international legal obligations

Rights are basic freedoms or standards that promote and uphold the dignity of all people. In Australia, our rights are acknowledged and protected by a range of laws, including the Australian Constitution, laws made by the Australian Commonwealth, state and territory parliaments, and laws made by the Australian courts. Australia's commitment to the protection of rights is also influenced by international treaties and declarations.

Source 1 The High Court of Australia was established by the Australian Constitution in 1901. The High Court is the only court in Australia with the powers to interpret the Australian Constitution, and plays a role in protecting express and implied rights.

16A
How are rights protected in Australia?

16B
How do Australia's international legal obligations shape our laws and government policies?

16.1 Rights in Australia

Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» describe the role of Commonwealth, state and territory parliaments in protecting rights.

right
a moral or legal entitlement to have or do something

discrimination
the unfavourable treatment of a person based on a certain attribute (e.g. age, gender, disability, ethnicity, religion or gender identity)

statute law
law made by parliament; also known as Acts of Parliament or legislation (as opposed to common law)

common law
law made by judges through decisions made in cases; also known as case law or judge-made law (as opposed to statute law)

express rights
rights that are stated (i.e. explicitly written) in the Australian Constitution and can only be removed by a referendum (or compulsory public vote)

implied rights
rights that are not expressly stated in the Australian Constitution but are considered to exist through interpretation by the High Court

legislation
law made by the parliament; also known as Acts of Parliament or statute law (as opposed to common law made by the courts)

A **right** is a moral or legal entitlement to have or do something. Rights protect basic freedoms. In democratic societies, these basic freedoms generally include:

- the right to life
- the right to access clean water, food and shelter
- freedom from slavery, cruel punishment and **discrimination**
- freedom of speech and religion
- the right to a fair and unbiased legal system
- the right to vote.

In Australia, our rights are acknowledged and protected by a range of laws, including the Australian Constitution, laws made by the Australian Commonwealth, state and territory parliaments (**statute law**) and laws made by the Australian courts (**common law**). In fact, one of the main roles of the Commonwealth, state and territory parliaments is to make laws to ensure the wellbeing and protection of all Australians. Similarly, one of the aims of the Australian legal system is to protect the rights of the Australian people.

How rights are protected in Australia

The rights of Australian citizens are protected by a range of laws, including the Australian Constitution, statute law and common law.

The Australian Constitution

While the main role of the Australian Constitution is to set out how Australia is to be governed, it also protects a limited number of rights. For example, the Australian Constitution guarantees five **express rights** of the Australian people, which are specifically written in the Constitution. These rights will be discussed in topic 16.2. Additionally, the High Court of Australia, which has the power to resolve disputes over the meaning of the Australian Constitution, can rule that the words and phrases in the Constitution imply or suggest rights (known as **implied rights**) even though they are not expressly stated. When resolving disputes over the meaning of the Constitution, the High Court can also declare Commonwealth law to have been made in breach of the Constitution (i.e. unconstitutional) and invalid. This will be discussed in more detail in topic 16.3.

Statute law

Most rights in Australia are recognised and protected by **legislation** or laws passed by the Commonwealth, state and territory parliaments. The Commonwealth Parliament has the power to pass legislation that applies to and protects the rights of all Australians. Each state and territory parliament has the power to pass laws that protect the rights of the residents of that state or territory. For example, the Commonwealth Parliament passed the *Commonwealth Electoral Act 1918* to protect the rights of Australian citizens to vote in federal elections, while the state and territory parliaments have passed their own electoral acts to set out voting procedures and arrangements for state and territory elections. Source 1 provides examples of specific Commonwealth, state and territory legislation that protects certain rights.

Source 1 Examples of two types of rights protected by specific Commonwealth, state and territory legislation

Type of rights	Examples of legislation that protects these rights	
	Commonwealth	State and territory
The right to security of person Many acts protect the right of Australian citizens to feel secure and safe.	• *Commonwealth Crime Code Act 1995* (Cth), which deals with crimes such as importing unlawful drugs, terrorism and people smuggling	• *Criminal Code Act 1899* (Qld) • *Criminal Law Consolidation Act 1935* (SA) • *Criminal Code Act 1983* (NT), which deals with crimes such as murder, assault and theft
The right to freedom from discrimination Many acts protect individuals from being discriminated against in areas such as the workplace, schools and sporting organisations.	• *Racial Discrimination Act 1975* (Cth) • *Disability Discrimination Act 1992* (Cth)	• *Anti-Discrimination Act 1991* (Qld) • *Anti-Discrimination Act 1998* (Tas) • *Discrimination Act 1991* (ACT)

Common law

In Australia, many rights are protected by common law – law that has been established and developed over the years through decisions made by judges in state, territory and federal courts. Judges can play a significant role in protecting rights when resolving disputes in which there has been an alleged breach of human rights. Judges also have an important role in interpreting the meaning of Commonwealth, state and territory legislation that protects human rights. When giving their decisions in human rights disputes (or possibly other kinds of disputes), judges may establish a legal principle (referred to as a **precedent**) that protects rights. Legal rights that are established in this way are referred to as **common law rights**. Over the years, Australian courts have enforced various rights in their judgments and precedents. These include the right to silence (the general right of an accused not to be required to answer police questions or give evidence during their trial) and the right to a fair trial.

precedent
a principle established in a legal case that is followed by courts in cases where the material facts are similar

common law rights
rights established by judges when making decisions to resolve disputes

What is a bill of rights?

A national charter, or **bill of rights**, is a formal document that lists and protects the most important rights and freedoms belonging to the citizens of a country. A charter or bill of rights can be either contained within a country's constitution (referred to as a 'constitutional charter or bill of rights') or passed as separate legislation (referred to as a 'statutory charter or bill of rights'). While Australia, like every other Western democracy, mainly protects the rights of its citizens through a range of federal and state laws and the court system, it is the only Western democracy in the world that does not have a national charter or bill of rights.

bill of rights
also known as a charter of rights; a formal document that lists and protects the most important rights and freedoms belonging to the citizens of a country

Quiz me!
A quick quiz on rights in Australia

16.1 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 **State** three freedoms that are generally included in democratic societies.

Comprehend

2 **Summarise** the three main ways in which rights are protected in Australia.

Analyse

3 **Distinguish** between the ways in which statute law and common law protect rights in Australia.

Apply

4 In other Western democracies, rights are protected by a bill of rights; for example, the United States has a constitutional bill of rights and New Zealand has a statutory bill of rights. Using the internet, **investigate** how a constitutional bill of rights operates and how a statutory bill of rights operates. List your findings and highlight any similarities or differences.

16.2 The Australian Constitution

Learning intentions

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

- summarise the purpose of the Australian Constitution
- explain the role of the Australian Constitution in protecting rights.

A **constitution** is a document that outlines the rules and principles that guide the way an organisation, state or nation is governed or managed. The **Australian Constitution** sets out the way in which Australia is governed. For example, it describes the role and law-making powers of the Commonwealth Parliament and outlines the role of the High Court of Australia.

constitution
a document that outlines the rules and principles that guide the way an organisation, state or nation is governed or managed

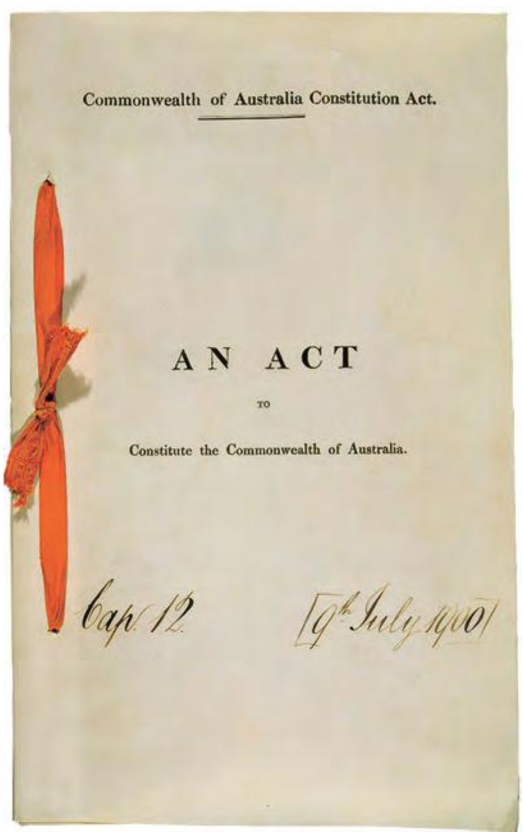
Australian Constitution
a set of rules and principles that guide the way Australia is governed

federation
a union or joining of independent states (or colonies) to create one central law-making authority

The purpose of the Australian Constitution

While First Nations peoples have lived in Australia for more than 65 000 years, the British began colonising Australia after their arrival in 1788. Between 1788 and 1901, the British established six colonies – New South Wales, Victoria, Queensland, Tasmania, South Australia and Western Australia – each with the power to make laws for their residents, while also being under the authority of the British Parliament.

By the late 1800s, problems began to arise due to the lack of consistent laws between the colonies and support grew for the idea of Australia becoming a **federation**. The colonies would become the states of Australia, and be united by one central (or federal) parliament. In the 1890s, representatives from each colony drafted the Australian Constitution to unite the colonies and establish Australia as an independent nation. After being approved by the voters in each colony and the British Parliament, the Australian Constitution came into operation on 1 January 1901.



Source 2 The Australian Constitution

The Australian Constitution established a federal system of government in Australia, where the new nation consisted of six states, each with the power to make laws for the residents of that state, and one Commonwealth parliament, with the power to make laws that apply to the entire country. The Constitution also:

- created and outlined the law-making powers of the Commonwealth Parliament
- created the High Court of Australia to resolve disputes over the meaning of the Constitution
- outlined and protected a small number of rights of the Australian people.

Source 3 Delegates from each of the colonies meeting in 1890 to discuss federation

The law-making powers of the Commonwealth parliament

The Commonwealth Parliament can only make laws in the areas specifically stated in the Constitution as belonging to the Commonwealth Parliament. These are referred to as specific areas of law-making power, or **specific powers**. Most of these are listed in section 51 of the Constitution. They include the power to make laws on:

- marriage and divorce
- currency (bank notes and coins)
- taxation (for example, the goods and services tax)
- social welfare benefits (for example, the age pension and unemployment benefits)
- trade and commerce (with other countries and between the states)
- defence (naval and military forces).

Any areas of law-making power that are *not* stated in the Constitution as specifically belonging to the Commonwealth Parliament belong solely to the state parliaments. These are referred to as **residual powers** and include the power to make laws on:

- adoption, surrogacy or IVF technology (which did not exist in 1901)
- childcare and education
- public transport
- water and electricity supply.

Source 4 Some areas in which the Commonwealth Parliament can make laws are those related to defence, currency and marriage.

specific powers
areas in which the Commonwealth Parliament has the power to make law, e.g. defence, currency, and marriage and divorce

residual powers
areas in which only the state parliaments can make law, e.g. law and order, education, health and public transport

Source 5 Types of specific law-making powers

Different types of law-making powers

Specific powers:

Areas of power listed in the Constitution that either rest with the Commonwealth Parliament (exclusive powers) or are shared between the Commonwealth and state parliaments (concurrent powers).
For example:
- currency (exclusive power)
- defence (exclusive power)
- taxation (concurrent power).

Residual powers:

Areas of power not listed in the Constitution that therefore solely rest with the state parliaments.
For example:
- childcare
- public transport
- water and electricity supply.

Types of specific powers

The specific powers of the Commonwealth Parliament that are outlined in the Constitution can be divided into two types: exclusive and concurrent powers.

Exclusive powers are those specific areas of law-making power in which only the Commonwealth Parliament can make law. For example, only the Commonwealth is able to make laws in the areas of currency and defence.

Concurrent powers are those specific areas of law-making power that are shared by both the Commonwealth and state parliaments. For example, both the Commonwealth and state parliaments can make laws on taxation, marriage, and census and statistics. If the state and Commonwealth Parliaments pass laws in concurrent areas of power that conflict, the Commonwealth's law prevails over – or overrides – the state law.

The role of the High Court

In addition to creating and outlining the powers of the Commonwealth Parliament, the Australian Constitution (in section 71) also created the High Court of Australia (our highest court) to interpret and apply Australian law and hear and resolve disputes involving the meaning of the Constitution or laws made by the Commonwealth Parliament. This will be discussed in more detail in topic 16.3. The High Court can also hear appeals from other federal, state and territory courts.

I used to think, now I think

Reflect on your learning about how the Australian Constitution protects the rights of the Australian people and complete the following sentences.
- I used to think ...
- Now I think ...

What has changed in your understanding?

Protection of express and implied rights

At the time the Australian Constitution was drafted, it was believed that rights would be adequately protected by common law and by elected parliaments with the ability to pass legislation to protect rights. As such, while the Australian Constitution establishes some basic rights for Australian citizens, it does not contain a charter or bill of rights which protects a comprehensive list of rights. The Australian Constitution protects the rights of the Australian people in two main ways, through:

- express rights, and
- implied rights.

Express rights

The Australian Constitution protects contains five express rights of the Australian people. These express rights are explicitly stated in the wording of the Constitution and can only be removed or altered with approval from the Australian people at a compulsory public vote called a **referendum**.

referendum
the method for changing the wording of the Australian Constitution, which requires any change to be approved by the Australian people at a compulsory public vote

Examples of express rights in the Australian Constitution are:

- the limited right to freedom of religion (section 116). This right exists because the Constitution prohibits the Commonwealth Parliament from making laws that establish a religion or that ban people from practising their religion.
- the right to not be discriminated against by the Commonwealth on the basis of the state in which you reside (section 117). This means, for example, that residents of Tasmania cannot be subject to a Commonwealth law that would treat them less favourably than people living in Queensland.
- the right to a trial by jury for indictable Commonwealth offences (section 80) – this right ensures that people who are charged with indictable (serious) Commonwealth offences (for example, terrorism offences) can have a trial by jury.
- the right to receive 'just terms' when property is acquired by the Commonwealth (section 51(xxxi)). This right ensures that the Commonwealth pays fair and reasonable compensation for any property that it compulsorily acquires (or gains).

Quiz me!
A quick quiz on the Australian Constitution

Implied rights

Implied rights are rights that are not expressly stated in the wording of the Australian Constitution but are considered to exist by the High Court's interpretation of the Constitution's meaning. The High Court can imply the existence of rights when resolving disputes between individuals and the state and Commonwealth parliaments over the meaning of the Constitution. This will be discussed in more detail in topic 16.3.

16.2 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 In your own words, **define** 'constitution'.

2 **Identify** why the Australian colonies agreed to become a united federal nation.

Comprehend

3 **Summarise** three of the main purposes of the Australian Constitution.

4 **Summarise** the relationship between the Australian Constitution and the High Court.

5 **Explain** the difference between express rights and implied rights.

Analyse

6 a **Distinguish** between specific and residual powers. Remember, when you distinguish between two things, you should talk about how they are different.

  b **Identify** three examples of each type of power.

7 **Propose** one reason why some specific areas of law-making power might have been designated as exclusive powers of the Commonwealth Parliament.

16.3 The role of the High Court in interpreting and applying the law

Learning intentions

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» describe the role of the High Court of Australia in interpreting the Australian Constitution

» summarise the role of the High Court in protecting rights in Australia.

The High Court of Australia was established by the Australian Constitution to interpret and apply the law of Australia. Like all courts in Australia, the High Court is independent of the parliament. This means judges (referred to as justices in the High Court) are free to interpret and apply the law, and resolve cases, independently and without influence from members of parliament or the government. The impartiality of judges helps protect citizens against the misuse of political power or corruption in the resolution of disputes.

The High Court is the only court in Australia that has the power to hear and resolve disputes that arise under the Australian Constitution or involve its interpretation. The Court also hears disputes involving laws made by the Commonwealth Parliament and legal issues of major public importance. Another important role of the High Court is to hear appeals from other federal, state and territory courts. Because it is the highest court in Australia, decisions of the High Court in **appeal** cases are final and legal principles established by the court must be followed by all other Australian courts.

appeal
an application to have a higher court review a ruling (i.e. a decision) made by a lower court

Resolving disputes by interpreting the Constitution

When resolving disputes over the meaning of the Constitution, the High Court can:

- keep the Constitution relevant
- check the law-making power of the parliament
- protect express and implied rights.

Source 6 A 'full bench' of seven judges (known as justices) sit in the High Court to hear disputes involving the interpretation of the Australian Constitution.

Keeping the Constitution relevant

While those who drafted the Australian Constitution took great time and care to make sure that it was clearly worded, it was necessary to describe some of the Commonwealth's law-making powers in rather broad or general terms, so that the Commonwealth Parliament would have the power to make laws in areas that were not actually in existence at the time. Over the years, the use of these broad terms has caused disputes, which the High Court has been called upon to resolve.

For example, the Constitution gives the Commonwealth Parliament the broad power to make laws with respect to 'postal, telegraphic, telephonic, and other like services'. But what are 'other like services'? What services that exist in the 2020s could be regarded as similar to the postal, telegraphic and telephonic services that existed in the 1900s when the Constitution was written? Would these services now include making laws about radio and television broadcasting, the internet, and wireless and satellite services?

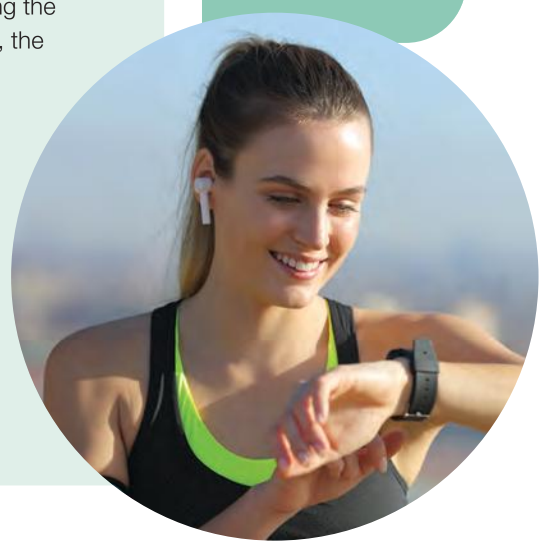
As illustrated in many cases, the High Court can help keep the Constitution relevant and up-to-date by interpreting the meaning of its words and phrases. For example, the High Court can allow, when appropriate, for new technologies to be included in the Commonwealth's law-making powers.

CASE STUDY

Interpreting the Constitution and keeping it relevant

In the cases of *R v Brislan (1935)* and *Jones v Commonwealth (1965)* the High Court was called upon to interpret the wording of the Australian Constitution. Seven justices of the High Court were required to interpret whether the Commonwealth Parliament's specific power to make laws with regard to 'postal, telegraphic, telephonic, and other like services' (as stated in section 51(v) of the Constitution) included the power to make laws on radio and television broadcasting, respectively.

In each case, the High Court broadly interpreted the phrase 'other like services' to include radio and television broadcasting; and in doing so, while not changing the actual wording of the Constitution, the High Court effectively expanded the Commonwealth's power to make laws in these areas of communication – which had not even been created when the Constitution was written.



Source 7 New technologies create many areas of law-making not foreseen by those who wrote the Australian Constitution in 1901.

Checking the law-making power of parliament

In a situation where an individual, organisation or government body believes the Commonwealth Parliament has made a law beyond its power (i.e. outside its law-making powers as stated in the Australian Constitution), they can challenge the validity or lawfulness of the Commonwealth's law in the High Court. When determining such cases, the High Court can act as an independent and impartial 'umpire' to check that the Commonwealth Parliament does not make law that exceeds its constitutional law-making power. In cases where the High Court decides the parliament has made law (legislation) beyond its constitutional power (referred to as ***ultra vires***) it can declare the legislation invalid.

ultra vires
a Latin term meaning 'beyond the powers'; a law made beyond (i.e. outside) the powers of the parliament

CASE STUDY

The High Court as 'umpire': Can the parliament control product packaging?

Source 8 The High Court has declared the Commonwealth's 'tobacco plain packaging' laws to be constitutionally valid.

Section 51(xxxi) of the Australian Constitution gives the Commonwealth Parliament the power to make laws to acquire (gain or possess) property provided this is done 'on just terms', meaning fairly. In other words, it gives the Commonwealth the power to gain property (including physical land and buildings, and intellectual property such as copyrights, trademarks and logos) provided the terms on which it does so are fair.

In 2011, the Commonwealth Parliament passed the *Tobacco Plain Packaging Act. This law* banned tobacco companies from using logos, brand images and promotional text on their tobacco products. It meant that all tobacco products sold in Australia needed to be presented in a plain package and contain specific health warnings.

The plain-packaging law was passed in an attempt to discourage smoking and reduce its harmful effects. However, a number of major tobacco companies – including British American Tobacco and Philip Morris – claimed that the Act breached the Australian Constitution by unfairly allowing the federal government to acquire or seize their intellectual property; that is, their trademarks, branding and logos. The companies challenged the validity of the new law in the High Court.

In 2012, the High Court declared the Commonwealth Parliament's law constitutionally valid. In simple terms, the High Court ruled that the federal government was not acquiring the use of the tobacco companies' intellectual property, but was simply restricting the way in which the tobacco companies could use their logos and trademarks.

CASE STUDY

Can the High Court protect the ability to vote?

Source 9 Vickie Lee Roach challenged Commonwealth legislation that banned prisoners from voting in elections. While imprisoned, Roach completed a master's degree in professional writing and commenced studies for a PhD.

In 2004, the Commonwealth Parliament passed a law that banned prisoners who were serving sentences longer than three years from voting in elections. Two years later, the Parliament extended this ban by passing another law (called the *Electoral and Referendum Amendment [Electoral Integrity and Other Measures] Act 2006*, to ban all prisoners from voting in elections. After the 2006 Act was passed, Vickie Lee Roach, an offender who was serving a six-year term of imprisonment, challenged the constitutional validity of both Acts in the High Court. She believed the Acts were invalid (unlawful) because they breached two sections of the Australian Constitution (sections 7 and 24) which state that the Commonwealth Parliament must be 'directly chosen by the people' and, therefore, protects the right of the people to elect the members of parliament.

In 2007, the High Court decided that the 2006 Act, which banned all prisoners from voting, was unconstitutional and invalid because it breached the right of the people to choose the members of parliament (as protected in sections 7 and 24 of the Constitution). Interestingly, however, the Court found the 2004 Act (which banned prisoners who were serving sentences longer than three years from voting) to be valid. The Court found that the Commonwealth Parliament should have the ability to restrict a person's right to vote if it is necessary to preserve representative government and a very good reason exists. For example, a person's right to vote could be removed for serious criminal misconduct (such as for prisoners serving a sentence of more than three years). As Roach was sentenced to a six-year term of imprisonment, she still did not have the right to vote after the High Court's decision.

Protecting express and implied rights

When resolving disputes over the meaning of the Australian Constitution, the High Court is able to interpret the Constitution and imply or infer that various rights of the Australian people exist – even though they are not expressly stated. Such rights are known as implied rights. For example, although the Constitution does not explicitly state that Australians have the right to freely discuss and debate political issues – referred to as **freedom of political communication** – in various cases throughout the years, the High Court has decided that this right is suggested or implied in the Constitution.

freedom of political communication
the right of Australians to exchange information or discuss political issues without fear of being charged and punished by the government

CASE STUDY

Can the High Court protect freedom of speech?

In the case of *Australian Capital Television Pty Ltd v Commonwealth* (1992), the High Court was required to resolve a dispute relating to freedom of speech. In simple terms, the court had to determine whether a Commonwealth law that banned political parties from making political broadcasts and placing advertising on radio and television during election campaigns breached the right of the Australian people to have 'freedom of speech' and the Australian Constitution.

The justices of the High Court decided that although the Australian Constitution does not specifically mention or protect the broad right to 'freedom of speech' in Australia, it does indirectly imply that Australians have the more narrow right to 'freedom of political communication'; that is, a right to freely discuss and debate political issues.

In making its decision, the High Court ruled that given the Constitution requires members of the Commonwealth Parliament to be 'chosen by the people', the people have a right to be informed about and discuss political issues. This means that political parties should be able to advertise and discuss their views and policies in a public forum (for example, on television or radio) prior to an election so that the people can make an informed decision when they are voting to elect the government.

In other words, the Constitution implies that people have a right to freedom of political communication.

Source 10 Political parties and their candidates are allowed to advertise their views before an election so that voters can make an informed choice when voting.

Any individual or organisation who believes an Act of Parliament is in breach of an express rights (as explicitly stated in the Australian Constitution) can challenge the validity of the legislation in the High Court. If the High Court decides the legislation does infringe on an express right, it can be declared invalid. In this way, the High Court can protect the express rights of the Australian people and check the law-making powers of the parliament.

Resolving disputes by interpreting legal principles and the common law

One of the main roles of the High Court is to interpret and apply Australian law to resolve important disputes, such as disputes involving the validity (or lawfulness) of state and Commonwealth law, and legal principles of major public importance. In cases where the High Court believes the states or Commonwealth parliaments have made a law beyond their law-making power, or in breach of Australian law, the Court can make a ruling to declare the law invalid. When resolving disputes, the High Court can also overrule (or cancel) legal principles or law made by other courts (i.e. common law) and establish new legal principles or law. Being the highest court in Australia, legal principles established by the High Court must be followed by all other Australian courts.

While, over the years, the High Court has resolved many important legal cases (and in doing so, interpreted and created many important legal principles or laws), one of its most well-known cases is *Mabo v Queensland (No 2)* (1992), referred to as the *Mabo* case. This case was very important because, in making its decision, the High Court overruled the long-standing but untrue legal principle that Australia was an 'empty land that belonged to no one' when it was colonised by the British in 1788. In doing so, the High Court created new legal principle or law that recognised traditional land rights of First Nations peoples, who had lived in Australia for tens of thousands of years before being deprived of their land following British colonisation.

Terra Nullius
a Latin expression meaning 'land belonging to no one'; a principle used by British colonists to justify the occupation of Australia without treaty or payment

native title
the right of First Nations peoples (Aboriginal and Torres Strait Islander peoples) to have ownership of land (property) based on having a spiritual, religious and cultural connection with the land

CASE STUDY

Can the High Court change legal principles or law?

Source 11 Eddie Mabo, whose successful High Court challenge saw the legal recognition of native title land rights for Aboriginal and Torres Strait Islander peoples (the First Nations peoples of Australia).

In 1982, five Torres Strait Islander people joined together to commence a legal case in the High Court of Australia, to have their traditional ownership of their ancestral lands (on Murray Island in the Torres Strait) legally recognised. The small group of Torres Strait Islander people, led by Eddie Koiki Mabo, challenged the long-standing and false legal principle of ***Terra Nullius***, that Australia was an 'empty land that belonged to no one' when it was colonised by the British in 1788. This meant that even though Aboriginal and Torres Strait Islander people had lived on and occupied the land for thousands of years, their traditional ownership of their land was not recognised under Australian law.

In 1992, after a 10-year legal battle, the High Court made its ruling in the Mabo case, finding in favour of Eddie Mabo. The High Court overturned, or cancelled, the principle of *Terra Nullius* by deciding that the Murray Islanders of the Torres Strait were entitled to possession, occupation and enjoyment of their traditional lands of the Murray Islands. In making its ruling, the Court legally recognised the right of First Nations peoples of Australia to make claims over their traditional land and be granted **native title** to land.

In 1993, following the *Mabo* decision in the High Court, the Commonwealth Parliament passed the *Native Title Act 1993* (Cth), to confirm and enshrine the High Court's decision in statute law and to establish procedures for dealing with and settling native title claims.

16.3 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 **Identify** two ways in which the High Court interacts with the Australian Constitution.

Comprehend

2 **Summarise** why the Constitution might need to be interpreted.

3 **Explain** what the following statement means: 'The High Court can help keep the Constitution up-to-date and relevant in modern Australia.'

Analyse

4 Read the case study: 'The High Court as "umpire": Can the parliament control product packaging?'
  a **Describe** what the dispute in the case was about.
  b **Explain** why the Commonwealth Parliament was able to make a law banning tobacco companies from using their logos and brand images on their tobacco products.

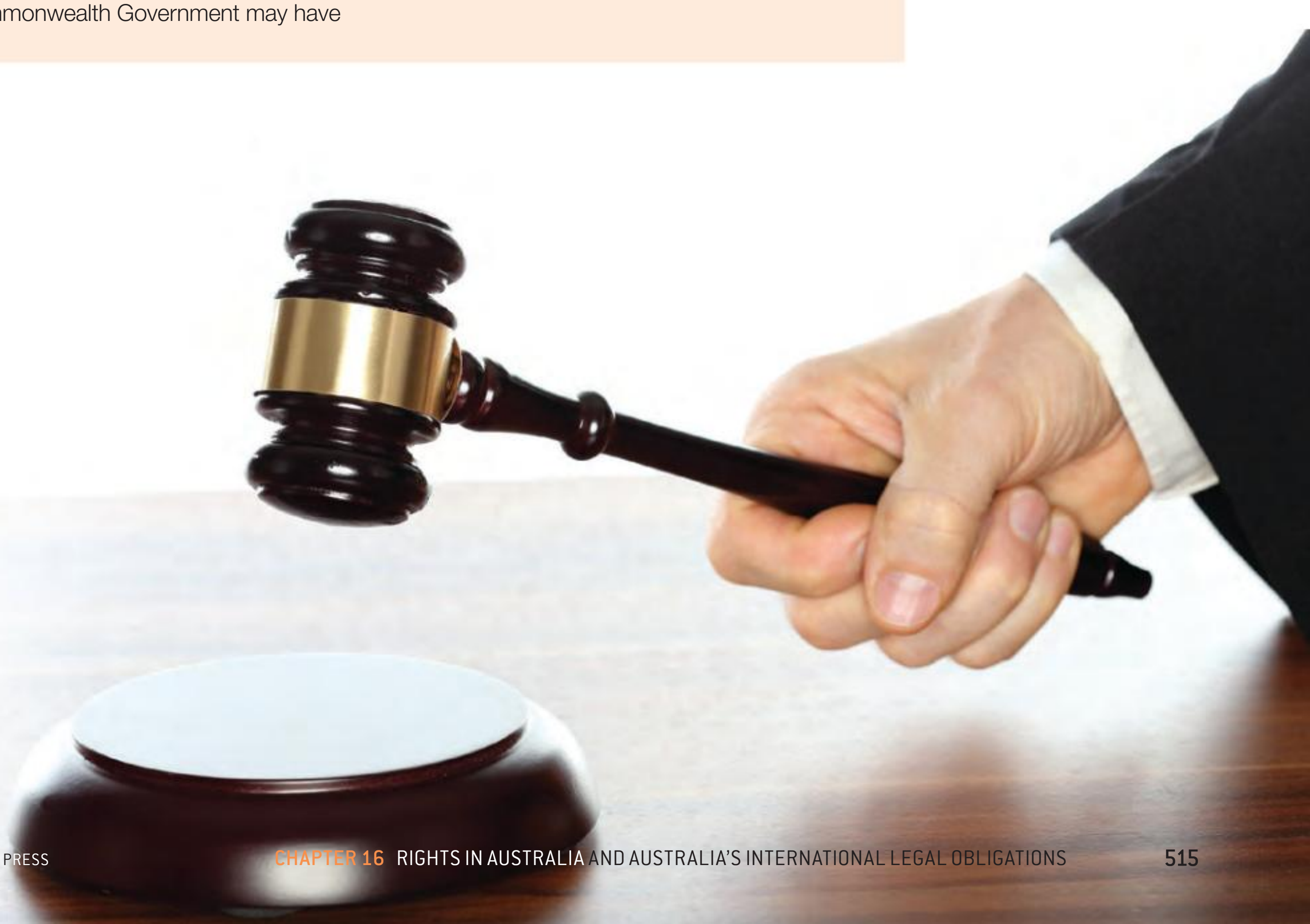
5 Read the case study: 'Can the High Court protect freedom of speech?'
  a **Consider** one reason why the Commonwealth Government may have wanted to pass a law to ban political parties from placing advertisements on television and radio during federal elections. Remember this was a time before the internet had been established, so there was no social media.
  b **Explain** why the High Court ruled that political parties should be able to advertise on television and radio during election campaigns.

6 Read the case study: 'Can the High Court protect the ability to vote?'
  a **Summarise** the key facts of the case.
  b **Explain** why the High Court ruled that it was unconstitutional to deny prisoners sentenced for less serious criminal offences the right to vote.

7 **Distinguish** between express and implied rights, and give one example of each.

8 **Consider** two areas of law that have been created as a result of advances in technology that would not have been envisaged in 1901 when the Australian Constitution was being drafted.

Quiz me!
A quick quiz on the role of the High Court in interpreting and applying the law



16A SKILLS IN CONTEXT

Test me!
Once you've finished the topics in this section, test yourself with this quiz and find out which worksheet you should do.

The right to protest

Over the years, the High Court of Australia has ruled that the Australian Constitution implies that Australians have the right to freedom of political communication (that is, the right to express their political views). But what exactly does this mean, and to what extent should people have the freedom to express their political views? For example, should an individual or group have the legal right to make public comments on political issues – for example, same-sex marriage, adoption, abortion or euthanasia – that might be considered cruel, offensive or intimidating? Or should our freedom to political communication be restricted?

In February 2019, in the case of *Clubb v Edwards; Preston v Avery* – known as the *Clubb Case* – the High Court had to decide whether or not people should have the right to publicly express their views, or protest, in circumstances where doing so could intimidate and cause stress to other people.

The case arose after the Victorian and Tasmanian governments passed laws – in 2008 and 2013 respectively – banning anti-abortion protesters (people who oppose the right of women to lawfully terminate their pregnancies) from demonstrating within 150 metres of fertility clinics. Fertility clinics are medical clinics that provide assistance to people with pregnancy-related issues, including being unable to conceive and lawful terminations. Called 'safe access zone' laws, the laws were introduced to protect people who visited fertility clinics (including clients and staff) from being intimidated and harassed by anti-abortion protesters, who regularly wait outside fertility clinics to urge women not to proceed with terminations.

In 2016 and 2017, some years after the introduction of the safe access zone laws, two anti-abortion protesters (one in Victoria and one in Tasmania) were charged with breaching the laws. After being found guilty, they argued in a number of court cases that the safe access zone laws breached their right to freedom of political communication.

Finally, in April 2019, the case was heard by the High Court. The High Court decided that while Australians have the right to freedom of political communication and to publicly express their views on controversial political issues, this does not give them the right to force political messages on another person if that message is 'inconsistent with the human dignity of that person'. By making this ruling, the High Court limited the right of people to publicly express their views in circumstances where the expression of these views may cause genuine distress or anxiety to others to the extent that it decreases their self-worth.

Source 12 Anti-abortion protesters outside a fertility clinic

KEY SKILL
Analysis, evaluation & interpretation

Creating a timeline

Timelines are an effective way to organise and present information and ideas so they may be more easily understood and evaluated. Constructing a timeline involves presenting information – such as key terms, events and concepts – in a logical chronological or sequential order to illustrate a sense of time and a common relationship. Displaying events and concepts in a sequential order helps develop a linear perspective, and can assist in the analysis and evaluation of information and ideas. There are a number of timeline creator tools available on the internet.

To create a timeline, follow these steps:

Step 1 Consider the length of time you want to represent on your timeline. You may want to show, for example, 1901 to 1999.

Step 2 Divide the timeline evenly into suitable blocks of time. For example, if you were illustrating the success of referendums since Federation, you could prepare a timeline of the years since 1901 in 10-year intervals.

Step 3 After determining your time intervals, accurately measure and mark the dates of your intervals.

Step 4 Mark specific, significant events on the timeline, including their dates. Provide a brief description or explanation of these events.

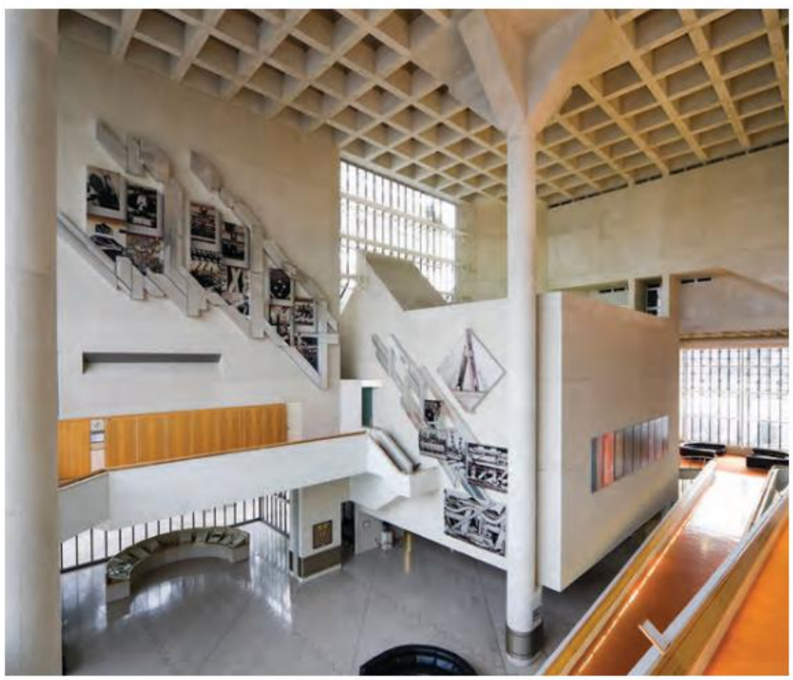
Practise the skill

1 Using the information provided, **create** a timeline of the *Clubb Case (2019)*. Your timeline should include the dates of the significant stages of the case, and an accompanying explanation for each. It should cover the period from the creation of the state safe access zone laws to the final High Court decision.

Extend your understanding

1 **Explain** whether or not you believe the High Court's decision effectively restricted the right of anti-abortion protesters – and all Australians – to freedom of political communication.

2 Should restrictions be placed on individuals with respect to their right to express their views on controversial political issues in public spaces? Write a short paragraph to **justify** your position.



Source 13 Inside the High Court of Australia; many of the artworks in the High Court's collection reflect the traditions, symbolism and practice of the law.

16.4 Australia's international legal obligations

Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» understand the influence of international treaties on Australian law.

international legal obligations
rights, responsibilities, terms and conditions of international treaties that a nation has legally committed to upholding through ratifications

treaties
formal documents, signed by nations or international organisations, that legally require them to follow the conditions set out in the document

declarations
statements or an indication of commitment, especially to moral issues; declarations are not legally binding

ratification
the process of a nation's parliament expressly passing legislation that requires it by law to adopt the various rights and responsibilities set out in a treaty

Australia has **international legal obligations** in a wide variety of areas such as human rights, the environment, defence, security and trade. These international legal obligations are written down in **treaties**, which Australia is compelled (or bound) to observe. A treaty can also be called a convention, protocol or covenant. Australia also supports a number of international **declarations**. Unlike treaties, declarations are not legally binding.

Bilateral and multilateral treaties

Australia may enter into bilateral or multilateral treaties. A bilateral treaty is a treaty between two countries. A multilateral treaty is between three or more other countries. Multilateral treaties are usually developed and overseen by an international organisation, such as the UN or the International Labour Organization (ILO).

The Australian Government has the power to enter into treaties and participate in international negotiations. Once a government agrees to the conditions of a treaty, it will sign it. Being a signatory to a treaty demonstrates a government's intention to be bound by its terms and to incorporate them into its national law at a later date. Once a treaty is signed, signatory nations have an obligation to refrain from any acts that would defeat the object and purpose of the treaty.

A treaty becomes legally binding upon a signatory nation when the nation specifically passes legislation (statutes) to approve and adopt the terms outlined in the treaty. This process is known as the **ratification** of the treaty. Once a nation ratifies a treaty, it is legally bound to accept and implement the rights and responsibilities within that treaty.

The impact of treaties on Australian law

Over the years, the Commonwealth Parliament has passed a range of legislation to incorporate the terms of international treaties into Australian law. Source 2 provides some examples. However, it is not always necessary to pass new laws to ensure we comply with our treaty obligations. Existing Commonwealth or state/territory legislation may be sufficient to implement the provisions of a treaty.

Source 1 In 2018 Australia and Timor-Leste signed the Treaty between Australia and the Democratic Republic of Timor-Leste Establishing Their Maritime Boundaries in the Timor Sea. This bilateral treaty established permanent maritime (ocean) boundaries between the two countries, and outlined how gas and oil resources in the Timor Sea would be developed.

Source 2 Examples of treaties and declarations that Australia has entered into and how these are incorporated into Australian law

Treaty or declaration area	International treaty or declaration Australia has entered into or supports	Australian law that reflects the conditions of the treaty or declaration, in part or full
Eliminating racial discrimination 	• International Convention on the Elimination of All Forms of Racial Discrimination (ICERD) • Eliminates racial discrimination and promotes understanding among all races	• *Racial Discrimination Act 1975* (Cth) and state law in this area • *Example:* A job advertisement stating that people of certain nationalities need not apply is against the law.
Protecting women against discrimination 	• Convention on the Elimination of All Forms of Discrimination Against Women (CEDAW) • Defines what constitutes discrimination against women and sets out a plan to end such discrimination	• *Sex Discrimination Act 1984* (Cth) and state law in this area • *Example:* A woman who is told she cannot apply for a promotion because she has family commitments is being unlawfully discriminated against on the basis of being a woman.
Protecting First Nations peoples and cultures 	• United Nations Declaration on the Rights of Indigenous Peoples (UNDRIP) • Sets standards for the wellbeing of Indigenous or First Nations populations around the world, including eliminating human rights violations against Indigenous or First Nations peoples.	• The Commonwealth Government supports the UNDRIP as a non-legally binding document. After endorsing UNDRIP in 2009, as of 2021, the Commonwealth Government has not implemented the UNDRIP in law, policy or practice.
Protecting endangered species 	• Convention on International Trade in Endangered Species of Wild Fauna and Flora (CITES) • Ensures that international trade in wild animals and plants does not threaten their survival	• *Environment Protection and Biodiversity Conservation Act 1999* (Cth) • *Example:* The trapping of the orange-bellied parrot (an Australian endangered species) is illegal.
Protecting the environment 	• Convention Concerning the Protection of the World Cultural and Natural Heritage (CCPWCNH) • Protects cultural and natural heritage around the world that has outstanding universal value and must be preserved for current and future generations	• *World Heritage Properties Conservation Act 1983* (Cth) • *Example:* An attempt to destroy a World Heritage site (such as the Gondwana Rainforests of Australia) through mining is unlawful.

The influence of international legal obligations on policy

ozone layer
a layer of gases around the Earth that protects us from excessive harmful ultraviolet radiation from the sun

fossil fuels
fuels made from the decomposed (fossilised) remains of plants and animals that lived millions of years ago (e.g. coal, oil, gas)

International legal obligations can shape domestic policy in Australia. Policy making involves the government taking action in a certain area to achieve a desired outcome. Protecting the **ozone layer** is one example of where Australia has worked with other countries and implemented policies at home to reduce ozone-depleting chemicals – such as chlorofluorocarbons – in the atmosphere. Australia has surpassed all of its legal obligations under the Montreal Protocol on Substances that Deplete the Ozone Layer. Ozone depletion still continues, but the Montreal Protocol was successful in controlling the global production and consumption of ozone depleting substances.

The reduction of greenhouse gas emissions is another area that requires sustained effort from all countries in order to make a difference. By signing the Paris Agreement in 2016, the Australian Government joined nearly every other nation in the world in committing to reduce greenhouse gas emissions. However, Australia earns a great deal of money from exporting **fossil fuels**, such as coal and liquid natural gas (which are major contributors to our level of greenhouse gas emissions), and is reluctant to reduce its reliance on these fuels. The target Australia set (to reduce emissions by between 26 and 28 per cent below 2005 levels by 2030) was influenced by its economic interests. As of 2022, Australia's target is to reduce emissions by 43 per cent below 2005 levels by 2030, and to reach net zero emissions by 2050. Many climate scientists believe that this target is insufficient for meeting the commitment of the Paris Agreement to limit global warming to below 2 degrees Celsius.

Failure to meet our international obligations and uphold the conditions outlined in international treaties can result in other nations or organisations putting international pressure on Australia.

Source 3 Australia, like many other countries, relies heavily on fossil fuels for energy. Australia needs to find innovative energy solutions if it is to reduce its impact on climate in the future. International pressure will affect policy in this area.

The UN plays a role in monitoring how Australia is performing in relation to its international legal obligations. For example, every five years the UN Human Rights Council (UNHRC) provides Australia with a review of its performance on human rights. In 2021 the UNHRC criticised Australia for its performance in a number of areas, including:

- its treatment of refugees and asylum seekers, which involves the offshore processing and detention of asylum seekers for lengthy periods of time and arguably does not fulfil our international legal obligations
- the treatment of First Nations peoples, who experience severe inequality compared to non-Indigenous Australians, including being significantly overrepresented in Australia's prison population. Some of the problems facing First Nations peoples were highlighted in the 2020 Black Lives Matters demonstrations and the 2021 Australia 'Invasion Day' protests.

Shining a light on Australia's poor performance in these areas may influence future policy change.

I used to think, now I think

Reflect on your learning about Australia's international responsibilities and obligations and complete the following sentences.
- I used think …
- Now I think …

What has changed your understanding?

16.4 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 **Recall** one example of how Australian law reflects the principles of the International Convention on the Elimination of All Forms of Racial Discrimination (ICERD).

Comprehend

2 Choose two international treaties to which Australia is a party and **describe** the main purpose of each treaty.

3 **Summarise** why new laws are not always needed to comply with an international treaty Australia has signed and ratified.

4 **Explain** the difference between a bilateral and a multilateral treaty.

Analyse

5 **Consider** (think carefully about before making a decision) why the power to enter into treaties belongs to the Australian Government rather than the state or territory governments.

Apply

6 Do you think one country acting alone would be able to solve global environmental problems such as the depletion of the ozone layer and climate change? **Justify** (give reasons for) your response.

7 In small groups, **discuss** how Australia's international legal obligations can affect our domestic policy. Write down the main points from your discussion and report back to the class.

8 There are nine core international human rights treaties or conventions (including the ICERD and CEDAW). Using the internet, **investigate:**
- what these international human rights treaties or conventions are called
- which of these treaties or conventions Australia is party to.

Present your findings in a table.

9 The Paris Agreement is an international treaty that is legally binding. However, while nations who have signed the agreement have a legal obligation to set targets (known as 'nationally determined contributions' or NDCs) to help limit global warming to below 2 degrees Celsius and to report on their progress, they are not legally obliged to meet their targets. In small groups, **discuss** the extent to which Australia is meeting its commitment to reduce greenhouse gas emissions.

Quick me!
A quick quiz on Australia's international legal obligations

Key skill worksheet
Civic participation & decision making: Examining Australia's accountability

16B SKILLS IN CONTEXT

Test me!
Once you've finished the topics in this section, test yourself with this quiz and find out which worksheet you should do.

Recognising First Nations peoples in Australia's Constitution

The Australian Constitution does not mention our First Nations peoples (Aboriginal and Torres Strait Islander peoples), or acknowledge First Nations peoples as the traditional owners of the land and waters of Australia.

As originally written, section 51(xxvi) of the Constitution – referred to as the 'race power' – gave the Commonwealth Parliament the power to make laws with respect to 'the people of any race, other than the aboriginal race in any State, for whom it is deemed necessary to make special laws'.

In the 1967 referendum, over 90 per cent of voters agreed that this wording in the Constitution should be changed to give the Commonwealth Parliament the power to make laws for all Australians, including Aboriginal peoples. Many Australians, both First Nations and non-Indigenous, believe our Constitution should be further altered to explicitly recognise First Nations peoples. Constitutional recognition of First Nations people could include:

- adding a preamble to the Constitution recognising First Nations peoples as the original inhabitants of Australia
- enshrining an Aboriginal and Torres Strait Islander Voice to Parliament in the Constitution, as proposed within the Uluru Statement from the Heart in 2017. Many organisations, such as the Law Council of Australia and the Australian Human Rights Commission, believe that enshrining an Aboriginal and Torres Strait Islander Voice to Parliament in the Australian Constitution would affirm the principles of the United Nations Declaration on the Rights of Indigenous Peoples (UNDRIP).


La Reyne le veult

[63 & 64 Vict.] Commonwealth of Australia Constitution Act. [Ch. 12.]

CHAPTER 12.

An Act to constitute the Commonwealth of Australia. A.D. 1900.

WHEREAS the people of New South Wales, Victoria, South Australia, Queensland, and Tasmania, humbly relying on the blessing of Almighty God, have agreed to unite in one indissoluble Federal Commonwealth under the Crown of the United Kingdom of Great Britain and Ireland, and under the Constitution hereby established:

And whereas it is expedient to provide for the admission into the Commonwealth of other Australasian Colonies and possessions of the Queen:

Be it therefore enacted by the Queen's most Excellent Majesty, by and with the advice and consent of the Lords Spiritual and Temporal, and Commons, in this present Parliament assembled, and by the authority of the same, as follows:—

1. This Act may be cited as the Commonwealth of Australia Constitution Act. Short title.

2. The provisions of this Act referring to the Queen shall extend to Her Majesty's heirs and successors in the sovereignty of the United Kingdom. Act to extend to the Queen's successors.

3. It shall be lawful for the Queen, with the advice of the Privy Council, to declare by proclamation that, on and after a day therein appointed, not being later than one year after the passing of this Act, the people of New South Wales, Victoria, South Australia, Queensland, and Tasmania, and also, if Her Majesty is satisfied that the people of Western Australia have agreed thereto, of Western Australia, shall be united in a Federal Commonwealth under the Proclamation of Commonwealth.

A 1

Source 4 The preamble to the *Commonwealth of Australia Constitution Act 1900*.

Source 5 Enshrining an Aboriginal and Torres Strait Islander Voice to Parliament in the Constitution was proposed within the Uluru Statement from the Heart.

KEY SKILL
Questioning & researching

Gathering and assessing the reliability of information

Being able to gather and sort information from different sources is an important skill. Not all sources are reliable. For example, while the internet is a valuable source of information, the information found there may be factually incorrect. It may also have been prepared in a biased manner by an individual or group that wishes to promote one view or perspective.

When you are conducting research and gathering your information, it is vital that you carefully check its reliability and authenticity. The following steps can help:

Step 1 Gather your information from a range of sources; for example, a variety of different websites, newspapers, magazines, local papers and documents.

Step 2 Decide whether the information is factual or opinion-based.

Step 3 Identify whether the information has been prepared by a recognised authority – such as a government, university or expert panel – that has specialist knowledge in the area being examined. Websites that have an '.edu' suffix are usually for universities or schools, so the information found there should be reliable.

Step 4 Find out if the individual or organisation that prepared the information is independent and impartial. Alternatively, find out if they have a special interest in, or stand to benefit from, presenting a one-sided view.

Step 5 Check if the information you have gathered can be supported or verified by another source.

If you are not sure that your information has been created by a dependable source, try to gather additional information from an alternative source to verify its authenticity. As a final tip, check the date on which your information was prepared to make sure that it is current and relevant.

For more information on this skill, refer to page 459 of 'The civics and citizenship toolkit'.

Practise the skill

1 Use the internet to research and find relevant and reliable information about the campaign to change the Australian Constitution to include recognition of First Nations peoples. Follow the steps above to help you assess the reliability of the information you gather.

2 Use your information to prepare a written report on the campaign to recognise First Nations peoples in the Australian Constitution. Include:
- an introduction that explains the general proposal
- an explanation of the role of two groups or organisations that support constitutional recognition, such as Reconciliation Australian or From the Heart
- a short discussion about whether or not these organisations have specialist knowledge in this area
- an explanation of arguments against or difficulties associated with changing the Constitution
- a short conclusion explaining your view
- a list of all the sources (including URLs) from which you obtained your evidence, and a brief comment on the reliability of the information gathered from each source.

Extend your understanding

1 There are a number of changes that can be made to the Constitution to recognise Australia's First Nations peoples. One of these is to include an acknowledgment of First Nations peoples as the traditional owners of the land and waters in the preamble. A preamble is a short introduction, commonly provided at the beginning of an Act of Parliament (or a Constitution), which explains its broad aims and objectives.

Read the preamble to the *Commonwealth of Australia Constitution Act 1900* (Australia's Constitution does not have a preamble). A link has been provided on your obook pro. After reading it, **create** a new preamble (maximum of 500 words) for the Constitution. Consider:
- what parts of the existing preamble you would like to keep or discard
- the key values and principles that you might like to acknowledge in your preamble, including specific recognition of the First Nations peoples of Australia.

Weblink
Commonwealth of Australia Constitution Act

16 CHAPTER REVIEW

Review activity

Read the report then answer the following questions.

Aboriginal Australians win High Court battle

Section 51(xix) of the Australian Constitution gives the Commonwealth Parliament the power to make laws on immigrants (or 'aliens', as they were referred to when the Constitution was written back in 1901). Using this power, the Commonwealth Parliament passed a law in 1958 called the *Migration Act*. Under this law, the Commonwealth Government can deport (or remove) people from Australia to their country of birth if they have been found guilty of one or more serious crimes.

In 2020, the High Court was required to interpret the Constitution and make a ruling as to whether or not First Nations peoples who were born overseas could be deported to the country of their birth. The cases were known as the *Love and Thoms Cases*.

The cases arose after two men were ordered to be deported under the *Migration Act* after being found guilty of committing some serious crimes. Daniel Love (born in Papua New Guinea) and Brendan Thoms (born in New Zealand) are both Aboriginal men who were born overseas. Both men have one Aboriginal parent and both identify as Aboriginal, despite never becoming Australian citizens. The two men argued that while they were born overseas, they were Aboriginal people who had been living in Australia since they were children and had been recognised as members of an Aboriginal community. As such, they said they could not be considered as immigrants and deported from Australia. In other words, the two men argued that the law relating to the deportation of immigrants did not apply to them. The Commonwealth Government argued the opposite – claiming that because the two men were born overseas, they were considered immigrants and could be deported to their country of birth.

In a majority verdict, the High Court found in favour of Love and Thoms. Four of the seven justices agreed that Aboriginal people cannot be considered immigrants because they have a sense of belonging to Australia that cannot be 'extinguished', changed or denied by the Commonwealth Parliament. This decision (or ruling) meant that the immigration laws relating to deportation could not be applied to them.

Source 6 Brendan Thoms and his mother celebrated after the High Court ruled that, as an Aboriginal man, he could not be deported from Australia to the country in which he was born, New Zealand.

1 **Identify** why the decision in this case is referred to as a 'majority verdict'. (2 marks)

2 **State** who won this case. (1 mark)

3 **Explain** why they won the case. (3 marks)

4 **Explain** why the Commonwealth Government wanted to deport Love and Thoms from Australia. (3 marks)

5 **Analyse** why Love and Thoms believed the federal immigration law that allows for people who have committed serious crimes to be deported to their country of birth did not apply to them. Make reference to the Australian Constitution in your response. (5 marks)

6 Do you believe the High Court's decision was fair? **Justify** (give reasons for) your response. (6 marks)

(Total: 20 marks)

Chapter checklist

Now that you have completed this chapter, reflect on your ability to do the following:

	I can do this.	I cannot do this yet.
Describe the role of Commonwealth, state and territory parliaments in protecting rights.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 16.1, page 504.
Summarise the purpose of the Australian Constitution. Explain the role of the Australian Constitution in protecting rights.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 16.2, page 506.
Describe the role of the High Court of Australia in interpreting the Australian Constitution. Summarise the role of the High Court in protecting rights in Australia.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 16.3, page 510.
Understand the influence of international treaties on Australian law.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 16.4, page 518.

Check your Student obook pro for these digital resources and more:

Student book questions
Chapter 16

Key skill worksheet
Communicating:
Chapter 16

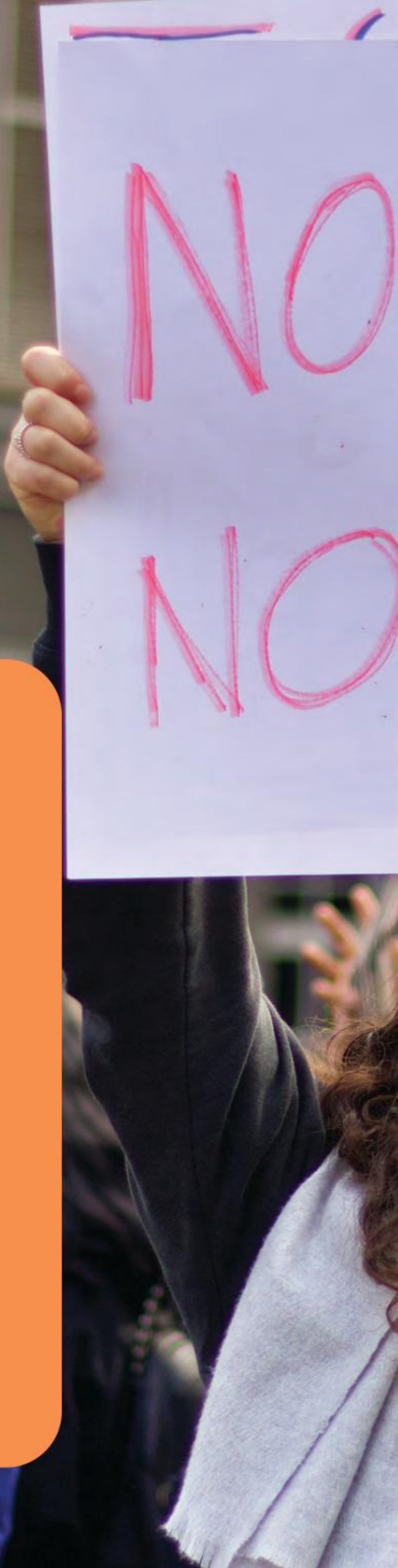
Quizlet
Play a game of Quizlet on Rights in Australia and Australia's international legal obligations.

Chapter review quiz
Chapter 16

CHAPTER 17

Sustaining Australia's democracy

A strong and resilient democracy is one based on core beliefs and values that are shared and respected by most of society. Australia's democracy is based on the belief that our governments are freely and fairly elected and that they uphold basic human rights and freedoms. Sharing these beliefs helps Australia to function as a cohesive, or united, society. However, factors such as vested interests, corruption, polarisation and the influence of the media (including social media) present challenges to democracies around the world, including Australia.



Source 1 An underlying feature of Australia's democracy is the belief that our government upholds basic human rights, such as broad freedoms of speech, assembly and protest. Here, a young woman holds a sign at a Black Lives Matter protest in 2020.

17A
What are the features of a resilient democracy and a cohesive society?

17B
What are the challenges to Australia's democracy?

17.1 Australia's democratic society

Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» identify the key features of Australia's democracy and cohesive society.

Source 1 Over 17 million Australians were enrolled to cast their vote in the 2022 federal election.

In order to have a strong democratic society, Australia's system of government is based upon core beliefs and attitudes that are respected and valued by most people. For example, our democracy is based on the beliefs that:

- the people elect the government
- elections are free and fair
- governments uphold basic human rights.

These beliefs, along with features such as processes that allow for conflicts to be resolved peacefully, all help to safeguard Australia's democratic society.

The people elect the government

The federal parliament and the state and territory parliaments of Australia are elected by the people to make laws on their behalf. The intention of compulsory voting is to make sure that our governments have the support of the majority of the people and not just those who bother to vote.

Elections are free and fair

Independent state, territory and federal electoral commissions have the role of ensuring that all state, territory and federal elections in Australia are free, fair and conducted in accordance with state/territory and Commonwealth law. For example:

- The Australian Electoral Commission (AEC) is responsible for managing federal elections and maintaining the Commonwealth electoral roll, which lists the names and addresses of all eligible citizens who have enrolled to vote.
- The AEC must confirm that all eligible voters throughout Australia (that is, over 17 million people) are able to cast their vote in secret. Voting is done in secret to reduce the risk of voters being intimidated or forced into voting for a person or party against their will.
- Each citizen may only vote once. Every vote has the same value, regardless of whose it is.
- Voting can take place on election day at venues or polling booths, or at early voting stations or via postal votes for those who cannot attend on the day.
- The AEC must check that votes are honestly counted.

Source 2 In Australia, eligible citizens who are enrolled to vote do so in secret, so they cannot be intimidated, punished or discriminated against for how they vote.

Quiz me! A quick quiz on Australia's democratic society

Governments uphold basic human rights

An underlying feature of democracy in Australia is that our parliaments must make and enforce laws and policies that protect basic human rights, so that all citizens are treated with dignity, equality and mutual respect. This aims to promote social cohesion. Some basic human rights upheld by Australian laws include the right to:

- not be discriminated against on the basis of race, nationality, religion, sex, age, marital status, impairment or disability
- broad freedom of speech, assembly and protest, which enable citizens to debate political issues and openly express their views without fear of being punished
- a fair trial and freedom from torture
- life, liberty and security of person
- work and live in a healthy environment
- basic health care and education.

Source 3 The provision of police is one of the ways that governments uphold human rights. For example, some clashes between the far-right protest group Reclaim Australia and anti-racism groups at public demonstrations have required police intervention.

The right to dissent

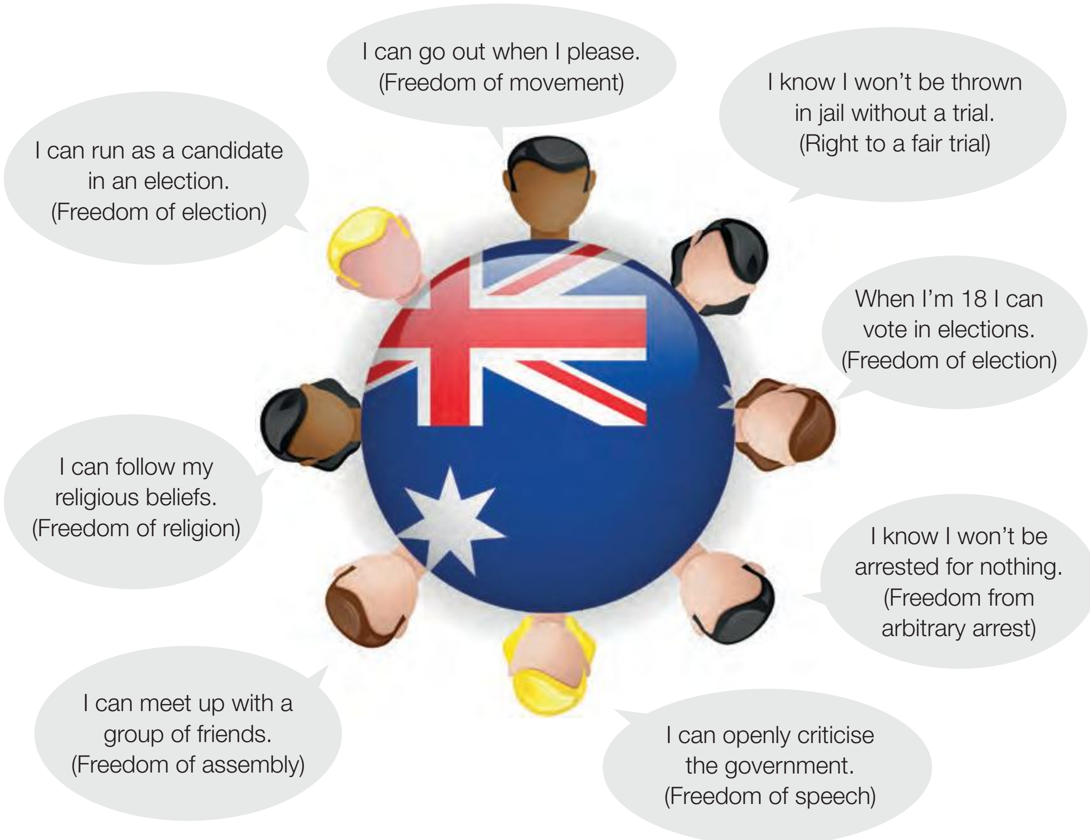
Another feature that helps safeguard Australia's democratic society is that individuals generally have the right to oppose or disagree with the views held by the government. We can also publicly express that disapproval in a lawful manner without fear of being censored or punished. For example, Australian law generally upholds the right to freedom of speech, press and protest, which allows individuals and organisations the ability to debate political issues and openly express their views without fear of being punished. However, these rights are limited to a certain extent for reasons including to protect people from suffering harm as a result of other people making untrue statements or comments that are racially offensive, and to protect the national interest.

Peaceful resolution of conflicts

In order to keep the peace in Australian society, processes exist to help groups or individuals resolve their problems or disputes. This can include formal legal procedures that lead to a final decision or more informal discussions between parties that lead to settling a dispute or issue. Such processes might include the following in a formal court setting or informal domestic settings:

- negotiation – a process where the parties get together and try to discuss the key issues in their dispute to reach a settlement between them
- mediation – a method of dispute settlement where the parties meet before an independent third party who helps them to discuss their dispute and reach a mutually acceptable resolution
- reconciliation – the process of renewing a relationship between parties, which usually requires forgiveness on one or both sides.

In addition to structures such as courts and tribunals, governments also provide services (including hospitals, schools, universities, prisons, and defence and police forces) and social welfare benefits (including aged pensions and unemployment benefits). This is so that Australians can live together in a peaceful, orderly, cooperative and tolerant manner.



Source 4 Some liberal democratic rights and values; Australia is a liberal democracy, which means we aim to protect a range of basic human rights and values. Some of these rights (such as the right to vote) are protected under Australian law.

CASE STUDY

The 2021 US Capitol riots

On 3 November 2020, the United States held a federal election. In the United States, federal elections are held every four years, giving US citizens the opportunity to vote for new candidates to represent them in the US Congress, and for the president. Although the country was in the grips of the COVID-19 pandemic, a lot of work was done to make sure the election could be safely held. For example, many states allowed early voting and voting by mail.

While the results of this election were very close, the sitting president and leader of the Republican Party, Donald Trump, did not receive enough votes to be re-elected. Instead, the leader of the main opposing party (the Democratic Party), Joe Biden, received the most votes and was elected as the new president.

After losing the election, Trump and his team filed more than 60 lawsuits to try to cancel Biden's victory. On 6 January 2021, a few weeks before Biden was due to be sworn in as the new president, Trump held a large rally in Washington, DC. He encouraged his supporters to march to the Capitol building, where the Congress meets, to protest the way the election was held and its results. The protesters, some of whom carried guns, claimed that the election was not properly conducted and that the results were not fair. These claims were made without any clear evidence, and were supported by violence, destruction of property and threats to the lives of public officials. Five people were killed during the riot at the Capitol building. As of 2022, the events of 6 January 2021 are being investigated by a committee created by the Congress.

Source 5 Supporters of former president Donald Trump on the steps of the US Capitol building

See, think, wonder

Look at Source 5.

- What do you see?
- What do you think?
- What do you wonder?

17.1 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 **State** the three beliefs on which Australian democracy is based.

2 **Identify** four basic human rights that are upheld by Australian law.

Comprehend

3 **Explain** the reasons for having compulsory voting.

4 **Explain** how you think our democracy would be affected if core beliefs and attitudes were not protected. In your answer, give two examples of possible outcomes.

Analyse

5 Examine the case study on the 2021 US Capitol riots. Conduct further research if required to answer the questions below.

a **Describe** the circumstances that led to the riots.

b **Explain** two reasons why Donald Trump and some of his supporters claimed the US presidential election in November 2020 was unfair (or fraudulent).

c **Describe** what happened in the months following the riots. In your answer, consider what happened to Donald Trump and the protesters who took part in the riots, how other nations reacted to the news of the riots, and who ultimately formed the US Government.

Apply

6 In pairs or small groups, **discuss** what might happen if people no longer believe in the ideas that democratic societies are based on (for example, that elections are free and fair, or that governments uphold basic human rights).

17A SKILLS IN CONTEXT

Test me!
Once you've finished the topics in this section, test yourself with this quiz and find out which worksheet you should do.

Maintaining a democratic and cohesive society

Many different factors influence social cohesion in Australia. For example, when the Scanlon Foundation – an organisation that aims to enhance social cohesion in Australia – conducts research, it examines five key indicators.

These include whether or not Australians have:

- a sense of belonging and pride in being Australian
- a sense of self-worth, or a general feeling that they are happy and satisfied with life and their financial situation and have positive expectations about the future
- a sense that social justice and equity exist in our country
- a willingness to participate in voluntary work and the political process (including a right and willingness to vote and to protest for law changes)
- a sense of legitimacy; that is, feeling accepted, and not rejected or subject to discrimination.

Social cohesion used by the Scanlon Foundation

sense of belonging	sense of worth	social justice and equity	participation	acceptance and rejection, legitimacy

Source 6 Key indicators of social cohesion in Australia, as used by the Scanlon Foundation

In recent years, research undertaken by the Scanlon Foundation has indicated that while Australia is a relatively tolerant society, our sense of social cohesion has experienced change over time. For example, the Foundation's 2021 national survey (conducted during the second year of the global COVID-19 pandemic) revealed that 16 per cent of respondents felt they had experienced discrimination (in the previous 12 months) on the basis of their race, ethnic origin or religion compared to only 9 per cent in 2007, when the survey began. By contrast, there was an increase in the level of trust respondents had in the government, with 48 per cent of survey participants indicating they trusted the federal government to 'do the right thing' always or most of the time in 2021, compared to 39 per cent in 2007.

Views on immigration had also changed, with 67 per cent of respondents believing that immigration levels in recent years were 'about right or too low', compared to 55 per cent in 2007.

In 2021, 71 per cent of respondents stated that they were optimistic about Australia's future – up from 70 per cent in 2020 (the first year the survey was conducted since the COVID-19 pandemic began) and an increase since 2019, when 63 per cent of respondents were optimistic about Australia's future.

Source 7 The Scanlon Foundation's five key indicators for social cohesion in Australia include having a sense of legitimacy; that is, feeling accepted, and not rejected or subject to discrimination.

Source 8 Results from the Scanlon Foundation's social cohesion survey to the question 'What do you think is the most important problem facing Australia today?', posed in July 2021

Rank	Issue	%
1	Coronavirus and its impact on the economy	59
=2	Economic issues (including unemployment and poverty)	9
=2	Concern about the environment and climate change	9
=4	Quality of government and politicians	4
=4	Social issues (such as family and family breakdown, child care, drug use and lack of personal direction)	4
6	Health, medical and hospitals	3
=7	Defence, national security and terrorism	2
=7	Housing shortages, affordability and interest rates	2
=9	Immigration and population issues (from a negative perspective)	1
=9	Racism	1

Source: Scanlon Foundation, *Mapping Social Cohesion 2021: National Report*, 2021, p. 34

Source 9 Australia is a multicultural nation where people from many different cultures live together in a cohesive and unified way.

KEY SKILL
Questioning & researching

Creating an online survey

Surveys are an effective way to gather information and data so that it may be more easily understood and evaluated. Many online tools and programs allow for the easy generation and analysis of surveys, including Google Docs, Excel, SurveyMonkey and Survey Builder.

When designing an online survey, follow these steps:

Step 1 Determine the purpose or aim of your survey. What information do you want to collect and why?

Step 2 Design appropriate questions. Think about the sort of information you might need to collect to help you investigate the topic, and what type of questions you will need to ask to acquire this information.

Step 3 Consider how long you would like your survey to be. Often people will be reluctant to participate if the survey is too long, confusing or takes too much time to complete.

Step 4 Choose which online survey tool you will use. Then go to its website and follow the steps it outlines to get started. For example, with SurveyMonkey you will need to enter your details and set up a free account.

Step 5 Select what kinds of questions you will ask. To do this, you should consider the range of responses you might expect to receive and provide appropriate options. For example, you may elect to use:

- ‘yes/no’ questions
- multiple choice questions
- ‘true/false’ statements
- rating scales, such as: ‘On a scale of 1 to 5 (with 1 being most likely and 5 being least likely), answer the following questions …’
- comment boxes for more personalised responses.

SurveyMonkey has more than 15 types of questions you can use, including multiple choice and true/false options.

Source 10 SurveyMonkey is a useful online tool for building and analysing surveys.

Step 6 Consider what personal details and information you would like your respondents to provide or whether you would prefer to allow them to remain anonymous. Which of these will encourage high participation and honest responses?

Step 7 Consider how many completed surveys you will need to form an accurate assessment. You will need to have a big enough sample size and a mixture of ages, genders and cultural backgrounds in order to give you results that represent the general population.

Step 8 Set up a mailing list to email out your surveys. Your chosen online survey platform will help you do this.

Step 9 Prepare a chart or graph to help analyse your responses. Many online survey programs will compile this information for you.

Source 11 Aboriginal dancers strike a pose during the Homeground festival, a celebration of Aboriginal cultures.

Practise the skill

1. Follow the steps above to conduct your own online survey that will help you to **determine** which concerns or issues currently threaten social cohesion in your community.
2. Send the survey out to the people on the mailing list you have created.
3. **Summarise** your findings. Include a list of the top five problems or issues that concerned your respondents. Suggest possible reasons for these concerns.
4. **Explain** any strengths and/or limitations associated with your survey.

Extend your understanding

1. Using the internet, conduct some additional research on social cohesion.
   - a In your own words, **define** 'social cohesion'.
   - b **Identify** the three most significant factors that you believe have the potential to threaten Australia's sense of social cohesion.
   - c **Discuss** your views with the class.

Source 12 Footscray, in Melbourne, Victoria, is home to a diverse range of Asian cultures. Pictured is the Heavenly Queen Temple to the Chinese sea goddess Mazu. It is Australia's largest Taoist temple.

17.2 Threats to Australia's democratic society

Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» describe threats to Australia's democracy, including vested interest groups and media bias.

While Australia is generally a cohesive and united nation built on democratic principles, various factors – including the influence of groups with vested interests, media bias and our ageing population – could potentially threaten our democratic and harmonious way of life.

Influence of those with vested interests

Having a vested interest means that a person or organisation may support an individual member of parliament or political party to make a personal gain (for example, to increase their own financial wealth or power). Over recent years, there has been increasing concern that a small number of very wealthy individuals and large corporations have been able to have a disproportionate amount of influence over government policy in Australia by making large donations to political parties that benefit their interests. For example, Anthony Pratt, an Australian businessman who oversees Visy Industries and Pratt Industries, was the biggest political donor in 2021. Pratt donated $1.3 million to the Liberal Party ahead of the 2022 federal election.

In the period leading up to both state and federal elections, both major parties (the Liberal and Labor Parties) typically receive large donations from wealthy individuals who own businesses that might benefit from their election. The major parties also receive large donations from organisations donating to both parties. For example, in 2021 the Pharmacy Guild of Australia donated $295 000, split largely equally between Labor and Liberal branches.

Source 1 Banks are one example of organisations which have vested interests.

Both political parties receive donations from organisations with specific political interests, including:

- the four major banks (ANZ, Westpac, National Australia Bank and the Commonwealth Bank), which have a vested interest in banking regulations
- the Australian Hotels Association, which has a vested interest in many areas of the law, including liquor licensing and gaming machines
- Phillip Morris, a tobacco company with vested interests in the tobacco laws
- Pfizer and Johnson & Johnson, pharmaceutical companies with vested interests in the regulations surrounding the distribution of medicines, vaccines and health-care products (and which, in 2020, became two of the manufacturers of COVID-19 vaccines).

I used to think, now I think

Reflect on what you have learnt about donations to political parties and complete the following sentences.

- I used to think ...
- Now I think ...

What has changed in your understanding?

Corruption

Corruption, or the immoral abuse of power for personal gain, is another factor that threatens democracies globally. Australia has consistently ranked as one of the least corrupt countries in the world. According to the Transparency International Corruptions Perceptions Index (a global measure of anti-corruption efforts), in 2022 Australia ranked 18th out of 180 countries, with a score of 73 (on a scale where 0 is highly corrupt and 100 is very clean). However, this score has declined steadily since 2012, when Australia scored 85 on the Corruption Perceptions Index. This decline is due to the failure to regulate political donations and lobbying, reform foreign bribery laws, and establish a federal anti-corruption commission.

Media bias and voting

A democratic system relies on individuals being able to make informed decisions about which political party or **independent candidate** would make laws that best reflect their views and values. When making such decisions, most voters gain their information from the **media**. It is therefore essential that the media presents impartial and unbiased information, especially in the lead-up to an election.

But just how impartial is the Australian media, and to what extent does the content in the mainstream media organisations reflect the political interests of their owners and the senior editors, rather than an independent and unbiased view?

It is important to remember that the media is generally not impartial. Many media organisations and forums that distribute news and information to the public – including political parties, special interest (or pressure) groups and businesses – have a perceived bias or political leaning. For example, Crikey.com is often viewed as being a 'left-leaning' organisation, meaning it has less-conservative views. Different media outlets also have their own way of presenting events and issues of the day. It can be an interesting exercise to scan different online news services or flick across television news channels to see how the same issue is being presented in a single day by different sources. You may notice subtle or more obvious bias across different news organisations as you look around.

In Australia, the two biggest and most influential media organisations, News Corp Australia and Nine Entertainment Co, are often criticised for showing a conservative political bias. Given that News Corp Australia and Nine Entertainment Co account for approximately 85 per cent of all newspaper sales in Australia and have a large online profile, these organisations certainly have the ability to influence a wide audience. The ABC, too, is criticised for being too politically liberal (broad-minded) in the stories that it produces.

The Daily Telegraph
We're for you

EXCLUSIVE
Hotels to face some pub pain
ANNA CALDWELL

REVEALED
Jobless figures a big fright
GERARD COCKBURN

Bungles hotel quarantine
Allows virus to spread
Refuses calls for answers
Will not take any blame

Victorian Premier Daniel Andrews arrives at a press conference in Melbourne yesterday before again refusing to answer questions on how his state bungled its COVID-19 protocols.

DAN-MADE DISASTER

ANNA CALDWELL

HE has presided over the single biggest one-day coronavirus case figures in Australia so far and his government's bungling of its hotel quarantine protocols has led to a second wave of COVID-19 afflicting his state and also breaching the border of NSW.

But Victorian Premier Daniel Andrews yesterday continued to refuse to answer questions about – or accept any blame for – the new coronavirus surge that has led to scores of cases in Sydney and threatens to become a national disaster.

Mr Andrews has declined to say when he first learned his state's bungled hotel quarantine program had led to a renewed outbreak across Melbourne.

FULL REPORT PAGES 6-7

Source 2 This front page of *The Daily Telegraph* (in Sydney) shows political bias against the Victorian Labor government during the 2020 COVID-19 pandemic.

independent candidate
an individual who stands for election, but does not belong to a political party

media
organisations and forums that communicate news and information to the public, such as newspapers, magazines, and television and radio broadcasters (often referred to as 'traditional media'), and online websites and social media apps (such as Facebook, Twitter and Instagram)

Source 3 A summary of some major Australian media organisations and their perceived political biases

Print/digital media organisation	Publications	Perceived bias
News Corp Australia	*The Australian* *The Daily Telegraph* (Sydney) *The Herald Sun* (Melbourne) *The Bolt Report*	Generally recognised for supporting the Liberal–National Coalition
Nine Entertainment Co	*The Age* (Melbourne) *The Sydney Morning Herald*	Generally recognised for supporting the Labor Party
Australian Broadcasting Commission (ABC)	*ABC News* *Insiders* *Q&A* *Lateline*	Although the ABC's charter requires neutral reporting, conservative commentators often accuse it of leaning more to the left of politics.

CASE STUDY

Does the media decide who wins an election?

Over the years, various media organisations have been accused of showing particular bias for or against certain political parties during federal election campaigns. For example, during the 2019 and 2022 federal election campaigns, News Corp Australia was accused of biased anti-Labor reporting, with the aim of ensuring the re-election of the Liberal–National Coalition government of the day, under the leadership of Prime Minister Scott Morrison. In the 2022 federal election campaign, News Corp Australia was also accused of bias against 'teal' independent candidates (who ran in seats traditionally held by the Liberal Party and advocated for increased action on climate change). News Corp Australia is mainly owned by a multinational media organisation called News Corp, founded by its CEO, Rupert Murdoch. Publishing approximately 170 newspapers and magazines in Australia, the company has a wide readership of voters that it has the potential to influence.

It has long been suggested that Murdoch influences anti-Labor reporting in News Corp Australia's newspapers to further his business interests. For example, it was alleged that Murdoch considered the Labor Party's commitment to a National Broadband Network a threat to Foxtel, another company largely owned by News Corp.

Having one media organisation own so many newspapers and magazines is unusual in a liberal democracy. Previous prime ministers from both major parties have argued that having one organisation that can dominate media coverage across Australia is dangerous for democracy. Former prime ministers Kevin Rudd (from the Labor Party) and Malcolm Turnbull (from the Liberal Party) have labelled News Corp as 'the greatest cancer of all on our democratic institutions' and 'an absolute threat to our democracy'.


The Daily Telegraph
We're for you
Man who wants top job clueless about jobs
Albo's Cheat Sheet
IT'S NOT SO ALBANEASY
THE GOOD GUYS
Easter DOOR BUSTER DEALS
ON NOW
CHECK OUT OUR EGG-CELLENT DEALS INSIDE!
EASTER STORE HOURS ONLINE

Source 4 The headline on the front page of the *Daily Telegraph* during the campaign leading up to the 2022 federal election; at the time, Anthony Albanese was the Leader of the Labor Opposition.


JOSH FRYDENBERG EXCLUSIVE INTERVIEW
Herald Sun
Sunday
It's a fraud. It's a con job. These so-called independents are in many cases former members of the Labor Party, as they are in Kooyong
FIGHT OF MY LIFE
With his career on the line, federal Treasurer warns electing teal independents will be a horror show for our country
FORMER AFL STAR'S WILL STOUSH
OPEN YOUR EYES, BABY
IS THIS MR CRUEL?

Source 5 The Sunday edition of the *Herald Sun* in 2022 featured a three-page interview with then-federal Treasurer Josh Frydenberg. Frydenberg was campaigning against the independent 'teal' candidate Monique Ryan for the seat of Kooyong in Victoria.

Key skill worksheet
Analysis, evaluation & interpretation: Exploring bias in media coverage of COVID-19

An ageing population

Because families are having fewer children and life expectancy is increasing, Australia is becoming an ageing nation. This will have political consequences that could affect our democracy. For example, in the early 1970s approximately 8 per cent of Australia's population was aged over 65 years. By 2020 this had increased to 16 per cent and it is predicted to rise to 23 per cent by 2050. As more voters enter the over-65 age group, the elderly will have more political power and be able to place greater pressure on governments. Presumably, the elderly would seek to implement policies and laws that focus on their needs, including increasing aged pensions and the provision of health-care services for the elderly.

By contrast, the priorities of younger voters are generally related to the environment, education and enacting social change. For example, a survey conducted by the Australian Election Study on the 2019 federal election noted a trend: that voting for the Greens as a first preference party increased as the age of those surveyed decreased. These political divisions seem to have been amplified by the candidates' different views on housing prices, tax and climate change. The increasingly ageing population of Australia may sway policy-making away from the priorities of younger voters, potentially unbalancing and threatening social cohesion.

Quiz me!
A quick quiz on threats to Australia's democracy

17.2 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 **Identify** two threats to Australia's democratic society.

Comprehend

2 **Explain** how an individual or organisation with a vested interest can influence political outcomes.

3 **Explain** how an ageing society could be a potential threat to democracy.

Analyse

4 **Examine** Sources 2, 4 and 5.
- a What do you think the meaning or message of each source is?
- b Identify the techniques that have been used by the creators to communicate their message.
- c Do you think these images show media bias in politics? Justify (give reasons for) your answer.
- d Explain how a biased presentation of information in the media could influence Australia's democracy.

5 **Consider** (think carefully about) what you think are the three biggest threats to social cohesion and unity in Australia today. Suggest ways in which these threats could be minimised.

Apply

6 In groups, **discuss** whether the following policies or law changes might strengthen or threaten our democratic and cohesive society. Share your response in a wider discussion with the class.
- a bringing back the death penalty as a punishment for very serious crimes, such as mass murder and terrorism
- b banning political parties from advertising on television and radio during election campaigns
- c continuing to severely restrict the number of asylum seekers allowed into Australia
- d abolishing compulsory voting
- e banning the building of an Islamic mosque in a country town
- f teaching children in primary schools about domestic violence.

7 Many countries throughout the world are facing political unrest, and difficulties in achieving and maintaining a democratic system of government.
- a **Investigate** one country that is currently experiencing threats to its democracy; for example, Hong Kong, Venezuela, Algeria or Myanmar.
- b **Create** a PowerPoint presentation that includes the name of your selected country and a map showing its global location. Include the following information:
  - a brief description of the main threats to democracy being experienced; these may include:
    - – threats to the voting system and free and fair elections (for example, due to the government or military interfering with the voting process, war and corruption, low literacy rates or a lack of reliable reporting of information in the media)
    - – threats to freedom of speech or movement (for example, due to government laws or policies, or COVID-19)
  - an explanation of the impact, or possible impact, of the threats on the country; this may include the impact of the threat on the government, any specific groups or organisations, and the general population.

  Share your PowerPoint presentation and findings with the class.

17.3 Discussing controversial issues in democracies

Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» explain why access to information is important in a democracy.

Australia's democracy is built on a number of values and rights. As in many democratic societies, rights such as freedom of speech are highly valued in Australia for encouraging the public to discuss and debate important issues and encourage civic participation.

Discussing controversial ideas and issues

An important part of living in a democracy is the ability of citizens to respectfully engage with values and ideas different from their own. Even in cohesive democratic societies, there are often national or global issues which are controversial. Controversial issues are those which evoke strong emotions and divide opinions in society. For example, in Australia the date of the national day of Australia is controversial. Many nations have a national day celebrating a date of independence or of becoming a republic or federation. In Australia, the national day marks the founding of the first British colony on the continent in 1788. Currently commemorated on 26 January (it has been held on different dates in the past), Australia Day is sometimes referred to as 'Invasion Day' or 'Day of Mourning' by parts of the Australian population – led by First Nations peoples – who do not believe our national holiday should be held on this date.

Accessing information

Source 6 Traditional media is still the most popular way to consume news in Australia.

As discussed in topic 17.2, a democracy relies on individuals being able to access information in order to discuss ideas and make informed decisions. How Australians access news and information – and how we discuss and debate issues – has changed greatly over the years and has been further impacted by the COVID-19 pandemic. For example, the *Digital News Report: Australia 2022* produced by the University of Canberra found that:

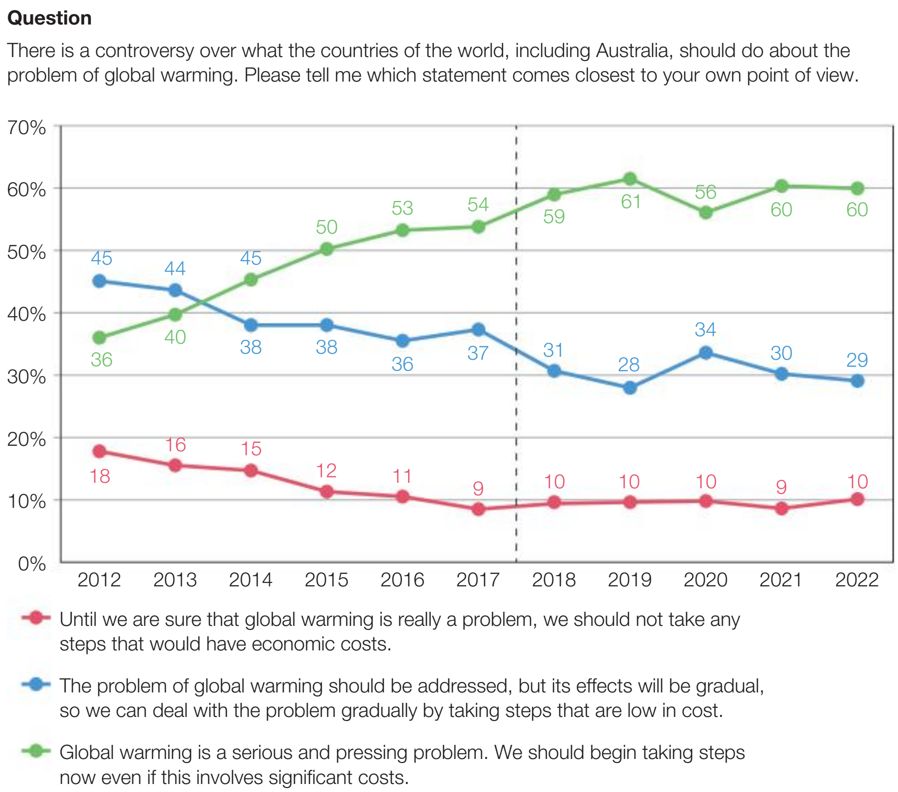
- traditional and public service broadcasters remain the most popular sources of news in Australia in 2022, with the majority of Australians accessing news via television. An example of traditional broadcaster is the Nine Network, while an example of a public service broadcaster is the ABC.
- in Australia, use of social media apps or sites (such as Facebook, Instagram, Twitter or TikTok) to access and share news had declined since 2020. Facebook remains the most popular social media site to access news, though consuming news through Instagram and TikTok had increased.

Social media and polarisation

polarisation
the division of societies into two sharply contrasting groups or sets of opinions or beliefs

Social media are internet-based websites or apps which allow interactive communication between many users. Facebook, Instagram, Twitter, TikTok and YouTube are all examples of social media platforms. Social media platforms provide individuals, special interest groups, political parties, businesses and other organisations with the ability to distribute news and information to a huge audience, both nationally and globally. While information distributed through social media can often be accessed and spread more quickly than information distributed through other sources of media, there are concerns that social media platforms can drive **polarisation**. Polarisation is the division of groups or societies into two opposing viewpoints. Social media platforms can drive polarisation because the algorithms that curate or organise the content a user sees on the platform often show users content that aligns with what they already like or believe. This can create an 'echo chamber', where users are never presented with values or ideas different from their own. Polarisation is considered an issue in democracies, as these differences can be used by political parties or other organisations for their own benefit, reducing cohesion across society over time.

Quiz me!
A quick quiz on discussing controversial issues in democracies



Source 7 Polling data from Australians in response to a question about taking action on global warming. There is a controversy over what the countries of the world, including Australia, should do about the problem of global warming. Source: Lowy Institute Poll, 2022.

17.3 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 In your own words, **define** the terms:
- echo chamber
- polarisation.

2 **Identify** how the majority of Australians access news.

Comprehend

3 **Explain** why the date of Australia's national day is controversial in Australia.

4 **Summarise** how social media can contribute to polarisation in society.

Analyse

5 Look closely at Source 7 and respond to the following questions.
- a **Identify** the position that the majority of Australians have on global warming.
- b **Contrast** the results of 2012 with the results of 2022. How has the position that 'we should not take any steps that would have economic costs' and the position that 'we should begin taking steps now even if this involves significant costs' changed over a decade?
- c Do you think the positions that Australians hold on what Australia should do about global warming are likely to get further apart, or closer together? **Explain** your response.

6 According to the *Digital News Report: Australia 2022*, use of social media apps or sites to access and share news had declined since 2020. **Reflect on** one reason why this might be the case.

7 **Consider** (think carefully about) the importance of citizens in a democracy having access to information. Why do you think this is important?

8 In pairs, **reflect on** which issues you think are controversial in Australia. List three issues and then compare your list with the class.

17B SKILLS IN CONTEXT

Section 18C

In 1975, the Australian federal Labor government passed the *Racial Discrimination Act* to ensure that all people, regardless of their nationality and background, would be treated equally.

Test me!
Once you've finished the topics in this section, test yourself with this quiz and find out which worksheet you should do.

Source 8 Masked-up locals shop for essentials in front of a deserted State Library Victoria in Melbourne amid the COVID-19 pandemic.

Section 18C of this Act effectively limits freedom of speech by making it illegal for any individual to act in a way that is reasonably likely to 'offend, insult, humiliate or intimidate' another person or group due to their race, colour, national or ethnic origin.

In 2014, the federal Liberal–National Party Coalition government announced its intention to strengthen freedom of speech by changing section 18C of the *Racial Discrimination Act* to remove the words 'offend, insult or humiliate' and inserting the word 'vilify', so that it would only be unlawful to 'intimidate or vilify' another person or group on the basis of their race or ethnicity. ('Vilify' means to speak or write about someone in a degrading manner, so that other people will have a low opinion of them.) This started a debate about whether our laws should allow an individual the right to speak in a manner that may offend, insult or humiliate another on the basis of their race. Eventually this proposed change in the law was dropped.

In 2017, the federal Liberal government again proposed a change to section 18C. This time, the government proposed replacing the words 'offend, insult or humiliate' with the term 'harass'. The proposal was debated in the Senate for several hours, before being dropped.

In 2020, public discussion around section 18C emerged again when a spate of racially fuelled attacks took place across Australia. The Australian Human Rights Commission found that one in four people who reported racial discrimination in February and March 2020 linked it to anti-Asian sentiment amid the COVID-19 pandemic. These senseless attacks, based on false beliefs and misconceptions, sparked calls to strengthen section 18C.

The following quotes show differing views of Australians about this issue.

Source 9

People do have a right to be bigots, you know. In a free country, people do have rights to say things that other people find offensive, insulting or bigoted.

George Brandis,
former Commonwealth Attorney-General

The best counter to a bad argument is a good one, and the best antidote to bigotry is decency, proclaimed by people engaging in a free and fair debate.

Tony Abbott,
former Prime Minister of Australia

For them [journalists and politicians] it's a game, it's a debate about words and abstract principles. For people who have experienced racism, it is a deeply personal debate, and it's actually a debate about real people and real hurt.

Penny Wong,
Labor senator

This matters because ... plenty of white people ... are good at telling coloured people what they should and shouldn't find racist, without even the slightest awareness that they might not be in prime position to make that call.

Waleed Aly,
lawyer and media commentator

Since 2013 the Liberals have fought to undermine the anti-discrimination laws [by] twice trying to scrap the racial hate speech protections in Section 17C ... and have been far too slow to condemn racism and to stand up for all Australians.

Chinese-born Australian man James Lin,
who was attacked in March 2020 at the beginning
of the COVID-19 pandemic

KEY SKILL
Communicating

Understanding and addressing task words

One important skill you need to develop is the ability to specifically address 'task words' when preparing a response to a question, and avoid simply writing everything you know about a topic. The table in Source 10 lists and explains the meaning of some common task words used in humanities and social sciences subjects.

One of the most important task words in humanities and social sciences is *compare*. To compare, follow these steps:

Step 1 Examine the sources that you have been asked to compare. Use a coloured highlighter to identify any similarities between each of the sources.

Step 2 Read the sources again. Now, use a different-coloured highlighter to identify any differences between each of the sources.

Step 3 Write a comparison by outlining these similarities and differences.

Step 4 Provide a conclusion that includes your own point of view, based on evaluating the different opinions.

Source 10 Some common task words

Task word	Meaning
analyse	examine or consider something in order to explain and interpret it, identifying different components and the relationship between them
compare	identify the similarities and differences between things
define	give the meaning of a word or term
describe	give an account of a situation, event, pattern or process, or of the features of something
discuss	examine by argument; examine the considerations for and against; debate; talk or write about a topic taking into account different views and issues
evaluate	examine and determine the value or significance of something, talking about its strengths and weakness and giving your overall opinion
explain	examine an idea or situation plain or clear by describing it in more detail, or providing reasons how or why

Practise the skill

1 In small groups, analyse the quotes made by Australians in response to changing section 18C of the *Racial Discrimination Act* in Source 9.

a **Explain** the meaning of each quote. Classify each quote as either supporting or opposing the changes to the Act.

b **Describe** the similarities between the two categories of quotes and the differences between the views expressed in each category.

c **Discuss** which quotes you most agree with.

d Select two quotes of opposing views. Research the person responsible for the statement. Suggest possible factors that may influence their position on freedom of speech.

Extend your understanding

1 Prepare a written report that discusses the extent to which our laws should uphold and protect freedom of speech. In your report:

- **evaluate** the main arguments supporting laws that protect free speech
- **compare** two of the opposing views expressed in the quotes provided in Source 9
- write a conclusion that expresses your personal view.

17 CHAPTER REVIEW

Review activity

Read the case study and answer the following questions.

COVID-19 and democracy

As the global COVID-19 pandemic began to spread in 2020, Australia's federal, state and territory governments began implementing a range of emergency measures in an attempt to control the spread of the virus. In March 2020, the federal government announced measures such as a non-essential travel ban and a ban on non-essential indoor gatherings over certain numbers of people, which would be implemented by state and territory governments. The federal government also closed Australia's borders to anyone who was not a citizen or resident (Australia's borders reopened nearly two years later, in February 2022). From late 2020, the response to the COVID-19 pandemic shifted to state and territory governments, who put in place targeted lockdown restrictions within their borders. The restrictions included the closures of many workplaces, shops, cafes and restaurants, and schools. New South Wales, the Australian Capital Territory and Victoria in particular experienced extended lockdowns during 2021.

While the federal, state and territory governments and many citizens believed the lockdown restrictions were essential to control the spread of COVID-19, others believed the government had exceeded its administrative power and infringed upon basic human rights, including the right to freedom of movement.

Some people voiced their frustrations in the media. Others, at the risk of being fined, defied restrictions. A relatively small number of individuals also participated in 'anti-lockdown' demonstrations, some of which resulted in participants being fined for not wearing masks and breaching restrictions related to public gatherings, and being arrested for more serious charges, including assaulting police.

One business owner in Victoria, who lost customers and income due to the implementation of the 5-kilometre travel rule, even took legal action in the High Court in an attempt to have the government's lockdown policy declared invalid for being in breach of the Australian Constitution (and the right to freedom of movement). While the legal action failed, it demonstrated the ability of the courts to act as an independent check against any potential abuse of power by the government.

1 a **Identify** one state or territory that experienced extended lockdowns during the COVID-19 pandemic in Australia. (1 mark)

  b **Summarise** the effect of the COVID-19 pandemic in Australia. (3 marks)

2 **Describe** two democratic values that are illustrated by this case study. (4 marks)

3 With reference to this case study, **identify** one way in which the judiciary (that is, the courts) can act as a check on the law-making powers of parliament. (2 marks)

4 **Evaluate** whether you think demonstrations (or protests) are features of a strong and resilient democracy or a threat to democracy. (10 marks)

(Total: 20 marks)

Source 11 Anti-lockdown protesters in Melbourne demonstrate against the restrictions imposed by the Victorian Government in an attempt to control the spread of COVID-19 in 2020.

Chapter checklist

Now that you have completed this chapter, reflect on your ability to do the following:

	I can do this.	I cannot do this yet.
Identify the key features of Australia's democracy and cohesive society.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 17.1, page 528.
Describe threats to Australia's democracy, including vested interest groups and media bias.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 17.2, page 536.
Explain why access to information is important in a democracy.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 17.3, page 540.

Check your Student obook pro for these digital resources and more:

Student book questions
Chapter 17

Key skill worksheet
Communicating: Chapter 17

Quizlet
Play a game of Quizlet on Sustaining Australia's democracy.

Chapter review quiz
Chapter 17

[STEAM project 1]

How can we use technology so that we improve the lives of people in the world's poorest nations?

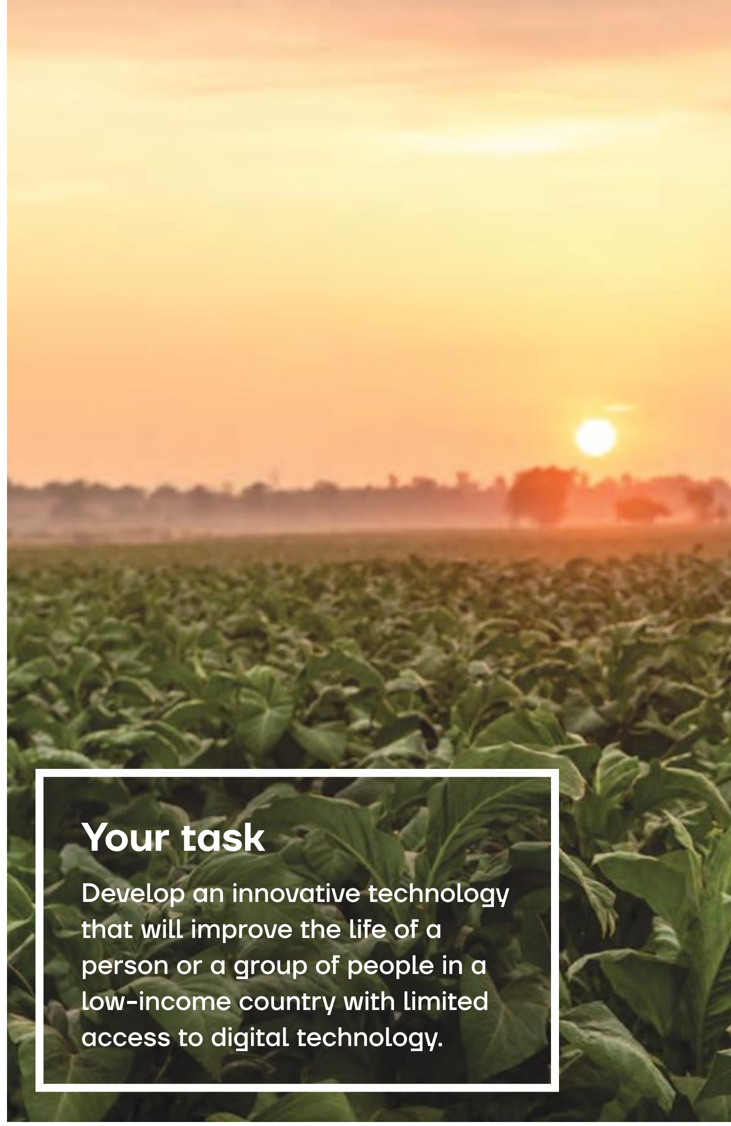
In Australia we are surrounded by technology every day. It is in the phones we use, the televisions we watch and the cars we drive. The term 'technology' is used for any machinery or equipment that applies the scientific knowledge we have discovered. Wheels and computers are both examples of technology.

In high-income countries, emergency response teams often rely on technological data supplied by electronic sensors to respond to natural disasters such as storms, fires and plagues. Drones might be used to conduct search and rescue operations. Doctors can use technology to remotely diagnose people who are sick and to perform operations that save lives.

At the end of 2017, the number of high-speed mobile subscriptions in member countries of the Organisation for Economic Co-operation and Development (OECD) reached a milestone: more subscriptions than the number of people. These mobile phones have been used to alert people to natural disasters, or to call for help in the event of floods and fires.

Technology is not just used for communication during natural disasters. It is also used to create medicine, improve farming practices and for education.

However, not everyone has access to technology.



Your task

Develop an innovative technology that will improve the life of a person or a group of people in a low-income country with limited access to digital technology.

Figure 1 Technology can be used to enhance and improve agricultural practices.

The digital divide

The term 'digital divide' is used to describe the gap between those who have access to digital technology – such as mobiles, computers and the internet – and those who do not. The Australian Bureau of Statistics has identified that almost 2.6 million Australians do not use the internet and cannot access technology in an emergency. Access is even lower in lower-income countries throughout Africa and Asia.

The OECD has identified that targeted innovation that uses technology can boost productivity, increase economic growth and help solve problems in society.

Figure 2 Technology has made attending a doctor's appointment easier and more accessible for people who may have difficulty attending in person.

HUMANITIES

In Geography this year, you will be learning about the spatial variations in human wellbeing globally. You will need to explore a range of factors that lead to inequalities, such as social, political, economic and technological differences. In Economics and Business, you will explore variations in living standards between countries, and how living standards can be improved.

To complete this task successfully, you will need to research the initiatives of international governments and non-government organisations (NGOs) aimed at improving human wellbeing, particularly regarding health. You should consider how technology could be effectively accessed, resourced and used by a group of people to address their health concerns.

You will find more information on this in Chapter 5 'Inequalities in wellbeing' and Chapter 13 'Living standards' of *Oxford Humanities and Social Sciences 10 Australian Curriculum*.

MATHS

In Maths this year, you will extend your skills in representing, comparing and interpreting data. You will use digital technology to work with data, but also perform calculations by hand.

To complete this task successfully, you will need to find data to quantify the problem, to cost your interventions and to calculate a quantitative, evidence-based estimate of the likely benefits of your interventions. You will need to use skills in performing proportionality and other calculations with very large numbers, using scientific notation.

You will find relevant mathematical and statistical concepts in Chapter 9 'Statistics' of *Oxford Maths 10 Australian Curriculum*.

SCIENCE

In Science this year, you will learn how an understanding of evolution can contribute to the selection of desired traits (such as drought resistance) in plants and animals. You will also learn how genetic engineering can be used to develop medicines that will cure cancers and prevent disease.

To complete this task successfully, you will need to consider how the values and needs of different societies can influence the focus of scientific research. You will also need to consider the ethics of the technology that you will be offering to your selected individual or group of people.

You will find more information on this in Chapter 2 'Genetics' and Chapter 3 'Evolution' of *Oxford Science 10 Australian Curriculum*.

The design cycle

To successfully complete this task, you will need to complete each of the phases of the design cycle.

Discover

When designing solutions to a problem, you need to know who you are helping and what they need. The people you are helping, who will use your design, are called your end-users.

Consider the following questions to help you empathise with your end-users:

- Who am I designing for?
- What problems are they facing? Why are they facing them?
- What do they need? What do they not need?
- What does it feel like to face these problems? What words would you use to describe these feelings?

To answer these questions, you may need to investigate using different resources, or even conduct interviews or surveys.

Define

Before you start to design your innovative technology, you need to define the parameters you are working towards.

Define your version of the problem

Rewrite the problem so that you describe the group you are helping, the problem they are experiencing and the reason it is important to solve it. Use the following phrase as a guide.

'How can we help (the group) to solve (the problem) so that (the reason)?'

Determine the criteria

1 Describe the limitations in energy, communications, transport and support personnel that will need to be considered as part of the solution.

2 Describe how many copies of the solution prototype will need to be made to make a difference in the country you have chosen.

3 Identify who could pay for the construction of the solution prototypes.

4 Describe the social culture that is experienced by the individuals and groups who are affected by the problem. Why might some technologies be viewed as unwanted or even dangerous?

Ideate

Once you know who you're designing for, and you know what the criteria are, it's time to get creative!

Outline the criteria or requirements your technological design must fulfil (i.e. cost, size and weight for transportation, and cultural appropriateness).

Brainstorm at least one idea per person that fulfils the criteria.

Remember that there are no bad ideas at this stage. One silly thought could lead to a genius innovation!

Build

Each group member should select one design to draw. Label each part of the design. Include the material that will be used for its construction.

Include in the individual designs:

a a detailed diagram of the design

b a description of how it will change the life of your selected individual or group

c an outline of any similar designs that are already available to buy

d an outline of why your idea or design is better than others that are already available.

Present your design to your group.

Build the prototype

Choose one solution and build two or three prototypes. The prototype may be full size, or it may be a scale model (10 cm = 1 m).

Use the following questions as a guideline for your prototype solution.

- What materials or technology will you need to build or represent your prototype solution?
- What skills will you need to construct your prototype design? Does your group have these skills, or who can teach you those skills?
- How will you make sure your prototype design is able to be used by your selected individual or group? Will they need training?
- How will you display or describe the way the prototype design will work?

Test

Prototype 1

Use the scientific method to design an experiment that will test the effectiveness and strength of your first prototype solution. You will test the prototype more than once to compare results, so you will need to control your variables between tests.

What criteria will you use to determine the success of your prototype? Conduct your tests and record your results in an appropriate table.

Prototype 2

If your prototype will be used to help an individual, then you will need to generate a survey to test whether the prototype is appropriate for their use. (How would they use it? Would it make their work easier or harder? Would they consider buying it?)

Prototype 3

Use the information you have obtained from testing the first two versions to adapt your last prototype to be more effective and usable for the group you are helping. You may want to use the first two prototypes to demonstrate how the design has been improved over time.

Communicate

Present your design to the class as though you are trying to get your peers to invest in your designed solution.

In your presentation, you will need to:

- outline the situation of the country in which your selected individual or group lives
- outline the challenges faced by your selected individual or group
- include a working model or a detailed series of diagrams with a description of how the prototype of the solution will be used
- include a description of how you changed your design prototype as a result of testing or feedback
- include a description of how the design prototype will improve the lives of your selected individual or group.

Check your Student obook pro for the following digital resources to help you with this STEAM project:

Student booklet
This helpful booklet will guide you step-by-step through the project.

What is the design cycle?
This video will help you to better understand each phase in the design cycle.

How to manage your project
This 'how-to' video will help you to manage your time throughout the design cycle.

How to pitch your idea
This 'how-to' video will help you with the 'Communicate' phase of your project.

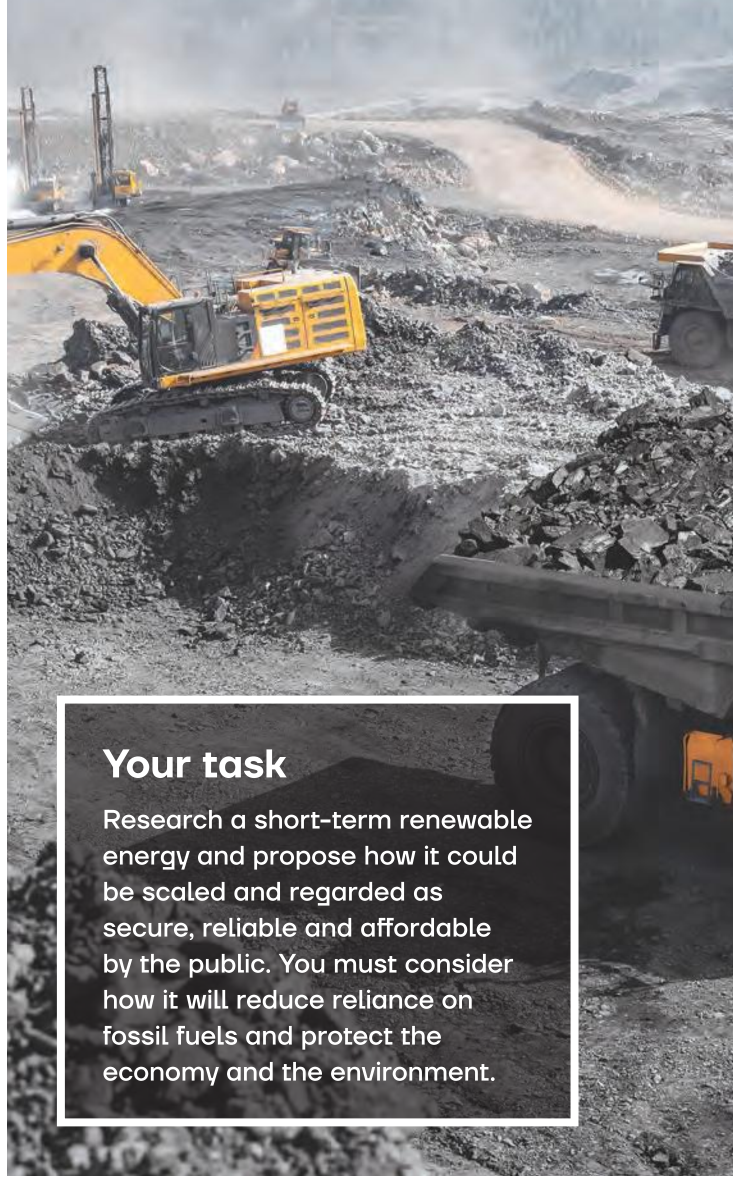
[STEAM project 2]

How can Australia reduce its reliance on fossil fuels so that we protect the environment and the economy?

Fossil fuels such as coal, oil and gas are made from fossilised, decomposed organisms that aged over millions of years in the Earth's crust. They contain carbon, which can be burned for energy. Due to the length of time it takes for these fuels to form as part of the carbon cycle, they are classified as long-term renewable sources of energy, sometimes called non-renewable.

Australia is a major user, producer and exporter of fossil fuels. Nearly 80 per cent of Australia's electricity is generated from coal and gas. Seventy-five per cent of coal mined in Australia is exported, making Australia the largest net exporter of this fuel in the world. In 2019, it was reported that Australia was the world's third-largest exporter of fossil fuels. Economically, the production and export of fossil fuels contributes hugely to Australia's GDP, and the mining industry is an important employer.

Coal emits higher amounts of CO_2 than oil or gas when used to produce energy. Measuring fossil fuel exports according to their potential to emit CO_2 makes Australia's carbon footprint per capita one of the largest in the world. This is contentious globally, particularly for nations most affected by a changing climate.



Your task

Research a short-term renewable energy and propose how it could be scaled and regarded as secure, reliable and affordable by the public. You must consider how it will reduce reliance on fossil fuels and protect the economy and the environment.

Figure 1 Most of Australia's energy is generated from coal. Almost 80 per cent of the coal produced in Australia is from open-cut mines.

Renewable alternatives

To protect both the environment and the economy, Australia needs to focus more on short-term renewable energy. When deciding on energy alternatives, it is important that energy supply be secure, reliable and affordable.

Short-term renewable energy sources include hydropower, solar power, wind power, bioenergy and ocean energy. Australia's landscape is suitable for many of these alternatives, but large investments in technology are required. As we invest more in the technology that makes short-term renewable energy possible, the better we get at making it, the more affordable it becomes and the more demand for renewable energy grows (a cyclical process).

Figure 2 A solar farm in Canberra; solar energy is a source of renewable energy.

HUMANITIES

In Geography this year, you will learn about environmental change and management. You will explore the environmental, technological and economic factors that have influenced the change and the consequences of human actions on the sustainability of the environment.

In Economics and Business, you will investigate how the performance of Australia's economy is measured and how Australia's economic growth has depended on natural resources. You will explore the impact that environmental policies can have on Australia's economy and living standards.

To complete this task successfully, you will need to understand how stakeholders such as governments, communities and businesses can work together to initiate environmental change and management plans that protect both the environment and the economy.

You will find more information on this in Chapter 2 'Changing and managing the environment' and Chapter 13 'Economic growth and productivity' of *Oxford Humanities and Social Sciences 10 Australian Curriculum*.

MATHS

In Maths this year, you will extend your skills in representing and interpreting data, including univariate, bivariate and multivariate data sets. This will include critical consideration of media reports that use statistics and present graphs. You will use digital technology to work with data, but also perform calculations by hand.

To complete this task successfully, you will need to find data to quantify the problem, to cost your interventions and to calculate a quantitative, evidence-based estimate of the likely benefits of your interventions. You will need to have skills in performing proportionality and other calculations with very large numbers, using scientific notation.

You will find relevant mathematical and statistical concepts in Chapter 9 'Statistics' of *Oxford Maths 10 Australian Curriculum*.

SCIENCE

In Science this year, you will learn about the impacts of fossil fuel combustion reactions in the production of carbon dioxide and carbon monoxide. You will also examine how increased reliance on this form of energy has affected the way carbon cycles through Earth's spheres, and how the resulting increase in greenhouse gases (including carbon dioxide) has led to enhanced global warming, which is contributing to melting sea ice and permafrost, rising sea levels and an increased number of extreme weather events.

To complete this task successfully, you will need to consider how energy that is generated can be used efficiently.

You will find more information on this in Chapter 4 'Climate change' of *Oxford Science 10 Australian Curriculum*.

The design cycle

To successfully complete this task, you will need to complete each of the phases of the design cycle.

Discover

When designing solutions to a problem, you need to know who you are helping (your end-users) and what they need.

Consider the following questions to help you empathise with your end-users:

- Who am I designing for? Will I be helping the government or members of the public?
- What problems are they facing? Why are they facing them?
- What do they need? What do they not need?

To answer these questions, you may need to investigate using different resources, or even conduct interviews or surveys.

Define

Before you start to design your solution for the potential replacement of fossil fuels, you need to define the parameters you are working towards.

Define your version of the problem

Rewrite the problem so that you describe the group you are helping, the problem they are experiencing and the reason it is important to solve it. Use the following phrase as a guide.

'How can we help (the group) to solve (the problem) so that (the reason)?'

Determine the criteria

1 What type of energy source are you trying to replace? How much of it is currently used and how is it used?
2 How will the renewable energy be used? Will it be easy for the user to access?
3 Will the renewable energy require many changes in the vehicles or equipment being used? Who will pay for this change in infrastructure? How much will it cost?
4 How long will it take to generate the resources needed to make this renewable energy resource accessible and affordable for most people?

Ideate

Once you know who you're designing for, and you know what the criteria are, it's time to get creative!

Outline the criteria or requirements your design must fulfil (i.e. type of equipment, number and amount of materials, area that needs to be covered).

Brainstorm at least one idea per person that fulfils the criteria.

Remember that there are no bad ideas at this stage. One silly thought could lead to a genius innovation!

Build

Each team member should draw one individual design. Label each part of the design. Include the material that will be used to construct a model of the design.

Include in the individual designs:

a a description of what you see as the biggest problem with the energy source that you are replacing
b a description of the renewable energy that you propose could be used instead

c a description of how this renewable energy could be scaled up so that it can be used more effectively.

Present your design to your group.

Build the prototype

As a group, choose one design and plan how to model or build it. You may need to produce two or three to-scale prototypes for your group's design. Keep each iteration so that you can show the progress of your ideas.

Use the following questions as a guideline for your prototype.

- How will you replicate or model the renewable energy source?
- How will you model how the renewable energy will be used?
- What are the limitations of the renewable energy source? Will it produce enough energy for the equipment that currently uses fossil fuels?
- Calculate the number, density or requirements of energy sources in your area. How will your model provide for these demands?

Test

Use the scientific method to design an experiment that will test the limitations of your renewable energy prototype idea. You will need to model and test more than one prototype to compare results, so you will need to consider all variables between tests.

What criteria will you use to determine the success of your renewable energy prototype?

If your prototype will be used by a particular group of individuals, then you will need to generate a survey to test whether the prototype is appropriate for their use. (How would they use the alternative energy source? Would it make their life easier or harder? Would they consider buying it? How much would they be prepared to pay to access this form of energy?)

Conduct your tests and record your results in an appropriate table.

Communicate

Present your design to the class as though you are trying to get your peers to invest in your alternative energy design.

In your presentation, you will need to:

- outline the energy needs of the selected individual or group you are supporting
- outline the energy challenges faced by your selected individual or group
- create a working model or a detailed series of diagrams, with a description of how the design prototype will be used to replace the current energy demands
- describe how you changed your design prototype as a result of testing or feedback
- describe how the renewable energy prototype will improve the life of your selected individual or group
- estimate the cost of production for each element of your energy design
- estimate the number of each element of your energy design required in your local government area
- estimate the total implementation cost to individuals, or to local, state or national government bodies
- compare how this energy system could be implemented in developed and developing countries.

Check your Student obook pro for the following digital resources to help you with this STEAM project:

Student booklet
This helpful booklet will guide you step-by-step through the project.

What is the design cycle?
This video will help you to better understand each phase in the design cycle.

How to manage your project
This 'how-to' video will help you to manage your time throughout the design cycle.

How to define a problem
This 'how-to' video will help you to narrow your ideas down and define a specific problem.

GLOSSARY

Glossary: Geography

A

anthropogenic
created or caused by humans

aquifers
underground water supplies consisting of a layer of rock or other permeable materials that hold water

atmosphere
all of the gases that surround the Earth

B

bias
prejudice for or against a person or group, especially in a way considered to be unfair

biodiversity
the variety of living organisms (e.g. plants, animals, bacteria and fungi) found in an environment

biomes
large areas of the Earth that are home to similar plant and animal communities that have adapted to a particular environment over time (e.g. desert, forest, grassland)

blowout dunes
dunes that are moving inland as onshore winds carry grains of sand away from the beach

breakwaters
walls built out into the sea to help prevent large waves from reaching the coastline and causing erosion

C

cartogram
a type of map that is distorted to show a representation of statistical data (e.g. access to water, rates of obesity, etc.), rather than land area

caste system
a social system in which people are born into a social group (called a caste); the caste system is generally associated with the Hindu religion in India and is still used today

census
a 'head count' or audit of the number of people living in a particular place at a particular time; information collected during a census often includes age, occupation, income, etc.

choropleth maps
maps that display data or characteristics (e.g. HDI rankings) across an area by using colour or shade to represent the value of the data (e.g. dark green for high rankings and light green for low rankings)

climate change
a change in global or regional climate patterns; in particular, a change apparent from the mid to late twentieth century onwards and attributed largely to the increased levels of atmospheric carbon dioxide produced by the use of fossil fuels

climate graphs
combination bar and line graphs that show the rainfall and temperature of a given place; also known as climographs

coastal degradation
the deterioration of a coastline due to human effects such as pollution, land use change and tourism

compound column graph
a type of column graph that features two or more sets of related data at the same time so that they can be compared; information provided in each column is subdivided for further comparison

contour lines
lines drawn on a map that connect points of the same height to show the height and steepness of land

correlation
a statistical measure that indicates the extent to which two or more variables are related or linked

culture
a term used to describe the shared characteristics (e.g. language, food, religion, beliefs, etc.) of a population or group of people

D

deforestation
the removal of trees and other plant life from a forested area, either by cutting

down or by burning; usually carried out to clear the land for farming

demographic transition model
a geographic model designed to help explain changes in populations over time, especially the transition from high birth and death rates to low birth and death rates as countries become more developed

demographics
the statistical data of a population or of groups within a population, especially those related to average age, gender, birth and death

deposition
the laying down of solid material that has been eroded and transported from another part of the Earth's surface

desertification
the transformation of fertile land into relatively dry desert

developed countries
industrialised countries with well-developed economies and a relatively high standard of living that are able to support the needs of their citizens

developing countries
non-industrialised or newly industrialised countries with relatively fragile economies and a low standard of living that are not always able to support the needs of their citizens

digital elevation model (DEM)
a topographic illustration (or digital model) that uses a range of data to generate a 3D representation of the Earth's surface

E

ecosystems
complex communities made up of living organisms that interact with each other and with their environment; an abbreviation of 'ecological system'

ecosystem services
a term used to describe a range of important resources, processes and benefits that healthy ecosystems provide to humans

empires
groups of countries and/or areas often speaking different languages and having different cultures, but centrally ruled

erosion
the wearing away of the Earth's surface by water, wind and ice

estuaries
wide tidal mouths of rivers

extreme poverty
the state of living on income of less than US$1.90 a day

F

false colour image
an image that depicts an object or area in colours that differ from those seen in nature; false colour images use colours that are different or more exaggerated than those shown in standard photographs, in order to make the thing being shown easier to interpret

fertility rate
a statistical measure of the average number of children that all women in a particular area of population will have throughout their lifetime

fieldwork
geographical study that takes place outside the classroom, at the site of inquiry

food security
a term used to describe a condition in which all people at all times have access to enough safe nutritious food to sustain a healthy life

fossil fuels
fuels made from the decomposed (fossilised) remains of plants and animals that lived millions of years ago (e.g. coal, oil, gas)

G

gender inequalities
unequal treatment of individuals within a society based on their gender, whether male or female

gender pay gap
the difference between the amounts of money paid to women and men, often for doing the same work

geographic information system (GIS)
a software application designed to capture, store, manipulate, analyse, manage and present all kinds of geographical information

geographical inquiry
a process that geographers use to guide their investigations, beginning with asking questions and using geographical skills

geographical sketch
a sketch focusing on those parts of the environment relevant to the current geographical inquiry

global positioning systems (GPSs)
devices that use satellites to accurately pinpoint the location of an object on the Earth's surface (e.g. a car, a mobile phone) and provide data and directions to help with navigation

greenhouse gases
gases, such as carbon dioxide, that absorb radiation from the sun's rays, trapping heat in the Earth's atmosphere

Gross Domestic Product (GDP)
the total monetary value of all the goods and services produced by a country over a specific time period (usually a year)

groynes
human-made barriers that jut out from the beach into the water, built to prevent erosion of the beach from the power of destructive waves and longshore drift

H

Human Development Index (HDI)
a tool developed by the United Nations to grade and rank the social and economic development of the world's countries in order from most to least developed

I

indicator
something that helps show the state of a thing; good indicators are measurable

infant mortality rates
statistical measures of the proportion of children in an area or population under the age of 12 months who die; expressed as number of deaths per 1000 live births

infrastructure
the facilities and services necessary for any community, city or country to function (e.g. buildings, electricity, roads, airports and water supply)

internally displaced persons (IDP)
people who have been forced to flee their home, but who remain within their own country's borders

invasive species
a plant, animal or other organism that is not native to an area and whose introduction has negative effects on its new environment

irrigate
supply water to otherwise dry land by artificial means (e.g. pipes, ditches, sprinkler systems) to help with the growing of crops

L

land degradation
the loss of productivity and the decline in the fertility of land-based environments as a result of human activities

land reclamation
the process of creating new land from oceans, bays, harbours and estuaries by dumping rocks, silt from the sea bed or other materials into the water

landfill
a method used to dispose of rubbish by burying it; also used to describe the place where rubbish is buried

landform
a natural geographical feature or shape on the Earth's surface (e.g. a dune, hill, valley, beach or cave)

landscape degradation
a process that occurs when the productivity of land is lost

levees
long walls or embankments built to prevent flooding from the sea

life expectancy
a statistical measure of the average number of years a person in an area of population can expect to live from the year in which they were born

literacy rates
statistical measures of the percentage of adults (over the age of 15) in an area or population that can read and write

M

map
a simplified plan of an area shown from directly above

megacities
cities with a population of more than 10 million people

N

national parks
areas of natural beauty that are protected by law for the use of the general public and the protection of the natural environment

non-government organisations (NGOs)
not-for-profit organisations independent of the government that are organised and administered on a local, national or international level; NGOs often rely on the support of donors and volunteers

O

ocean acidification
the ongoing decrease in the pH level (a measure of acidity and alkalinity) of the Earth's oceans, caused by the uptake of carbon dioxide from the atmosphere by the water

ozone layer
a layer of gases, with a large proportion of ozone, high in the atmosphere that protects the Earth from harmful amounts of the sun's rays

P

plan view
a way of showing something as if the viewer is looking down on it from above; a bird's-eye view

pollution
any substance released into the environment that causes damage

population pyramid
a type of graph that displays the percentage of males and females in a region or population grouped by age

primary data
data for a geographical inquiry that was collected in the field by the geographer conducting the inquiry (e.g. survey data, hand-drawn maps or photographs)

Q

qualitative data
information that focuses on quality rather than quantity; as such, it is usually someone's opinion and may differ from person to person

quantitative data
any information that can be recorded as numbers (e.g. 'the literacy rate is India is 74 per cent')

R

rainforest
a dense forest area found in tropical regions, with warm temperatures and heavy rainfall

refugees
people who travel from one country to another country to escape the effects of a natural disaster or conflict, or to avoid persecution

relief
the variations in elevation (height) of areas on the Earth's surface; on maps, the relief of an area (e.g. the hills and valleys) are often shown more clearly by shading rather than by using contour lines alone

rock armour
rocks piled along the coast to protect the shore from erosion

S

salinity
a measure of the amount of salt present in the soil

satellite image
an image of a place taken from satellites orbiting above the Earth's surface

scatterplot
a type of graph that uses two sets of data by plotting points along two axes, the pattern of which shows their correlation; also called a scattergraph or scattergram

sea walls
solid walls built along the coast to protect the land from erosion by the sea

secondary data
data used for a geographical inquiry that was not collected by the geographer conducting the inquiry (e.g. textbooks, atlases or websites)

services
one of the four ecosystem services; processes that take place in the environment that support life

(e.g. seed dispersal and absorption of carbon dioxide by trees and oceans)

sinks
one of the four ecosystem services; processes that take place in the natural environment that absorb waste (e.g. micro-organisms in oceans break down oil spills and bacteria in the soil break down human waste)

sources
one of the four ecosystem services; these are natural products that can be used or converted by humans for use (e.g. wood from trees)

spatial variations
a term used to describe the way built and natural features (e.g. towns, cities, rivers, mountain ranges, farming regions) are arranged on the Earth's surface

spirituality
one of the four ecosystem services; a sense of wellbeing and spiritual connection offered by the environment (e.g. aesthetic appreciation of certain landscapes, deep connections to the land)

spits
narrow, low-lying tongues of sand or other eroded material attached to the coastline at one end

Stolen Generations
First Nations children who were forcibly removed from their families by government officials and church missions in Australia and raised by white Australians; this practice was part of official government policy from about 1909 to 1969

Sustainable Development Goals (SDGs)
a set of 17 goals developed by the United Nations in 2015 that are designed to end poverty, protect the Earth from unsustainable development, and improve the wellbeing of all people

sustainability
the ongoing capacity of Earth to maintain all life

T

topographic maps
types of map that show the shape of the land, its relief and landforms

W

water tables
the highest underground level at which the rocks and soil in a particular area are completely wet with groundwater

wellbeing
the ability of human beings to access the things they need in order to live happy and healthy lives (e.g. food, water, education, safety and security)

Glossary: History

A

above-ground nuclear testing
the test detonation of nuclear weapons above ground; such tests can cause large amounts of nuclear fallout

Allied Powers
the coalition of countries in opposition to the Axis Powers in World War II; they included Britain, the Commonwealth and France, which were joined by the United States and the Soviet Union in 1941

Allies
the coalition of countries in opposition to the Central Powers in World War I; they included Britain, the Commonwealth, France and Russia, which were joined by the United States in 1917

AM and FM radio
the technology that allows information to be transmitted and received over electromagnetic waves; AM radio creates larger waves, at varied lengths, meaning they can be received from further away; FM radio transmits more consistent waves, which do not travel as far, but create a better sound.

antisemitism
prejudice, hatred or discrimination against Jews

apartheid
a system of racial segregation enforced in South Africa from 1948 to 1994; literally meaning 'the state of being apart'

appeasement
a policy adopted by Britain and France towards Germany from the mid-1930s until 1939; it was designed to avoid a second world war by granting certain allowances to Hitler and the Nazi government

Arbitration Commission
a Federal court and tribunal with powers to make decisions under the Workplace Relations Act 1953–2010

armistice
a formal agreement during a war to stop fighting and discuss making peace

arms race
a situation in which rival countries compete to build and possess the largest military resources; commonly used during the Cold War to refer to the competition between the United States and the Soviet Union to stockpile nuclear weapons

artefacts
any objects that are made or changed by humans

assimilation
in Australian history, the process by which a minority group adopts the language and customs of a dominant population; in the mid-1900s assimilation of Aboriginal and Torres Strait Islander peoples into white society became official government policy in Australia

asylum seekers
people who have applied for recognition (or sought protection) as refugees

Axis Powers
the coalition of countries in opposition to the Allied Powers in World War II; they included Germany, Italy and Japan

B

baby boomer
someone born between 1946 and 1964; this was the time when there was a

spike in birth rates after World War II (known as a baby boom)

Basic Wage Inquiry
an inquiry held periodically by the Commonwealth Court of Conciliation and Arbitration

bias
a pre-set view about someone or something that is not altered by the presentation of facts and opinions to the contrary

bipartisan
(in a two-party political system such as Australia) an action or vote involving agreement from both parties

Blitz
a term used to describe a period during World War II when major cities across Britain were the target of sustained bombing campaigns by the German air force

Blitzkrieg
a German term meaning 'lightning war'; a military tactic adopted by German forces during World War II that involved launching sudden, intense attacks on enemies using fighter aircraft and tanks followed by the advance of ground troops

boycotts
the withdrawal of political, trade and/or other contact with a country or an organisation

C

capitalism
a way of organising a society in which investment in, and ownership of, the means of production (e.g. factories, farms and machinery) are privately owned by individuals or corporations and run to generate profits; as opposed to state-owned and state-controlled systems such as socialism and communism

capitalist
a society in which investment in, and ownership of, the means of production (e.g. factories, farms and machinery) are privately owned by individuals or corporations and run to generate profits

caricature
a drawing of a person in which certain characteristics are exaggerated to create a grotesque or comedic effect

censored
banned or limited information, books or ideas that are considered sensitive or damaging

censorship
the act or practice of banning or limiting access to information, books or ideas that are considered sensitive or damaging

census
a 'head count' or audit of the number of people living in a particular place at a particular time; information collected during a census often includes age, occupation, income, etc.

Central Powers
the coalition of countries in opposition to the Allies in World War I; they included Germany and Austria-Hungary, which were joined by the Ottoman Empire in November 1914

chronological order
a number of events arranged in the order that they happened

chronology
a record of events in the order they took place

civil rights
the rights belonging to every individual, including civil liberties, due legal process, equal protection under the law and freedom from discrimination

Cold War
the state of political conflict and hostility that existed between the Soviet Union (and its allies) and the United States (and its allies) from 1945 to 1990; it was characterised by threats, propaganda and public competition

colonies
countries or areas under the full or partial control of another country, and occupied by colonisers from that country

colonisation
to have established control of a country or territory for financial, political or military gain, e.g. Australia was colonised by Britain

colonised
took full or partial control of another country, and occupied it

Commonwealth of Nations
a group of 54 nations that are, or were previously, ruled or governed by the United Kingdom; the head of the Commonwealth is the King of England

communism
a way of organising a society in which the means of production are publicly owned and goods are distributed equally according to need

concentration camps
prisons in which civilians, enemy aliens, political prisoners or prisoners of war are detained under extremely harsh conditions

conscription
the compulsory recruitment of people to serve in the armed forces, often during times of war

contestability
refers to explanations or interpretations of past events that are open to debate

convicts
people found guilty of a crime and sentenced by a court to serve some kind of punishment

counter-offensive
a large-scale military operation by a defending force against an attacking enemy force

Crown land
land belonging to the monarch or to the state in a self-governing country that is part of the British Commonwealth

D

decolonisation
the process by which a country that was previously a colony of an imperial power becomes politically independent

demilitarisation
the removal of all military forces

democracy
a political **system** (or system of government) where the people determine how they will be managed or governed, and may exercise the power to directly govern themselves or elect representatives to govern on their behalf

depression
when economic activity is in decline over the long term

desegregation
the elimination of segregation

developed countries
industrialised countries with well-developed economies and relatively high standards of living that are able to support the needs of their citizens

dictator
a political leader who has complete power over a country, especially one who has gained it using military force

direct action
action that seeks to achieve an end directly and by the most effective means, e.g. by the use of strikes, boycotts and sit-ins

discriminated
when a person or group has been treated unfavourably because of personal characteristics such as their age, race, disability, physical features or political beliefs

dominion
a self-governing nation or state under British sovereignty; British dominions (at various times) included former colonies such as Australia, Canada, India and New Zealand

domino theory
the theory put forward by US President Dwight D. Eisenhower that if one nation in South-East Asia adopted communism, others would follow – just like a row of dominoes topple once the first one is pushed over

E

Eastern Front
the theatre of war between the European Axis Powers, and the Soviet Union and its allies in World War II; it took place in Central and Eastern Europe, and the Baltic and Balkans regions

embassy
a group of people who represent their country in a foreign land; also refers to the building where these people are based

emissions trading scheme (ETS)
a scheme that can play out on both a national and international level which offers incentives to businesses and companies for reducing emissions, or pollution

empathy
the ability to understand another person's point of view, way of life, or decisions by taking their special circumstances and values into consideration

empire
a group of countries and/or areas often speaking different languages and having different cultures, but centrally ruled

Enlightenment
a cultural, philosophical and intellectual movement that took place across Europe during the seventeenth and eighteenth centuries; during this time, thinkers and philosophers questioned beliefs about education, religion, government and society that had been accepted for centuries

environmentalism
a broad philosophy and social movement concerned with environmental protection

eugenics
the belief in (and practice of) 'improving' the genetic qualities of the human race by discouraging people with 'genetic defects' or 'negative genetic traits' (characteristics) from reproducing and/or encouraging people with 'positive genetic traits' to reproduce

executive
relating to or having the power to put plans or actions into effect

F

Fair Work Commission
Australia's national workplace tribunal, which carries out a range of functions concerning working conditions and resolution of workplace disputes

fascism
a way of organising a society in which a government ruled by a dictator has complete power over the lives of the people, commerce and industry, and in which any criticism of or opposition to the government is suppressed by force; an extreme form of nationalism

fossil fuel
a fuel made from the decomposed (fossilised) remains of plants and animals that lived millions of years ago (e.g. coal, oil, gas)

Free French Forces
a resistance organisation founded by French General Charles de Gaulle in 1940, committed to fighting the Axis Powers

free settlers
people who leave their homeland by choice to settle in a new country or colony

G

generation gap
where older and younger people (different generations) do not understand each other because of their different experiences, opinions, habits and behaviour

Geneva Convention
a term used to describe a number of international treaties and agreements that established a code of conduct for all countries during times of war; they outline the rights of prisoners (both military and civilian), and protections for the wounded and for civilians living in and around war zones

genocide
the deliberate and systematic mass killing of people based on their race, ethnicity, religion or culture

ghettos
sections of towns or cities established by the Nazis during World War II to confine and isolate Jews and other 'undesirables' from the wider population

globalisation
the increasing interconnections between countries all around the world, particularly economic, political, trade and cultural exchanges to decrease the importance of national barriers to the production and trade of goods and services

Great Depression
a period of severe economic downturn between 1929 and 1934 that affected most countries around the world

Green Revolution
a period of research, development and alteration of agricultural techniques that took place between the 1940s and 1960s, most markedly in the developing world, which saw increased global agricultural production

guerrilla
an unconventional method of warfare involving an unseen enemy, surprise and ambush tactics

guerrilla war
a form of warfare in which small and independent groups of combatants (known as guerrillas) take part in non-traditional fighting methods, such as ambushes, sabotages and raids

H

Holocaust
the deliberate and systematic (planned) mass murder of Jews and other 'undesirables' by the Nazis during World War II

home front
those citizens who remain at home during a war

human rights
rights that all human beings possess, regardless of their nationality, place of residence, sex, national or ethnic origin, colour, religion, language, or any other status

hyperinflation
extremely rapid and uncontrolled inflation (price rises); Germany experienced hyperinflation from 1921 to 1924, during which time prices rose so rapidly that money was effectively worthless

hypothesis
a considered opinion, theory or statement, based on research and evidence, about something that has not been proven

I

ideology
a set of beliefs and characteristics that a person or social group adopts; most often, the beliefs form the basis of economic or political theory for the person or group in question

immigration
act of entering and settling permanently in a country or region to which a person is not native

imperialism
the method of extending a country's power and influence through colonisation, use of military force, or other means

Industrial Revolution
the period of rapid development in manufacturing and industry from 1750 to 1900, particularly in Britain

industrialise
to transform from an economy based primarily on agriculture and farming to one based on manufacturing and industry

integration
an immigration policy introduced during the 1960s after recognition that assimilation was not a practical policy; integration was based around the belief that new migrants should conform to the attitudes, values and beliefs of the wider society while still retaining aspects of their traditional cultures

internal combustion engine
an engine that generates power by burning petrol, oil or another fuel with air inside the engine itself

internally displaced person (IDP)
a person who has been forced to flee their home, but who remains within their own country's border

internment
the detention or imprisonment of people (commonly in large numbers) without trial, especially during times of war

interpretations
the assumptions and conclusions historians make about an event after the fact; interpretations are formed by examining evidence

J

Japanese home islands
the group of islands forming the country of Japan; this term was commonly used in World War II to define the area of Japan to which its sovereignty and the constitutional rule of the emperor would be restricted

Jazz Age
a period in the 1920s, noted for general prosperity, when jazz music became a major cultural form

K

kamikaze
a Japanese term meaning 'divine wind'; during World War II, Japanese pilots who deliberately crashed their planes into Allied ships were called kamikaze

Ku Klux Klan
a secret society of white supremacists originally formed in the southern states of the United States after the American Civil War to protest against the granting of civil rights to freed Black slaves; the group uses violence and acts of intimidation to achieve its goals

L

land rights
the rights and interests in land and the resources in the land of First Nations peoples; also refers to the struggle for those rights

League of Nations
an international organisation established at the end of World War I to maintain world peace and prevent the outbreak of future wars by encouraging nations to negotiate with one another; the League of Nations had some early successes but ultimately failed in its primary purpose of preventing future wars

liberate
to free a country or a person from the control of somebody or something else

liberation
setting free a country or a person from the control of somebody or something else

life expectancy
the average number of years a person in an area of population can expect to live from the year in which they were born

M

mandatory detention
a feature of Australian immigration policy under which all persons entering the country without a valid visa are compulsorily detained, while security and health checks are undertaken and the legitimacy of their claims is decided

migrant
a person who moves from one country or region to another to settle there; this includes both **emigrants** (people leaving a country) and **immigrants** (people entering a country)

militarism
a focus within a country on boosting the strength of the military by growing the armed forces and increasing spending on military equipment

militia
a fighting force that is made up of non-professional (civilian) fighters

Missions
settlements established during the nineteenth century (usually by Christian missionaries) to convert Aboriginal and Torres Strait Islander peoples to Christianity and assimilate them into European culture and beliefs

monoculturalism
the practice of actively preserving a single national culture through the exclusion of external influences; it aims to achieve a single, homogeneous society without diversity

moratorium
an anti-war protest intended to make the nation pause and reassess its commitment to the war

multicultural
when several different cultures coexist peacefully and equitably in a single country

N

nationalism
a sense of pride in, and love of, one's country; also the idea that one nation's culture and interests are superior to those of another nation

native title
the recognition by Australian law that some First Nations peoples have rights and interests to the land that come from their traditional laws and customs

non-renewable resource
a resource that cannot be regenerated once it has been used up (e.g. oil, coal)

O

offensive
a large-scale military operation by an attacking force against a defending enemy force

P

passive resistance
non-violent opposition to authority, including a refusal to cooperate with laws

paternalism
controlling people in a paternal ('fatherly') manner, especially by deciding their needs without allowing them rights or responsibilities

people smugglers
those who arrange for asylum seekers to make a sea voyage to another country in return for a fee

popular culture
music, film, television, sport, etc., that has broad appeal and is international in scope

primary source
a source that existed or was made at the time being studied

propaganda
information or material that attempts to influence the behaviour or opinions of people within a society; propaganda can take many forms (e.g. posters, flyers, advertising campaigns, films) and is designed to promote a cause or course of action and/or damage the cause of an enemy

protection
a government policy introduced in Australia in the 1850s, designed to give the government extensive power over the lives of Aboriginal and Torres Strait Islander peoples (including the regulation of where they lived and worked, who they married and what languages they spoke); under this policy, a number of Reserves and Missions were established around Australia, and many Aboriginal and Torres Strait Islander people were forced to move and live there

pull factors
factors or characteristics that are attractive about a place that a person is considering moving to

push factors
factors or characteristics that are unattractive about a place that a person is considering moving away from

Q

quota
an official limit on the number or amount of people or things that are allowed

R

ratified
when a national or state parliament has expressly passed legislation that requires it by law to adopt the various rights and responsibilities set out in a treaty

reconciliation
a term used to refer to the bringing together of Aboriginal and Torres Strait Islanders and non-Indigenous Australians; reconciliation is a process that involves working to overcome past divisions and address inequalities between Aboriginal and Torres Strait Islanders and non-Indigenous Australians

re-education camps
places of harsh punishment established after the communist victory in Vietnam in 1975

referendum
the method for changing the wording of the Australian Constitution; it requires a proposal for change to be approved by the Australian people in a compulsory public vote

refugee
a person who has fled their home country to another country due to a

well-founded fear of persecution for reasons recognised by law

remilitarise
to supply a place that has previously been demilitarised with new military resources

reparations
money paid by one country to another as compensation for damage, injuries and deaths it has caused during war

Reserves
settlements established during the nineteenth century in Australia (usually by colonial powers) to move First Nations peoples away from European-occupied areas, and to assimilate them into European culture and beliefs

reserved occupations
occupations that were considered vital to the war effort at home, such as farming and manufacturing; men working in these occupations were not allowed to enlist in the armed forces

S

satire
the use of humour, irony, exaggeration or ridicule to expose and criticise people, particularly in politics

secondary source
a source created after the time being studied

segregation
in Australian history, the government policy and practice of separating First Nations peoples from European settlers

segregation
in US history, the policy of separating Black American people from white people

self-determination
the right of the people in a particular place to choose the form of government they will put in place and the course of action they will take

siege
a military strategy to weaken an area by cutting it off from the outside world

sitcom
situation comedy; a television show with set characters who, every episode, find themselves in humorous situations

sit-ins
a form of non-violent protest where demonstrators occupy a place open to the public, such as a racially segregated lunch counter or bus station, and then refuse to leave

social cohesion
the willingness of members of a community to live together in a peaceful and cooperative way in order to survive and prosper

socialism
a political and economic theory that promotes the public ownership of a nation's resources and means of production (e.g. factories, farms and machinery) by all citizens; as opposed to privately owned and controlled ownership in a capitalist system; under socialism, all citizens share equally in economic resources, as allocated by a democratically elected government

socialists
people advocating socialism; a political and economic theory that promotes the public ownership of a nation's resources and means of production by all citizens; under socialism, all citizens share equally in economic resources, as allocated by a democratically elected government

sphere of influence
an area in which a foreign power has significant military, political and economic influence or control

stateless persons
people who are not recognised as nationals by the laws of any country

Stolen Generations
First Nations children who were forcibly removed from their families by government officials and church Missions in Australia and raised by white Australians; this practice was official government policy from around 1909 to 1969

stormtroopers
the Nazi Party's 'assault division'; it was largely made up of former soldiers from World War I, and used methods of violent intimidation

superpowers
very powerful and dominant nations; especially used during the Cold War era to refer to the United States and the Soviet Union (both nuclear powers, and considered to be most powerful nations on Earth)

surf music
a style of music originating in the United States in the early 1960s, characterised by high-pitched, harmonised vocals and lyrics relating to surfing

sustainability
a concept that relates to the ongoing capacity of the Earth to maintain all life; this means developing ways to ensure the Earth's resources are used and managed responsibly, so they can be maintained for future generations

T

theatre of war
an area where important military events take place

Third Reich
third regime, or third empire; the First Reich dated from 962 CE to 1806; the Second Reich was Imperial Germany (1871–1918); and Nazi Germany (1933–45) was described by Hitler as the Third Reich

timeline
a visual representation of time showing a sequence of related historical events in chronological order

Treaty of Versailles
the treaty (binding agreement) that ended World War I; it forced Germany to accept responsibility for starting the war and to pay reparations

U

underground nuclear testing
the test detonation of nuclear weapons underground; when the device being tested is buried at sufficient

depth, the nuclear explosion may be contained, with no release of radioactive materials to the atmosphere

United Nations
an international organisation established at the end of World War II to increase political and economic cooperation among its member countries, to promote peace and to prevent the future outbreak of armed conflicts around the world

W

Western Front
a long stretch of land that was marked by trenches and fierce fighting in World War I; the Western Front wove through France and Belgium, from France's border with Switzerland to the North Sea

White Australia Policy
a term used to describe government policies introduced after Federation in 1901 to stop 'non-white' immigrants from settling in Australia, instead favouring those from certain European nations (especially Britain)

Women's Liberation Movement
the movement aimed at achieving recognition of women's rights, which began in the United States in the late 1960s

Glossary: Economics and business

C

capital equipment
physical items, such as vehicles, machines and computers, that are used in production

cause-and-effect relationship
the link between what causes an action and the outcome of that action; an appreciation of the fact that events that take place (both short term and long term) are linked and can have impacts on people and places for many years to come

chain of command
the system by which instructions are passed from one person to another

consumer
a person who buys goods or services for personal use

Consumer Price Index (CPI)
a measurement of retail price changes of a constant basket of goods and services

D

depreciation
a reduction in value of an asset (such as a computer) over time due to wear and tear

depression
when economic activity is in decline over the long term

E

economic growth
an increase in the amount of goods and services produced, per person, within a specific period of time

economist
an individual who studies the relationship between the resources that a geographic area (such as a country) has and what it is able to produce

economy
a system that involves the production, distribution, trade and consumption of goods and services by individuals, businesses, organisations or governments

expenditure
the amount of money spent by a person, business or government

F

final goods and services
goods and services that are at their furthest stage of production; that is, they will not be used to produce other goods and services

fiscal policy
the government's management of the federal budget – adjusting expenditure and tax rates to influence the performance of the economy

G

goods and services
products made for consumers; goods are tangible products that can be touched; services are intangible products that cannot be touched but benefit the consumer in some way

government revenue
income a government receives predominantly from taxes, but also from non-tax sources such as loans and dividends from government-owned businesses

Gross Domestic Product (GDP)
the total monetary value of all the goods and services produced by a country over a specific time period (usually a year)

I

import quotas
physical limits placed on the quantity of an imported good that can enter a country

inflation
an increase in the general level of prices paid for goods and services over a certain period of time

interest rates
the amount a borrower must pay to a lender for the use of money – usually expressed as a percentage of the total amount borrowed

L

labour market reform
changes in laws and government policies in relation to employment; such reforms aim to increase competitiveness and economic growth while safeguarding against the unfair treatment of workers

labour productivity
the amount of goods or services that a worker produces in a given amount of time

living standards
the level of wealth, material goods, comfort and life necessities available to people living in a geographical area

M

marketing
activities that businesses undertake to promote the buying or selling of products

material living standards
standards that can be easily measured in terms of income per person, or consumption or purchase of goods and services

monetary policy
actions by the Reserve Bank of Australia that affect the money supply and interest rates

N

natural resources
materials or substances from nature, such as water, forests and fertile land, that can be used in the production of goods and services

non-material living standards
standards that are not easily measured as they are intangible and refer to aspects of our lives such as feeling safe in the community

O

OECD
the Organisation for Economic Co-operation and Development, which consists of 30 member countries that discuss and promote economic and social policy

P

preservation age
the earliest age you can access your superannuation once you stop working

productivity
a measurement of what is produced (output) from a given amount of resources (input)

R

recession
when economic growth falls for two or more quarters in a row

retirement
a permanent withdrawal from the labour force, usually because of age

retirement age
the age when someone can retire and still receive an income

S

subsidies
payments by the government or a public body to a producer or industry to support its business and to keep the price of its goods or services low or competitive

T

tariffs
taxes (usually applied to goods being imported or exported)

trade liberalisation
removing or reducing restrictions or barriers to trade between nations

U

unemployment rate
the percentage of people in the labour force who are actively seeking employment but cannot find work

W

wellbeing
the ability of human beings to access the things they need in order to live happy and healthy lives

Glossary: Civics and citizenship

A

absolute majority
the requirement for a candidate (or political party) to win more than half the votes to be declared the winner of the electoral division (or form the government)

alliances
agreements between one or more nations or organisations to work together to achieve a common or mutual interest

appeal
an application to have a higher court review a ruling (i.e. a decision) made by a lower court

asylum
protection or shelter provided by a nation to a person who has been forced to leave their home country due to conflict or political unrest

Australian Constitution
a set of rules and principles that guide the way Australia is governed; its formal title is the *Commonwealth of Australia Constitution Act 1900* (UK)

B

bicameral (parliament)
a system of government in which the legislature is made up of two houses

bill
a proposal to implement a new law or change an existing law

bill of rights
also known as a charter of rights; a formal document that lists and protects the most important rights and freedoms belonging to the citizens of a country

budget deficit
a situation where an organisation plans to spend more money in the coming year than it expects to earn (or receive)

C

candidates
people who put themselves forward (i.e. stand) to be elected as a member of parliament

census
a 'head count' or audit of the number of people living in a particular place at a particular time

climate change
a change in global or regional climate patterns; in particular, a change attributed largely to the increased levels of atmospheric carbon dioxide produced by the use of fossil fuels

coalition
two or more political parties that join together in an attempt to win an election and form government

colonies
countries or areas under the full or partial control of another country, and occupied by colonisers from that country

colonists
those who take control of a country or territory for financial, political or military gain

common law
law made by judges through decisions made in cases; also known as case law or judge-made law (as opposed to statute law)

common law rights
rights established by judges when making decisions to resolve disputes

Commonwealth of Nations
a group of 54 nations that are, or used to be, ruled or governed by the United Kingdom; the head of the Commonwealth is the Queen or King of England

constitution
a document that outlines the rules and principles that guide the way an organisation, state or nation is governed (or managed)

constitutional conventions
meetings of representatives from the colonies to consider the benefits of, and terms and conditions associated with, creating one central law-making authority

D

declarations
statements or an indication of commitment, especially to moral issues; declarations are not legally binding

discriminated
when a person or group is treated unfavourably because of personal characteristics such as their age, race, disability, physical features or political beliefs

discrimination
the unfavourable treatment of a person based on a certain attribute (e.g. age, gender, disability, ethnicity, religion or gender identity)

E

electoral divisions (or electorates)
geographical areas containing a specified number of people who can vote in an election

express rights
rights that are stated (i.e. explicitly written) in the Australian Constitution and can only be removed by a referendum (or compulsory public vote)

F

federal parliamentary system
a political system where the responsibility to make or change laws is shared by one national (or federal) parliament and several state parliaments

federation
a union or joining of independent states (or colonies) to create one central law-making authority

foreign aid
assistance in the form of money, skills, goods and services transferred from one country to another, mainly for humanitarian reasons

fossil fuels
fuels made from the decomposed (fossilised) remains of plants and animals that lived millions of years ago (e.g. coal, oil, gas)

freedom of assembly
the right of individuals to peacefully gather together to form a group or association to pursue a common goal

freedom of political communication
the right of Australians to exchange information or discuss political issues without fear of being charged and punished by the government

freedom of speech
the right of individuals to publicly express their views and opinions (provided these statements are not false, hateful or cause harm) on political issues without fear of being punished by the government

G

governments
elected members of parliament who make decisions for a nation or state; the government is made up of the party or coalition that has won a majority of seats in the lower house of parliament

greenhouse gas
a gas, such as carbon dioxide, that absorbs radiation from the sun's rays, trapping heat in the Earth's atmosphere

H

human rights
basic freedoms or standards that promote and uphold the dignity of all people and are guaranteed by a moral sense of duty or by the law

humanitarian
concerned with or seeking to promote the welfare of humans

humanitarian crises
events that cause, or threaten to cause, significant harm and suffering to a community or nation; e.g. armed conflicts, global pandemics and natural disasters (such as earthquakes, volcanic eruptions and cyclones)

I

implied rights
rights that are not expressly stated in the Australian Constitution but are considered to exist through interpretation by the High Court

independent candidate
an individual who stands for election, but does not belong to a political party

international legal obligations
rights, responsibilities, terms and conditions of international treaties that a nation has legally committed to upholding through ratifications

J

judiciary
a legal term used to describe the courts and judges

L

legislation
law made by the parliament; also known as Acts of Parliament or statute

law (as opposed to common law made by the courts)

living standards
the level of wealth, material goods, comfort and life necessities available to people living in a geographical area

M

media
organisations and forums that communicate news and information to the public, such as newspapers, magazines, and television and radio broadcasters (often referred to as 'traditional media'), and online websites and social media apps (such as Facebook, Twitter and Instagram)

multicultural
a society in which many cultures coexist peacefully and equitably

N

native title
the right of First Nations peoples (Aboriginal and Torres Strait Islander peoples) to have ownership of land (property) based on having a spiritual, religious and cultural connection with the land

O

ozone layer
a layer of gases around the Earth that protects us from excessive harmful ultraviolet radiation from the sun

P

parliament
a formal assembly where elected representatives gather together to discuss political issues and make laws

polarisation
the division of societies into two sharply contrasting groups or sets of opinions or beliefs

political party
a group of people with similar views and ideas about how a country, state or territory should be managed or governed

precedent
a principle established in a legal case that is followed by courts in cases where the material facts are similar

prime minister
the leader of the party that forms the government

provincial (level of government)
an intermediary (or secondary) tier or level of government; in Indonesia, for the purposes of governing, the nation is divided into 34 provinces or subdivisions

R

ratification
the process of a nation's parliament expressly passing legislation that requires it by law to adopt the various rights and responsibilities set out in a treaty

reconciliation
the bringing together of First Nations and non-Indigenous Australians; it involves working to overcome past divisions and address inequalities between First Nations and non-Indigenous Australians

referendum
the method for changing the wording of the Australian Constitution; it requires a proposal for change to be approved by the Australian people in a compulsory public vote

representative government
a system of government in which the people elect members of parliament to make laws and manage the country on their behalf; also called representative democracy

republic
a system of government in which the power lies with a group of elected officials rather than a king or queen

residual powers
areas in which the only the state parliaments can make law, e.g. law and order, education, health and public transport

responsible government
the requirement that the government must be accountable or answerable to the people for its actions and decisions, and that members of the government must carry out their duties in an honest manner or resign

right
a moral or legal entitlement to have or do something

royal assent
the formal signing and approval of a proposed law (called a bill) by the King's representative (the governor-general), after which the proposal becomes law (also known as a statute or legislation)

rule of law
the principle that everyone in society is bound by law and must obey the law, and that laws should be fair and clear, so people are willing and able to obey them

S

self-determination
the right of the people in a particular place to choose the form of government they will put in place and the course of action they will take

separation of powers
the principle of government that ensures no single group in the parliamentary system can administer the law, make the law, and interpret and apply the law

social cohesion
the willingness of members of a society (or community) to live together in a peaceful and cooperative way in order to survive and prosper

specific powers
areas in which the Commonwealth Parliament has the power to make law, e.g. defence, currency, and marriage and divorce

statute law
law made by parliament; also known as Acts of Parliament or legislation (as opposed to common law)

Stolen Generations
First Nations children who were forcibly removed from their families by government officials and church Missions in Australia and raised by white Australians; this practice was official government policy from around 1909 to 1969

Sustainable Development Goals (SDGs)
a set of 17 goals developed by the UN in 2015 that are designed to end poverty,

protect the Earth from unsustainable development, and improve the wellbeing of all people by 2030

T

Terra Nullius
a Latin expression meaning 'land belonging to no one'; a principle used by British colonists to justify the occupation of Australia without treaty or payment

treaties
formal documents, signed by nations or international organisations, that legally require them to follow the conditions set out in the document

trilateral
involving three parties

U

ultra vires
a Latin term meaning 'beyond the powers'; a law made beyond (i.e. outside) the powers of the parliament

unicameral (parliament)
a system of government in which the legislature is made up of one house

United Nations
an international organisation formed in 1945 with the aim of increasing political and economic cooperation among member countries

W

White Australia Policy
a term used to describe a series of government policies introduced after Federation in 1901 that prevented 'non-white' immigrants from settling in Australia, instead favouring those from certain European nations (especially Britain)

INDEX

D

E

F

G

H

I

T

U

V

W

Y

Z

ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

The author and the publisher wish to thank the following copyright holders for reproduction of their material.

Cover: Phynart Studio/Getty Images and Shutterstock.

Contents: TT News Agency / Alamy Stock Photo, p.iii bottom; Ivan Abreu/SOPA Images/LightRocket via Getty Images, p.ix–xi; Shutterstock, xvi.

Chapter 1: Design Pics Inc/Alamy Stock Photo, p.2; Travelscape Images/Alamy Stock Photo, p.4 source 1; Patrick Sahar/Alamy Stock Photo, p.6 source 1; robertharding / Alamy Stock Photo, p.8 source 3; James Lauritz/Getty Images, p.8 source 4; DigitalGlobe/Getty Images, p.11 source 7; Andrew Atkinson / Alamy Stock Photo, p.14 source 2; NASA, p.24 source 17; NASA, p.24 source 18; Shutterstock, p.7 source 2, p.10 source 6 (all), p.15 source 4, p.16 source 6, p.18 bottom, p.22 source 15, p.23 source 16 (all), p.25 bottom, p.26 & p.27 background, p.30 & p.31 background, p.33 source 30, p.35 right.

Chapter 2: AFP/Getty Images, p.38 source 1; Stephan Schramm/Alamy Stock Photo, p.40 source 4; Elsevier, p.41 source 5; Alamy/ Robert Harding, p.49 source 9; NASA, p.47 source 11; Oliver Strewe/Getty Images, p.51 source 4; AAP Image/John Noonan, p.51 source 5; Brad Wilson, p.53 source 2; Robert Fried/Alamy Stock Photo, p.54 source 8; Erberto Zani / Alamy Stock Photo, p.57 source 12; Michael Robinson Chavez/ The Washington Post/Getty Images, p.57 source 11; REUTERS/Ivan Alvarado, p.58 source 14; REUTERS/Danish Siddiqui, p.63 source 19; Nasa's Goddard Space Flight Center Scientific Visualization Studio / Science Photo Library, p.66 source 23; TT News Agency / Alamy Stock Photo, p.68 source 1; dpa picture alliance / Alamy Stock Photo, p.68 source 2; Auscape/Universal Images Group/Getty Images, p.71 source 6; Universal Images Group/Getty Images, p.73 source 9; NASA, p.77 source 13; Pulsar Imagens/Alamy Stock Photo, p.78 source 15; frans lemmens/Alamy Stock Photo, p.79 source 16; Stringer/AFP/Getty Images, p.80 source 17; Top-Pics TBK / Alamy Stock Photo, p.82 source 21; Scott Wallace/Getty Images, p.82 source 20; Shutterstock, p.34 source 1, p.84 & p.85 background, p.39 source 2, p.46 source 10, p.49 source 2, p.53 (1), p.53 (4), p.53 (5), p.53 (6), p.54 source 7, p.56 source 10 (all), p.58 source 13, p.60 source 15, p.66 source 22, p.67 bottom, p.70 source 4, p.72 source 7, p.78 source 14, p.84 source 23.

Chapter 3: Volodymyr Kalyniuk / Alamy Stock Photo, p.86 source 1, p.128 & p.129 background; Peter Harrison/Getty Images, p.90 source 2; Newspix/Dave Swift, p.91 source 4; Underwater Earth/XL Catlin Seaview Survey, p.95 source 8; Scenics & Science / Alamy Stock Photo, p.96 source 9; Photography by Mangiwau/Getty Images, p.99 source 12; F. Frith Collection/akg-images, p.100 source 14; frans lemmens / Alamy Stock Photo, p.103 source 2; Chris Gomersall / Alamy Stock Photo, p.103 source 3; Jason Friend / Alamy Stock Photo, p.104 source 4; Auscape International Pty Ltd / Alamy Stock Photo, p.106 source 9; Peter Harrison/Getty Images, p.108 source 11; Craig Warhurst / Gympie Times, p.108 source 12; Landcare Australia, p.109 source 13; UN, p.111 source 17; Frans Leemens/Getty Images, p.112 source 19; agefotostock / Alamy Stock Photo, p.112 source 20; CleliaMichelini.com/Getty Images, p.114 source 22; David Wall/Alamy Stock Photo, p.117 source 1; Bayside Gallery, p.117 source 4; National Map, p.119 source 7; INPEX/AAP, p.122 source 11; Total SE, p.123 source 12; Tommy E Trenchard/Alamy Stock Photo, p.124 source 13; NASA, p.128 source 17; Shutterstock, p.99 source 13, p.105 source 7, p.109 source 14, p.110 source 16, p.117 source 1 (frame), p.117 source 2 (frame), p.117 source 3 (frame), p.117 source 4 (frame), p.119 source 6, p.119 source 7, p.121 source 9, p.126 background.

Chapter 4: Johnny Miller/Unequal Scenes, p.130 source 1, p.162 & p.163 background; Ertugrul Cingil/Anadolu Agency/Getty Images, p.132 source 1; Jonathan Drake/ Bloomberg/Getty Images, p.132 source 2; Rob Huibers/Panos Pictures, p.133 source 3; david hancock / Alamy Stock Photo, p.134 source 4; In Pictures Ltd./Corbis/Getty Images, p.135 source 6; World Mapper, p.137 source 8; Gapminder, p.138 source 10; REUTERS/ Finbarr O'Reilly, p.142 source 14; Allison Shelley, p.144 source 16; Robert Harding/ Alamy Stock Photo, p.145 background; UNICEF, p.146 source 18; ALEXIS HUGUET/ AFP/Getty Images, p.147 source 20; Lisa Oberlander, DISDIER Anne-Célia, Fabrice Etilé / The Conversation, p.149 source 21; Photo – Shankar S. Released under CC BY 2.0 https://creativecommons.org/licenses/ by/2.0/, p.149 source 21; James Mahon/Alamy Stock Photo, p.150 source 1; Sipa USA/Alamy Stock Photo, p.151 source 3; Mark Henley / Panos Pictures, p.152 source 6; Puneet Vikram Singh/Getty Images, p.153 source 8; Aslam Saiyad/Alamy Stock Photo, p.154 source 9; Stephen Dwyer/Alamy Stock Photo, p.156 source 11; Newspix/Lachie Millard, p.156 source 12; Amos Aikman / Newspix, p.159 source 15; Ozimages / Alamy Stock Photo, p.159 source 16; ABS, p.161 source 18; ABS, p.161 source 19; Shutterstock, p.140 background, p.143 top, p.148 background, p.157 source 13, p.160 & p.161 background.

Chapter 5: Thomas Trutschel/Photothek/ Getty Images, p.164 source 1, p.196 & 197 background; Newscom/Alamy Stock Photo, p.167 source 3; AP Photo/Ben Curtis, p.168 source 4; Chris Hondros/Getty Images, p.171 source 7; Frans Lemmens/Getty Images, p.174 source 10; Jorge Bernal/Getty Images, p.175 source 12; James Marshall/Getty Images, p.177 source 2; Wayne HUTCHINSON/Alamy Stock Photo, p.177 source 3; Yadid Levy/ Alamy Stock Photo, p.177 source 4; Alain Le Garsmeur China Archive/Alamy Stock Photo, p.178 source 5; David Rose/PANOS, p.180 source 8; Jay's photo/Getty Images, p.180 source 9; dpa picture alliance archive / Alamy Stock Photo, p.184 source 15; Kevin Sieff/The Washington Post/Getty Images, p.185 source 16; ton koene/Alamy Stock Photo, p.187 source 19; blickwinkel/Alamy Stock Photo, p.189 source 22; CHARLES LOMODONG/AFP/Getty Image, p.191 source 24; Jiji Press/AFP/Getty Images, p.194 source 27; Shutterstock, p.166 source 2, p.173 source 9, p.189 source 21, p.193 source 26, p.194 & p.195 background.

Chapter 6: Médecins Sans Frontières, p.198 source 1, p.218 & p.219 background; Reuters/Temilade Adelaja, p.200 source 2; WALTER ASTRADA/AFP/Getty Images, p.202 source 4; UN Photo/John Isaac, p.203 source 6; Aboud Hamam / Reuters, p.203 source 5; Australian Department of Foreign Affairs and Trade. Released under CC BY 2.0 https://creativecommons.org/ licenses/by/2.0/, p.204 source 8; Department of Foreign Affairs and Trade. Released under CC BY 4.0 http://creativecommons. org/licenses/by/4.0/, p.205 source 9; dpa picture alliance / Alamy Stock Photo, p.206 source 11; Jonas Gratzer/LightRocket via Getty Images, p.207 source 13; Bruce Miller / Alamy Stock Photo, p.212 source 3; Newspix, p.213 source 4; G.M.B. Akash/ Panos, p.215 source 7; Photononstop / Alamy Stock Photo, p.215 source 6; Eurostat, p.217 source 9; Shutterstock, p.208 source 14, p.210 left, p.211 source 2, p.216 left, p.216 source 8.

Chapter 7: ClassicStock / Alamy Stock Photo, p.220; NLA/Ken Middleton, p.222 source 1; Bettman/Getty Images, p.225 source 3; IanDagnall Computing / Alamy Stock Photo, p.228 source 8 (left); Pictorial Press Ltd / Alamy Stock Photo, p.228 source 8 (right); Australian War Memorial, p.229 source 10 (left); Sunset Boulevard/Corbis/ Getty Images, p.229 source 10 (right); Australian War Memorial, p.231 source 13; Shawshots / Alamy Stock Photo, p.232 source 14; Australian War Memorial, p.233 source 15; Chronicle / Alamy Stock Photo, p.235 source 17; Hulton Archive/Getty Images, p.236 source 19; Fairfax, p.237 source 20; Australian War Memorial, p.238 source 21; Australian War Memorial, p.238 source 22; Australian War Memorial, p.238 source 24; National Library of Australia, p.238 source 23; Bettmann / Getty Images, p.239 source 25; Patrick Riviere / Getty Images, p.242 source 30; Shutterstock, p.224 source 2, p.226 source 5, p.241 source 29, p.243 bottom, p.244.

Chapter 8: Popperfoto/Getty Images, p.248 source 1, p.314 & p.315 background; Bettman/Getty Images, p.250 source 1 (top); Bettman/Getty Images, p.250 source 1 (bottom left); Shawshots / Alamy Stock Photo, p.250 source 1 (bottom right); Heinrich Hoffmann/ullstein bild/Getty Images, p.251 source 1 (left); Australian War Museum, p.251 source 1 (middle); Science History Images / Alamy Stock Photo, p.252 source 2; Shawshots / Alamy Stock Photo, p.255 source 6 (left); Shawshots / Alamy Stock Photo, p.255 source 6 (right); Bettman/ Getty Images, p.254 source 5; Pictorial Press Ltd / Alamy Stock Photo, p.256 source 7; Granger Historical Picture Archive / Alamy Stock Photo, p.258 source 8; Niday Picture Library / Alamy Stock Photo, p.259 source 9; Daily Herald Archive/SSPL/Getty Images, p.260 source 10; Album / Alamy Stock Photo, p.260 source 11; Australian War Museum, p.260 source 12; Berliner Verlag / Archiv/picture alliance/Getty Images, p.261 source 13; Australian War Museum, p.265 source 18; Australian War Museum, p.265 source 17; Niday Picture Library / Alamy Stock Photo, p.266 source 19; Popperfoto/Getty Images, p.268 source 21; The National WWII Museum, New Orleans, p.269 source 22; Alpha Stock / Alamy Stock Photo, p.269 source 23; Keystone-France/ Gamma-Keystone/Getty Images, p.270 source 24; Hulton-Deutsch Collection/ CORBIS/Getty Images, p.273 source 2; Daniel Ullrich, Threedots. Released under CC BY-SA 3.0 https://creativecommons. org/licenses/by-sa/3.0/deed.en, p.274 source 3; AKG Images, p.274 source 4; World History Archive / Alamy Stock Photo, p.274 source 5; Hulton-Deutsch Collection/ CORBIS/Getty Images, p.276 source 8; PJF Military Collection / Alamy Stock Photo, p.278 source 10; CORBIS/Getty Images, p.279 source 11; CPA Media Pte Ltd / Alamy Stock Photo, p.279 source 12; US National Archives and Records Administration, p.280 source 13; John van Hasselt/Sygma/Getty Images, p.282 source 16; Australian War Museum, p.284 source 18; Commonwealth of Australia. Released under CC BY 4.0, p.284 source 19; AAP/Rocky Roe, p.285 source 21; Australian War Museum, p.286 source 22; Australian War Museum, p.286 source 23; Australian War Museum, p.290 source 3; Bettman/Getty Images, p.290 source 2; Australian War Museum, p.291 source 5; Australian War Museum, p.292 source 6; Australian War Museum, p.293 source 7; Australian War Museum, p.293 source 8; Australian War Museum, p.294 source 9; News Ltd / Newspix, p.294 source 10; News Ltd / Newspix, p.295 source 11; Australian War Museum, p.296 source 12; Australian War Museum, p.296 source 13; Hulton Deutsch/Getty Images, p.297 source 14; Australian War Museum, p.299 source 16; Australian War Museum, p.300 source 17; Australian War Museum, p.301 source 18; Australian War Museum, p.302 source 19; Australian War Museum, p.303 source 21; Australian War Museum, p.305 source 25; PJF Military Collection / Alamy Stock Photo, p.306 source 26; Sylvian Grandadam, p.307 source 28; Australian War Museum, p.307 source 27; News Ltd / Newspix, p.308 source 29; National Library of Australia, p.309 source 30; Issei Kato - Pool/Getty Images, p.311 source 32; Commonwealth of Australia. Released under CC BY 4.0, p.312 source 33; Australian War Museum, p.312 source 35; Edward Reeves / Alamy Stock Photo, p.313 source 36; Design Pics Inc / Alamy Stock Photo, p.313 source 37; Shutterstock, p.272 source 1, p.275 source 6, p.275 source 7, p.277 source 9, p.281 source 15, p.280 source 14, p.281 bottom right, p.284 source 20, p.287 source 25, p.301 bottom, p.304 background.

Chapter 9: Brendon Thorne/Getty Images, p.316 source 1; News Ltd / Newspix, p.318 source 1 (top); National Museum, p.318 source 1 (bottom left); News Ltd / Newspix, p.318 source 1 (bottom right); AAP, p.319 source 1 (top); Getty Images, p.320 source 2; AAP/David Longstreath, p.323 source 6; ROBERT ATANASOVSKI/AFP/Getty Images, p.324 source 8; National Library of Australia, p.325 source 9; National Library of Australia, p.326 source 11; National Library of Australia, p.326 source 12; THE AGE ARCHIVES/Fairfax, p.328 source 14; Jeff Darmanin / Newspix, p.329 source 17; AAP, p.329 source 16; News Ltd / Newspix, p.334 source 4; State Library of Victoria, p.334 source 5; Keystone/Hulton Archive/ Getty Images, p.335 source 7; Australian War Museum, p.336 source 9; Australian War Museum, p.337 source 10; Fairfax, p.337 source 12; Nigel Killeen/Getty Images, p.339 source 13; Alan Gilbert Purcell/Fairfax/Getty, p.340 source 14; Simon Bullard / Newspix, p.341 source 15; News Ltd / Newspix, p.342 source 17; Newspix/Nick Cubbin, p.343 source 18; AAP/Mick Tsikas, p.343 source 19; AAP/SafeCom/ALAN PORRITT, p.345 source 23; Bill Leak / Newspix, p.344 source 21; News Ltd / Newspix, p.346 source 24; Australian Government – Australian Customs and Border Protection Service. Released under CC BY-SA 3.0, p.348 source 28; AAP/David Moir, p.348 source 29; Reuters/Kevin Lamarque/Adobe, p.349 source 30; Usman Khawaja. Released under CC BY-SA 2.0, p.351 source 32; DFID – UK Department for International Development/ Russell Watkins. Released under CC BY-SA 2.0, p.351 source 34; Fairfax, p.352 source 35; Ian Currie/Newspix, p.353 source 36; Scott Barbour/Getty Images, p.354 background; Fairfax, p.356 bottom right; State Library of NSW, p.356 bottom left; Getty Images, p.357 top; National Library of Australia, p.358 source 2; Museum Victoria, p.360 source 6; John van Hasselt/Sygma/Getty Images, p.361 source 7; John van Hasselt/ Sygma/Getty Images, p.362 source 10; State Library of Queensland, p.363 source 11; State Library of New South Wales, p.364 source 12; State Library of NSW, p.365 source 13; The Australian Abo Call, p.366 source 14; AFP/ Getty Images, p.370 source 2; Bettman/ Getty Images, p.370 source 1; Bettman/ Getty Images, p.371 source 3; Universal History Archive/UIG/Getty images, p.371 source 4; Bettman/Getty Images, p.372 source 5; vint2 / Alamy Stock Photo, p.373 source 6; News Ltd / Newspix, p.374 source 7; Newspix, p.375 source 8; Fairfax, p.376 source 10; Fairfax, p.376 source 11; Fairfax, p.378 source 13; Fairfax, p.379 source 14; News Ltd / Newspix, p.379 source 15; Bethyl Mabo, p.380 source 16; David Wall / Alamy Stock Photo, p.381 source 17; Fairfax, p.383 source 18; Patrick Riviere/Getty Images, p.383 source 19; Fairfax, p.384 source 20; TORSTEN BLACKWOOD/AFP/Getty Images, p.385 source 21; Fairfax, p.385 source 22; Eric Lobbecke / Newspix, p.386 source 23; Fairfax, p.387 source 24; Action Plus, p.387 source 25; Martin Philbey/Redferns/Getty Images, p.387 source 26; Andrew Sheargold/Getty Images, p.388 source 27; Fairfax/Jim Pavlidis, p.388 source 41; AAP Image/RICHARD WAINWRIGHT, p.388 source 42; Fairfax, p.389 source 28; ANOEK DE GROOT/AFP via Getty Images, p.390 source 31; Ray Strange / Newspix, p.391 source 33; Pieter Naessens / Newspix, p.391 source 32; National Archives of Australia, p.392 source 34; Laurie Richards Studio / Australian Services Union (ASU). Used with permission of Museums Victoria, p.393 source 35; ZUMA Press, Inc. / Alamy Stock Photo, p.394 source 37; Alex Coppel / Newspix, p.394 source 38; David Barton/ The Sydney Morning Herald, p.395 source 35; News Ltd / Newspix, p.396 source 40; Shutterstock, p.330 background.

Chapter 10: Ivan Abreu/SOPA Images/ LightRocket/Getty Images, p.10.0 source 1, p.10.88 to p.10.91 background; Retro AdArchives / Alamy Stock Photo, p.10.2 source 1; Harold M. Lambert/Getty Images, p.10.3 source 2; AAP/Alan Porritt, p.10.3 source 3; News Ltd / Newspix, p.10.4 source 4; Sandy Huffaker/Corbis/Getty Images, p.10.5 source 7; Friedrich Stark / Alamy Stock Photo, p.10.7 source 9; Australian War Museum, p.10.10 source 12; Bettman/Getty Images, p.10.11 source 13, p.10.12 source 14; Mike Goldwater / Alamy Stock Photo, p.10.13 source 15; ZUMA Press, Inc. / Alamy Stock Photo, p.10.14 source 17; FREDERICK HALMARICK /Fairfax, p.10.18 source 1; RGR Collection / Alamy Stock Photo, p10.19 source 3; AF archive / Alamy Stock Photo, p.10.19 source 2; AA Film Archive /

Alamy Stock Photo, p.10.20 source 4; Frank Burke /Fairfax, p.10.22 source 5; KENNETH REDSHAW /Fairfax, p.10.23 source 6; Independent News and Media/Getty Images, p.10.23 source 7; Allstar Picture Library Ltd. / Alamy Stock Photo, p.10.25 source 9; Lifestyle pictures / Alamy Stock Photo, p.10.25 source 10; National Archives of Australia, p.10.26 source 11; Paul Harmon and The National Film and Sound Archive of Australia, p.10.27 source 12; Moviestore Collection Ltd / Alamy Stock Photo, p.10.28 source 13; Fremantle Media/Shutterstock, p.10.28 source 14; AAP/PR Handout Image, p.10.29 source 15; National Library of Australia, p.10.30 source 16; Keystone/Getty Images, p.10.31 source 17; David Caird / Newspix, p.10.32 source 18; Paul Burston / Newspix, p.10.32 source 19; Paul Marotta/Getty Images, p.10.33 source 20; Entertainment Pictures / Alamy Stock Photo, p.10.34 source 21; AF archive / Alamy Stock Photo, p.10.36 source 23; News Ltd / Newspix, p.10.36 source 24; Chris Pavlich / Newspix, p.10.37 source 25; Photo 12 / Alamy Stock Photo, p.10.38 source 26; Pictorial Press Ltd / Alamy Stock Photo, p.10.40 source 28; Martin Philbey/Redferns, p.10.41 source 29; Ryan Bakerink/Getty Images, p.10.41 source 30; AJ Pics / Alamy Stock Photo, p.10.42 source 31; Allstar Picture Library Ltd. / Alamy Stock Photo, p.10.43 source 32; THE AGE (Melbourne), p.10.45 source 33; AAP Image/ Australian Broadcasting Corporation, p.10.46 source 34; Everett Collection Inc / Alamy Stock Photo, p.10.47 source 35, p.10.48 source 38; AA Film Archive / Alamy Stock Photo, p.10.48 source 36; NASA, p.10.50 source 1; Christophe Boisvieux/Getty Images, p.10.51 source 2; Alamy/Album, p.10.51 source 3; Mother Earth, p.10.56 source 9; News Ltd / Newspix, p.10.56 source 10; Martin Philbey/ Redferns/Getty Images, p.10.57 source 12; Universal Images Group/Getty Images, p.10.59 source 14; georgeclerk/Getty Images, p.10.59 source 15; Edward Miller/Keystone/ Hulton Archive/Getty Images, p.10.60 source 16; Bettman/Getty Images, p.10.61 source 17; mark peterson/Corbis/Getty Images, p.10.62 source 18; Science History Images / Alamy Stock Photo, p.10.63 source 20; National Museum Australia, p.10.64 source 21; Patrick Riviere/Getty Images, p.10.65 source 22; Keystone/Hulton Archive/Getty Images, p.10.66 source 23; AAP Image/Efrem Lukatsky, p.10.67 source 24; Album / Alamy Stock Photo, p.10.67 source 25; Sid Game Archive / Alamy Stock Photo, p.10.68 source 26; Kim Eiszele / Newspix, p.10.68 source 27; Andrew de la Rue / Newspix, p.10.69 source 28; News Ltd / Newspix, p.10.70 source 29; jeremy sutton-hibbert / Alamy Stock Photo, p.10.71 source 30; News Ltd / Newspix, p.10.71 source 31; Clive Hyde / Newspix, p.10.72 source 32; WILLIAM WEST/AFP/ Getty Images, p.10.73 source 33; Fairfax, p.10.74 source 34; AAP Image/MICK TSIKAS, p.10.78 source 38; Daniel Aspinall, p.10.79 source 39; Galen Rowell/Getty Images, p.10.80 source 40; PATRICK RIVIERE/AFP via Getty Images, p.10.81 source 41; AAP/ Jens Dige, p.10.83 source 45; JIM WATSON/ AFP/Getty Images, p.10.84 source 46; World Wildlife Fund Australia, p.10.86 source 49; With permission of Sir David Attenborough, p.10.89 source 52; Shutterstock, p.10.4 source 5, p.10.4 source 6, p.10.6 source 8, p.10.8 source 10, p.10.9 source 11, p.10.16 left, p.10.35 source 22, p.10.44 background, p.10.54 source 6, p.10.55 source 8, p.10.58 source 13, p.10.75 source 35, p.10.76 source 36, p.10.77 source 37, p.10.81 source 42, p.10.82 source 44, p.10.82 source 43, p.10.85 background, p.10.86 source 47, p.10.86 left.

Chapter 11: Shutterstock, p.402, p.404 source 1, p.406 source 2, p.410 source 8, p.411 source 10.

Chapter 12: State Library of NSW, p.415 source 3; Based on Australian Bureau of Statistics data © Commonwealth of Australia. Released under CC 4.0 https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/, p.419 source 8; Queensland Institute of Technology, p.419 source 9; Wavebreakmedia Ltd IP-210426 / Alamy Stock Photo, p.422 source 13; Quinn Rooney/Getty Images, p.424 source 17; Deloitte, p.429 source 8; Cartoon Stock, p.430 source 9; Shutterstock, p.412 source 1, pp.430 & p.431 background, p.417 top right, p.421 bottom, p.423 source 14, p.424 source 15, p.426 source 2, p.427 source 5, p.427 source 7.

Chapter 13: Cartoon Stock, p.443 source 3, p.444 source 5; Shutterstock, p.432 source 1, p.450 & p.451 background, p.434 source 1, p.436 source 3 top, p.436 source 3 bottom, p.438 source 4 (all), p.440 & p.441 background, p.440 source 5, p.442 source 1, p.444 source 4, p.447 source 7, p.448 source 8, p.449 source 9.

Chapter 14: Richard I'Anson/Getty Images, p.454 source 1; mer ghazzal / Alamy Stock Photo, p.460 source 7 (right); SAEED KHAN/ AFP via Getty Images, p.460 source 7 (left); Mark Metcalfe/Getty Images, p.461 source 8; Sam Mooy/Getty Images, p.461 source 9; Newspix, p.461 source 10; Shutterstock, p.452, p.454 source 1, p.456 source 2, p.458 source 5, p.459 source 6, p.462 source 11.

Chapter 15: Richard Milnes / Alamy Stock Photo, p.464 source 1, p.500, p.501 background; Newspix/Carly Earl, p.466 source 1; Parliamentary Education Office (peo.gov.au), DPS AUSPIC, p.469 source 9; National Library of Australia, p.473 source 8; Yui Mok – WPA Pool/Getty Images, p.476 source 15; David Gray/Getty Images, p.476 source 16; Historic Collection / Alamy Stock Photo, p.480 source 3; BAY ISMOYO/AFP/ Getty Images, p.482 source 5; Lukman S Bintoro / Newspix, p.483 source 6; Neftali/ Alamy Stock Photo, p.485 source 9; Rafal Cichawa / Alamy Stock Photo, p.487 source 11; Department of Foreign Affairs and Trade website – www.dfat.gov.au. Released under CC BY 4.0 https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/, p.491 source 2; Department of Defence, p.494 source 5; Australian Embassy, Vietnam, p.495 source 6; Nicholson Cartoons, p.496 source 7; Australian Department of Foreign Affairs and Trade, p.497 source 8; AAP/Eoin Blackwell, p.498 source 9; Newspix/Colin Murty, p.499 source 13; Shutterstock, p.467 source 2(a), p.467 source 2(b), p.467 source 2(c), p.468 source 4, p.471 source 7, p.474 source 11, p.474 source 12, p.478 source 18, p.479 source 20, p.480 source 1, p.484 source 7, p.484 source 8, p.485 bottom, p.486 source 10, p.488 source 12, p.492 source 3, p.493 source 4, p.500 source 14.

Chapter 16: Parliament House Art Collection, Art Services Parliament House, p.506 source 2; National Library of Australia, p.507 source 3; High Court of Australia, p.510 source 6; Newspix/Alan Pryke, p.512 source 8; James Alcock / The Age (Melbourne) / Fairfax, p.512 source 9; JIM MCEWAN / The Age (Melbourne) / Fairfax, p.514 source 11; Newscom / Alamy Stock Photo, p.513 source 10; 123RF, p.516 source 12; W.Wiskerke/Alamy Stock Photo, p.517 source 13; Lyndon Mechielsen / Newspix, p.519 source 2(c); Fromtheheart.com.au, p.522 source 5; Jenny Thoms, p.524 source 6; Shutterstock, p.502 source 1, p.524, p.525 background, p.507 source 4 (top), p.507 source 4 (middle), p.507 source 4 (bottom), p.509, p.511 source 7, p.515 bottom, p.518 source 1, p.519 source 2(d), p.519 source 2(a), p.519 source 2(e), p.519 source 2(d), p.520 source 3, p.522 background.

Chapter 17: News Ltd / Newspix, p.529 source 3; News Ltd / Newspix, p.537 source 2; David Gray/Reuters, p.532 source 7; Fairfax, p.533 source 9; Getty Images, p.535 source 11; AAP/Scott Barbour, p.544 source 11; James D. Morgan/Getty Images, p.528 source 2; News Ltd / Newspix, p.538 source 4; News Ltd / Newspix, p.538 source 5; Shutterstock, p.525 source 1, p.544, p.545 background, p.542 source 8, p.528 source 1, p.531 source 5, p.534 source 10, p.534 background, p.535 source 12, p.538 bottom left, p.536 source 1, p.540 source 6.

STEAM project 1: Shutterstock, p.546 fig 1, p.546 fig 2.

STEAM project 2: Shutterstock p.550 fig 1, p.550 fig 2.

Glossary: CleliaMichelini.com/Getty Images, p.554.

Every effort has been made to trace the original source of copyright material contained in this book. The publisher will be pleased to hear from copyright holders to rectify any errors or omissions.

1 **Luxembourg** – Luxembourg
2 **Netherlands** – Amsterdam
3 **Belgium** – Brussels
4 **Switzerland** – Bern
5 **Andorra** – Andorra-la- Vella
6 **Monaco** – Monaco
7 **Liechtenstein** – Vaduz
8 **San Marino** – San Marino
9 **Vatican City**
10 **Czechia** – Prague
11 **Slovakia** – Bratislava
12 **Austria** – Vienna
13 **Hungary** – Budapest
14 **Moldova** – Kishinev
15 **Slovenia** – Ljubljana
16 **Croatia** – Zagreb
17 **Bosnia and Herzegovina** – Sarajevo
18 **Montenegro** – Podgorica
19 **Serbia** – Belgrade
20 **Kosovo** – Pristina
21 **North Macedonia*** – Skopje
22 **Albania** – Tirane
23 **Malta** – Valletta
24 **Lebanon** – Beirut
25 **Israel** – Jerusalem
26 **Kuwait** – Kuwait
27 **Bahrain** – Manama
28 **Qatar** – Doha
29 **United Arab Emirates** – Abu Dhabi
30 **Senegal** – Dakar
31 **Gambia** – Banjul
32 **Guinea Bissau** – Bissau
33 **Sierra Leone** – Freetown
34 **Ivory Coast** – Yamoussoukro
35 **Ghana** – Accra
36 **Togo** – Lome
37 **Benin** – Porto-Novo
38 **Equatorial Guinea** – Malabo
39 **Sao Tome and Principe** – Sao Tome
40 **Rwanda** – Kigali
41 **Burundi** – Bujumbura
42 **Belize** – Belmopan
43 **Jamaica** – Kingston
44 **St Kitts and Nevis** – Basseterre
45 **Antigua and Barbuda** – St John's
46 **Dominica** – Roseau
47 **St Lucia** – Castries
48 **Barbados** – Bridgetown
49 **St Vincent and the Grenadines** – Kingstown
50 **Grenada** – St George's

* *Former Yugoslav Republic of Macedonia*

180°
150°W
120°W
90°W
60°W
30°W
0°
30°E
OCEAN
Kalaallit Nunaat
(Greenland)
(Denmark)
Arctic Circle
Reykjavik
ICELAND
Alaska
(USA)
60°N
CANADA
Ottawa
St Pierre and Miquelon
(France)
ATLANTIC
Washington DC
Azores
(Portugal)
UNITED STATES OF AMERICA
Bermuda (UK)
OCEAN
30°N
PACIFIC
BAHAMAS
Nassau
Tropic of Cancer
Havana
Hawaii
(USA)
Socorro Island
(Mexico)
MEXICO
CUBA
HAITI
DOMINICAN REPUBLIC
Mexico City
Port-au-Prince
Santo Domingo
CAPE
VERDE
Clarion Island
(Mexico)
GUATEMALA
42
43
45
44
46
Guatemala City
HONDURAS
Praia
San Salvador
Tegucigalpa
47
49
48
EL SALVADOR
NICARAGUA
50
MARSHALL
ISLANDS
OCEAN
Clipperton
(France)
Managua
Caracas
TRINIDAD AND TOBAGO
San Jose
Port of Spain
COSTA RICA
Panama City
GUYANA
Majuro
PANAMA
VENEZUELA
Georgetown
Paramaribo
Bogota
French Guiana (France)
NAURU
South Tarawa
COLOMBIA
SURINAME
Equator
Quito
0°
Yaren
Galapagos Islands
(Ecuador)
ECUADOR
KIRIBATI
SOLOMON
ISLANDS
Funafuti
Honiara
TUVALU
PERU
BRAZIL
Lima
SAMOA
Apia
American Samoa
(USA)
French
Polynesia
(France)
VANUATU
FIJI
La Paz
Brasilia
Port Vila
BOLIVIA
NIUE
COOK
ISLANDS
Suva
Alofi
Sucre
TONGA
New Caledonia
(France)
Nukualofa
Avarua
PARAGUAY
Tropic of Capricorn
Pitcairn Island
(UK)
Asuncion
Rapa Nui
(Easter Island)
(Chile)
San Felix
(Chile)
CHILE
Norfolk Island
(Australia)
30°S
URUGUAY
Juan Fernandez Islands
(Chile)
Santiago
Buenos Aires
Montevideo
International Date Line
ARGENTINA
Wellington
NEW ZEALAND
Chatham Islands
(New Zealand)
LEGEND
Country border
Disputed country border
Country capital city
Azores
(Portugal)
Dependency
Auckland Islands
(New Zealand)
Falkland Islands (UK)
South Georgia (UK)
N
0
1000
2000
3000 km
60°S
SCALE 1:77 000 000 at 40°N and S
1 centimetre on the map measures
770 kilometres on the ground.
Modified Times Projection
OCEAN
Antarctic Circle
ANTARCTICA
180°
150°W
120°W
90°W
60°W
30°W
0°

Today, most Australian people live in urban areas, such as the one shown in this image. In fact, around 90 per cent of all Australians live in cities, making Australia one of the most urbanised countries in the world. With one of the highest rates of immigration across developed countries, Australia is considered a multicultural country. The people of Australia come from a wide range of ethnic and cultural backgrounds, including First Nations peoples, who have been living on the continent for at least 65 000 years.

OXFORD UNIVERSITY PRESS

visit us at **oup.com.au** or
contact customer support at **oup.com.au/help**